

TRANSMISSION AND TRANSFER CASE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
NV1500 MANUAL TRANSMISSION	1	45RFE AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION	416
NV3500 MANUAL TRANSMISSION	36	NV231 TRANSFER CASE	506
42RE AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION	84	NV242 TRANSFER CASE	533
46RE AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION	247		

NV1500 MANUAL TRANSMISSION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION		OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL.....	6
NV1500 MANUAL TRANSMISSION	1	OUTPUT SHAFT BUSHING	6
LUBRICANT.....	3	DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		TRANSMISSION	7
LOW LUBRICANT LEVEL.....	3	CLEANING AND INSPECTION	
HARD SHIFTING	4	TRANSMISSION COMPONENTS	32
TRANSMISSION NOISE.....	4	SPECIFICATIONS	
REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION		TORQUE	34
TRANSMISSION	4	SPECIAL TOOLS	
SHIFT TOWER.....	5	NV1500 MANUAL TRANSMISSION.....	34

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION

NV1500 MANUAL TRANSMISSION

DESCRIPTION

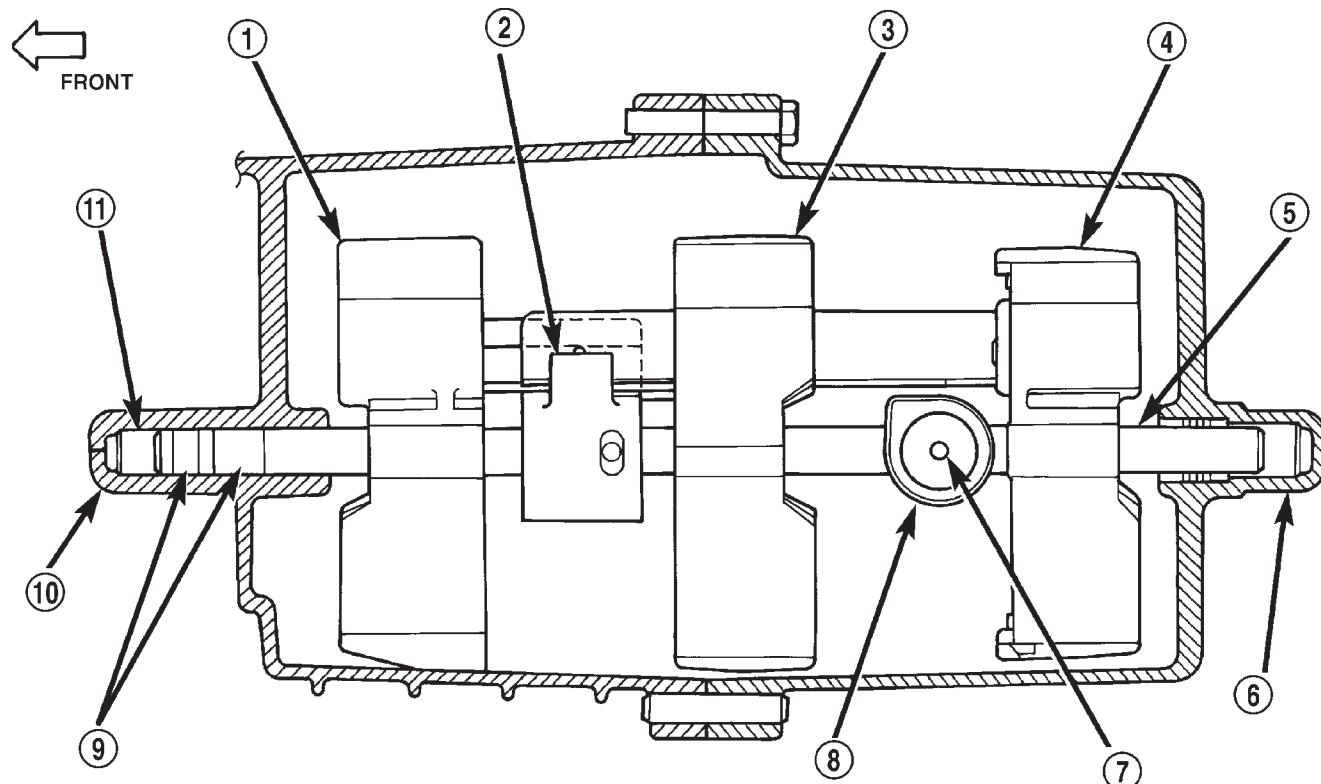
The NV1500 is a medium-duty, 5-speed, constant mesh, fully synchronized manual transmission. Fifth gear is an overdrive range with a ratio of 0.80:1. The NV1500 is available in 4-cyl. equipped 2WD models.

The transmission gear case consists of two aluminum gear housings and a detachable clutch housing.

The mainshaft is supported by two sealed ball bearings, and the countershaft is supported by two tapered roller bearings. The transmission gears all rotate on caged type needle bearings. A roller bearing is used between the input and output shaft.

The NV1500 has a single shaft shift mechanism with three shift forks all mounted on the shaft. The shaft is supported in the front and rear housings by bushings. Internal shift components consist of the forks, shaft, shift lever socket, and detent components (Fig. 1).

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c070f5

Fig. 1 NV1500 Shift Mechanism

- 1 – 3–4 FORK
- 2 – SHIFT SHAFT LEVER AND BUSHING
- 3 – 1–2 FORK
- 4 – FIFTH-REVERSE FORK
- 5 – SHIFT SHAFT
- 6 – REAR HOUSING

- 7 – ROLL PIN
- 8 – SHIFT LEVER SOCKET
- 9 – SHAFT RAIL DETENTS
- 10 – FRONT HOUSING
- 11 – SHIFT SHAFT

GEAR RATIOS

NV1500 GEAR RATIOS ARE AS FOLLOWS:

RANGE	RATIO
FIRST	3.85 :1
SECOND	2.25 :1
THIRD	1.48 :1
FOURTH	1.00 :1
FIFTH	0.80 :1
REVERSE	3.52 :1

IDENTIFICATION

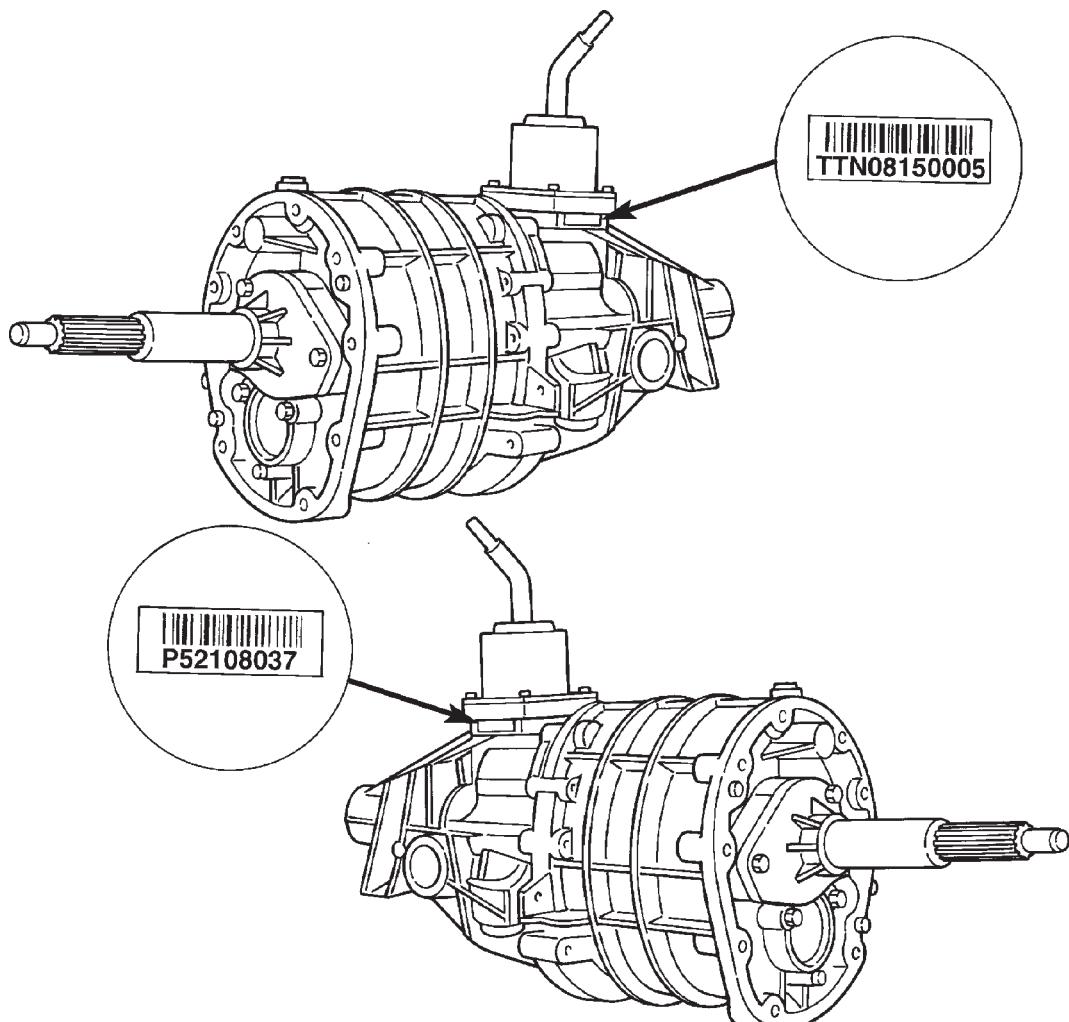
The NV1500 identification bar code tags (Fig. 2) are located on each side of the transmission, below the shift tower. The tag located on the right side has the part number and the tag located on the left side has the build sequence and date information.

OPERATION

The manual transmission receives power through the clutch assembly from the engine. The clutch disc is splined to the transmission input shaft and is turned at engine speed at all times that the clutch is engaged. The input shaft is connected to the transmission countershaft through the mesh of fourth speed gear on the input shaft and the fourth counter-shaft gear. At this point, all the transmission gears are spinning.

The driver selects a particular gear by moving the shift lever to the desired gear position. This movement moves the internal transmission shift components to begin the shift sequence. As the shift lever moves the selected shift rail, the shift fork attached to that rail begins to move. The fork is positioned in a groove in the outer circumference of the synchronizer sleeve. As the shift fork moves the synchronizer begins to speed-up or slow down the selected gear (depending on whether we are up-shifting or down-shifting). The synchronizer does

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c070f6

Fig. 2 NV1500 Identification

this by having the synchronizer hub splined to the mainshaft, or the countershaft in some cases, and moving the blocker ring into contact with the gear's friction cone. As the blocker ring and friction cone come together, the gear speed is brought up or down to the speed of the synchronizer. As the two speeds match, the splines on the inside of the synchronizer sleeve become aligned with the teeth on the blocker ring and the friction cone and eventually will slide over the teeth, locking the gear to the mainshaft, or countershaft, through the synchronizer.

LUBRICANT

DESCRIPTION

Required lubricant for the NV1500 is Mopar® Manual Transmission Lubricant, P/N 4761526. This is the **only** lubricant to be used in NV1500 transmissions. No other lubricants are acceptable, or recommended.

The correct transmission lubricant level is to the bottom edge of the fill plug hole (Fig. 3).

The transmission must be level to obtain an accurate lubricant level check. A drive-on type of hoist is recommended for this purpose.

Lubricant capacity of the NV1500 is approximately 2.3 liters (4.86 pints). This represents the approximate quantity needed to refill the transmission after a lubricant change or overhaul.

DRAIN AND FILL PLUG LOCATIONS

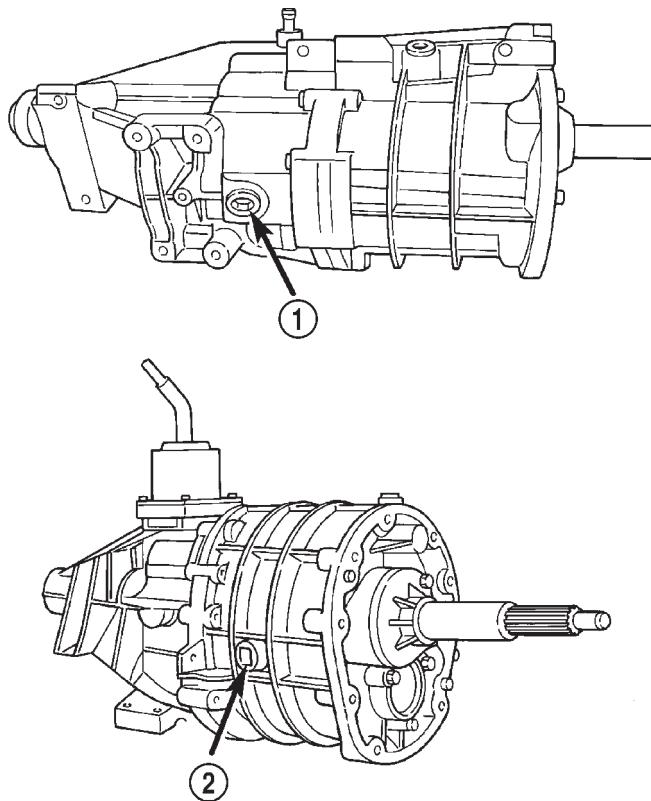
The NV1500 fill and drain plugs are both located in the front housing. The fill plug is at the passenger side of the housing. The drain plug is at the bottom of the housing (Fig. 3).

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

LOW LUBRICANT LEVEL

A low transmission lubricant level is generally the result of a leak, inadequate lubricant fill, or an incorrect lubricant level check.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

**Fig. 3 Drain and Fill Plug Locations**

- 1 – DRAIN PLUG
2 – FILL PLUG

80c070f7

Leaks can occur at the mating surfaces of the housings, or from the front/rear seals. A suspected leak could also be the result of an overfill condition.

Leaks at component mating surfaces will probably be the result of inadequate sealer, gaps in the sealer, incorrect bolt tightening, or use of a non-recommended sealer.

A leak at the front of the transmission will be from either a loose or damaged, front bearing retainer or retainer seal. Lubricant may also drip from the transmission clutch housing after extended operation. If the leak is severe, it will contaminate the clutch disc causing slip, grab and chatter.

Transmissions filled from air or electrically powered lubricant containers can be under filled. Always check the lubricant level after filling to avoid an under fill condition.

A correct lubricant level check can only be made when the vehicle is level; use a drive-on hoist to ensure this. Also allow the lubricant to settle for a minute or so before checking. These recommendations will ensure an accurate check and avoid an under-or-overfill condition.

HARD SHIFTING

Hard shifting is usually caused by a low lubricant level, improper or contaminated lubricants, transmission component damage, clutch linkage malfunction, or by a damaged clutch pressure plate or disc.

Substantial lubricant leaks can result in gear, shift component, synchro and bearing damage. If a leak goes undetected for an extended period, the first indications of a problem are usually hard shifting and noise.

Incorrect or contaminated lubricants can also contribute to hard shifting. The consequence of using non-recommended lubricants is noise, excessive wear, internal bind and hard shifting.

Improper clutch release is a frequent cause of hard shifting. Incorrect adjustment or a worn, damaged pressure plate or disc can cause incorrect release. If the clutch problem is advanced, gear clash during shifts can result.

Worn or damaged synchro rings can cause gear clash when shifting into any forward gear. In some new or rebuilt transmissions, new synchro rings may tend to stick slightly causing stiff and/or noisy shifts. In most cases, this condition will decline as the rings wear in.

TRANSMISSION NOISE

Most manual transmissions make some noise during normal operation. Rotating gears can generate a mild whine that may only be audible at extreme speeds.

Severe, obviously audible transmission noise is generally the result of a lubricant problem. Insufficient, improper, or contaminated lubricant can promote rapid wear of gears, synchros, shift rails, forks and bearings. The overheating caused by a lubricant problem, can also lead to gear breakage.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION**TRANSMISSION****REMOVAL**

- (1) Disconnect battery negative cable.
- (2) Shift transmission into Neutral.
- (3) Remove floor console. Refer to Group 23, Body, for proper procedures.
- (4) Remove screws attaching shift boot to floorpan. Then slide boot upward on lever extension.
- (5) Remove shift lever extension from the shift tower and lever assembly.
- (6) Raise and support vehicle.
- (7) Mark propeller shaft and axle companion flange for alignment reference. Use paint, scribe, or chalk to mark the flange.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

- (8) Remove propeller shaft.
- (9) Disconnect and remove exhaust system Y-pipe.
- (10) Disconnect wires at backup light switch.
- (11) Support engine with adjustable safety stand and wood block.
- (12) If transmission is to be disassembled for repair, remove drain plug and drain lubricant from transmission.
- (13) Remove bolts/nuts attaching transmission to rear mount.
- (14) Support transmission with a transmission jack. Secure transmission to jack with safety chains.
- (15) Remove rear crossmember.
- (16) Remove bolts attaching clutch slave cylinder to clutch housing. Then move cylinder aside for working clearance.
- (17) Remove starter.
- (18) Remove transmission dust shield.
- (19) Remove transmission harness wires from clips on transmission shift cover.
- (20) Lower transmission slightly.
- (21) Remove the bolts attaching the shift tower and lever assembly to the transmission housing. Then remove the shift tower and lever assembly.
- (22) Remove bolts attaching transmission to engine.
- (23) Slide transmission and jack rearward until input shaft clears clutch disc.
- (24) Lower transmission jack and remove transmission from under vehicle.
- (6) Work transmission forward until seated against engine. Do not allow transmission to remain unsupported after input shaft has entered clutch disc.
- (7) Install and tighten transmission-to-engine bolts to 108 N·m (80 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (8) Install clutch slave cylinder.
- (9) Install transmission dust shield.
- (10) Install starter.
- (11) Connect backup light switch wires.
- (12) Fill transmission with recommended lubricant. Correct fill level is bottom edge of fill plug hole.
- (13) Shift the transmission into third gear.
- (14) Install shift tower and lever assembly. Tighten shift tower bolts to 7-10 N·m (5-7 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (15) Position transmission harness wires in clips on shift cover.
- (16) Install transmission mount on transmission or rear crossmember.
- (17) Install rear crossmember.
- (18) Remove transmission jack and engine support fixture.
- (19) Align and install propeller shaft.
- (20) Lower vehicle.
- (21) Install the shift lever extension onto the shift tower and lever assembly.
- (22) Install shift boot.
- (23) Install floor console. Refer to Group 23, Body, for proper procedures.
- (24) Connect battery negative cable.

INSTALLATION

NOTE: If a new transmission is being installed, be sure to use all components supplied with the new transmission. For example, if a new shift tower is supplied with the new transmission, do not re-use the original shift tower.

(1) Apply light coat of Mopar® high temperature bearing grease to contact surfaces of following components:

- input shaft splines.
- release bearing slide surface of front retainer.
- release bearing bore.
- release fork.
- release fork ball stud.
- propeller shaft slip yoke.

(2) Apply sealer to threads of drain plug and install plug in case.

(3) Mount transmission on jack and position transmission under vehicle.

(4) Raise transmission until input shaft is centered in clutch disc hub.

(5) Move transmission forward and start input shaft in clutch disc and pilot bushing.

SHIFT TOWER

REMOVAL

- (1) Shift transmission into Neutral.
- (2) Unscrew and remove the shift lever extension from the shift.
- (3) Remove any floor console components necessary to access the transmission shift tower.
- (4) Remove the bolts holding the shift tower to the isolator plate and transmission gear case.
- (5) Remove the shift tower (Fig. 4) from the transmission.

INSTALLATION

- (1) Shift transmission into third gear.
- (2) Clean the mating surfaces of shift tower and transmission gear case with suitable wax and grease remover.

(3) Install the shift tower onto the transmission case. No sealant is necessary between the shift tower and transmission case.

(4) Install the bolts to hold the shift tower to the isolator plate and the transmission gear case. Tighten the shift tower bolts to 8.5 N·m (6.3 ft. lbs.).

(5) Install the shift lever extension and any floor console components previously removed.

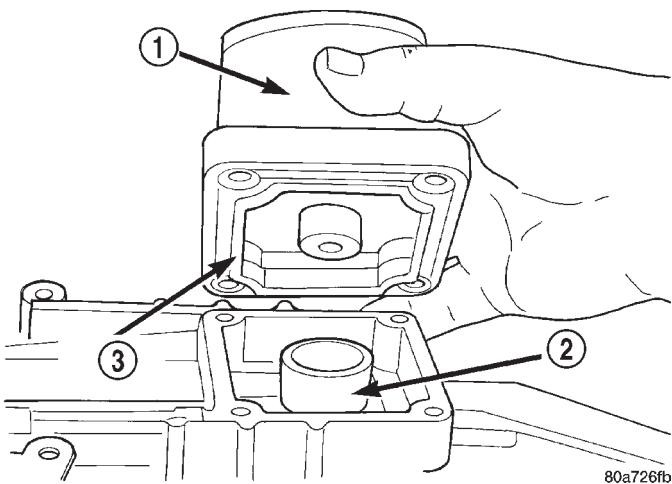


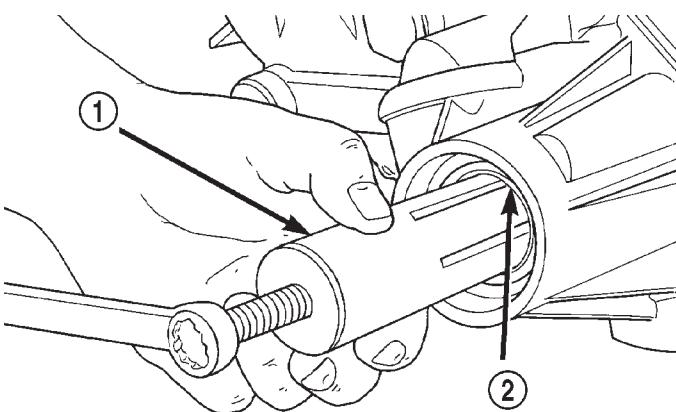
Fig. 4 Remove Shift Tower

- 1 – SHIFT TOWER AND LEVER ASSEMBLY
2 – SHIFT SOCKET
3 – SEAL

OUTPUT SHAFT BUSHING

REMOVAL

- (1) Using a suitable pry tool or slide-hammer mounted screw, remove the output shaft seal.
- (2) Insert Remover 6957 into rear housing. Tighten tool to bushing and remove bushing (Fig. 6).



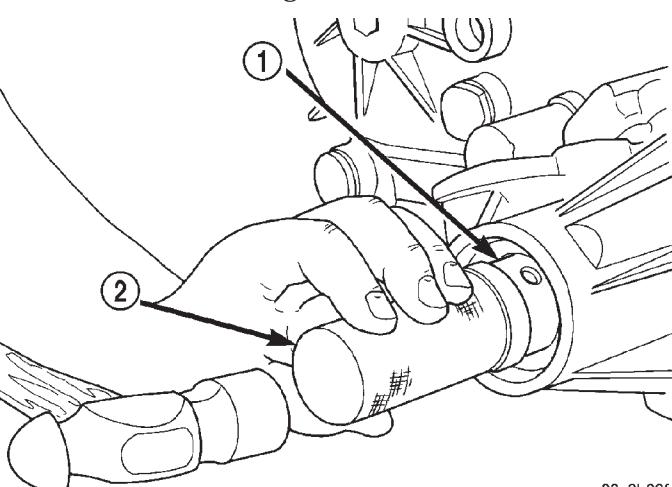
80a11095

Fig. 6 Bushing Removal—Typical

- 1 – REMOVER 6957
2 – EXTENSION HOUSING BUSHING

INSTALLATION

- (1) Align bushing oil hole with oil slot in rear housing.
- (2) Tap bushing into place with Installer 8160 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 7).
- (3) Install new oil seal in housing using Seal Installer C-3995-A (Fig. 8).



80a9b39f

Fig. 7 Rear Housing Bushing Installation—Typical

- 1 – REAR RETAINER BUSHING
2 – INSTALLER 8160

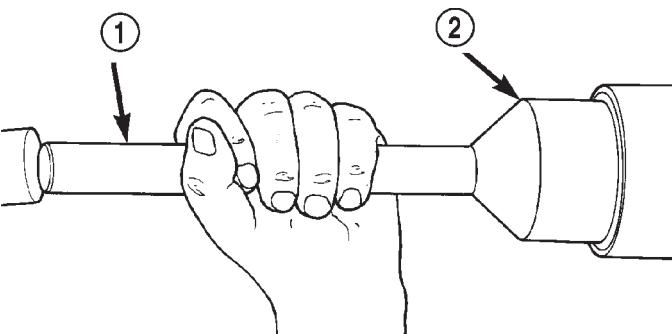
OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL

REMOVAL

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Mark propeller shaft and axle yoke for alignment reference.
- (3) Disconnect and remove propeller shaft.
- (4) Using a suitable pry tool or slide-hammer mounted screw, remove the output shaft seal.

INSTALLATION

- (1) Place seal in position on transmission housing.
- (2) Drive seal into transmission housing with Seal Installer C-3995-A (Fig. 5).
- (3) Carefully guide propeller shaft slip yoke into housing and onto output shaft splines.
- (4) Align marks made at removal and connect propeller shaft to rear axle pinion yoke.

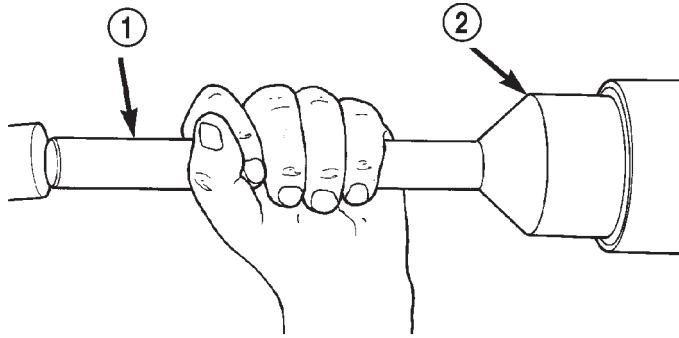


80a983a7

Fig. 5 Installing Transmission Output Shaft Seal

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
2 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3995-A

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)



80a983a7

Fig. 8 Rear Housing Seal Installation

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
2 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3995-A

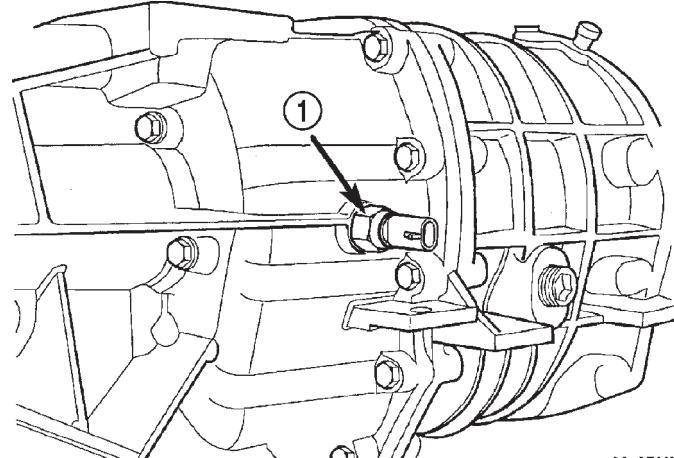
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

TRANSMISSION

DISASSEMBLY

FRONT HOUSING

- (1) If necessary, temporarily reinstall shift lever assembly. Shift transmission into Neutral.
 (2) If lubricant was not drained out of transmission during removal, remove drain plug and drain lubricant into container at this time.
 (3) Inspect drain plug magnet for debris.
 (4) Remove backup light switch. Switch is located on passenger side of rear housing (Fig. 9).

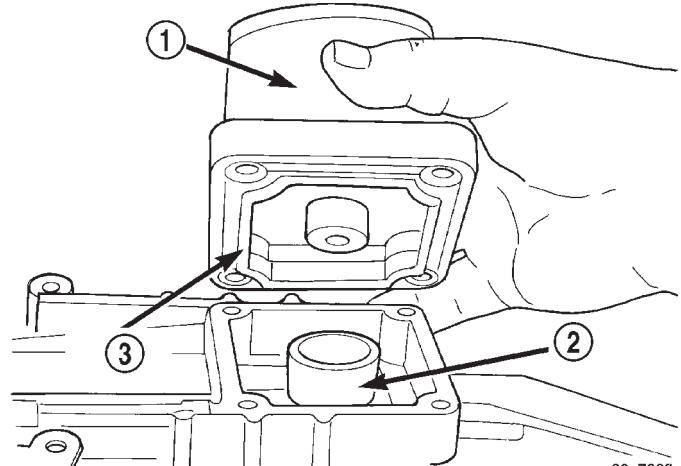


80c070f8

Fig. 9 Backup Light Switch Location

- 1 – BACKUP LAMP SWITCH

- (5) If necessary, remove shift tower bolts and remove tower and lever assembly (Fig. 10).

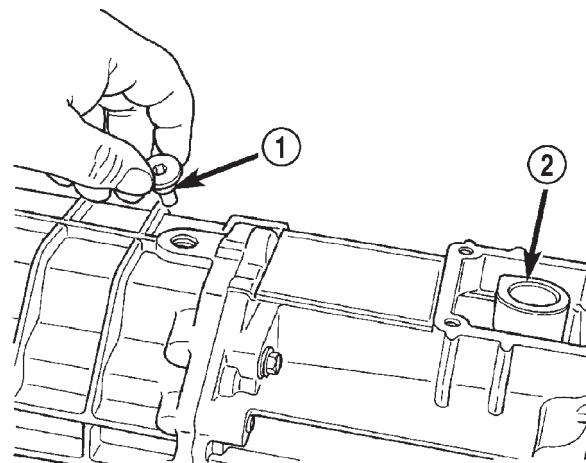


80a726fb

Fig. 10 Shift Tower Removal

- 1 – SHIFT TOWER AND LEVER ASSEMBLY
2 – SHIFT SOCKET
3 – SEAL

- (6) Remove shift shaft lock bolt (Fig. 11). Bolt is located at top of front housing just forward of shift tower. Bolt is a shoulder bolt that secures the shift shaft bushing and lever.



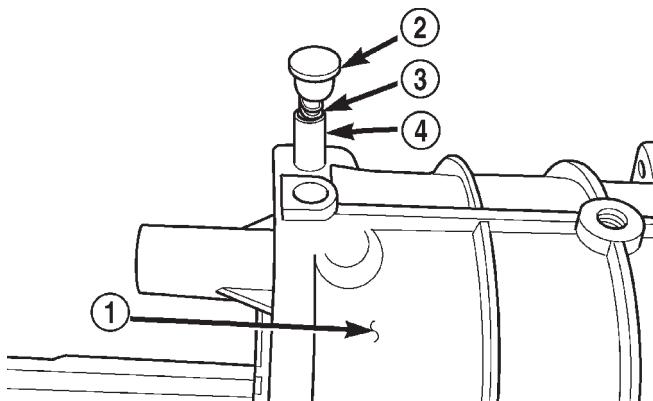
80c070f9

Fig. 11 Shift Shaft Lock Bolt Removal

- 1 – SHIFT SHAFT LOCK BOLT
2 – SHAFT SOCKET

- (7) Use Remover 8117 and suitable slide hammer to remove shift shaft detent plug.

(8) Remove shift shaft detent plunger and spring (Fig. 12). Use pencil magnet to remove spring then plunger, if necessary.

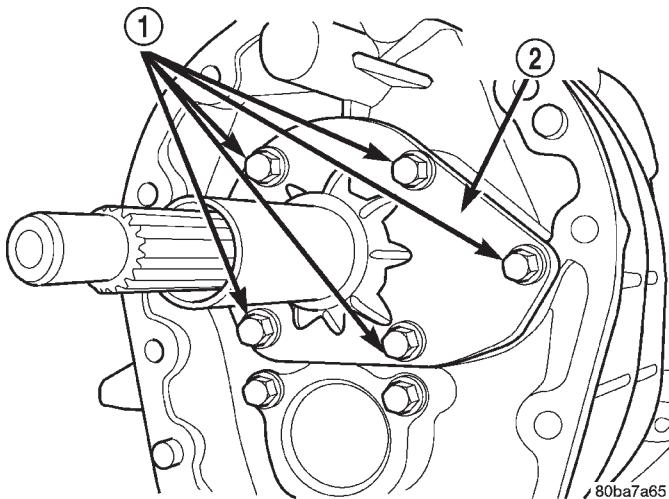


80ba7a62

Fig. 12 Detent Plunger And Spring Removal

- 1 – FRONT HOUSING
- 2 – PLUG
- 3 – SPRING
- 4 – PLUNGER

(9) Remove bolts attaching input shaft bearing retainer to front housing (Fig. 13).



80ba7a65

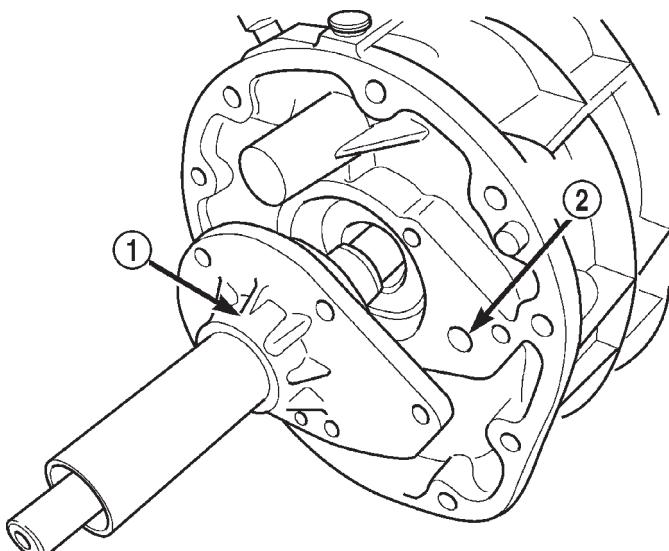
Fig. 13 Input Shaft Bearing Retainer Bolt Removal

- 1 – BOLTS (5)
- 2 – BEARING RETAINER

(10) Remove input shaft bearing retainer. Use pry tool to carefully lift retainer and

(11) Remove bearing retainer from input shaft (Fig. 14).

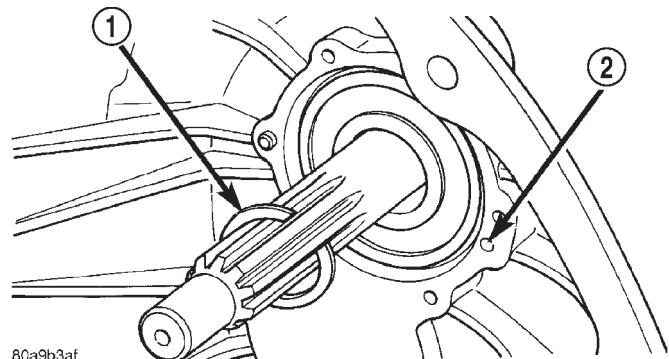
(12) Remove snap ring that secures input shaft in front bearing (Fig. 15).



80ba7a66

Fig. 14 Input Shaft Bearing Retainer Removal

- 1 – BEARING RETAINER
- 2 – OIL FEED



80ca9b3af

Fig. 15 Input Shaft Snap Ring Removal (Typical)

- 1 – INPUT SHAFT SNAP RING
- 2 – OIL FEED

(13) Remove bolts that attach front housing to rear housing (Fig. 16). Three bolts at extreme rear of housing are actually for the output shaft bearing retainer. It is not necessary to remove all three bolts at this time. Leave at least one bolt in place until geartrain is ready to be removed from case.

(14) Separate front housing from rear housing (Fig. 17). Use plastic mallet to tap front housing off alignment dowels.

(15) Remove and inspect input shaft bearing. Inspect countershaft front bearing race (Fig. 18).

(16) Note position of input shaft, shift shaft and forks, and geartrain components in housing (Fig. 19).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

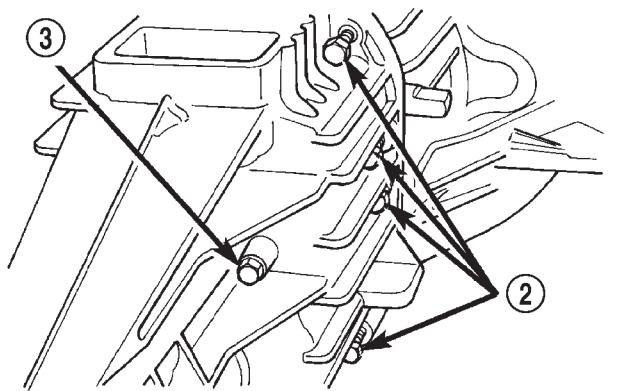
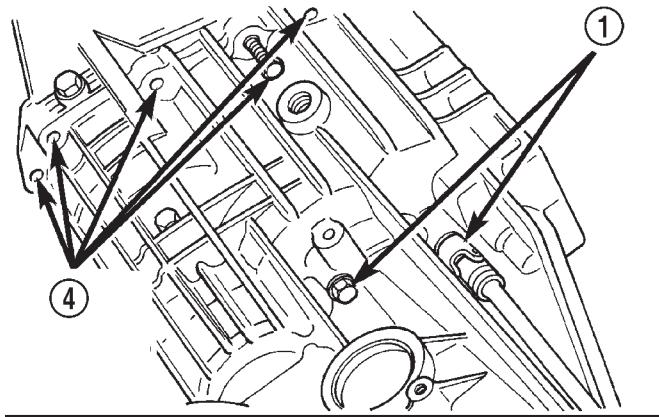


Fig. 16 Housing And Bearing Retainer Bolt Locations

- 1 – RETAINER BOLTS
- 2 – HOUSING BOLTS
- 3 – RETAINER BOLT
- 4 – HOUSING BOLT LOCATIONS

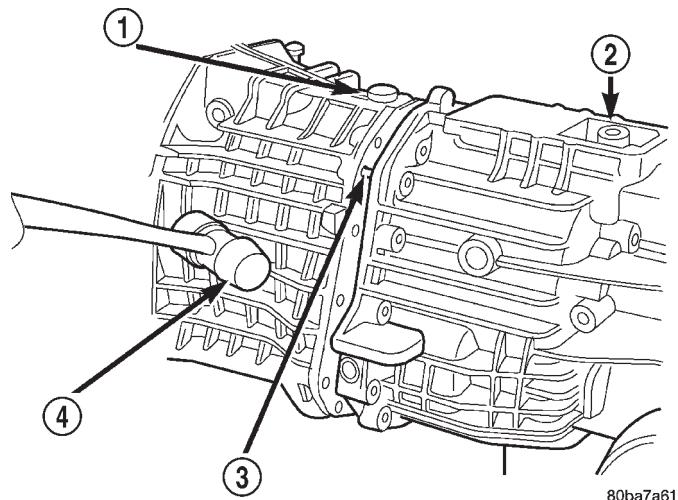
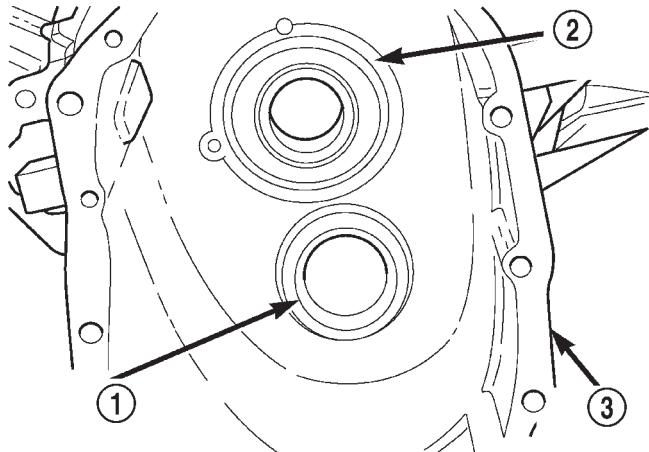


Fig. 17 Front Housing Removal

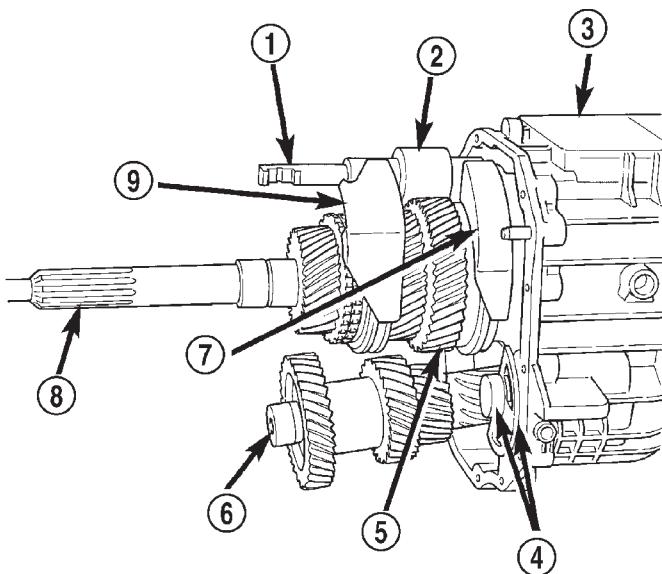
- 1 – FRONT HOUSING
- 2 – REAR HOUSING
- 3 – DOWELS (2)
- 4 – PLASTIC MALLETS



80ba7a63

Fig. 18 Input Shaft Bearing and Countershaft Front Bearing Race Location

- 1 – COUNTERSHAFT FRONT BEARING RACE
- 2 – INPUT SHAFT BEARING
- 3 – FRONT HOUSING



80a9b3b2

Fig. 19 Geartrain And Shift Component Identification

- 1 – SHIFT SHAFT
- 2 – BUSHING
- 3 – REAR HOUSING
- 4 – REVERSE IDLER AND SUPPORT
- 5 – OUTPUT SHAFT AND GEARS
- 6 – COUNTERSHAFT
- 7 – 1-2 FORK
- 8 – INPUT SHAFT
- 9 – 3-4 FORK

SHIFT SHAFT, SHIFT FORKS AND REVERSE IDLER SEGMENT

(1) Using a hammer and suitable punch, drive out roll pin that secures shift bushing and lever to shift shaft (Fig. 20).

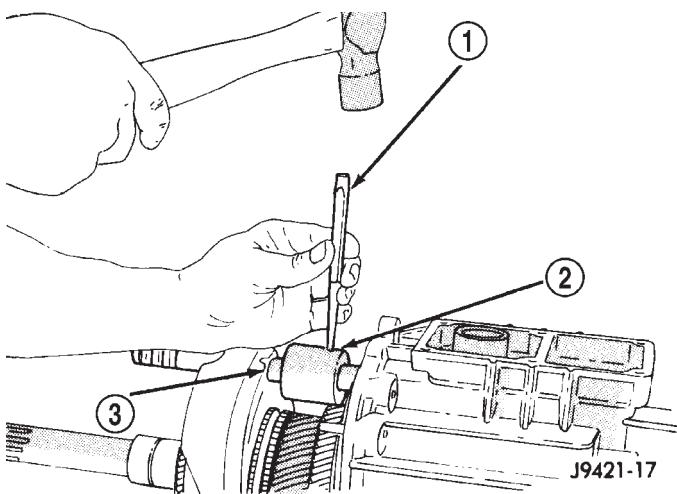


Fig. 20 Removing Shift Shaft Lever And Bushing Roll Pin

- 1 – PIN PUNCH
- 2 – BUSHING AND LEVER
- 3 – SHIFT SHAFT

(2) Position shift socket off to the side so that roll pin removal does not interfere with gears.

(3) Using a hammer and suitable punch, drive out shift socket roll pin to release shift socket from shaft. Roll pin will fall to bottom of rear housing and is easily retrieved.

NOTE: Be sure to use the proper size punch to prevent damage to the shift shaft.

(4) Pull shift shaft straight out of rear housing, shift socket, fifth-reverse fork, and 1-2 fork (Fig. 21).

(5) Remove shift socket from rear housing (Fig. 22).

(6) Remove lever and bushing (Fig. 23).

(7) Remove 3-4 fork. Rotate 3-4 fork around synchro sleeve until fork clears shift arms on 1-2 and fifth-reverse forks. Then remove 3-4 fork (Fig. 24).

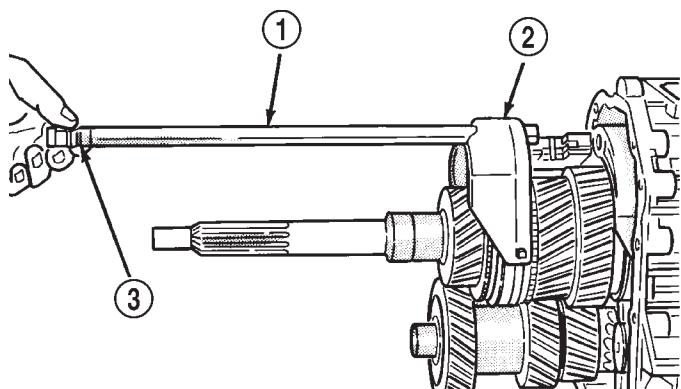
(8) Remove the reverse idler shaft support bolt (front bolt) (Fig. 25).

(9) Loosen rear reverse idler shaft bolt (rear bolt) (Fig. 25).

(10) Remove reverse idler shaft support segment by sliding it straight out of housing.

(11) Remove reverse idler shaft bolt (rear bolt).

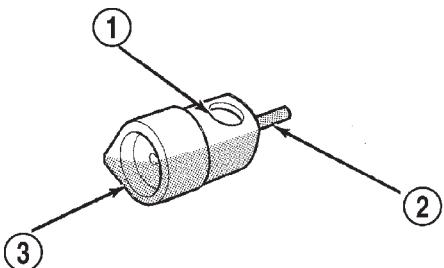
(12) Remove reverse idler shaft, idler gear, bearing, and thrust washer (Fig. 26).



J9421-42

Fig. 21 Shift Shaft Removal

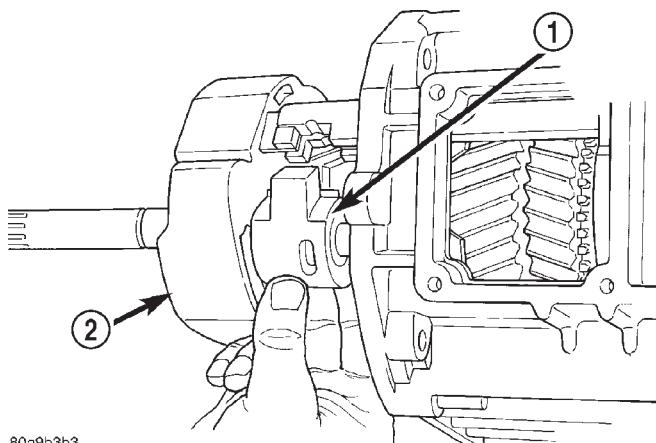
- 1 – SHIFT SHAFT
- 2 – 3-4 FORK
- 3 – SHAFT DETENT NOTCHES



J9521-151

Fig. 22 Shift Socket And Roll Pin

- 1 – SHAFT BORE
- 2 – ROLL PIN
- 3 – SHIFT SOCKET

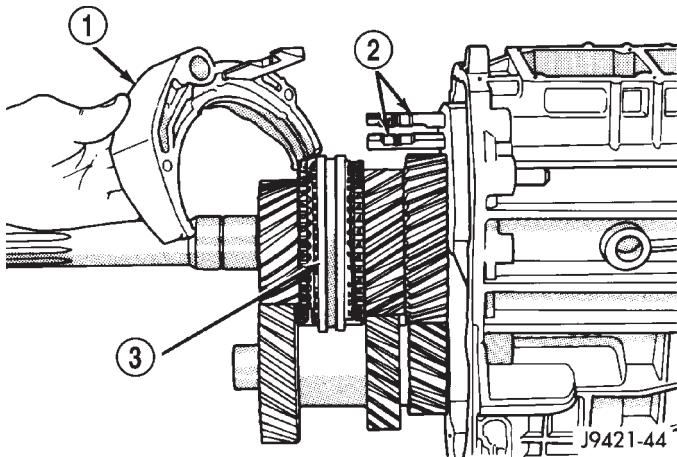


80a9b3b3

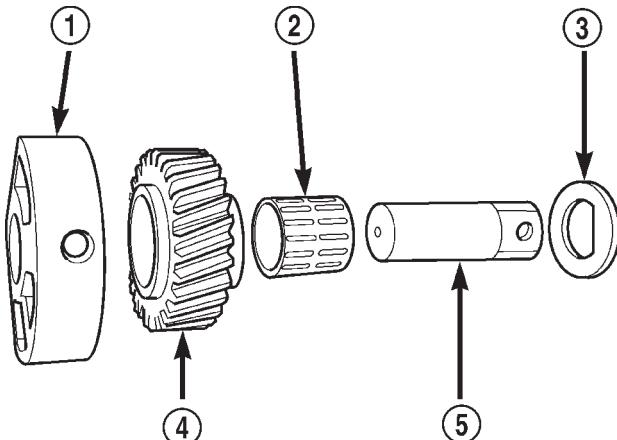
Fig. 23 Removing Shift Shaft Lever And Bushing

- 1 – SHAFT LEVER AND BUSHING
- 2 – 3-4 FORK

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 24 Removing 3-4 Shift Fork**

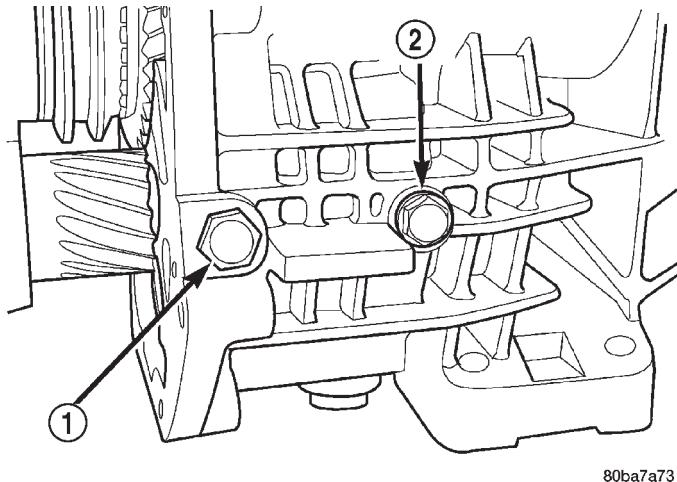
- 1 – 3-4 FORK
2 – 1-2 AND 5TH-REVERSE FORK ARMS
3 – 3-4 SYNCHRO SLEEVE



80ba7a67

Fig. 26 Reverse Idler Assembly

- 1 – SUPPORT
2 – BEARING
3 – WASHER
4 – GEAR
5 – SHAFT

**Fig. 25 Reverse Idler Shaft/Support Bolts**

- 1 – SUPPORT BOLT
2 – SHAFT BOLT

GEARTRAIN

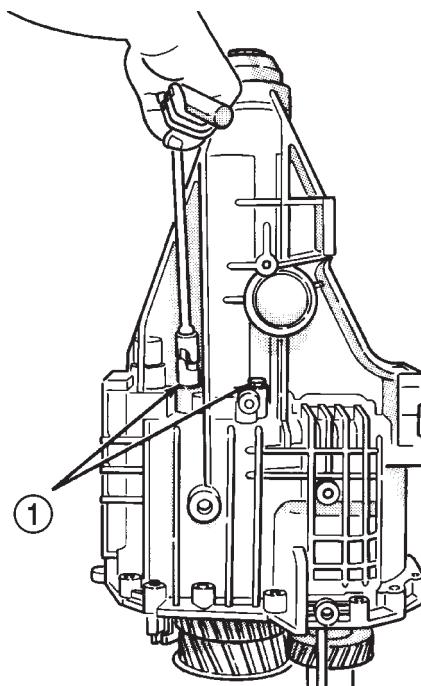
(1) Remove three bolts that attach output shaft bearing retainer to rear case (Fig. 27). Bolts are rear of shift tower opening.

(2) Grab hold of mainshaft and countershaft and remove geartrain from rear housing (Fig. 28).

(3) Examine condition of output shaft rear bearing bore and idler shaft notch in rear housing. Replace housing if any of these components are damaged. Inspect countershaft rear bearing race and replace if necessary.

PRELIMINARY GEARTRAIN

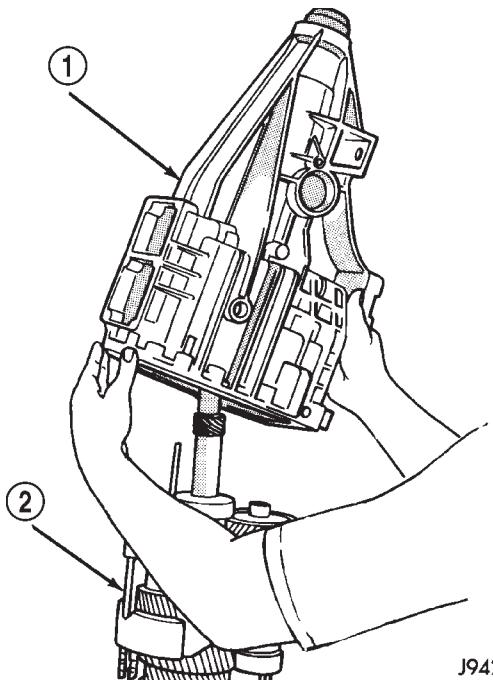
(1) Remove 1-2 and fifth-reverse forks from synchro sleeves.
(2) Separate countershaft from mainshaft.

**Fig. 27 Removing/Installing Output Shaft Bearing Retainer Bolts**

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT BEARING RETAINER BOLTS (THIRD BOLT IS AT OPPOSITE SIDE OF CASE)

(3) Separate input shaft from output shaft.

(4) Inspect input/output shaft pilot bearing, input shaft pocket bore, and 4th gear synchro ring. Replace if necessary.



J9421-51

Fig. 28 Removing Geartrain from Rear Housing

- 1 – REAR HOUSING
2 – SHIFT FORKS AND GEARTRAIN

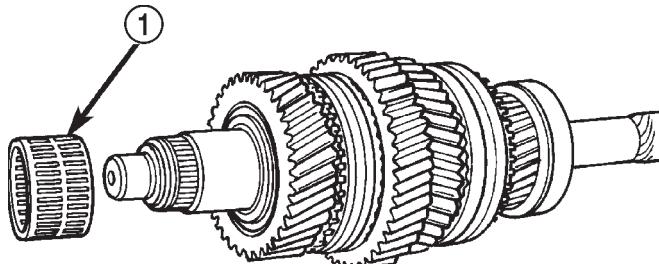
COUNTERSHAFT

- (1) Remove countershaft front and rear bearing with Puller 8356.
- (2) Remove rear bearing race (in rear housing) with Bearing Race Remover L-4454. Install new race with Race Driver C-4656 and Driver Handle C-4171.
- (3) Remove bearing shim cap from front housing (below input shaft bearing retainer). Remove shim. Drive race through and out of housing with Race Driver C-4656 and Driver Handle C-4171. Install new race and drive into housing from outside. **Do not drive all the way into position. Tightening the shim cap will install the race to the proper position.** Install shim and shim cap and torque the shim cap bolts to 28.5 N·m (21 ft. lbs.).

OUTPUT SHAFT

NOTE: The synchronizer hubs and sleeves are different and must not be intermixed. It is recommended that each synchronizer unit be removed as an assembly to avoid intermixing parts. It is also recommended that each synchro hub and sleeve be marked with a scribe or paint for correct assembly reference.

- (1) Remove snap ring that secures 3-4 synchro hub on output shaft.
- (2) Remove 3-4 synchro assembly, third gear synchro ring, and third gear with shop press and Remover Tool 1130. Position Tool 1130 between second and third gears.
- (3) Remove third gear needle bearing (Fig. 29).

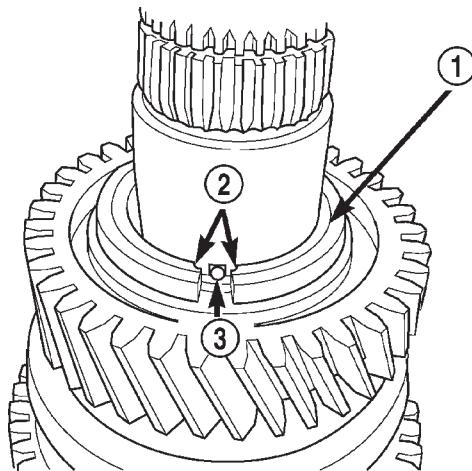


80a9b3b7

Fig. 29 Third Gear Needle Bearing Removal

- 1 – THIRD GEAR NEEDLE BEARING

- (4) Remove retaining ring that secures two-piece thrust washer on shaft.
- (5) Remove two-piece thrust washer (Fig. 30). Note position of washer locating lugs in shaft notches for installation reference.



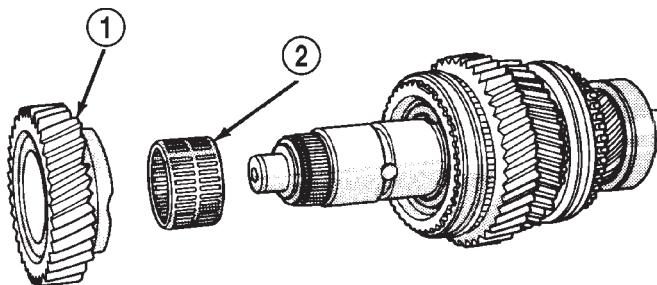
80ba7a64

Fig. 30 Two-Piece Thrust Washer Removal

- 1 – WASHER (2 HALVES)
2 – PIN RELIEF
3 – PIN

- (6) Remove second gear and needle bearing (Fig. 31).
- (7) Remove 2nd-3rd gear thrust washer locating pin and store in a place where it can be found easily upon re-assembly.

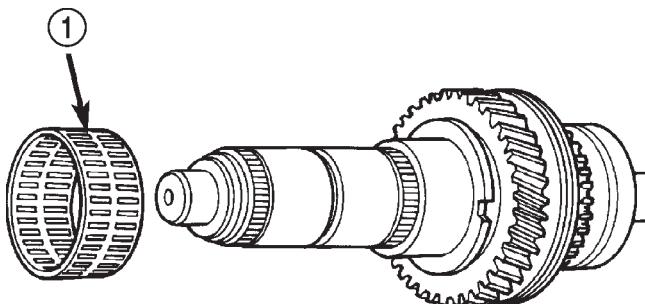
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9421-25

Fig. 31 Second Gear And Needle Bearing Removal

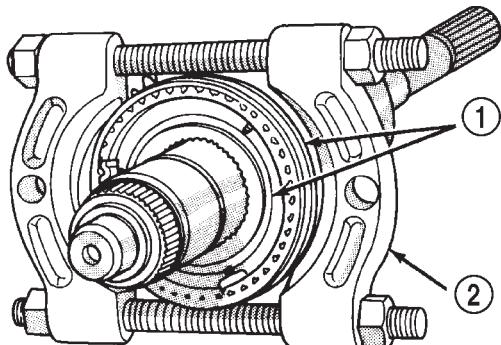
- 1 – SECOND GEAR
2 – SECOND GEAR NEEDLE BEARING



80a9b3b9

Fig. 33 First Gear Needle Bearing Removal

- 1 – FIRST GEAR NEEDLE BEARING

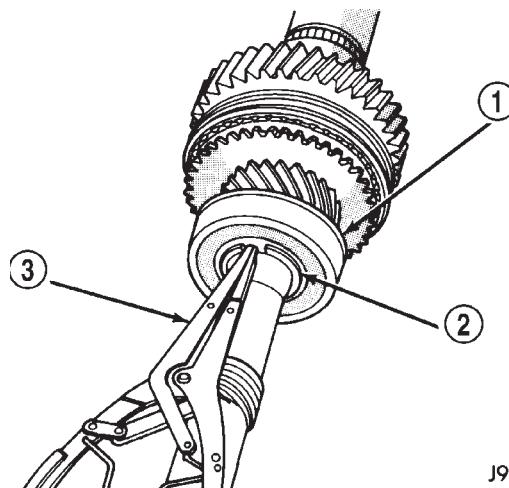


J9421-27

Fig. 32 Hub And Sleeve Removal—1-2 Synchro

- 1 – 1-2 SYNCHRO HUB AND SLEEVE
2 – SPECIAL TOOL
1130

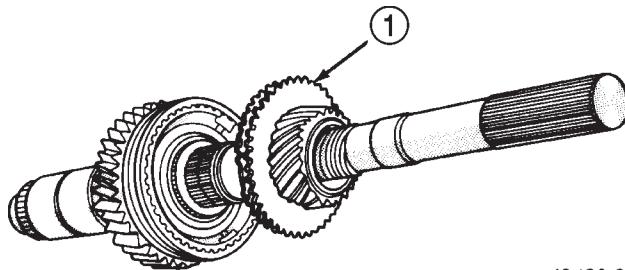
- (11) Remove first gear needle bearing (Fig. 33).
 (12) Remove output shaft bearing snap ring (Fig. 34).
 (13) Remove output shaft bearing from shaft with shop press and remover tool 1130. Position Tool 1130 between bearing and 5th gear.
 (14) Remove fifth gear (Fig. 35).



J9421-29

Fig. 34 Output Shaft Bearing Snap Ring Removal

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT BEARING
2 – BEARING SNAP RING
3 – SNAP RING PLIERS

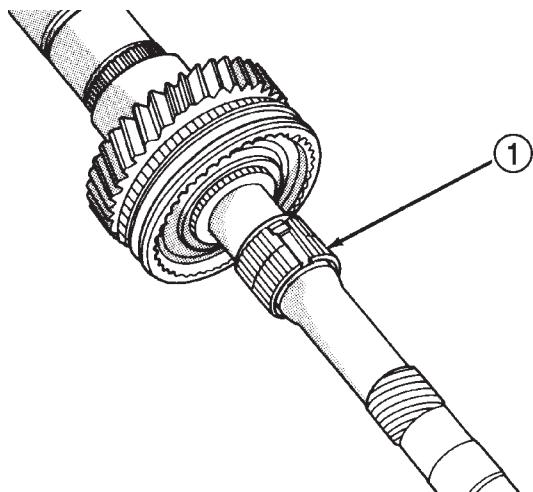


J9421-31

Fig. 35 Fifth Gear Removal

- 1 – FIFTH GEAR AND SYNCHRO RING

- (15) Remove fifth gear needle bearing. Spread bearing apart just enough to clear shoulder on output shaft (Fig. 36).

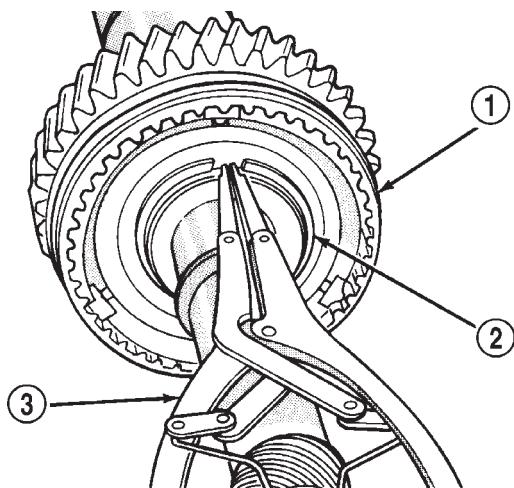


J9421-32

Fig. 36 Fifth Gear Needle Bearing Removal

1 – FIFTH GEAR NEEDLE BEARING (SPREAD BEARING TO CLEAR SHOULDER ON SHAFT)

- (16) Remove fifth-reverse synchro hub snap ring (Fig. 37).



J9421-33

Fig. 37 Fifth-Reverse Synchro Hub Snap Ring Removal

1 – FIFTH-REVERSE SYNCHRO HUB AND SLEEVE
2 – SYNCHRO HUB SNAP RING
3 – SNAP RING PLIERS

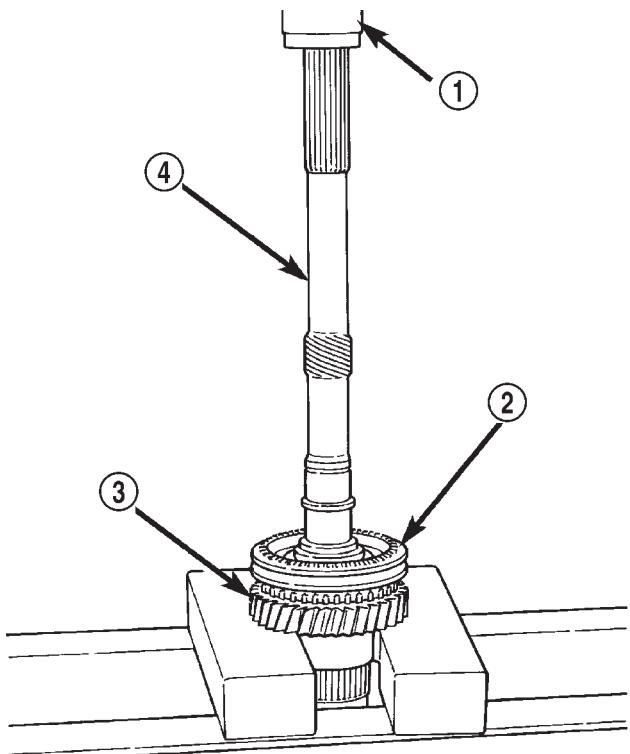
- (17) Remove fifth-reverse synchro hub and sleeve with shop press (Fig. 38).

- (18) Remove reverse gear and needle bearing (Fig. 39).

ASSEMBLY

COUNTERSHAFT

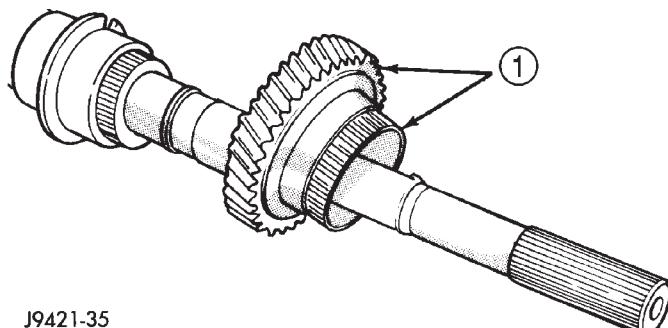
Examine condition of countershaft gears and bearings. Worn or broken gears require shaft replacement. Inspect bearings for excessive wear, damaged cage, or missing rollers. If replacing countershaft



80a9b3ba

Fig. 38 Fifth-Reverse Synchro Hub And Sleeve Removal

1 – PRESS
2 – FIFTH-REVERSE SYNCHRO HUB AND SLEEVE
3 – REVERSE GEAR
4 – OUTPUT SHAFT



J9421-35

Fig. 39 Reverse Gear And Needle Bearing Removal

1 – REVERSE GEAR AND NEEDLE BEARING

bearings, the bearing race (located in front and rear housing) must be replaced also.

SYNCHRONIZER

The easiest method of assembling each synchro is to install the springs, struts and detent balls one at a time as follows:

- Slide the sleeve part way onto the hub. Leave enough room to install the spring in the hub and the strut in the hub groove.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

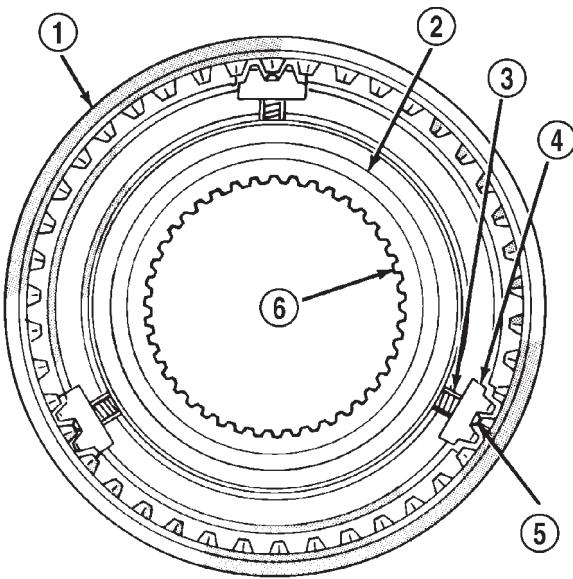
(2) Install the first spring in the hub. Then install a strut over the spring. Be sure the spring is seated in the spring bore in the strut.

(3) Slide the sleeve onto the hub just far enough to hold the first strut and spring in place.

(4) Place the detent ball in the top of the strut. Then carefully work the sleeve over the ball to hold it in place. A small flat blade screwdriver can be used to press the ball into place while moving the sleeve over it.

(5) Repeat the procedure for the remaining springs, struts and balls. Tape, or a rubber band can be used to temporarily secure each strut and ball as they are installed.

(6) Verify synchro assembly. Be sure the three springs, struts and detent balls are all in place (Fig. 40).



J9421-57

Fig. 40 Assembled View Of Synchro Components

- 1 – SLEEVE
- 2 – HUB SHOULDER
- 3 – SPRING (3)
- 4 – STRUT (3)
- 5 – DETENT BALL (3)
- 6 – HUB

OUTPUT SHAFT

NOTE: The synchronizer sleeves must be assembled with the grooves toward the first, third, and fifth gear. Additional sleeve identification is as follows:

- First and second: one groove on the outer diameter toward the first gear. The 1-2 synchro sleeve may not have the identification groove readily visible. If the groove is not present, the

smaller land on the side of synchro sleeve can be used for orientation. The small land goes toward first gear.

- Third and fourth: two grooves on the outer diameter toward the third gear.

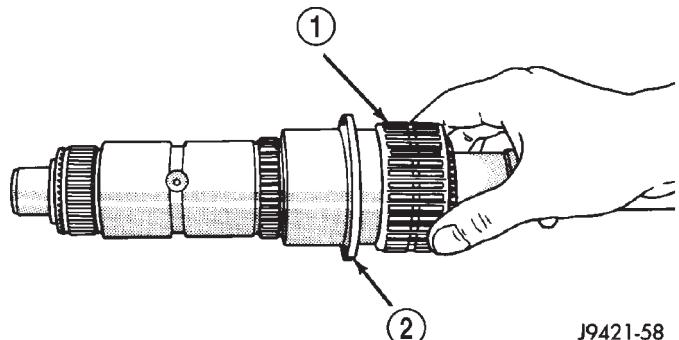
- Fifth and reverse: two grooves on the outer diameter toward the fifth gear.

(1) Lubricate shaft, gears and bearings with recommended lubricant during assembly. Petroleum jelly can be used to hold parts in place.

(2) Check bearing surfaces of output shaft for nicks or scratches. Smooth surfaces with 320/400 grit emery cloth if necessary. Apply oil to emery cloth and shaft surface before polishing.

(3) Inspect and replace any synchro ring that exhibits wear or damage. Completely immerse each synchro ring in lubricant before installation.

(4) Lubricate and install reverse gear needle bearing on shaft (Fig. 41). Slide bearing up against shoulder on output shaft.

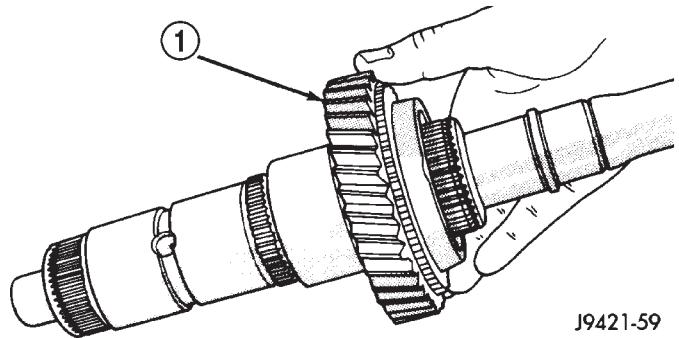


J9421-58

Fig. 41 Reverse Gear Bearing Installation

- 1 – REVERSE GEAR BEARING
- 2 – SHOULDER

(5) Install reverse gear over needle bearing (Fig. 42).



J9421-59

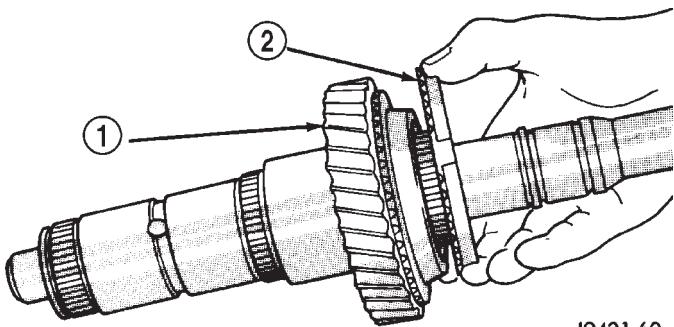
Fig. 42 Reverse Gear Installation

- 1 – REVERSE GEAR

(6) Install solid brass synchro ring on reverse gear (Fig. 43).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

NOTE: This synchro ring is different than all the rest. The angle on the friction face is 9° versus the 6.5° of all the other synchro rings. Check to be sure that the right one is used.



J9421-60

Fig. 43 Reverse Gear Synchro Ring Installation

- 1 – REVERSE GEAR
- 2 – SYNCHRO RING (SOLID BRASS)

(7) Assemble fifth-reverse synchro hub, sleeve, struts, springs and detent balls, if not previously done.

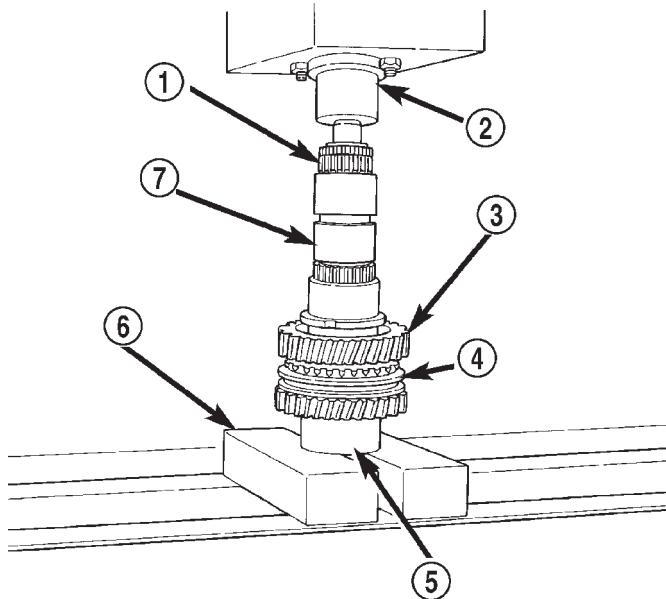
CAUTION: The fifth-reverse synchro hub and sleeve can be installed backwards if care is not exercised. One side of the sleeve has double grooves and offset teeth. This side is to be installed away from reverse gear (towards 5th).

(8) Start fifth-reverse synchro assembly on output shaft splines by hand. Then seat synchro onto shaft with shop press and Remover 6310-1 (Fig. 44).

NOTE: The synchro hub is designed such that the press should be necessary to install the synchro assembly onto the output shaft. There may be instances where the press is not necessary. As long as there is a snug fit between the hub and the shaft, the hub does not need to be replaced.

(9) Install new fifth-reverse hub snap ring (Fig. 45) as follows:

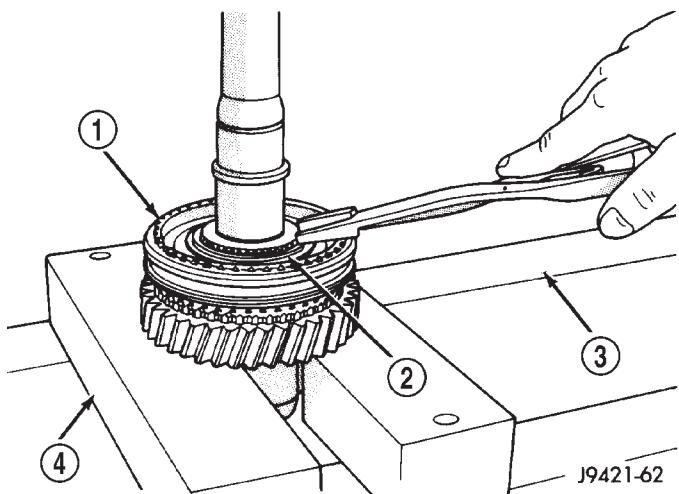
- (a) Install thickest snap ring that will fit in shaft groove.
- (b) Verify that snap ring is completely seated in groove before proceeding.



80a9b3bb

Fig. 44 Fifth-Reverse Synchro Assembly Installation

- 1 – SPACER
- 2 – PRESS RAM
- 3 – REVERSE GEAR
- 4 – FIFTH-REVERSE SYNCHRO ASSEMBLY
- 5 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310-1
- 6 – PRESS BLOCKS
- 7 – OUTPUT SHAFT



J9421-62

Fig. 45 Installing Fifth-Reverse Synchro Hub Snap Ring

- 1 – FIFTH-REVERSE SYNCHRO ASSEMBLY
- 2 – SNAP RING
- 3 – PRESS BED
- 4 – PRESS BLOCKS

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(10) Install fifth gear synchro ring in synchro hub and sleeve (Fig. 46).

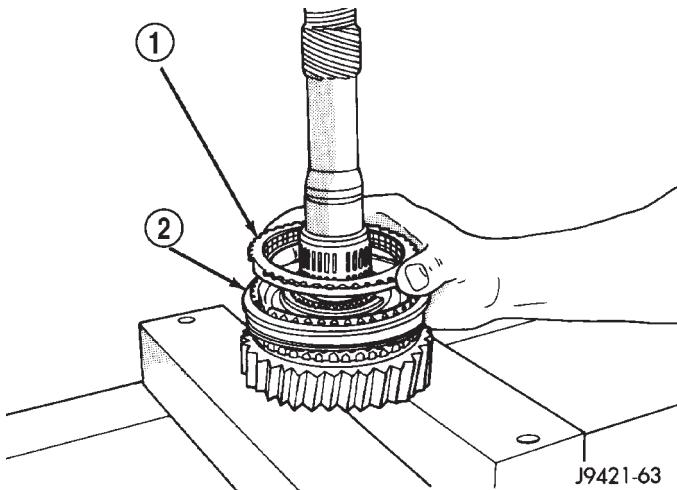


Fig. 46 Installing Fifth Gear Synchro Ring

- 1 – FIFTH-SPEED SYNCHRO RING
2 – FIFTH-REVERSE SYNCHRO ASSEMBLY

(11) Install fifth gear bearing. Spread bearing only enough to clear shoulder on output shaft (Fig. 47). Be sure bearing is properly seated after installation.

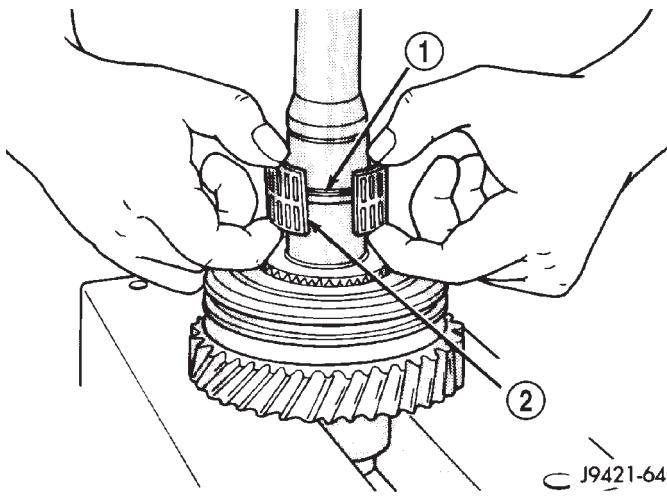


Fig. 47 Installing Fifth Gear Bearing

- 1 – SHAFT SHOULDER
2 – FIFTH GEAR BEARING

(12) Install fifth gear on shaft and onto bearing (Fig. 48).

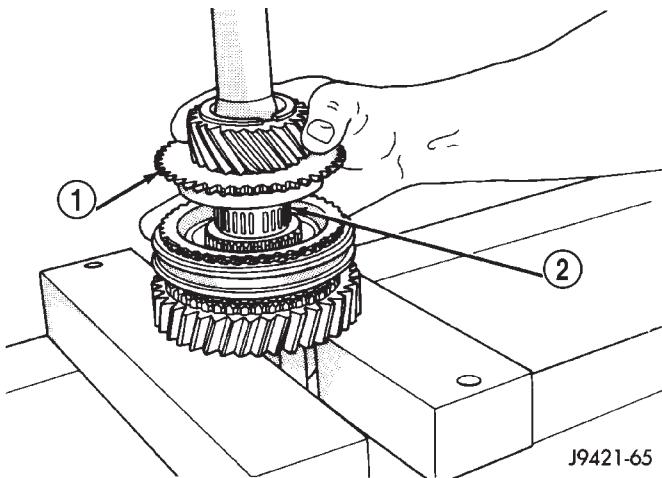


Fig. 48 Fifth Gear Installation

- 1 – FIFTH GEAR
2 – BEARING

(13) Install output shaft bearing.

(14) Install output shaft bearing snap ring (Fig. 49). Use heavy duty snap ring pliers and spread snap ring only enough to install it. Be sure snap ring is completely seated in shaft groove before proceeding.

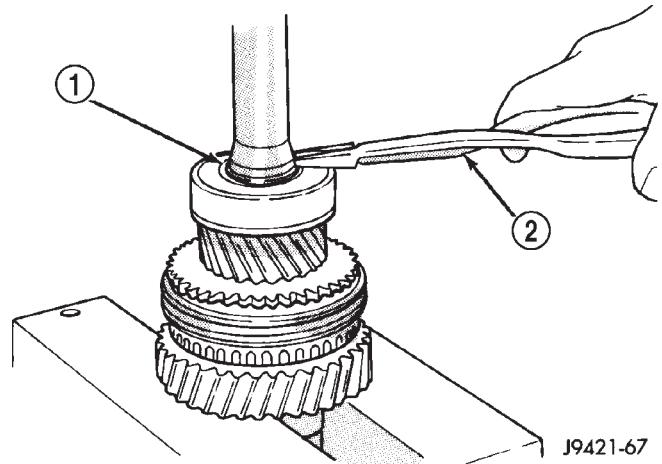


Fig. 49 Installing Output Shaft Bearing Snap Ring

- 1 – BEARING SNAP RING
2 – HEAVY DUTY SNAP RING PLIERS

(15) Invert output shaft and set the shaft in Remover 6310-1 so that fifth gear is seated on the tool (Fig. 50).

(16) Install first gear bearing on output shaft (Fig. 50). Be sure bearing is seated on shaft shoulder and is properly joined.

(17) Install the synchro cone onto first gear. Verify the locating tabs on the synchro cone are properly located to the recesses in first gear.

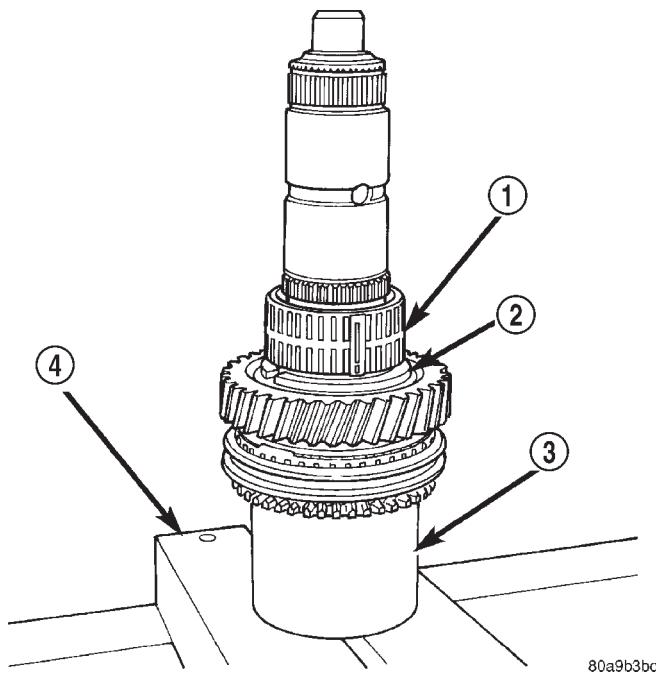


Fig. 50 First Gear Bearing Installation

- 1 – FIRST GEAR BEARING
- 2 – SHAFT SHOULDER
- 3 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310–1
- 4 – PRESS BLOCKS

(18) Install first gear on shaft and over bearing (Fig. 51). Make sure bearing synchro cone is facing up as shown.

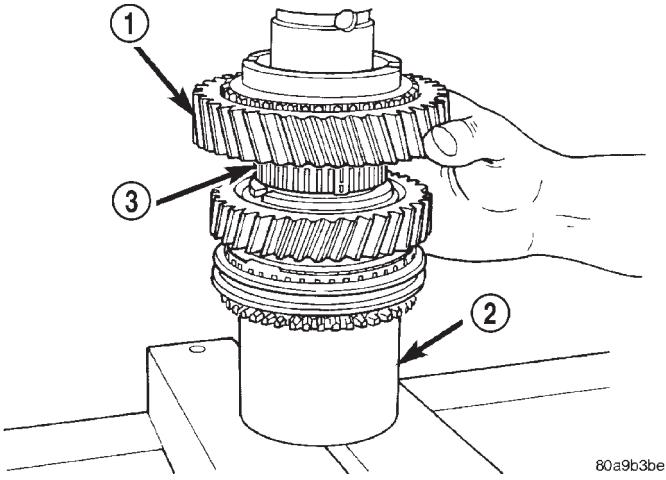


Fig. 51 First Gear Installation

- 1 – FIRST GEAR
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310–1
- 3 – BEARING

(19) Install first gear synchro ring (Fig. 52).
(20) Assemble 1-2 synchro hub sleeve, springs, struts and detent balls.

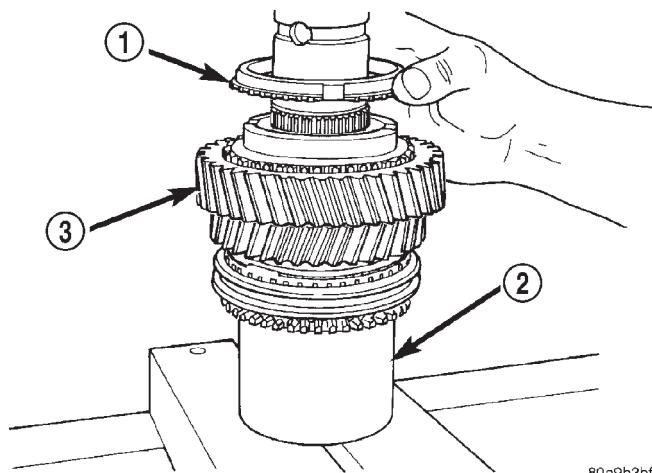


Fig. 52 First Gear Synchro Ring Installation

- 1 – FIRST GEAR SYNCHRO RING
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310–1
- 3 – FIRST GEAR

CAUTION: The 1-2 synchro hub and sleeve can be installed backwards if care is not exercised. One side of the sleeve has a groove and offset teeth. This side is to be installed towards 1st gear (away from 2nd gear).

(21) Start 1-2 synchro assembly on shaft by hand (Fig. 53). Be sure synchro sleeve is properly positioned.

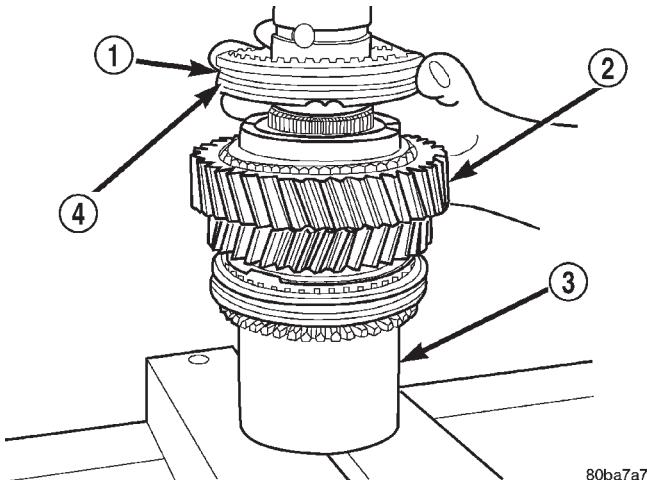


Fig. 53 Starting 1-2 Synchro On Shaft

- 1 – 1-2 SYNCHRO ASSEMBLY
- 2 – 1ST GEAR
- 3 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310–1
- 4 – BE SURE THIS IS SINGLE GROOVE SIDE OF SYNCHRO SLEEVE

(22) Press 1-2 synchro onto output shaft using suitable size pipe tool and shop press (Fig. 54).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

NOTE: The synchro hub is designed such that the press should be necessary to install the synchro assembly onto the output shaft. There may be instances where the press is not necessary. As long as there is a snug fit between the hub and the shaft, the hub does not need to be replaced.

CAUTION: Take time to align the synchro ring and sleeve as hub the is being pressed onto the shaft. The synchro ring can be cracked if it becomes misaligned.

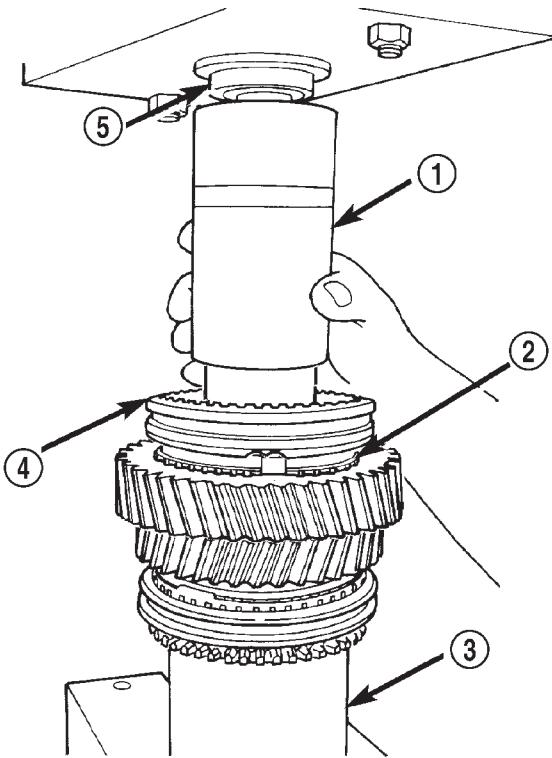


Fig. 54 Pressing 1-2 Synchro Assembly Onto Output Shaft

- 1 – SUITABLE SIZE PIPE TOOL
- 2 – SYNCHRO RING
- 3 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310-1
- 4 – 1-2 SYNCHRO ASSEMBLY
- 5 – PRESS RAM

(23) Install new 1-2 synchro hub snap ring (Fig. 55) as follows:

- Install thickest snap ring that will fit in shaft groove.
- Verify that snap ring is completely seated in groove before proceeding.

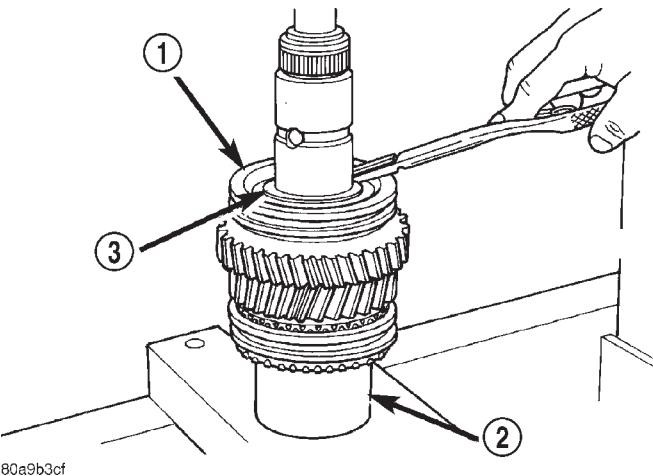


Fig. 55 Installing 1-2 Synchro Hub Snap Ring

- 1 – 1-2 SYNCHRO
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310-1
- 3 – SYNCHRO SNAP RING

(24) Install second gear synchro ring in 1-2 synchro hub and sleeve (Fig. 56). Be sure synchro ring is properly seated in sleeve.

(25) Install synchro cone into the synchro ring.

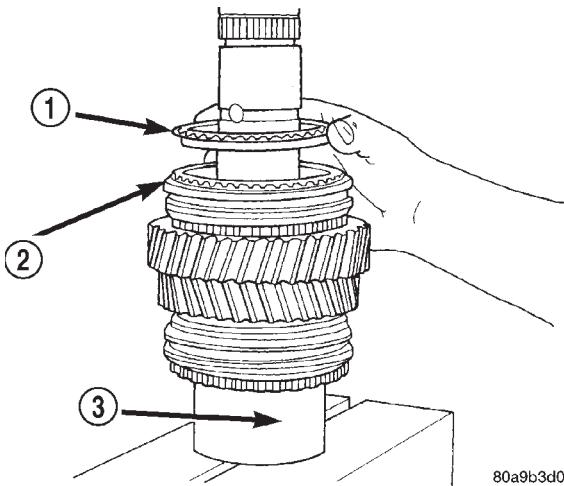
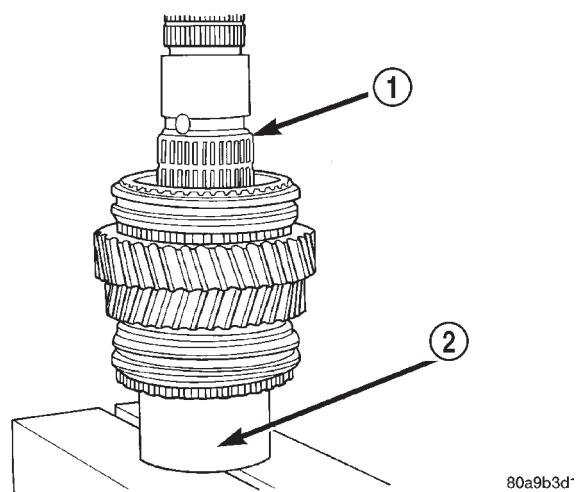


Fig. 56 Second Gear Synchro Ring Installation

- 1 – SECOND GEAR SYNCHRO RING
- 2 – 1-2 SYNCHRO
- 3 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310-1

(26) Install second gear needle bearing on shaft (Fig. 57).

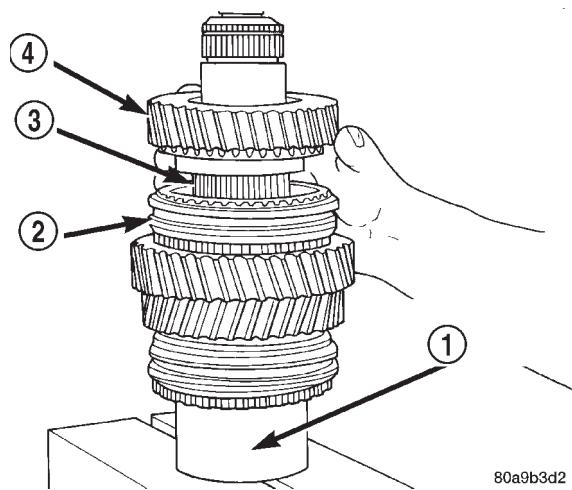


80a9b3d*

Fig. 57 Second Gear Bearing Installation

- 1 – SECOND GEAR BEARING
2 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310-1

(27) Install second gear onto shaft and bearing (Fig. 58). Make sure that second gear is fully seated on synchro components.



80a9b3d2

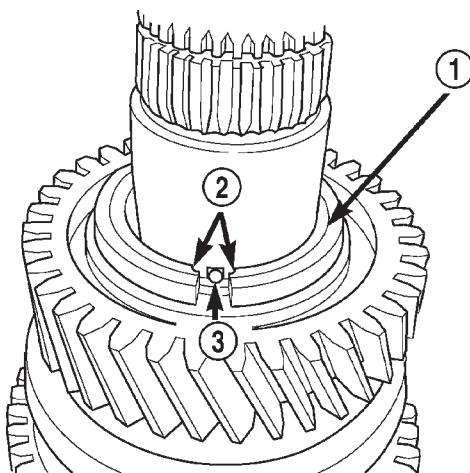
Fig. 58 Second Gear Installation

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310-1
2 – 1-2 SYNCHRO ASSEMBLY
3 – BEARING
4 – SECOND GEAR

(28) Install thrust washer pin to shaft. Install two-piece thrust washer (Fig. 59). Be sure washer halves are seated in shaft groove and that pin reliefs are positioned at washer locating pin.

(29) Seat retaining ring around two-piece thrust washer.

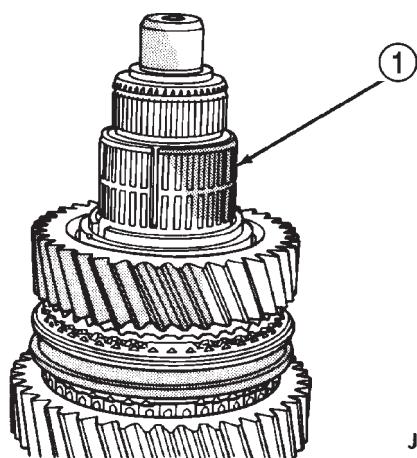
(30) Install third gear needle bearing on shaft (Fig. 60).



80ba7a64

Fig. 59 Installing Two-Piece Thrust Washer

- 1 – WASHER (2 HALVES)
2 – PIN RELIEF
3 – PIN



J9421-80

Fig. 60 Third Gear Bearing Installation

- 1 – THIRD GEAR BEARING

(31) Install third gear on shaft and bearing (Fig. 61).

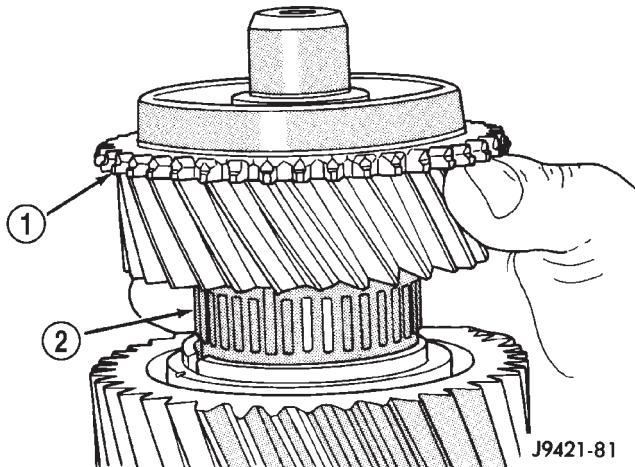
(32) Install third speed synchro ring on third gear (Fig. 62).

(33) Assemble 3-4 synchro hub, sleeve, springs, struts and detent balls.

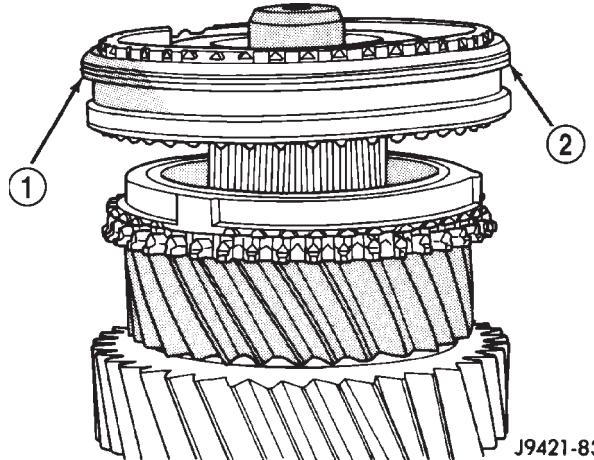
CAUTION: The 3-4 synchro hub and sleeve can be installed backwards if care is not exercised. One side of the sleeve has two grooves and offset teeth. This side is to be installed towards 3rd gear (away from 4th gear).

(34) Start 3-4 synchro hub on output shaft splines by hand (Fig. 63).

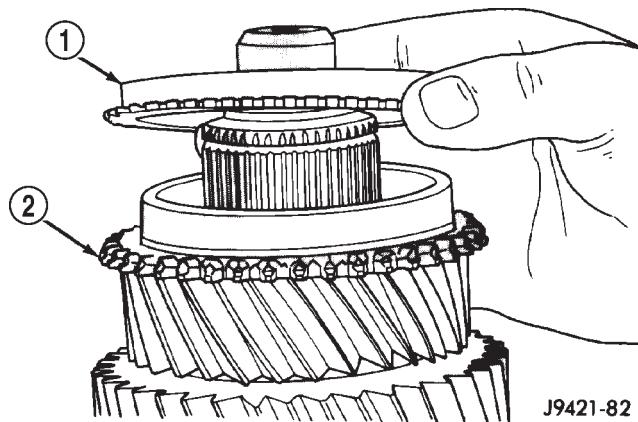
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 61 Installing Third Gear**

- 1 – THIRD GEAR
2 – BEARING

**Fig. 63 Starting 3-4 Synchro Hub On Output Shaft**

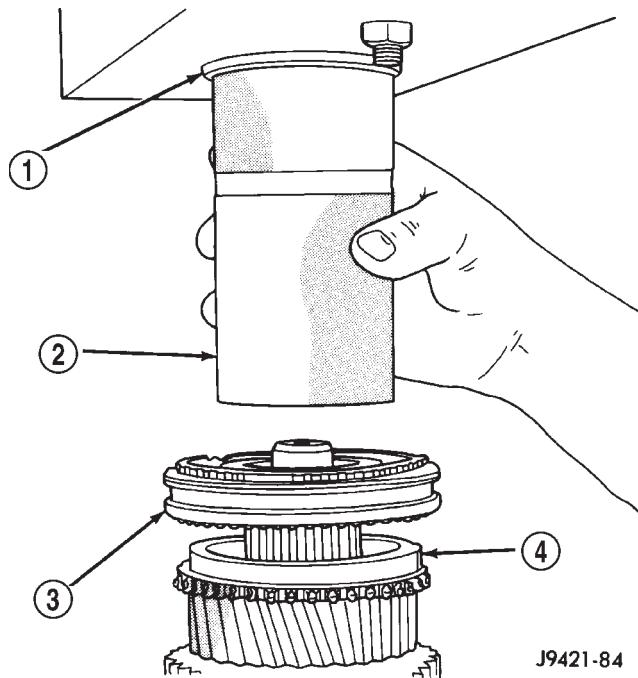
- 1 – GROOVED SIDE OF SLEEVE (TO FRONT)
2 – 3-4 SYNCHRO ASSEMBLY

**Fig. 62 Third Speed Synchro Ring Installation**

- 1 – THIRD SPEED SYNCHRO RING
2 – THIRD GEAR

(35) Press 3-4 synchro assembly onto output shaft with shop press and suitable size pipe tool (Fig. 64). Make sure that the tool presses on hub as close to output shaft as possible but does not contact the shaft splines.

NOTE: The synchro hub is designed such that the press should be necessary to install the synchro assembly onto the output shaft. There may be instances where the press is not necessary. As long as there is a snug fit between the hub and the shaft, the hub does not need to be replaced.

**Fig. 64 Pressing 3-4 Synchro Assembly On Output Shaft**

- 1 – PRESS RAM
2 – PIPE TOOL
3 – 3-4 SYNCHRO
4 – THIRD SPEED SYNCHRO RING

(36) Install 3-4 synchro hub snap ring (Fig. 65) as follows:

- Install thickest snap ring that will fit in shaft groove. Use heavy duty snap ring pliers to install new ring.
- Verify that snap ring is completely seated in groove before proceeding.

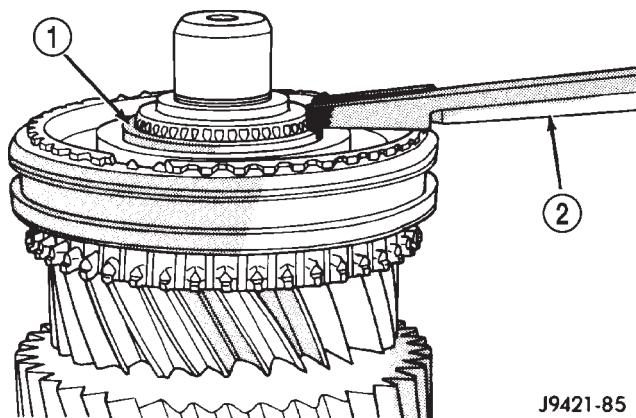


Fig. 65 Installing 3-4 Synchro Hub Snap Ring

1 – 3-4 SYNCHRO HUB SNAP RING
2 – HEAVY DUTY SNAP RING PLIERS

(37) Verify correct position of synchro sleeves before proceeding with assembly operations (Fig. 66). Grooved side of 3-4 sleeve should be facing rearward toward third gear. First gear side of 1-2 sleeve should be facing first gear. Tapered side of fifth-reverse sleeve with two grooves should be facing rearward toward fifth gear.

GEARTRAIN ASSEMBLY

- (1) Install input shaft into Support Stand 8355 (Fig. 67).
- (2) Install pilot bearing in input shaft (Fig. 67).

NOTE: There is a correct and an incorrect way to install the pilot bearing into the input shaft. The side of the pilot bearing with the small diameter goes toward the input shaft.

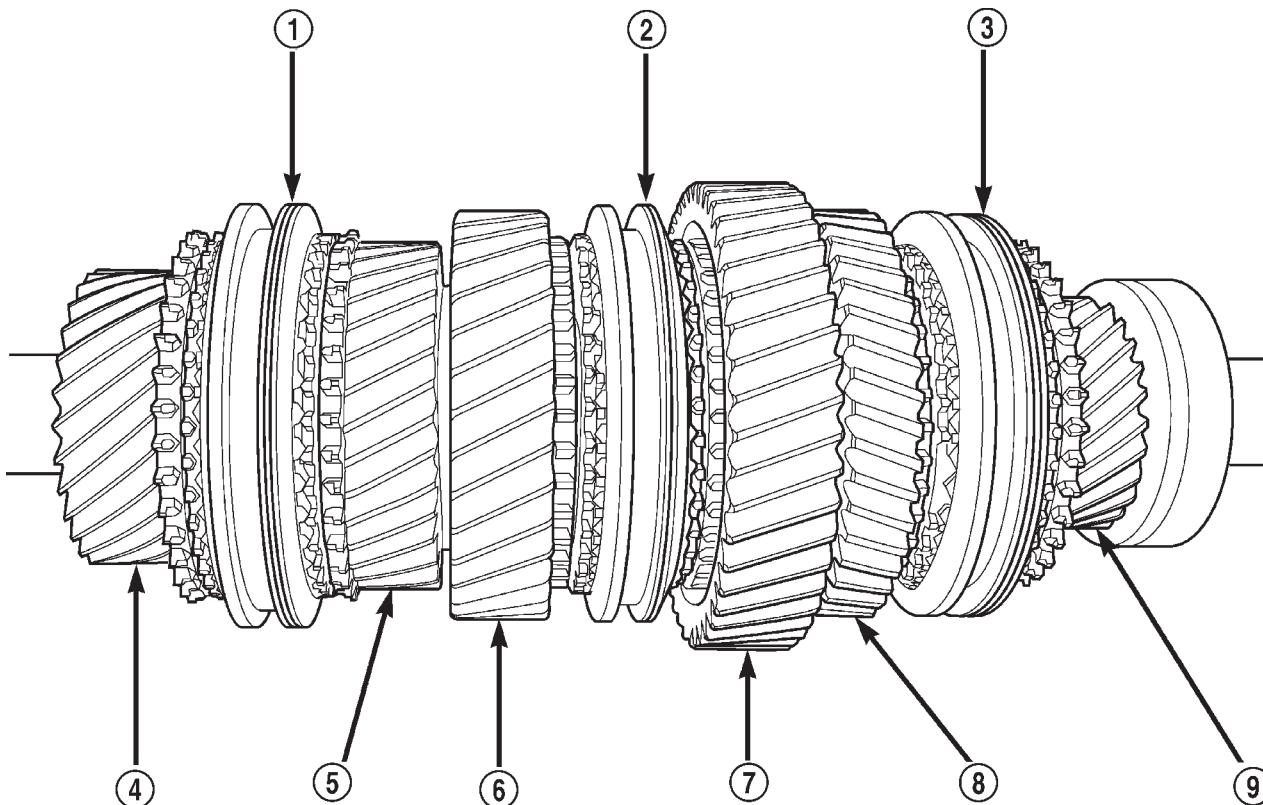
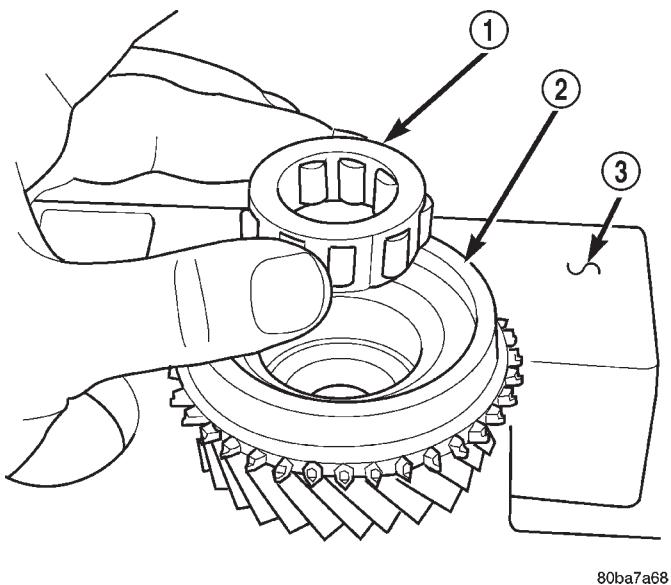


Fig. 66 Correct Synchro Sleeve Position

80b46ccb

- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1 – 2 GROOVES | 6 – 2ND GEAR |
| 2 – 1 GROOVE | 7 – 1ST GEAR |
| 3 – 2 GROOVES | 8 – REVERSE GEAR |
| 4 – 4TH GEAR | 9 – 5TH GEAR |
| 5 – 3RD GEAR | |

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

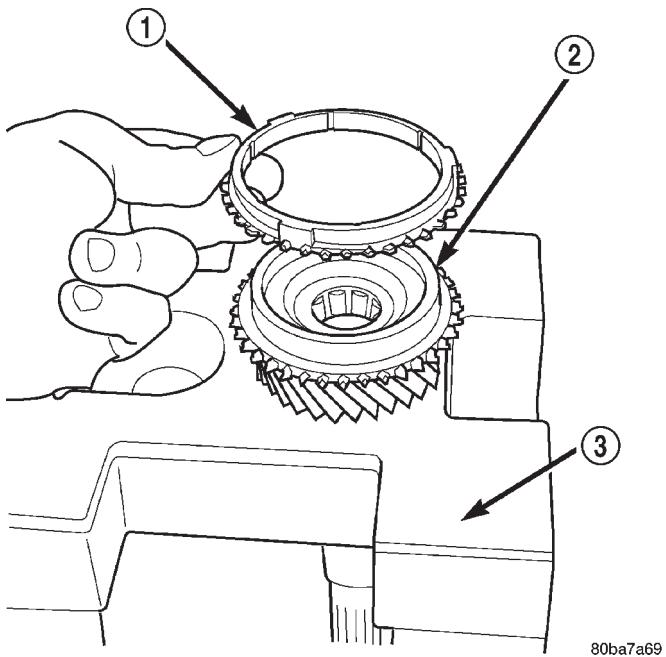


80ba7a68

Fig. 67 Input Shaft and Pilot Bearing

- 1 – PILOT BEARING
- 2 – INPUT SHAFT
- 3 – STAND 8355

(3) Install fourth gear synchro ring on input shaft (Fig. 68).

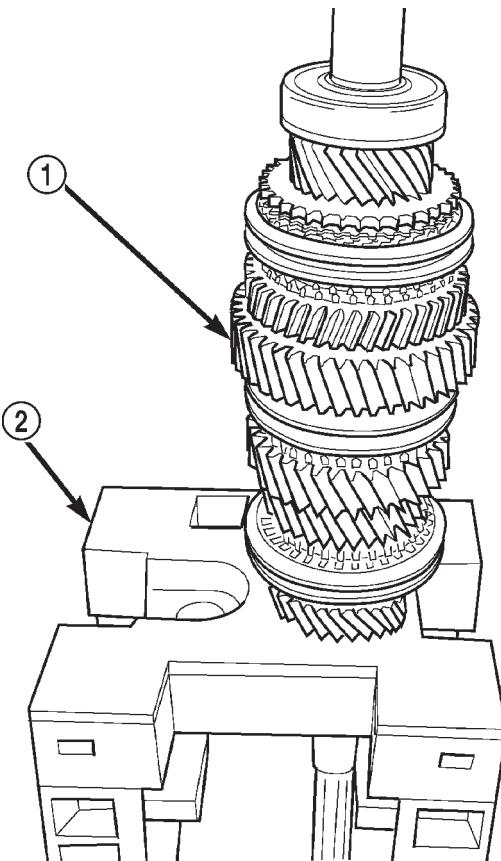


80ba7a69

Fig. 68 Installing Fourth Gear Synchro Ring On Input Shaft

- 1 – 4TH GEAR SYNCHRO RING
- 2 – INPUT SHAFT
- 3 – STAND 8355

(4) Install assembled output shaft and geartrain in input shaft (Fig. 69). Carefully rotate output shaft until the 3-4 synchro ring seats in synchro hub and sleeve.



80ba7a70

Fig. 69 Assembled Mainshaft on Support Stand 8355

- 1 – MAIN SHAFT
- 2 – SUPPORT STAND 8355

(5) Slide countershaft into fixture slot. Verify that countershaft and output shaft gears are fully meshed with the mainshaft gears before proceeding (Fig. 70).

(6) Thread one Pilot Stud 8120 in center or passenger side hole of output shaft bearing retainer. Then position retainer on fifth gear as shown.

(7) Assemble 1-2 and fifth reverse-shift forks (Fig. 71). Arm of fifth-reverse fork goes through slot in 1-2 fork.

(8) Install assembled shift forks in synchro sleeves (Fig. 72). Be sure forks are properly seated in sleeves.

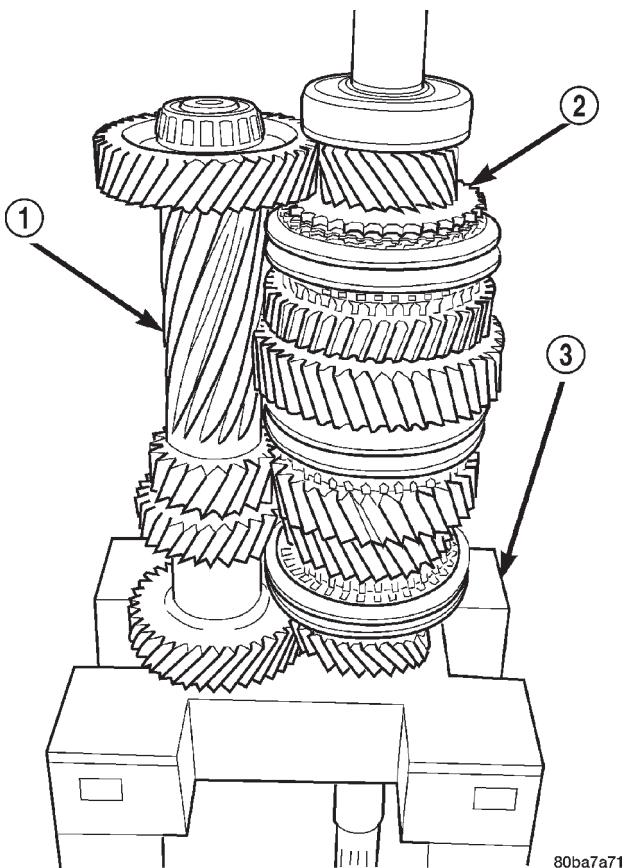


Fig. 70 Countershaft Installed On Support Stand 8355

- 1 – COUNTER SHAFT
- 2 – MAIN SHAFT
- 3 – SUPPORT STAND 8355

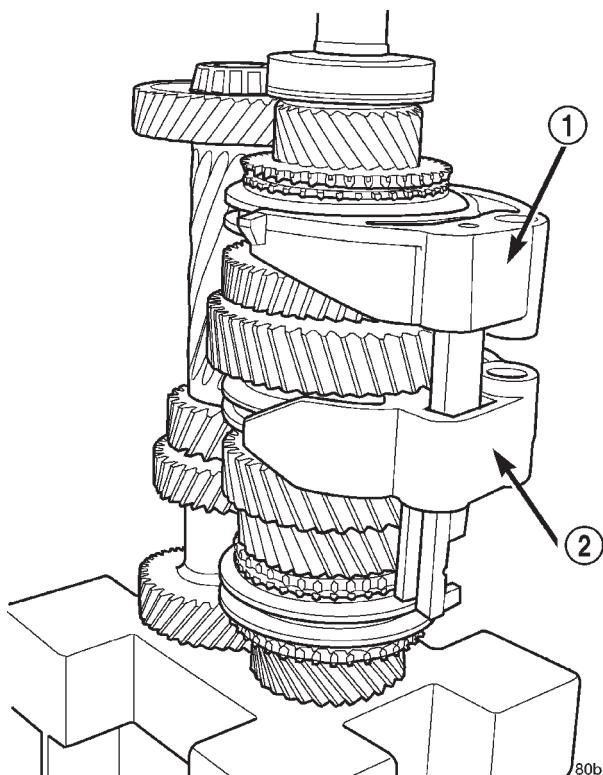


Fig. 72 Shift Forks Installed In Synchro Sleeves

- 1 – 5TH REVERSE SHIFT FORK
- 2 – 1-2 SHIFT FORK

80ba7a72

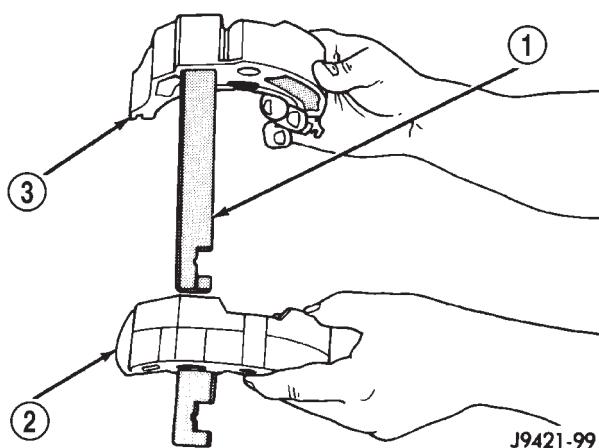


Fig. 71 Assembling 1-2 And Fifth-Reverse Shift Forks

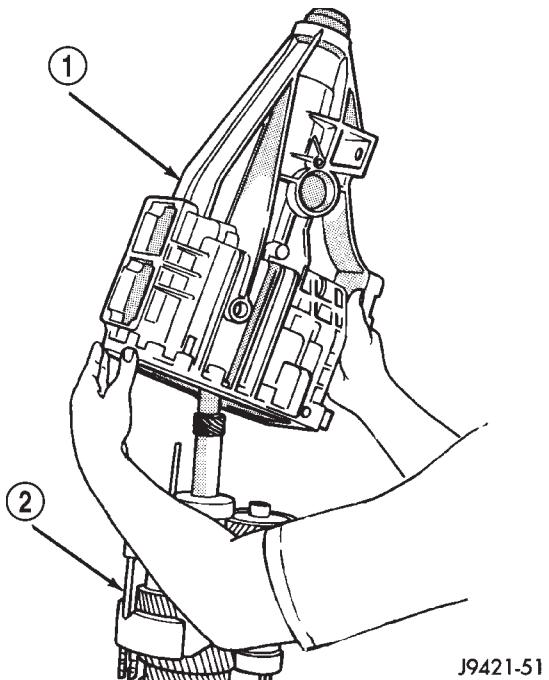
- 1 – INSERT ARM THROUGH 1-2 FORK
- 2 – 1-2 FORK
- 3 – FIFTH-REVERSE FORK

REAR HOUSING

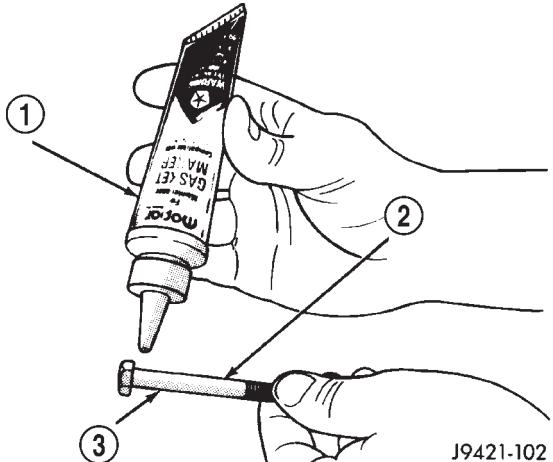
- (1) Lubricate countershaft rear bearing race.
- (2) Install rear housing onto geartrain (Fig. 73). Be sure bearing retainer pilot stud is in correct bolt hole in housing. Also be sure countershaft and output shaft bearings are aligned in housing and on countershaft.
- (3) Seat rear housing on output shaft rear bearing and countershaft. Use plastic or rawhide mallet to tap housing into place.
- (4) Install the three bolts that secure rear bearing retainer to rear housing as follows:
 - (a) Apply Mopar® Gasket Maker, or equivalent, to bolt threads, bolt shanks and under bolt heads (Fig. 74).
 - (b) Start first two bolts in retainer (Fig. 75). It may be necessary to move retainer rearward (with pilot stud) in order to start bolts in retainer.
 - (c) Remove Pilot Stud 8120 and install last retainer bolt (Fig. 75).
 - (d) Tighten all three retainer bolts to 22 N·m (16 ft. lbs.) torque.

NOTE: All the bolts used on the NV1500 except the reverse idler shaft bolts have o-rings to seal the bolts to the transmission case. Inspect the o-rings to ensure that they are correctly installed and are in good condition.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 73 Rear Housing Installation**

- 1 – REAR HOUSING
2 – SHIFT FORKS AND GEARTRAIN

**Fig. 74 Applying Sealer To Retainer And Housing Bolts**

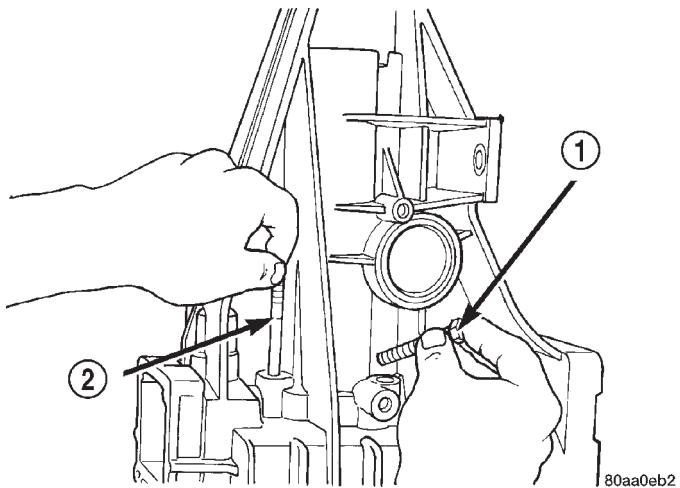
- 1 – MOPAR GASKET MAKER (OR LOCTITE 518)
2 – RETAINER AND HOUSING BOLTS
3 – APPLY SEALER TO UNDERSIDE OF BOLT HEAD, SHANK AND THREADS

REVERSE IDLER

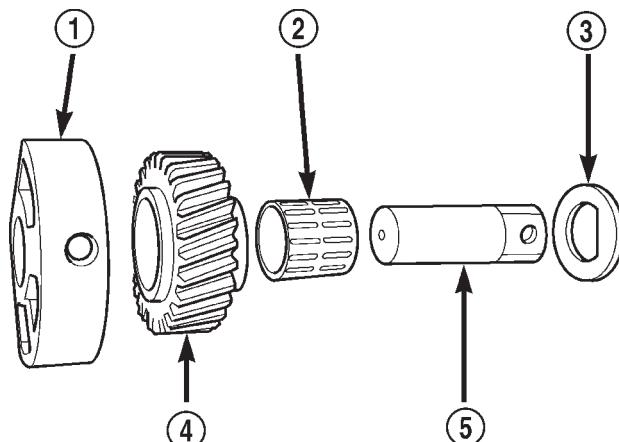
(1) Remove geartrain and housing assembly from support stand with aid of helper.

(2) Assemble shaft, gear, and washer (without bearing or support) and install into housing (Fig. 76).

NOTE: The small shoulder on the reverse idler gear goes toward the front of the transmission.

**Fig. 75 Removing Pilot Stud Tool And Installing Retainer Bolts**

- 1 – BEARING RETAINER BOLT
2 – SPECIAL TOOL 8120

**Fig. 76 Reverse Idler Assembly**

- 1 – SUPPORT
2 – BEARING
3 – WASHER
4 – GEAR
5 – SHAFT

(3) Apply Mopar® Gasket Maker, or equivalent, sealer to underside of idler shaft and support bolt heads, bolt shanks and bolt threads (Fig. 74).

(4) Align hole in housing with threaded hole in shaft and start shaft rear bolt a few threads.

(5) Install bearing into position.

(6) Install segment (Fig. 76), align housing hole with segment threaded hole, and start support bolt a few threads.

(7) Tighten large idler shaft bolt to 43 N·m (31.7 ft. lbs.) torque. Tighten small idler shaft bolt to 22 N·m (16.2 ft. lbs.) torque.

CAUTION: Make sure the idler shaft and support segment are properly seated and held firmly in place while tightening the shaft bolts. The segment, housing or shaft threads can be damaged if the idler shaft is allowed to shift out of position in the housing.

SHIFT SHAFT, SHAFT LEVER AND BUSHING AND SHIFT SOCKET

(1) Before proceeding, verify that all synchro sleeves are in Neutral position (centered on hub). Move sleeves into neutral if necessary.

CAUTION: The transmission synchros must all be in Neutral position for proper reassembly. Otherwise, the housings, shift forks and gears can be damaged during installation of the two housings.

(2) Install 3-4 shift fork in synchro sleeve (Fig. 77). Verify that groove in fork arm is aligned with grooves in 1-2 and fifth-reverse fork arms as shown.

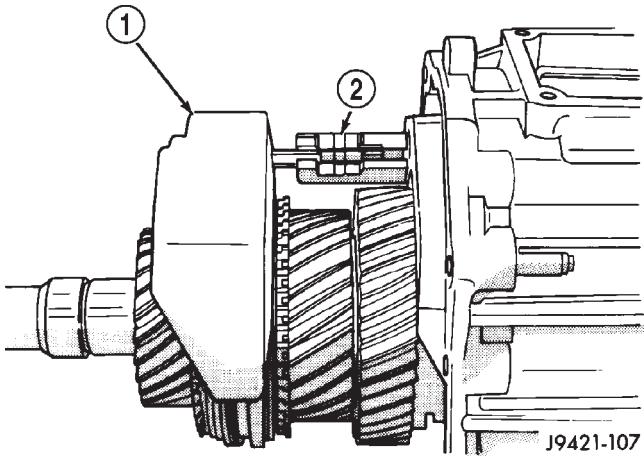
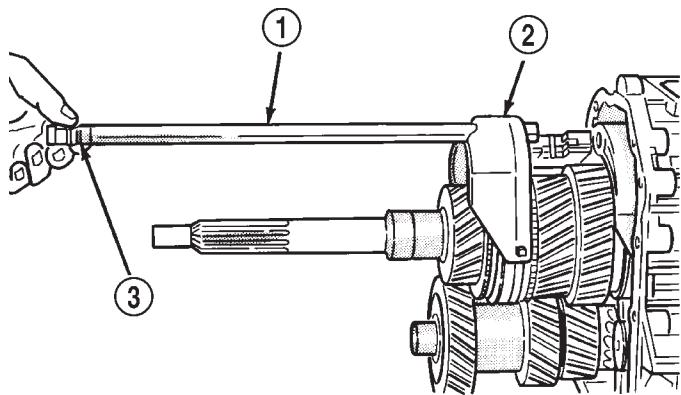


Fig. 77 Installing 3-4 Shift Fork

- 1 – 3-4 FORK
- 2 – ALIGN GROOVES IN FORK ARMS

(3) Slide shift shaft through 3-4 shift fork (Fig. 78). Be sure shaft detent notches are to front.

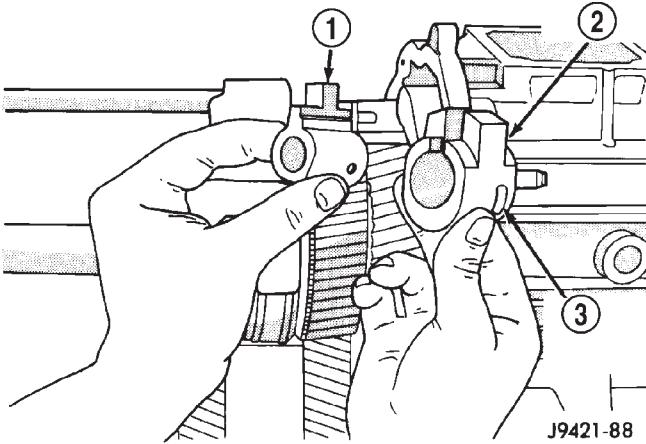


J9421-42

Fig. 78 Shift Shaft Installation

- 1 – SHIFT SHAFT
- 2 – 3-4 FORK
- 3 – SHAFT DETENT NOTCHES

(4) Assemble shift shaft shift lever and bushing (Fig. 79). Be sure slot in bushing is facing up and roll pin hole for lever is aligned with hole in shaft.



J9421-88

Fig. 79 Assembling Shift Shaft Lever And Bushing

- 1 – SHAFT LEVER
- 2 – LEVER BUSHING
- 3 – BUSHING LOCK PIN SLOT

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(5) Install assembled lever and bushing on shift shaft (Fig. 80).

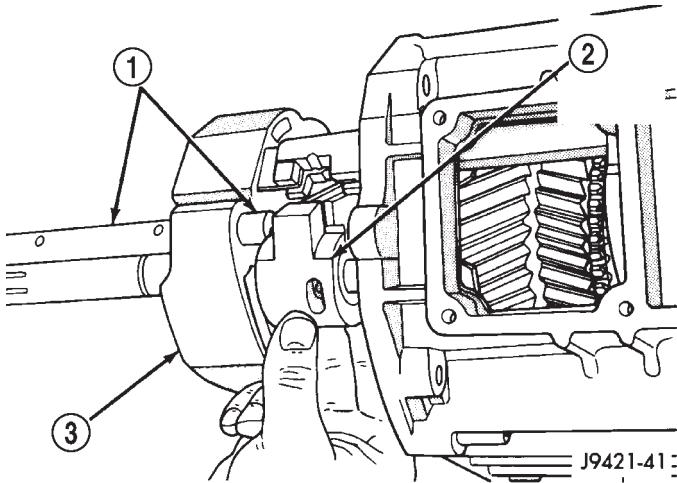


Fig. 80 Installing Shift Shaft Lever And Bushing

- 1 – SHIFT SHAFT
- 2 – SHAFT LEVER AND BUSHING
- 3 – 3-4 FORK

(6) Slide shift shaft through 1-2 and fifth-reverse fork and into shift lever opening in rear housing (Fig. 81).

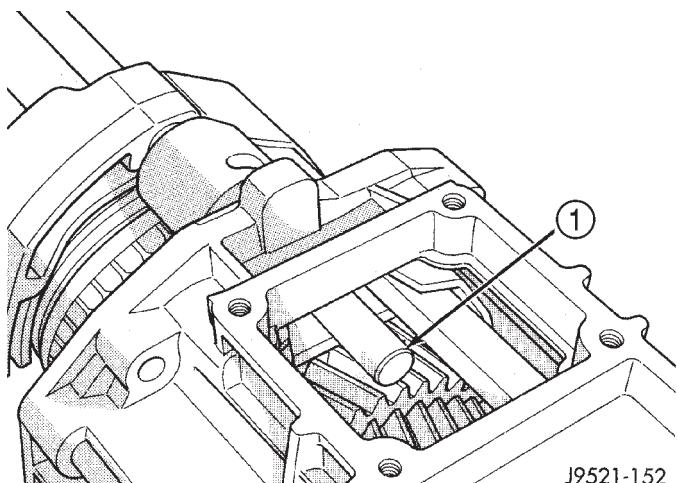


Fig. 81 Inserting Shaft Into Lever Opening In Housing

- 1 – SHIFT SHAFT

(7) Align shift socket with shaft and slide shaft through socket and into shift shaft bearing in rear housing (Fig. 82).

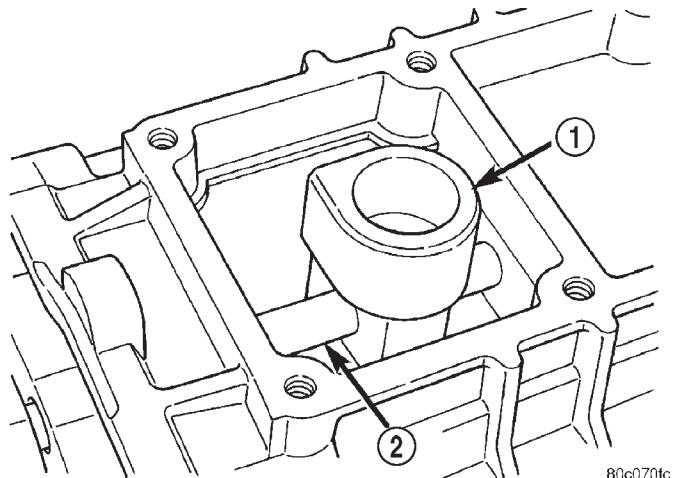


Fig. 82 Shift Socket Installation

- 1 – SHIFT SOCKET
- 2 – SHIFT SHAFT

(8) Rotate shift shaft so detent notches in shaft are facing the TOP of the transmission housing.

CAUTION: Correct positioning of the shift shaft detent notch is important. Both of the shaft roll pins can be installed even when the shaft is 180° off. If this occurs, the transmission will have to be disassembled again to correct shaft alignment.

(9) Select correct new roll pin for shift shaft lever (Fig. 83). Shaft lever roll pin is approximately 22 mm (7/8 in.) long. Shift socket roll pin is approximately 33 mm (1-1/4 in.) long.

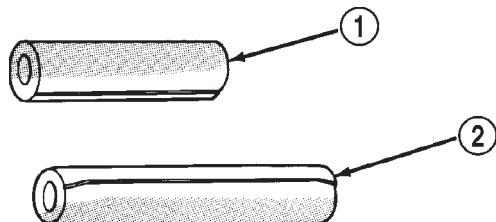


Fig. 83 Roll Pin Identification—Shaft Lever And Shift Socket

- 1 – SHAFT LEVER ROLL PIN
- 2 – SHIFT SOCKET ROLL PIN

(10) Align roll pin holes in shift shaft, lever and bushing. Then start roll pin into shaft lever by hand (Fig. 84).

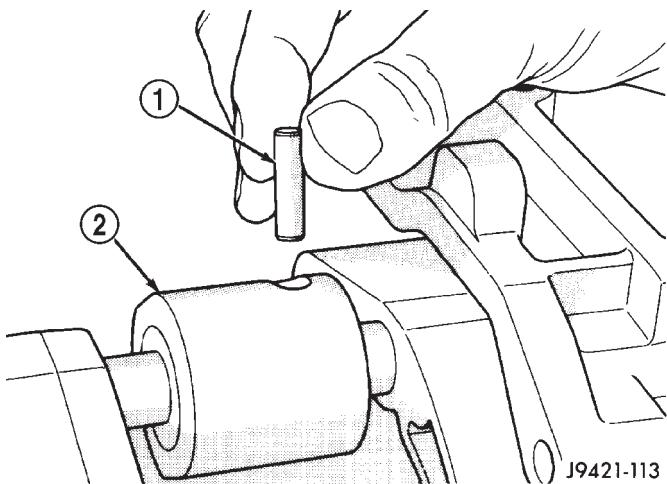


Fig. 84 Starting Roll Pin In Shift Shaft Lever

- 1 – SHAFT LEVER ROLL PIN (7/8" LONG)
- 2 – LEVER AND BUSHING

(11) Seat shaft lever roll pin with pin punch (Fig. 85).

CAUTION: The shaft lever roll pin must be flush with the surface of the lever. The lever bushing will bind on the roll pin if the pin is not seated flush.

(12) Before proceeding, verify that lock pin slot in lever bushing is positioned as shown (Fig. 85).

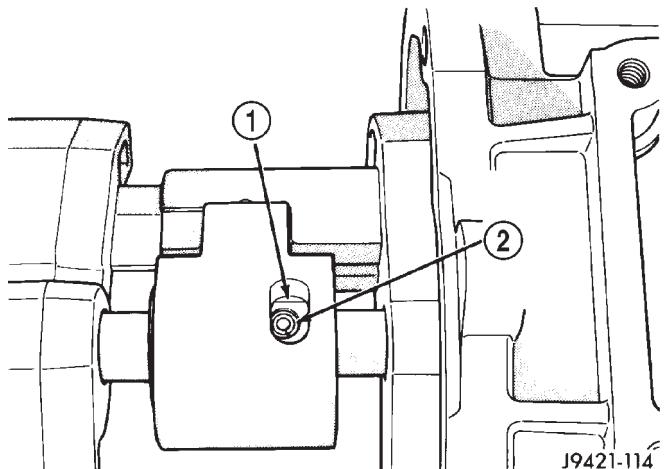


Fig. 85 Correct Seating Of Shift Shaft Lever Roll Pin

- 1 – BUSHING LOCK PIN SLOT
- 2 – SEAT ROLL PIN FLUSH WITH LEVER

(13) Align roll pin holes in shift socket and shift shaft. Then start roll pin into shift shaft by hand (Fig. 86).

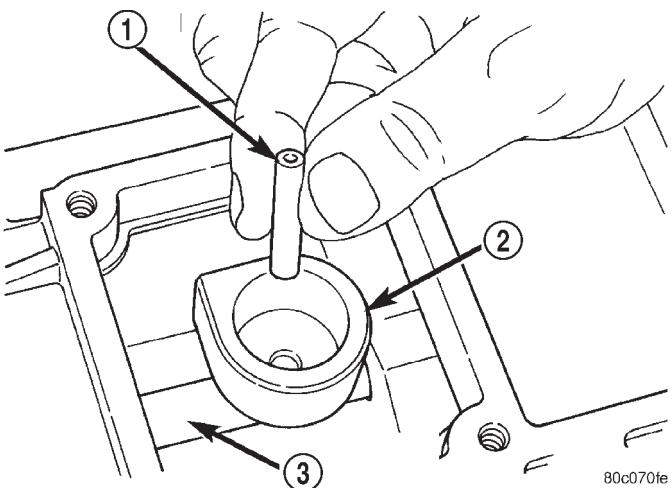


Fig. 86 Starting Roll Pin In Shift Socket

- 1 – ROLL PIN
- 2 – SHIFT SOCKET
- 3 – SHIFT SHAFT

(14) Seat roll pin in shift socket with pin punch. Roll pin must be flush with socket after installation (Fig. 87).

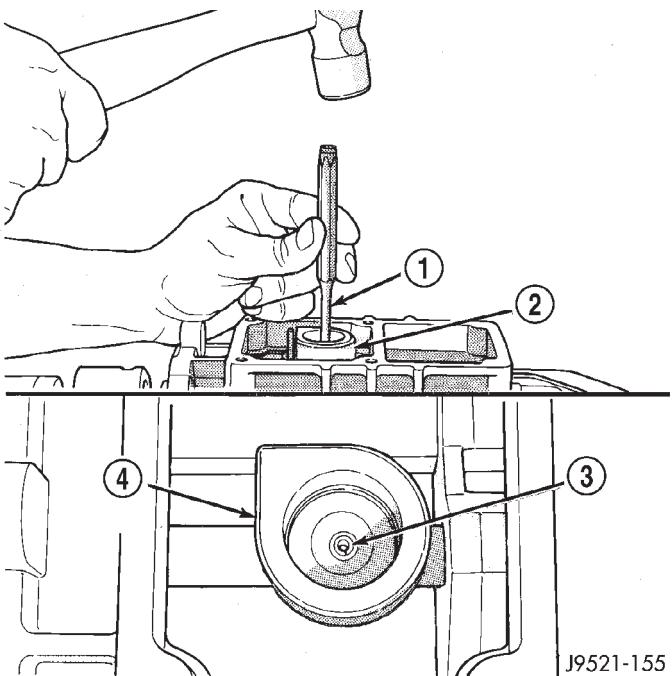


Fig. 87 Seating Shift Socket Roll Pin

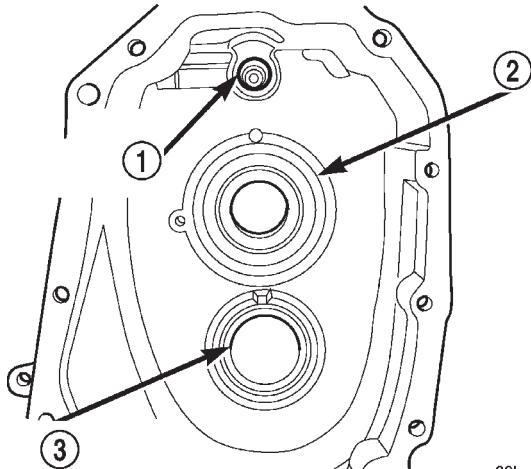
- 1 – PIN PUNCH
- 2 – SHIFT SOCKET
- 3 – SEAT ROLL PIN FLUSH
- 4 – SHIFT SOCKET

(15) Verify that notches in shift fork arms are aligned. Realign arms if necessary.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

FRONT HOUSING AND INPUT SHAFT BEARING RETAINER

(1) If previously removed, install input shaft bearing in front housing bore (Fig. 88). Install snap ring and use plastic mallet to seat bearing. Bearing goes in from front side of housing only.



80ba7a75

Fig. 88 Input Shaft Bearing And Countershaft Front Bearing Identification

- 1 – SHIFT SHAFT BUSHING
- 2 – INPUT SHAFT BEARING
- 3 – COUNTERSHAFT FRONT BEARING RACE

(2) Apply small amount of petroleum jelly to shift shaft bushing in front housing (Fig. 89).

(3) Apply 1/8 in. wide bead of Mopar® Gasket Maker, or equivalent, to mating surfaces of front and rear housings (Fig. 89).

(4) Have helper hold rear housing and geartrain in upright position. Then install front housing on rear housing and geartrain.

(5) Work front housing downward onto geartrain until seated on rear housing.

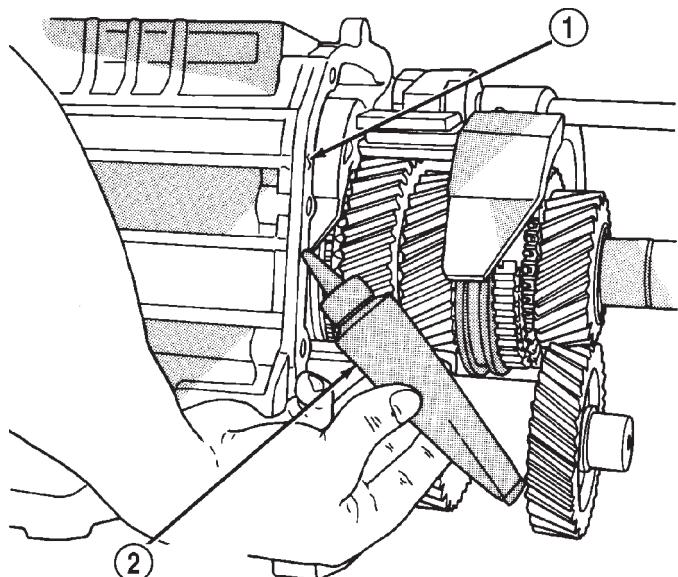
CAUTION: If the front housing will not seat on the rear housing, either the shift components are not in Neutral, or one or more components are misaligned. Do not force the front housing into place. This will only result in damaged components.

(6) Place transmission in horizontal position.

(7) Apply Mopar® Gasket Maker, or equivalent, to housing attaching bolts. Apply sealer material sealer to underside of bolt heads and to bolt shanks and threads (Fig. 90).

(8) Install and start housing attaching bolts by hand (Fig. 90). Then tighten bolts to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.) torque.

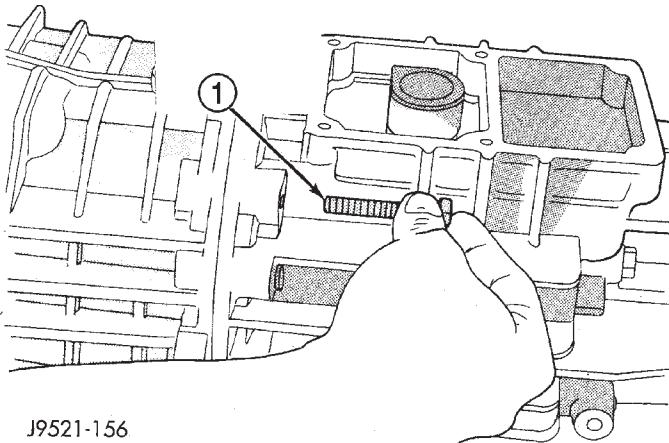
(9) Install shift shaft bushing lock bolt (Fig. 91). Apply Mopar® Gasket Maker, or equivalent, to bolt threads, shank and underside of bolt head before installation.



J9421-123

Fig. 89 Applying Sealer To Front/Rear Housings

- 1 – HOUSING FLANGE SURFACE
- 2 – MOPAR GASKET MAKER (OR LOCTITE 518)



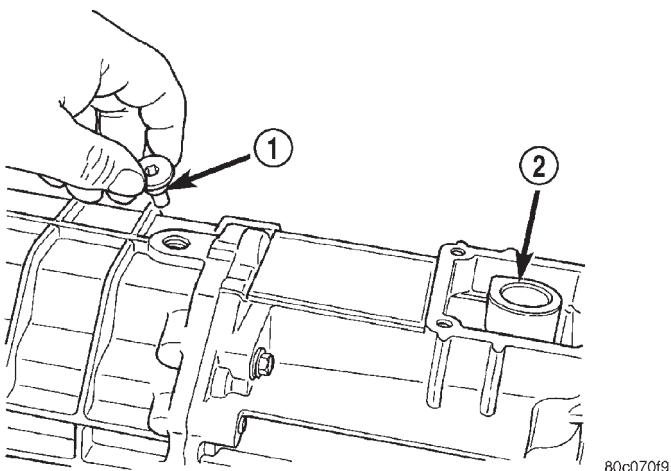
J9521-156

Fig. 90 Installing Housing Attaching Bolts

- 1 – HOUSING ATTACHING BOLTS (APPLY SEALER BEFOREHAND)

CAUTION: If the lock bolt cannot be fully installed, do not try to force it into place. Either the shift shaft is not in Neutral, or the shaft bushing (or lever) is misaligned.

(10) Remove countershaft bearing shim cap and shim. Attach a dial indicator and move countershaft front and back to measure shaft end play. The required countershaft pre-load 0.001–0.003 inches. Add this amount to the measured amount of countershaft end-play. This gives the amount of shims nec-



80c070f9

Fig. 91 Installing Shift Shaft Bushing Lock Bolt

- 1 – SHIFT SHAFT LOCK BOLT
2 – SHAFT SOCKET

essary to correctly pre-load the front and rear countershaft bearings.

(11) Install the selected shims and the shim cap. Tighten shim cap bolts to 29 N·m (21.4 ft. lbs.). Verify the shim selection by rotating the input shaft by hand with the transmission in neutral. The proper torque required to rotate the input shaft and the countershaft is approximately 5–7 in.lbs.. The input shaft should therefore be easily rotated by hand. If the input shaft cannot be rotated by hand or is not smooth through several rotations, re-check the countershaft pre-load.

(12) Lubricate then install shift shaft detent plunger in housing bore (Fig. 92). Lubricate plunger with petroleum jelly or gear lubricant. **Be sure plunger is fully seated in detent notch in shift shaft.**

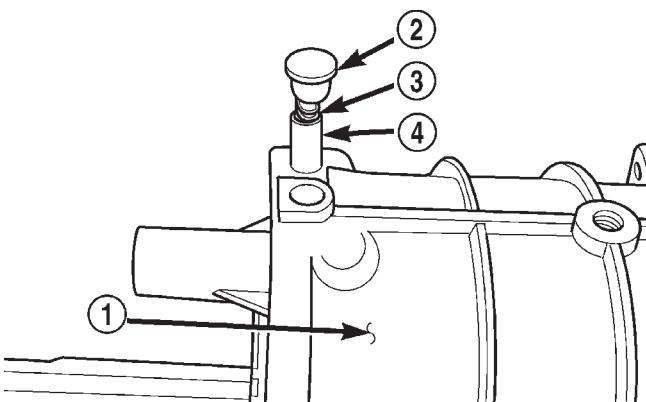
(13) Install detent spring inside plunger (Fig. 92).
(14) Install detent plug as follows:
(a) Install detent plug in end of Installer 8123.
(b) Position plug on detent spring and compress spring until detent plug pilots in detent plunger bore.

(c) Drive detent plug into transmission case until plug seats.

(15) Install backup light switch (Fig. 93).
(16) Install input shaft snap ring (Fig. 94).
(17) Install new oil seal in front bearing retainer with Installer Tool 6448 (Fig. 95).

(18) Apply bead of Mopar® Silicone Sealer, or equivalent, to flange surface of front bearing retainer.

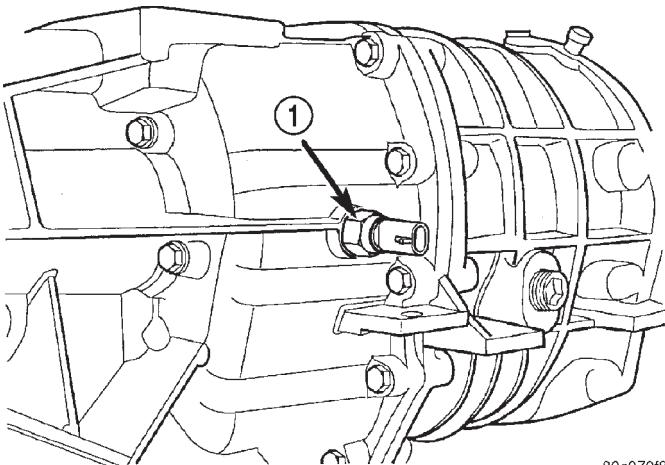
(19) Align and install front bearing retainer over input shaft and onto housing mounting surface (Fig. 96). Although retainer is one-way fit on housing, be sure bolt holes are aligned before seating retainer.



80ba7a62

Fig. 92 Installing Shift Shaft Detent Plunger, Spring, and Plug

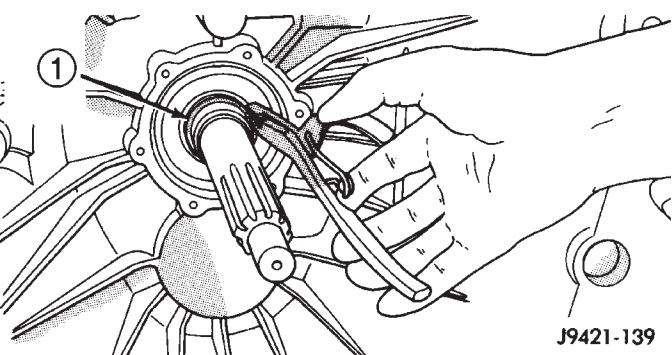
- 1 – FRONT HOUSING
2 – PLUG
3 – SPRING
4 – PLUNGER



80c070f8

Fig. 93 Installing Backup Light Switch

- 1 – BACKUP LAMP SWITCH



J9421-139

Fig. 94 Installing Input Shaft Snap Ring

- 1 – INPUT SHAFT SNAP RING

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

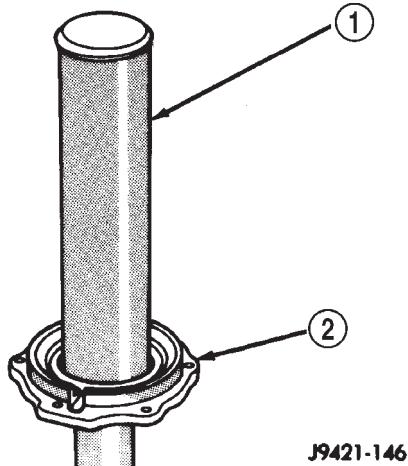


Fig. 95 Installing Oil Seal In Front Bearing Retainer (Typical)

1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6448
2 – FRONT BEARING RETAINER

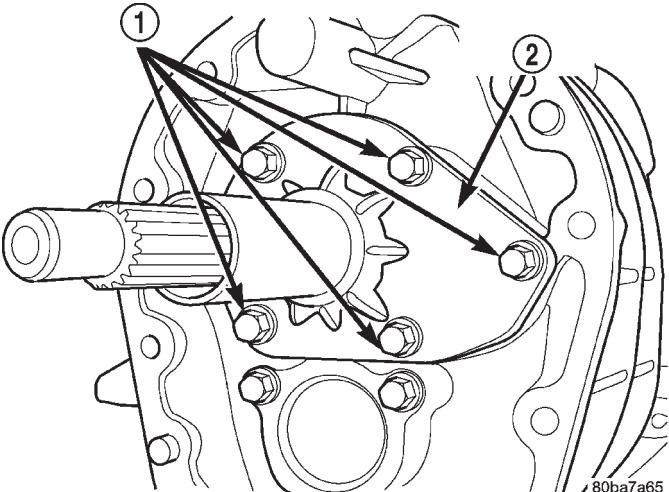


Fig. 97 Installing Input Shaft Bearing Retainer Bolts

1 – BOLTS (5)
2 – BEARING RETAINER

NOTE: Be sure that no sealer gets into the oil feed hole in the transmission case or bearing retainer.

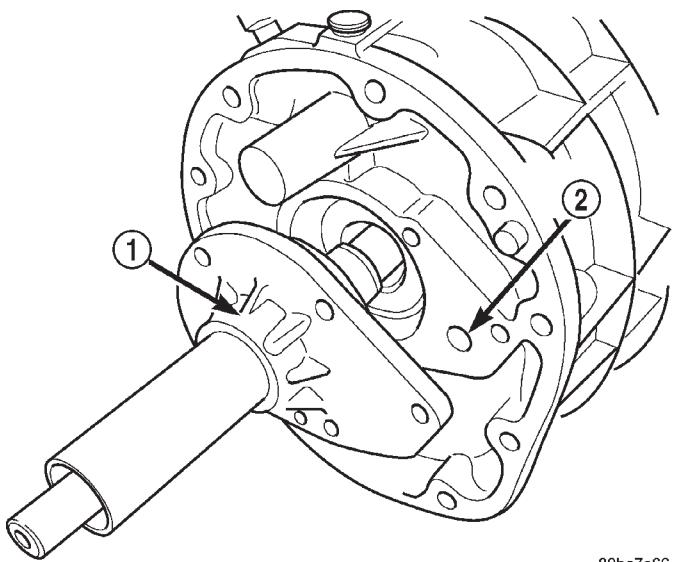


Fig. 96 Installing Input Shaft Bearing Retainer

1 – BEARING RETAINER
2 – OIL FEED

(20) Install and tighten bearing retainer bolts to 29 N·m (21.4 ft. lbs.) torque (Fig. 97).

SHIFT TOWER AND LEVER ASSEMBLY

- (1) Apply petroleum jelly to ball end of shift lever and interior of shift socket.
- (2) Shift the transmission into third gear.
- (3) Align and install shift tower and lever assembly (Fig. 98). Be sure shift ball is seated in socket and the offset in the tower is toward the passenger side of the vehicle before installing tower bolts.
- (4) Install shift tower bolts (Fig. 99). Tighten bolts to 8.5 N·m (75.2 in. lbs.) torque.

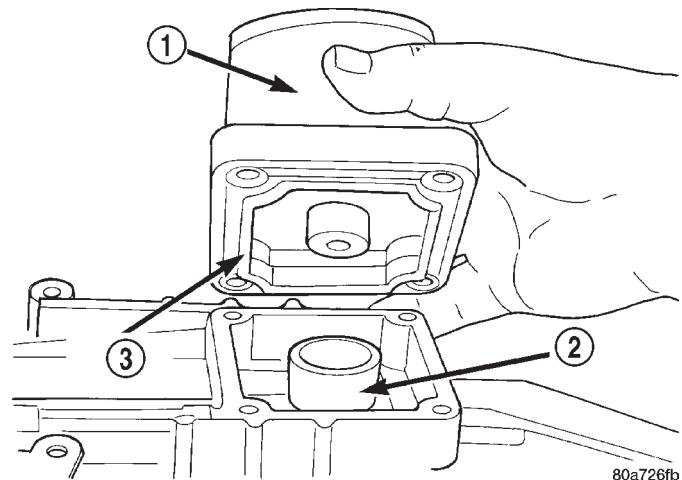


Fig. 98 Shift Tower Installation

1 – SHIFT TOWER AND LEVER ASSEMBLY
2 – SHIFT SOCKET
3 – SEAL

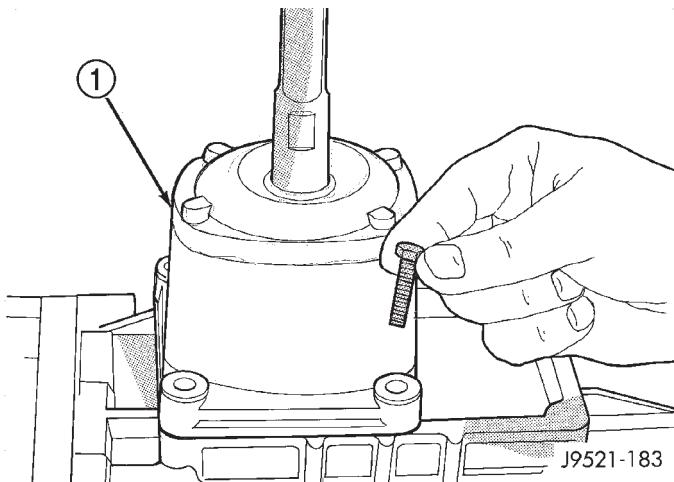


Fig. 99 Shift Tower Bolt Installation

1 – SHIFT TOWER AND LEVER ASSEMBLY

(5) Fill transmission to bottom edge of fill plug hole with Mopar® Transmission Lubricant, P/N 4761526.

(6) Install and tighten fill plug to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.) torque.

(7) Check transmission vent. Be sure vent is open and not restricted.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION

TRANSMISSION COMPONENTS

Clean the gears, shafts, shift components and transmission housings with a standard parts cleaning solvent. Do not use acid or corrosive base solvents. Dry all parts except bearings with compressed air.

Clean the shaft bearings with a mild solvent such as Mopar® degreasing solvent, Gunk, or similar solvents. Do not dry the bearings with compressed air. Allow the bearings to either air dry, or wipe them dry with clean shop towels.

SHIFT LEVER ASSEMBLY

The shift lever assembly is not serviceable. Replace the lever and shift tower as an assembly if the tower, lever, lever ball, or internal components are worn, or damaged.

SHIFT SHAFT AND FORKS

Inspect the shift fork interlock arms and synchro sleeve contact surfaces (Fig. 100). Replace any fork exhibiting wear or damage in these areas. Do not attempt to salvage shift forks.

Check condition of the shift shaft detent plunger and spring. The plunger should be smooth and free of nicks, or scores. The plunger spring should be

straight and not collapsed, or distorted. Minor scratches, or nicks on the plunger can be smoothed with 320/400 grit emery soaked in oil. Replace the plunger and spring if in doubt about condition. Check condition of detent plunger bushings. Replace if damaged.

Inspect the shift shaft, shift shaft bushing and bearing, the shaft lever, and the lever bushing that fits over the lever. Replace the shaft if bent, cracked, or severely scored. Minor burrs, nicks, or scratches can be smoothed off with 320/400 grit emery cloth followed by polishing with crocus cloth. Replace the shift shaft bushing or bearing if damaged.

Replace the shaft lever and bushing if either part is deformed, or worn. Do not attempt to salvage these parts as shift fork binding will occur. Replace the small detent ball and spring that goes in the lever if the ball is worn, or if the spring is bent or collapsed. Replace the roll pin that secures the lever to the shaft.

FRONT/REAR HOUSINGS AND BEARING RETAINERS

Inspect the housings carefully. Look for cracks, stripped threads, scored mating surfaces, damaged bearing bores, or worn dowel pin holes. Minor nicks on mating surfaces can be dressed off with a fine file, or emery cloth. Damaged threads can be renewed by either re-tapping or installing Helicoil inserts.

NOTE: The front housing contains the countershaft front bearing race. The rear housing contains the countershaft rear bearing race. If a countershaft bearing failure results, the bearing races must be replaced also. Refer to countershaft service for proper service procedures.

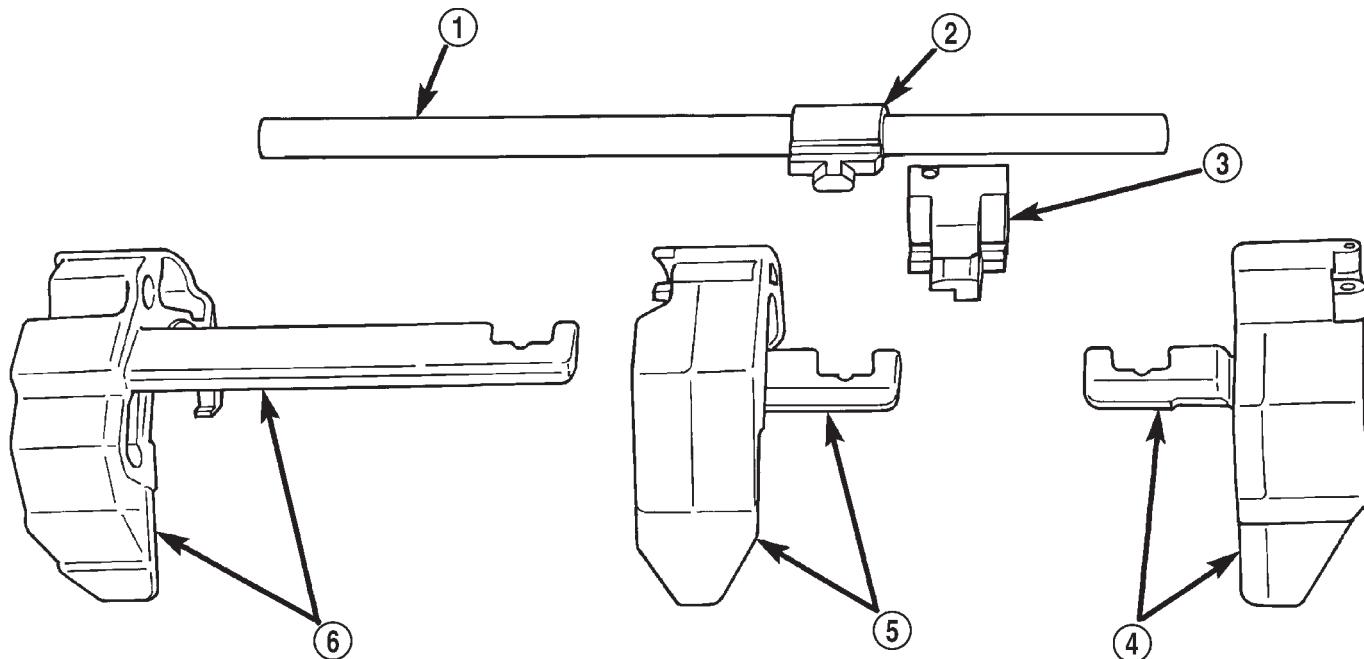
Inspect the input shaft bearing retainer. Be sure the release bearing slide surface of the retainer is in good condition. Minor nicks on the surface can be smoothed off with 320/420 grit emery cloth and final polished with oil coated crocus cloth. Replace the retainer seal if necessary.

Inspect the output shaft bearing retainer. Be sure the U-shaped retainer is flat and free of distortion. Replace the retainer if the threads are damaged, or if the retainer is bent, or cracked.

COUNTERSHAFT BEARINGS AND RACES

The countershaft bearings are standard tapered roller bearings, with matching races. The races are pressed into the front and rear housings. Inspect the countershaft bearings AND races for abnormal wear or damage. Refer to countershaft bearing service for proper service procedures.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)



80c070ff

Fig. 100 Shift Forks And Shaft

- 1 – SHIFT SHAFT
- 2 – SHAFT LEVER
- 3 – SHAFT LEVER BUSHING

- 4 – 3-4 SHIFT FORK
- 5 – 1-2 SHIFT FORK
- 6 – FIFTH-REVERSE SHIFT FORK

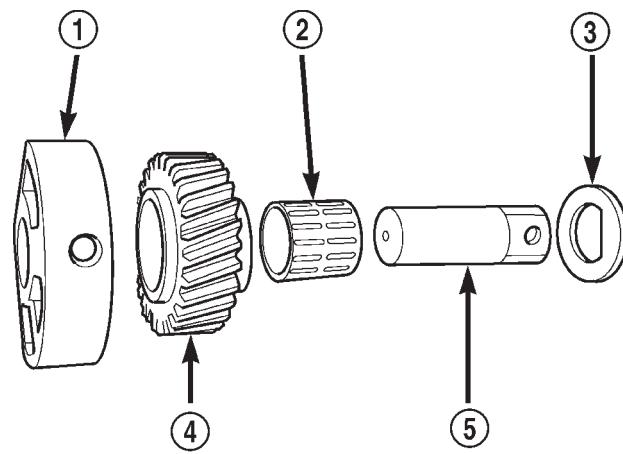
REVERSE IDLER COMPONENTS

Inspect the idler gear, bearing, shaft, thrust washer, and support for excessive wear or failure (Fig. 101). Replace the bearing if any of the needle bearing rollers are worn, chipped, cracked, flat-spotted, or brinelled. Also replace the bearing if the plastic bearing cage is damaged or distorted.

Replace the thrust washer, if cracked, chipped, or worn. Replace the idler gear if the teeth are chipped, cracked or worn thin. Replace the shaft if worn, scored, or the bolt threads are damaged beyond repair. Replace the support segment if cracked, or chipped and replace the idler attaching bolts if the threads are damaged.

SHIFT SOCKET

Inspect the shift socket for wear or damage. replace the socket if the roll pin, or shift shaft bores are damaged. Minor nicks in the shift lever ball seat in the socket can be smoothed down with 400 grit emery or wet/dry paper. Replace the socket if the ball seat is worn, or cracked. Do not reuse the original shift socket roll pin. Install a new pin during reassembly. The socket roll pin is approximately is approximately 33 mm (1-1/4 in.) long.



80ba7a67

Fig. 101 Reverse Idler Assembly

- 1 – SUPPORT
- 2 – BEARING
- 3 – WASHER
- 4 – GEAR
- 5 – SHAFT

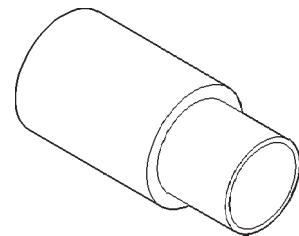
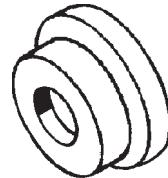
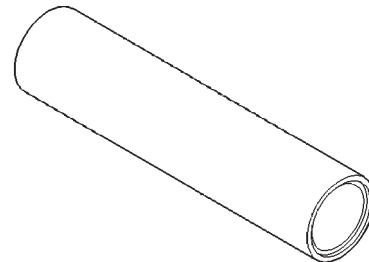
OUTPUT SHAFT AND GEARTRAIN

Inspect all of the gears for worn, chipped, or broken teeth. Also check condition of the bearing bore in each gear. The bores should be smooth and free of surface damage. Discoloration of the gear

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

bore is a normal occurrence and is not a reason for replacement. Replace gears only when tooth damage has occurred, or if the bores are brinnelled or severely scored.

Inspect the shaft splines and bearing surfaces. Minor nicks on the bearing surfaces can be smoothed with 320/420 grit emery and final polished with crocus cloth. Replace the shaft if the splines are damaged or bearing surfaces are deeply scored, worn, or brinnelled.

*Installer, Bushing—8160**Driver, Bearing Race—C-4656**Installer, Seal—6448*

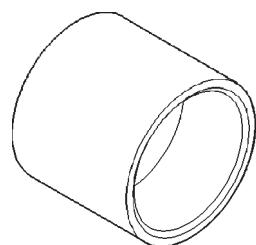
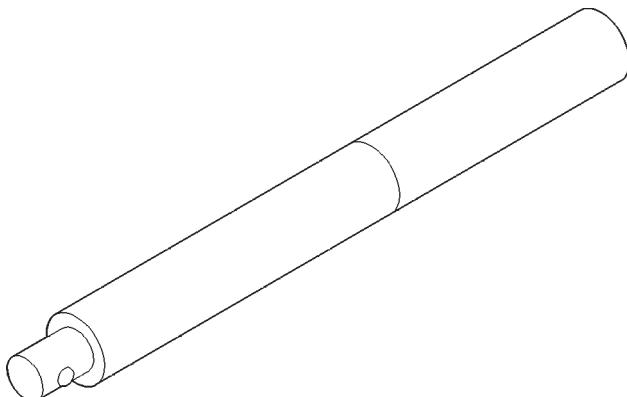
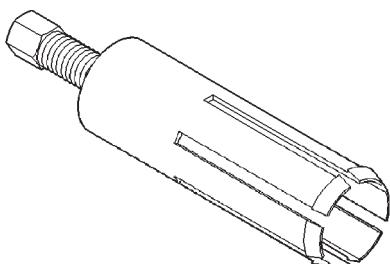
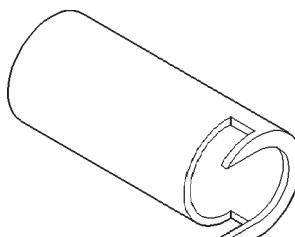
SPECIFICATIONS

TORQUE

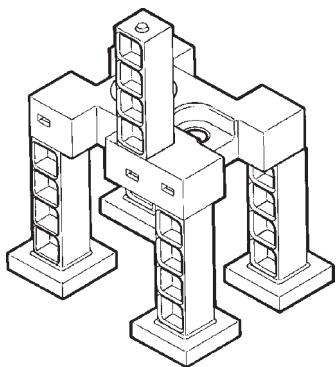
DESCRIPTION	TORQUE
Back up Lamp Switch	41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.)
Bearing Shim Cap (countershaft)	41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.)
Bearing Retainer (front)	41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.)
Bearing Retainer (rear)	34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.)
Drain/Fill Plug	34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.)
Shift Shaft Lock Bolt	27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.)
Shift Tower Bolts	14 N·m (120 in. lbs.)
Idler Shaft Bolt (M8 x 1.25 x 70)	27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.)
Idler Shaft Bolt (M10 x 1.5 x 35)	52 N·m (40 ft. lbs.)

SPECIAL TOOLS

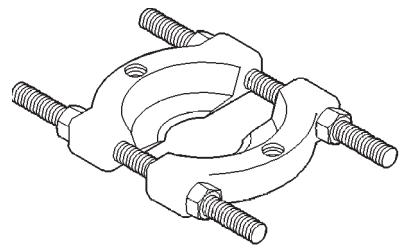
NV1500 MANUAL TRANSMISSION

*Installer, Seal—C-3995-A**Handle—C-4171**Remover, Bushing—6957**Remover—8117*

SPECIAL TOOLS (Continued)

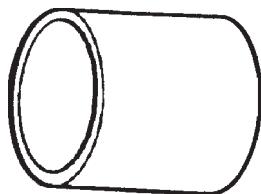


Support Stand, NV1500—8355

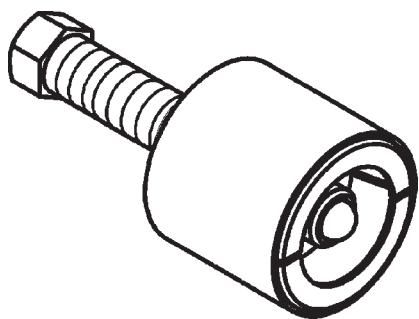


1130-80109ac3

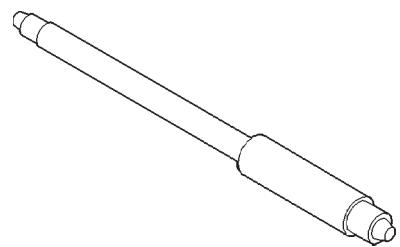
Splitter, Bearing—1130



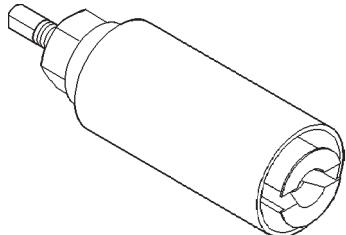
Tube—6310-1



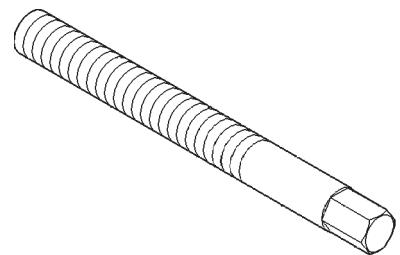
Remover, Bearing—8356



Remover/Installer—8119



Remover, Bearing Race—L-4454



Stud, Alignment—8120

NV3500 MANUAL TRANSMISSION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION			
NV3500 MANUAL TRANSMISSION.....	36	YOKE SEAL—2WD	43
LUBRICANT.....	39	REAR HOUSING YOKE BUSHING	43
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY	
LOW LUBRICANT LEVEL.....	39	TRANSMISSION.....	44
HARD SHIFTING	39	CLEANING AND INSPECTION	
TRANSMISSION NOISE.....	40	TRANSMISSION COMPONENTS	78
REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION		SPECIFICATIONS	
TRANSMISSION—2WD	40	TORQUE	81
TRANSMISSION—4WD	41	SPECIAL TOOLS	
SHIFT TOWER.....	42	NV3500 MANUAL TRANSMISSION.....	81

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION

NV3500 MANUAL TRANSMISSION

DESCRIPTION

The NV3500 is a medium-duty, 5-speed, constant mesh, fully synchronized manual transmission. Fifth gear is an overdrive range with a ratio of 0.73:1. The NV3500 is available in two and four-wheel drive configurations.

The transmission gear case consists of two aluminum housings (Fig. 1). The clutch housing is not a removable component. It is an integral part of the transmission front housing.

A combination of roller and ball bearings are used to support the transmission shafts in the two housings. The transmission gears all rotate on caged type needle bearings. A roller bearing is used between the input and output shaft.

The NV3500 has a single shaft shift mechanism with three shift forks all mounted on the shaft. The shaft is supported in the front and rear housings by bushings and one linear ball bearing. Internal shift components consist of the forks, shaft, shift lever socket, and detent components (Fig. 2).

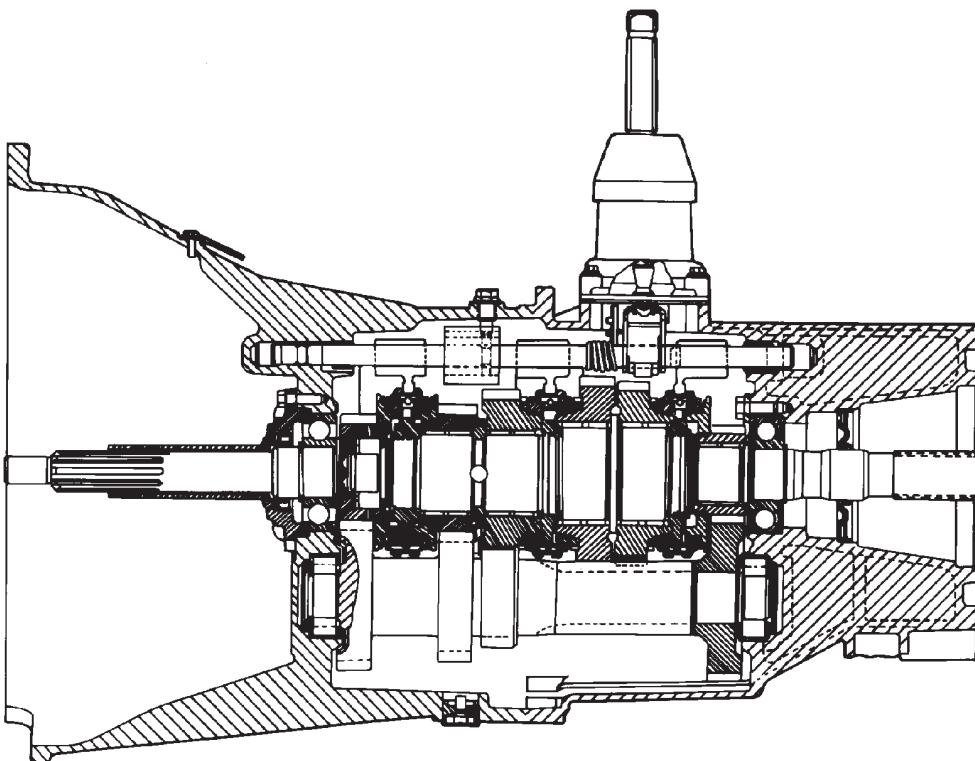
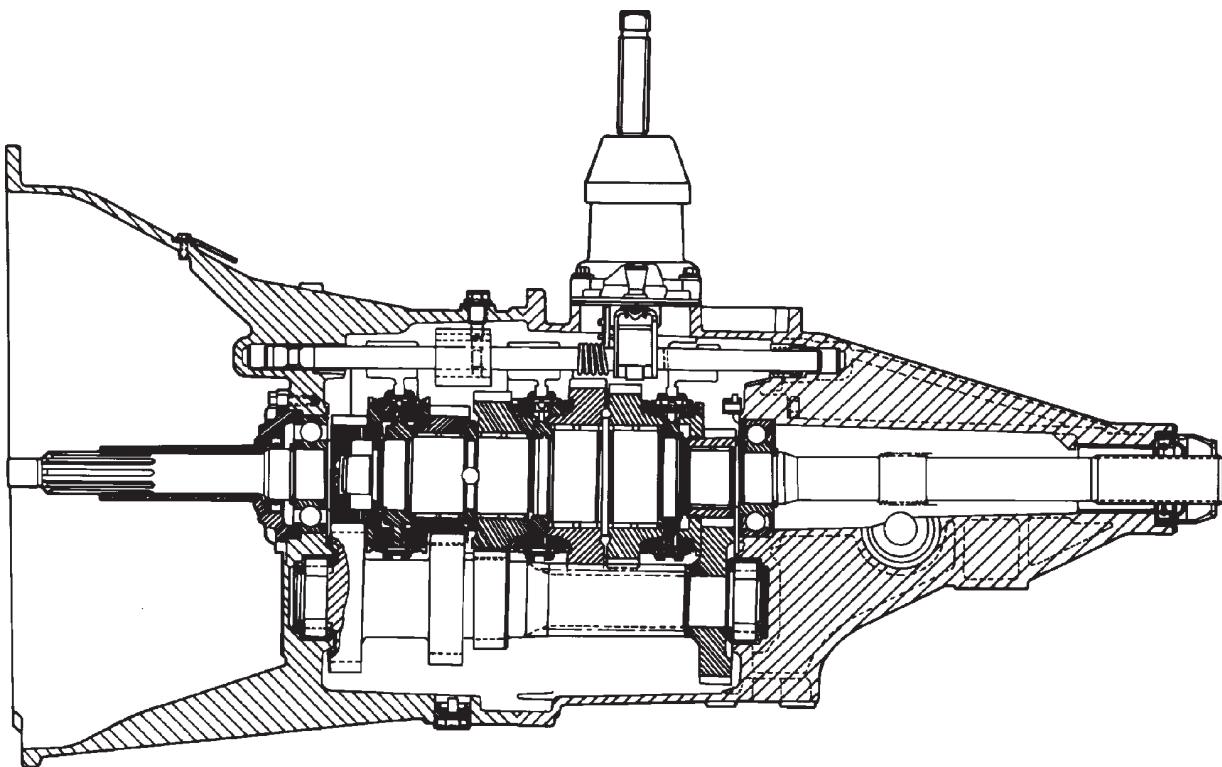
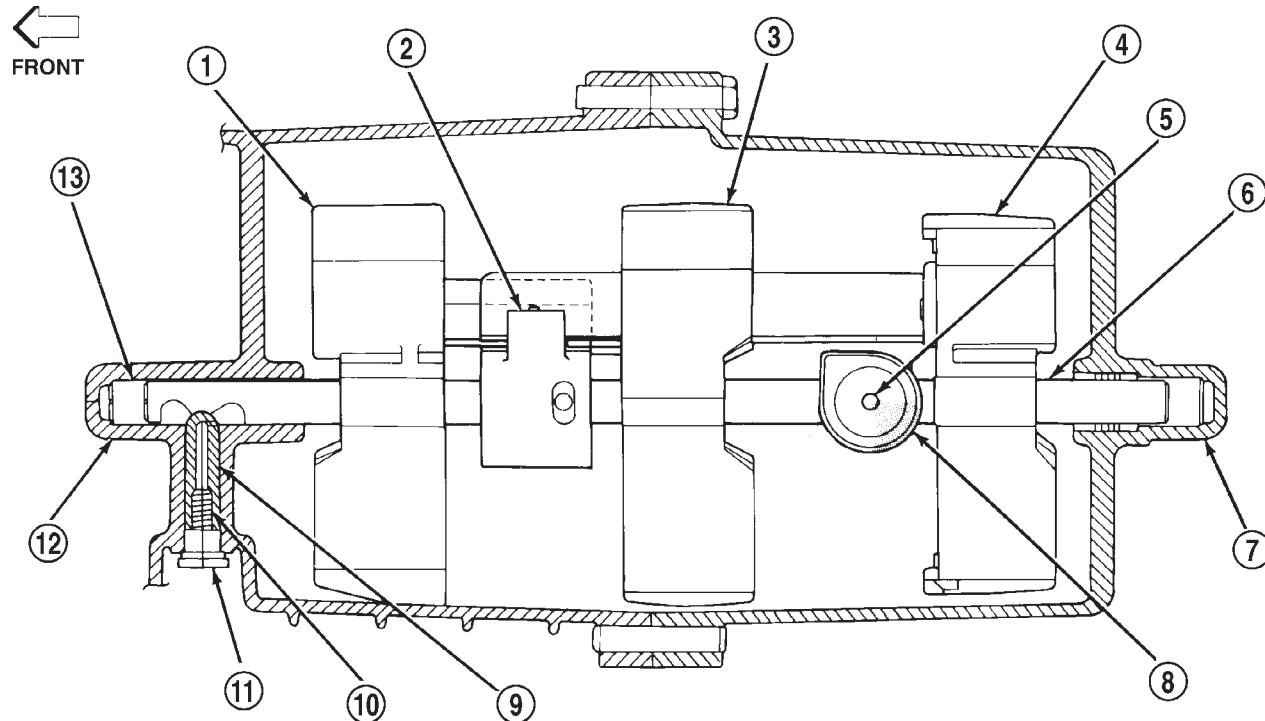


Fig. 1 NV3500 Manual Transmission

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



J9521-147

Fig. 2 NV3500 Shift Mechanism

- 1 - 3-4 FORK
 2 - SHIFT SHAFT LEVER AND BUSHING
 3 - 1-2 FORK
 4 - FIFTH-REVERSE FORK
 5 - ROLL PIN
 6 - SHIFT SHAFT
 7 - REAR HOUSING

- 8 - SHIFT LEVER SOCKET
 9 - DETENT PLUNGER
 10 - DETENT SPRING
 11 - DETENT PLUG
 12 - FRONT HOUSING
 13 - SHIFT SHAFT

GEAR RATIOS

Two versions of the NV3500 are available. The wide ratio version has a 4.01 first gear and 2.32 second gear. The close ratio NV3500 has a 3.48 first gear and 2.16 second gear.

WIDE RATIO VERSION

RANGE	RATIO
FIRST	4.01:1
SECOND	2.32:1
THIRD	1.40:1
FOURTH	1:1
FIFTH	0.73:1
REVERSE	3.55:1

CLOSE RATIO VERSION

RANGE	RATIO
FIRST	3.48:1
SECOND	2.16:1
THIRD	1.40:1
FOURTH	1:1
FIFTH	0.73:1
REVERSE	3.55:1

OPERATION

The manual transmission receives power through the clutch assembly from the engine. The clutch disc is splined to the transmission input shaft and is turned at engine speed at all times that the clutch is engaged. The input shaft is connected to the transmission countershaft through the mesh of fourth

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

speed gear on the input shaft and the fourth counter-shaft gear. At this point, all the transmission gears are spinning.

The driver selects a particular gear by moving the shift lever to the desired gear position. This movement moves the internal transmission shift components to begin the shift sequence. As the shift lever moves the selected shift rail, the shift fork attached to that rail begins to move. The fork is positioned in a groove in the outer circumference of the synchronizer sleeve. As the shift fork moves the synchronizer sleeve, the synchronizer begins to speed-up or slow down the selected gear (depending on whether we are up-shifting or down-shifting). The synchronizer does this by having the synchronizer hub splined to the mainshaft, or the countershaft in some cases, and moving the blocker ring into contact with the gear's friction cone. As the blocker ring and friction cone come together, the gear speed is brought up or down to the speed of the synchronizer. As the two speeds match, the splines on the inside of the synchronizer sleeve become aligned with the teeth on the blocker ring and the friction cone and eventually will slide over the teeth, locking the gear to the mainshaft, or countershaft, through the synchronizer.

LUBRICANT

DESCRIPTION

Required lubricant for the NV3500 is Mopar® Manual Transmission Lubricant, P/N 4874464. This is the **only** lubricant to be used in NV3500 transmissions. No other lubricants are acceptable, or recommended.

The correct transmission lubricant level is to the bottom edge of the fill plug hole (Fig. 3).

The transmission must be level to obtain an accurate lubricant level check. A drive-on type of hoist is recommended for this purpose.

Lubricant capacity of the NV3500 is approximately 2.28 liters (4.8 pints). This represents the approximate quantity needed to refill the transmission after a lubricant change or overhaul.

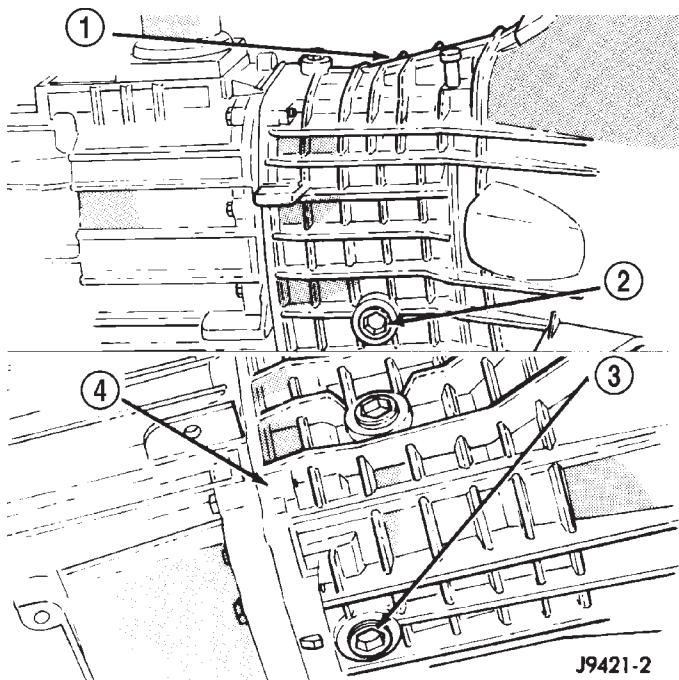
DRAIN AND FILL PLUG LOCATIONS

The NV3500 fill and drain plugs are both located in the front housing. The fill plug is at the passenger side of the housing. The drain plug is at the bottom of the housing (Fig. 3).

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

LOW LUBRICANT LEVEL

A low transmission lubricant level is generally the result of a leak, inadequate lubricant fill, or an incorrect lubricant level check.



J9421-2

Fig. 3 Drain and Fill Plug Locations

1 – FRONT HOUSING

2 – FILL PLUG

3 – DRAIN PLUG

4 – FRONT HOUSING

Leaks can occur at the mating surfaces of the housings, or from the front/rear seals. A suspected leak could also be the result of an overfill condition.

Leaks at component mating surfaces will probably be the result of inadequate sealer, gaps in the sealer, incorrect bolt tightening, or use of a non-recommended sealer.

A leak at the front of the transmission will be from either a loose or damaged, front bearing retainer or retainer seal. Lubricant may also drip from the transmission clutch housing after extended operation. If the leak is severe, it will contaminate the clutch disc causing slip, grab and chatter.

Transmissions filled from air or electrically powered lubricant containers can be under filled. Always check the lubricant level after filling to avoid an under fill condition.

A correct lubricant level check can only be made when the vehicle is level; use a drive-on hoist to ensure this. Also allow the lubricant to settle for a minute or so before checking. These recommendations will ensure an accurate check and avoid an under-or-overfill condition.

HARD SHIFTING

Hard shifting is usually caused by a low lubricant level, improper or contaminated lubricants, transmis-

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

sion component damage, clutch linkage malfunction, or by a damaged clutch pressure plate or disc.

Substantial lubricant leaks can result in gear, shift component, synchro and bearing damage. If a leak goes undetected for an extended period, the first indications of a problem are usually hard shifting and noise.

Incorrect or contaminated lubricants can also contribute to hard shifting. The consequence of using non-recommended lubricants is noise, excessive wear, internal bind and hard shifting.

Improper clutch release is a frequent cause of hard shifting. Malfunctioning clutch linkage, a worn or damaged pilot bearing, a worn or damaged pressure plate or disc can cause incorrect release. If the clutch problem is advanced, gear clash during shifts can result.

Worn or damaged synchro rings can cause gear clash when shifting into any forward gear. In some new or rebuilt transmissions, new synchro rings may tend to stick slightly causing stiff and/or noisy shifts. In most cases, this condition will decline as the rings wear in.

TRANSMISSION NOISE

Most manual transmissions make some noise during normal operation. Rotating gears can generate a mild whine that may only be audible at extreme speeds.

Severe, obviously audible transmission noise is generally the result of a lubricant problem. Insufficient, improper, or contaminated lubricant can promote rapid wear of gears, synchros, shift rails, forks and bearings. The overheating caused by a lubricant problem, can also lead to gear breakage.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION

TRANSMISSION—2WD

REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect battery negative cable.
- (2) Shift transmission into Neutral.
- (3) Remove floor console. Refer to Group 23, Body, for proper procedures.
- (4) Remove screws attaching shift boot to floorpan. Then slide boot upward on lever extension.
- (5) Remove shift lever extension from the shift tower and lever assembly.
- (6) Raise and support vehicle.
- (7) Mark propeller shaft and axle companion flange for alignment reference. Use paint, scribe, or chalk to mark the flange.
- (8) Remove propeller shaft.
- (9) Disconnect and remove exhaust system Y-pipe.

(10) Disconnect wires at backup light switch.

(11) Support engine with adjustable safety stand and wood block.

(12) If transmission is to be disassembled for repair, remove drain plug and drain lubricant from transmission.

(13) Remove bolts/nuts attaching transmission to rear mount.

(14) Support transmission with a transmission jack. Secure transmission to jack with safety chains.

(15) Remove rear crossmember.

(16) Remove bolts attaching clutch slave cylinder to clutch housing. Then move cylinder aside for working clearance.

(17) Remove starter.

(18) Remove transmission dust shield.

(19) Remove transmission harness wires from clips on transmission shift cover.

(20) Lower transmission slightly.

(21) Remove the bolts attaching the shift tower and lever assembly to the transmission housing. Then remove the shift tower and lever assembly.

(22) Remove bolts attaching transmission to engine.

(23) Slide transmission and jack rearward until input shaft clears clutch disc.

(24) Lower transmission jack and remove transmission from under vehicle.

INSTALLATION

NOTE: If a new transmission is being installed, be sure to use all components supplied with the new transmission. For example, if a new shift tower is supplied with the new transmission, do not re-use the original shift tower.

(1) Apply light coat of Mopar® high temperature bearing grease to contact surfaces of following components:

- input shaft splines.
- release bearing slide surface of front retainer.
- release bearing bore.
- release fork.
- release fork ball stud.
- propeller shaft slip yoke.

(2) Apply sealer to threads of drain plug and install plug in case.

(3) Mount transmission on jack and position transmission under vehicle.

(4) Raise transmission until input shaft is centered in clutch disc hub.

(5) Move transmission forward and start input shaft in clutch disc and pilot bushing.

(6) Work transmission forward until seated against engine. Do not allow transmission to remain unsupported after input shaft has entered clutch disc.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

- (7) Install and tighten transmission-to-engine bolts to 108 N·m (80 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (8) Install clutch slave cylinder.
- (9) Install transmission dust shield.
- (10) Install starter.
- (11) Connect backup light switch wires.
- (12) Fill transmission with recommended lubricant. Correct fill level is bottom edge of fill plug hole.
- (13) Install shift tower and lever assembly. Tighten shift tower bolts to 7-10 N·m (5-7 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (14) Position transmission harness wires in clips on shift cover.
- (15) Install transmission mount on transmission or rear crossmember.
- (16) Install rear crossmember.
- (17) Remove transmission jack and engine support fixture.
- (18) Align and install propeller shaft.
- (19) Lower vehicle.
- (20) Install the shift lever extension onto the shift tower and lever assembly.
- (21) Install shift boot.
- (22) Install floor console. Refer to Group 23, Body, for proper procedures.
- (23) Connect battery negative cable.

TRANSMISSION—4WD

REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect battery negative cable.
- (2) Shift transmission into Neutral.
- (3) Remove floor console. Refer to Group 23, Body, for proper procedures.
- (4) Remove shift lever boot.
- (5) Remove the shift lever extension from the shift tower and lever assembly.
- (6) Raise vehicle.
- (7) Remove skid plate, if equipped.
- (8) If transmission will be disassembled for repair, remove drain plug and drain lubricant from transmission.
- (9) Mark propeller shafts and companion flange for assembly reference.
- (10) Disconnect and remove propeller shafts.
- (11) Disconnect and remove exhaust system Y-pipe. Then disconnect and lower remaining exhaust pipes for clearance as necessary.
- (12) Support engine with adjustable safety stand.
- (13) Disconnect backup light switch wires.
- (14) Disconnect transfer case shift linkage at transfer case range lever.
- (15) Remove transfer case shift lever from transmission.
- (16) Remove bolts/nuts attaching transmission to rear support.

- (17) Remove crossmember bolts/nuts and remove crossmember.
- (18) Support transfer case with transmission jack. Secure transfer case to jack with safety chains.
- (19) Remove transfer case attaching nuts.
- (20) Move transfer case rearward until input gear clears transmission output shaft.
- (21) Lower transfer case assembly and move it from under vehicle.
- (22) Support transmission with transmission jack. Secure transmission to jack with safety chains.
- (23) Remove transmission harness from retaining clips on transmission shift cover.
- (24) Remove clutch slave cylinder splash shield, if equipped.
- (25) Remove clutch slave cylinder attaching nuts. Move cylinder aside for working clearance.
- (26) Remove starter.
- (27) Remove transmission splash shield.
- (28) Lower transmission slightly.
- (29) Remove bolts attaching shift tower and lever assembly to rear case. Then remove shift tower and lever as an assembly.
- (30) Remove bolts attaching transmission to engine.
- (31) Move transmission rearward until input shaft clears clutch disc.
- (32) Lower transmission and remove it from under vehicle.

INSTALLATION

NOTE: If a new transmission is being installed, be sure to use all components supplied with the new transmission. For example, if a new shift tower is supplied with the new transmission, do not re-use the original shift tower.

- (1) Apply light coat of Mopar® high temperature bearing grease to contact surfaces of following components:
 - input shaft splines.
 - release bearing slide surface of front retainer.
 - release bearing bore.
 - release fork.
 - release fork ball stud.
 - propeller shaft slip yoke.
- (2) Apply sealer to threads of drain plug, then install plug in case.
- (3) Mount transmission on jack and position transmission under vehicle. Secure transmission to jack with safety chains.
- (4) Raise transmission until input shaft is centered in clutch disc hub.
- (5) Move transmission forward and start input shaft in clutch disc.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

(6) Work transmission forward until seated against engine. Do not allow transmission to remain unsupported after input shaft has entered clutch disc.

(7) Install and tighten transmission to engine bolts to 108 N·m (80 ft. lbs.) torque.

(8) Position transmission harness wires in clips on shift cover.

(9) Install slave cylinder and shield, if equipped.

(10) Install shift tower and lever assembly. Tighten shift tower bolts to 7-10 N·m (5-7 ft. lbs.) torque.

(11) Install transmission mount on transmission or rear crossmember.

(12) Install transfer case shift lever on transmission.

(13) Install rear crossmember.

(14) Remove transmission jack and engine support fixture.

(15) Install transfer case on transmission jack. Secure transfer case to jack with safety chains.

(16) Raise jack and align transfer case input gear with transmission output shaft.

(17) Move transfer case forward and seat it on transmission.

(18) Install and tighten transfer case attaching nuts. Tighten nuts to 41-47 N·m (30-35 ft. lbs.) if case has 3/8 studs, or 30-41 N·m (22-30 ft. lbs.) if case has 5/16 studs.

(19) Connect backup light switch wires.

(20) Install transmission dust cover.

(21) Install starter.

(22) Install transfer case shift lever to side of transfer case.

(23) Connect transfer case shift lever to range lever on transfer case.

(24) Align and connect propeller shafts.

(25) Fill transmission with required lubricant. Check lubricant level in transfer case and add lubricant if necessary.

(26) Install transfer case skid plate, if equipped, and crossmember. Tighten attaching bolts/nuts to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.) torque.

(27) Install exhaust system components.

(28) Lower vehicle.

(29) Install the shift lever extension onto the shift tower and lever assembly.

(30) Install shift lever boot.

(31) Install floor console. Refer to Group 23, Body, for proper procedures.

(32) Connect battery negative cable.

SHIFT TOWER

REMOVAL

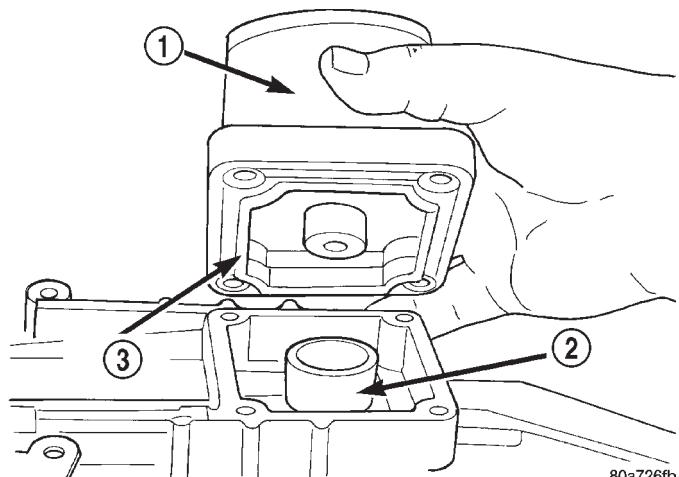
(1) Shift transmission into Neutral.

(2) Unscrew and remove the shift lever extension from the shift

(3) Remove any floor console components necessary to access the transmission shift tower.

(4) Remove the bolts holding the shift tower to the isolator plate and transmission gear case.

(5) Remove the shift tower (Fig. 4) from the transmission.



80a726fb

Fig. 4 Remove Shift Tower

1 – SHIFT TOWER AND LEVER ASSEMBLY

2 – SHIFT SOCKET

3 – SEAL

INSTALLATION

(1) Shift transmission into third gear.

(2) Clean the mating surfaces of shift tower and transmission gear case with suitable wax and grease remover.

(3) Install the shift tower onto the transmission case. No sealant is necessary between the shift tower and transmission case.

(4) Install the bolts to hold the shift tower to the isolator plate and the transmission gear case. Tighten the shift tower bolts to 8.5 N·m (6.3 ft. lbs.).

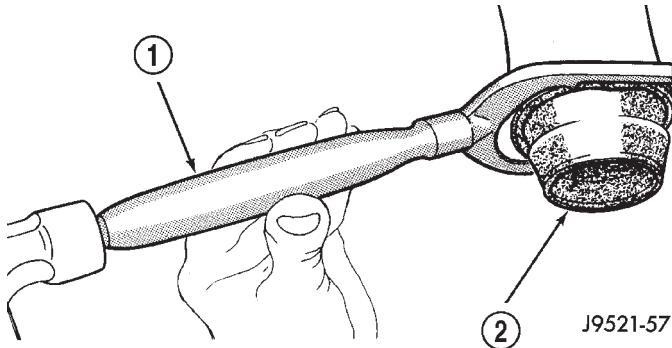
(5) Install the shift lever extension and any floor console components previously removed.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

YOKE SEAL—2WD

REMOVAL

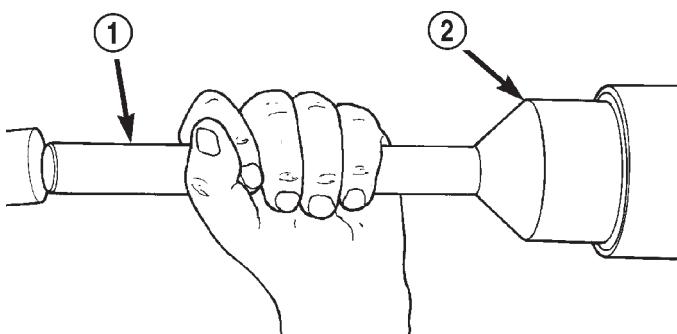
- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Mark propeller shaft and axle companion flange for alignment reference.
- (3) Disconnect and remove propeller shaft.
- (4) Remove old seal with Seal Remover C-3985-B (Fig. 5) from transmission housing.

**Fig. 5 Removing Transmission Housing Yoke Seal**

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3985-B
2 – SEAL

INSTALLATION

- (1) Place seal in position on transmission housing.
- (2) Drive seal into transmission housing with Seal Installer C-3972-A (Fig. 6).
- (3) Carefully guide propeller shaft slip yoke into housing and onto output shaft splines.
- (4) Align marks made at removal and connect propeller shaft to rear axle companion flange.



80a7e2be

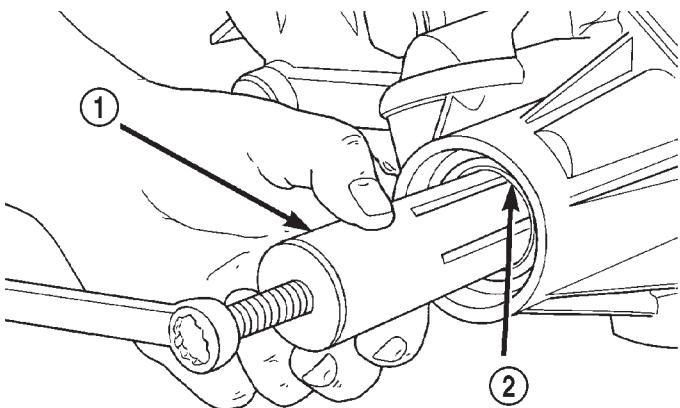
Fig. 6 Installing Transmission Housing Yoke Seal

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
2 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3972-A

REAR HOUSING YOKE BUSHING

REMOVAL

- (1) Remove housing yoke seal.
- (2) Insert Remover 6957 into rear housing. Tighten tool to bushing and remove bushing (Fig. 7).



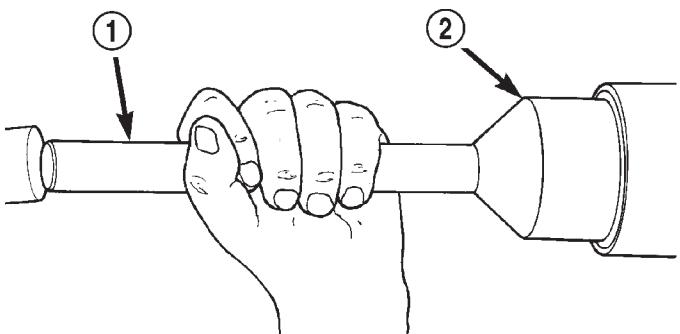
80a11095

Fig. 7 Bushing Removal—Typical

- 1 – REMOVER 6957
2 – EXTENSION HOUSING BUSHING

INSTALLATION

- (1) Align bushing oil hole with oil slot in rear housing.
- (2) Tap bushing into place with Installer 6951 and Handle C-4171.
- (3) Install new oil seal in housing using Seal Installer C-3972-A (Fig. 8).



80a7e2be

Fig. 8 Rear Housing Seal Installation

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
2 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3972-A

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

TRANSMISSION

FRONT HOUSING REMOVAL

- (1) If necessary, temporarily reinstall shift lever assembly. Shift transmission into Neutral.
- (2) If lubricant was not drained out of transmission during removal, remove drain plug and drain lubricant into container at this time.
- (3) Inspect drain plug magnet for debris.
- (4) Remove backup light switch. Switch is located on driver side of rear housing (Fig. 9).

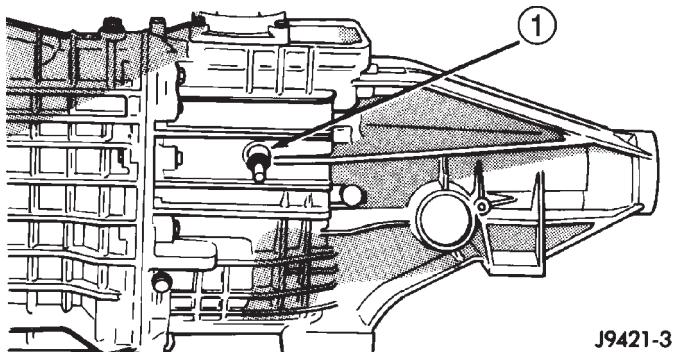


Fig. 9 Backup Light Switch Location

1 – BACKUP LIGHT SWITCH

- (5) If necessary, remove shift tower bolts and remove tower and lever assembly (Fig. 10).

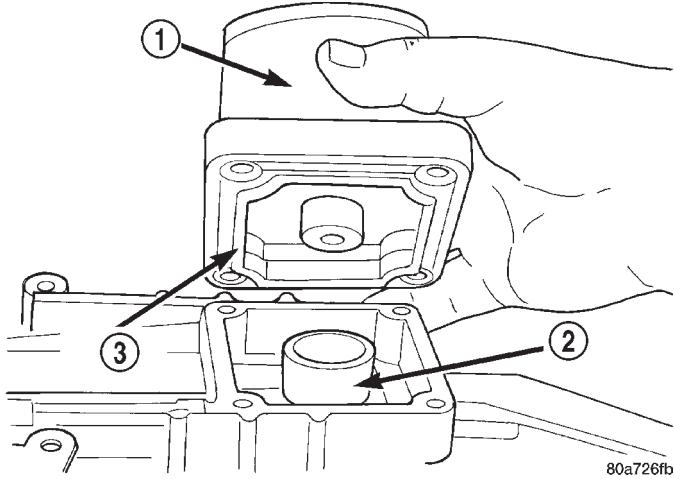


Fig. 10 Shift Tower Removal

1 – SHIFT TOWER AND LEVER ASSEMBLY
2 – SHIFT SOCKET
3 – SEAL

- (6) Remove shift shaft lock bolt (Fig. 11). Bolt is located at top of front housing just forward of shift tower. Bolt is a shoulder bolt that secures the shift shaft bushing and lever.

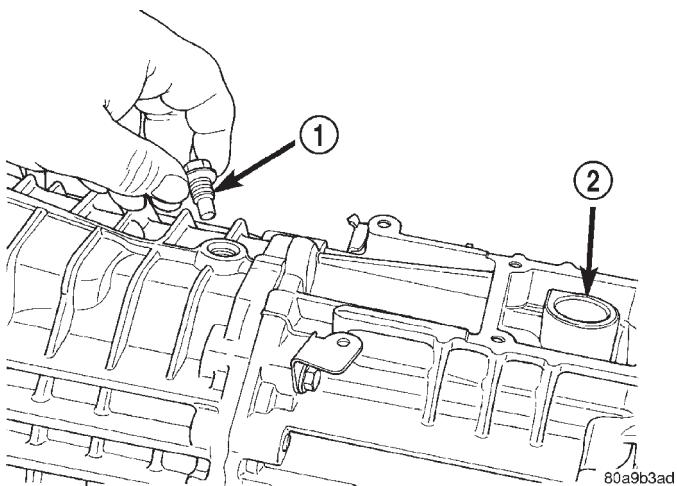


Fig. 11 Shift Shaft Lock Bolt Removal

1 – SHIFT SHAFT LOCK BOLT
2 – SHAFT SOCKET

- (7) Remove bolts attaching input shaft bearing retainer in front housing (Fig. 12). Note location of oil feed formation on retainer for installation reference.

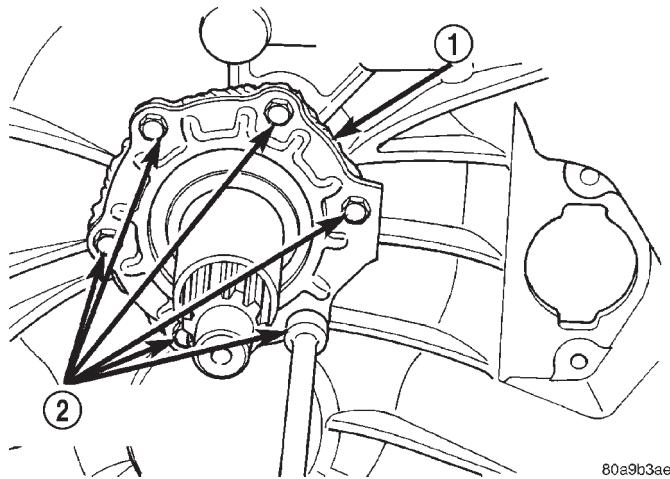


Fig. 12 Input Shaft Bearing Retainer Bolt Removal

1 – INPUT SHAFT BEARING RETAINER
2 – RETAINER BOLTS

- (8) Remove input shaft bearing retainer. Use pry tool to carefully lift retainer and break sealer bead (Fig. 13).

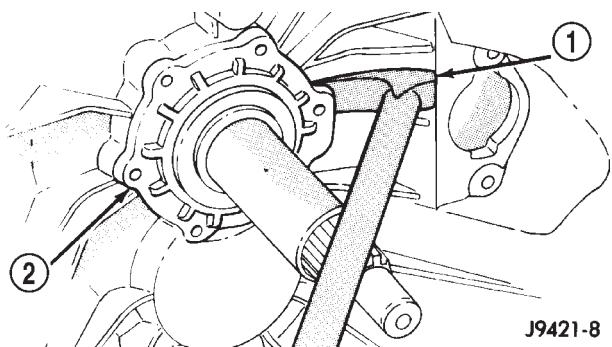
(9) Remove bearing retainer from input shaft (Fig. 14).

(10) Remove snap ring that secures input shaft in front bearing (Fig. 15).

(11) Use Remover 8117 and suitable slide hammer to remove shift shaft detent plug.

(12) Remove shift shaft detent plunger and spring (Fig. 16). Use pencil magnet to remove spring then plunger, if necessary.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

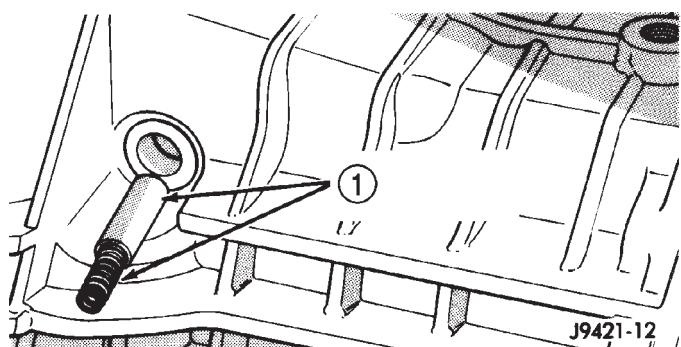


J9421-8

Fig. 13 Loosening Bearing Retainer Sealer Bead

1 – PRY TOOL

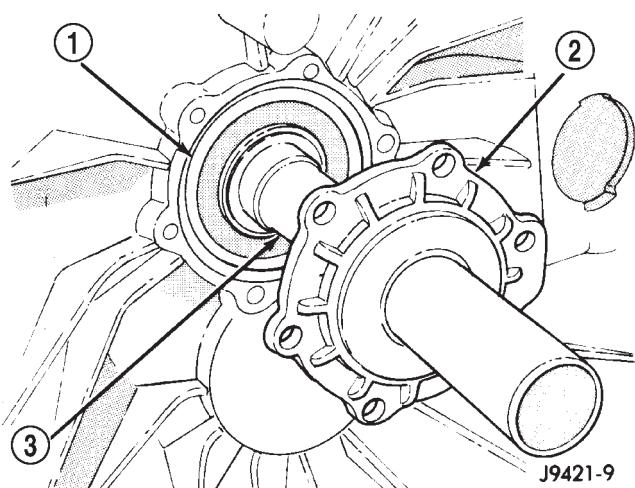
2 – INPUT SHAFT BEARING RETAINER



J9421-12

Fig. 16 Detent Plunger And Spring Removal

1 – SHIFT SHAFT DETENT PLUNGER AND SPRING



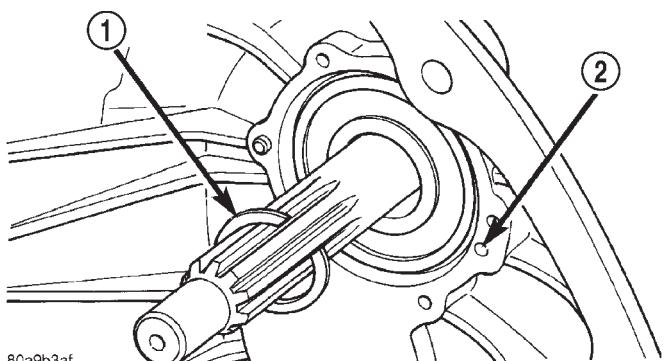
J9421-9

Fig. 14 Input Shaft Bearing Retainer Removal

1 – SHAFT BEARING

2 – BEARING RETAINER

3 – INPUT SHAFT

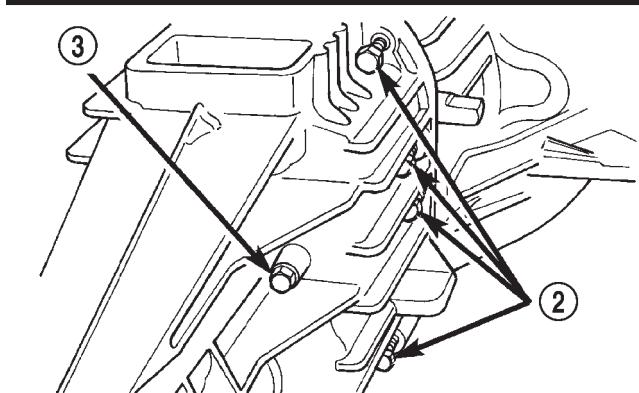


80a9b3af

Fig. 15 Input Shaft Snap Ring Removal

1 – INPUT SHAFT SNAP RING

2 – OIL FEED



80a9b3b0

Fig. 17 Housing And Bearing Retainer Bolt Locations

1 – RETAINER BOLTS

2 – HOUSING BOLTS

3 – RETAINER BOLT

4 – HOUSING BOLT LOCATIONS

(14) Separate front housing from rear housing (Fig. 18). Use plastic mallet to tap front housing off alignment dowels.

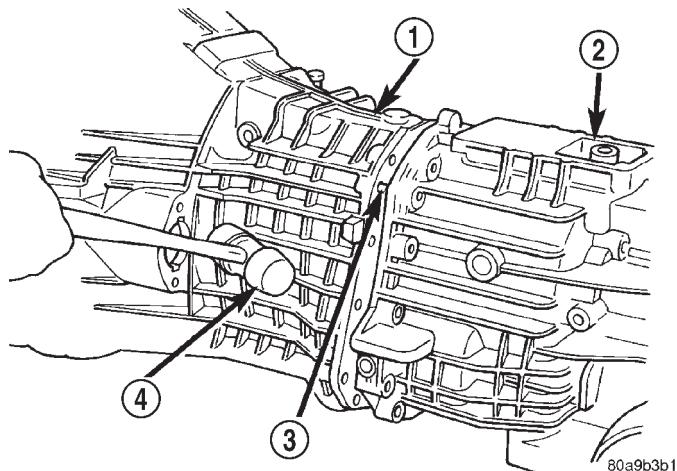


Fig. 18 Front Housing Removal

- 1 - FRONT HOUSING
- 2 - REAR HOUSING
- 3 - DOWELS (2)
- 4 - PLASTIC MALLET

(15) Remove input shaft bearing and countershaft front bearing from front case (Fig. 19). Countershaft bearing can be removed by hand.

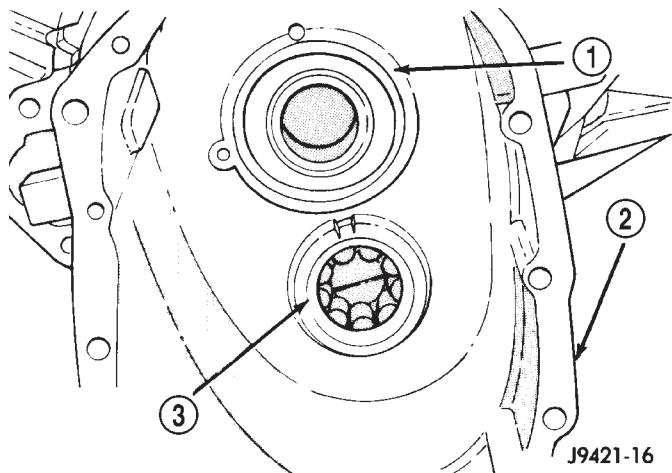


Fig. 19 Input Shaft And Countershaft Front Bearing Location

- 1 - INPUT SHAFT BEARING
- 2 - FRONT HOUSING
- 3 - COUNTERSHAFT FRONT BEARING

(16) Note position of input shaft, shift shaft and forks, and geartrain components in housing (Fig. 20).

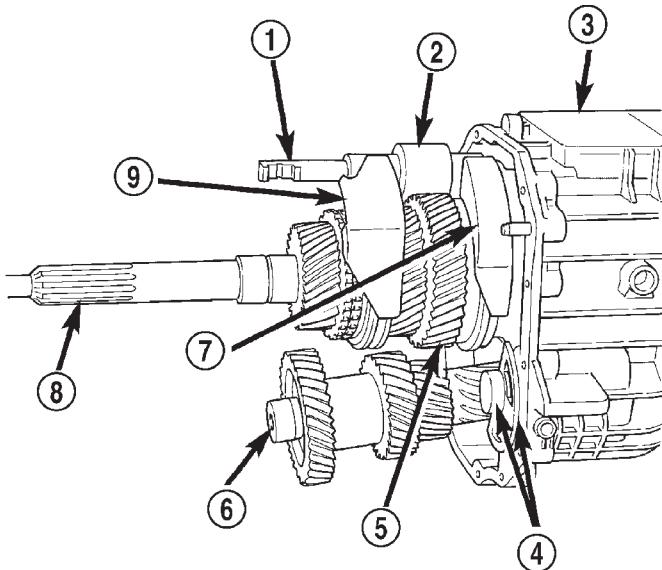


Fig. 20 Geartrain And Shift Component Identification

- 1 - SHIFT SHAFT
- 2 - BUSHING
- 3 - REAR HOUSING
- 4 - REVERSE IDLER AND SUPPORT
- 5 - OUTPUT SHAFT AND GEARS
- 6 - COUNTERSHAFT
- 7 - 1-2 FORK
- 8 - INPUT SHAFT
- 9 - 3-4 FORK

SHIFT SHAFT, SHIFT FORKS AND REVERSE IDLER SEGMENT REMOVAL

(1) Unseat roll pin that secures shift socket to shift shaft with Special Tool 6858 as follows:

(a) Position Tool 6858 on shift socket. Then center tool over roll pin. Be sure tool legs are firmly seated on shift socket (Fig. 21).

(b) Tilt socket toward side of case. This places roll pin at slight angle to avoid trapping pin between gear teeth.

(c) Tighten tool punch to press roll pin downward and out of shift socket (Fig. 21). Roll pin does not have to come completely out of shift shaft; it only has to clear shift socket. Be careful not to drive roll pin out of shaft far enough to jam into the geartrain.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

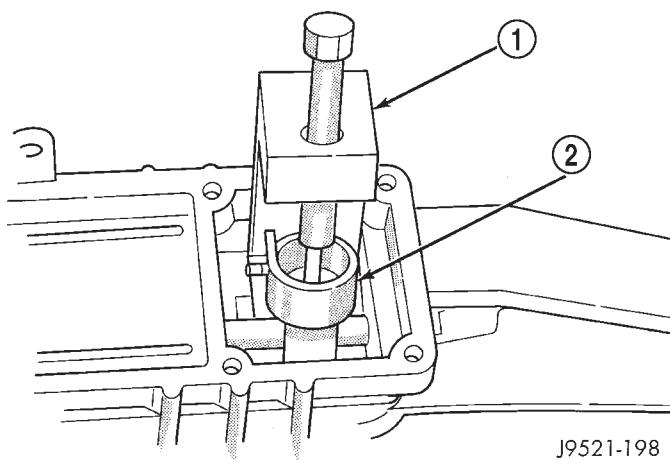


Fig. 21 Unseating Shift Socket Roll Pin With Tool 6858

1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6858
2 – SHIFT SOCKET

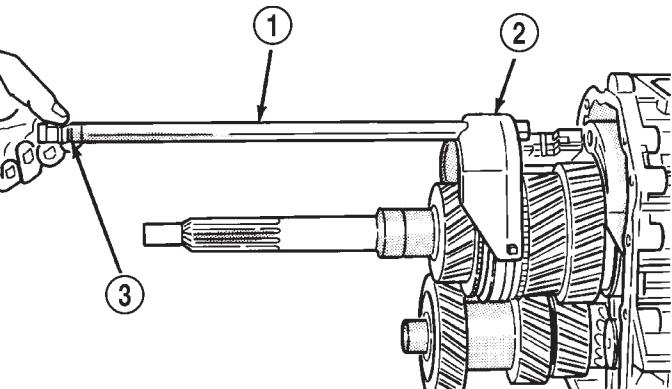


Fig. 23 Shift Shaft Removal

1 – SHIFT SHAFT
2 – 3-4 FORK
3 – SHAFT DETENT NOTCHES

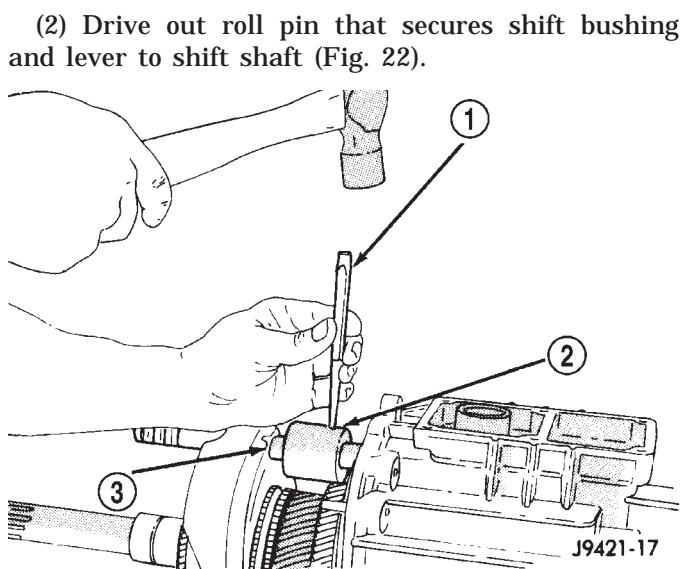


Fig. 22 Removing Shift Shaft Lever And Bushing Roll Pin

1 – PIN PUNCH
2 – BUSHING AND LEVER
3 – SHIFT SHAFT

- (3) Pull shift shaft straight out of rear housing, shift socket, fifth-reverse fork, and 1-2 fork (Fig. 23).
- (4) Remove shift socket from rear housing (Fig. 24).
- (5) Remove lever and bushing (Fig. 25).

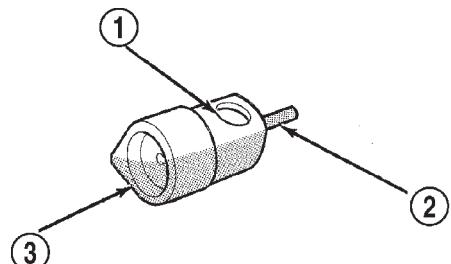


Fig. 24 Shift Socket And Roll Pin

1 – SHAFT BORE
2 – ROLL PIN
3 – SHIFT SOCKET

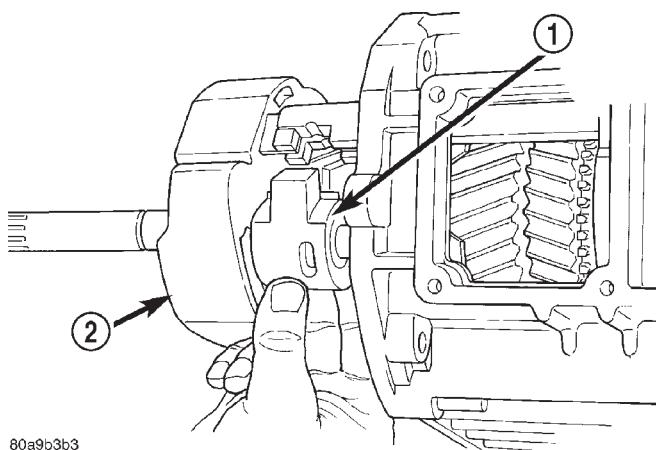


Fig. 25 Removing Shift Shaft Lever And Bushing

1 – SHAFT LEVER AND BUSHING
2 – 3-4 FORK

(6) Remove 3-4 fork. Rotate 3-4 fork around synchro sleeve until fork clears shift arms on 1-2 and fifth-reverse forks. Then remove 3-4 fork (Fig. 26).

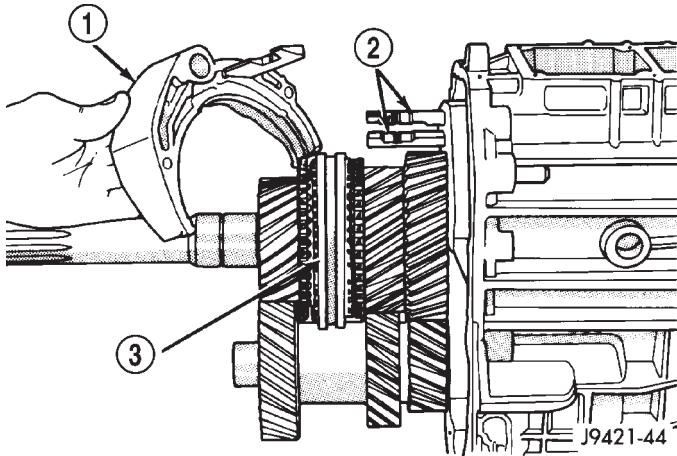


Fig. 26 Removing 3-4 Shift Fork

- 1 - 3-4 FORK
- 2 - 1-2 AND 5TH-REVERSE FORK ARMS
- 3 - 3-4 SYNCHRO SLEEVE

- (7) Remove the front reverse idler shaft bolt.
- (8) Loosen rear reverse idler shaft bolt.
- (9) Remove reverse idler shaft support segment by sliding it straight out of housing.
- (10) Support geartrain and rear housing on Assembly Fixture Tool 6747 as follows:
 - (a) Adjust height of reverse idler pedestal rod until the reverse idle shaft bottoms in Cup 8115.
 - (b) Position Adapters 6747-1A and 6747-2A on Assembly Fixture 6747.
 - (c) Slide fixture tool onto input shaft, counter-shaft and idler gear (Fig. 27).
 - (d) Stand geartrain and rear housing upright on fixture (Fig. 28). Have helper hold fixture tool in place while housing and geartrain is being rotated into upright position.
- (11) Remove rear bolt holding reverse idler shaft in housing.

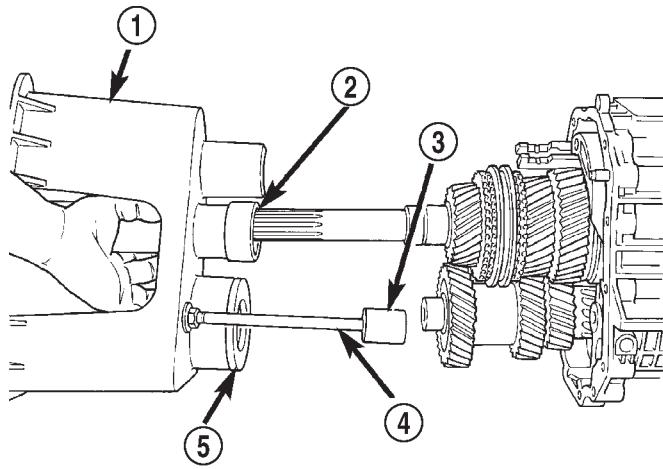


Fig. 27 Installing Assembly Fixture On Geartrain

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6747
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL 6747-1A
- 3 - SPECIAL TOOL 8115
- 4 - REVERSE IDLER PEDESTAL
- 5 - SPECIAL TOOL 6747-2A

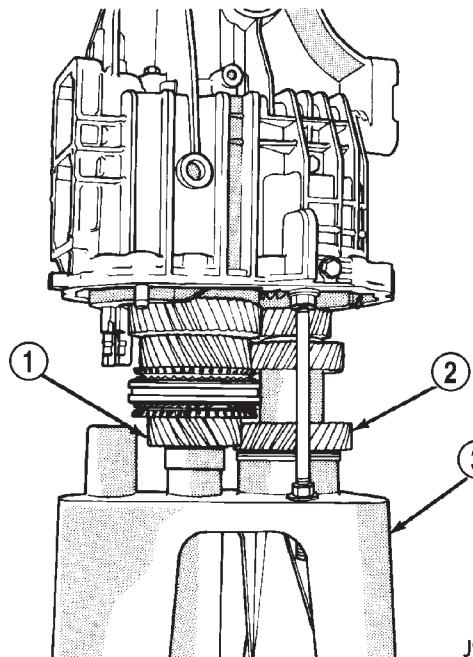


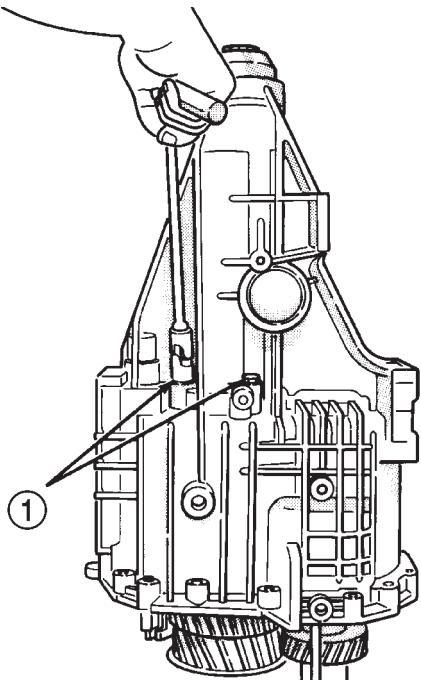
Fig. 28 Geartrain And Housing Mounted On Fixture Tool

- 1 - INPUT SHAFT
- 2 - COUNTERSHAFT
- 3 - SPECIAL TOOL 6747

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

REAR HOUSING REMOVAL—2WD

(1) On 2-wheel drive transmission, remove three bolts that attach output shaft bearing retainer to rear case (Fig. 29). Bolts are rear of shift tower opening.



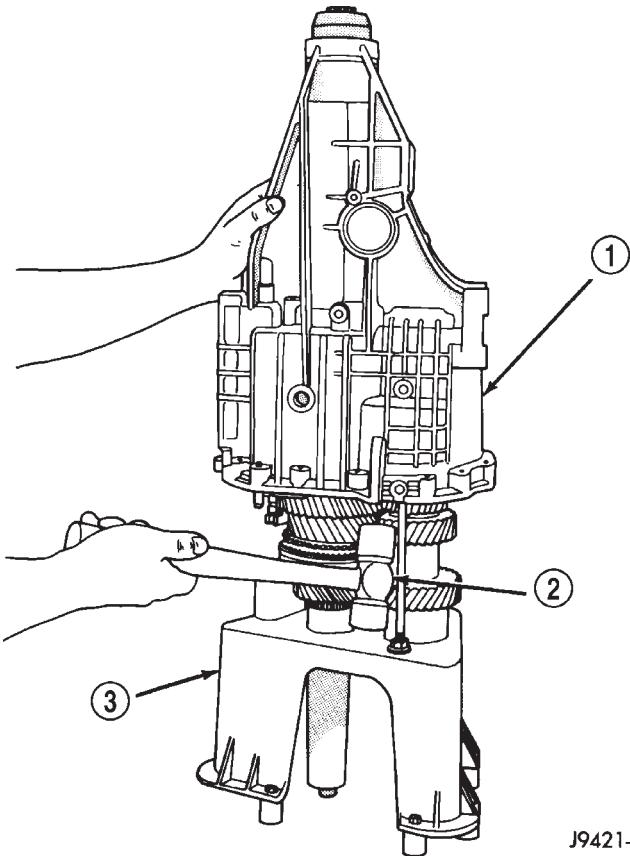
J9421-50

Fig. 29 Removing/Installing Output Shaft Bearing Retainer Bolts—2WD

1 – OUTPUT SHAFT BEARING RETAINER BOLTS (THIRD BOLT IS AT OPPOSITE SIDE OF CASE)

(2) Unseat output shaft bearing from bearing bore in rear housing. Use plastic or rawhide mallet to tap rear housing upward and off output shaft bearing as shown (Fig. 30).

(3) Lift rear housing up and off geartrain (Fig. 31).



J9421-49

Fig. 30 Unseating Rear Housing From Output Shaft Bearing—2WD

1 – REAR HOUSING
2 – PLASTIC OR RAWHIDE MALLET
3 – FIXTURE TOOL

(4) Remove countershaft rear bearing from countershaft (Fig. 32).

(5) Examine condition of bearing bore and idler shaft notch in rear housing. Replace housing if any of these components are damaged.

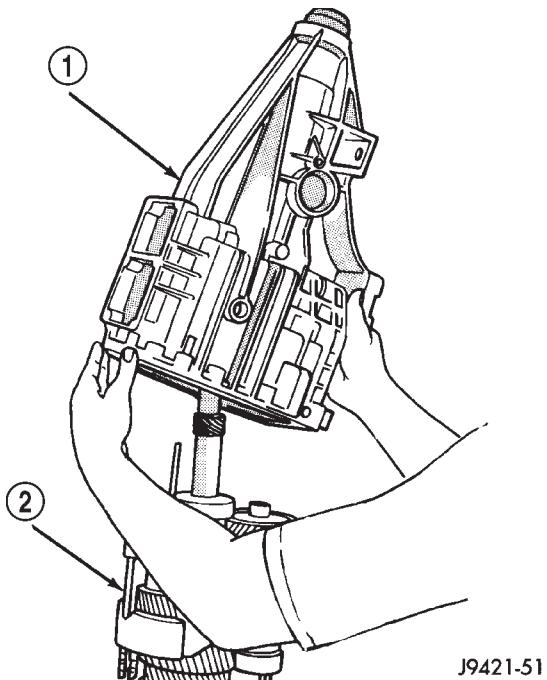


Fig. 31 Rear Housing Removal—2WD

- 1 – REAR HOUSING
- 2 – SHIFT FORKS AND GEARTRAIN

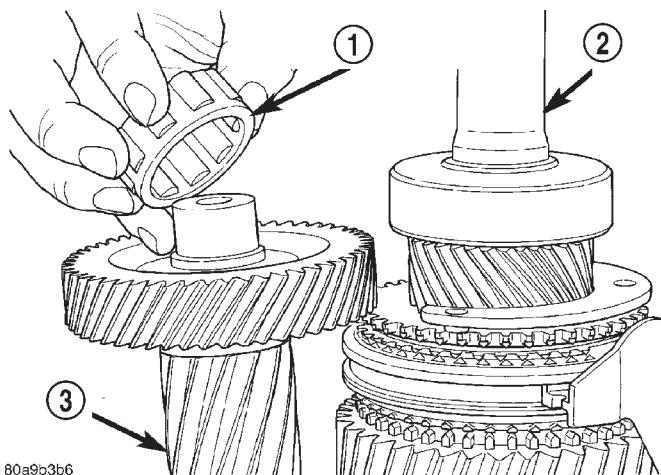


Fig. 32 Remove Countershaft Rear Bearing

- 1 – COUNTERSHAFT REAR BEARING
- 2 – OUTPUT SHAFT
- 3 – COUNTER SHAFT

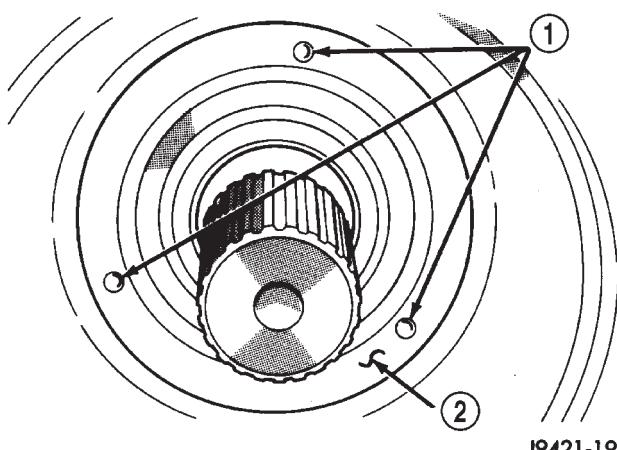


Fig. 33 Location Of Dimples In Seal Face—4WD

- 1 – LOCATION OF DIMPLES
- 2 – SEAL FACE

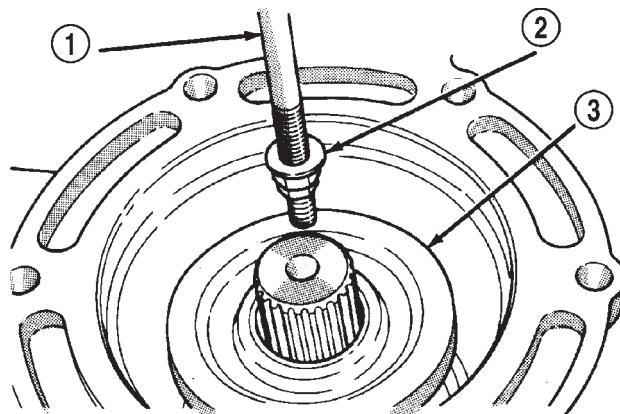


Fig. 34 Rear Seal Removal—4WD

- 1 – SLIDE HAMMER
- 2 – REMOVER TOOL
- 3 – REAR SEAL

REAR ADAPTER HOUSING REMOVAL—4WD

(1) Locate dimples in face of rear seal (Fig. 33). Use a suitable slide hammer mounted screw to remove seal by inserting screw into seal at dimple locations (Fig. 34).

(2) Remove rear bearing snap ring from output shaft with heavy duty snap ring pliers (Fig. 35).

(3) Lift rear adapter housing upward and off geartrain (Fig. 36).

(4) Remove bearing retainer bolts and remove rear bearing retainer and rear bearing (Fig. 37). Use hammer handle to push or tap bearing out of housing if needed.

(5) Examine condition of bearing bore, countershaft rear bearing race and idler shaft notch in rear housing. Replace housing if race, bore or notch are worn or damaged.

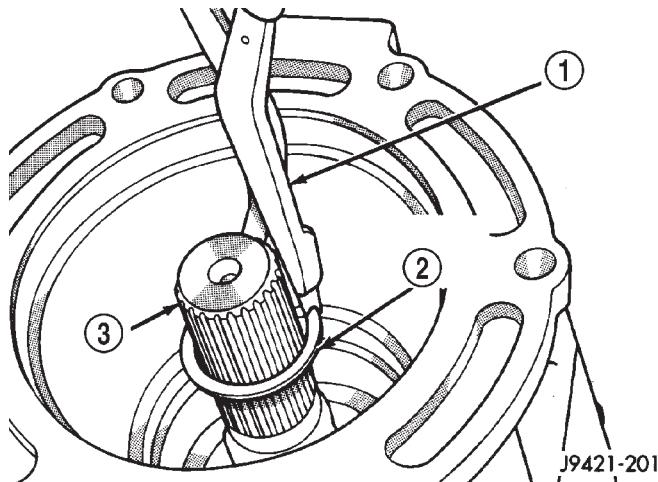
GEARTRAIN DISASSEMBLY FROM FIXTURE

(1) Remove reverse idler gear assembly from assembly fixture cup.

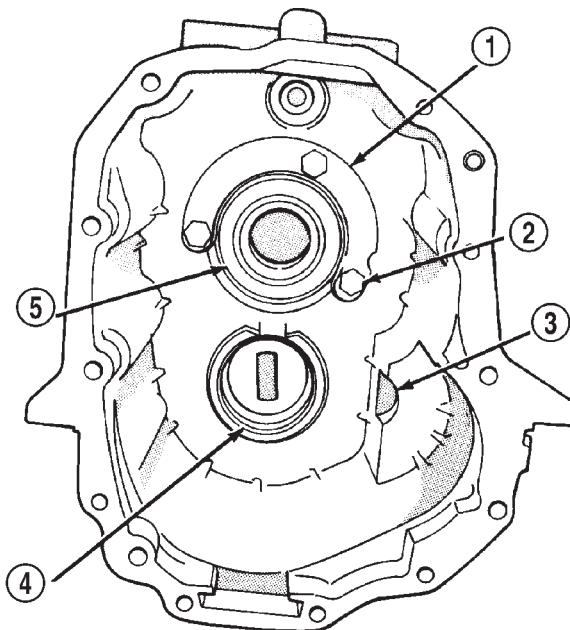
(2) Remove 1-2 and fifth-reverse forks from synchro sleeves.

(3) Slide countershaft out of fixture tool.

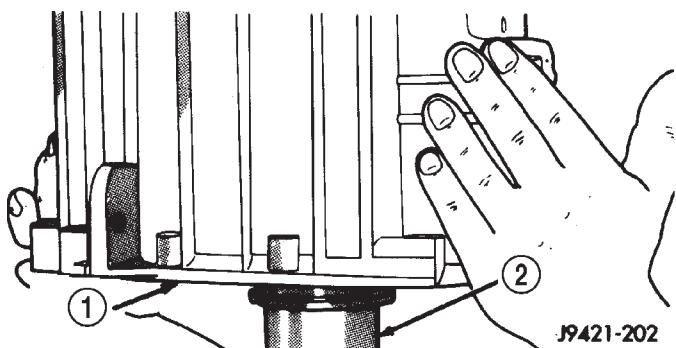
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 35 Rear Bearing Snap Ring Removal—4WD**

- 1 – HEAVY DUTY SNAP RING PLIERS
- 2 – REAR BEARING SNAP RING
- 3 – OUTPUT SHAFT

**Fig. 37 Rear Adapter Housing Components**

- 1 – BEARING RETAINER
- 2 – RETAINER BOLTS (3)
- 3 – IDLER SHAFT NOTCH
- 4 – COUNTERSHAFT REAR BEARING RACE
- 5 – REAR BEARING

**Fig. 36 Rear Adapter Housing Removal**

- 1 – REAR ADAPTER HOUSING
- 2 – OUTPUT SHAFT

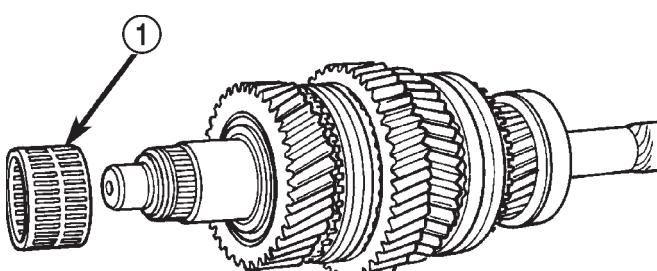
(4) Remove output shaft bearing retainer from rear surface of fifth gear (retainer will drop onto gear after bolts are removed).

(5) Lift and remove output shaft and gears off input shaft.

(6) Lift and remove input shaft, pilot bearing and fourth gear synchro ring from assembly fixture tool.

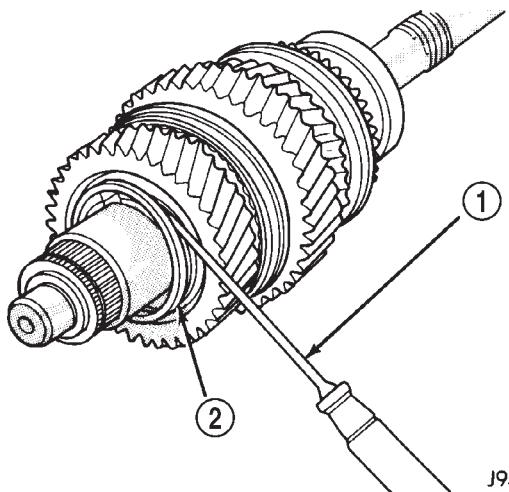
OUTPUT SHAFT DISASSEMBLY

NOTE: The synchronizer hubs and sleeves are different and must not be intermixed. It is recommended that each synchronizer unit be removed as an assembly to avoid intermixing parts. It is also recommended that each synchro hub and sleeve be marked with a scribe or paint for correct assembly reference.

**Fig. 38 Third Gear Needle Bearing Removal**

- 1 – THIRD GEAR NEEDLE BEARING

(4) Remove retaining ring that secures two-piece thrust washer on shaft (Fig. 39). Use small pry tool to remove retaining ring.

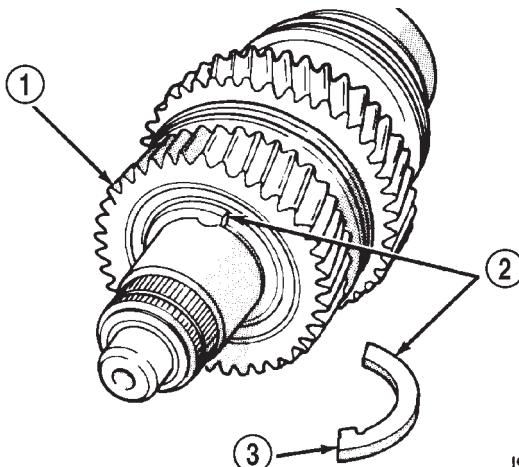


J9421-23

Fig. 39 Thrust Washer Retaining Ring Removal

- 1 – PRY TOOL
2 – THRUST WASHER RETAINING RING

(5) Remove two-piece thrust washer (Fig. 40). Note position of washer locating lugs in shaft notches for installation reference. The diamond shaped marks on the washer surface should be facing the front of the shaft.



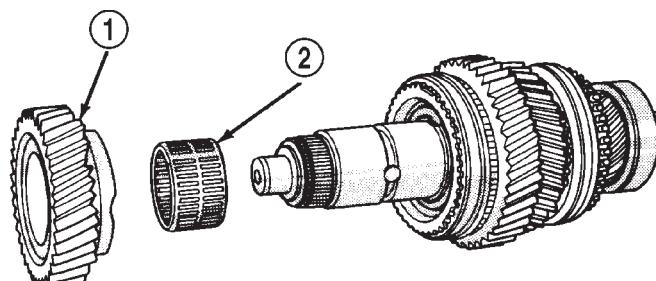
J9421-24

Fig. 40 Two-Piece Thrust Washer Removal

- 1 – SECOND GEAR
2 – THRUST WASHER (2-PIECE)
3 – WASHER LOCATING LUG

(6) Remove second gear and needle bearing (Fig. 41).

(7) Remove second gear synchro ring, synchro friction cone, and synchro cone (Fig. 42).

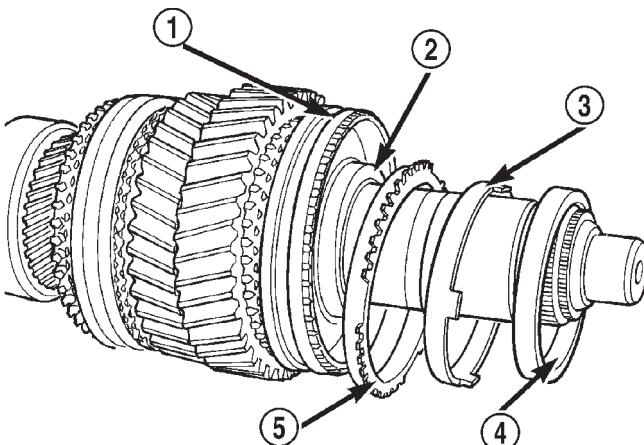


J9421-25

Fig. 41 Second Gear And Needle Bearing Removal

- 1 – SECOND GEAR
2 – SECOND GEAR NEEDLE BEARING

- (8) Remove interm ring.
(9) Remove 1-2 synchro hub snap ring.



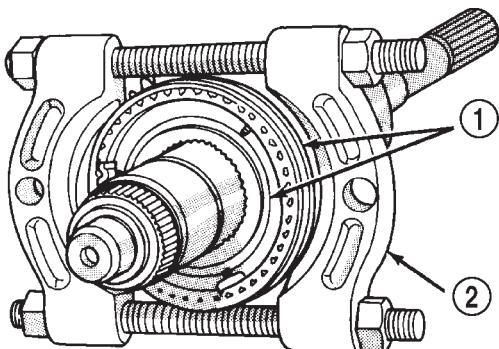
80a9b3b8

Fig. 42 Second Gear Synchro Ring And Cones Removal

- 1 – 1-2 SYNCHRO HUB AND SLEEVE
2 – INTERM RING
3 – SYNCHRO FRICTION CONE
4 – SYNCHRO CONE
5 – SYNCHRO RING

(10) Remove 1-2 synchro hub and sleeve and first gear from output shaft with shop press and Remover Tool 1130 (Fig. 43). Position Tool 1130 between first and reverse gears.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

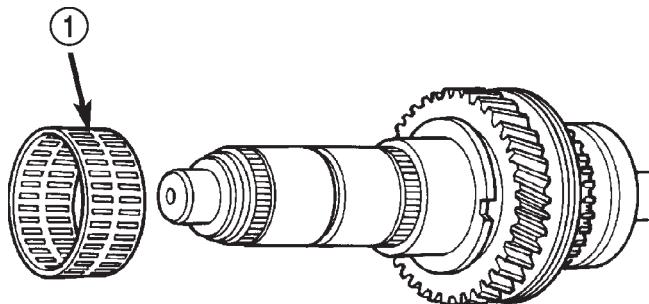


J9421-27

Fig. 43 Hub And Sleeve Removal—1-2 Synchro

- 1 – 1-2 SYNCHRO HUB AND SLEEVE
2 – SPECIAL TOOL 1130

(11) Remove first gear needle bearing (Fig. 44).



80a9b3b9

Fig. 44 First Gear Needle Bearing Removal

- 1 – FIRST GEAR NEEDLE BEARING

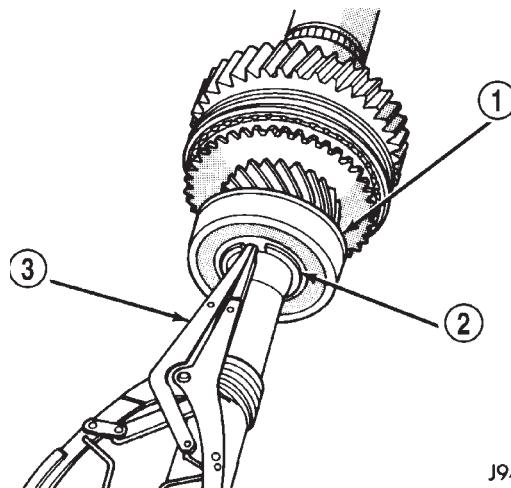
(12) Remove output shaft bearing snap ring (Fig. 45).

(13) On 2-wheel drive models, remove output shaft bearing.

(14) Remove fifth gear (Fig. 46).

(15) Remove fifth gear needle bearing. Spread bearing apart just enough to clear shoulder on output shaft (Fig. 47).

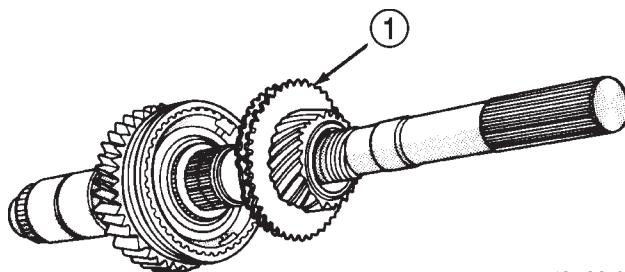
(16) Remove fifth-reverse synchro hub snap ring (Fig. 48).



J9421-29

Fig. 45 Output Shaft Bearing Snap Ring Removal

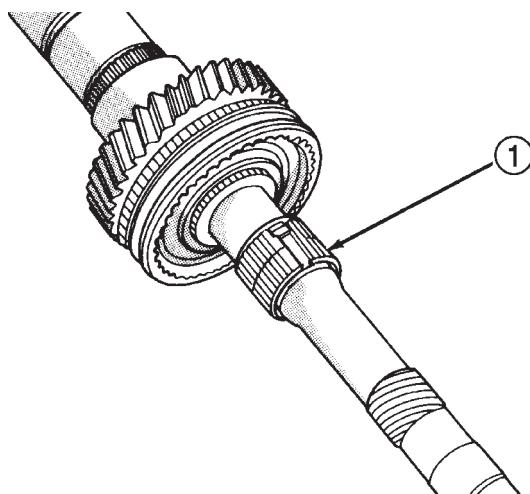
- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT BEARING
2 – BEARING SNAP RING
3 – SNAP RING PLIERS



J9421-31

Fig. 46 Fifth Gear Removal

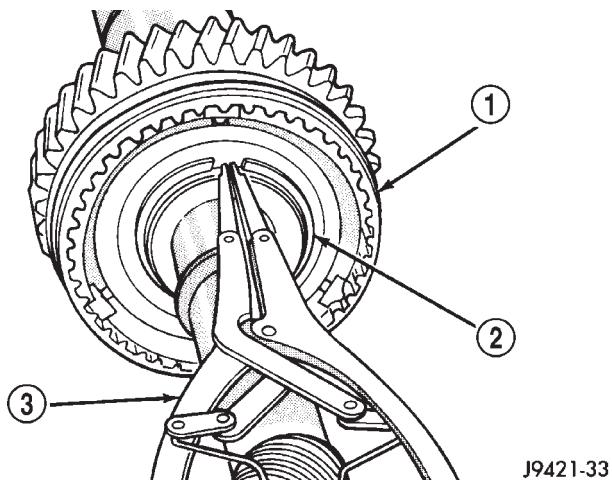
- 1 – FIFTH GEAR AND SYNCHRO RING



J9421-32

Fig. 47 Fifth Gear Needle Bearing Removal

- 1 – FIFTH GEAR NEEDLE BEARING (SPREAD BEARING TO CLEAR SHOULDER ON SHAFT)

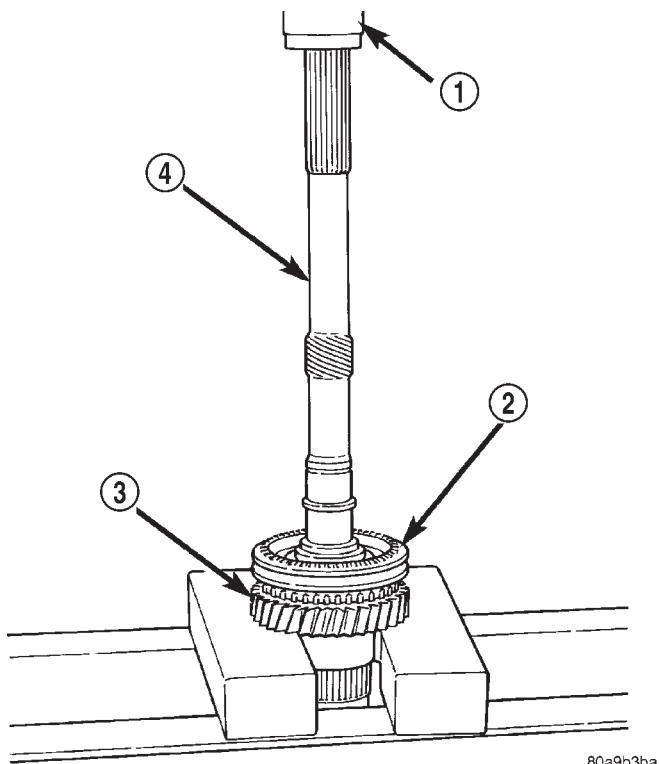


J9421-33

Fig. 48 Fifth-Reverse Synchro Hub Snap Ring Removal

- 1 – FIFTH-REVERSE SYNCHRO HUB AND SLEEVE
- 2 – SYNCHRO HUB SNAP RING
- 3 – SNAP RING PLIERS

(17) Remove fifth-reverse synchro hub and sleeve with shop (Fig. 49).

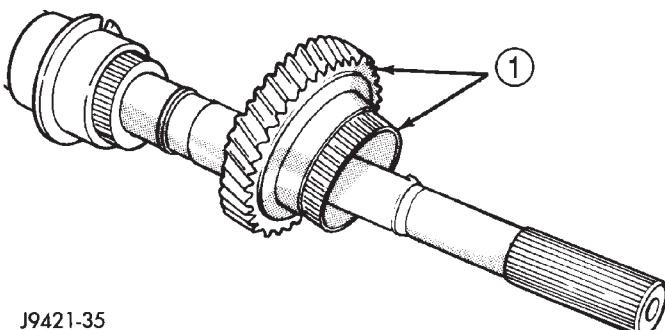


80a9b3ba

Fig. 49 Fifth-Reverse Synchro Hub And Sleeve Removal

- 1 – PRESS
- 2 – FIFTH-REVERSE SYNCHRO HUB AND SLEEVE
- 3 – REVERSE GEAR
- 4 – OUTPUT SHAFT

(18) Remove reverse gear and needle bearing (Fig. 50).



J9421-35

Fig. 50 Reverse Gear And Needle Bearing Removal

- 1 – REVERSE GEAR AND NEEDLE BEARING

REVERSE IDLER DISASSEMBLY

- (1) Remove idler gear snap rings (Fig. 51).
- (2) Remove thrust washer, wave washer, thrust plate and idler gear from shaft.
- (3) Remove idler gear needle bearing from shaft.

ASSEMBLY

Gaskets are not used in the NV3500 transmission. Sealers are used at all case joints. The recommended sealer is Mopar® Silicone Sealer, or equivalent, for all case joints. Apply these products as indicated in the assembly procedures.

NOTE: It is very important that the transmission shift components be in Neutral position during assembly. This is necessary to prevent damaging synchro and shift components when the housings are installed.

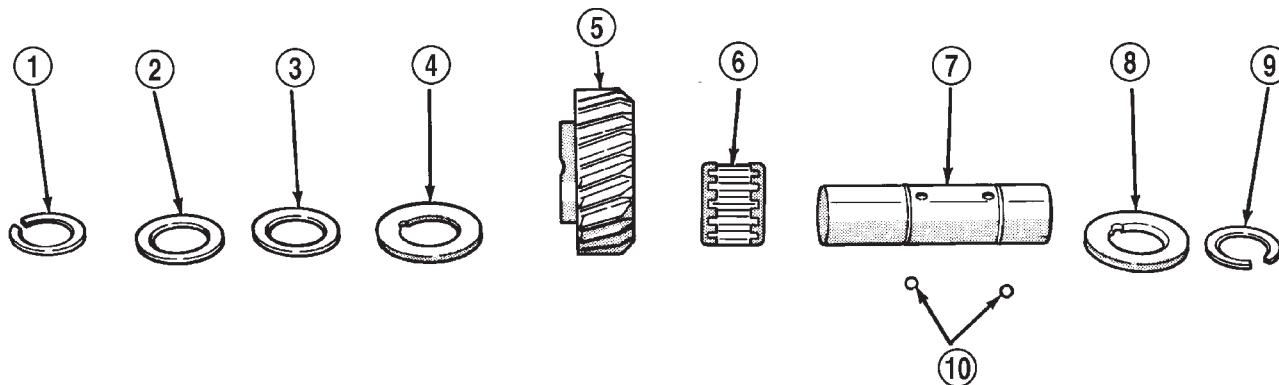
The 3-4, 1-2 and fifth-reverse synchro hub snap rings can be fitted selectively. New snap rings are available in 0.05 mm (0.0019 in.) thickness increments. Use the thickest snap ring that will fit in each snap ring groove.

SYNCHRO COMPONENT ASSEMBLY

The easiest method of assembling each synchro is to install the springs, struts and detent balls one at a time as follows:

- (1) Slide the sleeve part way onto the hub. Leave enough room to install the spring in the hub and the strut in the hub groove.
- (2) Install the first spring in the hub. Then install a strut over the spring. Be sure the spring is seated in the spring bore in the strut.
- (3) Slide the sleeve onto the hub just far enough to hold the first strut and spring in place.
- (4) Place the detent ball in the top of the strut. Then carefully work the sleeve over the ball to hold it in place. A small flat blade screwdriver can be used

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9421-53

Fig. 51 Reverse Idler Components

- 1 - SNAP RING
- 2 - FLAT WASHER
- 3 - WAVE WASHER
- 4 - THRUST WASHER
- 5 - REVERSE IDLER GEAR

- 6 - IDLER GEAR BEARING
- 7 - IDLER SHAFT
- 8 - THRUST WASHER
- 9 - SNAP RING
- 10 - THRUST WASHER LOCK BALLS

to press the ball into place while moving the sleeve over it.

(5) Repeat the procedure for the remaining springs, struts and balls. Tape, or a rubber band can be used to temporarily secure each strut and ball as they are installed.

(6) Verify synchro assembly. Be sure the three springs, struts and detent balls are all in place (Fig. 52).

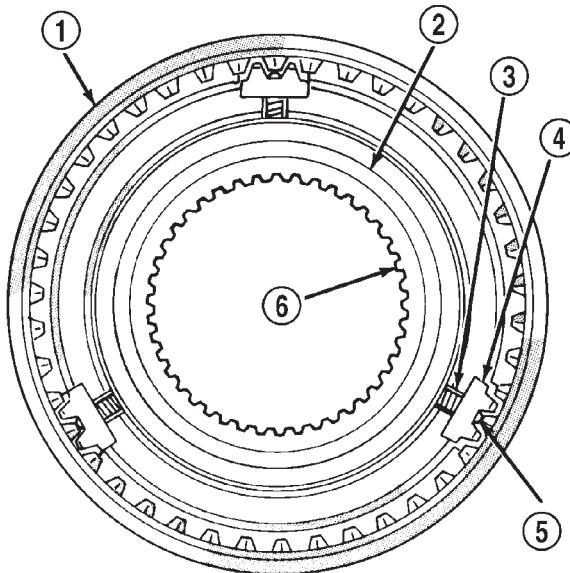
OUTPUT SHAFT ASSEMBLY

(1) Lubricate shaft, gears and bearings with recommended lubricant during assembly. Petroleum jelly can be used to hold parts in place.

(2) Check bearing surfaces of output shaft for nicks or scratches. Smooth surfaces with 320/400 grit emery cloth if necessary. Apply oil to emery cloth and shaft surface before polishing.

(3) Inspect and replace any synchro ring that exhibits wear or damage. Completely immerse each synchro ring in lubricant before installation.

(4) Lubricate and install reverse gear needle bearing on shaft (Fig. 53). Slide bearing up against shoulder on output shaft.



J9421-57

Fig. 52 Assembled View Of Synchro Components

- 1 - SLEEVE
- 2 - HUB SHOULDER
- 3 - SPRING (3)
- 4 - STRUT (3)
- 5 - DETENT BALL (3)
- 6 - HUB

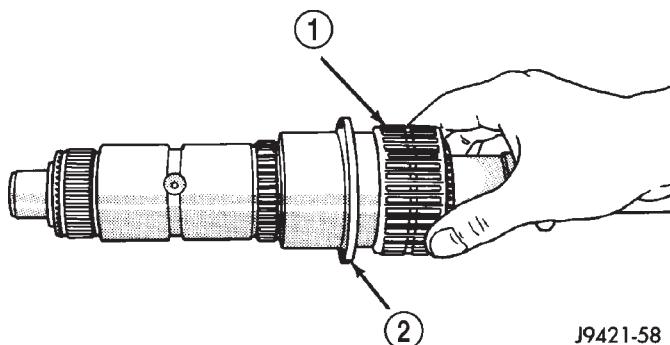


Fig. 53 Reverse Gear Bearing Installation

- 1 – REVERSE GEAR BEARING
2 – SHOULDER

(5) Install reverse gear over needle bearing (Fig. 54).

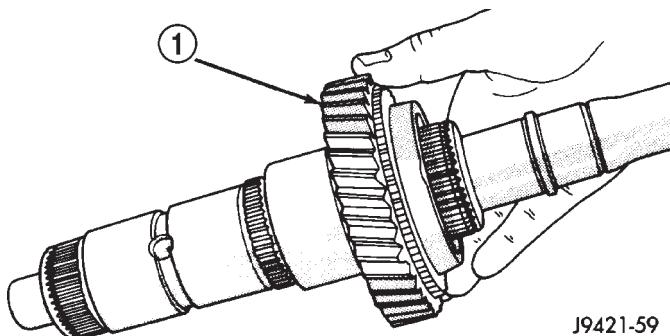


Fig. 54 Reverse Gear Installation

- 1 – REVERSE GEAR

(6) Install solid brass synchro ring on reverse gear (Fig. 55).

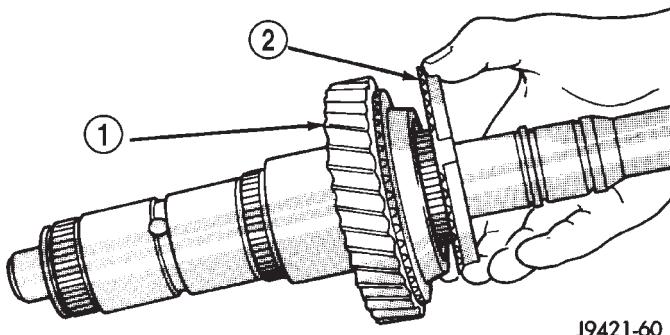


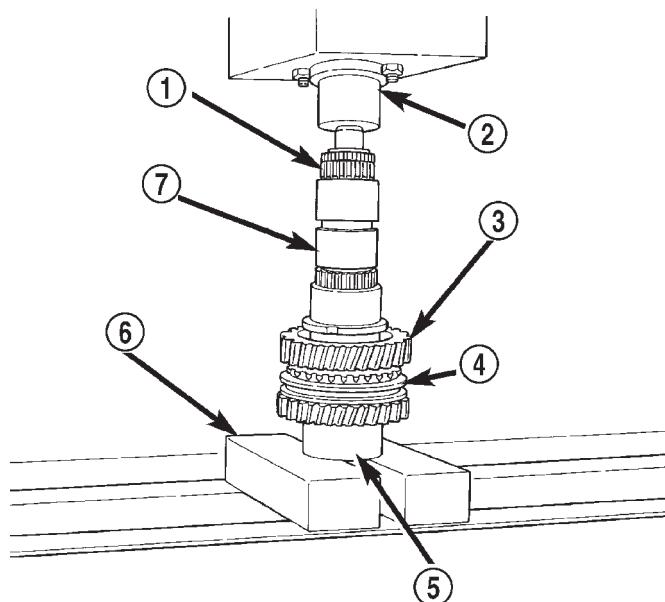
Fig. 55 Reverse Gear Synchro Ring Installation

- 1 – REVERSE GEAR
2 – SYNCHRO RING (SOLID BRASS)

(7) Assemble fifth-reverse synchro hub, sleeve, struts, springs and detent balls, if not previously done.

CAUTION: The fifth-reverse synchro hub and sleeve can be installed backwards if care is not exercised. One side of the hub has shoulders around the hub bore. Make sure this side of the hub is facing the front of the shaft. In addition, one side of the sleeve is tapered. Be sure the sleeve is installed so the tapered side will be facing the front of the shaft.

(8) Start fifth-reverse synchro assembly on output shaft splines by hand. Then seat synchro onto shaft with shop press and Remover 6310-1 (Fig. 56).



80a9b3bb

Fig. 56 Fifth-Reverse Synchro Assembly Installation

- 1 – SPACER
2 – PRESS RAM
3 – REVERSE GEAR
4 – FIFTH-REVERSE SYNCHRO ASSEMBLY
5 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310-1
6 – PRESS BLOCKS
7 – OUTPUT SHAFT

(9) Install new fifth-reverse hub snap ring (Fig. 57) as follows:

(a) Snap rings are available in thicknesses from 2.00 mm to 2.20 mm (0.078 to 0.086 in.).

(b) Install thickest snap ring that will fit in shaft groove.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(c) Verify that snap ring is completely seated in groove before proceeding.

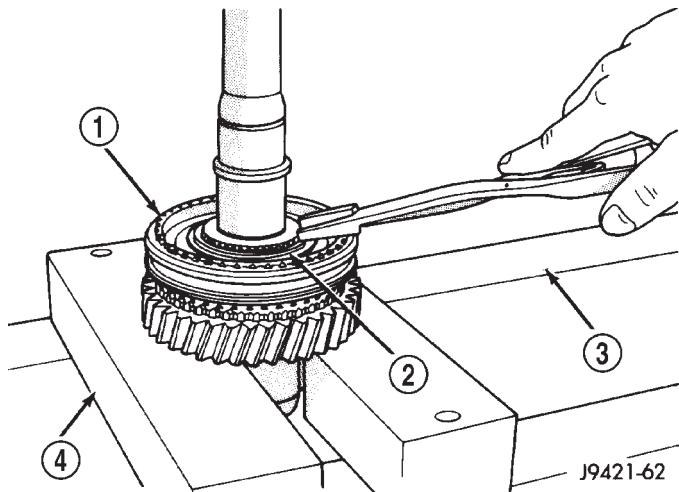


Fig. 57 Installing Fifth-Reverse Synchro Hub Snap Ring

- 1 – FIFTH-REVERSE SYNCHRO ASSEMBLY
- 2 – SNAP RING
- 3 – PRESS BED
- 4 – PRESS BLOCKS

(10) Install fifth gear synchro ring in synchro hub and sleeve (Fig. 58).

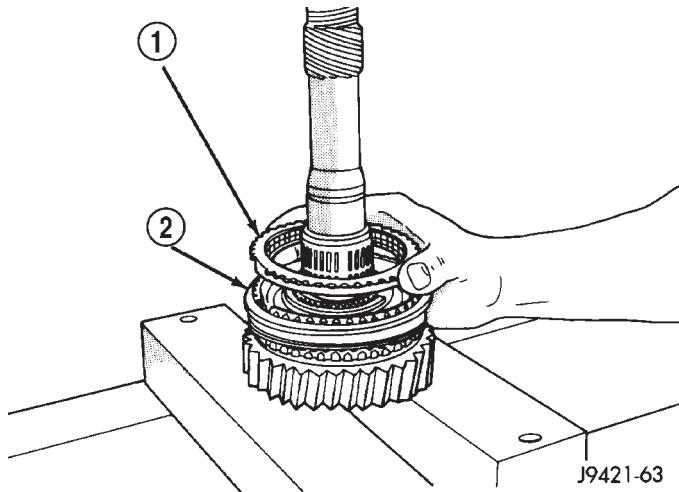


Fig. 58 Installing Fifth Gear Synchro Ring

- 1 – FIFTH-SPEED SYNCHRO RING
- 2 – FIFTH-REVERSE SYNCHRO ASSEMBLY

(11) Install fifth gear bearing. Spread bearing only enough to clear shoulder on output shaft (Fig. 59). Be sure bearing is properly seated after installation.

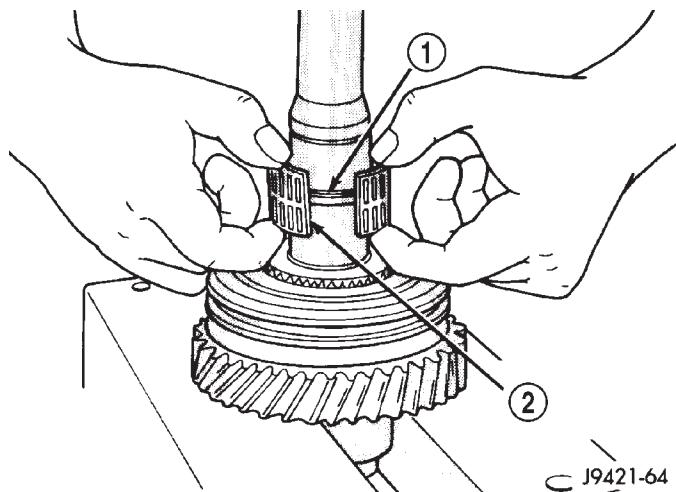


Fig. 59 Installing Fifth Gear Bearing

- 1 – SHAFT SHOULDER
- 2 – FIFTH GEAR BEARING

(12) Install fifth gear on shaft and onto bearing (Fig. 60).

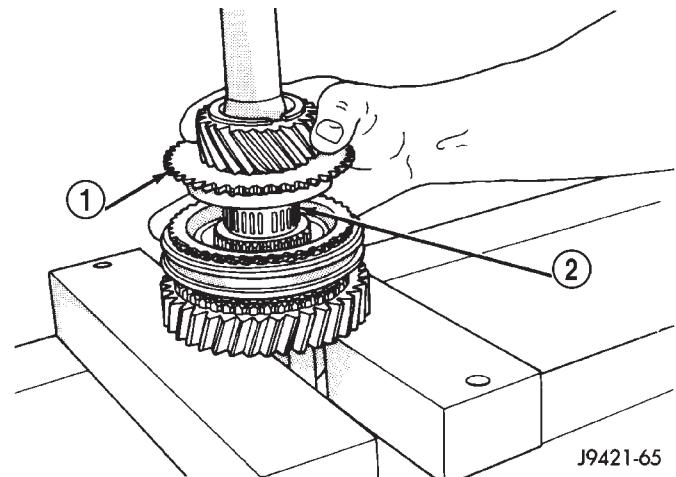


Fig. 60 Fifth Gear Installation

- 1 – FIFTH GEAR
- 2 – BEARING

(13) Invert output shaft and set the shaft in Remover 6310-1 so that fifth gear is seated on the tool (Fig. 61).

(14) Install first gear bearing on output shaft (Fig. 61). Be sure bearing is seated on shaft shoulder and is properly joined.

(15) Install the first gear inner blocker ring onto first gear.

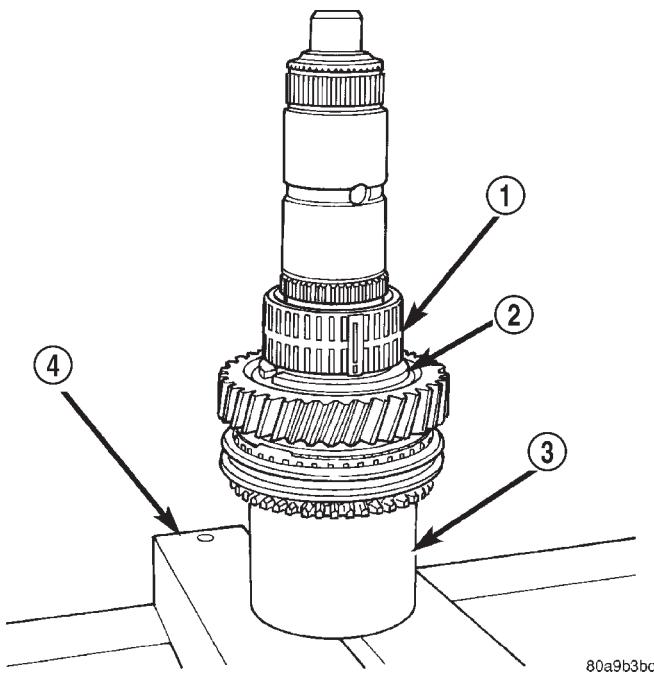


Fig. 61 First Gear Bearing Installation

- 1 – FIRST GEAR BEARING
- 2 – SHAFT SHOULDER
- 3 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310–1
- 4 – PRESS BLOCKS

(16) Install first gear on shaft and over bearing (Fig. 62).

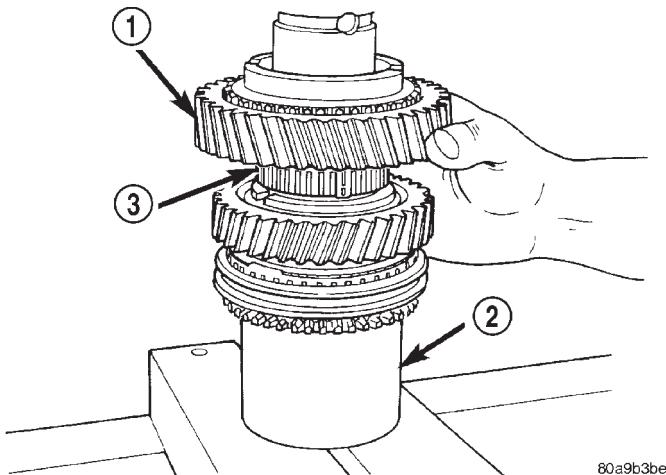


Fig. 62 First Gear Installation

- 1 – FIRST GEAR
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310–1
- 3 – BEARING

(17) Install the first gear friction cone over the inner blocker ring.

(18) Install first gear synchro/outer blocker ring (Fig. 63) (Fig. 63) over the first gear friction cone.

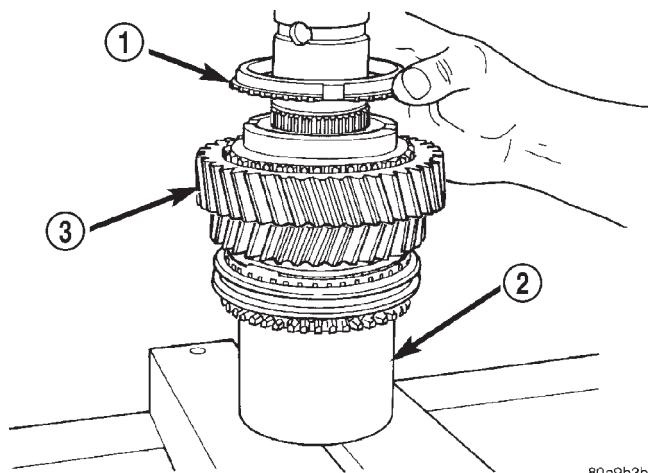


Fig. 63 First Gear Synchro Ring Installation

- 1 – FIRST GEAR SYNCHRO RING
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310–1
- 3 – FIRST GEAR

(19) Assemble 1-2 synchro hub sleeve, springs, struts and detent balls.

CAUTION: The 1-2 synchro hub and sleeve can be installed backwards if care is not exercised. One side of the synchro sleeve is marked First Gear Side. Be sure this side of the sleeve will face first gear after installation.

(20) Start 1-2 synchro assembly on shaft by hand (Fig. 64). Be sure synchro sleeve is properly positioned. Side marked first side must be facing first gear.

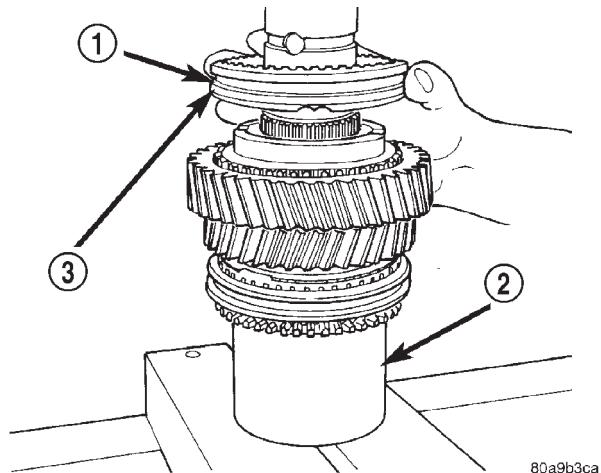


Fig. 64 Starting 1-2 Synchro On Shaft

- 1 – 1-2 SYNCHRO ASSEMBLY
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310–1
- 3 – BE SURE THIS IS “FIRST GEAR SIDE” OF SYNCHRO SLEEVE

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(21) Press 1-2 synchro onto output shaft using suitable size pipe tool and shop press (Fig. 65).

CAUTION: Take time to align the synchro ring and sleeve as hub the is being pressed onto the shaft. The synchro ring can be cracked if it becomes misaligned.

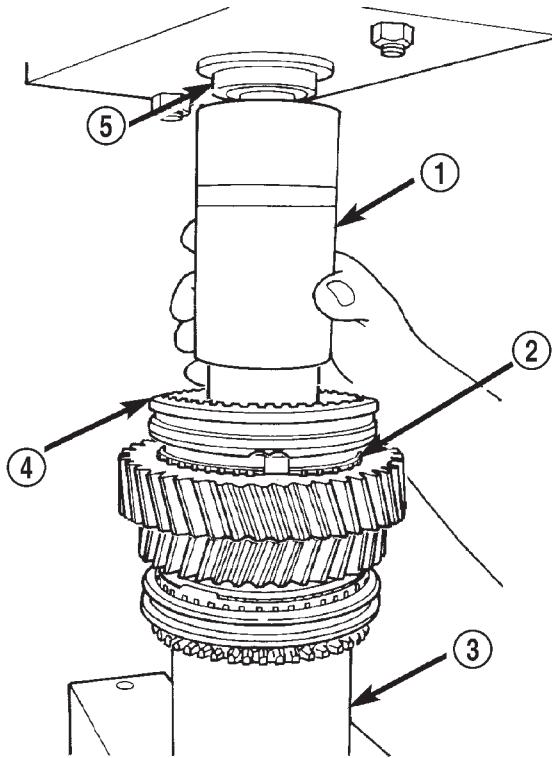


Fig. 65 Pressing 1-2 Synchro Assembly Onto Output Shaft

- 1 – SUITABLE SIZE PIPE TOOL
- 2 – SYNCHRO RING
- 3 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310-1
- 4 – 1-2 SYNCHRO ASSEMBLY
- 5 – PRESS RAM

(22) Install interm ring.

(23) Install new 1-2 synchro hub snap ring (Fig. 66) as follows:

- Snap rings are available in thicknesses from 1.80 mm to 2.00 mm (0.070 to 0.078 in.).
- Install thickest snap ring that will fit in shaft groove.
- Verify that snap ring is completely seated in groove before proceeding.

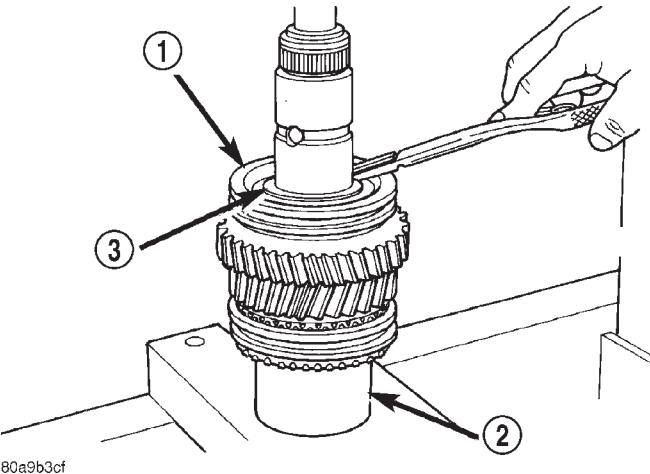


Fig. 66 Installing 1-2 Synchro Hub Snap Ring

- 1 – 1-2 SYNCHRO
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310-1
- 3 – SYNCHRO SNAP RING

(24) Install second gear synchro/outer blocker ring in 1-2 synchro hub and sleeve (Fig. 67). Be sure synchro ring is properly seated in sleeve.

(25) Install the second gear friction cone into the second gear synchro/outer blocker ring.

(26) Install the second gear inner blocker ring into the friction cone.

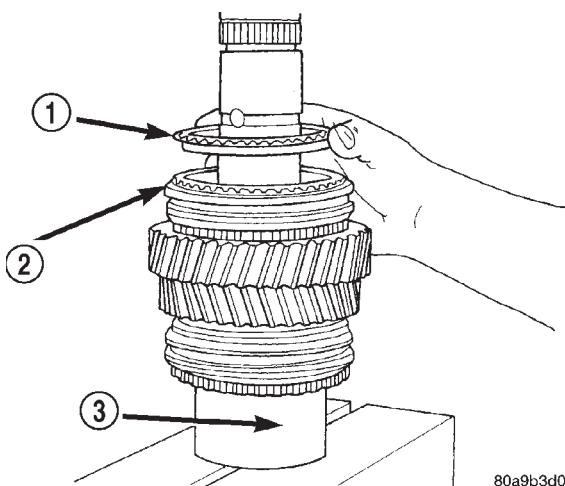


Fig. 67 Second Gear Synchro Ring Installation

- 1 – SECOND GEAR SYNCHRO RING
- 2 – 1-2 SYNCHRO
- 3 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310-1

(27) Install second gear needle bearing on shaft (Fig. 68).

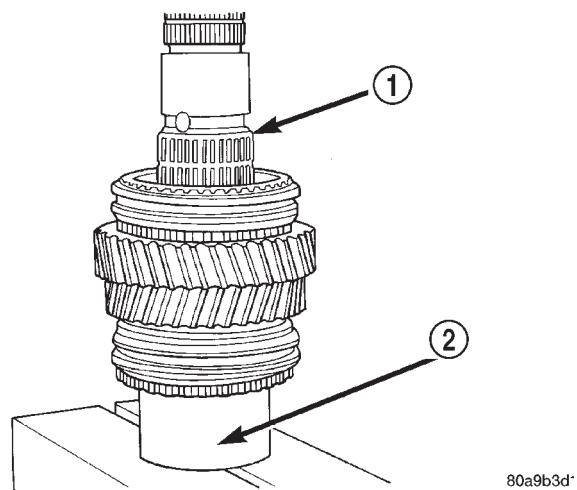


Fig. 68 Second Gear Bearing Installation

- 1 – SECOND GEAR BEARING
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310-1

(28) Install second gear onto shaft and bearing (Fig. 69). Make sure that second gear is fully seated on synchro components.

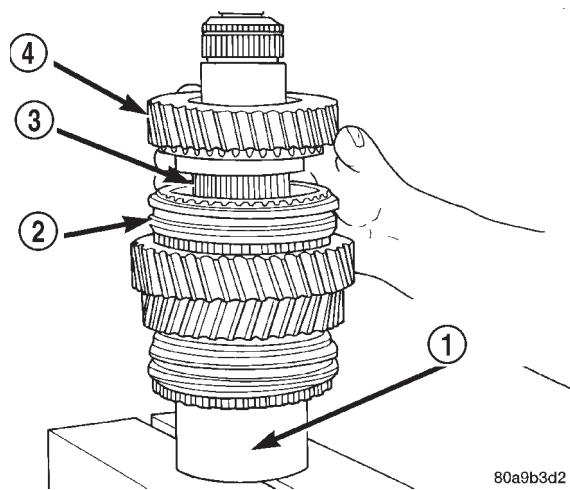
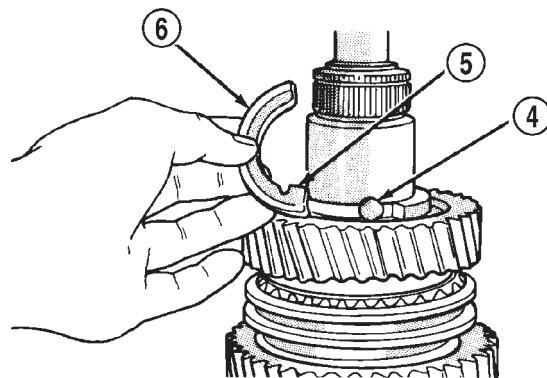
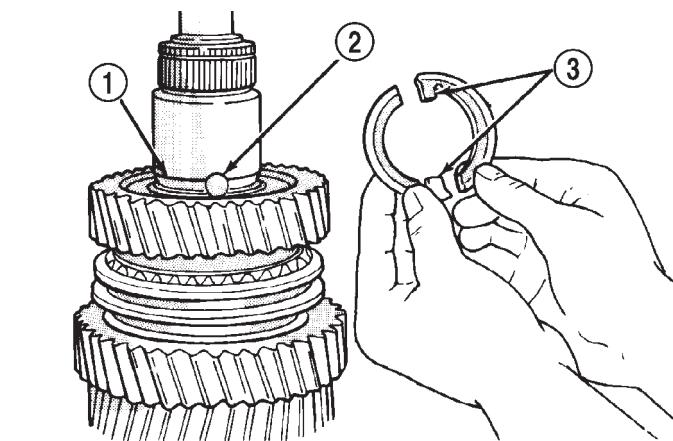


Fig. 69 Second Gear Installation

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6310-1
- 2 – 1-2 SYNCHRO ASSEMBLY
- 3 – BEARING
- 4 – SECOND GEAR

(29) Install two-piece thrust washer (Fig. 70). Be sure washer halves are seated in shaft groove and that washer lugs are seated in shaft lug bores. Also, ensure that the i.d. grooves and markings noted during removal are facing the correct direction. The diamond shaped marks on the face of the washer must face the front of the shaft.



J9421-77

Fig. 70 Installing Two-Piece Thrust Washer

- 1 – WASHER GROOVE IN SHAFT
- 2 – LUG BORE
- 3 – THRUST WASHER LUGS
- 4 – LUG BORE
- 5 – LUG
- 6 – WASHER HALF

(30) Start retaining ring around two-piece thrust washer (Fig. 71). Make sure that the locating dimple is between the thrust washer halves.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

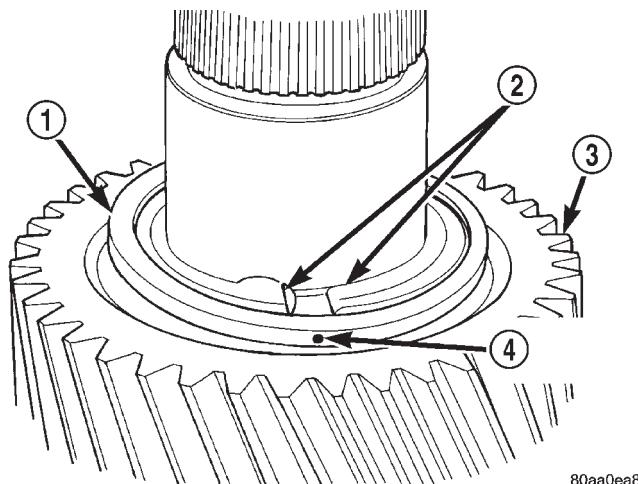


Fig. 71 Starting Retaining Ring Over Two-Piece Thrust Washer

- 1 – THRUST WASHER RETAINING RING
- 2 – THRUST WASHER HALVES
- 3 – SECOND GEAR
- 4 – LOCATING DIMPLE

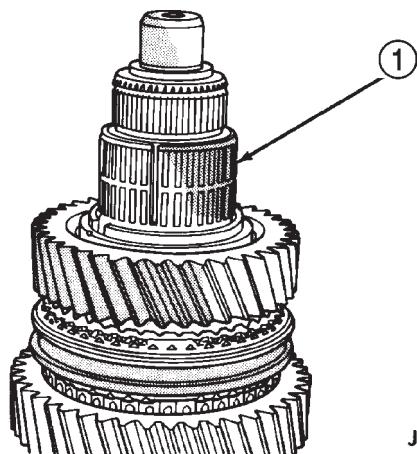


Fig. 73 Third Gear Bearing Installation

- 1 – THIRD GEAR BEARING

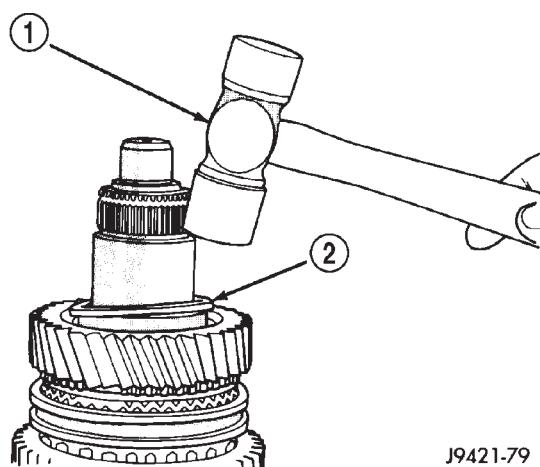


Fig. 72 Seating Thrust Washer Retaining Ring

- 1 – PLASTIC MALLET
- 2 – THRUST WASHER RETAINING RING

- (32) Install third gear needle bearing on shaft (Fig. 73).
- (33) Install third gear on shaft and bearing (Fig. 74).
- (34) Install third speed synchro ring on third gear (Fig. 75).
- (35) Assemble 3-4 synchro hub, sleeve, springs, struts and detent balls.

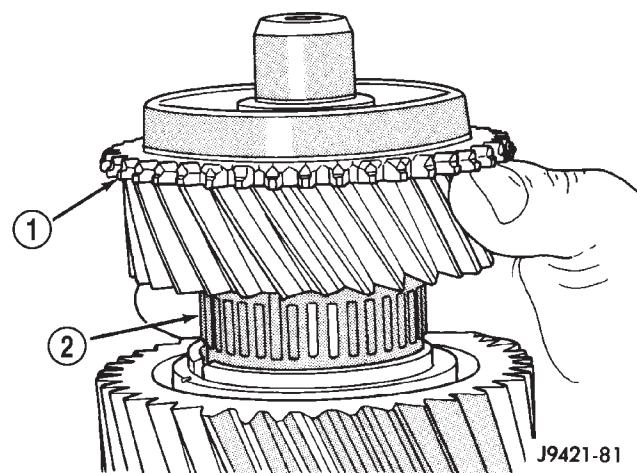


Fig. 74 Installing Third Gear

- 1 – THIRD GEAR
- 2 – BEARING

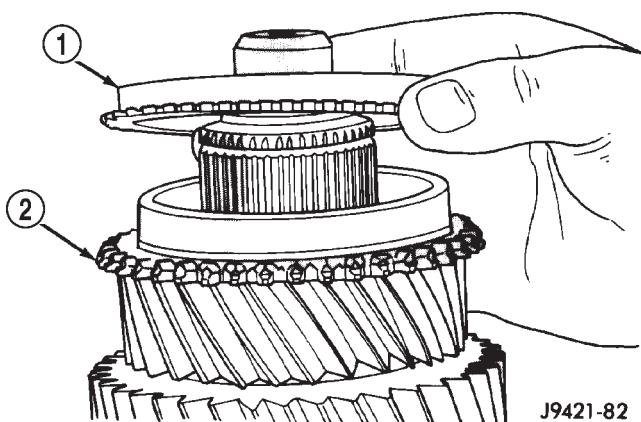


Fig. 75 Third Speed Synchro Ring Installation

- 1 – THIRD SPEED SYNCHRO RING
- 2 – THIRD GEAR

CAUTION: The 3-4 synchro hub and sleeve can be installed backwards if care is not exercised. One side of the sleeve has grooves in it. Be sure this side of sleeve is also facing the front of the shaft.

(36) Start 3-4 synchro hub on output shaft splines by hand (Fig. 76).

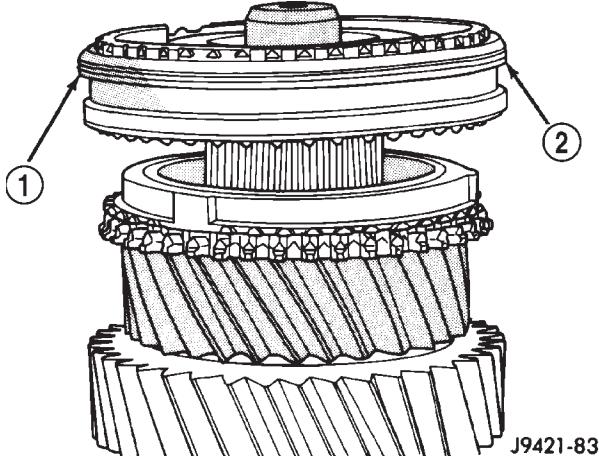


Fig. 76 Starting 3-4 Synchro Hub On Output Shaft

- 1 – GROOVED SIDE OF SLEEVE (TO FRONT)
2 – 3-4 SYNCHRO ASSEMBLY

(37) Press 3-4 synchro assembly onto output shaft with shop press and suitable size pipe tool (Fig. 77). Make sure that the tool presses on hub as close to output shaft as possible but does not contact the shaft splines.

(38) Install 3-4 synchro hub snap ring (Fig. 78) as follows:

(a) Snap rings are available in thicknesses from 2.00 mm to 2.30 mm (0.078 to 0.090 in.).

(b) Install thickest snap ring that will fit in shaft groove. Use heavy duty snap ring pliers to install new ring.

(c) Verify that snap ring is completely seated in groove before proceeding.

(39) Install output shaft bearing.

(40) Install output shaft bearing snap ring (Fig. 79). Use heavy duty snap ring pliers and spread snap ring only enough to install it. Be sure snap ring is completely seated in shaft groove before proceeding.

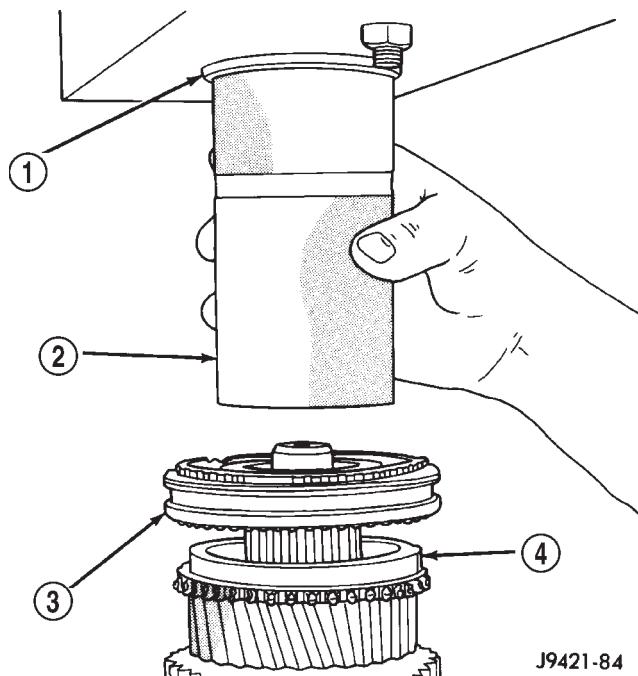


Fig. 77 Pressing 3-4 Synchro Assembly On Output Shaft

- 1 – PRESS RAM
2 – PIPE TOOL
3 – 3-4 SYNCHRO
4 – THIRD SPEED SYNCHRO RING

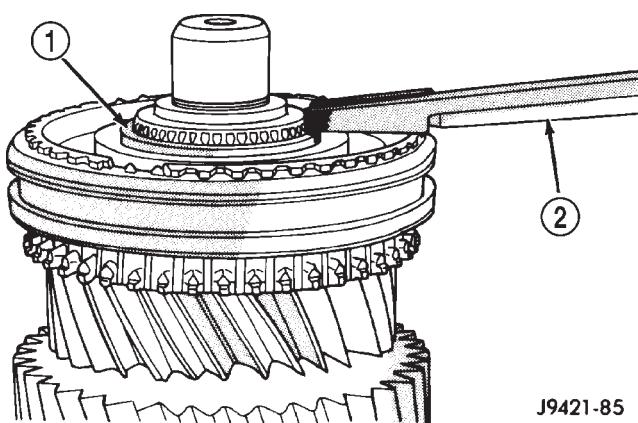
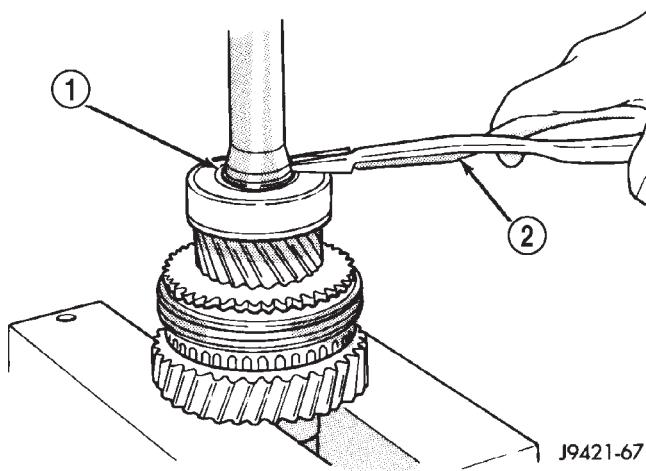


Fig. 78 Installing 3-4 Synchro Hub Snap Ring

- 1 – 3-4 SYNCHRO HUB SNAP RING
2 – HEAVY DUTY SNAP RING PLIERS

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 79 Installing Output Shaft Bearing Snap Ring**

1 - BEARING SNAP RING

2 - HEAVY DUTY SNAP RING PLIERS

(41) Verify correct position of synchro sleeves before proceeding with assembly operations (Fig. 80). Grooved side of 3-4 sleeve should be facing forward. First gear side of 1-2 sleeve should be facing first gear. Tapered side of fifth-reverse sleeve should be facing forward.

REVERSE IDLER ASSEMBLY

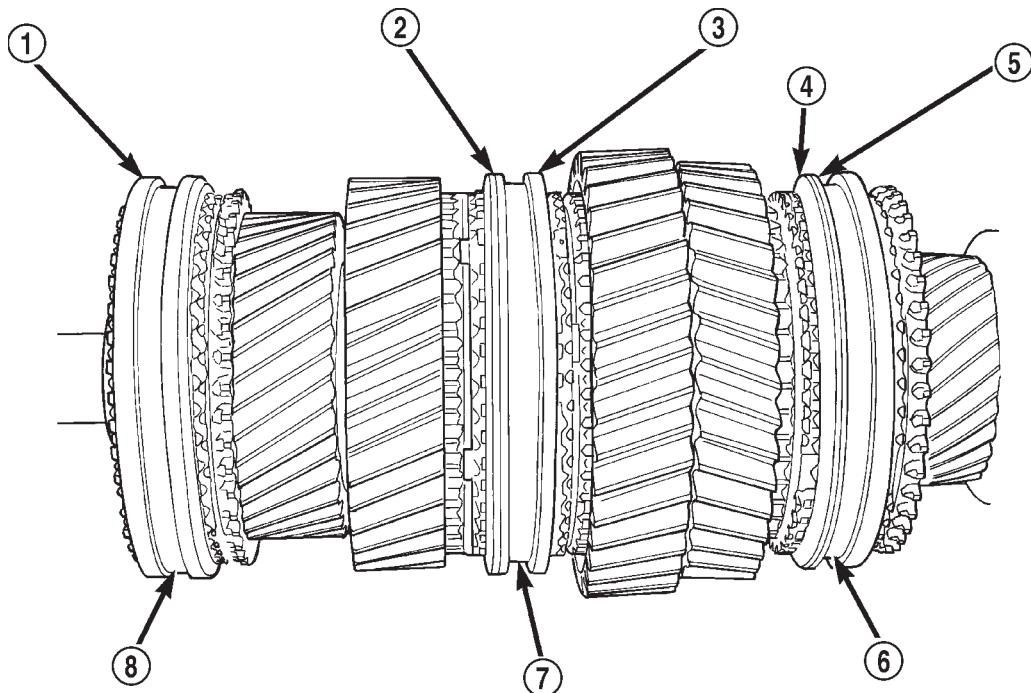
- (1) Lubricate idler components with gear lube.

- (2) Slide idler gear bearing on shaft (Fig. 81). Bearing fits either way on shaft.

- (3) Slide gear onto shaft. Side of gear with recess goes to rear (Fig. 81).

- (4) Place first lock ball in dimple at rear end of idler shaft (Fig. 81). Petroleum jelly can be used to hold ball in place if desired.

- (5) Slide thrust rear thrust washer onto shaft and over lock ball (Fig. 82).



80aa0ea9

Fig. 80 Correct Synchro Sleeve Position

1 - DOUBLE GROOVE FORWARD

2 - GROOVE FORWARD

3 - FIRST GEAR SIDE MARKING TOWARD FIRST GEAR

4 - TAPER FORWARD

5 - GROOVE FORWARD

6 - 5TH-REV SYNCHRO SLEEVE

7 - 1-2 SYNCHRO SLEEVE

8 - 3-4 SYNCHRO SLEEVE

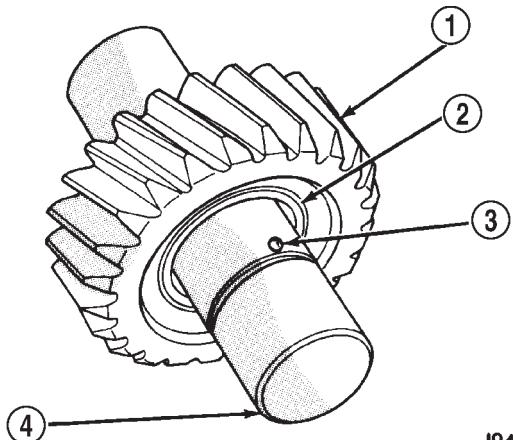


Fig. 81 Idler Gear And Bearing Installation

- 1 – IDLER GEAR
- 2 – BEARING
- 3 – LOCK BALL
- 4 – REAR OF SHAFT

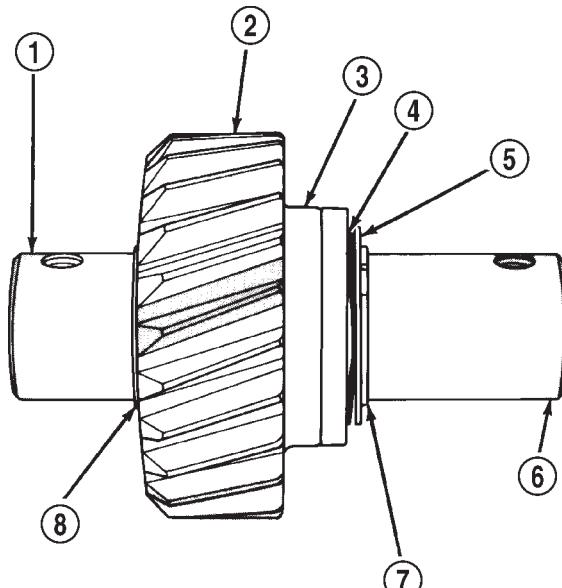


Fig. 83 Idler Gear And Shaft Assembly

- 1 – REAR OF SHAFT
- 2 – GEAR
- 3 – THRUST WASHER AND BALL
- 4 – WAVE WASHER
- 5 – FLAT WASHER
- 6 – FRONT OF SHAFT
- 7 – SNAP RING
- 8 – SNAP RING

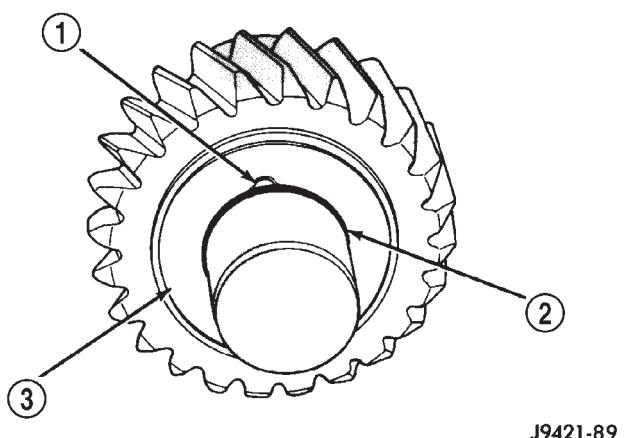


Fig. 82 Idler Gear Rear Thrust Washer Installation

- 1 – LOCK BALL
- 2 – SNAP RING GROOVE
- 3 – THRUST WASHER

- (7) Install lock ball in dimple at front of shaft. Hold ball in place with petroleum jelly if desired.
- (8) Install front thrust washer on shaft and slide washer up against gear and over lock ball (Fig. 83).
- (9) Install wave washer, flat washer and remaining snap ring on idler shaft (Fig. 83). Be sure snap ring is fully seated.

SHIFT SHAFT AND DETENT PLUNGER BUSHINGS/BEARINGS

- (1) Inspect shift shaft bushing and bearing for damage.
- (2) If necessary, the shift shaft bushing can be replaced as follows:
 - (a) Locate a bolt that will thread into the bushing without great effort.
 - (b) Thread the bolt into the bushing, allowing the bolt to make its own threads in the bushing.
 - (c) Attach a slide hammer or suitable puller to the bolt and remove bushing.
 - (d) Use the short end of Installer 8119 to install the new bushing.
 - (e) The bushing is correctly installed if the bushing is flush with the transmission case.
- (3) If necessary, the shift shaft bearing can be replaced as follows:
 - (a) Locate a bolt that will thread into the bearing without great effort.
 - (b) Thread the bolt into the bearing as much as possible.
 - (c) Attach a slide hammer or suitable puller to the bolt and remove the bearing.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

- (d) Use the short end of Installer 8119 to install the new bearing.
- (e) The bearing is correctly installed if the bearing is flush with the transmission case.
- (4) Inspect detent plunger bushings for damage.

NOTE: The detent plunger bushings are installed to a specific depth. The space between the two bushings when correctly installed contain an oil feed hole. Do not attempt to install the bushings with anything other than the specified tool or this oil hole may become restricted.

- (5) If necessary, the detent plunger bushings can be replaced as follows:

- (a) Using the long end of Installer 8119, drive the detent bushings through the outer case and into the shift shaft bore.
- (b) Remove the bushings from the shift shaft bore.
- (c) Install a new detent plunger bushing on the long end of Installer 8118.
- (d) Start the bushing in the detent plunger bore in the case.
- (e) Drive the bushing into the bore until the tool contacts the transmission case.
- (f) Install a new detent plunger bushing on the short end of Installer 8118.
- (g) Start the bushing in the detent plunger bore in the case.
- (h) Drive the bushing into the bore until the tool contacts the transmission case.

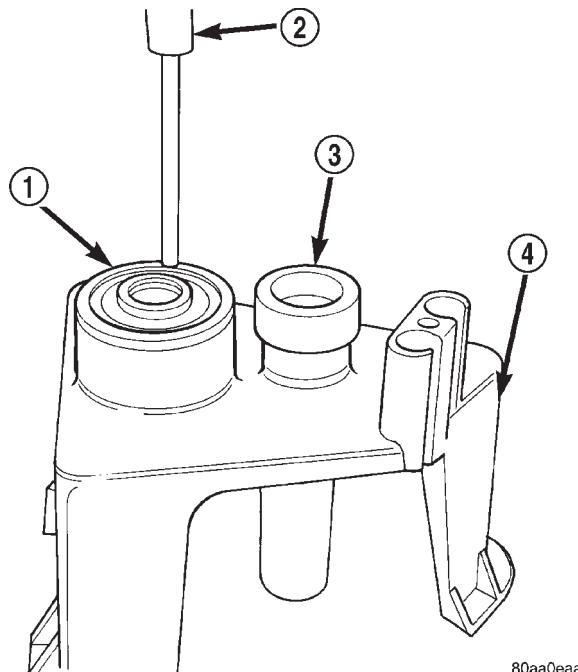
GEARTRAIN ASSEMBLY IN FIXTURE

(1) Install Adapter 6747-1A on input shaft hub of fixture tool (Fig. 84). Then install Adapter 6747-2A on front bearing hub of countershaft. Adapter 6747-2A has a raised shoulder on one side. Be sure the shoulder is seated against the countershaft.

(2) Install input shaft in fixture tool. Make sure Adapter Tool 6747-1A is positioned under shaft as shown (Fig. 85).

- (3) Install pilot bearing in input shaft (Fig. 85).

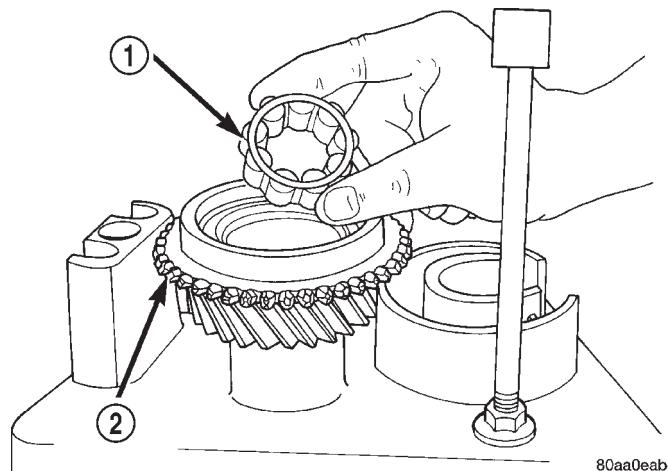
NOTE: The pilot bearing can be installed backwards if care is not exercised. Be sure the large diameter side of the roller retainer faces the output shaft and the small diameter side faces the input shaft.



80aa0eaa

Fig. 84 Preparing Assembly Fixture For Geartrain Build-up

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6747-2A (INSTALL ON COUNTERSHAFT FRONT HUB)
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL 8115
- 3 – SPECIAL TOOL 6747-1A
- 4 – SPECIAL TOOL 6747



80aa0eab

Fig. 85 Installing Pilot Bearing In Input Shaft

- 1 – PILOT BEARING
- 2 – INPUT SHAFT

(4) Install fourth gear synchro ring on input shaft (Fig. 86).

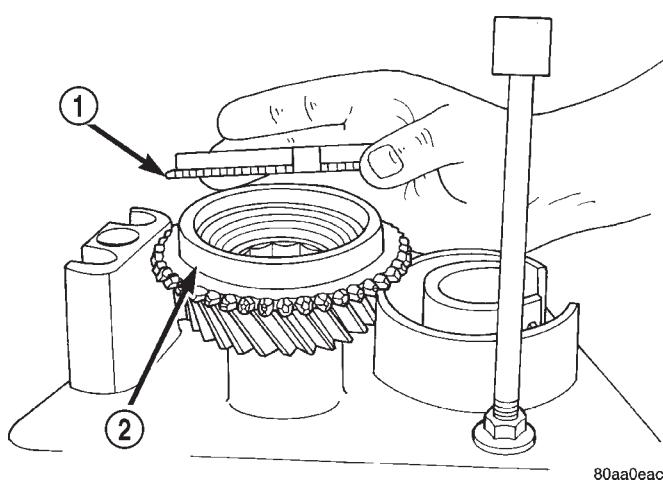


Fig. 86 Installing Fourth Gear Synchro Ring On Input Shaft

- 1 – FOURTH GEAR SYNCHRO RING
2 – INPUT SHAFT

(5) Adjust height of idler gear pedestal on assembly fixture (Fig. 87). Start with a basic height of 18.4 cm (7-1/4 in.). Final adjustment can be made after gear is positioned on pedestal.

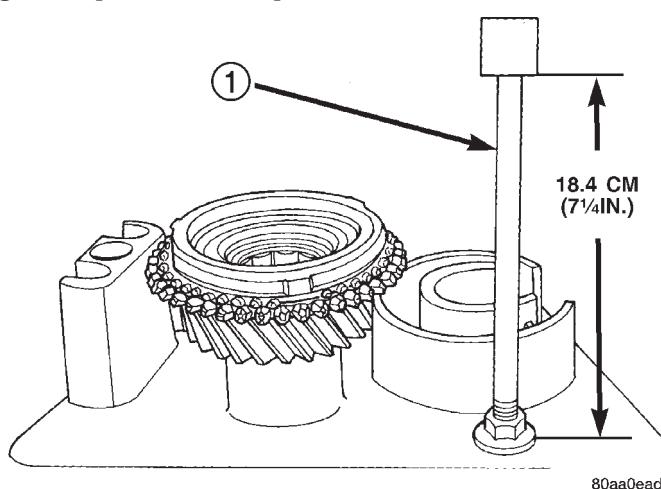


Fig. 87 Idler Pedestal Basic Height Adjustment

- 1 – REVERSE IDLER PEDESTAL

(6) Install assembled output shaft and geartrain in input shaft (Fig. 88). Carefully rotate output shaft until the 3-4 synchro ring seats in synchro hub and sleeve.

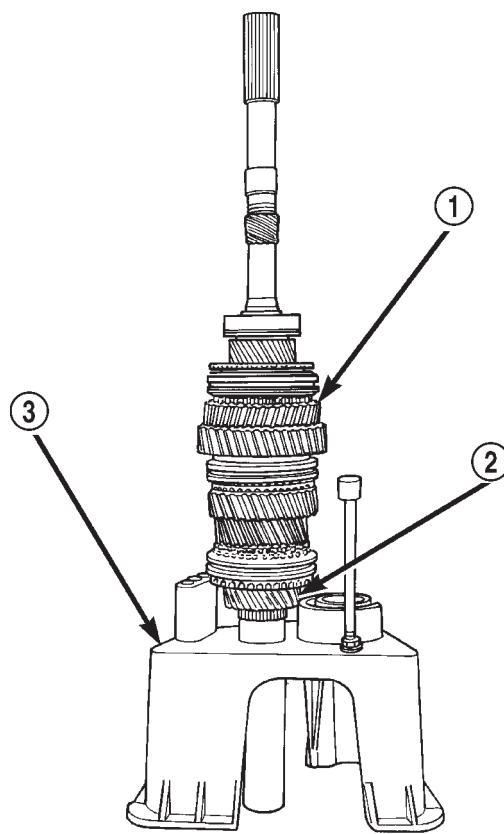


Fig. 88 Output Shaft And Geartrain Installed In Input Shaft

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT AND GEARTRAIN
2 – INPUT SHAFT
3 – SPECIAL TOOL 6747

(7) Install Adapter 6747-2A on front bearing hub of countershaft, if not previously done. The adapter has a shoulder on one side. The shoulder goes toward the countershaft.

(8) Slide countershaft (and adapter) into fixture slot. Verify that countershaft and output shaft gears are fully meshed with the mainshaft gears before proceeding (Fig. 89).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(9) Check alignment of countershaft and output shaft gear teeth. Note that gears may not align perfectly. A difference in height of 1.57 to 3.18 mm (1/16 to 1/8 in.) will probably exist. This difference will not interfere with assembly. However, if the difference is greater than this, the countershaft adapter tool is probably upside down. Remove countershaft, reverse adapter tool, reinstall countershaft and check alignment again.

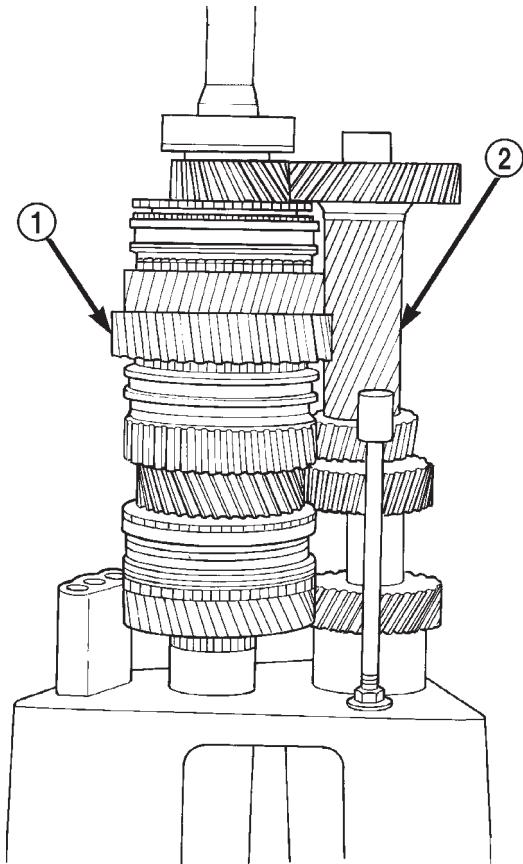


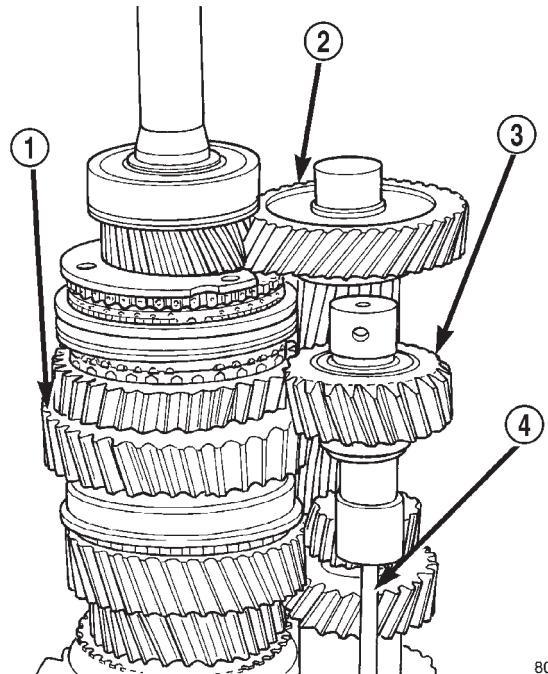
Fig. 89 Countershaft Installed On Fixture Tool

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT AND GEARTRAIN
- 2 – COUNTERSHAFT (SLIDE INTO PLACE ON FIXTURE TOOL)

(10) Position reverse idler in support cup of assembly fixture (Fig. 90). Be sure idler gear is properly meshed and aligned with shaft gear teeth and that bolt holes are facing out and not toward geartrain. Adjust pedestal up or down if necessary. Also be sure that short end of idler shaft is facing up as shown.

(11) On 2-wheel drive transmission, thread one Pilot Stud 8120 in center or passenger side hole of output shaft bearing retainer. Then position retainer on fifth gear as shown (Fig. 91).

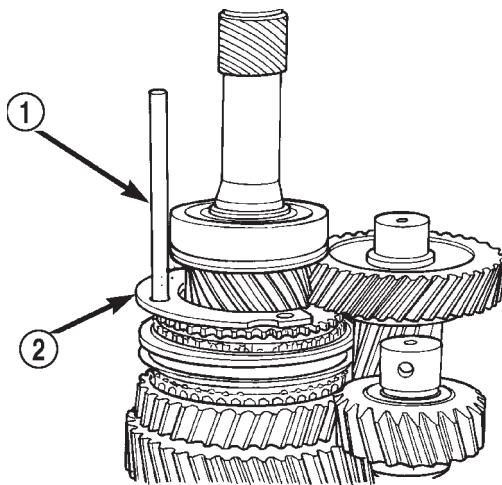
(12) Assemble 1-2 and fifth reverse-shift forks (Fig. 92). Arm of fifth-reverse fork goes through slot in 1-2 fork.



80aa0eb0

Fig. 90 Reverse Idler Assembly Positioned On Assembly Fixture Pedestal

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT AND GEARTRAIN
- 2 – COUNTERSHAFT
- 3 – REVERSE IDLER ASSEMBLY
- 4 – TOOL PEDESTAL



80aa0eb1

Fig. 91 Positioning Output Shaft Bearing Retainer For Rear Housing Installation

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL 8120
- 2 – OUTPUT SHAFT BEARING RETAINER

(13) Install assembled shift forks in synchro sleeves (Fig. 93). Be sure forks are properly seated in sleeves.

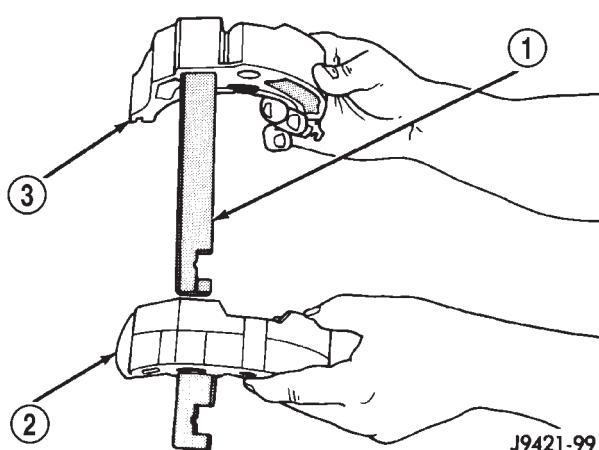


Fig. 92 Assembling 1-2 And Fifth-Reverse Shift Forks

- 1 – INSERT ARM THROUGH 1-2 FORK
- 2 – 1-2 FORK
- 3 – FIFTH-REVERSE FORK

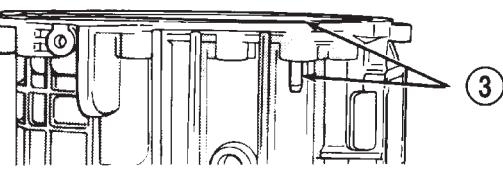
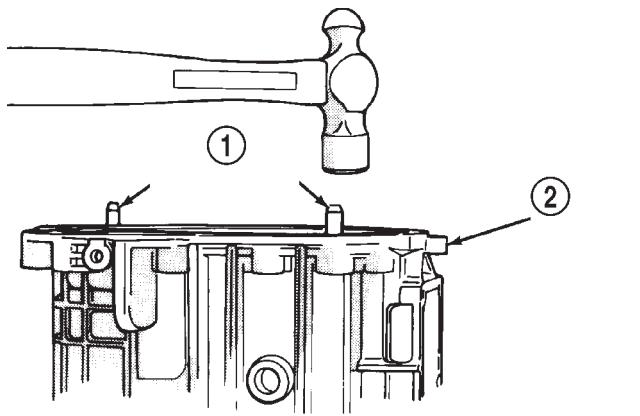


Fig. 94 Preparing Rear Housing Dowels For Installation

- 1 – HOUSING ALIGNMENT DOWELS
- 2 – REAR HOUSING
- 3 – DOWEL FLUSH WITH SURFACE

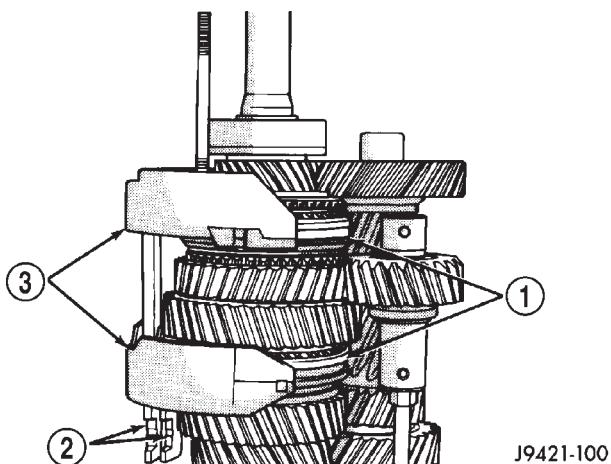


Fig. 93 Shift Forks Installed In Synchro Sleeves

- 1 – SYNCHRO SLEEVES
- 2 – FORK ARMS
- 3 – SHIFT FORKS

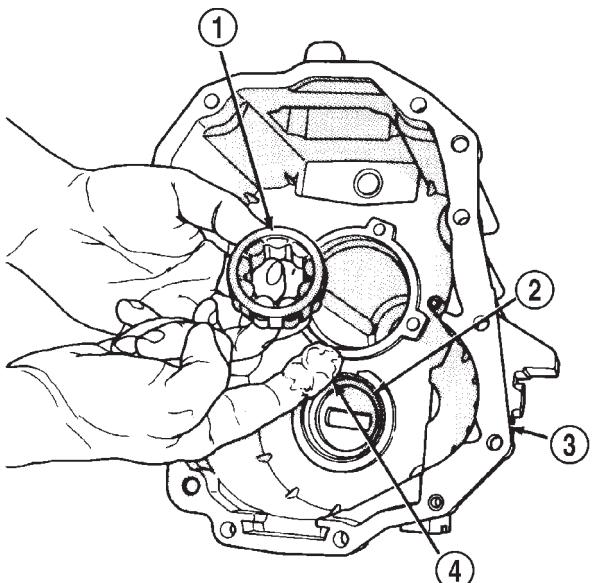
REAR HOUSING INSTALLATION—2WD

- (1) Drive adapter housing alignment dowels back into housing until dowels are flush with mounting surface (Fig. 94).
- (2) Apply liberal quantity of petroleum jelly to countershaft rear bearing and bearing race.
- (3) Install countershaft rear bearing in bearing race (Fig. 95).

CAUTION: The countershaft bearings can be installed backwards if care is not exercised. Be sure the large diameter side of the roller retainer faces the countershaft and the small diameter side faces the race and housing (Fig. 96).

- (4) Apply extra petroleum jelly to hold countershaft rear bearing in place when housing is installed.
- (5) Apply light coat of petroleum jelly to shift shaft bushing/bearing in rear housing (Fig. 96).
- (6) Reach into countershaft rear bearing with finger, and push each bearing roller outward against race. Then apply extra petroleum jelly to hold rollers in place. This avoids having rollers becoming displaced during housing installation. This will result in misalignment between bearing and countershaft bearing hub.
- (7) Install rear housing onto geartrain (Fig. 97). Be sure bearing retainer pilot stud is in correct bolt hole in housing. Also be sure countershaft and output shaft bearings are aligned in housing and on countershaft. It may be necessary to lift upward on countershaft slightly to ensure that the countershaft rear bearing engages to the countershaft before the rear output shaft bearing engages the housing.
- (8) Seat rear housing on output shaft rear bearing and countershaft. Use plastic or rawhide mallet to tap housing into place.

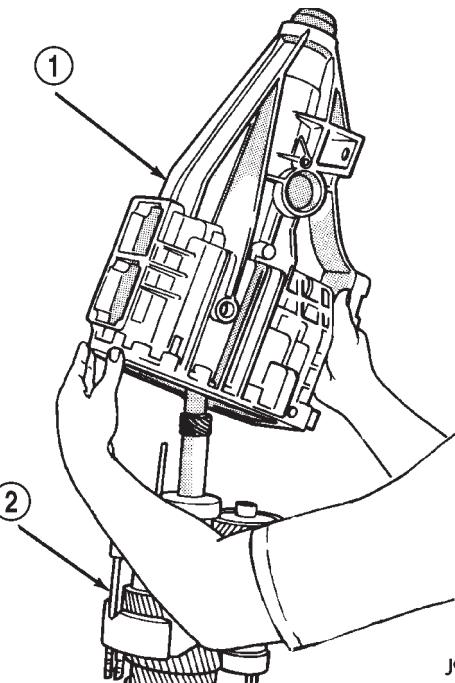
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9421-103

Fig. 95 Lubricating Countershaft Rear Bearing

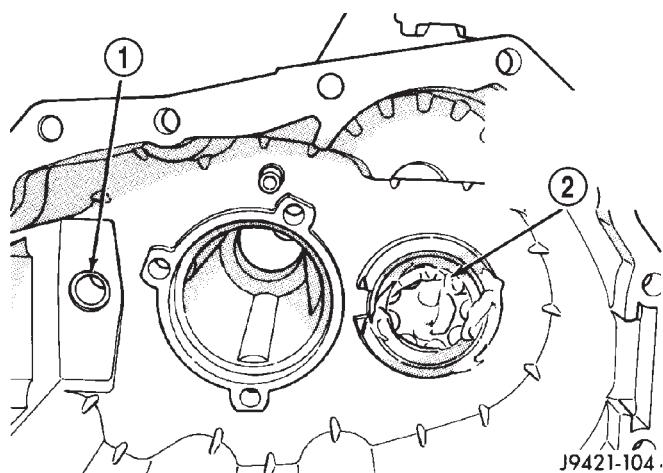
- 1 – COUNTERSHAFT REAR BEARING
- 2 – REAR BEARING RACE
- 3 – REAR HOUSING
- 4 – PETROLEUM JELLY (APPLY TO BEARING AND RACE)



J9421-51

Fig. 97 Rear Housing Installation—2WD

- 1 – REAR HOUSING
- 2 – SHIFT FORKS AND GEARTRAIN



J9421-104

Fig. 96 Countershaft Rear Bearing Seated In Race

- 1 – SHIFT SHAFT BUSHING/BEARING
- 2 – COUNTERSHAFT REAR BEARING (SEATED IN RACE)

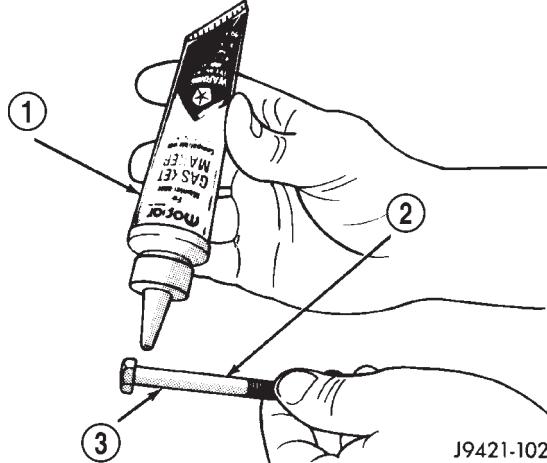
(9) Install the three bolts that secure rear bearing retainer to rear housing as follows:

(a) Apply Mopar® Gasket Maker, or equivalent, to bolt threads, bolt shanks and under bolt heads (Fig. 98).

(b) Start first two bolts in retainer (Fig. 99). It may be necessary to move retainer rearward (with pilot stud) in order to start bolts in retainer.

(c) Remove Pilot Stud 8120 and install last retainer bolt (Fig. 99).

(d) Tighten all three retainer bolts to 30-35 N·m (22-26 ft. lbs.) torque.



J9421-102

Fig. 98 Applying Sealer To Retainer And Housing Bolts

- 1 – MOPAR GASKET MAKER (OR LOCTITE 518)
- 2 – RETAINER AND HOUSING BOLTS
- 3 – APPLY SEALER TO UNDERSIDE OF BOLT HEAD, SHANK AND THREADS

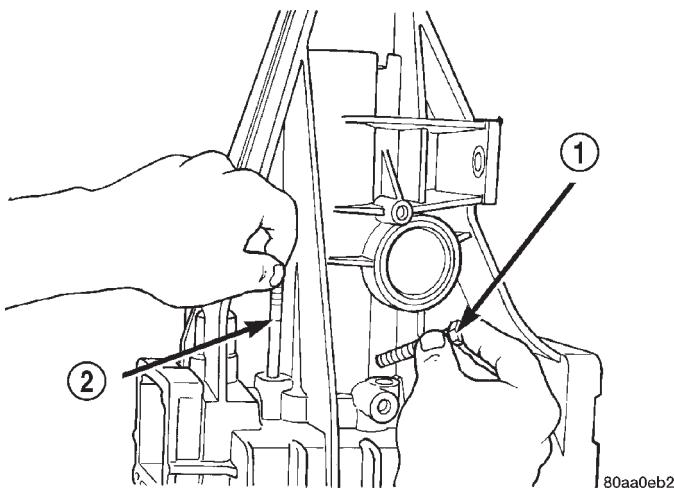


Fig. 99 Removing Pilot Stud Tool And Installing Retainer Bolts—2WD

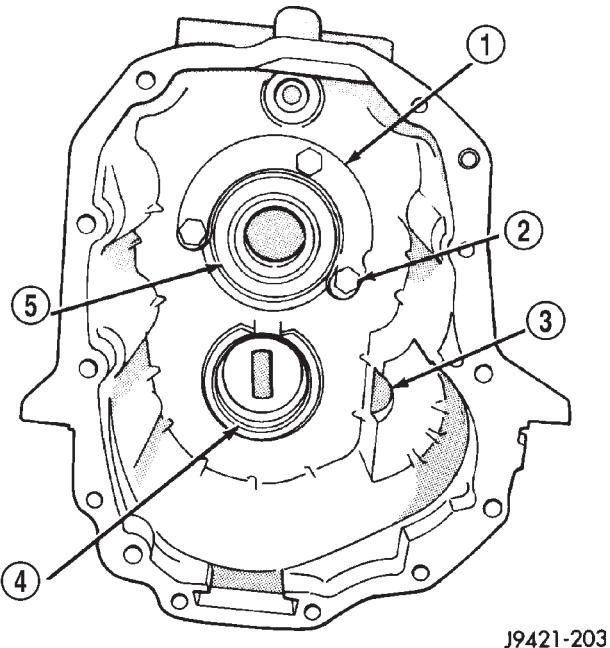
1 – BEARING RETAINER BOLT

2 – SPECIAL TOOL 8120

ADAPTER HOUSING INSTALLATION—4WD

(1) Install rear bearing in adapter housing. Use wood hammer handle or wood dowel to tap bearing into place.

(2) Position rear bearing retainer in adapter housing (Fig. 100).



J9421-203

Fig. 100 Preparing Adapter Housing For Installation—4WD

1 – BEARING RETAINER

2 – RETAINER BOLTS (3)

3 – IDLER SHAFT NOTCH

4 – COUNTERSHAFT REAR BEARING RACE

5 – REAR BEARING

(3) Apply Mopar® Gasket Maker, or equivalent, to threads, bolt shanks and under hex heads of bearing retainer bolts (Fig. 101).

(4) Apply liberal quantity of petroleum jelly to countershaft rear bearing and bearing race.

(5) Install countershaft rear bearing in bearing race (Fig. 96).

CAUTION: The countershaft bearings can be installed backwards if care is not exercised. Be sure the large diameter side of the roller retainer faces the countershaft and the small diameter side faces the race and housing (Fig. 96).

(6) Apply extra petroleum jelly to hold countershaft rear bearing in place when housing is installed.

(7) Apply light coat of petroleum jelly to shift shaft bushing/bearing in adapter housing (Fig. 96).

(8) Install adapter housing on geartrain.

(9) Install rear bearing snap ring on output shaft (Fig. 101).

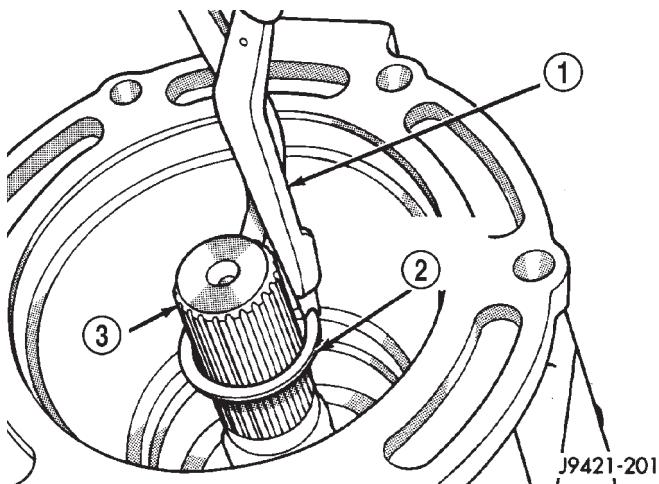


Fig. 101 Installing Rear Bearing Snap Ring—4WD

1 – HEAVY DUTY SNAP RING PLIERS

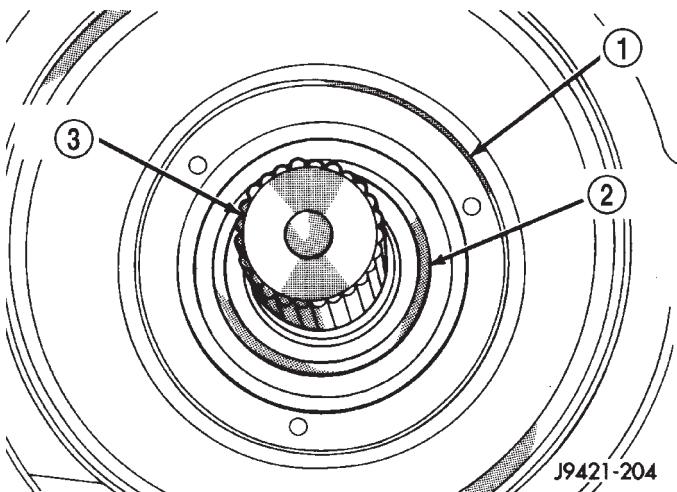
2 – REAR BEARING SNAP RING

3 – OUTPUT SHAFT

(10) Lubricate lip of new rear seal (Fig. 102) with Mopar® Door Ease, or transmission fluid.

(11) Install new rear seal in adapter housing bore with Installer C-3860-A. Be sure seal is fully seated in housing bore (Fig. 102).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 102 Rear Seal Installation—4WD**

- 1 – REAR SEAL
- 2 – SEAL LIP
- 3 – OUTPUT SHAFT

REVERSE IDLER SEGMENT INSTALLATION

(1) Remove geartrain and housing assembly from fixture with aid of helper.

(2) Apply Mopar® Gasket Maker, or equivalent, sealer to underside of idler shaft bolt heads, bolt shanks and bolt threads (Fig. 98).

(3) Align idler shaft and rear housing bolt holes with drift, pin punch, or Phillips screwdriver.

(4) Work segment upward into housing and onto idler shaft.

(5) Verify that idler shaft is seated in housing notch before proceeding. Segment and housing can be damaged if idler shaft is misaligned.

(6) Insert idler shaft retaining bolts through housing and segment and into shaft. Long bolt goes through segment and short bolt goes through housing and directly into rear of shaft.

(7) Tighten idler shaft bolts to 19-25 N·m (14-18 ft. lbs.) torque.

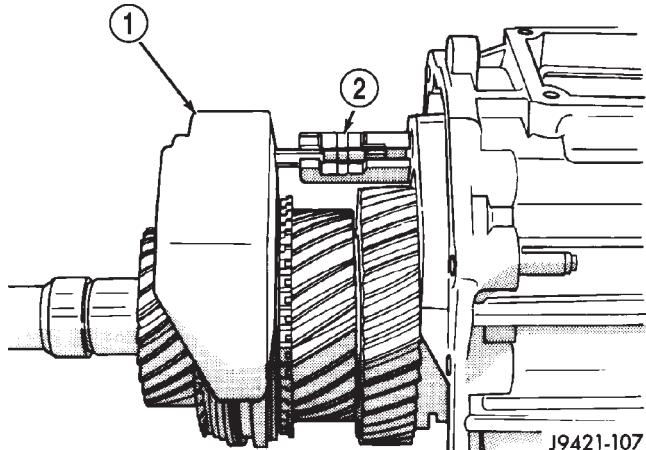
CAUTION: Make sure the idler shaft and support segment are properly seated and held firmly in place while tightening the shaft bolts. The segment, housing or shaft threads can be damaged if the idler shaft is allowed to shift out of position in the housing.

SHIFT SHAFT, SHAFT LEVER AND BUSHING AND SHIFT SOCKET INSTALLATION

(1) Before proceeding, verify that all synchro sleeves are in Neutral position (centered on hub). Move sleeves into neutral if necessary.

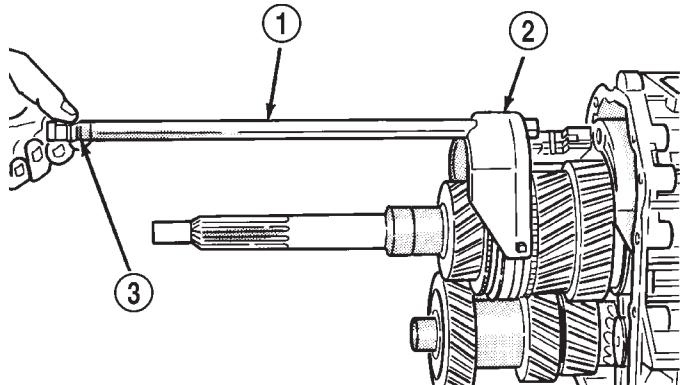
CAUTION: The transmission synchros must all be in Neutral position for proper reassembly. Otherwise, the housings, shift forks and gears can be damaged during installation of the two housings.

(2) Install 3-4 shift fork in synchro sleeve (Fig. 103). Verify that groove in fork arm is aligned with grooves in 1-2 and fifth-reverse fork arms as shown.

**Fig. 103 Installing 3-4 Shift Fork**

- 1 – 3-4 FORK
- 2 – ALIGN GROOVES IN FORK ARMS

(3) Slide shift shaft through 3-4 shift fork (Fig. 104). Be sure shaft detent notches are to front.

**Fig. 104 Shift Shaft Installation**

- 1 – SHIFT SHAFT
- 2 – 3-4 FORK
- 3 – SHAFT DETENT NOTCHES

(4) Assemble shift shaft shift lever and bushing (Fig. 105). Be sure slot in bushing is facing up and roll pin hole for lever is aligned with hole in shaft.

(5) Install assembled lever and bushing on shift shaft (Fig. 106).

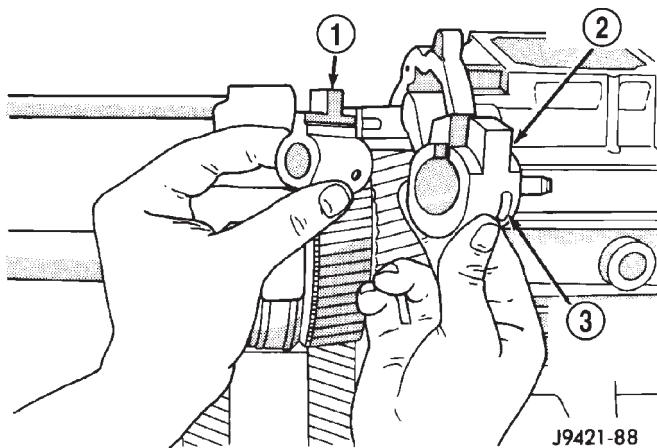


Fig. 105 Assembling Shift Shaft Lever And Bushing

- 1 – SHAFT LEVER
- 2 – LEVER BUSHING
- 3 – BUSHING LOCK PIN SLOT

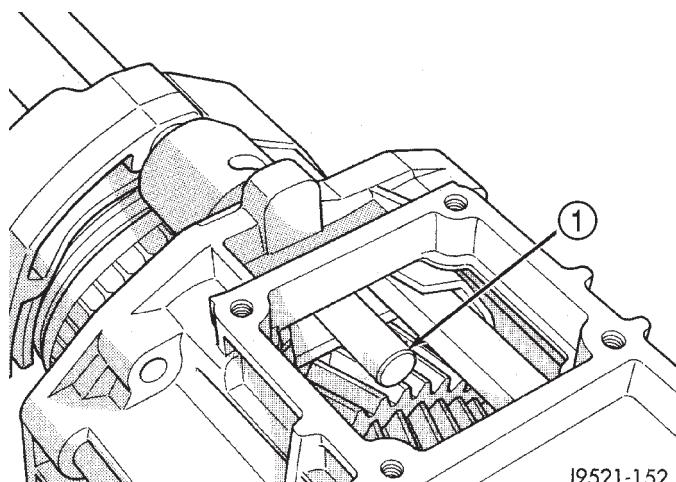


Fig. 107 Inserting Shaft Into Lever Opening In Housing

- 1 – SHIFT SHAFT

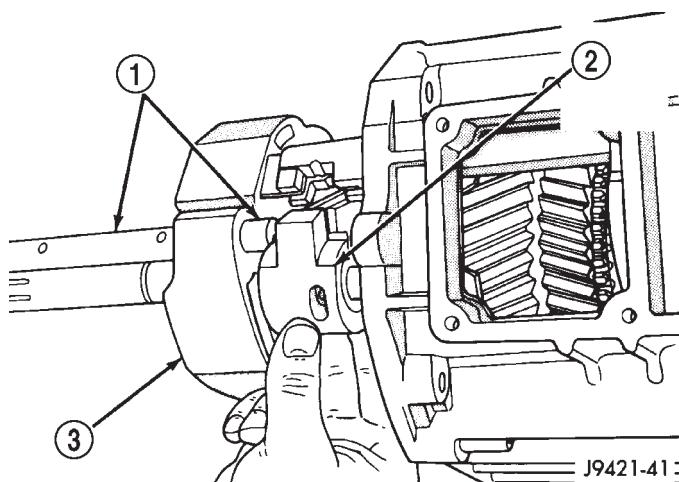


Fig. 106 Installing Shift Shaft Lever And Bushing

- 1 – SHIFT SHAFT
- 2 – SHAFT LEVER AND BUSHING
- 3 – 3-4 FORK

(6) Slide shift shaft through 1-2 and fifth-reverse fork and into shift lever opening in rear housing (Fig. 107).

(7) Align shift socket with shaft and slide shaft through socket and into shift shaft bearing in rear housing (Fig. 108).

(8) Rotate shift shaft so detent notches in shaft are facing driver side of housing.

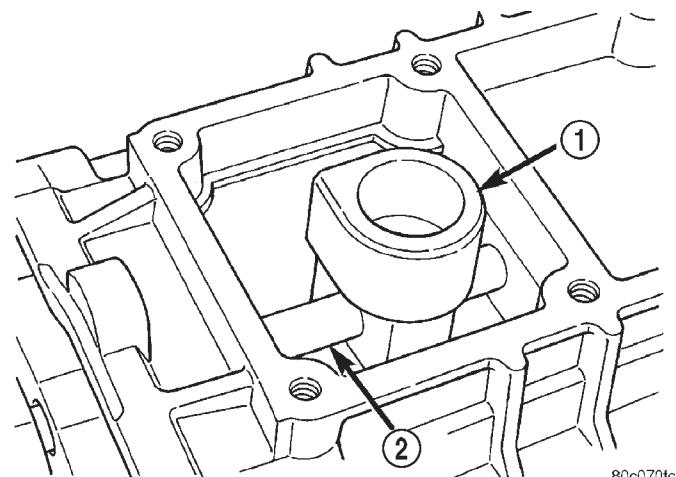


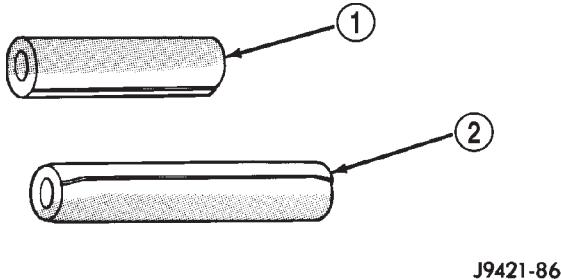
Fig. 108 Shift Socket Installation

- 1 – SHIFT SOCKET
- 2 – SHIFT SHAFT

CAUTION: Correct positioning of the shift shaft detent notch is important. Both of the shaft roll pins can be installed even when the shaft is 180° off. If this occurs, the transmission will have to be disassembled again to correct shaft alignment.

(9) Select correct new roll pin for shift shaft lever (Fig. 109). Shaft lever roll pin is approximately 22 mm (7/8 in.) long. Shift socket roll pin is approximately 33 mm (1-1/4 in.) long.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

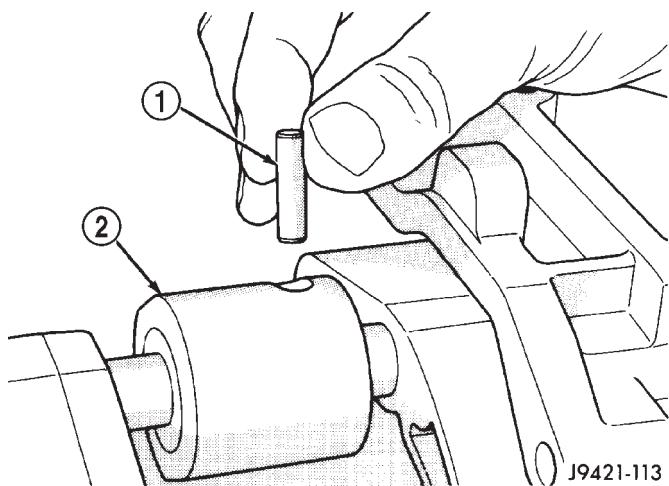


J9421-86

Fig. 109 Roll Pin Identification—Shaft Lever And Shift Socket

- 1 – SHAFT LEVER ROLL PIN
- 2 – SHIFT SOCKET ROLL PIN

(10) Align roll pin holes in shift shaft, lever and bushing. Then start roll pin into shaft lever by hand (Fig. 110).



J9421-113

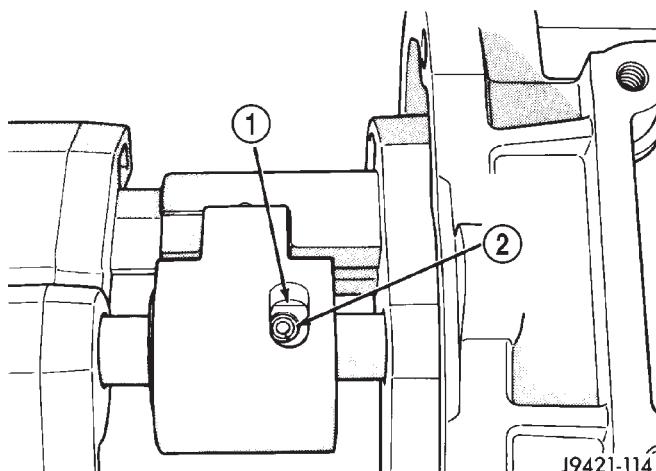
Fig. 110 Starting Roll Pin In Shift Shaft Lever

- 1 – SHAFT LEVER ROLL PIN (7/16" LONG)
- 2 – LEVER AND BUSHING

(11) Seat shaft lever roll pin with pin punch (Fig. 111).

CAUTION: The shaft lever roll pin must be flush with the surface of the lever. The lever bushing will bind on the roll pin if the pin is not seated flush.

(12) Before proceeding, verify that lock pin slot in lever bushing is positioned as shown (Fig. 111).

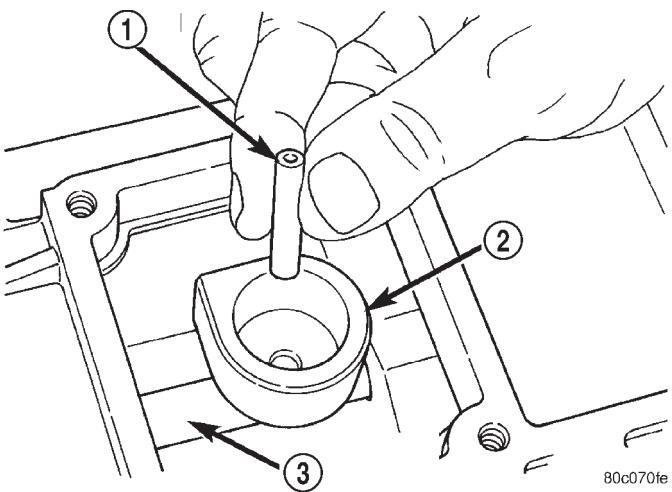


J9421-114

Fig. 111 Correct Seating Of Shift Shaft Lever Roll Pin

- 1 – BUSHING LOCK PIN SLOT
- 2 – SEAT ROLL PIN FLUSH WITH LEVER

(13) Align roll pin holes in shift socket and shift shaft. Then start roll pin into shift shaft by hand (Fig. 112).



80c070fe

Fig. 112 Starting Roll Pin In Shift Socket

- 1 – ROLL PIN
- 2 – SHIFT SOCKET
- 3 – SHIFT SHAFT

(14) Seat roll pin in shift socket with pin punch. Roll pin must be flush with socket after installation (Fig. 113).

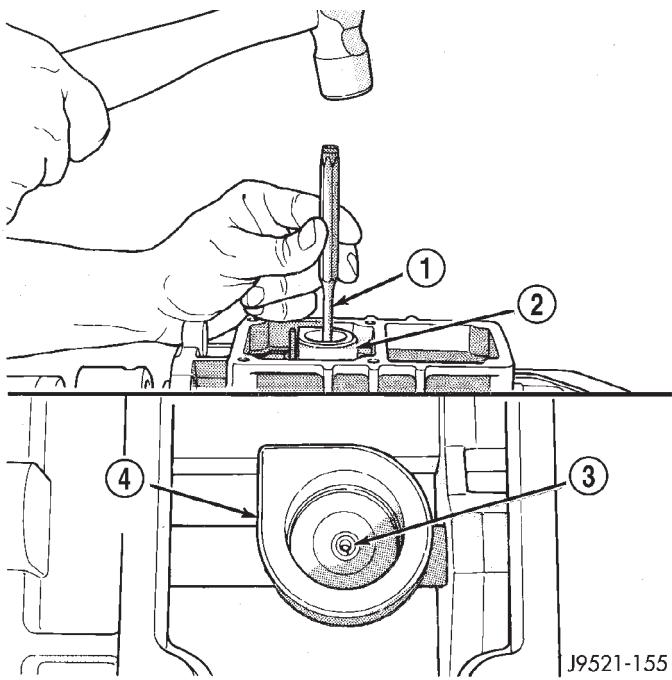


Fig. 113 Seating Shift Socket Roll Pin

- 1 – PIN PUNCH
- 2 – SHIFT SOCKET
- 3 – SEAT ROLL PIN FLUSH
- 4 – SHIFT SOCKET

(15) Verify that notches in shift fork arms are aligned. Realign arms if necessary.

FRONT HOUSING AND INPUT SHAFT BEARING RETAINER INSTALLATION

(1) Install input shaft bearing in front housing bore (Fig. 114). Use plastic mallet to seat bearing. Bearing goes in from front side of housing only.

(2) Apply liberal quantity of petroleum jelly to countershaft front bearing. Then insert bearing in front housing race (Fig. 115). Large diameter side of bearing cage goes toward countershaft (Fig. 114). Small diameter side goes toward bearing race in housing.

(3) Reach into countershaft front bearing with finger, and push each bearing roller outward against race. Then apply extra petroleum jelly to hold rollers in place. This avoids having rollers becoming displaced during housing installation. This will result in misalignment between bearing and countershaft bearing hub.

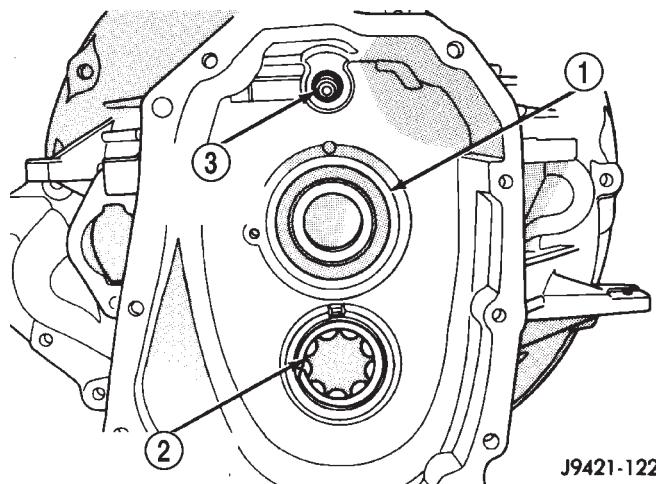


Fig. 114 Input Shaft Bearing And Countershaft Front Bearing Installation

- 1 – INPUT SHAFT BEARING
- 2 – COUNTERSHAFT FRONT BEARING
- 3 – SHIFT SHAFT BUSHING

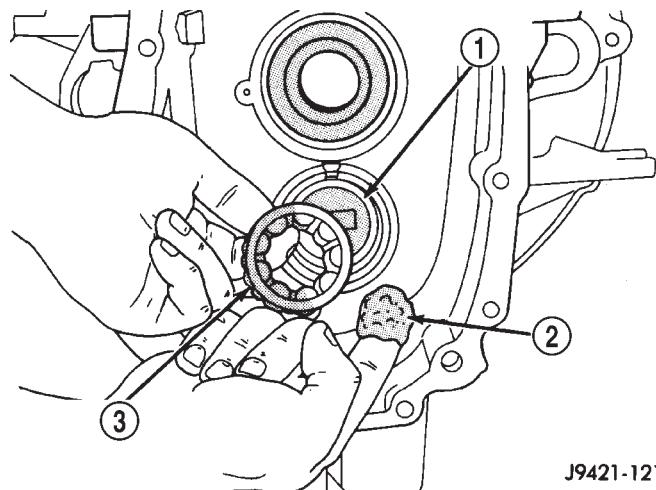


Fig. 115 Lubricating/Positioning Countershaft Front Bearing

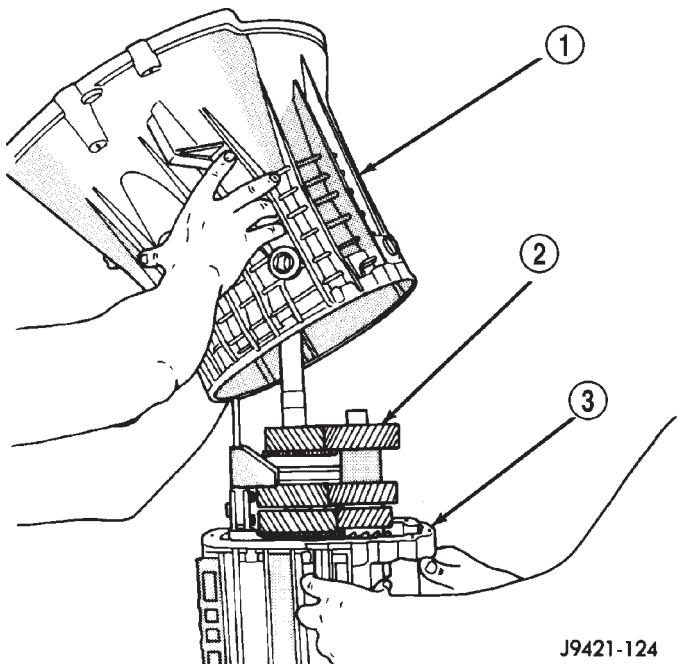
- 1 – BEARING RACE
- 2 – PETROLEUM JELLY
- 3 – COUNTERSHAFT FRONT BEARING

(4) Apply small amount of petroleum jelly to shift shaft bushing in front housing.

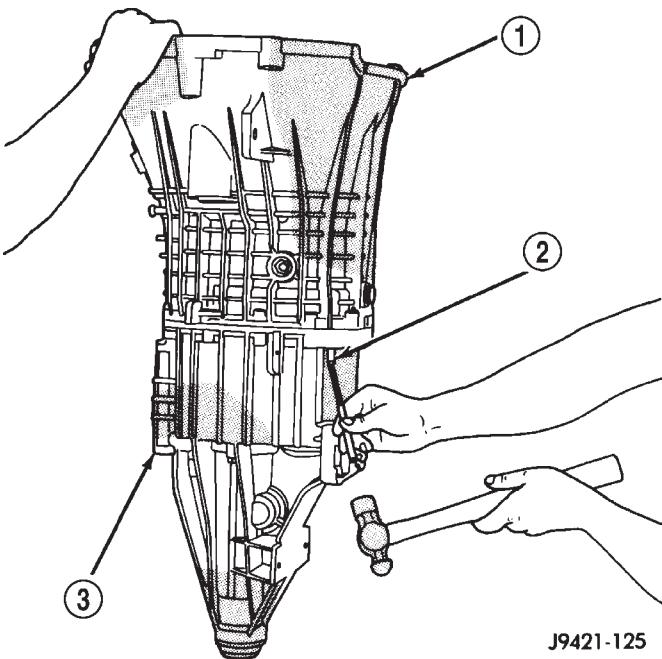
(5) Apply 1/8 in. wide bead of Mopar® Silicone Sealer, or equivalent, to mating surfaces of front and rear housings.

(6) Have helper hold rear housing and geartrain in upright position. Then install front housing on rear housing and geartrain (Fig. 116).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 116 Front Housing Installation**

- 1 – FRONT HOUSING
- 2 – GEARTRAIN
- 3 – REAR HOUSING

**Fig. 117 Reseating Housing Alignment Dowels**

- 1 – FRONT HOUSING
- 2 – ALIGNMENT DOWELS (2)
- 3 – REAR HOUSING

(7) Work front housing downward onto geartrain until seated on rear housing.

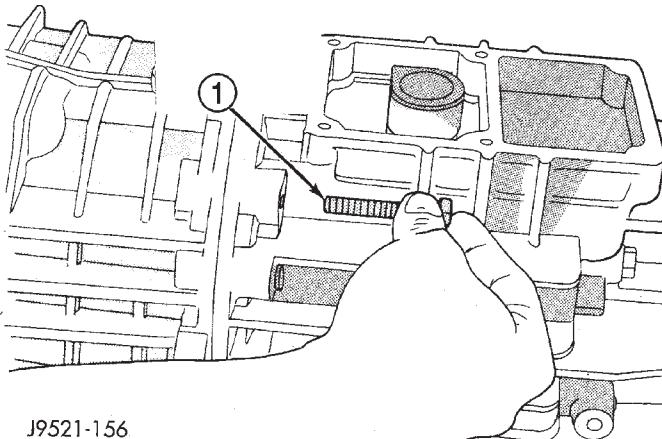
CAUTION: If the front housing will not seat on the rear housing, either the shift components are not in Neutral, or one or more components are misaligned. Do not force the front housing into place. This will only result in damaged components.

(8) Tap rear housing alignment dowels back into place with hammer and pin punch (Fig. 117). Both dowels should be flush fit in each housing. Have helper hold transmission upright while dowels are tapped back into place.

(9) Place transmission in horizontal position.

(10) Apply Mopar® Gasket Maker, or equivalent, to housing attaching bolts. Apply sealer material sealer to underside of bolt heads and to bolt shanks and threads (Fig. 118).

(11) Install and start housing attaching bolts by hand (Fig. 118). Then tighten bolts to 30-35 N·m (22-26 ft. lbs.) torque.

**Fig. 118 Installing Housing Attaching Bolts**

- 1 – HOUSING ATTACHING BOLTS (APPLY SEALER BEFOREHAND)

(12) Install shift shaft bushing lock bolt (Fig. 119). Apply Mopar® Gasket Maker, or equivalent, to bolt threads, shank and underside of bolt head before installation.

CAUTION: If the lock bolt cannot be fully installed, do not try to force it into place. Either the shift shaft is not in Neutral, or the shaft bushing (or lever) is misaligned (Fig. 120).

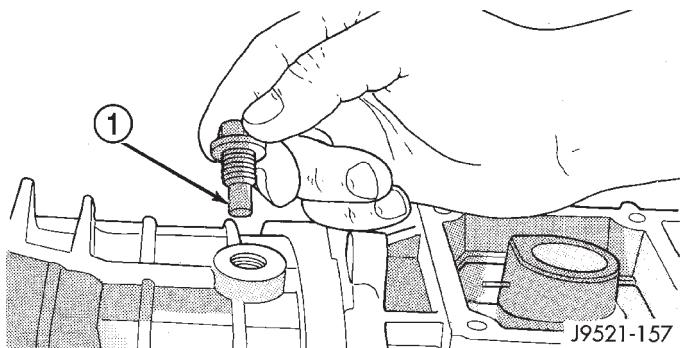


Fig. 119 Installing Shift Shaft Bushing Lock Bolt

1 – SHIFT SHAFT BUSHING LOCK BOLT

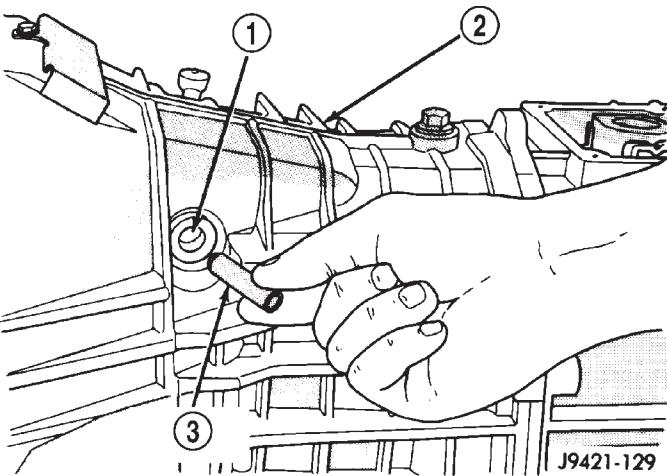


Fig. 121 Installing Shift Shaft Detent Plunger

1 – DETENT BORE
2 – FRONT HOUSING
3 – DETENT PLUNGER

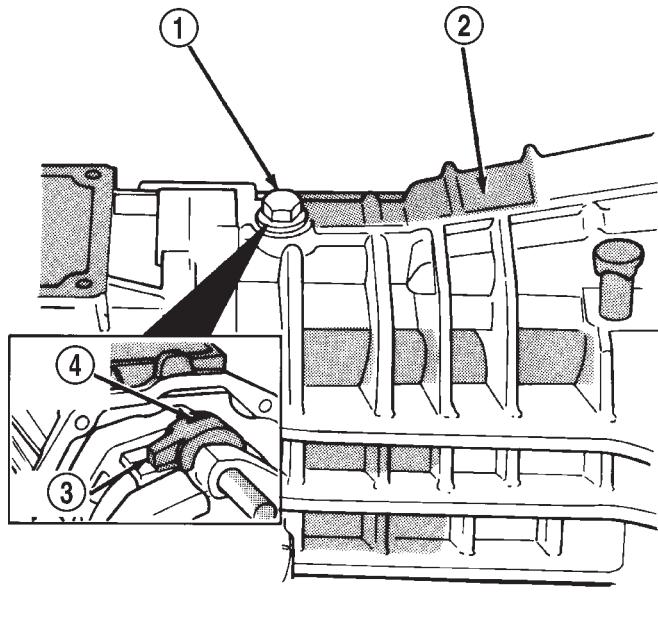


Fig. 120 Correct Alignment Of Lock Bolt And Shaft Bushing

1 – LOCK BOLT
2 – FRONT HOUSING
3 – SHAFT LEVER
4 – LOCK BOLT GROOVE

(13) Lubricate then install shift shaft detent plunger in housing bore (Fig. 121). Lubricate plunger with petroleum jelly or gear lubricant. **Be sure plunger is fully seated in detent notch in shift shaft.**

(14) Install detent spring inside plunger (Fig. 122).

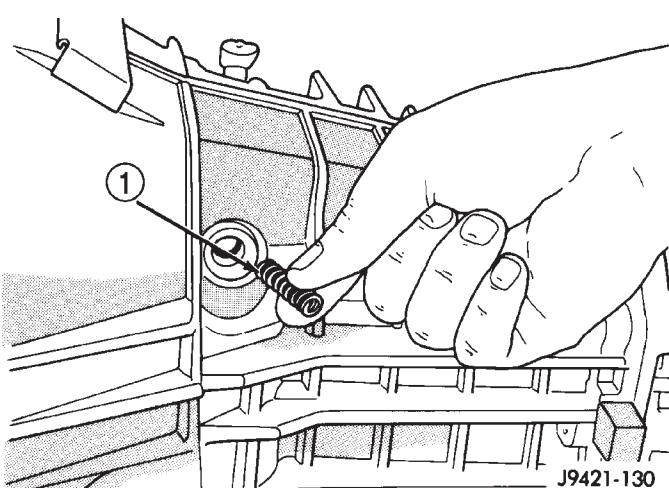


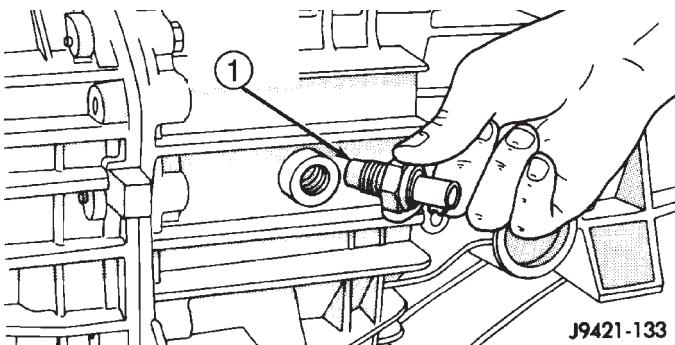
Fig. 122 Installing Detent Plunger Spring

1 – DETENT SPRING (GOES INSIDE PLUNGER)

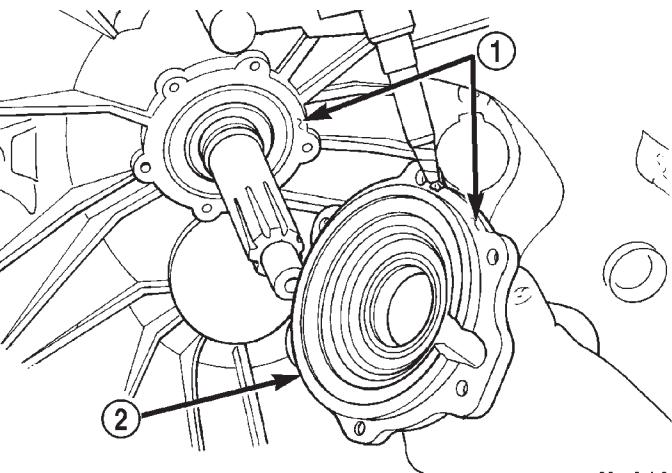
(15) Install detent plug as follows:

- Install detent plug in end of Installer 8123.
 - Position plug on detent spring and compress spring until detent plug pilots in detent plunger bore.
 - Drive detent plug into transmission case until plug seats.
- (16) Install backup light switch (Fig. 123).
- (17) Install input shaft snap ring (Fig. 124).
- (18) Install new oil seal in front bearing retainer with Installer Tool 6448 (Fig. 125).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

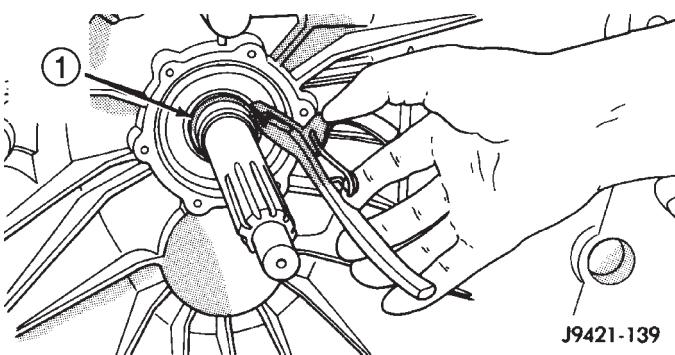
**Fig. 123 Installing Backup Light Switch**

1 – BACKUP LIGHT SWITCH

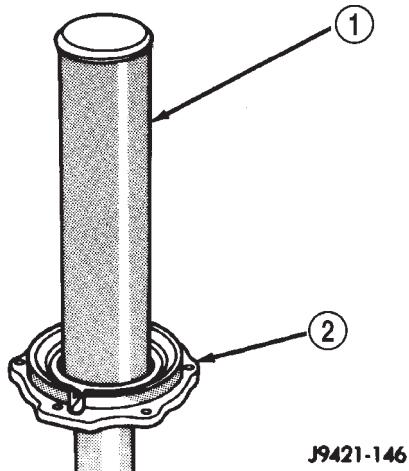
**Fig. 126 Applying Sealer To Bearing Retainer And Housing**

1 – APPLY SEALER BEAD

2 – INPUT SHAFT BEARING RETAINER

**Fig. 124 Installing Input Shaft Snap Ring**

1 – INPUT SHAFT SNAP RING

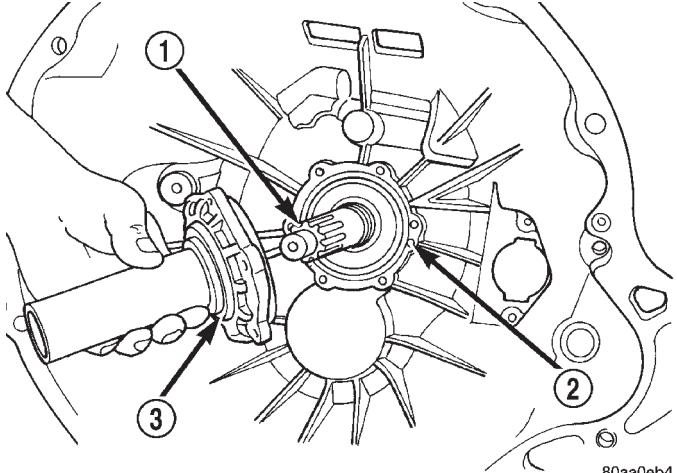
**Fig. 125 Installing Oil Seal In Front Bearing Retainer**

1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6448

2 – FRONT BEARING RETAINER

(19) Apply bead of Mopar® silicone sealer, or equivalent, to flange surface of front bearing retainer (Fig. 126).

(20) Align and install front bearing retainer over input shaft and onto housing mounting surface (Fig. 127). Although retainer is one-way fit on housing, be sure bolt holes are aligned before seating retainer. Be sure that no sealer gets into the oil feed hole in the transmission case or bearing retainer.

**Fig. 127 Installing Input Shaft Bearing Retainer**

1 – INPUT SHAFT

2 – OIL FEED

3 – BEARING RETAINER

(21) Install and tighten bearing retainer bolts to 7-10 N·m (5-7 ft. lbs.) torque (Fig. 128).

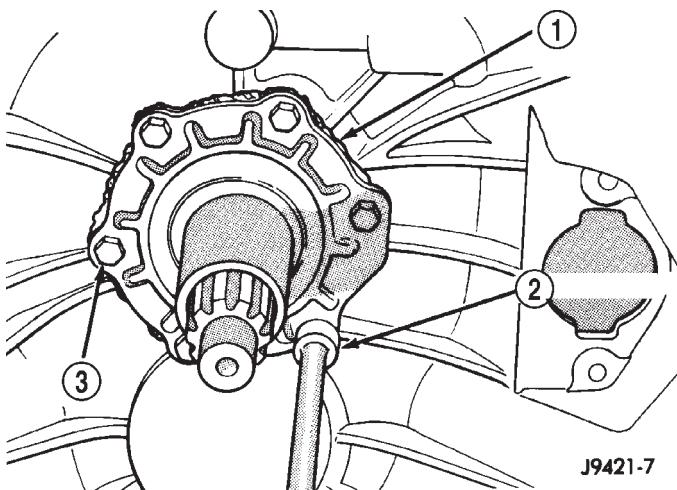


Fig. 128 Installing Input Shaft Bearing Retainer Bolts

- 1 – INPUT SHAFT BEARING RETAINER
- 2 – 10mm SOCKET
- 3 – RETAINER BOLTS (6)

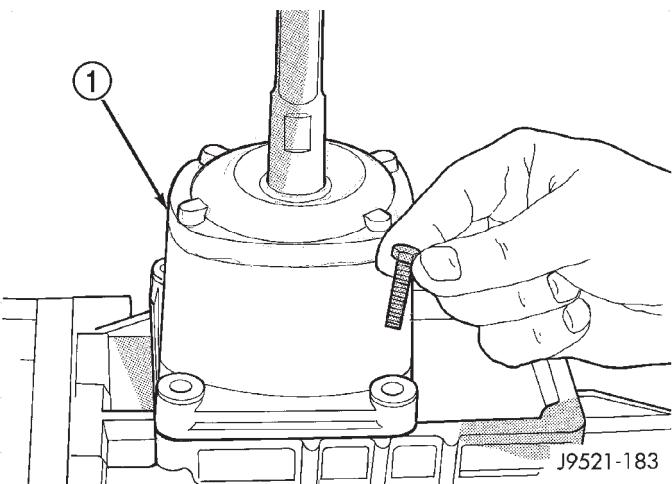


Fig. 130 Shift Tower Bolt Installation

- 1 – SHIFT TOWER AND LEVER ASSEMBLY

SHIFT TOWER AND LEVER ASSEMBLY INSTALLATION

- (1) Apply petroleum jelly to ball end of shift lever and interior of shift socket.
- (2) Align and install shift tower and lever assembly (Fig. 129). Be sure shift ball is seated in socket and the offset in the tower is toward the passenger side of the vehicle before installing tower bolts.
- (3) Install shift tower bolts (Fig. 130). Tighten bolts to 7-10 N·m (5-7 ft. lbs.) torque.

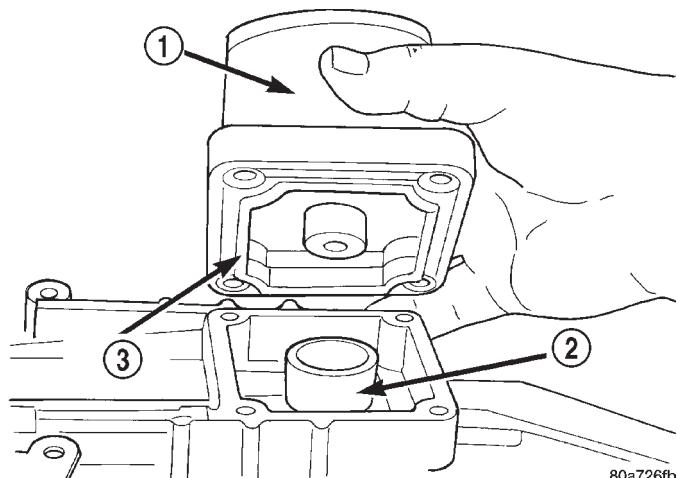


Fig. 129 Shift Tower Installation

- 1 – SHIFT TOWER AND LEVER ASSEMBLY
- 2 – SHIFT SOCKET
- 3 – SEAL

(4) Fill transmission to bottom edge of fill plug hole with Mopar® Transmission Lubricant, P/N 4874464.

(5) Install and tighten fill plug to 19-27 N·m (14-20 ft. lbs.) torque.

(6) Check transmission vent (Fig. 131). Be sure vent is open and not restricted.

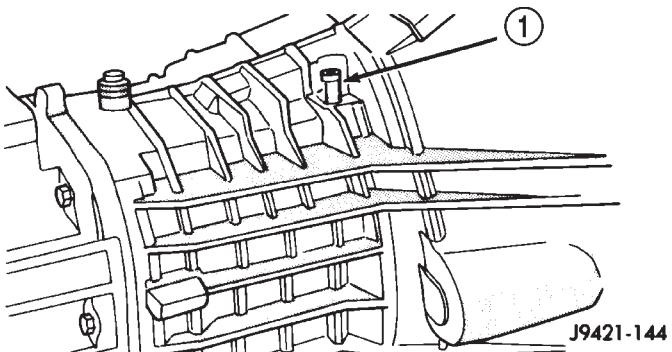


Fig. 131 Vent Location

- 1 – TRANSMISSION VENT

CLEANING AND INSPECTION

TRANSMISSION COMPONENTS

Clean the gears, shafts, shift components and transmission housings with a standard parts cleaning solvent. Do not use acid or corrosive base solvents. Dry all parts except bearings with compressed air.

Clean the shaft bearings with a mild solvent such as Mopar® degreasing solvent, Gunk, or similar solvents. Do not dry the bearings with compressed air. Allow the bearings to either air dry, or wipe them dry with clean shop towels.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

SHIFT TOWER AND LEVER ASSEMBLY

The shift tower and lever assembly is not serviceable. Replace the lever and shift tower as an assembly if the tower, lever, lever ball, or internal components are worn, or damaged.

SHIFT SHAFT AND FORKS

Inspect the shift fork interlock arms and synchro sleeve contact surfaces (Fig. 132). Replace any fork exhibiting wear or damage in these areas. Do not attempt to salvage shift forks.

Check condition of the shift shaft detent plunger and spring. The plunger should be smooth and free of nicks, or scores. The plunger spring should be straight and not collapsed, or distorted. Minor scratches, or nicks on the plunger can be smoothed with 320/400 grit emery soaked in oil. Replace the plunger and spring if in doubt about condition. Check condition of detent plunger bushings. Replace if damaged.

Inspect the shift shaft, shift shaft bushing and bearing, the shaft lever, and the lever bushing that fits over the lever. Replace the shaft if bent, cracked, or severely scored. Minor burrs, nicks, or scratches can be smoothed off with 320/400 grit emery cloth followed by polishing with crocus cloth. Replace the shift shaft bushing or bearing if damaged.

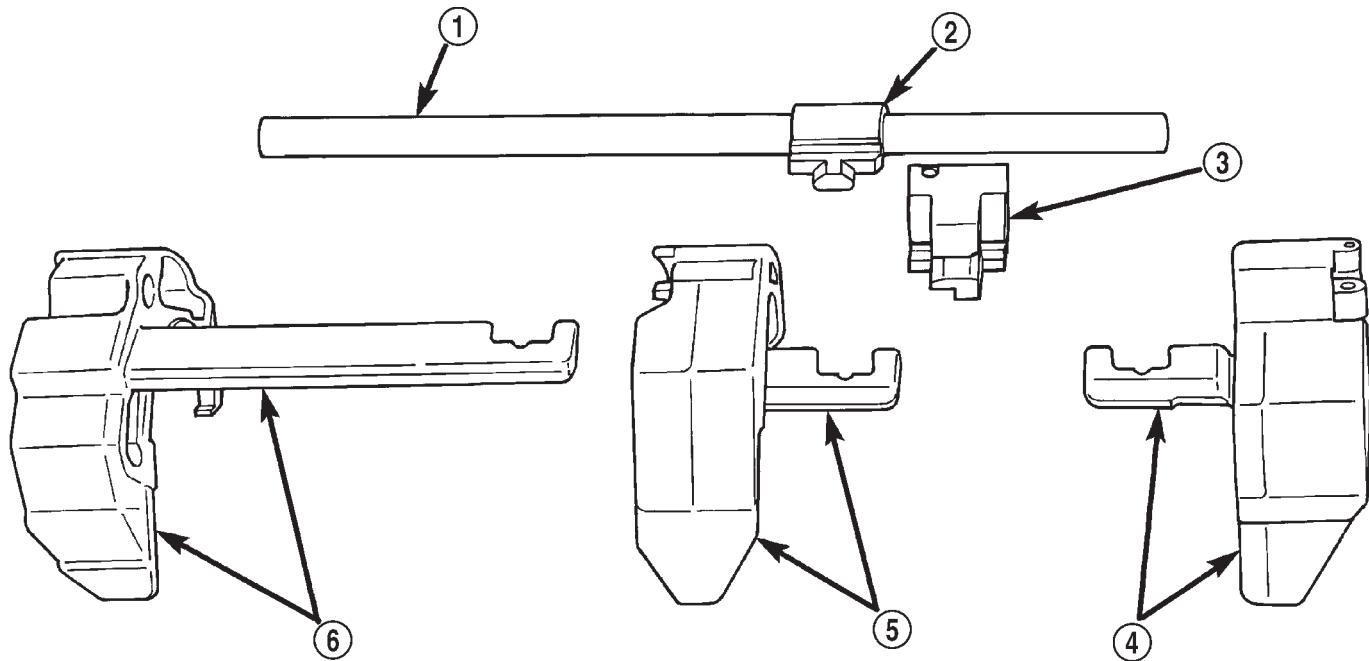
Replace the shaft lever and bushing if either part is deformed, or worn. Do not attempt to salvage these parts as shift fork binding will occur. Replace the roll pin that secures the lever to the shaft.

FRONT/REAR HOUSINGS AND BEARING RETAINERS

Inspect the housings carefully. Look for cracks, stripped threads, scored mating surfaces, damaged bearing bores, or worn dowel pin holes. Minor nicks on mating surfaces can be dressed off with a fine file, or emery cloth. Damaged threads can be renewed by either re-tapping or installing Helicoil inserts.

NOTE: The front housing contains the countershaft front bearing race. The rear housing contains the countershaft rear bearing race. Be advised that these components are NOT serviceable items. The front housing will have to be replaced if the countershaft bearing race is loose, worn, or damaged. The rear housing will have to be replaced if the countershaft rear bearing race is loose, worn, or damaged.

Inspect the input shaft bearing retainer. Be sure the release bearing slide surface of the retainer is in good condition. Minor nicks on the surface can be smoothed off with 320/420 grit emery cloth and final



80c070ff

Fig. 132 Shift Forks And Shaft

- 1 – SHIFT SHAFT
- 2 – SHAFT LEVER
- 3 – SHAFT LEVER BUSHING

- 4 – 3-4 SHIFT FORK
- 5 – 1-2 SHIFT FORK
- 6 – FIFTH-REVERSE SHIFT FORK

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

polished with oil coated crocus cloth. Replace the retainer seal if necessary.

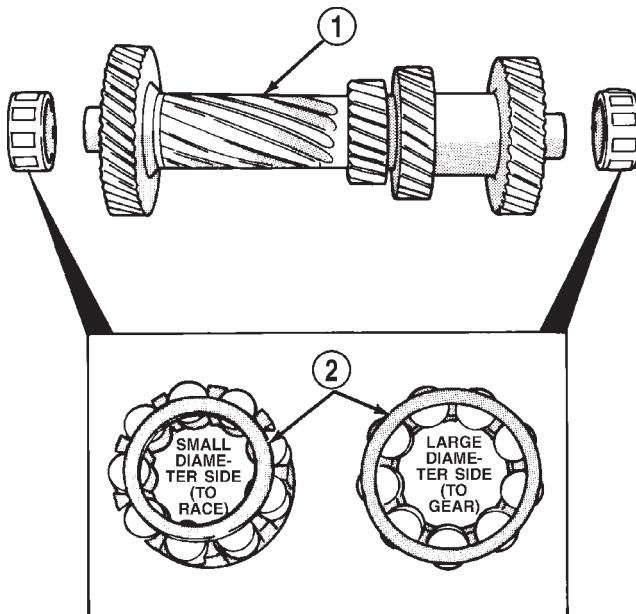
Inspect the output shaft bearing retainer. Be sure the U-shaped retainer is flat and free of distortion. Replace the retainer if the threads are damaged, or if the retainer is bent, or cracked.

COUNTERSHAFT BEARINGS AND RACES

The countershaft bearings and races are machine lapped during manufacture to form matched sets. The bearings and races should not be interchanged.

NOTE: The bearing races are a permanent press fit in the housings and are NOT serviceable. If a bearing race becomes damaged, it will be necessary to replace the front or rear housing as necessary. A new countershaft bearing will be supplied with each new housing for service use.

The countershaft bearings can be installed backwards if care is not exercised. The bearing roller cage is a different diameter on each side. Be sure the bearing is installed so the large diameter side of the cage is facing the countershaft gear (Fig. 133). The small diameter side goes in the bearing race.



J9421-55

Fig. 133 Correct Countershaft Bearing Installation

- 1 – COUNTERSHAFT
- 2 – BEARING CAGE

REVERSE IDLER COMPONENTS

Inspect the idler gear, bearing, shaft, thrust washer, wave washer and thrust plate. Replace the bearing if any of the needle bearing rollers are worn, chipped, cracked, flat-spotted, or brinelled. Also replace the bearing if the plastic bearing cage is damaged or distorted.

Replace the thrust washer, wave washer, or thrust plate if cracked, chipped, or worn. Replace the idler gear if the teeth are chipped, cracked or worn thin. Replace the shaft if worn, scored, or the bolt threads are damaged beyond repair. Replace the support segment if cracked, or chipped and replace the idler attaching bolts if the threads are damaged.

Shift Socket

Inspect the shift socket for wear or damage. Replace the socket if the roll pin, or shift shaft bores are damaged. Minor nicks in the shift lever ball seat in the socket can be smoothed down with 400 grit emery or wet/dry paper. Replace the socket if the ball seat is worn, or cracked. Do not reuse the original shift socket roll pin. Install a new pin during reassembly. The socket roll pin is approximately 33 mm (1-1/4 in.) long.

Output Shaft And Geartrain

Inspect all of the gears for worn, cracked, chipped, or broken teeth. Also check condition of the bearing bore in each gear. The bores should be smooth and free of surface damage. Discoloration of the gear bores is a normal occurrence and is not a reason for replacement. Replace gears only when tooth damage has occurred, or if the bores are brinelled or severely scored.

Inspect the shaft splines and bearings surfaces. Minor nicks on the bearing surfaces can be smoothed with 320/420 grit emery and final polished with crocus cloth. Replace the shaft if the splines are damaged or bearing surfaces are deeply scored, worn, or brinelled.

SPECIFICATIONS

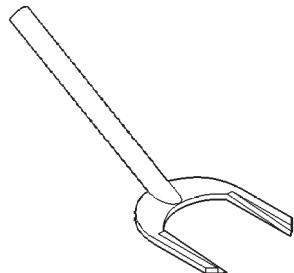
TORQUE

Description	Torque
Clutch Housing Bolts	54–61 N•m (40–45 ft. lbs.)
Crossmember-To-Frame Bolts	61–75 N•m (44–55 ft. lbs.)
Crossmember-To-Insulator Nuts	54–61 N•m (40–45 ft. lbs.)
Drain/Fill Plug	9–27 N•m (14–20 ft. lbs.)
Front-To-Rear Housing Bolts	30–35 N•m (22–26 ft. lbs.)
Front Bearing Retainer Bolts	7–10 N•m (5–7 ft. lbs.)
Idler Shaft Bolts	19–25 N•m (14–18 ft. lbs.)
Rear Bearing Retainer Bolts	30–35 N•m (22–26 ft. lbs.)
Shift Tower Bolts	7–10 N•m (5–7 ft. lbs.)
Slave Cylinder Attaching Nuts	23 N•m (200 in. lbs.)
Transfer Case Attaching Nuts	47 N•m (35 ft. lbs.)
U-Joint Clamp Bolts	19 N•m (170 in. lbs.)

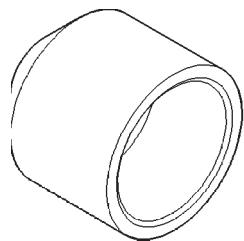
J9421-212

SPECIAL TOOLS

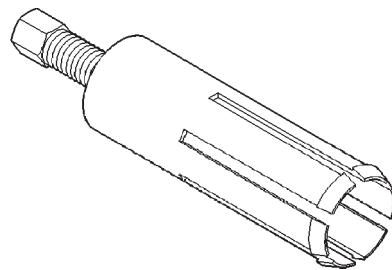
NV3500 MANUAL TRANSMISSION



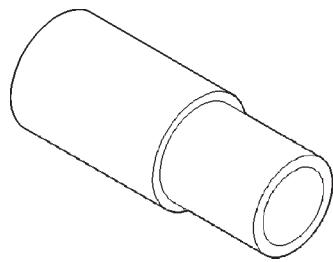
Remover, Seal—C-3985-B



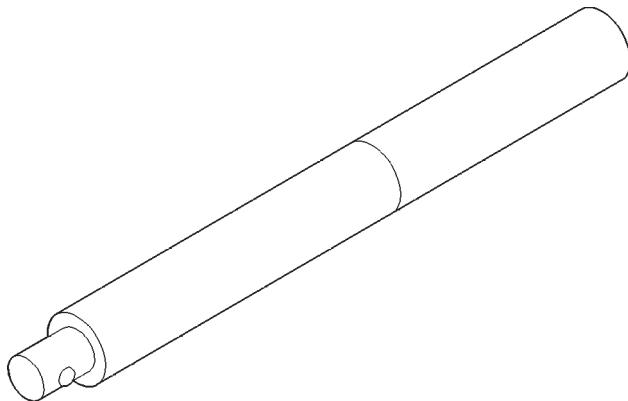
Installer, Seal—C-3972-A



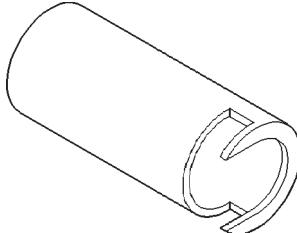
Remover, Bushing—6957



Installer, Bushing—6951

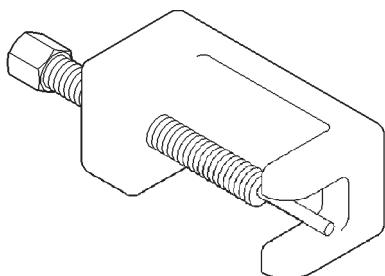


Handle—C-4171

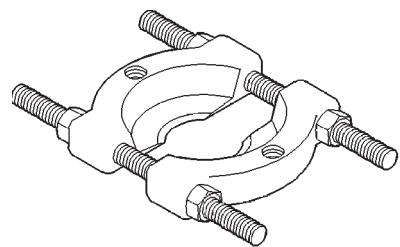


Remover—8117

SPECIAL TOOLS (Continued)

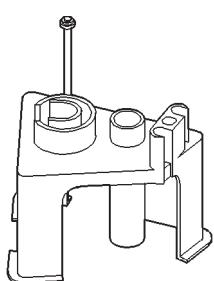


Remover/Installer, NV3500 Shift Rail Roll Pin—6858

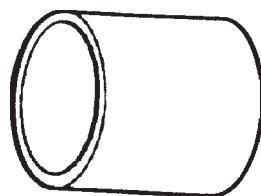


1130-80109ac3

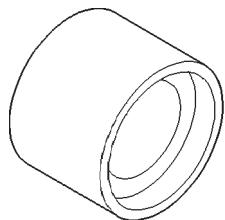
Splitter, Bearing—1130



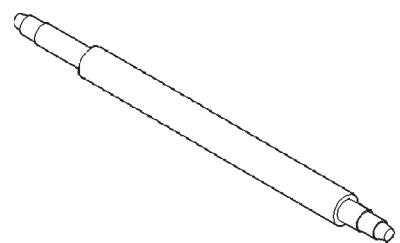
Fixture, NV3500—6747



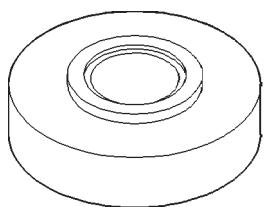
Tube—6310-1



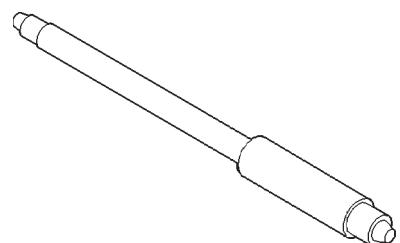
Adapter, Fixture—6747-1A



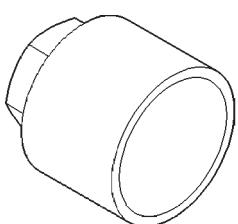
Installer—8118



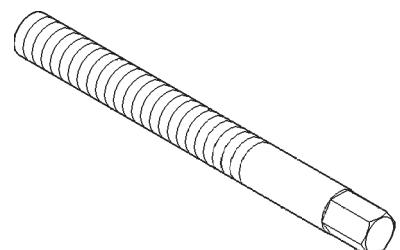
Adapter, Fixture—6747-2A



Remover/Installer—8119

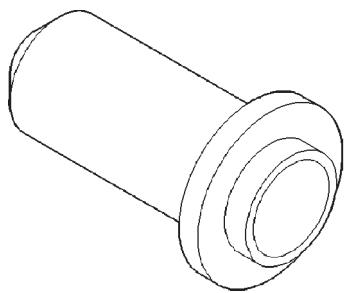


Cup, Fixture—8115

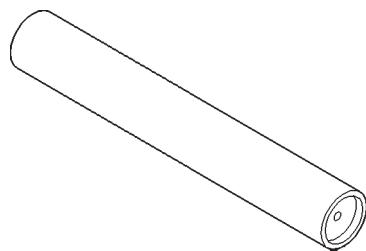


Stud, Alignment—8120

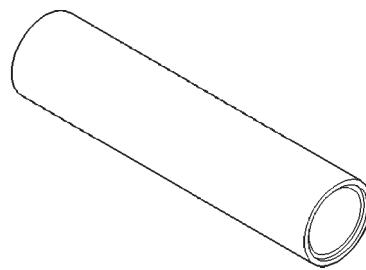
SPECIAL TOOLS (Continued)



Installer, Seal—C-3860-A



Installer—8123



Installer, Bearing Cone—6448

42RE AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page		page
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION			
42RE AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION	85	TORQUE CONVERTER	152
FLUID	92	YOKE SEAL REPLACEMENT	152
TORQUE CONVERTER	93	PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH	153
OIL PUMP	97	GEARSHIFT CABLE	153
VALVE BODY	98	GOVERNOR SOLENOID AND PRESSURE SENSOR	154
ACCUMULATOR	117	VALVE BODY	155
PISTONS	117	OVERDRIVE UNIT	157
FRONT CLUTCH	119	OVERDRIVE HOUSING BUSHING	159
REAR CLUTCH	120	OUTPUT SHAFT REAR BEARING	159
OVERDRIVE CLUTCH	122	OUTPUT SHAFT FRONT BEARING	159
OVERRUNNING CLUTCH	122		
PLANETARY GEARSET	123		
BANDS	123		
SERVOS	124		
GEARSHIFT MECHANISM	125		
CONVERTER DRAINBACK VALVE	125		
POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE (PCM)	125		
ELECTRONIC GOVERNOR	126		
GOVERNOR PRESSURE CURVES	128		
OVERDRIVE OFF SWITCH	129		
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING			
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION DIAGNOSIS	129		
EFFECTS OF INCORRECT FLUID LEVEL	129		
CAUSES OF BURNT FLUID	129		
FLUID CONTAMINATION	129		
PRELIMINARY DIAGNOSIS	130		
PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH	130		
OVERDRIVE ELECTRICAL CONTROLS	130		
GEARSHIFT CABLE	130		
ROAD TESTING	131		
ANALYZING ROAD TEST	131		
HYDRAULIC PRESSURE TEST	132		
AIR TESTING TRANSMISSION CLUTCH AND BAND OPERATION	134		
CONVERTER HOUSING FLUID LEAK DIAGNOSIS	135		
DIAGNOSIS TABLES AND CHARTS—RE TRANSMISSION	136		
SERVICE PROCEDURES			
FLUID LEVEL CHECK	147		
FLUID AND FILTER REPLACEMENT	147		
TRANSMISSION FILL PROCEDURE	148		
CONVERTER DRAINBACK CHECK VALVE SERVICE	148		
OIL PUMP VOLUME CHECK	149		
FLUSHING COOLERS AND TUBES	149		
ALUMINUM THREAD REPAIR	150		
REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION			
TRANSMISSION	150		
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY			
VALVE BODY	160		
TRANSMISSION	178		
OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER	189		
FRONT SERVO PISTON	191		
REAR SERVO PISTON	192		
OIL PUMP AND REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT	192		
FRONT CLUTCH	195		
REAR CLUTCH	197		
PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT	200		
OVERDRIVE UNIT	206		
CLEANING AND INSPECTION			
VALVE BODY	222		
TRANSMISSION	223		
OVERRUNNING CLUTCH/LOW-REVERSE DRUM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER	223		
ACCUMULATOR	223		
FRONT SERVO	224		
REAR SERVO	224		
OIL PUMP AND REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT	224		
FRONT CLUTCH	225		
REAR CLUTCH	225		
PLANETARY GEARTRAIN	225		
OVERDRIVE UNIT	226		
ADJUSTMENTS			
TRANSMISSION THROTTLE VALVE CABLE ADJUSTMENT	226		
GEARSHIFT CABLE	227		
BAND ADJUSTMENTS	228		
VALVE BODY	229		
SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS			
HYDRAULIC SCHEMATICS	229		
SPECIFICATIONS			
TRANSMISSION	242		
SPECIAL TOOLS			
RE TRANSMISSIONS	243		

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION

42RE AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

DESCRIPTION

The 42RE is a four speed fully automatic transmission (Fig. 1) with an electronic governor. The 42RE is equipped with a lock-up clutch in the torque converter. First through third gear ranges are provided by the clutches, bands, overrunning clutch, and planetary gear sets in the transmission. Fourth gear range is provided by the overdrive unit that contains an overdrive clutch, direct clutch, planetary gear set, and overrunning clutch.

The transmission contains a front, rear, and direct clutch which function as the input driving components. They also contain the kickdown (front) and the

low/reverse (rear) bands which, along with the overrunning clutch and overdrive clutch, serve as the holding components. The driving and holding components combine to select the necessary planetary gear components, in the front, rear, or overdrive planetary gear set, transfer the engine power from the input shaft through to the output shaft.

The valve body is mounted to the lower side of the transmission and contains the valves to control pressure regulation, fluid flow control, and clutch/band application. The oil pump is mounted at the front of the transmission and is driven by the torque converter hub. The pump supplies the oil pressure necessary for clutch/band actuation and transmission lubrication.

The 42RE transmission is cooled by an integral fluid cooler inside the radiator.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

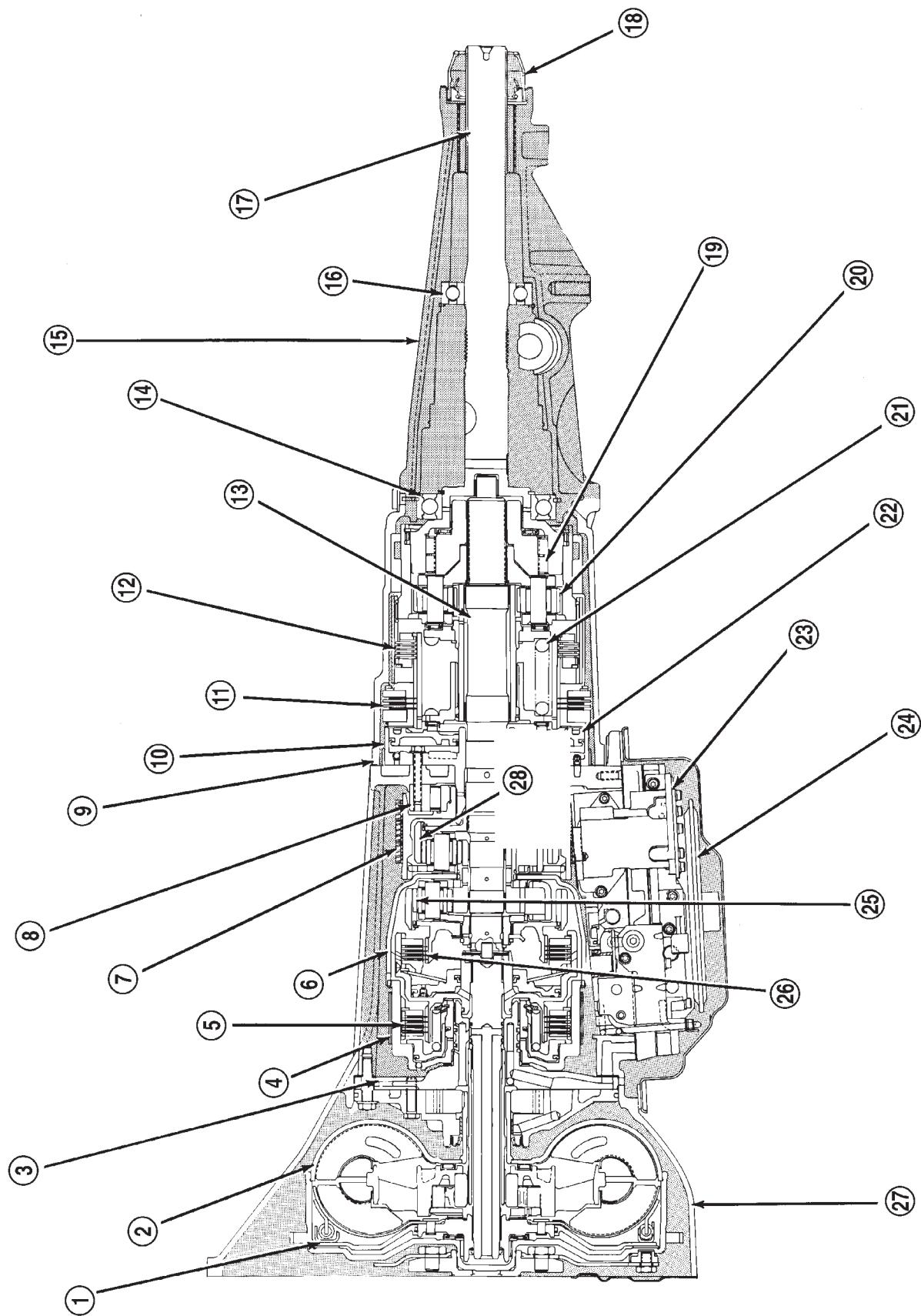


Fig. 1 42RE Transmission

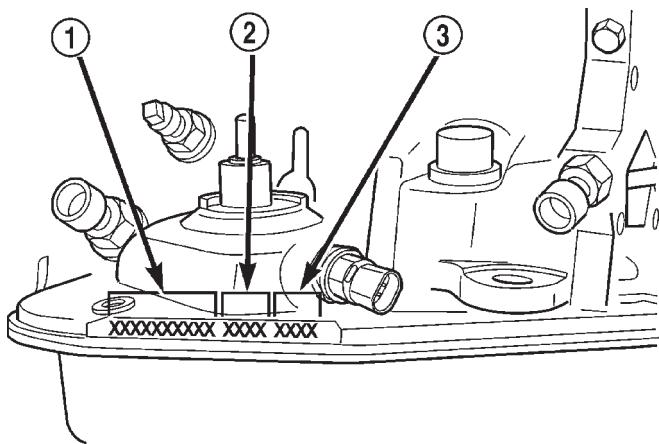
J9321-407

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

1 - CONVERTER CLUTCH	15 - HOUSING
2 - TORQUE CONVERTER	16 - REAR BEARING
3 - OIL PUMP AND REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT ASSEMBLY	17 - OUTPUT SHAFT
4 - FRONT BAND	18 - SEAL
5 - FRONT CLUTCH	19 - OVERDRIVE OVERRUNNING CLUTCH
6 - DRIVING SHELL	20 - OVERDRIVE PLANETARY GEAR
7 - REAR BAND	21 - DIRECT CLUTCH SPRING
8 - TRANSMISSION OVERRUNNING CLUTCH	22 - OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PISTON
9 - OVERDRIVE UNIT	23 - VALVE BODY ASSEMBLY
10 - PISTON RETAINER	24 - FILTER
11 - OVERDRIVE CLUTCH	25 - FRONT PLANETARY GEAR
12 - DIRECT CLUTCH	26 - REAR CLUTCH
13 - INTERMEDIATE SHAFT	27 - TRANSMISSION
14 - FRONT BEARING	28 - REAR PLANETARY GEAR

IDENTIFICATION

Transmission identification numbers are stamped on the left side of the case just above the oil pan gasket surface (Fig. 2). Refer to this information when ordering replacement parts.



80b11960

Fig. 2 Transmission Part And Serial Number Location

- 1 - PART NUMBER
- 2 - BUILD DATE
- 3 - SERIAL NUMBER

GEAR RATIOS

The 42RE gear ratios are:

- **1st** 2.74:1
- **2nd** 1.54:1
- **3rd** 1.00:1
- **4th** 0.69:1
- **Rev.** 2.21

OPERATION

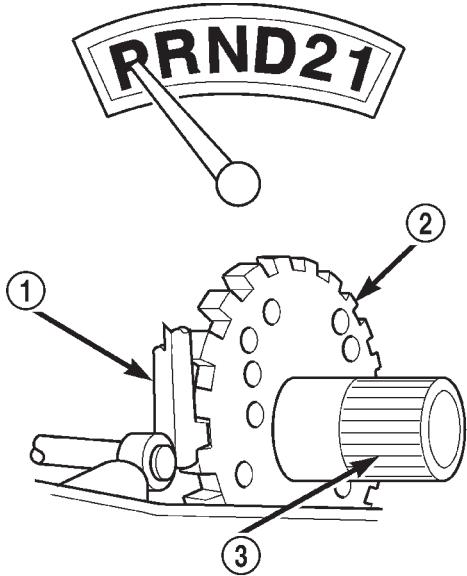
The application of each driving or holding component is controlled by the valve body based upon the manual lever position and governor pressure. The governor pressure is a variable pressure input to the valve body and is one of the signals that a shift is necessary. First through fourth gear are obtained by selectively applying and releasing the different clutches and bands. Engine power is thereby routed to the various planetary gear assemblies which combine with the overrunning clutch assemblies to generate the different gear ratios. The torque converter clutch is hydraulically applied and is released when fluid is vented from the hydraulic circuit by the torque converter control (TCC) solenoid on the valve body. The torque converter clutch is controlled by the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). The torque converter clutch engages in fourth gear, and in third gear when the O/D switch is OFF, when the vehicle is cruising on a level plane after the vehicle has warmed up. The torque converter clutch will disengage momentarily when an increase in engine load is sensed by the PCM, such as when the vehicle begins to go uphill or the throttle pressure is increased. The torque converter clutch feature increases fuel economy and reduces the transmission fluid temperature.

Since the overdrive clutch is applied in fourth gear only and the direct clutch is applied in all ranges except fourth gear, the transmission operation for park, neutral, and first through third gear will be described first. Once these powerflows are described, the third to fourth shift sequence will be described.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

PARK POWERFLOW

As the engine is running and the crankshaft is rotating, the flexplate and torque converter, which are also bolted to it, are all rotating in a clockwise direction as viewed from the front of the engine. The notched hub of the torque converter is connected to the oil pump's internal gear, supplying the transmission with oil pressure. As the converter turns, it turns the input shaft in a clockwise direction. As the input shaft is rotating, the front clutch hub-rear clutch retainer and all their associated parts are also rotating, all being directly connected to the input shaft. The power flow from the engine through the front-clutch-hub and rear-clutch-retainer stops at the rear-clutch-retainer. Therefore, no power flow to the output shaft occurs because no clutches are applied. The only mechanism in use at this time is the parking sprag (Fig. 3), which locks the parking gear on the output shaft to the transmission case.



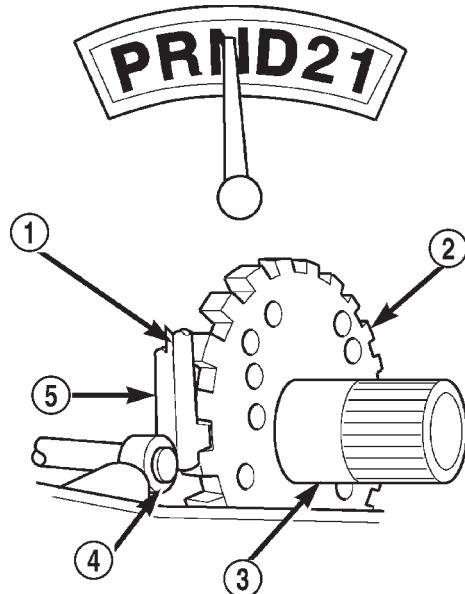
80c070a6

Fig. 3 Park Powerflow

- 1 – LEVER ENGAGED FOR PARK
- 2 – PARK SPRAG
- 3 – OUTPUT SHAFT

NEUTRAL POWERFLOW

With the gear selector in the neutral position (Fig. 4), the power flow of the transmission is essentially the same as in the park position. The only operational difference is that the parking sprag has been disengaged, unlocking the output shaft from the transmission case and allowing it to move freely.



80c070a7

Fig. 4 Neutral Powerflow

- 1 – LEVER DISENGAGED FOR NEUTRAL
- 2 – PARK SPRAG
- 3 – OUTPUT SHAFT
- 4 – CAM
- 5 – LEVER

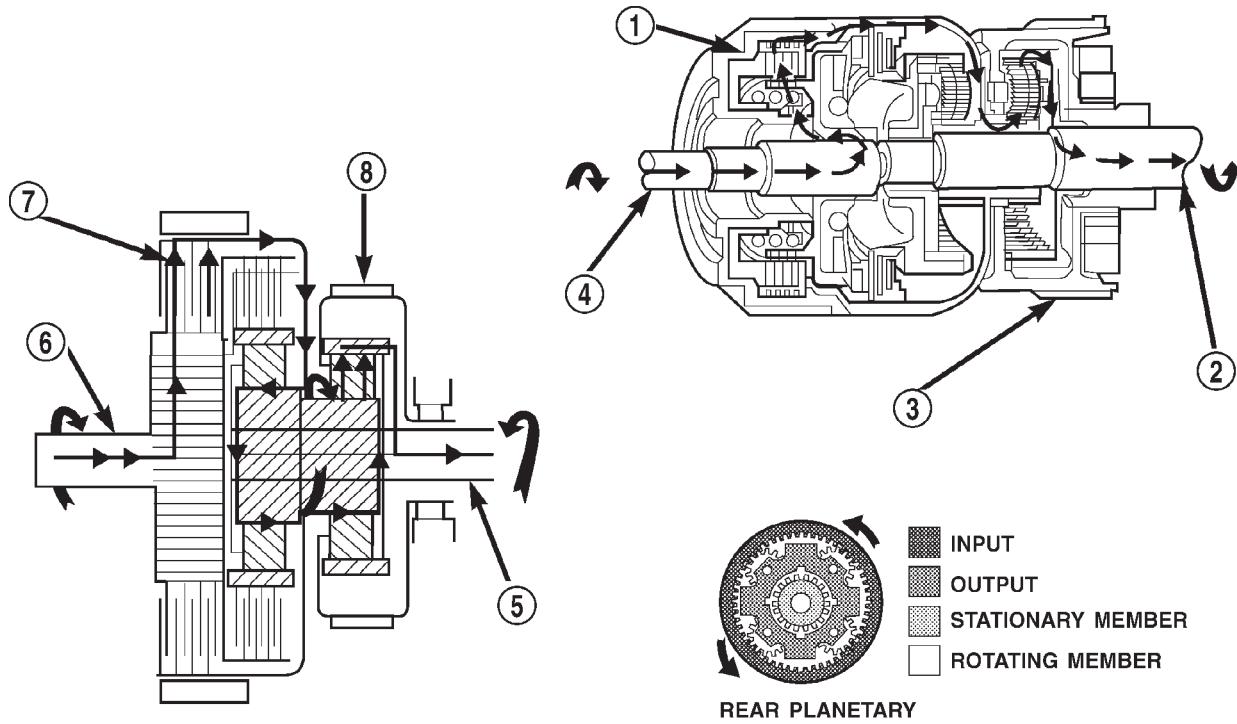
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

REVERSE POWERFLOW

When the gear selector is moved into the reverse position (Fig. 5), the front clutch and the rear band are applied. With the application of the front clutch, engine torque is applied to the sun gear, turning it in a clockwise direction. The clockwise rotation of the sun gear causes the rear planet pinions to rotate against engine rotation in a counterclockwise direction. The rear band is holding the low reverse drum, which is splined to the rear carrier. Since the rear carrier is being held, the torque from the planet pinions is transferred to the rear annulus gear, which is splined to the output shaft. The output shaft in turn rotates with the annulus gear in a counterclockwise direction giving a reverse gear output. The entire transmission of torque is applied to the rear planetary gearset only. Although there is torque input to the front gearset through the sun gear, no other member of the gearset is being held. During the entire reverse stage of operation, the front planetary gears are in an idling condition.

FIRST GEAR POWERFLOW

When the gearshift lever is moved into the drive position the transmission goes into first gear (Fig. 6). As soon as the transmission is shifted from park or neutral to drive, the rear clutch applies, applying the rear clutch pack to the front annulus gear. Engine torque is now applied to the front annulus gear turning it in a clockwise direction. With the front annulus gear turning in a clockwise direction, it causes the front planets to turn in a clockwise direction. The rotation of the front planets cause the sun to revolve in a counterclockwise direction. The sun gear now transfers its counterclockwise rotation to the rear planets which rotate back in a clockwise direction. With the rear annulus gear stationary, the rear planet rotation on the annulus gear causes the rear planet carrier to revolve in a counterclockwise direction. The rear planet carrier is splined into the low-reverse drum, and the low reverse drum is splined to the inner race of the over-running clutch. With the over-running clutch locked, the planet carrier is held,



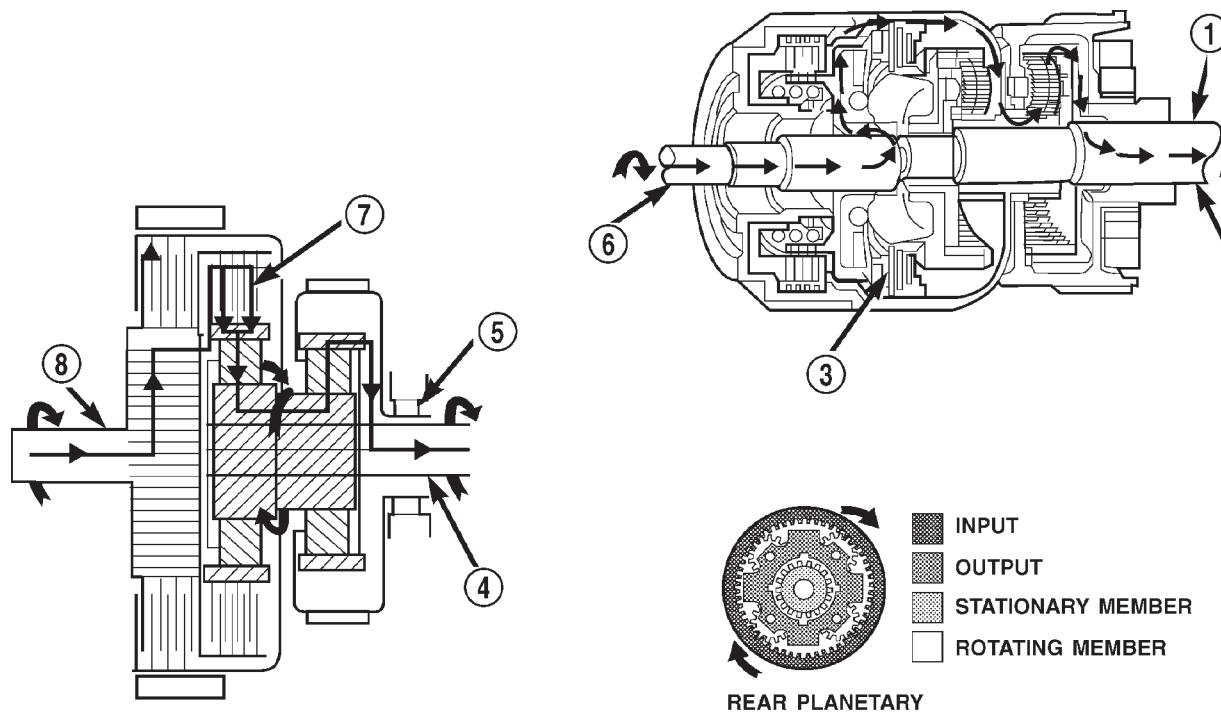
- 1 – FRONT CLUTCH ENGAGED
2 – OUTPUT SHAFT
3 – LOW/REVERSE BAND APPLIED
4 – INPUT SHAFT

Fig. 5 Reverse Powerflow

- 5 – OUTPUT SHAFT
6 – INPUT SHAFT
7 – FRONT CLUTCH ENGAGED
8 – LOW/REVERSE BAND APPLIED

80c070a8

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

**Fig. 6 First Gear Powerflow**

80c070a9

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT
 2 – OVER-RUNNING CLUTCH HOLDING
 3 – REAR CLUTCH APPLIED
 4 – OUTPUT SHAFT

- 5 – OVER-RUNNING CLUTCH HOLDING
 6 – INPUT SHAFT
 7 – REAR CLUTCH APPLIED
 8 – INPUT SHAFT

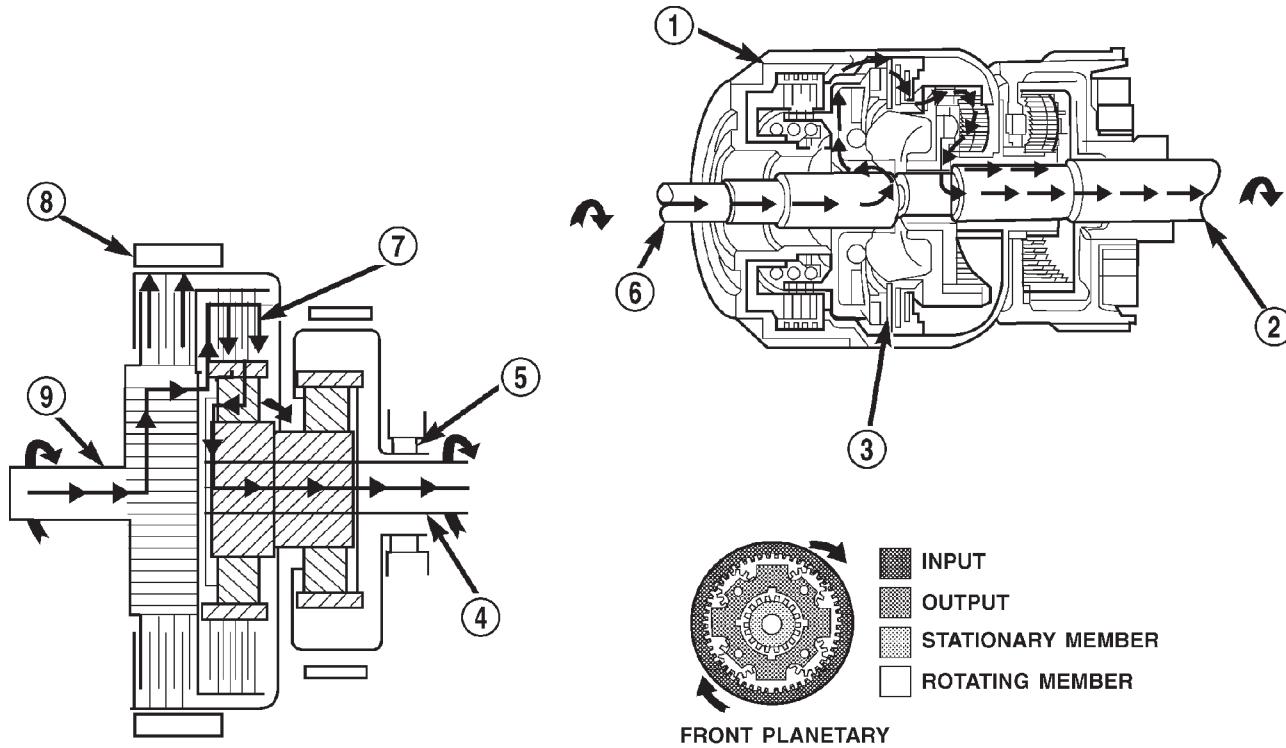
and the resulting torque provided by the planet pinions is transferred to the rear annulus gear. The rear annulus gear is splined to the output shaft and rotated along with it (clockwise) in an underdrive gear reduction mode.

SECOND GEAR POWERFLOW

In drive-second (Fig. 7), the same elements are applied as in manual-second. Therefore, the power flow will be the same, and both gears will be discussed as one in the same. In drive-second, the transmission has proceeded from first gear to its shift point, and is shifting from first gear to second. The second gear shift is obtained by keeping the rear clutch applied and applying the front (kickdown) band. The front band holds the front clutch retainer

that is locked to the sun gear driving shell. With the rear clutch still applied, the input is still on the front annulus gear turning it clockwise at engine speed. Now that the front band is holding the sun gear stationary, the annulus rotation causes the front planets to rotate in a clockwise direction. The front carrier is then also made to rotate in a clockwise direction but at a reduced speed. This will transmit the torque to the output shaft, which is directly connected to the front planet carrier. The rear planetary annulus gear will also be turning because it is directly splined to the output shaft. All power flow has occurred in the front planetary gear set during the drive-second stage of operation, and now the over-running clutch, in the rear of the transmission, is disengaged and freewheeling on its hub.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c070aa

Fig. 7 Second Gear Powerflow

- 1 – KICKDOWN BAND APPLIED
- 2 – OUTPUT SHAFT
- 3 – REAR CLUTCH ENGAGED
- 4 – OUTPUT SHAFT
- 5 – OVER-RUNNING CLUTCH FREE-WHEELING

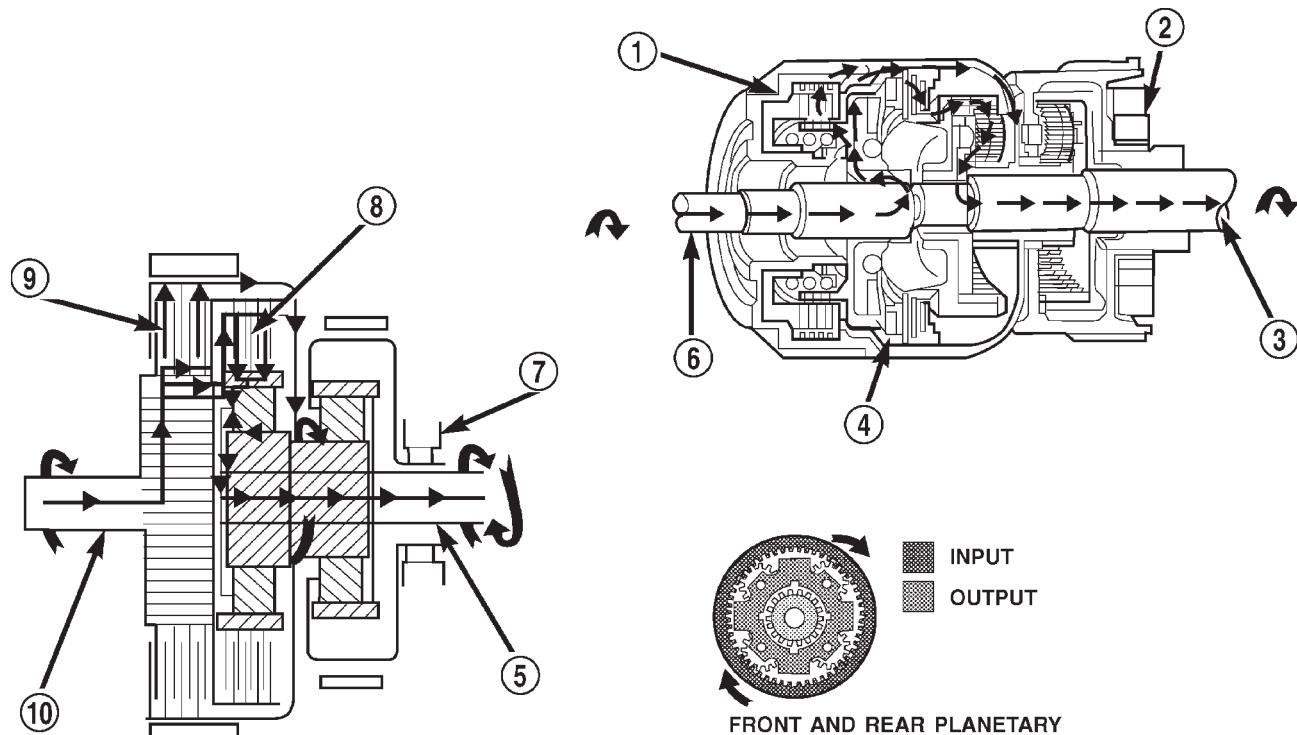
- 6 – INPUT SHAFT
- 7 – REAR CLUTCH APPLIED
- 8 – KICKDOWN BAND APPLIED
- 9 – INPUT SHAFT

DIRECT DRIVE POWERFLOW

The vehicle has accelerated and reached the shift point for the 2-3 upshift into direct drive (Fig. 8). When the shift takes place, the front band is released, and the front clutch is applied. The rear clutch stays applied as it has been in all the forward gears. With the front clutch now applied, engine torque is now on the front clutch retainer, which is locked to the sun gear driving shell. This means that the sun gear is now turning in engine rotation (clockwise) and at engine speed. The rear clutch is still applied so engine torque is also still on the front

annulus gear. If two members of the same planetary set are driven, direct drive results. Therefore, when two members are rotating at the same speed and in the same direction, it is the same as being locked up. The rear planetary set is also locked up, given the sun gear is still the input, and the rear annulus gear must turn with the output shaft. Both gears are turning in the same direction and at the same speed. The front and rear planet pinions do not turn at all in direct drive. The only rotation is the input from the engine to the connected parts, which are acting as one common unit, to the output shaft.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c070ab

Fig. 8 Direct Drive Powerflow

- 1 – FRONT CLUTCH APPLIED
- 2 – OVER-RUNNING CLUTCH FREE-WHEELING
- 3 – OUTPUT SHAFT
- 4 – REAR CLUTCH APPLIED
- 5 – OUTPUT SHAFT

- 6 – INPUT SHAFT
- 7 – OVER-RUNNING CLUTCH FREE-WHEELING
- 8 – REAR CLUTCH APPLIED
- 9 – FRONT CLUTCH APPLIED
- 10 – INPUT SHAFT

FOURTH GEAR POWERFLOW

Fourth gear overdrive range is electronically controlled and hydraulically activated. Various sensor inputs are supplied to the powertrain control module to operate the overdrive solenoid on the valve body. The solenoid contains a check ball that opens and closes a vent port in the 3-4 shift valve feed passage. The overdrive solenoid (and check ball) are not energized in first, second, third, or reverse gear. The vent port remains open, diverting line pressure from the 2-3 shift valve away from the 3-4 shift valve. The overdrive control switch must be in the ON position to transmit overdrive status to the PCM. A 3-4 upshift occurs only when the overdrive solenoid is energized by the PCM. The PCM energizes the overdrive solenoid during the 3-4 upshift. This causes the solenoid check ball to close the vent port allowing line pressure from the 2-3 shift valve to act directly on the 3-4 upshift valve. Line pressure on the 3-4 shift valve overcomes valve spring pressure moving the valve to the upshift position. This action exposes the feed passages to the 3-4 timing valve, 3-4 quick

fill valve, 3-4 accumulator, and ultimately to the overdrive piston. Line pressure through the timing valve moves the overdrive piston into contact with the overdrive clutch. The direct clutch is disengaged before the overdrive clutch is engaged. The boost valve provides increased fluid apply pressure to the overdrive clutch during 3-4 upshifts, and when accelerating in fourth gear. The 3-4 accumulator cushions overdrive clutch engagement to smooth 3-4 upshifts. The accumulator is charged at the same time as apply pressure acts against the overdrive piston.

FLUID

NOTE: Refer to the maintenance schedules in Group 0, Lubrication and Maintenance for the recommended maintenance (fluid/filter change) intervals for this transmission.

NOTE: Refer to Service Procedures in this group for fluid level checking procedures.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

DESCRIPTION

Mopar® ATF Plus 3, Type 7176, automatic transmission fluid is the recommended fluid for Daimler-Chrysler automatic transmissions.

Dexron II fluid IS NOT recommended. Clutch chatter can result from the use of improper fluid.

Mopar® ATF Plus 3, Type 7176, automatic transmission fluid when new is red in color. The ATF is dyed red so it can be identified from other fluids used in the vehicle such as engine oil or antifreeze. The red color is not permanent and is not an indicator of fluid condition. As the vehicle is driven, the ATF will begin to look darker in color and may eventually become brown. **This is normal.** A dark brown/black fluid accompanied with a burnt odor and/or deterioration in shift quality may indicate fluid deterioration or transmission component failure.

FLUID ADDITIVES

DaimlerChrysler strongly recommends against the addition of any fluids to the transmission, other than those automatic transmission fluids listed above. Exceptions to this policy are the use of special dyes to aid in detecting fluid leaks.

Various "special" additives and supplements exist that claim to improve shift feel and/or quality. These additives and others also claim to improve converter clutch operation and inhibit overheating, oxidation, varnish, and sludge. These claims have not been supported to the satisfaction of DaimlerChrysler and these additives **must not be used.** The use of transmission "sealers" should also be avoided, since they may adversely affect the integrity of transmission seals.

OPERATION

The automatic transmission fluid is selected based upon several qualities. The fluid must provide a high level of protection for the internal components by providing a lubricating film between adjacent metal components. The fluid must also be thermally stable so that it can maintain a consistent viscosity through a large temperature range. If the viscosity stays constant through the temperature range of operation, transmission operation and shift feel will remain consistent. Transmission fluid must also be a good conductor of heat. The fluid must absorb heat from the internal transmission components and transfer that heat to the transmission case.

TORQUE CONVERTER

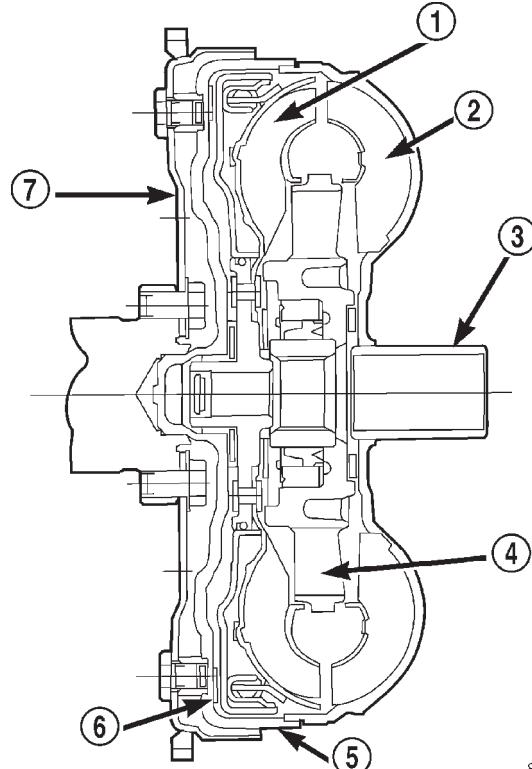
DESCRIPTION

The torque converter (Fig. 9) is a hydraulic device that couples the engine crankshaft to the transmis-

sion. The torque converter consists of an outer shell with an internal turbine, a stator, an overrunning clutch, an impeller and an electronically applied converter clutch. The converter clutch provides reduced engine speed and greater fuel economy when engaged. Clutch engagement also provides reduced transmission fluid temperatures. The converter clutch engages in third gear. The torque converter hub drives the transmission oil (fluid) pump.

The torque converter is a sealed, welded unit that is not repairable and is serviced as an assembly.

CAUTION: The torque converter must be replaced if a transmission failure resulted in large amounts of metal or fiber contamination in the fluid. If the fluid is contaminated, flush the fluid cooler and lines.



80c07135

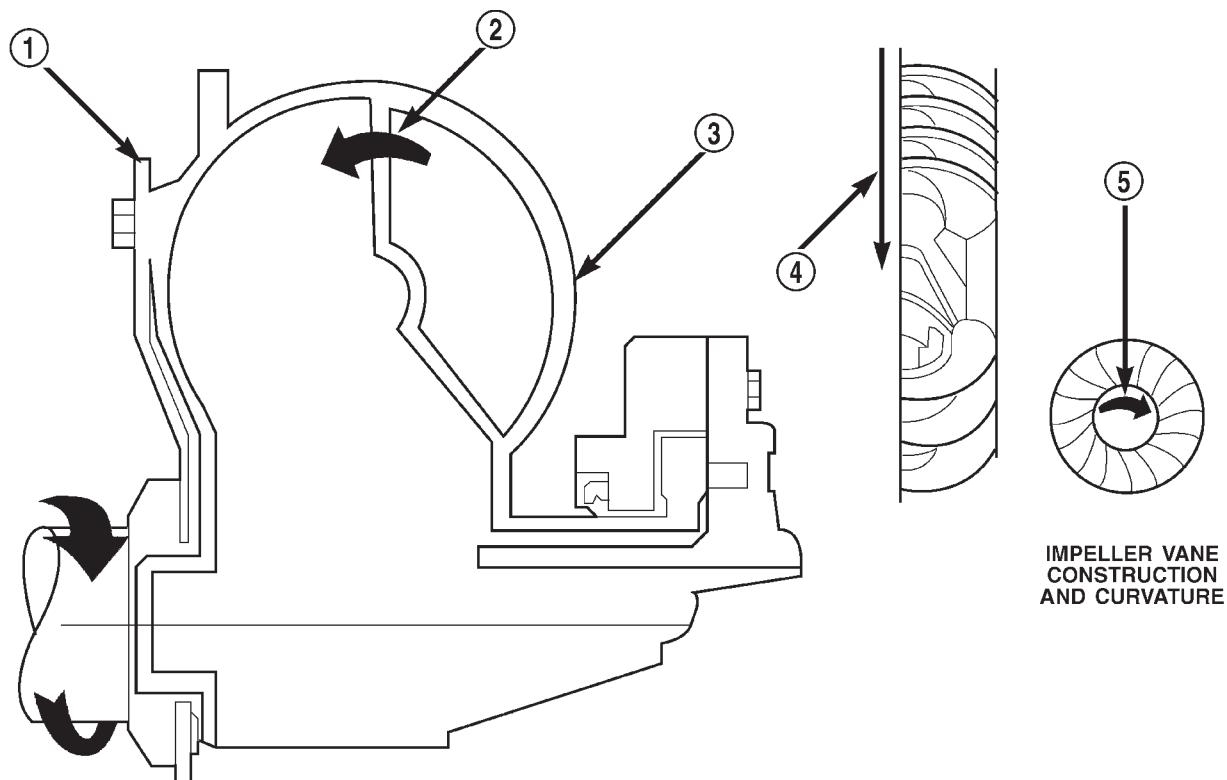
Fig. 9 Torque Converter Assembly

- 1 – TURBINE
- 2 – IMPELLER
- 3 – HUB
- 4 – STATOR
- 5 – FRONT COVER
- 6 – CONVERTER CLUTCH DISC
- 7 – DRIVE PLATE

IMPELLER

The impeller (Fig. 10) is an integral part of the converter housing. The impeller consists of curved blades placed radially along the inside of the housing on the transmission side of the converter. As the converter housing is rotated by the engine, so is the

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80bfe26a

Fig. 10 Impeller

1 – ENGINE FLEXPLATE

2 – OIL FLOW FROM IMPELLER SECTION INTO TURBINE SECTION

3 – IMPELLER VANES AND COVER ARE INTEGRAL

4 – ENGINE ROTATION

5 – ENGINE ROTATION

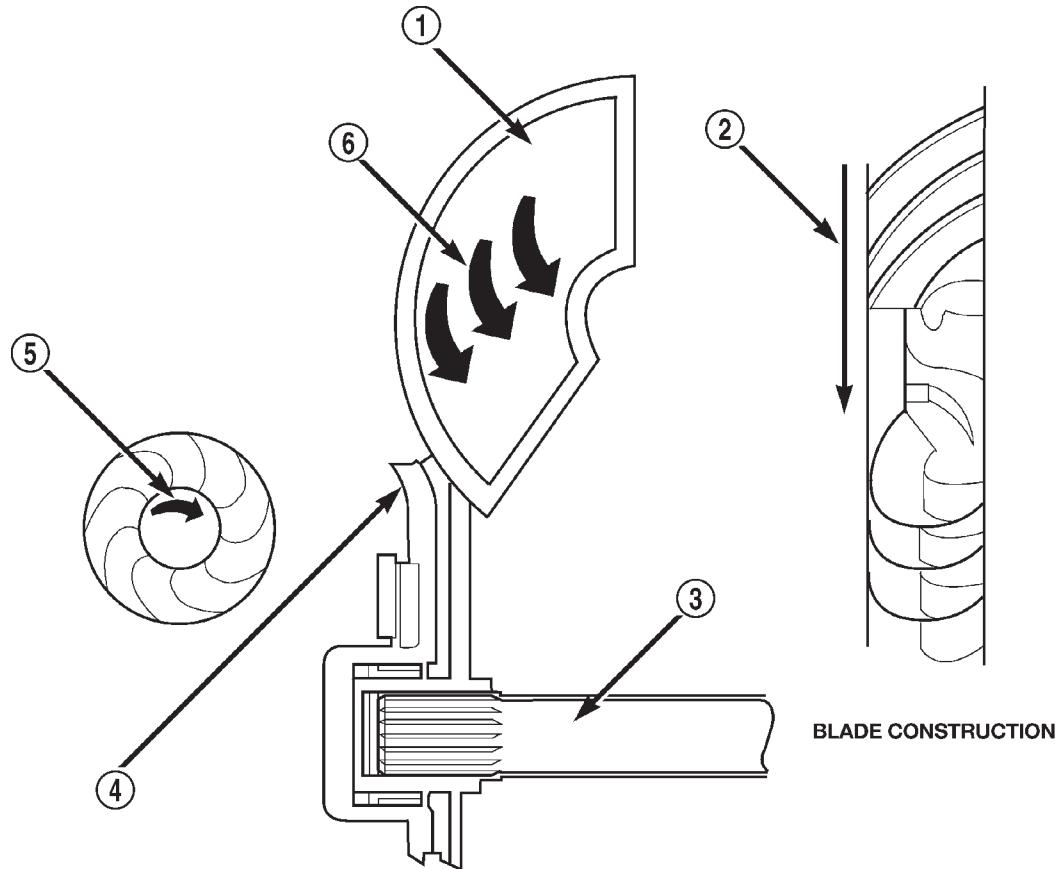
impeller, because they are one and the same and are the driving member of the system.

TURBINE

The turbine (Fig. 11) is the output, or driven, member of the converter. The turbine is mounted within

the housing opposite the impeller, but is not attached to the housing. The input shaft is inserted through the center of the impeller and splined into the turbine. The design of the turbine is similar to the impeller, except the blades of the turbine are curved in the opposite direction.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

**Fig. 11 Turbine**

80bfe26b

- 1 – TURBINE VANE
2 – ENGINE ROTATION
3 – INPUT SHAFT

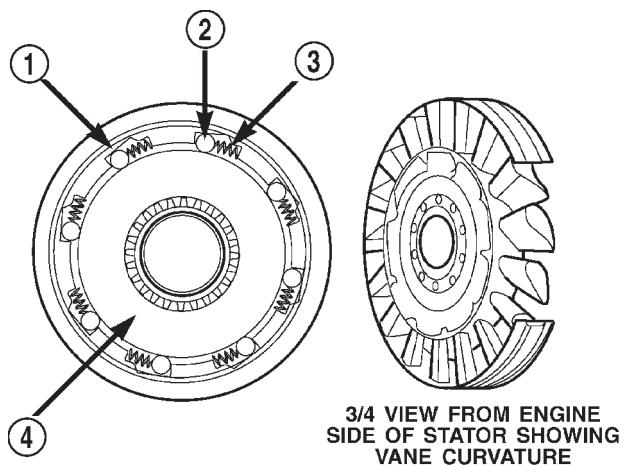
- 4 – PORTION OF TORQUE CONVERTER COVER
5 – ENGINE ROTATION
6 – OIL FLOW WITHIN TURBINE SECTION

STATOR

The stator assembly (Fig. 12) is mounted on a stationary shaft which is an integral part of the oil pump. The stator is located between the impeller and turbine within the torque converter case (Fig. 13). The stator contains an over-running clutch, which allows the stator to rotate only in a clockwise direction. When the stator is locked against the over-running clutch, the torque multiplication feature of the torque converter is operational.

TORQUE CONVERTER CLUTCH (TCC)

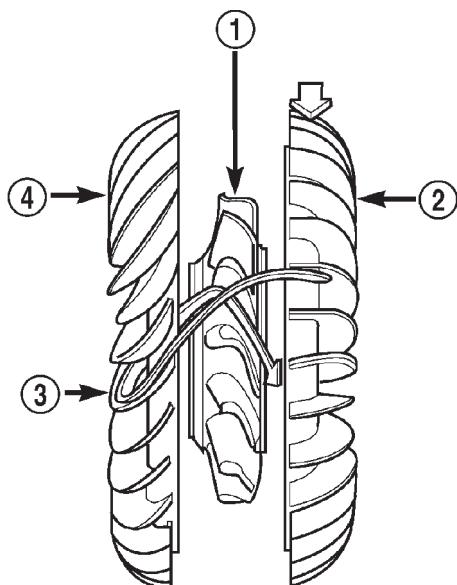
The TCC (Fig. 14) was installed to improve the efficiency of the torque converter that is lost to the slippage of the fluid coupling. Although the fluid coupling provides smooth, shock-free power transfer, it is natural for all fluid couplings to slip. If the impeller and turbine were mechanically locked together, a zero slippage condition could be obtained. A hydraulic piston was added to the turbine, and a friction material was added to the inside of the front cover to provide this mechanical lock-up.

**Fig. 12 Stator Components**

80bfe26c

- 1 – CAM (OUTER RACE)
2 – ROLLER
3 – SPRING
4 – INNER RACE

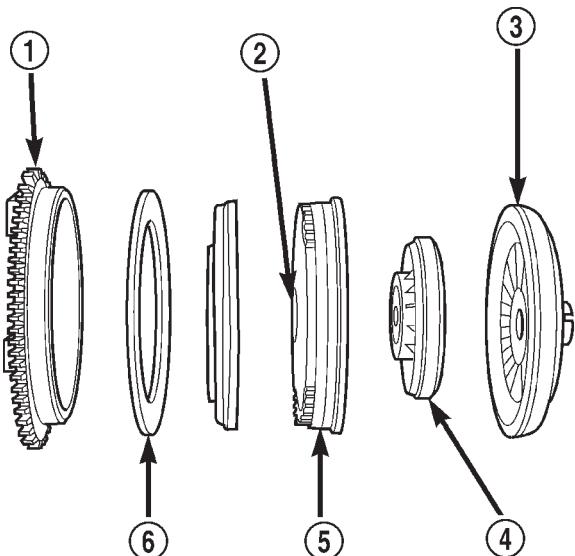
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80bfe26d

Fig. 13 Stator Location

- 1 - STATOR
- 2 - IMPELLER
- 3 - FLUID FLOW
- 4 - TURBINE



80bfe26f

Fig. 14 Torque Converter Clutch (TCC)

- 1 - IMPELLER FRONT COVER
- 2 - THRUST WASHER ASSEMBLY
- 3 - IMPELLER
- 4 - STATOR
- 5 - TURBINE
- 6 - FRICTION DISC

OPERATION

The converter impeller (Fig. 15) (driving member), which is integral to the converter housing and bolted to the engine drive plate, rotates at engine speed. The converter turbine (driven member), which reacts from fluid pressure generated by the impeller, rotates and turns the transmission input shaft.

TURBINE

As the fluid that was put into motion by the impeller blades strikes the blades of the turbine, some of the energy and rotational force is transferred into the turbine and the input shaft. This causes both of them (turbine and input shaft) to rotate in a clockwise direction following the impeller. As the fluid is leaving the trailing edges of the turbine's blades it continues in a "hindering" direction back toward the impeller. If the fluid is not redirected before it strikes the impeller, it will strike the impeller in such a direction that it would tend to slow it down.

STATOR

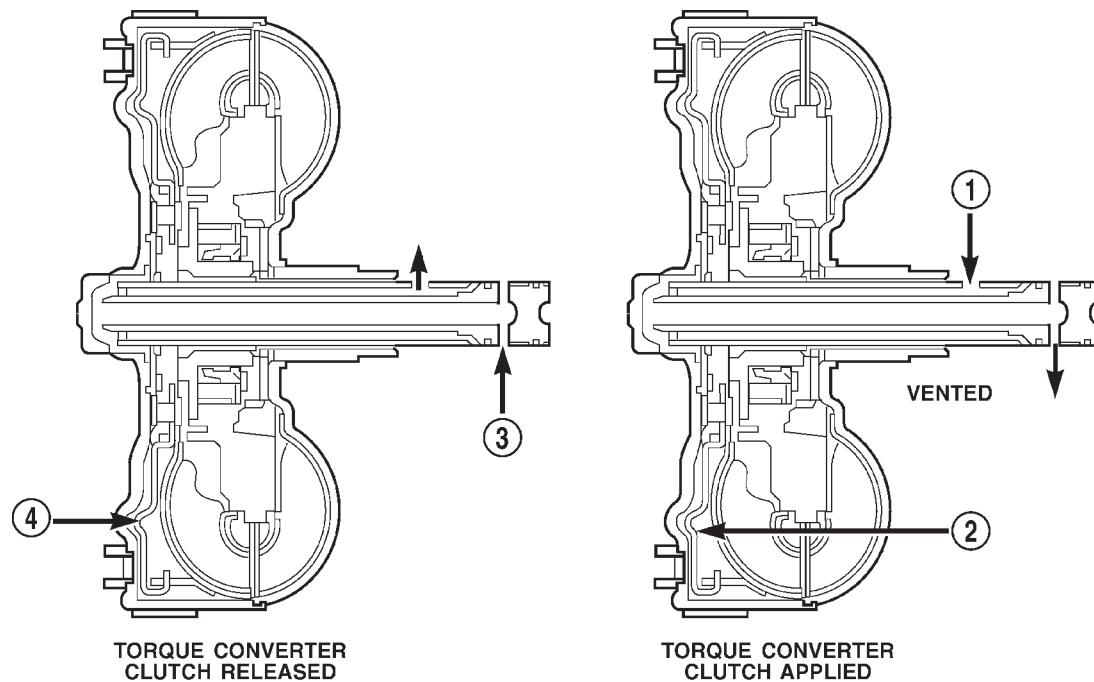
Torque multiplication is achieved by locking the stator's over-running clutch to its shaft (Fig. 16). Under stall conditions (the turbine is stationary), the oil leaving the turbine blades strikes the face of the stator blades and tries to rotate them in a counter-clockwise direction. When this happens the over-running clutch of the stator locks and holds the stator from rotating. With the stator locked, the oil strikes the stator blades and is redirected into a "helping" direction before it enters the impeller. This circulation of oil from impeller to turbine, turbine to stator, and stator to impeller, can produce a maximum torque multiplication of about 2.4:1. As the turbine begins to match the speed of the impeller, the fluid that was hitting the stator in such a way as to cause it to lock-up is no longer doing so. In this condition of operation, the stator begins to free wheel and the converter acts as a fluid coupling.

TORQUE CONVERTER CLUTCH (TCC)

In a standard torque converter, the impeller and turbine are rotating at about the same speed and the stator is freewheeling, providing no torque multiplication. By applying the turbine's piston to the front cover's friction material, a total converter engagement can be obtained. The result of this engagement is a direct 1:1 mechanical link between the engine and the transmission.

Converter clutch engagement in third or fourth gear range is controlled by sensor inputs to the powertrain control module. Inputs that determine clutch engagement are: coolant temperature, engine rpm, vehicle speed, throttle position, and manifold vacuum. The torque converter clutch is engaged by the

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80bfe276

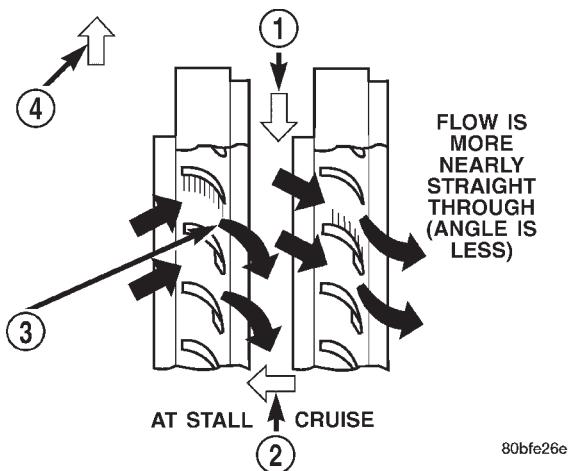
Fig. 15 Torque Converter Fluid Operation

1 – APPLY PRESSURE

2 – THE PISTON MOVES SLIGHTLY FORWARD

3 – RELEASE PRESSURE

4 – THE PISTON MOVES SLIGHTLY REARWARD



80bfe26e

Fig. 16 Stator Operation

1 – DIRECTION STATOR WILL FREE WHEEL DUE TO OIL PUSHING ON BACKSIDE OF VANES

2 – FRONT OF ENGINE

3 – INCREASED ANGLE AS OIL STRIKES VANES

4 – DIRECTION STATOR IS LOCKED UP DUE TO OIL PUSHING AGAINST STATOR VANES

clutch will engage after the shift to fourth gear, and above approximately 72 km/h (45 mph). If the control switch is in the OFF position, the clutch will engage after the shift to third gear, at approximately 56 km/h (35 mph) at light throttle.

OIL PUMP**DESCRIPTION**

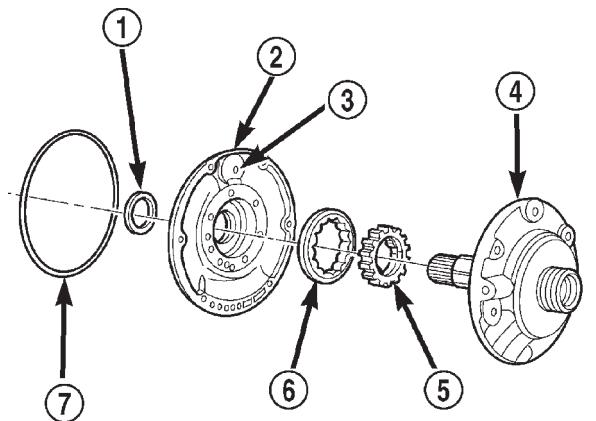
The oil pump (Fig. 17) is located in the pump housing inside the bell housing of the transmission case. The oil pump consists of an inner and outer gear, a housing, and a cover that also serves as the reaction shaft support.

OPERATION

As the torque converter rotates, the converter hub rotates the inner and outer gears. As the gears rotate, the clearance between the gear teeth increases in the crescent area, and creates a suction at the inlet side of the pump. This suction draws fluid through the pump inlet from the oil pan. As the clearance between the gear teeth in the crescent area decreases, it forces pressurized fluid into the pump outlet and to the valve body.

clutch solenoid on the valve body. The clutch can be engaged in third and fourth gear ranges depending on overdrive control switch position. If the overdrive control switch is in the normal ON position, the

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80be45f7

Fig. 17 Oil Pump Assembly

- 1 - OIL SEAL
- 2 - OIL PUMP BODY
- 3 - VENT
- 4 - REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT
- 5 - INNER ROTOR
- 6 - OUTER ROTOR
- 7 - "O" RING

VALVE BODY**DESCRIPTION**

The valve body consists of a cast aluminum valve body, a separator plate, and transfer plate. The valve body contains valves and check balls that control

fluid delivery to the torque converter clutch, bands, and frictional clutches. The valve body contains the following components (Fig. 18), (Fig. 19), (Fig. 20), and (Fig. 21):

- Regulator valve
- Regulator valve throttle pressure plug
- Line pressure plug and sleeve
- Kickdown valve
- Kickdown limit valve
- 1-2 shift valve
- 1-2 control valve
- 2-3 shift valve
- 2-3 governor plug
- 3-4 shift valve
- 3-4 timing valve
- 3-4 quick fill valve
- 3-4 accumulator
- Throttle valve
- Throttle pressure plug
- Switch valve
- Manual valve
- Converter clutch lock-up valve
- Converter clutch lock-up timing Valve
- Shuttle valve
- Shuttle valve throttle plug
- Boost Valve
- 10 check balls

By adjusting the spring pressure acting on the regulator valve, transmission line pressure can be adjusted.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

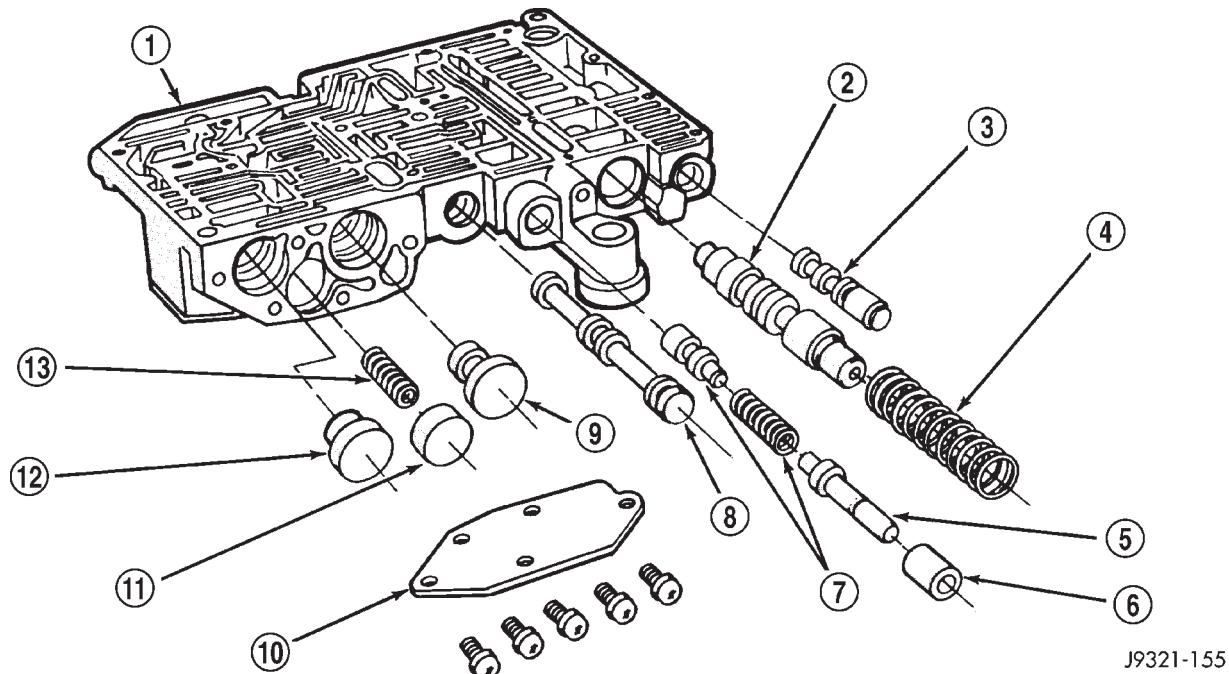
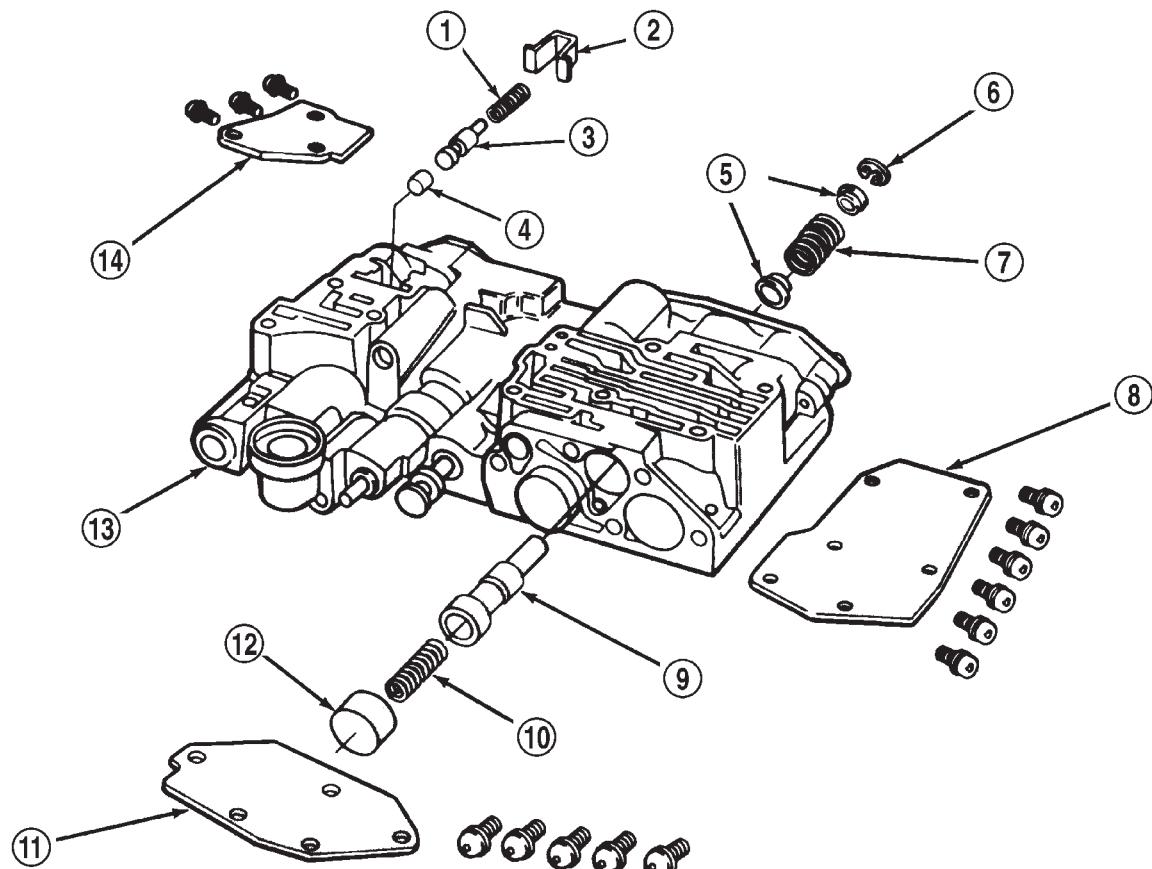


Fig. 18 Upper Housing Control Valve Locations

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 — UPPER HOUSING | 8 — MANUAL VALVE |
| 2 — REGULATOR VALVE | 9 — 1-2 GOVERNOR PLUG |
| 3 — SWITCH VALVE | 10 — GOVERNOR PLUG COVER |
| 4 — REGULATOR VALVE SPRING | 11 — THROTTLE PLUG |
| 5 — KICKDOWN VALVE | 12 — 2-3 GOVERNOR PLUG |
| 6 — KICKDOWN DETENT | 13 — SHUTTLE VALVE PRIMARY SPRING |
| 7 — THROTTLE VALVE AND SPRING | |

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



J9421-217

Fig. 19 Shuttle and Boost Valve Locations

- 1 - SPRING
- 2 - RETAINER
- 3 - BOOST VALVE
- 4 - BOOST VALVE PLUG
- 5 - SPRING GUIDES
- 6 - E-CLIP
- 7 - SHUTTLE VALVE SECONDARY SPRING

- 8 - SHUTTLE VALVE COVER
- 9 - SHUTTLE VALVE
- 10 - SHUTTLE VALVE PRIMARY SPRING
- 11 - GOVERNOR PLUG COVER
- 12 - THROTTLE PLUG
- 13 - UPPER HOUSING
- 14 - BOOST VALVE COVER

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

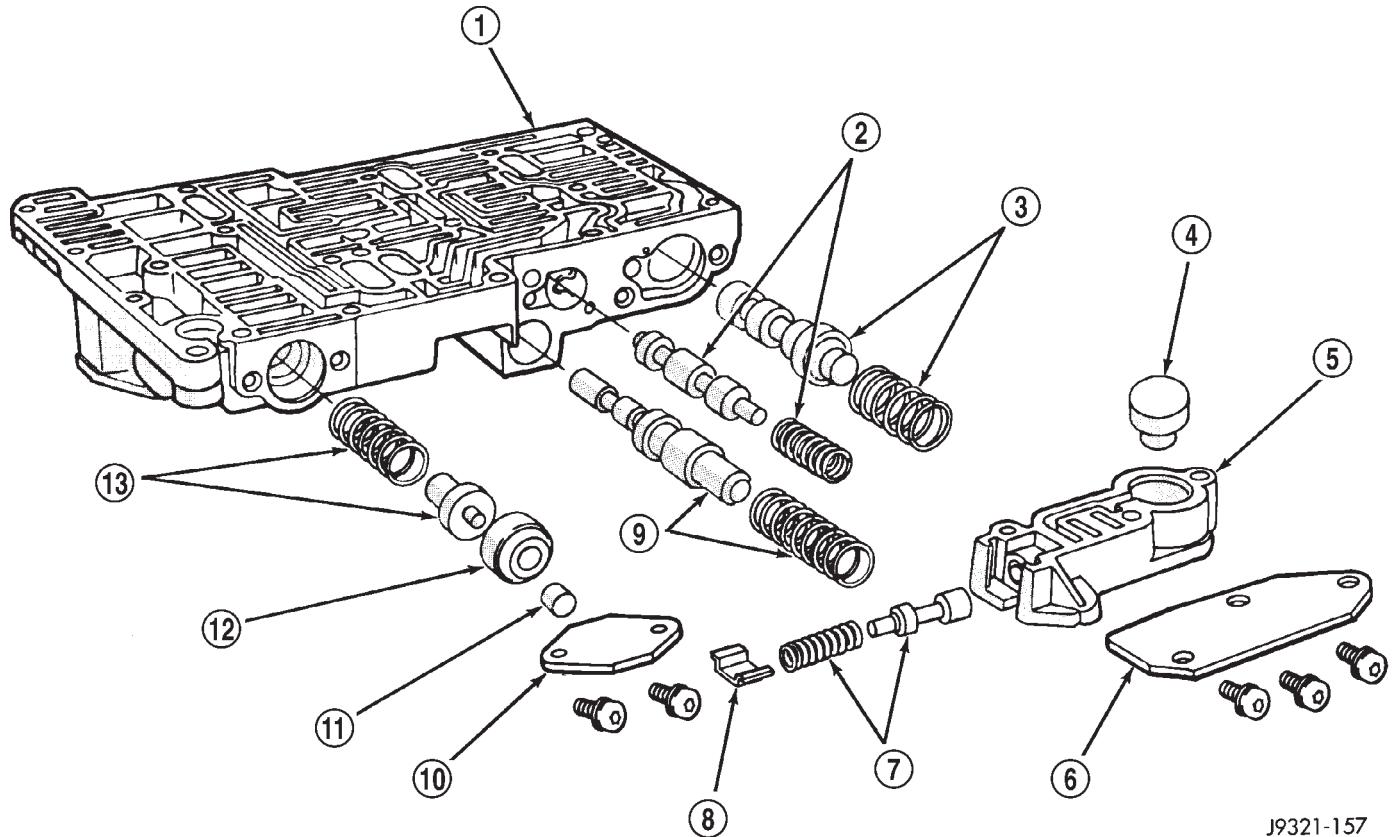
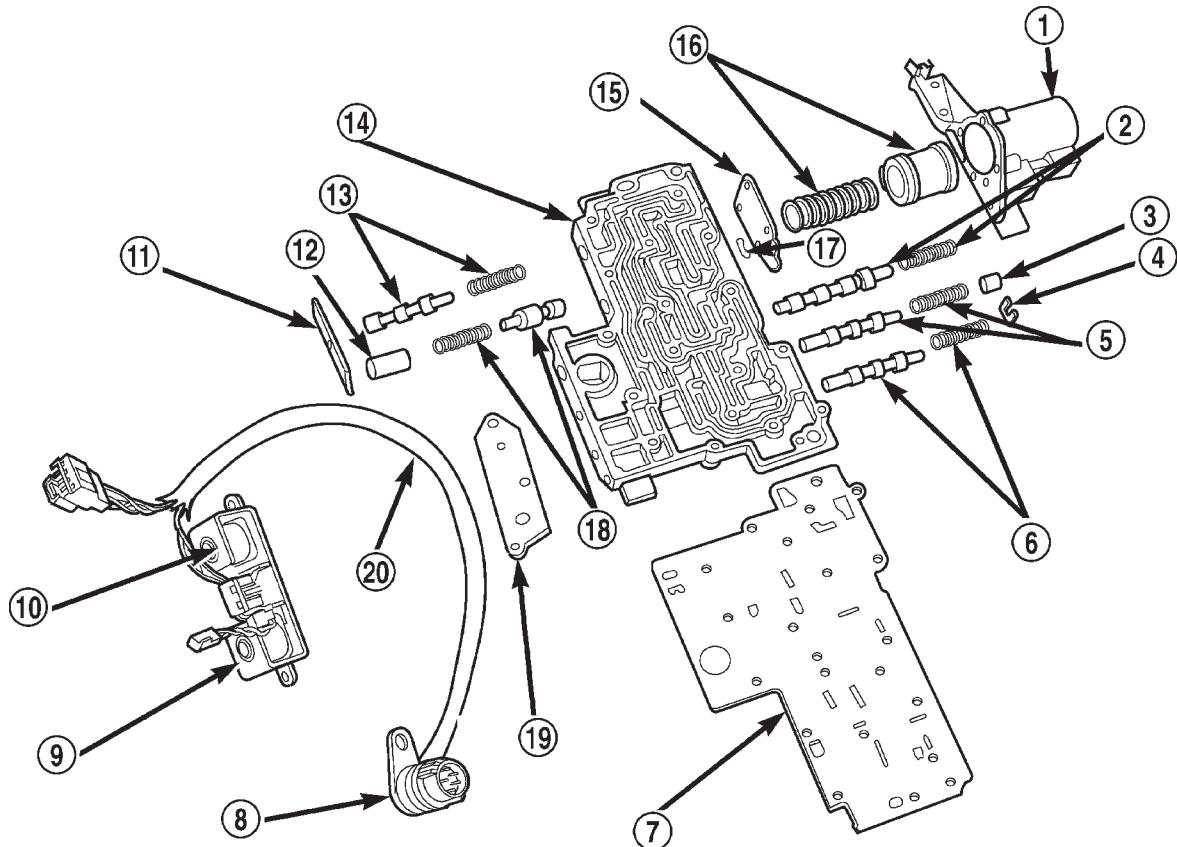


Fig. 20 Upper Housing Shift Valve and Pressure Plug Locations

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1 – UPPER HOUSING | 8 – RETAINER |
| 2 – 1-2 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING | 9 – 1-2 SHIFT CONTROL VALVE AND SPRING |
| 3 – 2-3 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING | 10 – PRESSURE PLUG COVER |
| 4 – 2-3 THROTTLE PLUG | 11 – LINE PRESSURE PLUG |
| 5 – LIMIT VALVE HOUSING | 12 – PLUG SLEEVE |
| 6 – LIMIT VALVE COVER | 13 – THROTTLE PRESSURE SPRING AND PLUG |
| 7 – LIMIT VALVE AND SPRING | |

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c072b5

Fig. 21 Lower Housing Shift Valves And Springs

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING | 11 – TIMING VALVE COVER |
| 2 – 3-4 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING | 12 – PLUG |
| 3 – PLUG | 13 – 3-4 TIMING VALVE AND SPRING |
| 4 – SPRING RETAINER | 14 – LOWER HOUSING |
| 5 – CONVERTER CLUTCH VALVE AND SPRING | 15 – ACCUMULATOR END PLATE |
| 6 – CONVERTER CLUTCH TIMING VALVE AND SPRING | 16 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR PISTON AND SPRING |
| 7 – OVERDRIVE SEPARATOR PLATE | 17 – E-CLIP |
| 8 – CASE CONNECTOR | 18 – 3-4 QUICK FILL SPRING AND VALVE |
| 9 – CONVERTER CLUTCH SOLENOID | 19 – SOLENOID GASKET |
| 10 – OVERDRIVE SOLENOID | 20 – HARNESS |

OPERATION

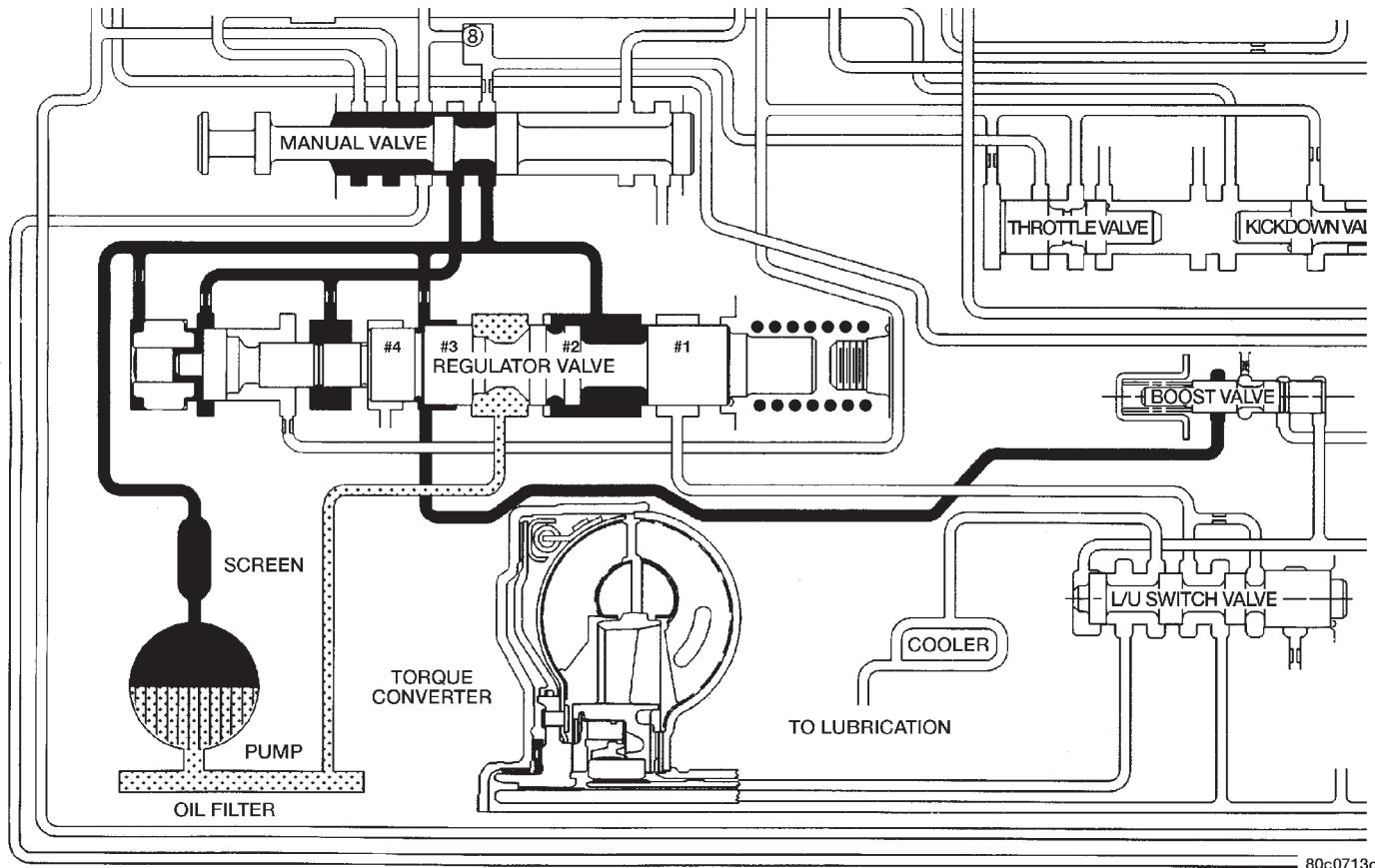
NOTE: Refer to the Hydraulic Schematics for a visual aid in determining valve location, operation and design.

REGULATOR VALVE

The pressure regulator valve is needed to control the hydraulic pressure within the system and reduce the amount of heat produced in the fluid. The pressure regulator valve is located in the valve body near the manual valve. The pressure regulator valve train controls the maximum pressure in the lines by metering the dumping of fluid back into the sump. Regulated pressure is referred to as "line pressure."

The regulator valve (Fig. 22) has a spring on one end that pushes the valve to the left. This closes a dump (vent) that is used to lower pressure. The closing of the dump will cause the oil pressure to increase. Oil pressure on the opposite end of the valve pushes the valve to the right, opening the dump and lowering oil pressure. The result is spring pressure working against oil pressure to maintain the oil at specific pressures. With the engine running, fluid flows from the pump to the pressure regulator valve, manual valve, and the interconnected circuits. As fluid is sent through passages to the regulator valve, the pressure pushes the valve to the right against the large spring. It is also sent to the reaction areas on the left side of the throttle pressure plug and the line pressure plug. With the gear selec-

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c0713c

Fig. 22 Regulator Valve in Park Position

tor in the park position, fluid recirculates through the regulator and manual valves back to the sump.

Meanwhile, the torque converter is filled slowly. In all other gear positions (Fig. 23), fluid flows between two right side lands to the switch valve and torque converter. At low pump speeds, the flow is controlled by the pressure valve groove to reduce pressure to the torque converter. After the torque converter and switch valve fill with fluid, the switch valve becomes the controlling metering device for torque converter pressure. The regulator valve then begins to control the line pressure for the other transmission circuits. The balance of the fluid pressure pushing the valve to the right and the spring pressure pushing to the left determines the size of the metering passage at land #2 (land #1 being at the far right of the valve in the diagram). As fluid leaks past the land, it moves into a groove connected to the filter or sump. As the land meters the fluid to the sump, it causes the pressure to reduce and the spring decreases the size of

the metering passage. When the size of the metering passage is reduced, the pressure rises again and the size of the land is increased again. Pressure is regulated by this constant balance of hydraulic and spring pressure.

The metering at land #2 establishes the line pressure throughout the transmission. It is varied according to changes in throttle position, engine speed, and transmission condition within a range of 57–94 psi (except in reverse) (Fig. 24). The regulated line pressure in reverse (Fig. 25) is held at much higher pressures than in the other gear positions: 145–280 psi. The higher pressure for reverse is achieved by the manual valve blocking the supply of line pressure to the reaction area left of land #4. With this pressure blocked, there is less area for pressure to act on to balance the force of the spring on the right. This allows line pressure to push the valve train to the right, reducing the amount of fluid returned to the pump's inlet, increasing line pressure.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

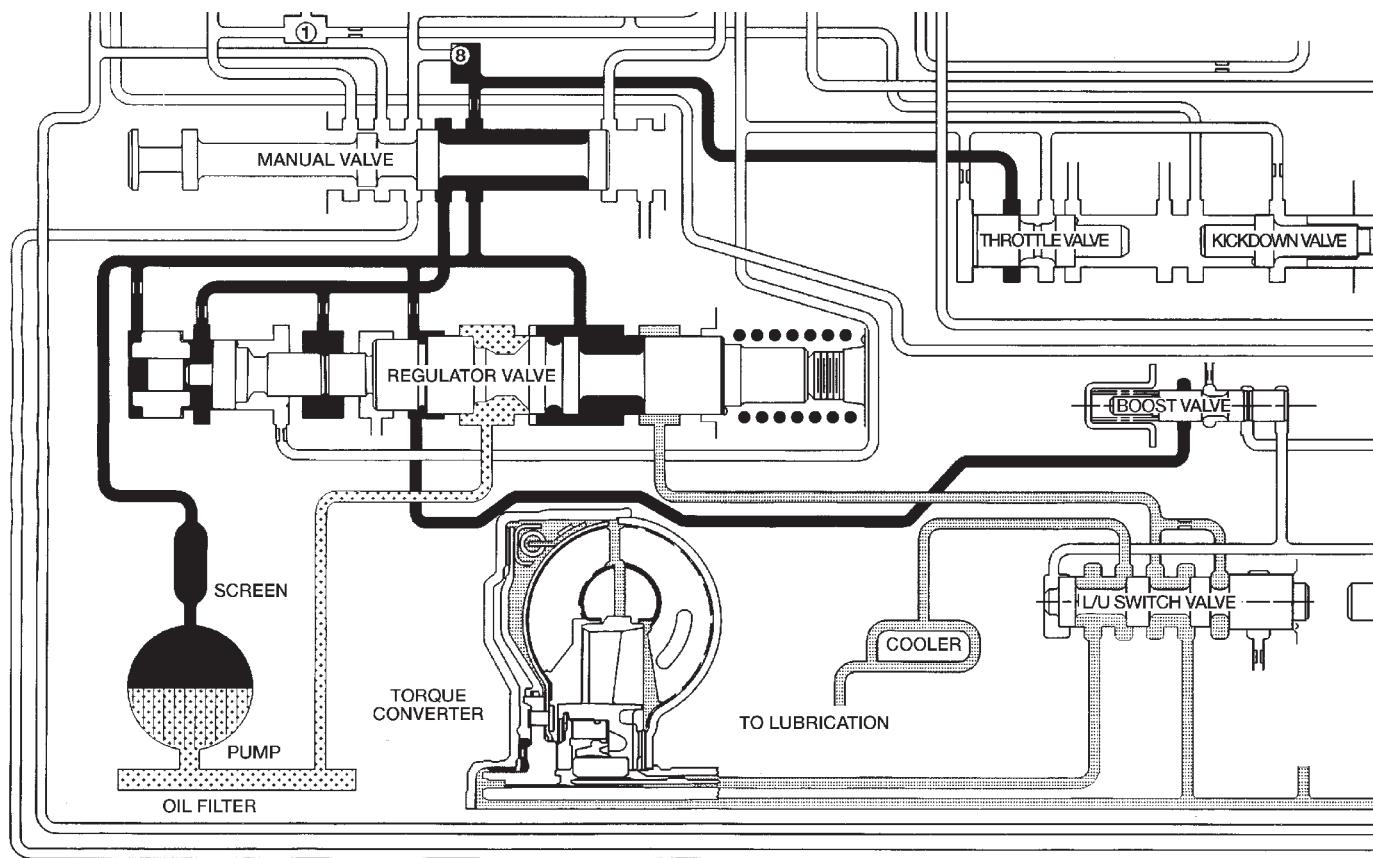


Fig. 23 Regulator Valve in Neutral Position

80c0713e

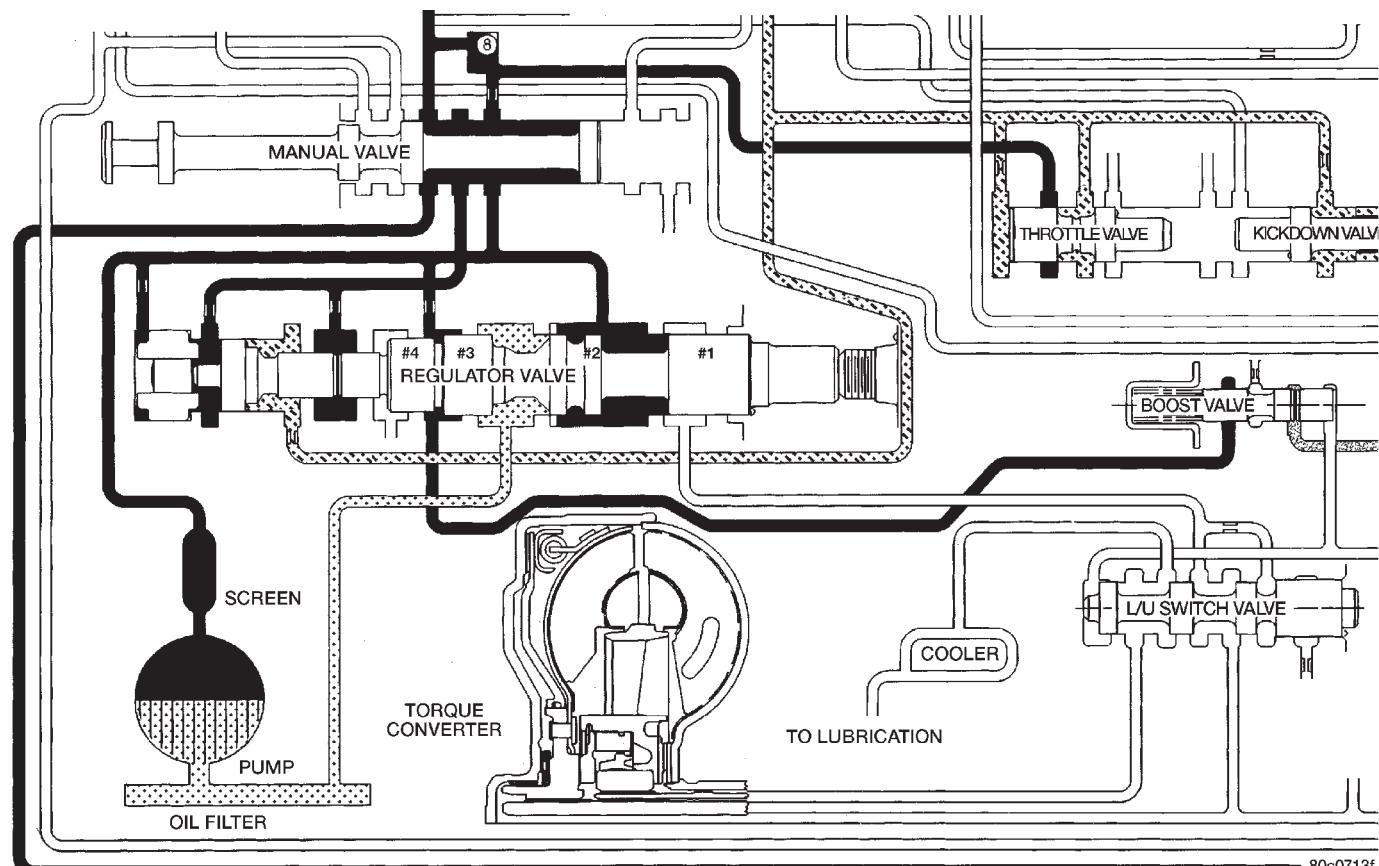
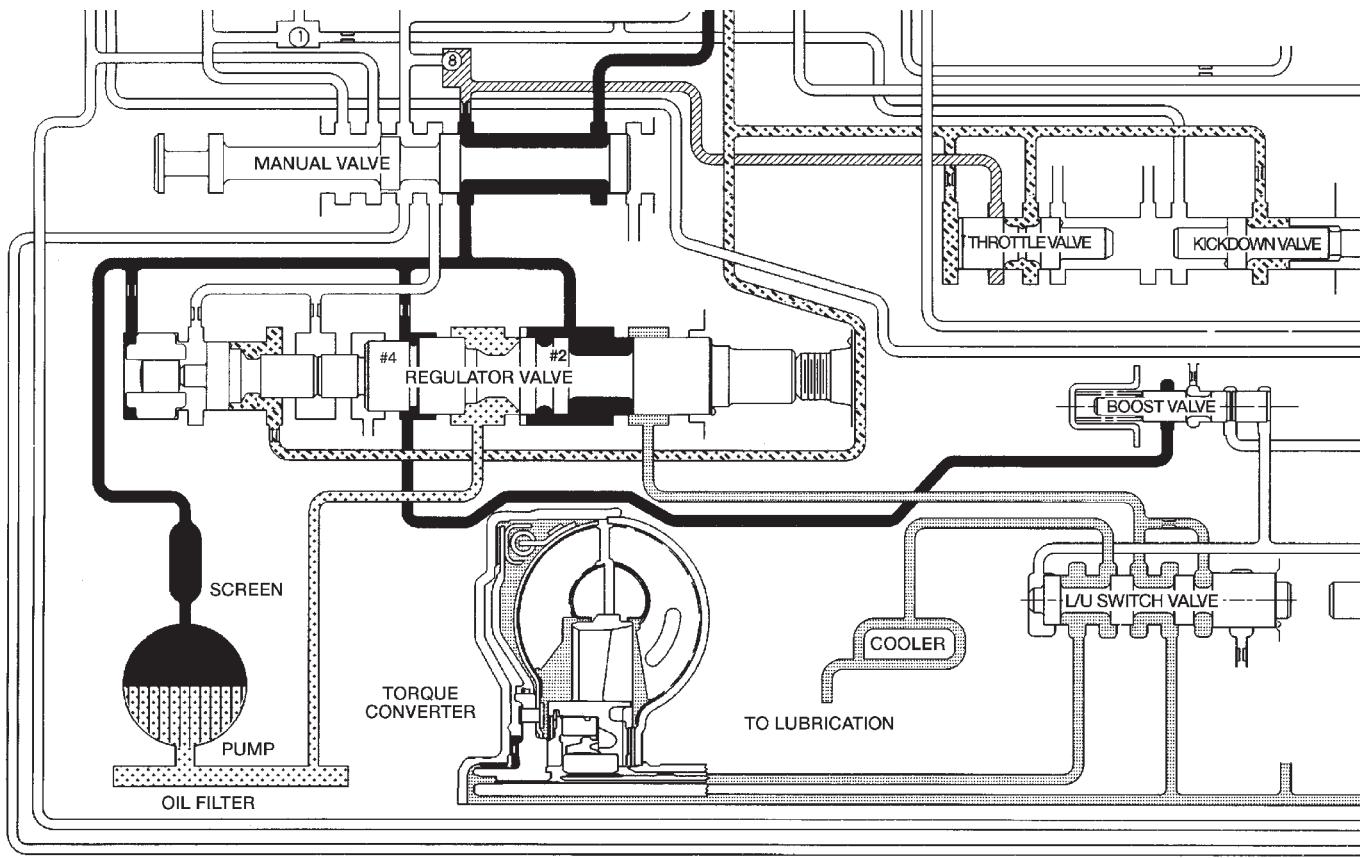


Fig. 24 Regulator Valve in Drive Position

80c0713f

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c07140

*Fig. 25 Regulator Valve in Reverse Position***KICKDOWN VALVE**

When the throttle valve is as far over to the left as it can go, the maximum line pressure possible will enter the throttle pressure circuit. In this case, throttle pressure will equal line pressure. With the kickdown valve (Fig. 26) pushed into the bore as far as it will go, fluid initially flows through the annular groove of the 2-3 shift valve (which will be in the direct drive position to the right).

After passing the annular groove, the fluid is routed to the spring end of the 2-3 shift valve. Fluid pressure reacting on the area of land #1 overcomes governor pressure, downshifting the 2-3 shift valve into the kickdown, or second gear stage of operation. The valve is held in the kickdown position by throttle pressure routed from a seated check ball (#2). Again, if vehicle speed is low enough, throttle pressure will also push the 1-2 shift valve left to seat its governor plug, and downshift to drive breakaway.

KICKDOWN LIMIT VALVE

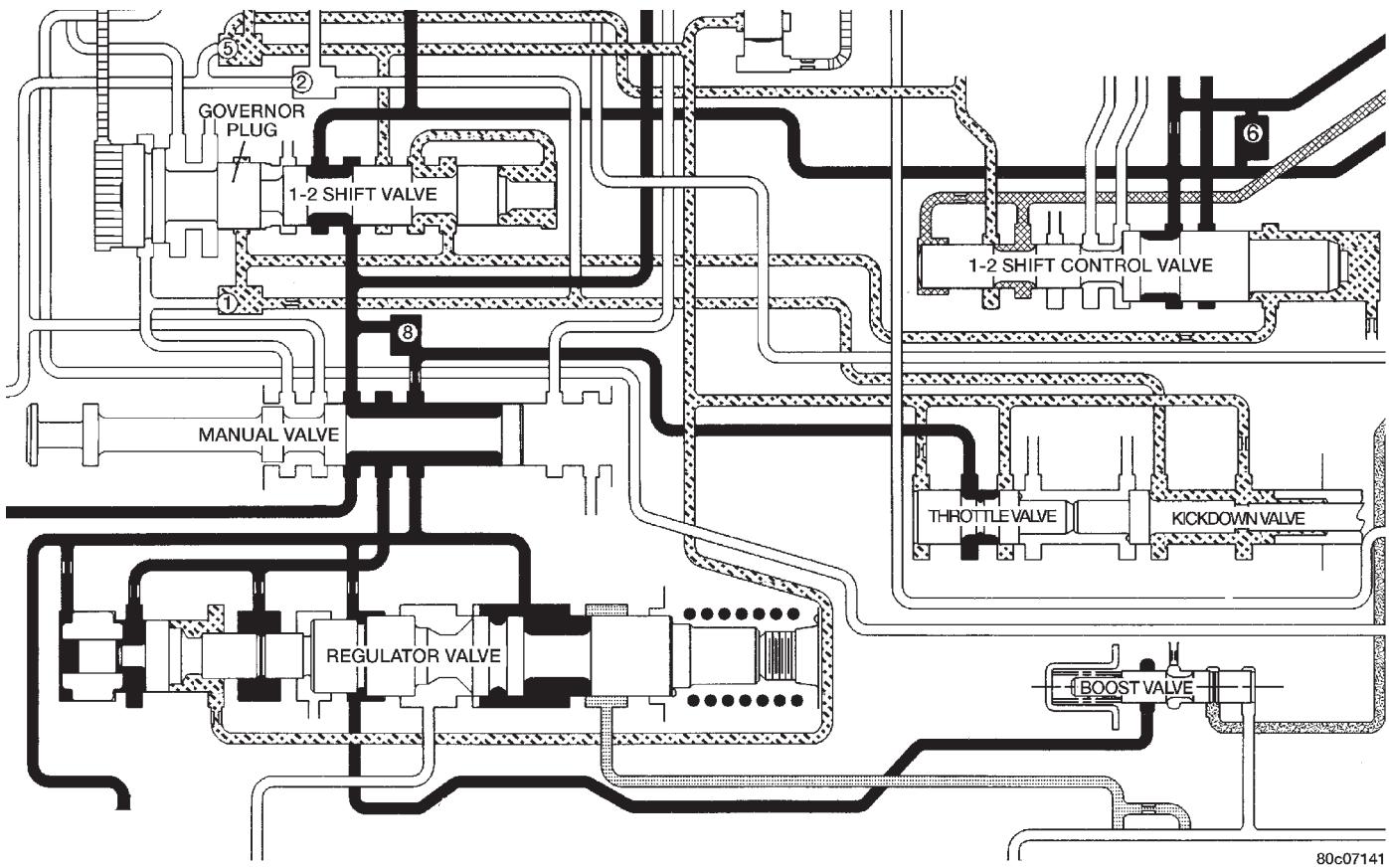
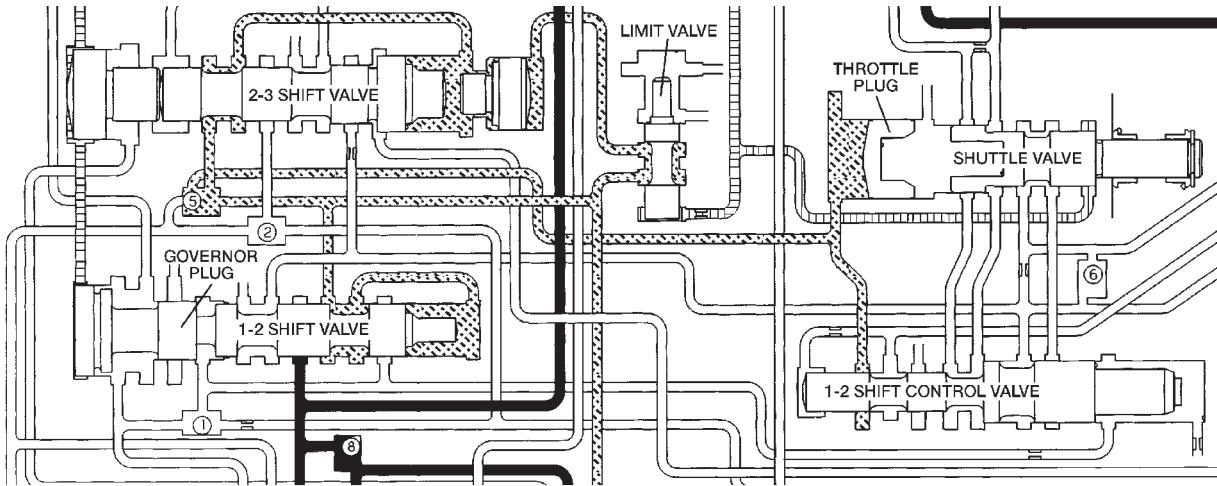
The purpose of the limit valve is to prevent a 3-2 downshift at higher speeds when a part-throttle downshift is not desirable. At these higher speeds only a full throttle 3-2 downshift will occur. At low road speeds (Fig. 27) the limit valve does not come into play and does not affect the downshifts. As the

vehicle's speed increases (Fig. 28), the governor pressure also increases. The increased governor pressure acts on the reaction area of the bottom land of the limit valve overcoming the spring force trying to push the valve toward the bottom of its bore. This pushes the valve upward against the spring and bottoms the valve against the top of the housing. With the valve bottomed against the housing, the throttle pressure supplied to the valve will be closed off by the bottom land of the limit valve. When the supply of throttle pressure has been shut off, the 3-2 part throttle downshift plug becomes inoperative, because no pressure is acting on its reaction area.

1-2 SHIFT VALVE

The 1-2 shift valve assembly (Fig. 29), or mechanism, consists of: the 1-2 shift valve, governor plug, and a spring on the end of the valve. After the manual valve has been placed into a forward gear range, line pressure is directed to the 1-2 shift valve. As the throttle is depressed, throttle pressure is applied to the right side of the 1-2 shift valve assembly. With throttle pressure applied to the right side of the valve, there is now both spring pressure and throttle pressure acting on the valve, holding it against the governor plug. As the vehicle begins to move and

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

*Fig. 26 Kickdown Valve—Wide Open Throttle**Fig. 27 Kickdown Limit Valve—Low Speeds*

build speed, governor pressure is created and is applied to the left of the valve at the governor plug.

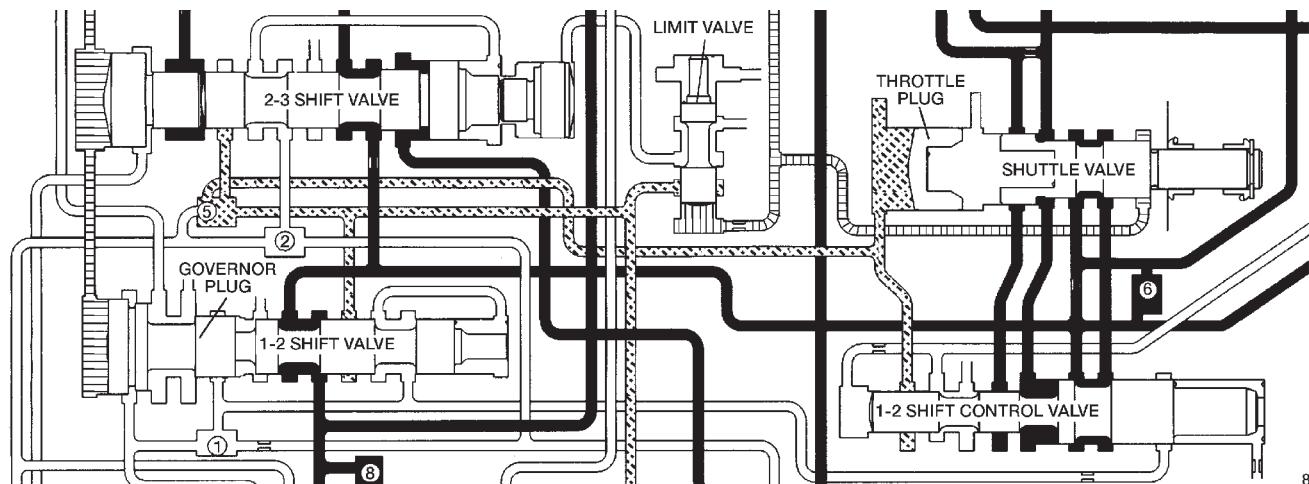
When governor pressure builds to a point where it can overcome the combined force of the spring and throttle pressure on the other side of the valve, the valve will begin to move over to the right. As the valve moves to the right, the middle land of the valve will close off the circuit supplying the throttle pressure to the right side of the valve. When the throttle pressure is closed off, the valve will move even far-

ther to the right, allowing line pressure to enter another circuit and energize the front servo, applying the front band (Fig. 30).

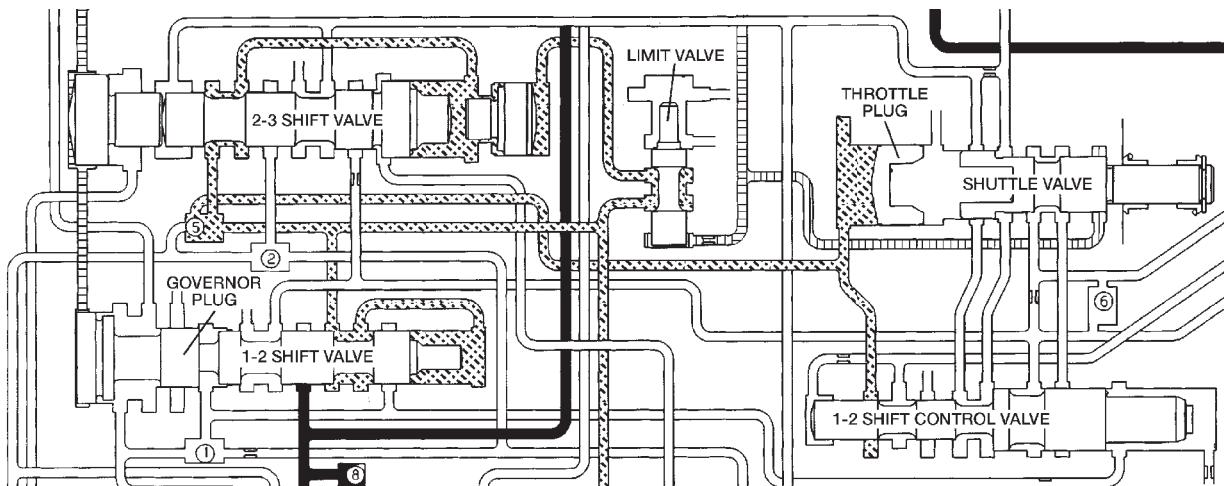
The governor plug serves a dual purpose:

- It allows the shift valves to move either left or right, allowing both upshifts and downshifts.
- When in a manual selection position, it will be hydraulically “blocked” into position so no upshift can occur.

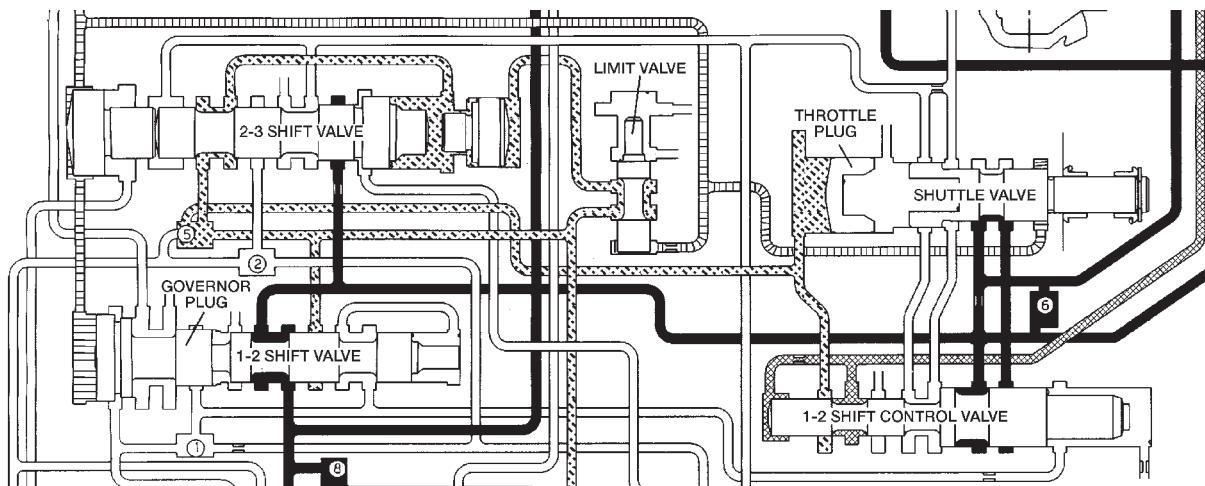
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c07143

Fig. 28 Kickdown Limit Valve-High Speeds

80c07144

Fig. 29 1-2 Shift Valve-Before Shift

80c07145

Fig. 30 1-2 Shift Valve-After Shift

The physical blocking of the upshift while in the manual "1" position is accomplished by the directing of line pressure between both lands of the governor plug. The line pressure reacts against the larger land of the plug, pushing the plug back against the end plate overcoming governor pressure. With the combi-

nation of the line pressure and spring pressure, the valve cannot move, preventing any upshift.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

1-2 SHIFT CONTROL VALVE

It contains a valve with four lands and a spring. It is used as both a "relay" and "balanced" valve.

The valve has two specific operations (Fig. 31):

- Aid in quality of the 1-2 upshift.
- Aid in the quality and timing of the 3-2 kickdown ranges.

When the manual valve is set to the Drive position and the transmission is in the first or second gear range, 1-2 shift control or "modulated throttle pressure" is supplied to the middle of the accumulator piston by the 1-2 shift control valve. During the 1-2 upshift, this pressure is used to control the kickdown servo apply pressure that is needed to apply the kickdown and accumulator pistons. Thus, the 1-2 shift point is "cushioned" and the quality is improved. During a WOT kickdown, kickdown pressure is applied between the kickdown valve and the 1-2 shift control valve. This additional pressure is directed to the 1-2 shift control's spring cavity, adding to the spring load on the valve. The result of this increased "modulated" throttle pressure is a firmer WOT upshift.

2-3 SHIFT VALVE

The 2-3 shift valve mechanism (Fig. 32) consists of the 2-3 shift valve, governor plug and spring, and a throttle plug. After the 1-2 shift valve has completed its operation and applied the front band, line pressure is directed to the 2-3 shift valve through the connecting passages from the 1-2 shift valve. The line pressure will then dead-end at land #2 until the 2-3 valve is ready to make its shift. Now that the vehicle is in motion and under acceleration, there is throttle pressure being applied to the spring side of the valve and between lands #3 and #4.

As vehicle speed increases, governor pressure increases proportionately, until it becomes great enough to overcome the combined throttle and spring pressure on the right side of the valve. When this happens, the governor plug is forced against the shift valve moving it to the right. The shift valve causes land #4 to close the passage supplying throttle pressure to the 2-3 shift valve. Without throttle pressure present in the circuit now, the governor plug will push the valve over far enough to bottom the valve in its bore. This allows land #2 to direct line pressure to the front clutch.

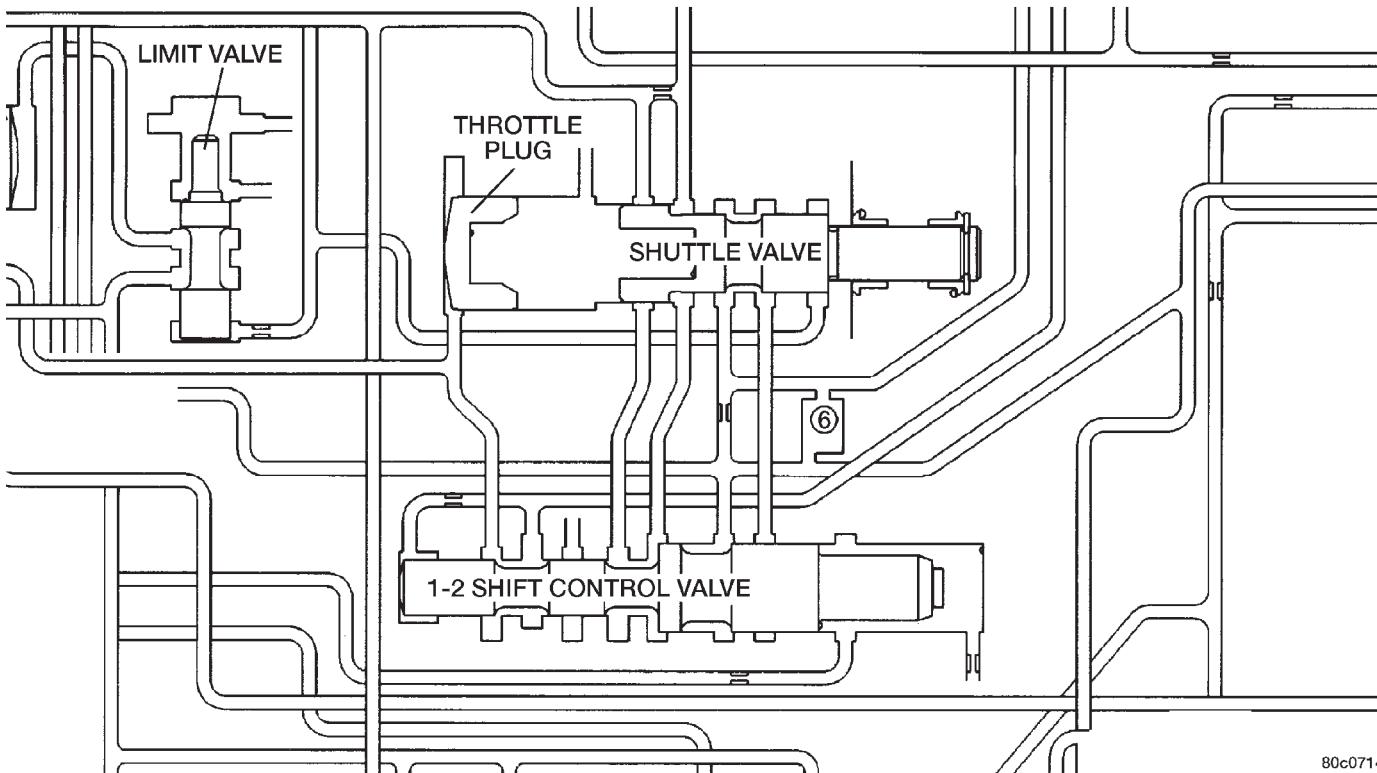
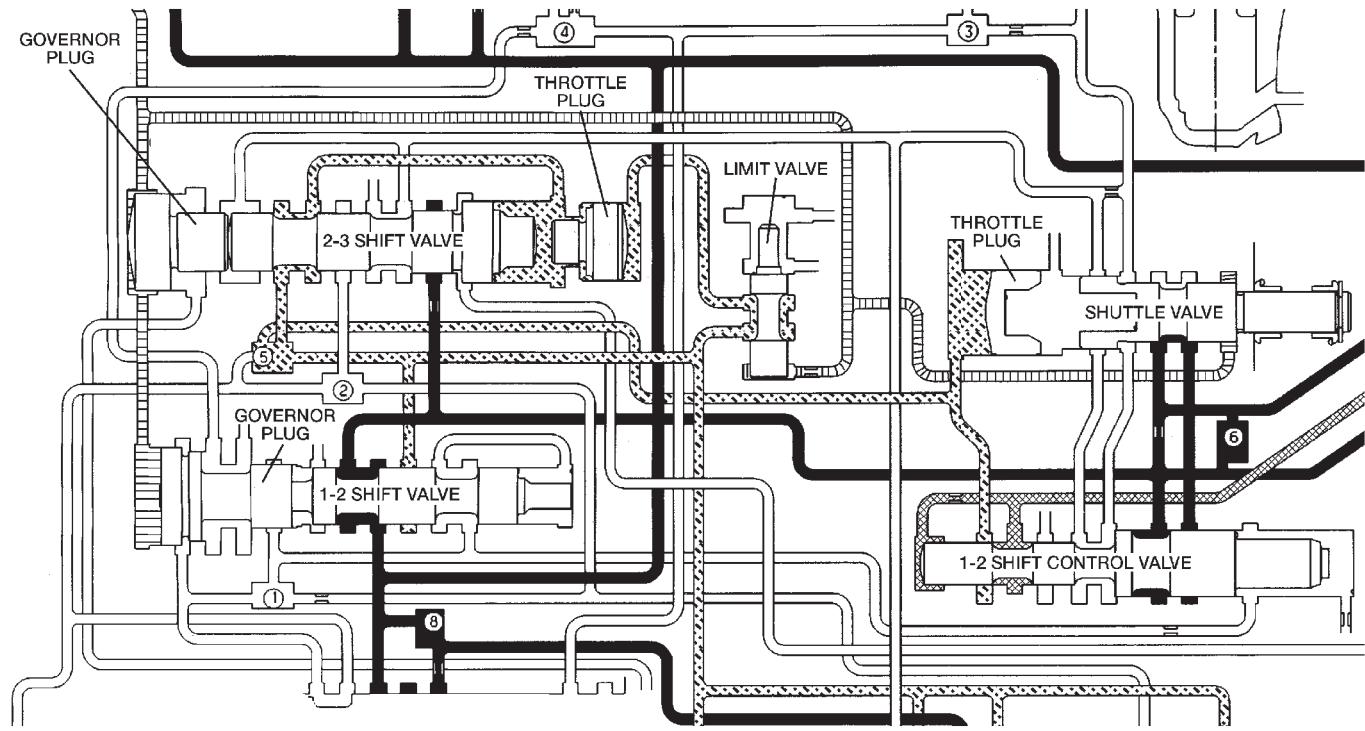


Fig. 31 1-2 Shift Control Valve

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c07147

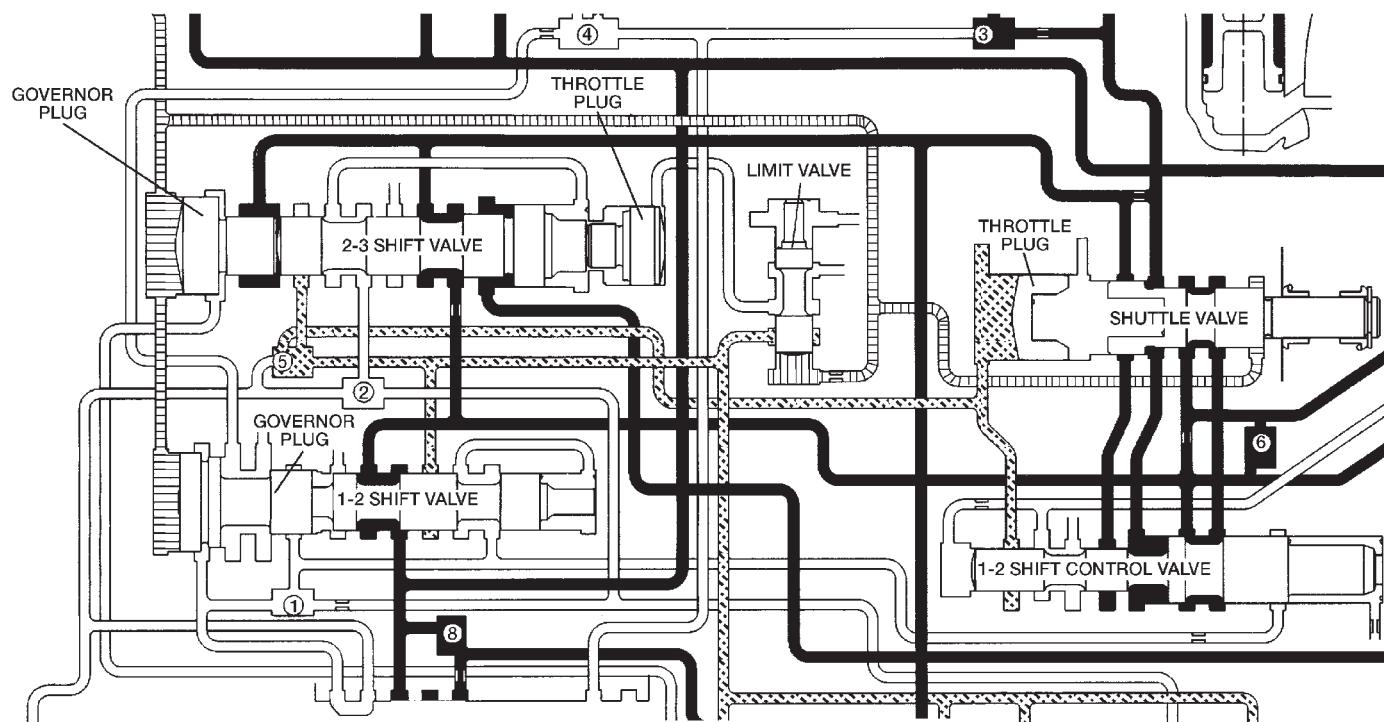
Fig. 32 2-3 Shift Valve-Before Shift

After the shift (Fig. 33), line pressure is directed to the land between the shift valve and the governor plug, and to the release side of the kickdown servo. This releases the front band and applies the front clutch, shifting into third gear or direct drive. The rear clutch remains applied, as it has been in the other gears. During a manual "1" or manual "2" gear selection, line pressure is sent between the two lands of the 2-3 governor plug. This line pressure at the governor plug locks the shift valve into the second gear position, preventing an upshift into direct drive. The theory for the blocking of the valve is the same as that of the 1-2 shift valve.

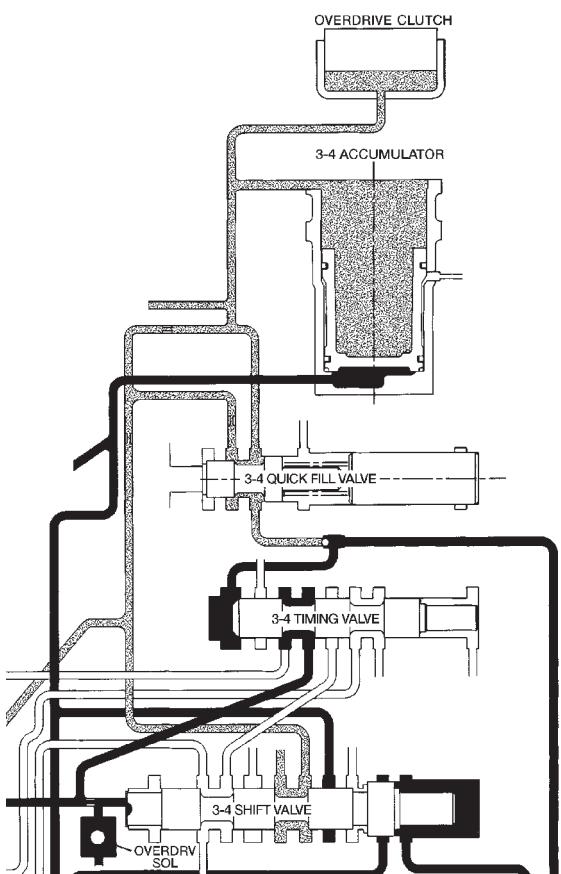
3-4 SHIFT VALVE

The PCM energizes the overdrive solenoid during the 3-4 upshift (Fig. 34). This causes the solenoid check ball to close the vent port allowing line pressure from the 2-3 shift valve to act directly on the 3-4 upshift valve. Line pressure on the 3-4 shift valve overcomes valve spring pressure moving the valve to the upshift position (Fig. 35). This action exposes the feed passages to the 3-4 timing valve, 3-4 quick fill valve, 3-4 accumulator, and ultimately to the overdrive piston.

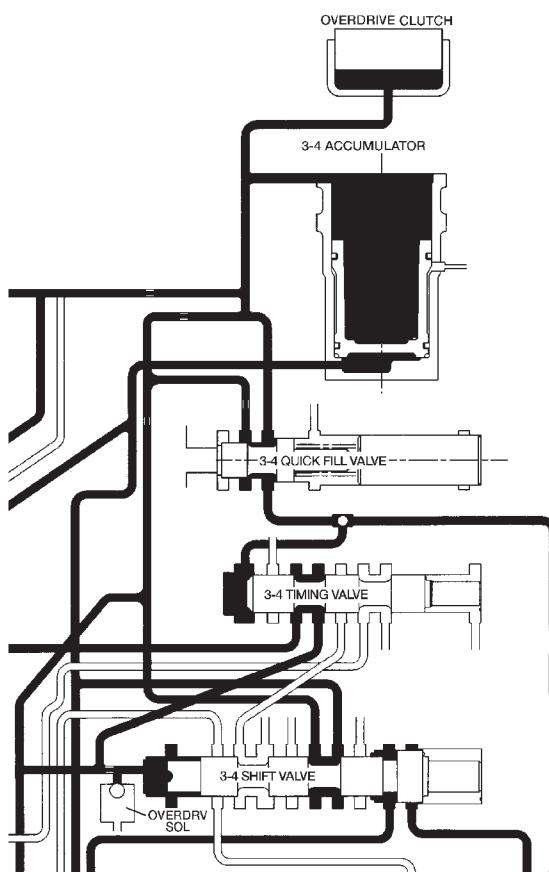
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c07148

Fig. 33 2-3 Shift Valve-After Shift

80c0714d

Fig. 34 3-4 Shift Valve Before Shift

80c0714e

Fig. 35 3-4 Shift Valve After Shift

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

3-4 TIMING VALVE

The 3-4 timing valve is moved by line pressure coming through the 3-4 shift valve (Fig. 36). The timing valve holds the 2-3 shift valve in an upshift position. The purpose is to prevent the 2-3 valve from up or downshifting before the 3-4 valve (Fig. 37).

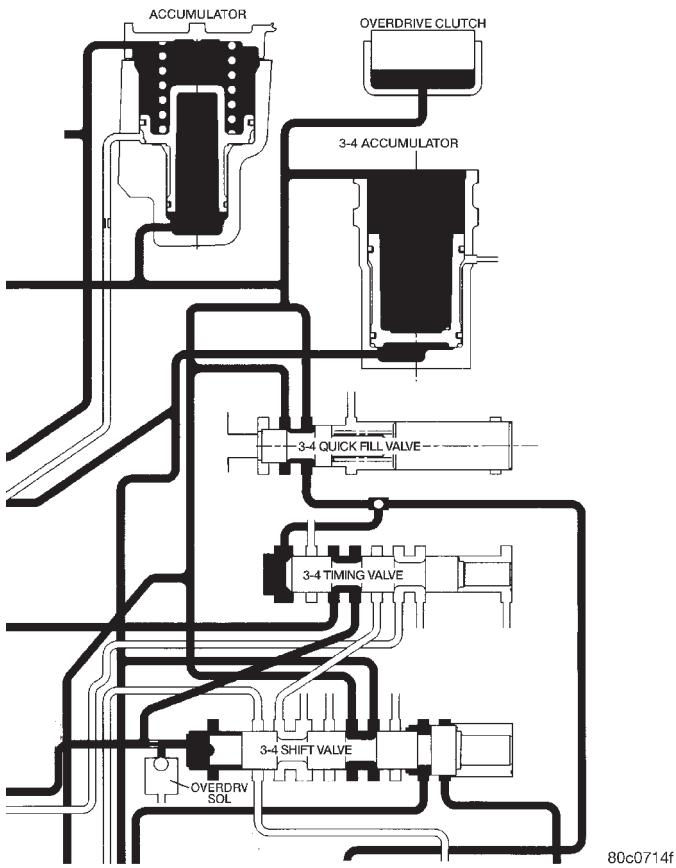


Fig. 36 3-4 Timing Valve Allowing 4-3 Shift

3-4 QUICK FILL VALVE

The 3-4 quick fill valve provides faster engagement of the overdrive clutch during 3-4 upshifts. The valve temporarily bypasses the clutch piston feed orifice at

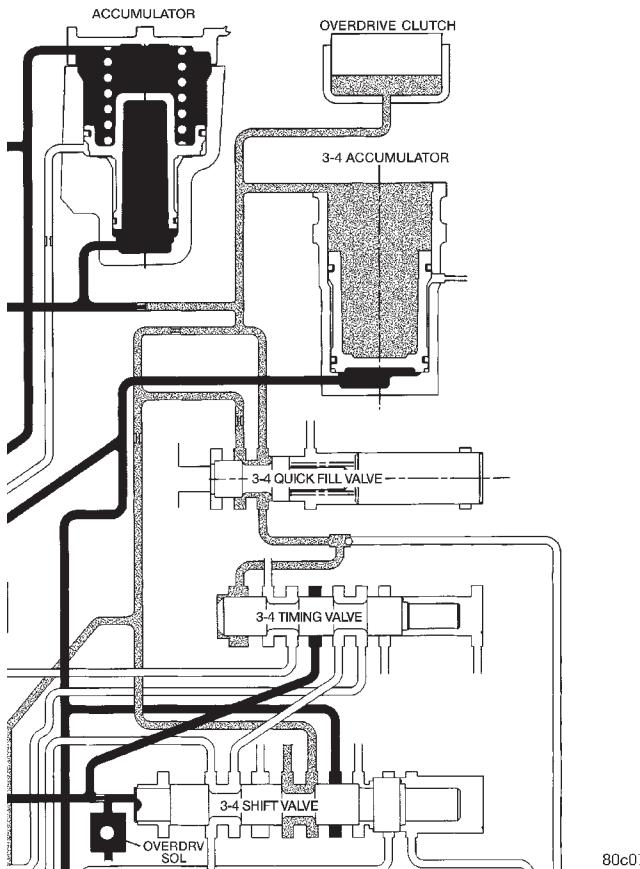
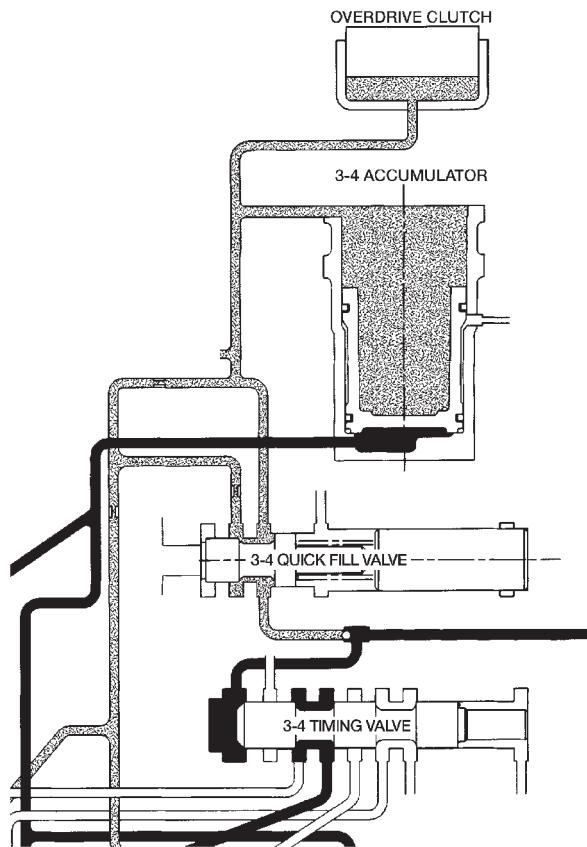


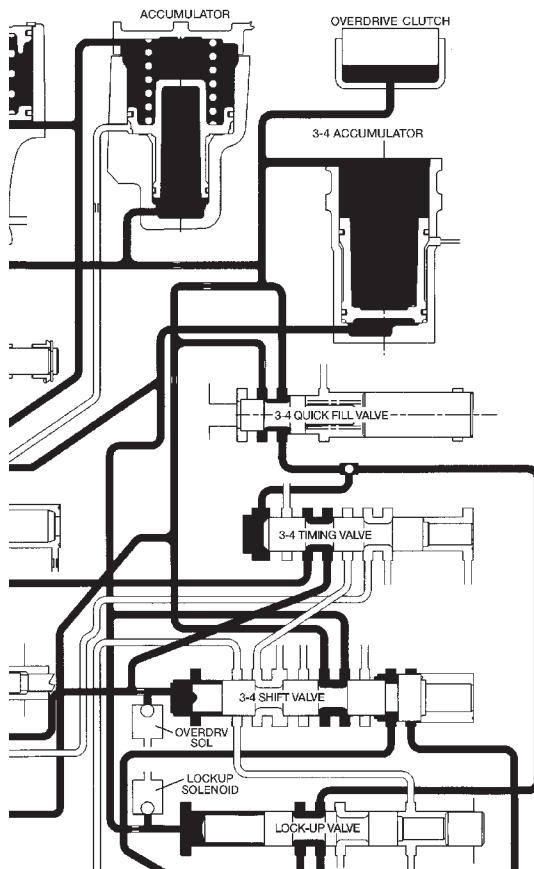
Fig. 37 3-4 Timing Valve Allowing 3-2 Shift

the start of a 3-4 upshift (Fig. 39). This exposes a larger passage into the piston retainer resulting in a much faster clutch fill and apply sequence. The quick fill valve does not bypass the regular clutch feed orifice throughout the 3-4 upshift. Instead, once a pre-determined pressure develops within the clutch, the valve closes the bypass. Clutch fill is then completed through the regular feed orifice.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

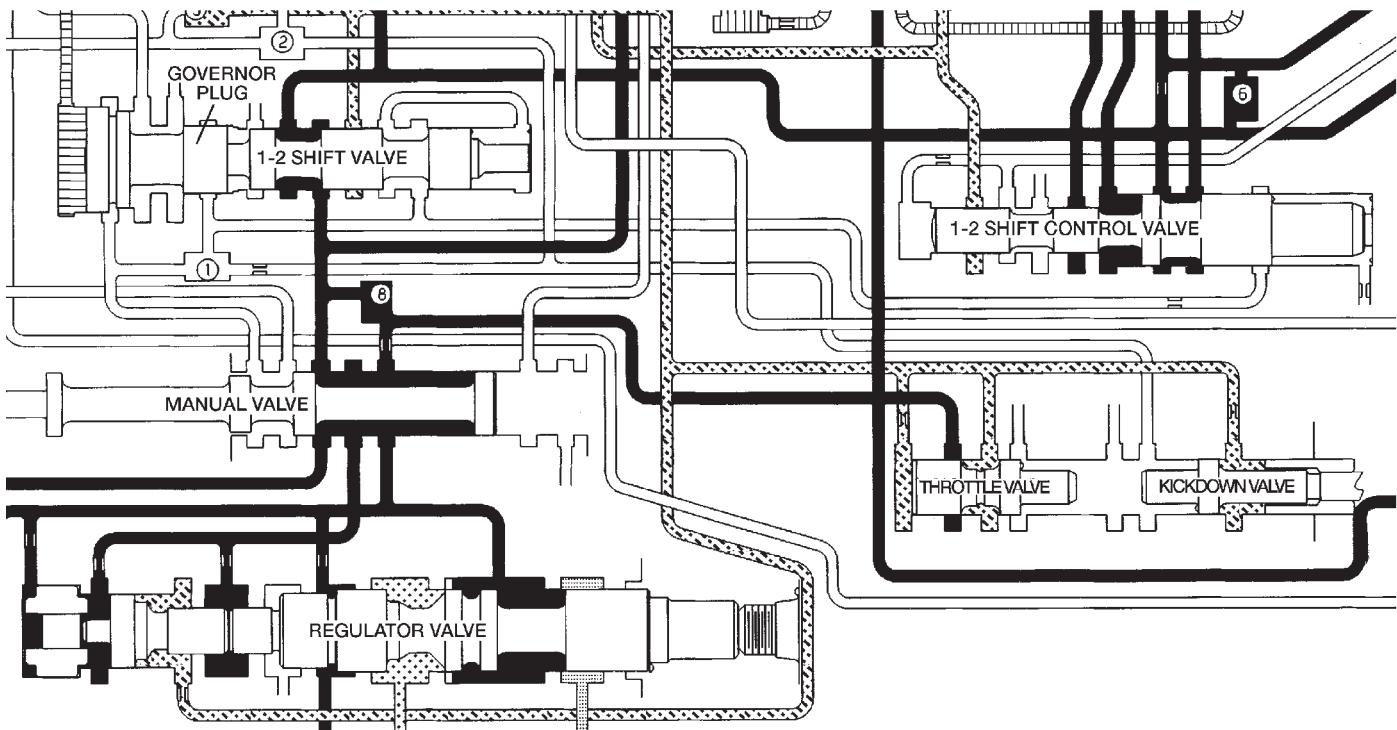
**Fig. 38 3-4 Quick Fill Valve Before Shift****THROTTLE VALVE**

In all gear positions the throttle valve (Fig. 40) is being supplied with line pressure. The throttle valve meters and reduces the line pressure that now becomes throttle pressure. The throttle valve is moved by a spring and the kickdown valve, which is mechanically connected to the throttle. The larger the throttle opening, the higher the throttle pressure (to a maximum of line pressure). The smaller the

**Fig. 39 3-4 Quick Fill Valve After Shift**

throttle opening, the lower the throttle pressure (to a minimum of zero at idle). As engine speed increases, the increase in pump speed increases pump output. The increase in pressure and volume must be regulated to maintain the balance within the transmission. To do this, throttle pressure is routed to the reaction area on the right side of the throttle pressure plug (in the regulator valve).

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c07149

Fig. 40 Throttle Valve

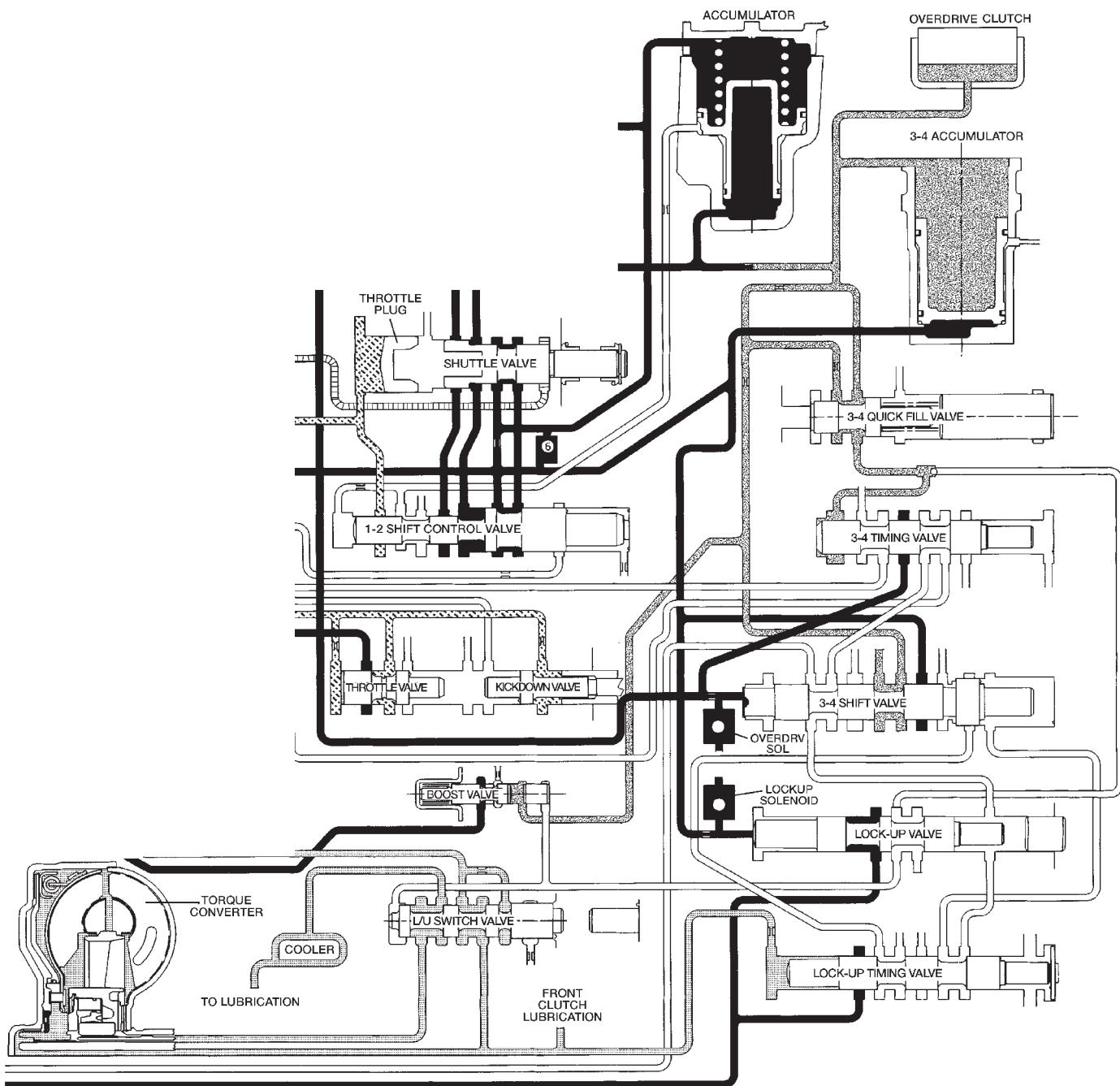
The higher engine speed and line pressure would open the vent too far and reduce line pressure too much. Throttle pressure, which increases with engine speed (throttle opening), is used to oppose the movement of the pressure valve to help control the metering passage at the vent. The throttle pressure is combined with spring pressure to reduce the force of the throttle pressure plug on the pressure valve. The larger spring at the right closes the regulator valve passage and maintains or increases line pressure. The increased line pressure works against the reaction area of the line pressure plug and the reaction area left of land #3 simultaneously moves the regulator valve train to the right and controls the metering passage.

The kickdown valve, along with the throttle valve, serve to delay upshifts until the correct vehicle and engine speed have been reached. It also controls downshifts upon driver demand, or increased engine load. If these valves were not in place, the shift points would be at the same speed for all throttle positions. The kickdown valve is actuated by a cam connected to the throttle. This is accomplished through either a linkage or a cable. The cam forces

the kickdown valve toward the throttle valve compressing the spring between them and moving the throttle valve. As the throttle valve land starts to uncover its port, line pressure is "metered" out into the circuits and viewed as throttle pressure. This increased throttle pressure is metered out into the circuits it is applied to: the 1-2 and 2-3 shift valves. When the throttle pressure is high enough, a 3-2 downshift will occur. If the vehicle speed is low enough, a 2-1 downshift will occur.

SWITCH VALVE

When the transmission is in Drive Second just before the TCC application occurs (Fig. 41), the pressure regulator valve is supplying torque converter pressure to the switch valve. The switch valve directs this pressure through the transmission input shaft, into the converter, through the converter, back out between the input shaft and the reaction shaft, and back up to the switch valve. From the switch valve, the fluid pressure is directed to the transmission cooler, and lubrication pressure returns from the cooler to lubricate different portions of the transmission.



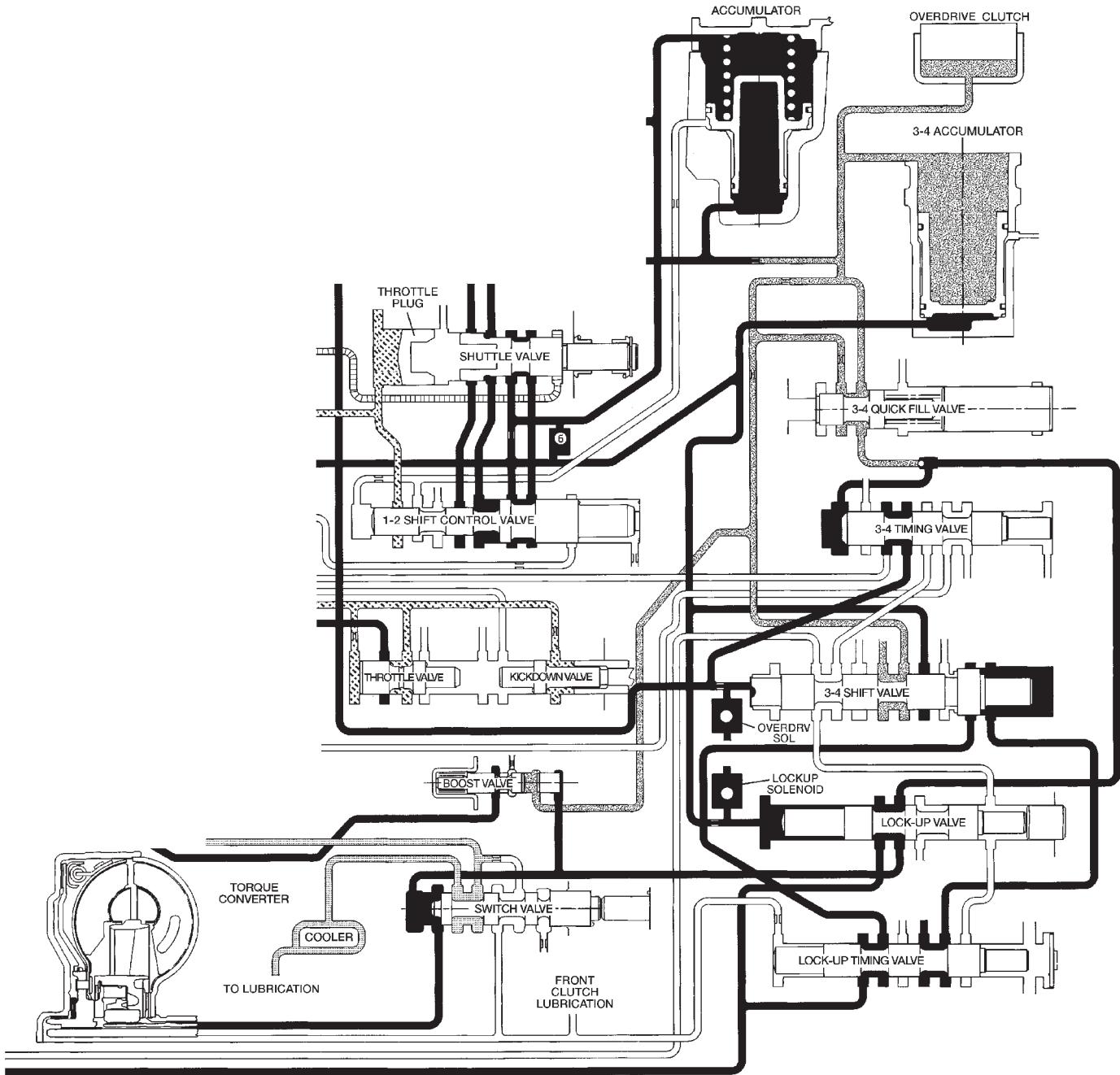
80c0714a

Fig. 41 Switch Valve-Torque Converter Unlocked

Once the TCC control valve has moved to the left (Fig. 42), line pressure is directed to the tip of the switch valve, forcing the valve to the right. The switch valve now vents oil from the front of the piston in the torque converter, and supplies line pressure to the (rear) apply side of the torque converter piston. This pressure differential causes the piston to

apply against the friction material, cutting off any further flow of line pressure oil. After the switch valve is shuttled right allowing line pressure to engage the TCC, torque converter pressure is directed past the switch valve into the transmission cooler and lubrication circuits.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c0714b

Fig. 42 Switch Valve-Torque Converter Locked**MANUAL VALVE**

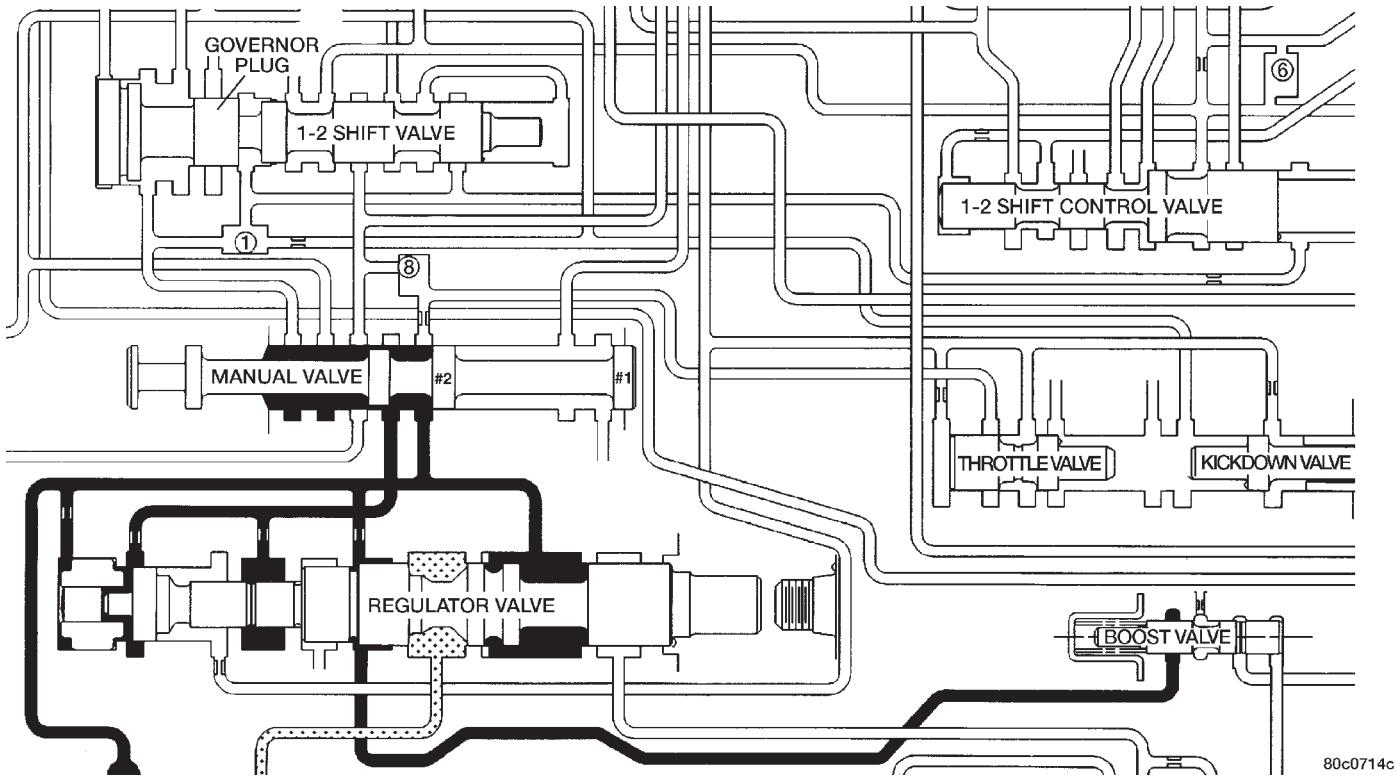
The manual valve (Fig. 43) is a relay valve. The purpose of the manual valve is to direct fluid to the correct circuit needed for a specific gear or driving range. The manual valve, as the name implies, is manually operated by the driver with a lever located on the side of the valve body. The valve is connected mechanically by either a cable or linkage to the gear-shift mechanism. The valve is held in each of its

positions by a spring-loaded roller or ball that engages the "roostercomb" of the manual valve.

CONVERTER CLUTCH LOCK-UP VALVE

The torque converter clutch (TCC) lock-up valve controls the back (ON) side of the torque converter clutch. When the PCM energizes the TCC solenoid to engage the converter clutch piston, pressure is applied to the TCC lock-up valve which moves to the

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

**Fig. 43 Manual Valve**

right and applies pressure to the torque converter clutch.

CONVERTER CLUTCH LOCK-UP TIMING VALVE

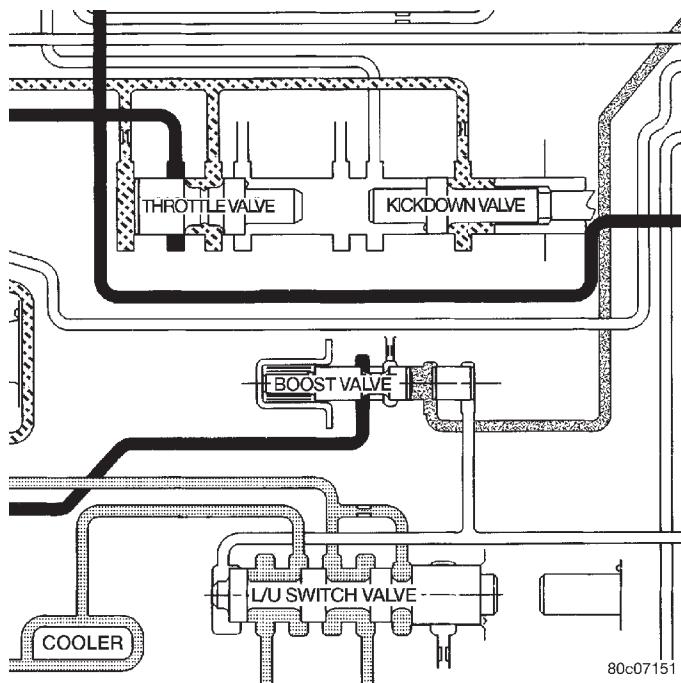
The torque converter clutch (TCC) lock-up timing valve is there to block any 4-3 downshift until the TCC is completely unlocked and the clutch is disengaged.

SHUTTLE VALVE

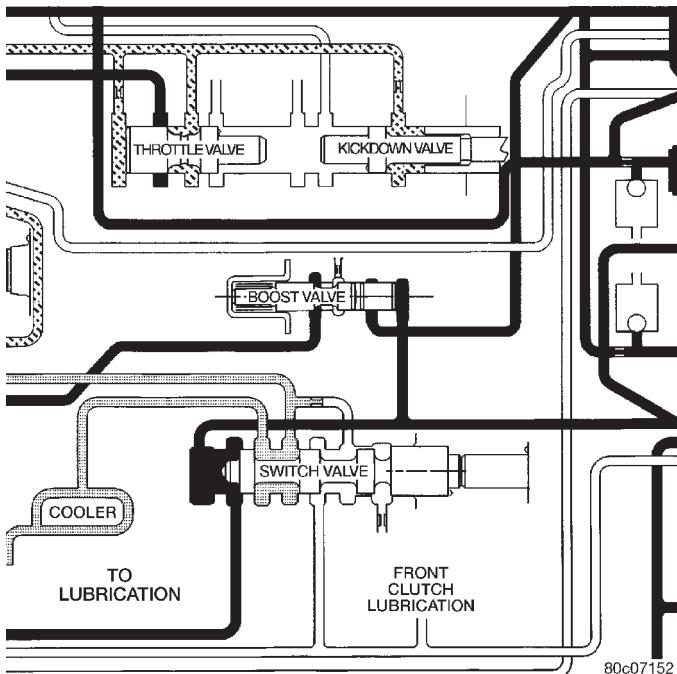
The assembly is contained in a bore in the valve body above the shift valves. When the manual valve is positioned in the Drive range, throttle pressure acts on the throttle plug of the shuttle valve (Fig. 31) to move it against a spring, increasing the spring force on the shuttle valve. During a part or full throttle 1-2 upshift, the throttle plug is bottomed by throttle pressure, holding the shuttle valve to the right against governor pressure, and opening a by-pass circuit. The shuttle valve controls the quality of the kickdown shift by restricting the rate of fluid discharge from the front clutch and servo release circuits. During a 3-2 kickdown, fluid discharges through the shuttle by-pass circuit. When the shuttle valve closes the by-pass circuit, fluid discharge is restricted and controlled for the application of the front band. During a 2-3 "lift foot" upshift, the shuttle valve by-passes the restriction to allow full fluid flow through the by-pass groove for a faster release of the band.

BOOST VALVE

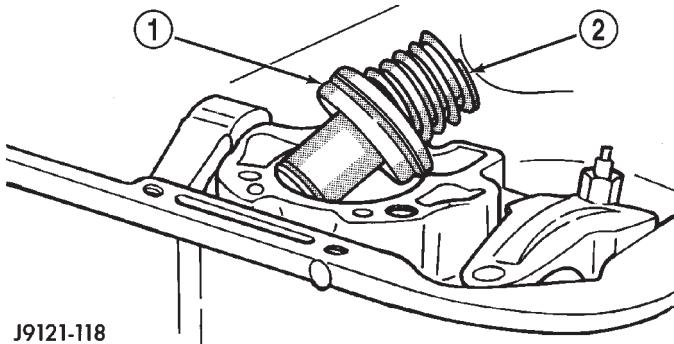
The boost valve (Fig. 44) provides increased fluid pressure to the overdrive clutch during 3-4 upshifts (Fig. 45), and when accelerating in fourth gear.

**Fig. 44 Boost Valve Before Lock-up**

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

**Fig. 45 Boost Valve After Lock-up****ACCUMULATOR****DESCRIPTION**

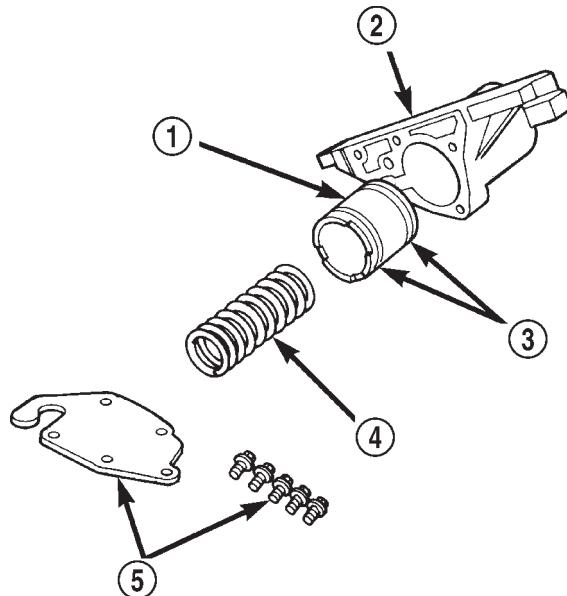
The accumulator (Fig. 46) is a hydraulic device that has the sole purpose of cushioning the application of a band or clutch. The accumulator consists of a dual-land piston and a spring located in a bore in the transmission case. The 3-4 accumulator is located in a housing attached to the side of the valve body (Fig. 47).

**Fig. 46 Accumulator**

- 1 – ACCUMULATOR PISTON
- 2 – PISTON SPRING

OPERATION

Both the accumulator and the 3-4 accumulator function the same. Line pressure is directed between the lands of the piston (Fig. 48), bottoming it against the accumulator plate. The accumulator stays in this position after the transmission is placed into a Drive



804d8eb9

Fig. 47 3-4 Accumulator and Housing

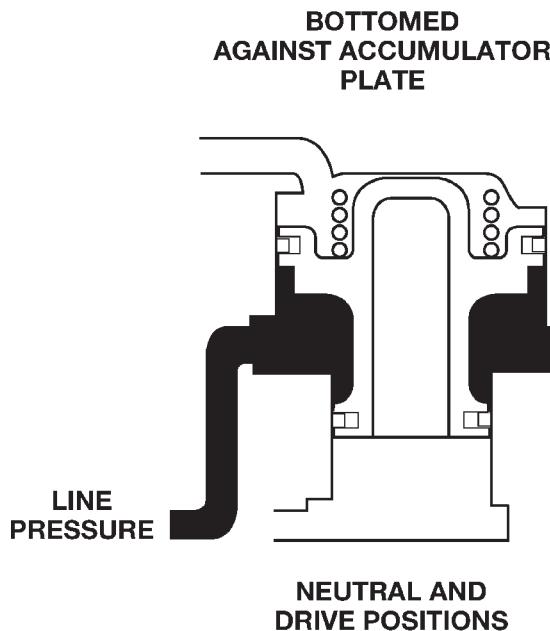
- 1 – ACCUMULATOR PISTON
- 2 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING
- 3 – TEFLON SEALS
- 4 – PISTON SPRING
- 5 – COVER PLATE AND SCREWS

position. When the 1-2 upshift occurs (Fig. 49), line pressure is directed to the large end of the piston and then to the kickdown servo. As the line pressure reaches the accumulator, the combination of spring pressure and line pressure forces the piston away from the accumulator plate. This causes a balanced pressure situation, which results in a cushioned band application. After the kickdown servo has become immovable, line pressure will finish pushing the accumulator up into its bore. When the large end of the accumulator piston is seated in its bore, the band or clutch is fully applied.

NOTE: The accumulator is shown in the inverted position for illustrative purposes.

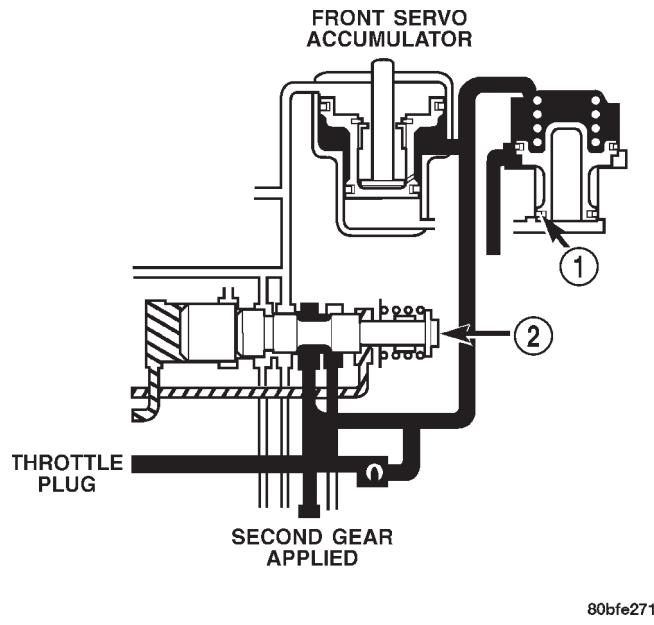
PISTONS**DESCRIPTION**

There are several sizes and types of pistons used in an automatic transmission. Some pistons are used to apply clutches, while others are used to apply bands. They all have in common the fact that they are round or circular in shape, located within a smooth walled cylinder, which is closed at one end and converts fluid pressure into mechanical movement. The fluid pressure exerted on the piston is contained



80bfe270

Fig. 48 Accumulator in Neutral and Drive Positions



80bfe271

Fig. 49 Accumulator in Second Gear Position

- 1 – BOTTOM IN BORE
2 – SHUTTLE VALVE

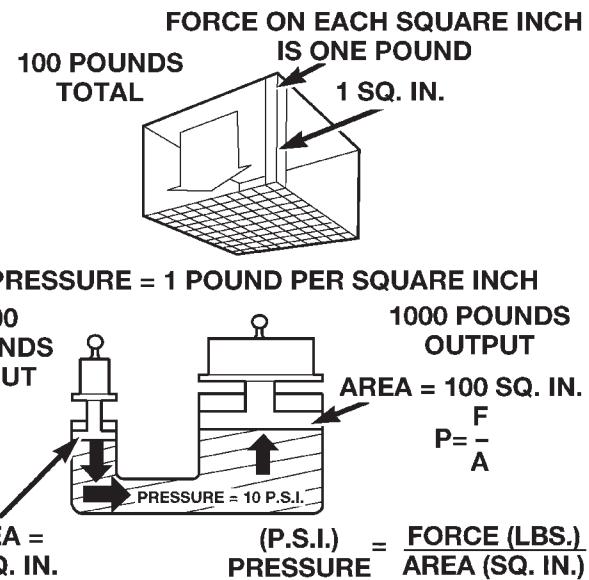
within the system through the use of piston rings or seals.

OPERATION

The principal which makes this operation possible is known as Pascal's Law. Pascal's Law can be stated as: "Pressure on a confined fluid is transmitted equally in all directions and acts with equal force on equal areas."

PRESSURE

Pressure (Fig. 50) is nothing more than force (lbs.) divided by area (in or ft.), or force per unit area. Given a 100 lb. block and an area of 100 sq. in. on the floor, the pressure exerted by the block is: 100 lbs. 100 in or 1 pound per square inch, or PSI as it is commonly referred to.



$$\text{FORCE ON LARGE PISTON} = 1000 \text{ LBS.}$$

80bfe272

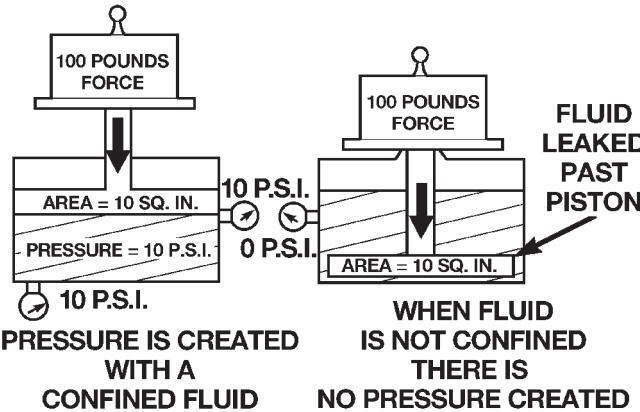
Fig. 50 Force and Pressure Relationship

PRESSURE ON A CONFINED FLUID

Pressure is exerted on a confined fluid (Fig. 51) by applying a force to some given area in contact with the fluid. A good example of this is a cylinder filled with fluid and equipped with a piston that is closely fitted to the cylinder wall. If a force is applied to the piston, pressure will be developed in the fluid. Of course, no pressure will be created if the fluid is not confined. It will simply "leak" past the piston. There must be a resistance to flow in order to create pressure. Piston sealing is extremely important in hydraulic operation. Several kinds of seals are used to accomplish this within a transmission. These include but are not limited to O-rings, D-rings, lip seals, sealing rings, or extremely close tolerances between the piston and the cylinder wall. The force exerted is downward (gravity), however, the principle remains the same no matter which direction is taken. The pressure created in the fluid is equal to the force applied, divided by the piston area. If the force is 100 lbs., and the piston area is 10 sq. in., then the pressure created equals 10 PSI. Another interpretation of Pascal's Law is that regardless of container shape or size, the pressure will be maintained throughout, as long as the fluid is confined. In other words, the

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

pressure in the fluid is the same everywhere within the container.



80bfe273

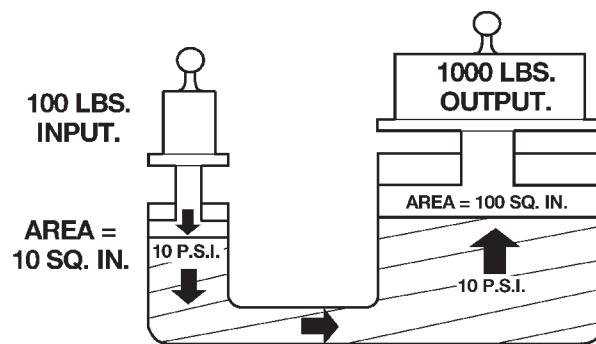
Fig. 51 Pressure on a Confined Fluid

FORCE MULTIPLICATION

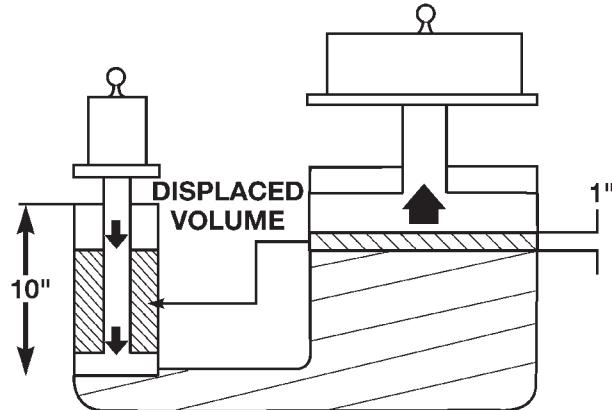
Using the 10 PSI example used in the illustration (Fig. 52), a force of 1000 lbs. can be moved with a force of only 100 lbs. The secret of force multiplication in hydraulic systems is the total fluid contact area employed. The illustration, (Fig. 52), shows an area that is ten times larger than the original area. The pressure created with the smaller 100 lb. input is 10 PSI. The concept "pressure is the same everywhere" means that the pressure underneath the larger piston is also 10 PSI. Pressure is equal to the force applied divided by the contact area. Therefore, by means of simple algebra, the output force may be found. This concept is extremely important, as it is also used in the design and operation of all shift valves and limiting valves in the valve body, as well as the pistons, of the transmission, which activate the clutches and bands. It is nothing more than using a difference of area to create a difference in pressure to move an object.

PISTON TRAVEL

The relationship between hydraulic lever and a mechanical lever is the same. With a mechanical lever it's a weight-to-distance output rather than a pressure-to-area output. Using the same forces and areas as in the previous example, the smaller piston (Fig. 53) has to move ten times the distance required to move the larger piston one inch. Therefore, for every inch the larger piston moves, the smaller piston moves ten inches. This principle is true in other instances also. A common garage floor jack is a good example. To raise a car weighing 2000 lbs., an effort of only 100 lbs. may be required. For every inch the car moves upward, the input piston at the jack handle must move 20 inches downward.



80bfe274

Fig. 52 Force Multiplication

80bfe275

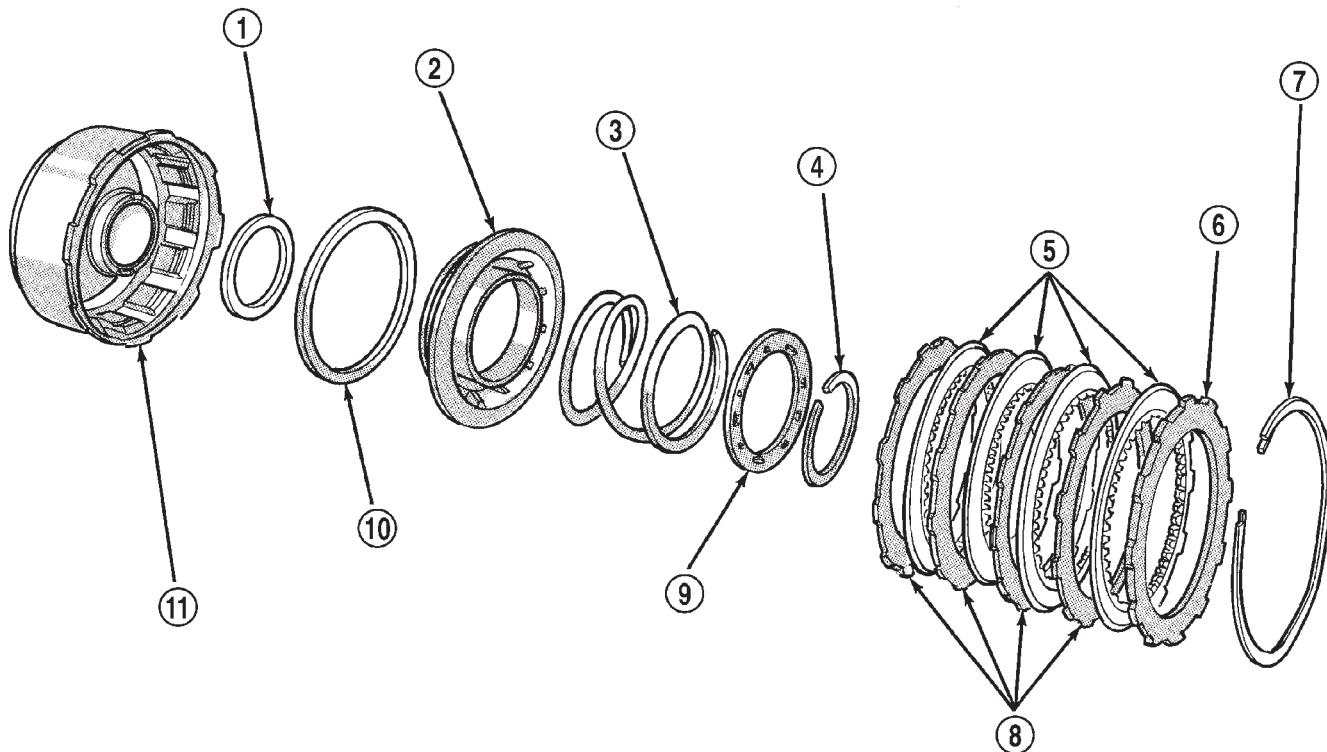
Fig. 53 Piston Travel

FRONT CLUTCH

DESCRIPTION

The front clutch assembly (Fig. 54) is composed of the front clutch retainer, pressure plate, four clutch plates, four driving discs, piston, piston return spring, return spring retainer, and snap rings. The front clutch is the forwardmost component in the transmission geartrain and is directly behind the oil pump and is considered a driving component.

NOTE: The number of discs and plates may vary with each engine and vehicle combination.



J9321-222

Fig. 54 Front Clutch

- 1 – RETAINER HUB SEAL
- 2 – CLUTCH PISTON
- 3 – PISTON SPRING
- 4 – SPRING RETAINER SNAP RING
- 5 – CLUTCH DISCS
- 6 – PRESSURE PLATE

- 7 – SNAP RING (WAVED)
- 8 – CLUTCH PLATES
- 9 – SPRING RETAINER
- 10 – PISTON SEAL
- 11 – FRONT CLUTCH RETAINER

OPERATION

To apply the clutch, pressure is applied between the clutch retainer and piston. The fluid pressure is provided by the oil pump, transferred through the control valves and passageways, and enters the clutch through the hub of the reaction shaft support. With pressure applied between the clutch retainer and piston, the piston moves away from the clutch retainer and compresses the clutch pack. This action applies the clutch pack, allowing torque to flow through the input shaft into the driving discs, and into the clutch plates and pressure plate that are lugged to the clutch retainer. The waved snap ring is used to cushion the application of the clutch pack. In some transmissions, the snap ring is selective and used to adjust clutch pack clearance.

When pressure is released from the piston, the spring returns the piston to its fully released position and disengages the clutch. The release spring also helps to cushion the application of the clutch assembly. When the clutch is in the process of being

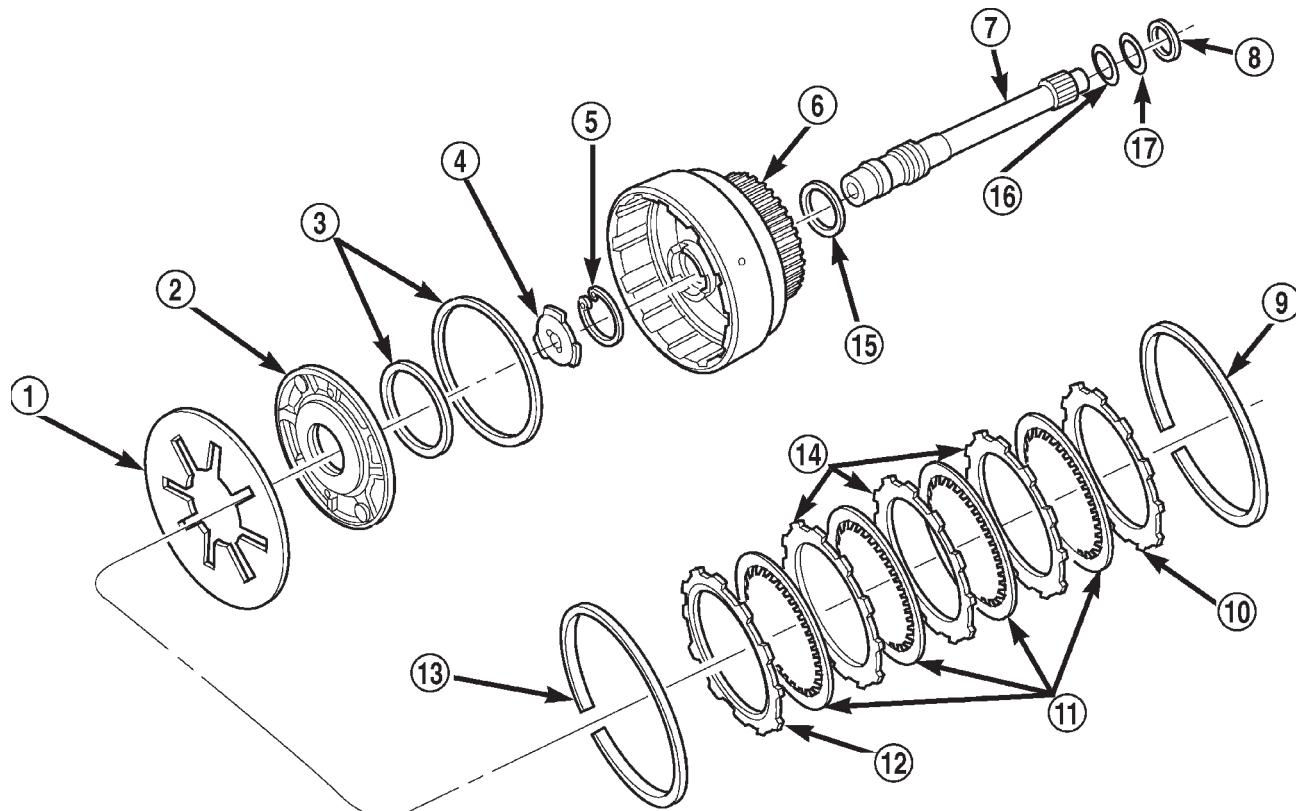
released by the release spring, fluid flows through a vent and one-way ball-check-valve located in the clutch retainer. The check-valve is needed to eliminate the possibility of plate drag caused by centrifugal force acting on the residual fluid trapped in the clutch piston retainer.

REAR CLUTCH

DESCRIPTION

The rear clutch assembly (Fig. 55) is composed of the rear clutch retainer, pressure plate, three clutch plates, four driving discs, piston, Belleville spring, and snap rings. The Belleville spring acts as a lever to multiply the force applied on to it by the apply piston. The increased apply force on the rear clutch pack, in comparison to the front clutch pack, is needed to hold against the greater torque load imposed onto the rear pack. The rear clutch is directly behind the front clutch and is considered a driving component.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c070a4

Fig. 55 Rear Clutch

- 1 - PISTON SPRING
 2 - REAR CLUTCH PISTON
 3 - CLUTCH PISTON SEALS
 4 - OUTPUT SHAFT THRUST WASHER (METAL)
 5 - INPUT SHAFT SNAP RING
 6 - REAR CLUTCH RETAINER
 7 - INPUT SHAFT
 8 - REAR CLUTCH THRUST WASHER (FIBER)
 9 - CLUTCH PACK SNAP RING (SELECTIVE)

- 10 - TOP PRESSURE PLATE
 11 - CLUTCH DISCS (4)
 12 - BOTTOM PRESSURE PLATE
 13 - WAVE SPRING
 14 - CLUTCH PLATES (3)
 15 - RETAINER SEAL RING
 16 - SHAFT REAR SEAL RING (PLASTIC)
 17 - SHAFT FRONT SEAL RING (TEFLON)

NOTE: The number of discs and plates may vary with each engine and vehicle combination.

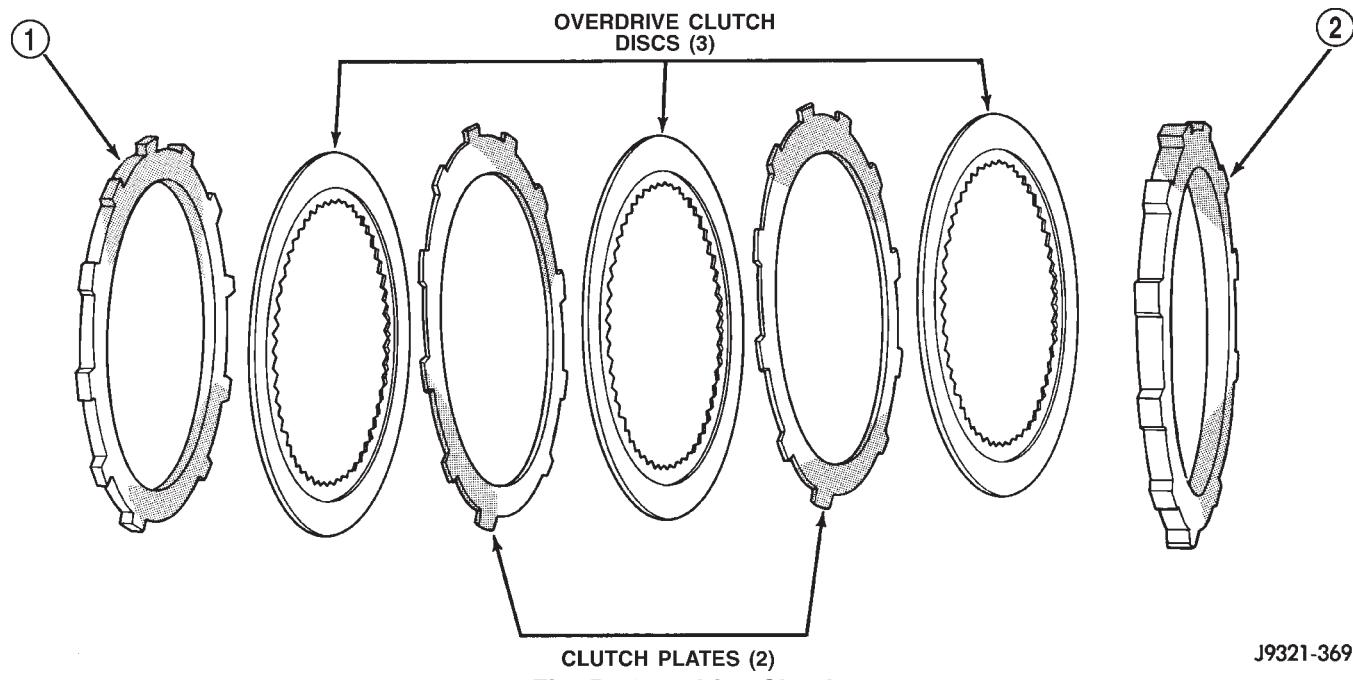
OPERATION

To apply the clutch, pressure is applied between the clutch retainer and piston. The fluid pressure is provided by the oil pump, transferred through the control valves and passageways, and enters the clutch through the hub of the reaction shaft support. With pressure applied between the clutch retainer and piston, the piston moves away from the clutch retainer and compresses the clutch pack. This action applies the clutch pack, allowing torque to flow through the input shaft into the driving discs, and into the clutch plates and pressure plate that are lugged to the clutch retainer. The waved snap ring is used to cushion the application of the clutch pack. In

some transmissions, the snap ring is selective and used to adjust clutch pack clearance.

When pressure is released from the piston, the spring returns the piston to its fully released position and disengages the clutch. The release spring also helps to cushion the application of the clutch assembly. When the clutch is in the process of being released by the release spring, fluid flows through a vent and one-way ball-check-valve located in the clutch retainer. The check-valve is needed to eliminate the possibility of plate drag caused by centrifugal force acting on the residual fluid trapped in the clutch piston retainer.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



J9321-369

Fig. 56 Overdrive Clutch

1 – REACTION PLATE

2 – PRESSURE PLATE

OVERDRIVE CLUTCH**DESCRIPTION**

The overdrive clutch (Fig. 56) is composed of the pressure plate, two clutch plates, three holding discs, overdrive piston retainer, piston, piston spacer, and snap rings. The overdrive clutch is the forwardmost component in the transmission overdrive unit and is considered a holding component. The overdrive piston retainer, piston, and piston spacer are located on the rear of the main transmission case.

NOTE: The number of discs and plates may vary with each engine and vehicle combination.

OPERATION

To apply the clutch, pressure is applied between the piston retainer and piston. The fluid pressure is provided by the oil pump, transferred through the control valves and passageways, and enters the clutch through passages at the lower rear portion of the valve body area. With pressure applied between the piston retainer and piston, the piston moves away from the piston retainer and compresses the clutch pack. This action applies the clutch pack, allowing torque to flow through the intermediate shaft into the overdrive planetary gear set. The overdrive clutch discs are attached to the overdrive clutch hub while the overdrive clutch plates, reaction plate,

and pressure plate are lugged to the overdrive housing. This allows the intermediate shaft to transfer the engine torque to the planetary gear and overrunning clutch. This drives the planetary gear inside the annulus, which is attached to the overdrive clutch drum and output shaft, creating the desired gear ratio. The waved snap ring is used to cushion the application of the clutch pack.

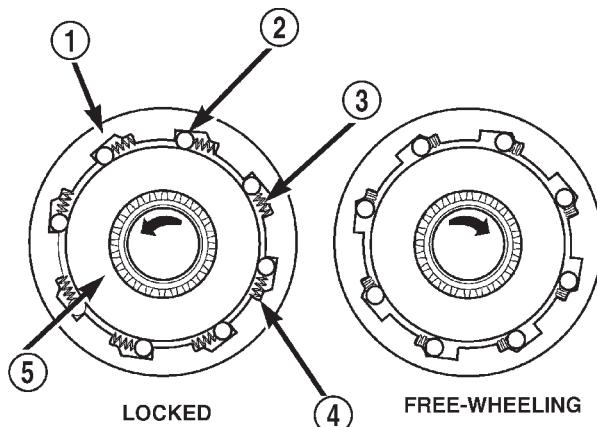
OVERRUNNING CLUTCH**DESCRIPTION**

The overrunning clutch (Fig. 57) consists of an inner race, an outer race (or cam), rollers and springs, and the spring retainer. The number of rollers and springs depends on what transmission and which overrunning clutch is being dealt with.

OPERATION

As the inner race is rotated in a clockwise direction (as viewed from the front of the transmission), the race causes the rollers to roll toward the springs, causing them to compress against their retainer. The compression of the springs increases the clearance between the rollers and cam. This increased clearance between the rollers and cam results in a free-wheeling condition. When the inner race attempts to rotate counterclockwise, the action causes the rollers to roll in the same direction as the race, aided by the pushing of the springs. As the rollers try to move in

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

**Fig. 57 Overrunning Clutch**

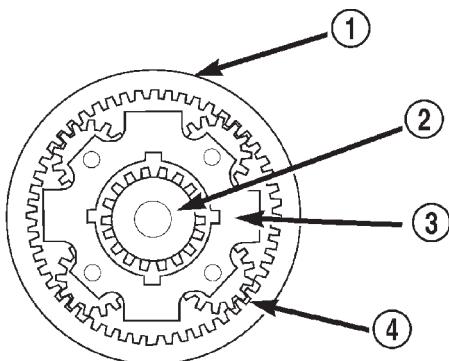
- 1 – OUTER RACE (CAM)
 2 – ROLLER
 3 – SPRING
 4 – SPRING RETAINER
 5 – INNER RACE (HUB)

80be45f8

the same direction as the inner race, they are wedged between the inner and outer races due to the design of the cam. In this condition, the clutch is locked and acts as one unit.

PLANETARY GEARSET**DESCRIPTION**

The planetary gearsets (Fig. 58) are designated as the front, rear, and overdrive planetary gear assemblies and located in such order. A simple planetary gearset consists of three main members:

**Fig. 58 Planetary Gearset**

- 1 – ANNULUS GEAR
 2 – SUN GEAR
 3 – PLANET CARRIER
 4 – PLANET PINIONS (4)

80be45f8

- The sun gear which is at the center of the system.

- The planet carrier with planet pinion gears which are free to rotate on their own shafts and are in mesh with the sun gear.

- The annulus gear, which rotates around and is in mesh with the planet pinion gears.

NOTE: The number of pinion gears does not affect the gear ratio, only the duty rating.

OPERATION

With any given planetary gearset, several conditions must be met for power to be able to flow:

- One member must be held.
- Another member must be driven or used as an input.
- The third member may be used as an output for power flow.
- For direct drive to occur, two gear members in the front planetary gearset must be driven.

NOTE: Gear ratios are dependent on the number of teeth on the annulus and sun gears.

BANDS**DESCRIPTION****KICKDOWN (FRONT) BAND**

The kickdown, or "front", band (Fig. 59) holds the common sun gear of the planetary gear sets. The front (kickdown) band is made of steel, and faced on its inner circumference with a friction-type lining. One end of the band is anchored to the transmission case, and the other is acted on with a pushing force by a servo piston. The front band is a single-wrap design (the band does not completely encompass/wrap the drum that it holds).

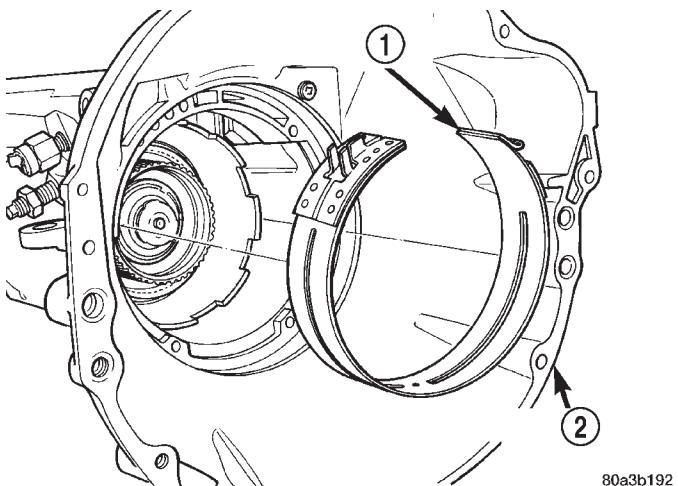
LOW/REVERSE (REAR) BAND

The low/reverse band, or "rear", band (Fig. 60) is similar in appearance and operation to the front band.

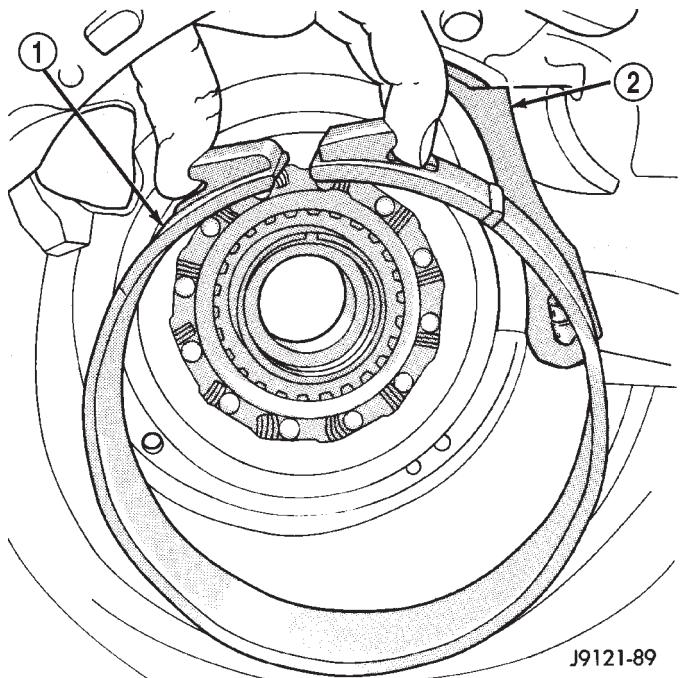
OPERATION**KICKDOWN (FRONT) BAND**

The kickdown band holds the common sun gear of the planetary gear sets by applying and holding the front clutch retainer, which is splined to the sun gear driving shell, and in turn splined directly to the sun gear. The application of the band by the servo is typically done by an apply lever and link bar.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

**Fig. 59 Front Band**

- 1 – FRONT BAND
2 – TRANSMISSION HOUSING

**Fig. 60 Rear Band**

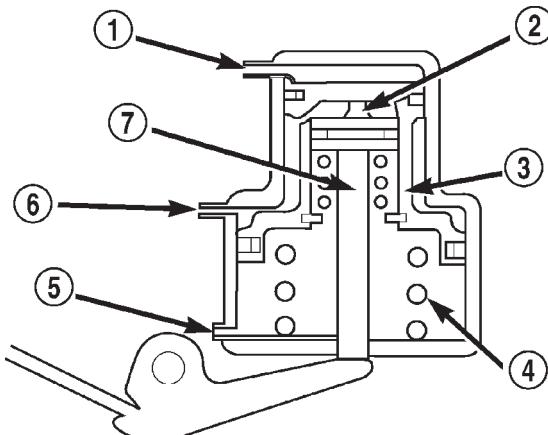
- 1 – REAR BAND
2 – BAND LINK

LOW/REVERSE (REAR) BAND

The rear band holds the rear planet carrier stationary by being mounted around and applied to the low/reverse drum.

SERVOS**DESCRIPTION****KICKDOWN (FRONT) SERVO**

The kickdown servo (Fig. 61) consists of a two-land piston with an inner piston, a piston rod and guide, and a return spring. The dual-land piston uses seal rings on its outer diameters and an O-ring for the inner piston.



80be45fa

Fig. 61 Front Servo

- 1 – VENT
2 – INNER PISTON
3 – PISTON
4 – SPRING
5 – RELEASE PRESSURE
6 – APPLY PRESSURE
7 – PISTON ROD

LOW/REVERSE (REAR) SERVO

The rear (low/reverse) servo consists of a single stage or diameter piston and a spring loaded plug. The spring is used to cushion the application of the rear (low/reverse) band.

OPERATION**KICKDOWN (FRONT) SERVO**

The application of the piston is accomplished by applying pressure between the two lands of the piston. The pressure acts against the larger lower land to push the piston downward, allowing the piston rod to extend through its guide against the apply lever. Release of the servo at the 2-3 upshift is accomplished by a combination of spring and line pressure,

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

acting on the bottom of the larger land of the piston. The small piston is used to cushion the application of the band by bleeding oil through a small orifice in the larger piston. The release timing of the kickdown servo is very important to obtain a smooth but firm shift. The release has to be very quick, just as the front clutch application is taking place. Otherwise, engine runaway or a shift hesitation will occur. To accomplish this, the band retains its holding capacity until the front clutch is applied, giving a small amount of overlap between them.

LOW/REVERSE (REAR) SERVO

While in the de-energized state (no pressure applied), the piston is held up in its bore by the piston spring. The plug is held down in its bore, in the piston, by the plug spring. When pressure is applied to the top of the piston, the plug is forced down in its bore, taking up any clearance. As the piston moves, it causes the plug spring to compress, and the piston moves down over the plug. The piston continues to move down until it hits the shoulder of the plug and fully applies the band. The period of time from the initial application, until the piston is against the shoulder of the plug, represents a reduced shocking of the band that cushions the shift.

GEARSHIFT MECHANISM

DESCRIPTION

The gear shift mechanism provides six shift positions which are:

- Park (P)
- Reverse (R)
- Neutral (N)
- Drive (D)
- Manual second (2)
- Manual low (1)

OPERATION

Manual low (1) range provides first gear only. Overrun braking is also provided in this range. Manual second (2) range provides first and second gear only.

Drive range provides first, second third and overdrive fourth gear ranges. The shift into overdrive fourth gear range occurs only after the transmission has completed the shift into D third gear range. No further movement of the shift mechanism is required to complete the 3-4 shift.

The fourth gear upshift occurs automatically when the overdrive selector switch is in the ON position. No upshift to fourth gear will occur if any of the following are true:

- The transmission fluid temperature is below 10° C (50° F) or above 121° C (250° F).

- The shift to third is not yet complete.
- Vehicle speed is too low for the 3-4 shift to occur.
- Battery temperature is below -5° C (23° F).

CONVERTER DRAINBACK VALVE

DESCRIPTION

The drainback valve is located in the transmission cooler outlet (pressure) line.

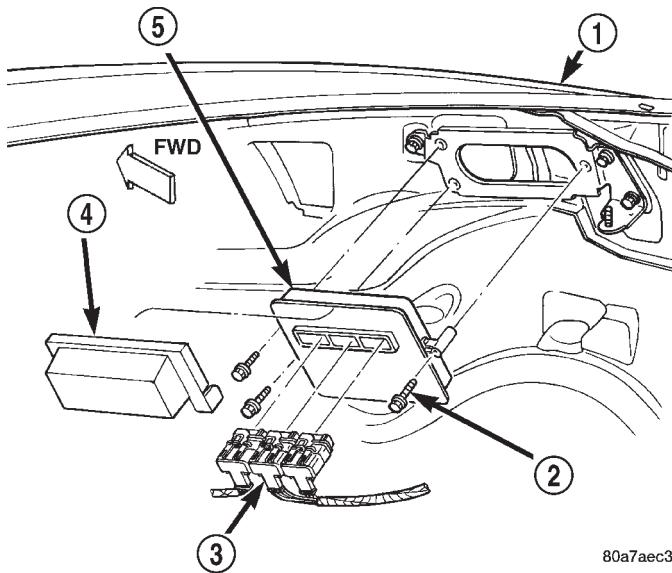
OPERATION

The valve prevents fluid from draining from the converter into the cooler and lines when the vehicle is shut down for lengthy periods. Production valves have a hose nipple at one end, while the opposite end is threaded for a flare fitting. All valves have an arrow (or similar mark) to indicate direction of flow through the valve.

POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE (PCM)

DESCRIPTION

The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) is located in the engine compartment (Fig. 62). The PCM is referred to as JTEC.



80a7aec3

Fig. 62 PCM Location

- | |
|-------------------------------------|
| 1 - RIGHT FRONT FENDER |
| 2 - PCM MOUNTING BOLTS (3) |
| 3 - 32-WAY CONNECTORS (3) |
| 4 - COVER |
| 5 - POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE (PCM) |

OPERATION

The PCM operates the fuel system. The PCM is a pre-programmed, triple microprocessor digital computer. It regulates ignition timing, air-fuel ratio,

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

emission control devices, charging system, certain transmission features, speed control, air conditioning compressor clutch engagement and idle speed. The PCM can adapt its programming to meet changing operating conditions.

The PCM receives input signals from various switches and sensors. Based on these inputs, the PCM regulates various engine and vehicle operations through different system components. These components are referred to as Powertrain Control Module (PCM) Outputs. The sensors and switches that provide inputs to the PCM are considered Powertrain Control Module (PCM) Inputs.

The PCM adjusts ignition timing based upon inputs it receives from sensors that react to: engine rpm, manifold absolute pressure, engine coolant temperature, throttle position, transmission gear selection (automatic transmission), vehicle speed and the brake switch.

The PCM adjusts idle speed based on inputs it receives from sensors that react to: throttle position, vehicle speed, transmission gear selection, engine coolant temperature and from inputs it receives from the air conditioning clutch switch and brake switch.

Based on inputs that it receives, the PCM adjusts ignition coil dwell. The PCM also adjusts the generator charge rate through control of the generator field and provides speed control operation.

NOTE: PCM Inputs:

- A/C request (if equipped with factory A/C)
- A/C select (if equipped with factory A/C)
- Auto shutdown (ASD) sense
- Battery temperature
- Battery voltage
- Brake switch
- CCD bus (+) circuits
- CCD bus (-) circuits
- Camshaft position sensor signal
- Crankshaft position sensor
- Data link connection for DRB scan tool
- Engine coolant temperature sensor
- Fuel level
- Generator (battery voltage) output
- Ignition circuit sense (ignition switch in on/off/crank/run position)
- Intake manifold air temperature sensor
- Leak detection pump (switch) sense (if equipped)
- Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor
- Oil pressure
- Output shaft speed sensor
- Overdrive/override switch
- Oxygen sensors
- Park/neutral switch (auto. trans. only)
- Power ground
- Sensor return

- Signal ground
- Speed control multiplexed single wire input
- Throttle position sensor
- Transmission governor pressure sensor
- Transmission temperature sensor
- Vehicle speed inputs from ABS or RWAL system

NOTE: PCM Outputs:

- A/C clutch relay
- Auto shutdown (ASD) relay
- CCD bus (+/-) circuits for: speedometer, voltmeter, fuel gauge, oil pressure gauge/lamp, engine temp. gauge and speed control warn. lamp
- Data link connection for DRB scan tool
- EGR valve control solenoid (if equipped)
- EVAP canister purge solenoid
- Five volt sensor supply (primary)
- Five volt sensor supply (secondary)
- Fuel injectors
- Fuel pump relay
- Generator field driver (-)
- Generator field driver (+)
- Generator lamp (if equipped)
- Idle air control (IAC) motor
- Ignition coil
- Leak detection pump (if equipped)
- Malfunction indicator lamp (Check engine lamp).

Driven through CCD circuits.

- Overdrive indicator lamp (if equipped)
- Radiator cooling fan (2.5L engine only)
- Speed control vacuum solenoid
- Speed control vent solenoid
- Tachometer (if equipped). Driven through CCD circuits.
- Transmission convertor clutch circuit
- Transmission 3-4 shift solenoid
- Transmission relay
- Transmission temperature lamp (if equipped)
- Transmission variable force solenoid

ELECTRONIC GOVERNOR

DESCRIPTION

Governor pressure is controlled electronically. Components used for governor pressure control include:

- Governor body
- Valve body transfer plate
- Governor pressure solenoid valve
- Governor pressure sensor
- Fluid temperature thermistor
- Throttle position sensor (TPS)
- Transmission speed sensor
- Powertrain control module (PCM)

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID VALVE

The solenoid valve is a duty-cycle solenoid which regulates the governor pressure needed for upshifts and downshifts. It is an electro-hydraulic device located in the governor body on the valve body transfer plate (Fig. 63).

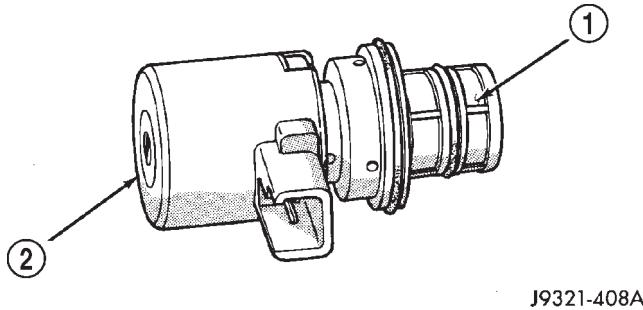


Fig. 63 Governor Pressure Solenoid Valve

- 1 - SOLENOID FILTER
- 2 - GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID

GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR

The governor pressure sensor measures output pressure of the governor pressure solenoid valve (Fig. 64).

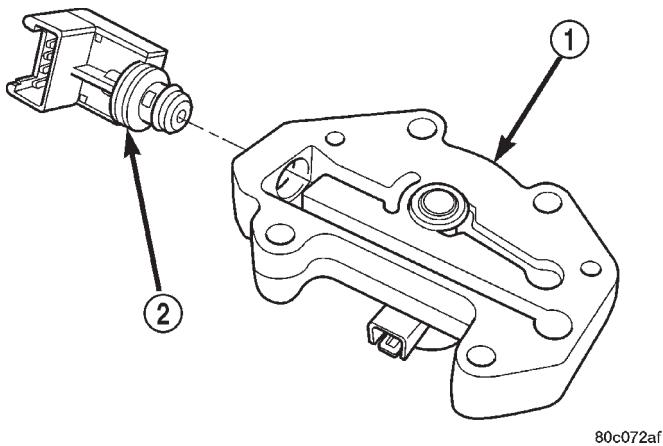


Fig. 64 Governor Pressure Sensor

- 1 - GOVERNOR BODY
- 2 - GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR/TRANSMISSION FLUID TEMPERATURE THERMISTOR

GOVERNOR BODY AND TRANSFER PLATE

The transfer plate is designed to supply transmission line pressure to the governor pressure solenoid valve and to return governor pressure.

The governor pressure solenoid valve is mounted in the governor body. The body is bolted to the lower side of the transfer plate (Fig. 64).

TRANSMISSION FLUID TEMPERATURE THERMISTOR

Transmission fluid temperature readings are supplied to the transmission control module by the ther-

mistor. The temperature readings are used to control engagement of the fourth gear overdrive clutch, the converter clutch, and governor pressure. Normal resistance value for the thermistor at room temperature is approximately 1000 ohms.

The thermistor is part of the governor pressure sensor assembly and is immersed in transmission fluid at all times.

TRANSMISSION SPEED SENSOR

The speed sensor (Fig. 65) is located in the overdrive gear case. The sensor is positioned over the park gear and monitors transmission output shaft rotating speed.

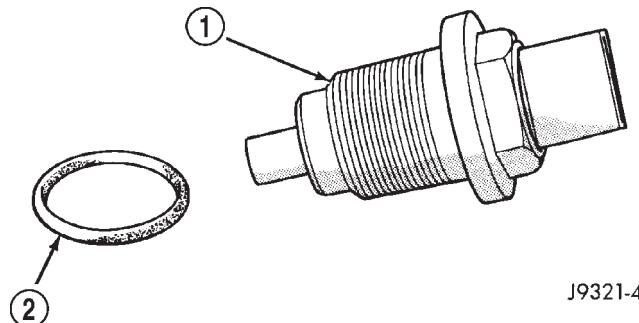


Fig. 65 Transmission Output Speed Sensor

- 1 - TRANSMISSION OUTPUT SHAFT SPEED SENSOR
- 2 - SEAL

OPERATION

Compensation is required for performance variations of two of the input devices. Though the slope of the transfer functions is tightly controlled, offset may vary due to various environmental factors or manufacturing tolerances.

The pressure transducer is affected by barometric pressure as well as temperature. Calibration of the zero pressure offset is required to compensate for shifting output due to these factors.

Normal calibration will be performed when sump temperature is above 50 degrees F, or in the absence of sump temperature data, after the first 10 minutes of vehicle operation. Calibration of the pressure transducer offset occurs each time the output shaft speed falls below 200 RPM. Calibration shall be repeated each 3 seconds the output shaft speed is below 200 RPM. A .5 second pulse of 95% duty cycle is applied to the governor pressure solenoid valve and the transducer output is read during this pulse. Averaging of the transducer signal is necessary to reject electrical noise.

Under cold conditions (below 50 degrees F sump), the governor pressure solenoid valve response may be too slow to guarantee 0 psi during the .5 second calibration pulse. Calibration pulses are continued during this period, however the transducer output

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

valves are discarded. Transducer offset must be read at key-on, under conditions which promote a stable reading. This value is retained and becomes the offset during the "cold" period of operation.

GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID VALVE

The inlet side of the solenoid valve is exposed to normal transmission line pressure. The outlet side of the valve leads to the valve body governor circuit.

The solenoid valve regulates line pressure to produce governor pressure. The average current supplied to the solenoid controls governor pressure. One amp current produces zero kPa/psi governor pressure. Zero amps sets the maximum governor pressure.

The powertrain control module (PCM) turns on the trans control relay which supplies electrical power to the solenoid valve. Operating voltage is 12 volts (DC). The PCM controls the ground side of the solenoid using the governor pressure solenoid control circuit.

GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR

The sensor output signal provides the necessary feedback to the PCM. This feedback is needed to adequately control governor pressure.

GOVERNOR BODY AND TRANSFER PLATE

The transfer plate channels line pressure to the solenoid valve through the governor body. It also channels governor pressure from the solenoid valve to the governor circuit. It is the solenoid valve that develops the necessary governor pressure.

TRANSMISSION FLUID TEMPERATURE THERMISTOR

The PCM prevents engagement of the converter clutch and overdrive clutch, when fluid temperature is below approximately 10°C (50°F).

If fluid temperature exceeds 126°C (260°F), the PCM causes a 4-3 downshift and engage the converter clutch. Engagement is according to the third gear converter clutch engagement schedule.

The overdrive OFF lamp in the instrument panel illuminates when the shift back to third occurs. The transmission will not allow fourth gear operation until fluid temperature decreases to approximately 110°C (230°F).

TRANSMISSION SPEED SENSOR

Speed sensor signals are triggered by the park gear lugs as they rotate past the sensor pickup face. Input signals from the sensor are sent to the transmission control module for processing. The vehicle speed sensor also serves as a backup for the transmission speed sensor. Signals from this sensor are shared with the powertrain control module.

GOVERNOR PRESSURE CURVES

DESCRIPTION

There are four governor pressure curves programmed into the transmission control module. The different curves allow the control module to adjust governor pressure for varying conditions. One curve is used for operation when fluid temperature is at, or below, -1°C (30°F). A second curve is used when fluid temperature is at, or above, 10°C (50°F) during normal city or highway driving. A third curve is used during wide-open throttle operation. The fourth curve is used when driving with the transfer case in low range.

OPERATION

LOW TRANSMISSION FLUID TEMPERATURE

When the transmission fluid is cold the conventional governor can delay shifts, resulting in higher than normal shift speeds and harsh shifts. The electronically controlled low temperature governor pressure curve is higher than normal to make the transmission shift at normal speeds and sooner. The PCM uses a temperature sensor in the transmission oil sump to determine when low temperature governor pressure is needed.

NORMAL OPERATION

Normal operation is refined through the increased computing power of the PCM and through access to data on engine operating conditions provided by the PCM that were not available with the previous stand-alone electronic module. This facilitated the development of a load adaptive shift strategy - the ability to alter the shift schedule in response to vehicle load condition. One manifestation of this capability is grade "hunting" prevention - the ability of the transmission logic to delay an upshift on a grade if the engine does not have sufficient power to maintain speed in the higher gear. The 3-2 downshift and the potential for hunting between gears occurs with a heavily loaded vehicle or on steep grades. When hunting occurs, it is very objectionable because shifts are frequent and accompanied by large changes in noise and acceleration.

WIDE OPEN THROTTLE OPERATION

In wide-open throttle (WOT) mode, adaptive memory in the PCM assures that up-shifts occur at the preprogrammed optimum speed. WOT operation is determined from the throttle position sensor, which is also a part of the emission control system. The initial setting for the WOT upshift is below the optimum engine speed. As WOT shifts are repeated, the PCM learns the time required to complete the shifts

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

by comparing the engine speed when the shifts occur to the optimum speed. After each shift, the PCM adjusts the shift point until the optimum speed is reached. The PCM also considers vehicle loading, grade and engine performance changes due to high altitude in determining when to make WOT shifts. It does this by measuring vehicle and engine acceleration and then factoring in the shift time.

TRANSFER CASE LOW RANGE OPERATION

On four-wheel drive vehicles operating in low range, the engine can accelerate to its peak more rapidly than in Normal range, resulting in delayed shifts and undesirable engine "flare." The low range governor pressure curve is also higher than normal to initiate upshifts sooner. The PCM compares electronic vehicle speed signal used by the speedometer to the transmission output shaft speed signal to determine when the transfer case is in low range.

OVERDRIVE OFF SWITCH

DESCRIPTION

The overdrive OFF (control) switch is located in the shift lever arm.

OPERATION

The switch is a momentary contact device that signals the PCM to toggle current status of the overdrive function. At key-on, overdrive operation is allowed. Pressing the switch once causes the overdrive OFF mode to be entered and the overdrive OFF switch lamp to be illuminated. Pressing the switch a second time causes normal overdrive operation to be restored and the overdrive lamp to be turned off. The overdrive OFF mode defaults to ON after the ignition switch is cycled OFF and ON. The normal position for the control switch is the ON position. The switch must be in this position to energize the solenoid and allow a 3-4 upshift. The control switch indicator light illuminates only when the overdrive switch is turned to the OFF position, or when illuminated by the transmission control module.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION DIAGNOSIS

Automatic transmission problems can be a result of poor engine performance, incorrect fluid level, incorrect linkage or cable adjustment, band or hydraulic control pressure adjustments, hydraulic system malfunctions or electrical/mechanical component malfunctions. Begin diagnosis by checking the easily accessible items such as: fluid level and condition, linkage adjustments and electrical connections. A road test will determine if further diagnosis is necessary.

EFFECTS OF INCORRECT FLUID LEVEL

A low fluid level allows the pump to take in air along with the fluid. Air in the fluid will cause fluid pressures to be low and develop slower than normal. If the transmission is overfilled, the gears churn the fluid into foam. This aerates the fluid and causing the same conditions occurring with a low level. In either case, air bubbles cause fluid overheating, oxidation and varnish buildup which interferes with valve, clutch and servo operation. Foaming also causes fluid expansion which can result in fluid overflow from the transmission vent or fill tube. Fluid overflow can easily be mistaken for a leak if inspection is not careful.

CAUSES OF BURNT FLUID

Burnt, discolored fluid is a result of overheating which has two primary causes.

(1) A result of restricted fluid flow through the main and/or auxiliary cooler. This condition is usually the result of a faulty or improperly installed drainback valve, a damaged main cooler, or severe restrictions in the coolers and lines caused by debris or kinked lines.

(2) Heavy duty operation with a vehicle not properly equipped for this type of operation. Trailer towing or similar high load operation will overheat the transmission fluid if the vehicle is improperly equipped. Such vehicles should have an auxiliary transmission fluid cooler, a heavy duty cooling system, and the engine/axle ratio combination needed to handle heavy loads.

FLUID CONTAMINATION

Transmission fluid contamination is generally a result of:

- adding incorrect fluid
- failure to clean dipstick and fill tube when checking level
- engine coolant entering the fluid
- internal failure that generates debris
- overheating that generates sludge (fluid breakdown)
- failure to reverse flush cooler and lines after repair
- failure to replace contaminated converter after repair

The use of non recommended fluids can result in transmission failure. The usual results are erratic shifts, slippage, abnormal wear and eventual failure due to fluid breakdown and sludge formation. Avoid this condition by using recommended fluids only.

The dipstick cap and fill tube should be wiped clean before checking fluid level. Dirt, grease and other foreign material on the cap and tube could fall into the tube if not removed beforehand. Take the

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

time to wipe the cap and tube clean before withdrawing the dipstick.

Engine coolant in the transmission fluid is generally caused by a cooler malfunction. The only remedy is to replace the radiator as the cooler in the radiator is not a serviceable part. If coolant has circulated through the transmission for some time, an overhaul may also be necessary; especially if shift problems had developed.

The transmission cooler and lines should be reverse flushed whenever a malfunction generates sludge and/or debris. The torque converter should also be replaced at the same time.

Failure to flush the cooler and lines will result in recontamination. Flushing applies to auxiliary coolers as well. The torque converter should also be replaced whenever a failure generates sludge and debris. This is necessary because normal converter flushing procedures will not remove all contaminants.

PRELIMINARY DIAGNOSIS

Two basic procedures are required. One procedure for vehicles that are drivable and an alternate procedure for disabled vehicles (will not back up or move forward).

VEHICLE IS DRIVEABLE

(1) Check for transmission fault codes using DRB scan tool.

(2) Check fluid level and condition.

(3) Adjust throttle and gearshift linkage if complaint was based on delayed, erratic, or harsh shifts.

(4) Road test and note how transmission upshifts, downshifts, and engages.

(5) Perform stall test if complaint is based on sluggish acceleration. Or, if abnormal throttle opening is needed to maintain normal speeds with a properly tuned engine.

(6) Perform hydraulic pressure test if shift problems were noted during road test.

(7) Perform air-pressure test to check clutch-band operation.

VEHICLE IS DISABLED

(1) Check fluid level and condition.

(2) Check for broken or disconnected gearshift or throttle linkage.

(3) Check for cracked, leaking cooler lines, or loose or missing pressure-port plugs.

(4) Raise and support vehicle on safety stands, start engine, shift transmission into gear, and note following:

(a) If propeller shaft turns but wheels do not, problem is with differential or axle shafts.

(b) If propeller shaft does not turn and transmission is noisy, stop engine. Remove oil pan, and check for debris. If pan is clear, remove transmission and check for damaged drive plate, converter, oil pump, or input shaft.

(c) If propeller shaft does not turn and transmission is not noisy, perform hydraulic-pressure test to determine if problem is hydraulic or mechanical.

PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH

The center terminal of the park/neutral position switch is the starter-circuit terminal. It provides the ground for the starter solenoid circuit through the selector lever in PARK and NEUTRAL positions only. The outer terminals on the switch are for the backup lamp circuit.

SWITCH TEST

To test the switch, remove the wiring connector. Test for continuity between the center terminal and the transmission case. Continuity should exist only when the transmission is in PARK or NEUTRAL.

Shift the transmission into REVERSE and test continuity at the switch outer terminals. Continuity should exist only when the transmission is in REVERSE. Continuity should not exist between the outer terminals and the case.

Check gearshift linkage adjustment before replacing a switch that tests faulty.

OVERDRIVE ELECTRICAL CONTROLS

The overdrive off switch, valve body solenoid, case connectors and related wiring can all be tested with a 12 volt test lamp or a volt/ohmmeter. Check continuity of each component when diagnosis indicates this is necessary. Refer to Group 8W, Wiring Diagrams, for component locations and circuit information.

Switch and solenoid continuity should be checked whenever the transmission fails to shift into fourth gear range.

GEARSHIFT CABLE

(1) The shifter lever and gate positions should be in alignment with all transmission PARK, NEUTRAL, and gear detent positions.

(2) Engine starts must be possible with shift lever in PARK or NEUTRAL gate positions only. Engine starts must not be possible in any other gear position.

(3) With shift lever handle in:

(a) PARK position—Apply forward force on center of lever and remove pressure. Engine starts must be possible.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

(b) PARK position—Apply rearward force on center of lever and remove pressure. Engine starts must be possible.

(c) NEUTRAL position—Normal position. Engine starts must be possible.

(d) NEUTRAL position—Engine running and brakes applied, apply forward force on center of shift lever. Transmission shall not be able to shift from neutral to reverse.

ROAD TESTING

Before road testing, be sure the fluid level and control cable adjustments have been checked and adjusted if necessary. Verify that diagnostic trouble codes have been resolved.

Observe engine performance during the road test. A poorly tuned engine will not allow accurate analysis of transmission operation.

Operate the transmission in all gear ranges. Check for shift variations and engine flare which indicates slippage. Note if shifts are harsh, spongy, delayed, early, or if part throttle downshifts are sensitive.

Slippage indicated by engine flare, usually means clutch, band or overrunning clutch problems. If the condition is advanced, an overhaul will be necessary to restore normal operation.

A slipping clutch or band can often be determined by comparing which internal units are applied in the various gear ranges. The Clutch and Band Application chart provides a basis for analyzing road test results.

ANALYZING ROAD TEST

Refer to the Clutch and Band Application chart and note which elements are in use in the various gear ranges.

Note that the rear clutch is applied in all forward ranges (D, 2, 1). The transmission overrunning clutch is applied in first gear (D, 2 and 1 ranges) only. The rear band is applied in 1 and R range only.

Note that the overdrive clutch is applied only in fourth gear and the overdrive direct clutch and overrunning clutch are applied in all ranges except fourth gear.

For example: If slippage occurs in first gear in D and 2 range but not in 1 range, the transmission overrunning clutch is faulty. Similarly, if slippage occurs in any two forward gears, the rear clutch is slipping.

Applying the same method of analysis, note that the front and rear clutches are applied simultaneously only in D range third and fourth gear. If the transmission slips in third gear, either the front clutch or the rear clutch is slipping.

If the transmission slips in fourth gear but not in third gear, the overdrive clutch is slipping. By selecting another gear which does not use these clutches, the slipping unit can be determined. For example, if the transmission also slips in Reverse, the front clutch is slipping. If the transmission does not slip in Reverse, the rear clutch is slipping.

If slippage occurs during the 3-4 shift or only in fourth gear, the overdrive clutch is slipping. Similarly, if the direct clutch were to fail, the transmis-

SHIFT LEVER POSITION	TRANSMISSION CLUTCHES AND BANDS					OVERDRIVE CLUTCHES		
	FRONT CLUTCH	FRONT BAND	REAR CLUTCH	REAR BAND	OVERRUN. CLUTCH	OVERDRIVE CLUTCH	DIRECT CLUTCH	OVERRUN. CLUTCH
Reverse	X			X			X	
Drive Range First Second Third Fourth	X X	X	X X X X		X		X X X	X X X
2-Range (Manual) Second		X	X		X		X	X
1-Range (Manual Low)			X	X	X		X	X

J9421-218

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

sion would lose both reverse gear and overrun braking in 2 position (manual second gear).

If the transmission will not shift to fourth gear, the control switch, overdrive solenoid or related wiring may also be the problem cause.

This process of elimination can be used to identify a slipping unit and check operation. Proper use of the Clutch and Band Application Chart is the key.

Although road test analysis will help determine the slipping unit, the actual cause of a malfunction usually cannot be determined until hydraulic and air pressure tests are performed. Practically any condition can be caused by leaking hydraulic circuits or sticking valves.

Unless a malfunction is obvious, such as no drive in D range first gear, do not disassemble the transmission. Perform the hydraulic and air pressure tests to help determine the probable cause.

HYDRAULIC PRESSURE TEST

Hydraulic test pressures range from a low of one psi (6.895 kPa) governor pressure, to 300 psi (2068 kPa) at the rear servo pressure port in reverse.

An accurate tachometer and pressure test gauges are required. Test Gauge C-3292 has a 100 psi range and is used at the accumulator, governor, and front servo ports. Test Gauge C-3293-SP has a 300 psi range and is used at the rear servo and overdrive ports where pressures exceed 100 psi.

Pressure Test Port Locations

Test ports are located at both sides of the transmission case (Fig. 66).

Line pressure is checked at the accumulator port on the right side of the case. The front servo pressure port is at the right side of the case just behind the filler tube opening.

The rear servo and governor pressure ports are at the right rear of the transmission case. The overdrive clutch pressure port is at the left rear of the case.

Test One - Transmission In Manual Low

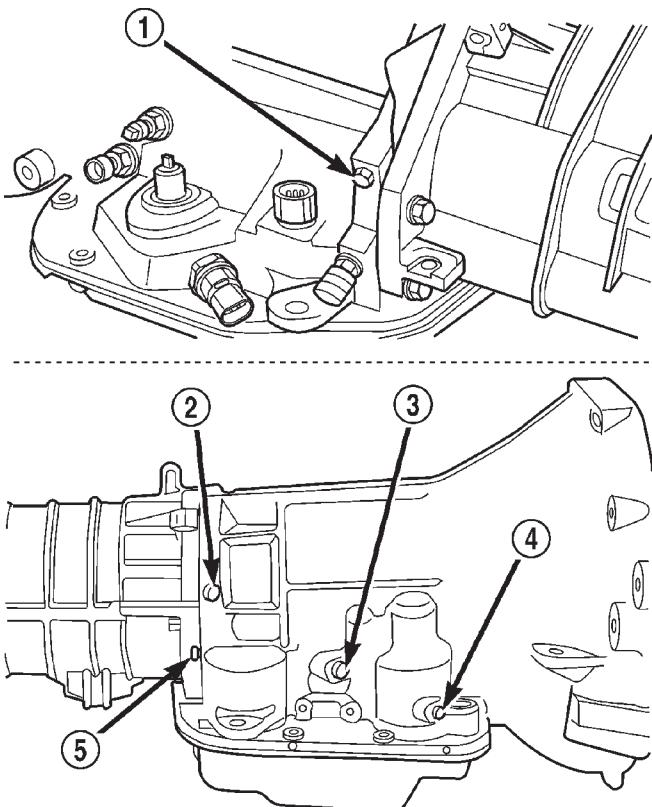
NOTE: This test checks pump output, pressure regulation, and condition of the rear clutch and servo circuit. Both test gauges are required for this test.

- (1) Connect tachometer to engine. Position tachometer so it can be observed from driver seat if helper will be operating engine. Raise vehicle on hoist that will allow rear wheels to rotate freely.

- (2) Connect 100 psi Gauge C-3292 to accumulator port. Then connect 300 psi Gauge C-3293-SP to rear servo port.

- (3) Disconnect throttle and gearshift cables from levers on transmission valve body manual shaft.

- (4) Have helper start and run engine at 1000 rpm.



80b170e6

Fig. 66 Pressure Test Port Locations

- 1 – OVERDRIVE CLUTCH TEST PORT
- 2 – GOVERNOR TEST PORT
- 3 – ACCUMULATOR TEST PORT
- 4 – FRONT SERVO TEST PORT
- 5 – REAR SERVO TEST PORT

(5) Move transmission shift lever fully forward into 1 range.

(6) Gradually move transmission throttle lever from full forward to full rearward position and note pressures on both gauges:

- Line pressure at accumulator port should be 54-60 psi (372-414 kPa) with throttle lever forward and gradually increase to 90-96 psi (621-662 kPa) as throttle lever is moved rearward.

- Rear servo pressure should be same as line pressure within 3 psi (20.68 kPa).

Test Two—Transmission In 2 Range

NOTE: This test checks pump output, line pressure and pressure regulation. Use 100 psi Test Gauge C-3292 for this test.

- (1) Leave vehicle in place on hoist and leave Test Gauge C-3292 connected to accumulator port.

- (2) Have helper start and run engine at 1000 rpm.

- (3) Move transmission shift lever one detent rearward from full forward position. This is 2 range.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

(4) Move transmission throttle lever from full forward to full rearward position and read pressure on gauge.

(5) Line pressure should be 54-60 psi (372-414 kPa) with throttle lever forward and gradually increase to 90-96 psi (621-662 kPa) as lever is moved rearward.

Test Three—Transmission In D Range Third Gear

NOTE: This test checks pressure regulation and condition of the clutch circuits. Both test gauges are required for this test.

(1) Turn OD switch off.

(2) Leave vehicle on hoist and leave Gauge C-3292 in place at accumulator port.

(3) Move Gauge C-3293-SP over to front servo port for this test.

(4) Have helper start and run engine at 1600 rpm for this test.

(5) Move transmission shift lever two detents rearward from full forward position. This is D range.

(6) Read pressures on both gauges as transmission throttle lever is gradually moved from full forward to full rearward position:

- Line pressure at accumulator in D range third gear, should be 54-60 psi (372-414 kPa) with throttle lever forward and increase as lever is moved rearward.

- Front servo pressure in D range third gear, should be within 3 psi (21 kPa) of line pressure up to kickdown point.

Test Four—Transmission In Reverse

NOTE: This test checks pump output, pressure regulation and the front clutch and rear servo circuits. Use 300 psi Test Gauge C-3293-SP for this test.

(1) Leave vehicle on hoist and leave gauge C3292 in place at accumulator port.

(2) Move 300 psi Gauge C-3293-SP back to rear servo port.

(3) Have helper start and run engine at 1600 rpm for test.

(4) Move transmission shift lever four detents rearward from full forward position. This is Reverse range.

(5) Move transmission throttle lever fully forward then fully rearward and note reading at Gauge C-3293-SP.

(6) Pressure should be 145 - 175 psi (1000-1207 kPa) with throttle lever forward and increase to 230 - 280 psi (1586-1931 kPa) as lever is gradually moved rearward.

Test Five—Governor Pressure

NOTE: This test checks governor operation by measuring governor pressure response to changes in vehicle speed. It is usually not necessary to check governor operation unless shift speeds are incorrect or if the transmission will not downshift. The test should be performed on the road or on a hoist that will allow the rear wheels to rotate freely.

(1) Move 100 psi Test Gauge C-3292 to governor pressure port.

(2) Move transmission shift lever two detents rearward from full forward position. This is D range.

(3) Have helper start and run engine at curb idle speed. Then firmly apply service brakes so wheels will not rotate.

(4) Note governor pressure:

- Governor pressure should be no more than 20.6 kPa (3 psi) at curb idle speed and wheels not rotating.

- If pressure exceeds 20.6 kPa (3 psi), a fault exists in governor pressure control system.

(5) Release brakes, slowly increase engine speed, and observe speedometer and pressure test gauge (do not exceed 30 mph on speedometer). Governor pressure should increase in proportion to vehicle speed. Or approximately 6.89 kPa (1 psi) for every 1 mph.

(6) Governor pressure rise should be smooth and drop back to no more than 20.6 kPa (3 psi), after engine returns to curb idle and brakes are applied to prevent wheels from rotating.

(7) Compare results of pressure test with analysis chart.

Test Six—Transmission In Overdrive Fourth Gear

NOTE: This test checks line pressure at the overdrive clutch in fourth gear range. Use 300 psi Test Gauge C-3293-SP for this test. The test should be performed on the road or on a chassis dyno.

(1) Remove tachometer; it is not needed for this test.

(2) Move 300 psi Gauge to overdrive clutch pressure test port. Then remove other gauge and reinstall test port plug.

(3) Lower vehicle.

(4) Turn OD switch on.

(5) Secure test gauge so it can be viewed from drivers seat.

(6) Start engine and shift into D range.

(7) Increase vehicle speed gradually until 3-4 shift occurs and note gauge pressure.

(8) Pressure should be 469-496 kPa (68-72 psi) with closed throttle and increase to 620-827 kPa (90-120 psi) at 1/2 to 3/4 throttle. Note that pressure can increase to around 896 kPa (130 psi) at full throttle.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

(9) Return to shop or move vehicle off chassis dyno.

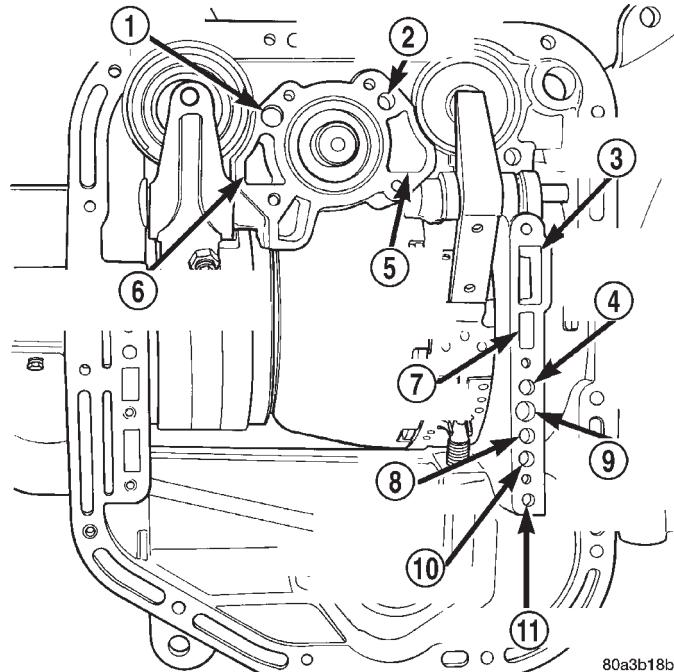
PRESSURE TEST ANALYSIS CHART

TEST CONDITION	INDICATION
Line pressure OK during any one test	Pump and regulator valve OK
Line pressure OK in R but low in D, 2, 1	Leakage in rear clutch area (seal rings, clutch seals)
Pressure low in D Fourth Gear Range	Overdrive clutch piston seal, or check ball problem
Pressure OK in 1, 2 but low in D3 and R	Leakage in front clutch area
Pressure OK in 2 but low in R and 1	Leakage in rear servo
Front servo pressure low in 2	Leakage in servo; broken servo ring or cracked servo piston
Pressure low in all positions	Clogged filter, stuck regulator valve, worn or faulty pump, low oil level
Governor pressure too high at idle speed	Governor pressure solenoid valve system fault. Refer to diagnostic book.
Governor pressure low at all mph figures	Faulty governor pressure solenoid, transmission control module, or governor pressure sensor
Lubrication pressure low at all throttle positions	Clogged fluid cooler or lines, seal rings leaking, worn pump bushings, pump, clutch retainer, or clogged filter.
Line pressure high	Output shaft plugged, sticky regulator valve
Line pressure low	Sticky regulator valve, clogged filter, worn pump

AIR TESTING TRANSMISSION CLUTCH AND BAND OPERATION

Air-pressure testing can be used to check transmission front/rear clutch and band operation. The test can be conducted with the transmission either in the vehicle or on the work bench, as a final check, after overhaul.

Air-pressure testing requires that the oil pan and valve body be removed from the transmission. The servo and clutch apply passages are shown (Fig. 67).



80a3b18b

Fig. 67 Air Pressure Test Passages

- 1 – REAR SERVO APPLY
- 2 – FRONT SERVO APPLY
- 3 – PUMP SUCTION
- 4 – FRONT CLUTCH APPLY
- 5 – FRONT SERVO RELEASE
- 6 – LINE PRESSURE TO ACCUMULATOR
- 7 – PUMP PRESSURE
- 8 – TO CONVERTER
- 9 – REAR CLUTCH APPLY
- 10 – FROM CONVERTER
- 11 – TO COOLER

Front Clutch Air Test

Place one or two fingers on the clutch housing and apply air pressure through front clutch apply passage. Piston movement can be felt and a soft thump heard as the clutch applies.

Rear Clutch Air Test

Place one or two fingers on the clutch housing and apply air pressure through rear clutch apply passage. Piston movement can be felt and a soft thump heard as the clutch applies.

Front Servo Apply Air Test

Apply air pressure to the front servo apply passage. The servo rod should extend and cause the band to tighten around the drum. Spring pressure should release the servo when air pressure is removed.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

Rear Servo Air Test

Apply air pressure to the rear servo apply passage. The servo rod should extend and cause the band to tighten around the drum. Spring pressure should release the servo when air pressure is removed.

CONVERTER HOUSING FLUID LEAK

DIAGNOSIS

When diagnosing converter housing fluid leaks, two items must be established before repair.

- (1) Verify that a leak condition actually exists.
- (2) Determined the true source of the leak.

Some suspected converter housing fluid leaks may not be leaks at all. They may only be the result of residual fluid in the converter housing, or excess fluid spilled during factory fill or fill after repair. Converter housing leaks have several potential sources. Through careful observation, a leak source can be identified before removing the transmission for repair. Pump seal leaks tend to move along the drive hub and onto the rear of the converter. Pump O-ring or pump body leaks follow the same path as a seal leak (Fig. 68). Pump vent or pump attaching bolt leaks are generally deposited on the inside of the converter housing and not on the converter itself (Fig. 68). Pump seal or gasket leaks usually travel down the inside of the converter housing. Front band lever pin plug leaks are generally deposited on the housing and not on the converter.

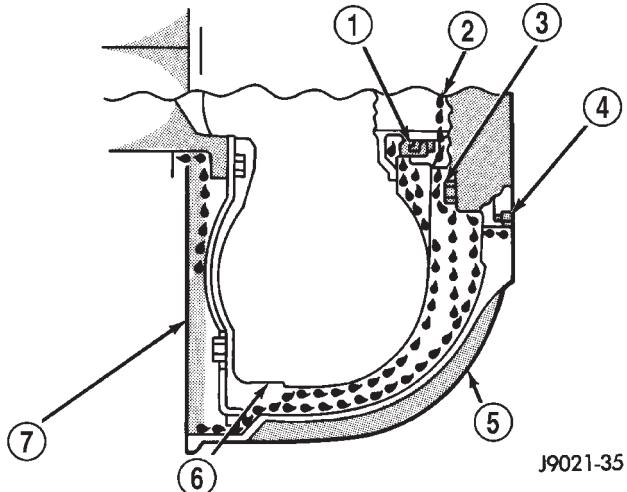


Fig. 68 Converter Housing Leak Paths

- 1 – PUMP SEAL
- 2 – PUMP VENT
- 3 – PUMP BOLT
- 4 – PUMP GASKET
- 5 – CONVERTER HOUSING
- 6 – CONVERTER
- 7 – REAR MAIN SEAL LEAK

TORQUE CONVERTER LEAK POINTS

Possible sources of converter leaks are:

- (1) Leaks at the weld joint around the outside diameter weld (Fig. 69).
- (2) Leaks at the converter hub weld (Fig. 69).

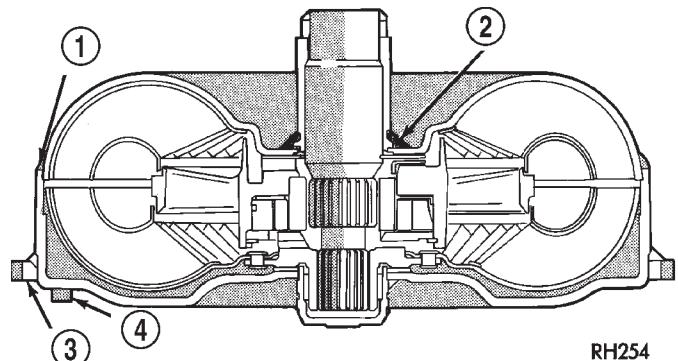


Fig. 69 Converter Leak Points—Typical

- 1 – OUTSIDE DIAMETER WELD
- 2 – TORQUE CONVERTER HUB WELD
- 3 – STARTER RING GEAR
- 4 – LUG

CONVERTER HOUSING AREA LEAK CORRECTION

- (1) Remove converter.
- (2) Tighten front band adjusting screw until band is tight around front clutch retainer. This prevents front/rear clutches from coming out when oil pump is removed.
- (3) Remove oil pump and remove pump seal. Inspect pump housing drainback and vent holes for obstructions. Clear holes with solvent and wire.
- (4) Inspect pump bushing and converter hub. If bushing is scored, replace it. If converter hub is scored, either polish it with crocus cloth or replace converter.
- (5) Install new pump seal, O-ring, and gasket. Replace oil pump if cracked, porous or damaged in any way. Be sure to loosen the front band before installing the oil pump, damage to the oil pump seal may occur if the band is still tightened to the front clutch retainer.
- (6) Loosen kickdown lever pin access plug three turns. Apply Loctite 592, or Permatex No. 2 to plug threads and tighten plug to 17 N·m (150 in. lbs.) torque.
- (7) Adjust front band.
- (8) Lubricate pump seal and converter hub with transmission fluid or petroleum jelly and install converter.
- (9) Install transmission and converter housing dust shield.
- (10) Lower vehicle.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

**DIAGNOSIS TABLES AND CHARTS—RE
TRANSMISSION**

The diagnosis charts provide additional reference when diagnosing a transmission fault. The charts provide general information on a variety of transmission, overdrive unit and converter clutch fault conditions.

The hydraulic flow charts in the Schematics and Diagrams section of this group, outline fluid flow and hydraulic circuitry. Circuit operation is provided for neutral, third, fourth and reverse gear ranges. Normal working pressures are also supplied for each of the gear ranges.

DIAGNOSIS CHARTS

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
HARSH ENGAGEMENT (FROM NEUTRAL TO DRIVE OR REVERSE)	1. Fluid Level Low	1. Add Fluid
	2. Throttle Linkage Misadjusted	2. Adjust linkage - setting may be too long.
	3. Mount and Driveline Bolts Loose	3. Check engine mount, transmission mount, propeller shaft, rear spring to body bolts, rear control arms, crossmember and axle bolt torque. Tighten loose bolts and replace missing bolts.
	4. U-Joint Worn/Broken	4. Remove propeller shaft and replace U-Joint.
	5. Axle Backlash Incorrect	5. Check per Service Manual. Correct as needed.
	6. Hydraulic Pressure Incorrect	6. Check pressure. Remove, overhaul or adjust valve body as needed.
	7. Band Misadjusted.	7. Adjust rear band.
	8. Valve Body Check Balls Missing.	8. Inspect valve body for proper check ball installation.
	9. Axle Pinion Flange Loose.	9. Replace nut and check pinion threads before installing new nut. Replace pinion gear if threads are damaged.
	10. Clutch, band or planetary component damaged.	10. Remove, disassemble and repair transmission as necessary.
	11. Converter Clutch Faulty.	11. Replace converter and flush cooler and line before installing new converter.
DELAYED ENGAGEMENT (FROM NEUTRAL TO DRIVE OR REVERSE)	1. Fluid Level Low.	1. Correct level and check for leaks.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO DRIVE RANGE (REVERSE OK)	2. Filter Clogged.	2. Change filter.
	3. Gearshift Linkage Misadjusted.	3. Adjust linkage and repair linkage if worn or damaged.
	4. Torque Converter Drain Back (Oil drains from torque converter into transmission sump)	4. If vehicle moves normally after 5 seconds after shifting into gear, no repair is necessary. If longer, inspect pump bushing for wear. Replace pump house.
	5. Rear Band Misadjusted.	5. Adjust band.
	6. Valve Body Filter Plugged.	6. Replace fluid and filter. If oil pan and old fluid were full of clutch disc material and/or metal particles, overhaul will be necessary.
	7. Oil Pump Gears Worn/Damaged.	7. Remove transmission and replace oil pump.
	8. Governor Circuit and Solenoid Valve Electrical Fault.	8. Test with DRB scan tool and repair as required.
	9. Hydraulic Pressure Incorrect.	9. Perform pressure test, remove transmission and repair as needed.
	10. Reaction Shaft Seal Rings Worn/Broken.	10. Remove transmission, remove oil pump and replace seal rings.
	11. Rear Clutch/Input Shaft, Rear Clutch Seal Rings Damaged.	11. Remove and disassemble transmission and repair as necessary.
	12. Regulator Valve Stuck.	12. Clean.
	13. Cooler Plugged.	13. Transfer case failure can plug cooler.
NO DRIVE OR REVERSE (VEHICLE WILL NOT MOVE)	1. Fluid Level Low.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks if drive is restored.
	2. Gearshift Linkage/Cable Loose/Misadjusted.	2. Repair or replace linkage components.
	3. Rear Clutch Burnt.	3. Remove and disassemble transmission and rear clutch and seals. Repair/replace worn or damaged parts as needed.
	4. Valve Body Malfunction.	4. Remove and disassemble valve body. Replace assembly if any valves or bores are damaged.
	5. Transmission Overrunning Clutch Broken.	5. Remove and disassemble transmission. Replace overrunning clutch.
	6. Input Shaft Seal Rings Worn/Damaged.	6. Remove and disassemble transmission. Replace seal rings and any other worn or damaged parts.
	7. Front Planetary Failed Broken.	7. Remove and repair.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
	2. Gearshift Linkage/Cable Loose/Misadjusted. 3. U-Joint/Axle/Transfer Case Broken. 4. Filter Plugged.	2. Inspect, adjust and reassemble linkage as needed. Replace worn/damaged parts. 3. Perform preliminary inspection procedure for vehicle that will not move. Refer to procedure in diagnosis section. 4. Remove and disassemble transmission. Repair or replace failed components as needed. Replace filter. If filter and fluid contained clutch material or metal particles, an overhaul may be necessary. Perform lube flow test. Flush oil. Replace cooler as necessary.
	5. Oil Pump Damaged.	5. Perform pressure test to confirm low pressure. Replace pump body assembly if necessary.
	6. Valve Body Malfunctioned.	6. Check and inspect valve body. Replace valve body (as assembly) if any valve or bore is damaged. Clean and reassemble correctly if all parts are in good condition.
	7. Transmission Internal Component Damaged.	7. Remove and disassemble transmission. Repair or replace failed components as needed.
	8. Park Sprag not Releasing - Check Stall Speed, Worn/Damaged/Stuck.	8. Remove, disassemble, repair.
	9. Torque Converter Damage.	9. Inspect and replace as required.
SHIFTS DELAYED OR ERRATIC (SHIFTS ALSO HARSH AT TIMES)	1. Fluid Level Low/High. 2. Fluid Filter Clogged. 3. Throttle Linkage Misadjusted. 4. Throttle Linkage Binding. 5. Gearshift Linkage/Cable Misadjusted. 6. Clutch or Servo Failure. 7. Governor Circuit Electrical Fault. 8. Front Band Misadjusted. 9. Pump Suction Passage Leak.	1. Correct fluid level and check for leaks if low. 2. Replace filter. If filter and fluid contained clutch material or metal particles, an overhaul may be necessary. Perform lube flow test. 3. Adjust linkage as described in service section. 4. Check cable for binding. Check for return to closed throttle at transmission. 5. Adjust linkage/cable as described in service section. 6. Remove valve body and air test clutch, and band servo operation. Disassemble and repair transmission as needed. 7. Test using DRB scan tool and repair as required. 8. Adjust band. 9. Check for excessive foam on dipstick after normal driving. Check for loose pump bolts, defective gasket. Replace pump assembly if needed.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO REVERSE (D RANGES OK)	1. Gearshift Linkage/Cable Misadjusted/Damaged. 2. Park Sprag Sticking. 3. Rear Band Misadjusted/Worn. 4. Valve Body Malfunction. 5. Rear Servo Malfunction. 6. Direct Clutch in Overdrive Worn 7. Front Clutch Burnt.	1. Repair or replace linkage parts as needed. 2. Replace overdrive annulus gear. 3. Adjust band; replace. 4. Remove and service valve body. Replace valve body if any valves or valve bores are worn or damaged. 5. Remove and disassemble transmission. Replace worn/damaged servo parts as necessary. 6. Disassemble overdrive. Replace worn or damaged parts. 7. Remove and disassemble transmission. Replace worn, damaged clutch parts as required.
HAS FIRST/REVERSE ONLY (NO 1-2 OR 2-3 UPSHIFT)	1. Governor Circuit Electrical Fault. 2. Valve Body Malfunction. 3. Front Servo/Kickdown Band Damaged/Burned.	1. Test using DRB scan tool and repair as required. 2. Repair stuck 1-2 shift valve or governor plug. 3. Repair/replace.
MOVES IN 2ND OR 3RD GEAR, ABRUPTLY DOWNSHIFTS TO LOW	1. Valve Body Malfunction. 2. Governor Valve Sticking.	1. Remove, clean and inspect. Look for stuck 1-2 valve or governor plug. 2. Remove, clean and inspect. Replace faulty parts.
NO LOW GEAR (MOVES IN 2ND OR 3RD GEAR ONLY)	1. Governor Valve Sticking. 2. Governor Circuit Electrical Fault. 3. Valve Body Malfunction. 4. Front Servo Piston Cocked in Bore. 5. Front Band Linkage Malfunction	1. Remove governor, clean, inspect and repair as required. 2. Test with DRB scan tool and repair as required. 3. Remove, clean and inspect. Look for sticking 1-2 shift valve, 2-3 shift valve, governor plug or broken springs. 4. Inspect servo and repair as required. 5. Inspect linkage and look for bind in linkage.
NO KICKDOWN OR NORMAL DOWNSHIFT	1. Throttle Linkage Misadjusted.	1. Adjust linkage.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
	2. Accelerator Pedal Travel Restricted. 3. Valve Body Hydraulic Pressures Too High or Too Low Due to Valve Body Malfunction or Incorrect Hydraulic Control Pressure Adjustments. 4. Governor Circuit Electrical Fault. 5. Valve Body Malfunction. 6. TPS Malfunction. 7. PCM Malfunction. 8. Valve Body Malfunction.	2. Verify floor mat is not under pedal, repair worn accelerator cable or bent brackets. 3. Perform hydraulic pressure tests to determine cause and repair as required. Correct valve body pressure adjustments as required. 4. Test with DRB scan tool and repair as required. 5. Perform hydraulic pressure tests to determine cause and repair as required. Correct valve body pressure adjustments as required. 6. Replace sensor, check with DRB scan tool. 7. Check with DRB scan tool and replace if required. 8. Repair sticking 1-2, 2-3 shift valves, governor plugs, 3-4 solenoid, 3-4 shift valve, 3-4 timing valve.
STUCK IN LOW GEAR (WILL NOT UPSHIFT)	1. Throttle Linkage Misadjusted/Stuck. 2. Gearshift Linkage Misadjusted. 3. Governor Component Electrical Fault. 4. Front Band Out of Adjustment. 5. Clutch or Servo Malfunction.	1. Adjust linkage and repair linkage if worn or damaged. Check for binding cable or missing return spring. 2. Adjust linkage and repair linkage if worn or damaged. 3. Check operating pressures and test with DRB scan tool, repair faulty component. 4. Adjust Band. 5. Air pressure check operation of clutches and bands. Repair faulty component.
CREEPS IN NEUTRAL	1. Gearshift Linkage Misadjusted. 2. Rear Clutch Dragging/Warped. 3. Valve Body Malfunction.	1. Adjust linkage. 2. Disassemble and repair. 3. Perform hydraulic pressure test to determine cause and repair as required.
BUZZING NOISE	1. Fluid Level Low 2. Shift Cable Misassembled. 3. Valve Body Misassembled. 4. Pump Passages Leaking 5. Cooling System Cooler Plugged. 6. Overrunning Clutch Damaged.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks. 2. Route cable away from engine and bell housing. 3. Remove, disassemble, inspect valve body. Reassemble correctly if necessary. Replace assembly if valves or springs are damaged. Check for loose bolts or screws. 4. Check pump for porous casting, scores on mating surfaces and excess rotor clearance. Repair as required. Loose pump bolts. 5. Flow check cooler circuit. Repair as needed. 6. Replace clutch.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
SLIPS IN REVERSE ONLY	1. Fluid Level Low. 2. Gearshift Linkage Misadjusted. 3. Rear Band Misadjusted. 4. Rear Band Worn. 5. Overdrive Direct Clutch Worn. 6. Hydraulic Pressure Too Low. 7. Rear Servo Leaking. 8. Band Linkage Binding.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks. 2. Adjust linkage. 3. Adjust band. 4. Replace as required. 5. Disassemble overdrive. Repair as needed. 6. Perform hydraulic pressure tests to determine cause. 7. Air pressure check clutch-servo operation and repair as required. 8. Inspect and repair as required.
SLIPS IN FORWARD DRIVE RANGES	1. Fluid Level Low. 2. Fluid Foaming. 3. Throttle Linkage Misadjusted. 4. Gearshift Linkage Misadjusted. 5. Rear Clutch Worn. 6. Low Hydraulic Pressure Due to Worn Pump, Incorrect Control Pressure Adjustments, Valve Body Warpage or Malfunction, Sticking, Leaking Seal Rings, Clutch Seals Leaking, Servo Leaks, Clogged Filter or Cooler Lines 7. Rear Clutch Malfunction, Leaking Seals or Worn Plates. 8. Overrunning Clutch Worn, Not Holding (Slips in 1 Only).	1. Add fluid and check for leaks. 2. Check for high oil level, bad pump gasket or seals, dirt between pump halves and loose pump bolts. Replace pump if necessary. 3. Adjust linkage. 4. Adjust linkage. 5. Inspect and replace as needed. 6. Perform hydraulic and air pressure tests to determine cause. 7. Air pressure check clutch-servo operation and repair as required. 8. Replace Clutch.
SLIPS IN LOW GEAR "D" ONLY, BUT NO IN 1 POSITION	Overrunning Clutch Faulty.	Replace overrunning clutch.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
GROWLING, GRATING OR SCRAPING NOISES	1. Drive Plate Broken. 2. Torque Converter Bolts Hitting Dust Shield. 3. Planetary Gear Set Broken/ Seized. 4. Overrunning Clutch Worn/Broken. 5. Oil Pump Components Scored/ Binding. 6. Output Shaft Bearing or Bushing Damaged. 7. Clutch Operation Faulty. 8. Front and Rear Bands Misadjusted.	1. Replace. 2. Dust shield bent. Replace or repair. 3. Check for debris in oil pan and repair as required. 4. Inspect and check for debris in oil pan. Repair as required. 5. Remove, inspect and repair as required. 6. Remove, inspect and repair as required. 7. Perform air pressure check and repair as required. 8. Adjust bands.
DRAGS OR LOCKS UP	1. Fluid Level Low. 2. Clutch Dragging/Failed 3. Front or Rear Band Misadjusted. 4. Case Leaks Internally. 5. Servo Band or Linkage Malfunction. 6. Overrunning Clutch Worn. 7. Planetary Gears Broken. 8. Converter Clutch Dragging.	1. Check and adjust level. 2. Air pressure check clutch operation and repair as required. 3. Adjust bands. 4. Check for leakage between passages in case. 5. Air pressure check servo operation and repair as required. 6. Remove and inspect clutch. Repair as required. 7. Remove, inspect and repair as required (look for debris in oil pan). 8. Check for plugged cooler. Perform flow check. Inspect pump for excessive side clearance. Replace pump as required.
NO 4-3 DOWNSHIFT	1. Circuit Wiring and/or Connectors Shorted. 2. PCM Malfunction. 3. TPS Malfunction 4. Lockup Solenoid Not Venting. 5. Overdrive Solenoid Not Venting. 6. Valve Body Valve Sticking.	1. Test wiring and connectors with test lamp and volt/ohmmeter. Repair wiring as necessary. Replace connectors and/or harnesses as required. 2. Check PCM operation with DRB scan tool. Replace PCM only if faulty. 3. Check TPS with DRB scan tool at PCM. 4. Remove valve body and replace solenoid assembly if plugged or shorted. 5. Remove valve body and replace solenoid if plugged or shorted. 6. Repair stuck 3-4 shift valve or lockup timing valve.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO 4-3 DOWNSHIFT WHEN CONTROL SWITCH IS TURNED OFF	1. Control Switch Open/Shorted. 2. Overdrive Solenoid Connector Shorted. 3. PCM Malfunction. 4. Valve Body Stuck Valves.	1. Test and replace switch if faulty. 2. Test solenoids and replace if seized or shorted. 3. Test with DRB scan tool. Replace PCM if faulty. 4. Repair stuck 3-4, lockup or lockup timing valve.
CLUNK NOISE FROM DRIVELINE ON CLOSED THROTTLE 4-3 DOWNSHIFT	1. Transmission Fluid Low. 2. Throttle Cable Misadjusted. 3. Overdrive Clutch Select Spacer Wrong Spacer.	1. Add Fluid. 2. Adjust cable. 3. Replace overdrive piston thrust plate spacer.
3-4 UPSHIFT OCCURS IMMEDIATELY AFTER 2-3 SHIFT	1. Overdrive Solenoid Connector or Wiring Shorted. 2. TPS Malfunction. 3. PCM Malfunction. 4. Overdrive Solenoid Malfunction. 5. Valve Body Malfunction.	1. Test connector and wiring for loose connections, shorts or ground and repair as needed. 2. Test TPS and replace as necessary. Check with DRB scan tool. 3. Test PCM with DRB scan tool and replace controller if faulty. 4. Replace solenoid. 5. Remove, disassemble, clean and inspect valve body components. Make sure all valves and plugs slide freely in bores. Polish valves with crocus cloth if needed.
WHINE/NOISE RELATED TO ENGINE SPEED	1. Fluid Level Low. 2. Shift Cable Incorrect Routing.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks. 2. Check shift cable for correct routing. Should not touch engine or bell housing.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO 3-4 UPSHIFT	1. Dash O/D Switch In OFF Position.	1. Turn control switch to ON position.
	2. Overdrive Circuit Fuse Blown.	2. Replace fuse. Determine why fuse failed and repair as necessary (i.e., shorts or grounds in circuit).
	3. O/D Switch Wire Shorted/Open Cut.	3. Check wires/connections with 12V test lamp and voltmeter. Repair damaged or loose wire/connection as necessary.
	4. Distance or Coolant Sensor Malfunction.	4. Check with DRB scan tool and repair or replace as necessary.
	5. TPS Malfunction.	5. Check with DRB scan tool and replace if necessary.
	6. Neutral Switch to PCM Wire Shorted/Cut.	6. Test switch as described in service section and replace if necessary. Engine no start.
	7. PCM Malfunction.	7. Check with DRB scan tool and replace if necessary.
	8. Overdrive Solenoid Shorted/Open.	8. Replace solenoid if shorted or open and repair loose or damaged wires (DRB scan tool).
	9. Solenoid Feed Orifice in Valve Body Blocked.	9. Remove, disassemble, and clean valve body thoroughly. Check feed orifice.
	10. Overdrive Clutch Failed.	10. Disassemble overdrive and repair as needed.
	11. Hydraulic Pressure Low.	11. Pressure test transmission to determine cause.
	12. Valve Body Valve Stuck.	12. Repair stuck 3-4 shift valve, 3-4 timing valve.
	13. O/D Piston Incorrect Spacer.	13. Remove unit, check end play and install correct spacer.
	14. Overdrive Piston Seal Failure.	14. Replace both seals.
	15. O/D Check Valve/Orifice Failed.	15. Check for free movement and secure assembly (in piston retainer). Check ball bleed orifice.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
SLIPS IN OVERDRIVE FOURTH GEAR	1. Fluid Level Low. 2. Overdrive Clutch Pack Worn. 3. Overdrive Piston Retainer Bleed Orifice Blown Out. 4. Overdrive Piston or Seal Malfunction. 5. 3-4 Shift Valve, Timing Valve or Accumulator Malfunction. 6. Overdrive Unit Thrust Bearing Failure. 7. O/D Check Valve/Bleed Orifice Failure.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks. 2. Remove overdrive unit and rebuild clutch pack. 3. Disassemble transmission, remove retainer and replace orifice. 4. Remove overdrive unit. Replace seals if worn. Replace piston if damaged. If piston retainer is damaged, remove and disassemble the transmission. 5. Remove and overhaul valve body. Replace accumulator seals. Make sure all valves operate freely in bores and do not bind or stick. Make sure valve body screws are correctly tightened and separator plates are properly positioned. 6. Disassemble overdrive unit and replace thrust bearing (NO. 1 thrust bearing is between overdrive piston and clutch hub; NO. 2 thrust bearing is between the planetary gear and the direct clutch spring plate; NO. 3 thrust bearing is between overrunning clutch hub and output shaft). 7. Check for function/secure orifice insert in O/D piston retainer.
DELAYED 3-4 UPSHIFT (SLOW TO ENGAGE)	1. Fluid Level Low. 2. Throttle Valve Cable Misadjusted. 3. Overdrive Clutch Pack Worn/ Burnt. 4. TPS Faulty. 5. Overdrive Clutch Bleed Orifice Plugged. 6. Overdrive Solenoid or Wiring Shorted/Open. 7. Overdrive Excess Clearance 8. O/D Check Valve Missing or Stuck.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks. 2. Adjust throttle valve cable. 3. Remove unit and rebuild clutch pack. 4. Test with DRB scan tool and replace as necessary 5. Disassemble transmission and replace orifice. 6. Test solenoid and check wiring for loose/corroded connections or shorts/ grounds. Replace solenoid if faulty and repair wiring if necessary. 7. Remove unit. Measure end play and select proper spacer. 8. Check for presence of check valve. Repair or replace as required.
TORQUE CONVERTER LOCKS UP IN SECOND AND/OR THIRD GEAR	Lockup Solenoid, Relay or Wiring Shorted/Open.	Test solenoid, relay and wiring for continuity, shorts or grounds. Replace solenoid and relay if faulty. Repair wiring and connectors as necessary.
HARSH 1-2, 2-3, 3-4 OR 3-2 SHIFTS	Lockup Solenoid Malfunction.	Remove valve body and replace solenoid assembly.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO START IN PARK OR NEUTRAL	1. Gearshift Linkage/Cable Misadjusted. 2. Neutral Switch Wire Open/Cut. 3. Neutral Switch Faulty. 4. Neutral Switch Connect Faulty. 5. Valve Body Manual Lever Assembly Bent/Worn/Broken.	1. Adjust linkage/cable. 2. Check continuity with test lamp. Repair as required. 3. Refer to service section for test and replacement procedure. 4. Connectors spread open. Repair. 5. Inspect lever assembly and replace if damaged.
NO REVERSE (OR SLIPS IN REVERSE)	1. Direct Clutch Pack (front clutch) Worn. 2. Rear Band Misadjusted. 3. Front Clutch Malfunctioned/ Burned. 4. Overdrive Thrust Bearing Failure. 5. Direct Clutch Spring Collapsed/ Broken.	1. Disassemble unit and rebuild clutch pack. 2. Adjust band. 3. Air-pressure test clutch operation. Remove and rebuild if necessary. 4. Disassemble geartrain and replace bearings. 5. Remove and disassemble unit. Check clutch position and replace spring.
OIL LEAKS.	1. Fluid Lines and Fittings Loose/ Leaks/Damaged. 2. Fill Tube (where tube enters case) Leaks/Damaged. 3. Pressure Port Plug Loose Loose/Damaged. 4. Pan Gasket Leaks. 5. Valve Body Manual Lever Shaft Seal Leaks/Worn. 6. Rear Bearing Access Plate Leaks. 7. Gasket Damaged or Bolts are Loose. 8. Adapter/Extension Gasket Damaged Leaks/Damaged. 9. Neutral Switch Leaks/Damaged. 10. Converter Housing Area Leaks. 11. Pump Seal Leaks/Worn/ Damaged. 12. Torque Converter Weld Leak/Cracked Hub. 13. Case Porosity Leaks.	1. Tighten fittings. If leaks persist, replace fittings and lines if necessary. 2. Replace tube seal. Inspect tube for cracks in fill tube. 3. Tighten to correct torque. Replace plug or reseal if leak persists. 4. Tighten pan screws (150 in. lbs.). If leaks persist, replace gasket. 5. Replace shaft seal. 6. Replace gasket. Tighten screws. 7. Replace bolts or gasket or tighten both. 8. Replace gasket. 9. Replace switch and gasket. 10. Check for leaks at seal caused by worn seal or burr on converter hub (cutting seal), worn bushing, missing oil return, oil in front pump housing or hole plugged. Check for leaks past O-ring seal on pump or past pump-to-case bolts; pump housing porous, oil coming out vent due to overfill or leak past front band shaft access plug. 11. Replace seal. 12. Replace converter. 13. Replace case.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NOISY OPERATION IN FOURTH GEAR ONLY	1. Overdrive Clutch Discs, Plates or Snap Rings Damaged.	1. Remove unit and rebuild clutch pack.
	2. Overdrive Piston or Planetary Thrust Bearing Damaged.	2. Remove and disassemble unit. Replace either thrust bearing if damaged.
	3. Output Shaft Bearings Scored/Damaged.	3. Remove and disassemble unit. Replace either bearing if damaged.
	4. Planetary Gears Worn/Chipped.	4. Remove and overhaul overdrive unit.
	5. Overdrive Unit Overrunning Clutch Rollers Worn/Scored.	5. Remove and overhaul overdrive unit.

SERVICE PROCEDURES

FLUID LEVEL CHECK

Transmission fluid level should be checked monthly under normal operation. If the vehicle is used for trailer towing or similar heavy load hauling, check fluid level and condition weekly. Fluid level is checked with the engine running at curb idle speed, the transmission in NEUTRAL and the transmission fluid at normal operating temperature.

FLUID LEVEL CHECK PROCEDURE

(1) Transmission fluid must be at normal operating temperature for accurate fluid level check. Drive vehicle if necessary to bring fluid temperature up to normal hot operating temperature of 82°C (180°F).

- (2) Position vehicle on level surface.
- (3) Start and run engine at curb idle speed.
- (4) Apply parking brakes.
- (5) Shift transmission momentarily into all gear ranges. Then shift transmission back to Neutral.
- (6) Clean top of filler tube and dipstick to keep dirt from entering tube.
- (7) Remove dipstick (Fig. 70) and check fluid level as follows:

- (a) Correct acceptable level is in crosshatch area.
- (b) Correct maximum level is to MAX arrow mark.
- (c) Incorrect level is at or below MIN line.
- (d) If fluid is low, add only enough Mopar® ATF Plus 3 to restore correct level. Do not overfill.

CAUTION: Do not overfill the transmission. Overfilling may cause leakage out the pump vent which can be mistaken for a pump seal leak. Overfilling will also cause fluid aeration and foaming as the excess fluid is picked up and churned by the gear train. This will significantly reduce fluid life.

FLUID AND FILTER REPLACEMENT

Refer to the Maintenance Schedules in Group 0, Lubrication and Maintenance, for proper service intervals. The service fluid fill after a filter change is approximately 3.8 liters (4.0 quarts).

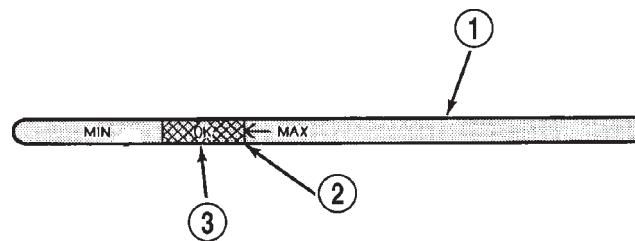


Fig. 70 Dipstick Fluid Level Marks—Typical

- 1 – DIPSTICK
2 – MAXIMUM CORRECT FLUID LEVEL
3 – ACCEPTABLE FLUID LEVEL

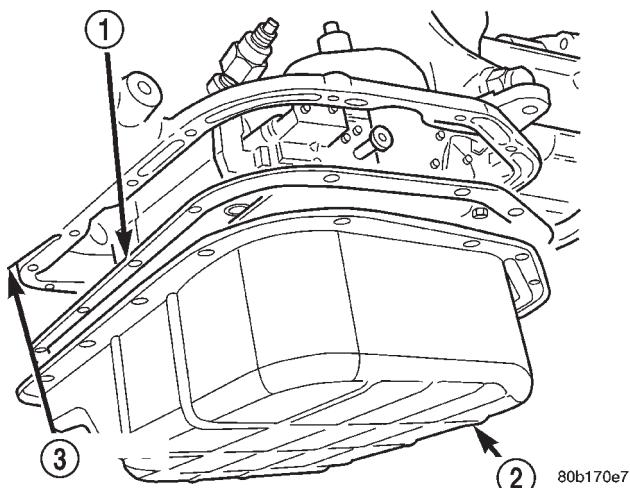
REMOVAL

- (1) Hoist and support vehicle on safety stands.
- (2) Place a large diameter shallow drain pan beneath the transmission pan.
- (3) Remove bolts holding front and sides of pan to transmission (Fig. 71).
- (4) Loosen bolts holding rear of pan to transmission.
- (5) Slowly separate front of pan away from transmission allowing the fluid to drain into drain pan.
- (6) Hold up pan and remove remaining bolt holding pan to transmission.
- (7) While holding pan level, lower pan away from transmission.
- (8) Pour remaining fluid in pan into drain pan.
- (9) Remove screws holding filter to valve body (Fig. 72).
- (10) Separate filter from valve body and pour fluid in filter into drain pan.
- (11) Dispose of used trans fluid and filter properly.

INSPECTION

Inspect bottom of pan and magnet for excessive amounts of metal. A light coating of clutch or band material on the bottom of the pan does not indicate a problem unless accompanied by slipping condition or shift lag. If fluid and pan are contaminated with excessive amounts or debris, refer to the diagnosis section of this group.

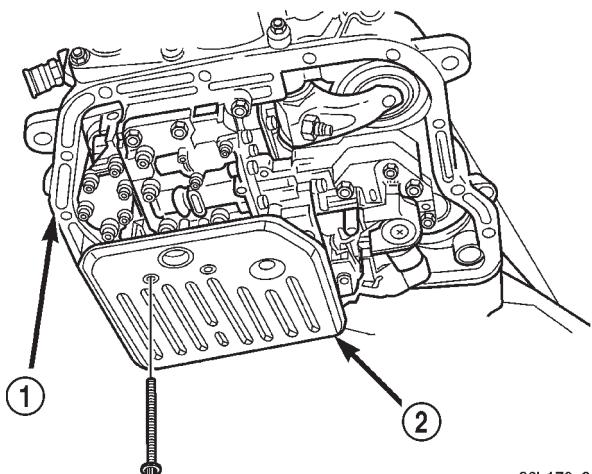
SERVICE PROCEDURES (Continued)

**Fig. 71 Transmission Pan—Typical**

1 – GASKET

2 – PAN

3 – TRANSMISSION

**Fig. 72 Transmission Filter—Typical**

1 – TRANSMISSION

2 – FILTER

Check the adjustment of the front and rear bands, adjust if necessary.

CLEANING

- (1) Using a suitable solvent, clean pan and magnet.
- (2) Using a suitable gasket scraper, clean gasket material from gasket surface of transmission case and the gasket flange around the pan.

INSTALLATION

- (1) Place replacement filter in position on valve body.
- (2) Install screws to hold filter to valve body (Fig. 72). Tighten screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.
- (3) Place new gasket in position on pan and install pan on transmission.

- (4) Place pan in position on transmission.

- (5) Install screws to hold pan to transmission (Fig. 71). Tighten bolts to 17 N·m (150 in. lbs.) torque.

- (6) Lower vehicle and fill transmission with Mopar® ATF Plus 3, type 7176 fluid.

TRANSMISSION FILL PROCEDURE

To avoid overfilling transmission after a fluid change or overhaul, perform the following procedure:

- (1) Remove dipstick and insert clean funnel in transmission fill tube.

- (2) Add following initial quantity of Mopar® ATF Plus 3 to transmission:

- (a) If only fluid and filter were changed, add **3 pints (1-1/2 quarts)** of ATF Plus 3 to transmission.

- (b) If transmission was completely overhauled, torque converter was replaced or drained, and cooler was flushed, add **12 pints (6 quarts)** of ATF Plus 3 to transmission.

- (3) Apply parking brakes.

- (4) Start and run engine at normal curb idle speed.

- (5) Apply service brakes, shift transmission through all gear ranges then back to NEUTRAL, set parking brake, and leave engine running at curb idle speed.

- (6) Remove funnel, insert dipstick and check fluid level. If level is low, **add fluid to bring level to MIN mark on dipstick**. Check to see if the oil level is equal on both sides of the dipstick. If one side is noticeably higher than the other, the dipstick has picked up some oil from the dipstick tube. Allow the oil to drain down the dipstick tube and re-check.

- (7) Drive vehicle until transmission fluid is at normal operating temperature.

- (8) With the engine running at curb idle speed, the gear selector in NEUTRAL, and the parking brake applied, check the transmission fluid level.

CAUTION: Do not overfill transmission, fluid foaming and shifting problems can result.

- (9) Add fluid to bring level up to MAX arrow mark.

When fluid level is correct, shut engine off, release park brake, remove funnel, and install dipstick in fill tube.

CONVERTER DRAINBACK CHECK VALVE SERVICE

The converter drainback check valve is located in the cooler outlet (pressure) line near the radiator tank. The valve prevents fluid drainback when the vehicle is parked for lengthy periods. The valve check ball is spring loaded and has an opening pressure of approximately 2 psi.

SERVICE PROCEDURES (Continued)

The valve is serviced as an assembly; it is not repairable. Do not clean the valve if restricted, or contaminated by sludge, or debris. If the valve fails, or if a transmission malfunction occurs that generates significant amounts of sludge and/or clutch particles and metal shavings, the valve must be replaced.

The valve must be removed whenever the cooler and lines are reverse flushed. The valve can be flow tested when necessary. The procedure is exactly the same as for flow testing a cooler.

If the valve is restricted, installed backwards, or in the wrong line, it will cause an overheating condition and possible transmission failure.

CAUTION: The drainback valve is a one-way flow device. It must be properly oriented in terms of flow direction for the cooler to function properly. The valve must be installed in the pressure line. Otherwise flow will be blocked and would cause an overheating condition and eventual transmission failure.

OIL PUMP VOLUME CHECK

Measuring the oil pump output volume will determine if sufficient oil flow to the transmission oil cooler exists, and whether or not an internal transmission failure is present.

Verify that the transmission fluid is at the proper level. Refer to the Fluid Level Check procedure in this section. If necessary, fill the transmission to the proper level with Mopar® ATF+3, type 7176, Automatic Transmission Fluid.

(1) Disconnect the **To cooler** line at the cooler inlet and place a collecting container under the disconnected line.

CAUTION: With the fluid set at the proper level, fluid collection should not exceed (1) quart or internal damage to the transmission may occur.

(2) Run the engine **at curb idle speed**, with the shift selector in neutral.

(3) If one quart of transmission fluid is collected in the container in 20 seconds or less, oil pump flow volume is within acceptable limits. If fluid flow is intermittent, or it takes more than 20 seconds to collect one quart of fluid, refer to the Hydraulic Pressure tests in this section for further diagnosis.

(4) Re-connect the **To cooler** line to the transmission cooler inlet.

(5) Refill the transmission to proper level.

FLUSHING COOLERS AND TUBES

When a transmission failure has contaminated the fluid, the oil cooler(s) must be flushed. The torque converter must also be replaced. This will insure that

metal particles or sludged oil are not later transferred back into the reconditioned (or replaced) transmission.

The only recommended procedure for flushing coolers and lines is to use Tool 6906A Cooler Flusher.

WARNING: WEAR PROTECTIVE EYEWEAR THAT MEETS THE REQUIREMENTS OF OSHA AND ANSI Z87.1-1968. WEAR STANDARD INDUSTRIAL RUBBER GLOVES.

KEEP LIGHTED CIGARETTES, SPARKS, FLAMES, AND OTHER IGNITION SOURCES AWAY FROM THE AREA TO PREVENT THE IGNITION OF COMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS AND GASES. KEEP A CLASS (B) FIRE EXTINGUISHER IN THE AREA WHERE THE FLUSHER WILL BE USED.

KEEP THE AREA WELL VENTILATED.

DO NOT LET FLUSHING SOLVENT COME IN CONTACT WITH YOUR EYES OR SKIN: IF EYE CONTAMINATION OCCURS, FLUSH EYES WITH WATER FOR 15 TO 20 SECONDS. REMOVE CONTAMINATED CLOTHING AND WASH AFFECTED SKIN WITH SOAP AND WATER. SEEK MEDICAL ATTENTION.

COOLER FLUSH USING TOOL 6906A

(1) Remove cover plate filler plug on Tool 6906A. Fill reservoir 1/2 to 3/4 full of fresh flushing solution. Flushing solvents are petroleum based solutions generally used to clean automatic transmission components. **DO NOT** use solvents containing acids, water, gasoline, or any other corrosive liquids.

(2) Reinstall filler plug on Tool 6906A.

(3) Verify pump power switch is turned OFF. Connect red alligator clip to positive (+) battery post. Connect black (-) alligator clip to a good ground.

(4) Disconnect the cooler lines at the transmission.

NOTE: When flushing transmission cooler and lines, **ALWAYS** reverse flush.

NOTE: The converter drainback valve must be removed and an appropriate replacement hose installed to bridge the space between the transmission cooler line and the cooler fitting. Failure to remove the drainback valve will prevent reverse flushing the system. A suitable replacement hose can be found in the adapter kit supplied with the flushing tool.

(5) Connect the BLUE pressure line to the OUTLET (From) cooler line.

(6) Connect the CLEAR return line to the INLET (To) cooler line

(7) Turn pump ON for two to three minutes to flush cooler(s) and lines.

(8) Turn pump OFF.

SERVICE PROCEDURES (Continued)

(9) Disconnect CLEAR suction line from reservoir at cover plate. Disconnect CLEAR return line at cover plate, and place it in a drain pan.

(10) Turn pump ON for 30 seconds to purge flushing solution from cooler and lines. Turn pump OFF.

(11) Place CLEAR suction line into a one quart container of Mopar® ATF Plus 3, type 7176 automatic transmission fluid.

(12) Turn pump ON until all transmission fluid is removed from the one quart container and lines. This purges any residual cleaning solvent from the transmission cooler and lines. Turn pump OFF.

(13) Disconnect alligator clips from battery. Reconnect flusher lines to cover plate, and remove flushing adapters from cooler lines.

ALUMINUM THREAD REPAIR

Damaged or worn threads in the aluminum transmission case and valve body can be repaired by the use of Heli-Coils, or equivalent. This repair consists of drilling out the worn-out damaged threads. Then tap the hole with a special Heli-Coil tap, or equivalent, and installing a Heli-Coil insert, or equivalent, into the hole. This brings the hole back to its original thread size.

Heli-Coil, or equivalent, tools and inserts are readily available from most automotive parts suppliers.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION

TRANSMISSION

The overdrive unit can be removed and serviced separately. It is not necessary to remove the entire transmission assembly to perform overdrive unit repairs.

CAUTION: The transmission and torque converter must be removed as an assembly to avoid component damage. The converter drive plate, pump bushing, or oil seal can be damaged if the converter is left attached to the driveplate during removal.

REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect battery negative cable.
- (2) Hoist and support vehicle.
- (3) Remove skid plate, if equipped.
- (4) Remove skid plate support crossmember, if equipped.
- (5) Disconnect and lower or remove necessary exhaust components.
- (6) Remove starter motor.

(7) Support engine with suitable support stand and wood block.

(8) Remove bolts attaching engine-to-transmission brackets to transmission.

(9) Remove bolt and nut attaching each engine-to-transmission bracket to the motor mounts.

(10) Remove bolts holding the engine-to-transmission brackets to the front axle, if equipped.

(11) Loosen bolts attaching engine-to-transmission brackets to each side of the engine block.

(12) Raise engine slightly.

(13) Remove torque converter access cover.

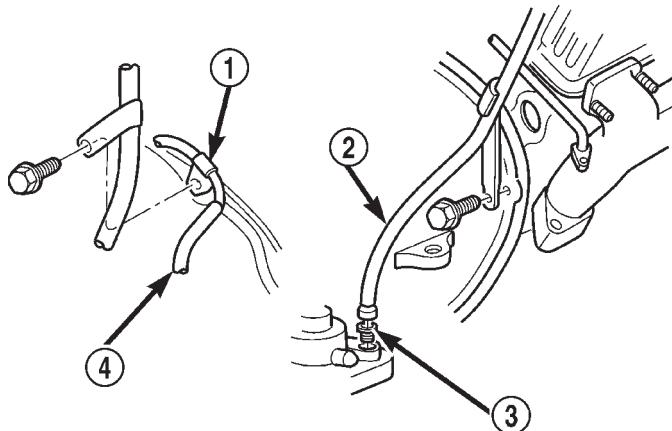
(14) Tighten bolts attaching engine-to-transmission brackets to each side of the engine block.

(15) Lower engine.

(16) Disconnect fluid cooler lines at transmission.

(17) If transmission is being removed for overhaul, remove transmission oil pan, drain fluid and reinstall pan.

(18) Remove fill tube bracket bolts and pull tube out of transmission. Retain fill tube seal. On 4 x 4 models, it will also be necessary to remove bolt attaching transfer case vent tube to converter housing (Fig. 73).



80b170f3

Fig. 73 Fill Tube Attachment

1 – TRANSFER CASE VENT TUBE

2 – FILL TUBE (V8)

3 – TUBE SEAL

4 – FILL TUBE (V6)

(19) Rotate crankshaft in clockwise direction until converter bolts are accessible. Then remove bolts one at a time. Rotate crankshaft with socket wrench on dampener bolt.

(20) Mark propeller shaft and axle companion flanges for assembly alignment. Then disconnect and remove propeller shaft.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

(21) Disconnect wires from park/neutral position switch and transmission solenoid.

(22) Disconnect throttle valve cable from transmission bracket and throttle valve lever.

(23) On 4 x 4 models, disconnect shift rod from transfer case shift lever. Or remove shift lever from transfer case and tie rod and lever to chassis component with wire.

(24) Raise transmission slightly with service jack to relieve load on crossmember and supports.

(25) Remove bolts securing rear support and cushion to transmission and crossmember. Raise transmission slightly, slide exhaust hanger arm from bracket (Fig. 74) and remove rear support.

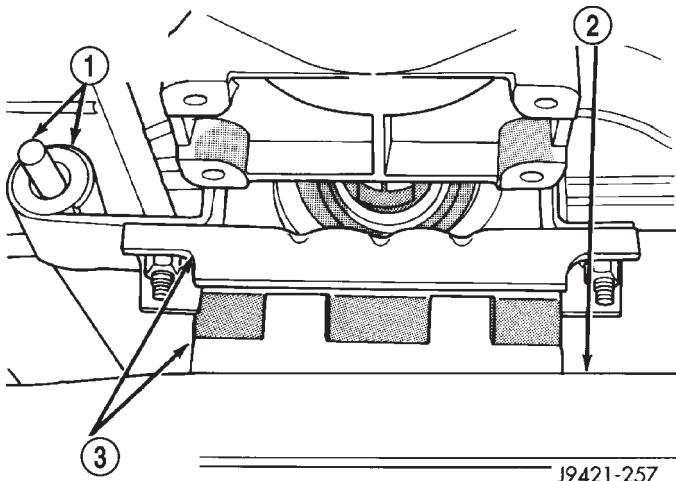


Fig. 74 Rear Support Cushion

1 – EXHAUST PIPE ARM AND BRACKET

2 – CROSMEMBER

3 – REAR SUPPORT AND CUSHION

(26) Remove bolts attaching crossmember to frame and remove crossmember.

(27) On 4 x 4 models, disconnect vent hose from transfer case. Then remove transfer case with transmission jack or aid of helper.

(28) Remove all converter housing bolts.

(29) Carefully work transmission and torque converter assembly rearward off engine block dowels.

(30) Lower transmission and remove assembly from under the vehicle.

INSTALLATION

(1) Check torque converter hub and hub drive notches for sharp edges burrs, scratches, or nicks. Polish the hub and notches with 320/400 grit paper and crocus cloth if necessary. The hub must be smooth to avoid damaging pump seal at installation.

(2) Lubricate oil pump seal lip with transmission fluid.

(3) Lubricate converter pilot hub pocket in the rear of the crankshaft with a light coating of Mopar® High Temp Grease.

(4) Align and install converter in oil pump.

(5) Carefully insert converter in oil pump. Then rotate converter back and forth until fully seated in pump gears.

(6) Check converter seating with steel scale and straightedge (Fig. 75). Surface of converter lugs should be 1/2 in. to rear of straightedge when converter is fully seated.

(7) Temporarily secure converter with wedge tool or C-clamp.

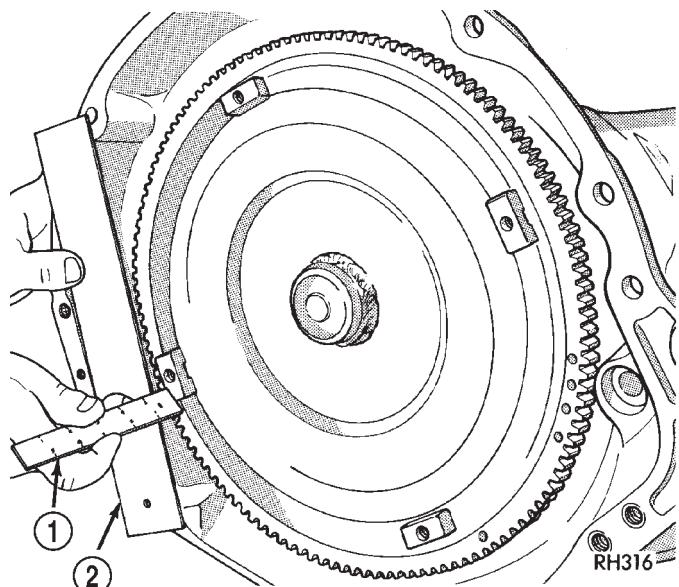


Fig. 75 Typical Method Of Checking Converter Seating

1 – SCALE

2 – STRAIGHTEDGE

(8) Position transmission on jack and secure it with chains.

(9) Check condition of converter driveplate. Replace the plate if cracked, distorted or damaged. **Also be sure transmission dowel pins are seated in engine block and protrude far enough to hold transmission in alignment.**

(10) Raise transmission and align converter with drive plate and converter housing with engine block.

(11) Move transmission forward. Then raise, lower or tilt transmission to align converter housing with engine block dowels.

(12) Carefully work transmission forward and over engine block dowels until converter hub is seated in crankshaft.

(13) Install bolts attaching converter housing to engine.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

(14) Install rear support. Then lower transmission onto crossmember and install bolts attaching transmission mount to crossmember.

(15) Install new plastic retainer grommet on any shift linkage rod or lever that was disconnected. Grommets should not be reused.

(16) Connect gearshift and throttle cable to transmission.

(17) Connect wires to park/neutral position switch, transmission solenoid(s) and oxygen sensor. Be sure transmission harnesses are properly routed.

CAUTION: It is essential that correct length bolts be used to attach the converter to the driveplate. Bolts that are too long will damage the clutch surface inside the converter.

(18) Install torque converter-to-driveplate bolts. Tighten bolts to 31 N·m (270 in. lbs.).

(19) Raise engine slightly.

(20) Loosen bolts attaching engine-to-transmission brackets to each side of the engine block.

(21) Install converter housing access cover.

(22) Install bolts attaching engine-to-transmission brackets to transmission.

(23) Tighten bolts attaching engine-to-transmission brackets to each side of the engine block.

(24) Lower engine.

(25) Install bolt and nut attaching each engine-to-transmission bracket to the motor mounts.

(26) Remove engine support.

(27) Install bolts to hold engine-to-transmission brackets to the front axle, if equipped.

(28) Install starter motor and cooler line bracket.

(29) Connect cooler lines to transmission.

(30) Install transmission fill tube. Install new seal on tube before installation.

(31) Install exhaust components.

(32) Install transfer case, if necessary.

(33) Align and connect propeller shaft(s).

(34) Install rear skid plate, if equipped.

(35) Adjust gearshift linkage and throttle valve cable if necessary.

(36) Install front skid plate, if equipped.

(37) Lower vehicle.

(38) Fill transmission with Mopar® ATF Plus 3, Type 7176 fluid.

TORQUE CONVERTER

REMOVAL

(1) Remove transmission and torque converter from vehicle.

(2) Place a suitable drain pan under the converter housing end of the transmission.

CAUTION: Verify that transmission is secure on the lifting device or work surface, the center of gravity of the transmission will shift when the torque converter is removed creating an unstable condition.

The torque converter is a heavy unit. Use caution when separating the torque converter from the transmission.

(3) Pull the torque converter forward until the center hub clears the oil pump seal.

(4) Separate the torque converter from the transmission.

INSTALLATION

Check converter hub and drive notches for sharp edges, burrs, scratches, or nicks. Polish the hub and notches with 320/400 grit paper or crocus cloth if necessary. The hub must be smooth to avoid damaging the pump seal at installation.

(1) Lubricate oil pump seal lip with transmission fluid.

(2) Place torque converter in position on transmission.

CAUTION: Do not damage oil pump seal or bushing while inserting torque converter into the front of the transmission.

(3) Align torque converter to oil pump seal opening.

(4) Insert torque converter hub into oil pump.

(5) While pushing torque converter inward, rotate converter until converter is fully seated in the oil pump gears.

(6) Check converter seating with a scale and straightedge (Fig. 76). Surface of converter lugs should be 1/2 in. to rear of straightedge when converter is fully seated.

(7) If necessary, temporarily secure converter with C-clamp attached to the converter housing.

(8) Install the transmission in the vehicle.

(9) Fill the transmission with the recommended fluid.

YOKE SEAL REPLACEMENT

REMOVAL

(1) Raise vehicle.

(2) Mark propeller shaft and axle companion flange for alignment reference.

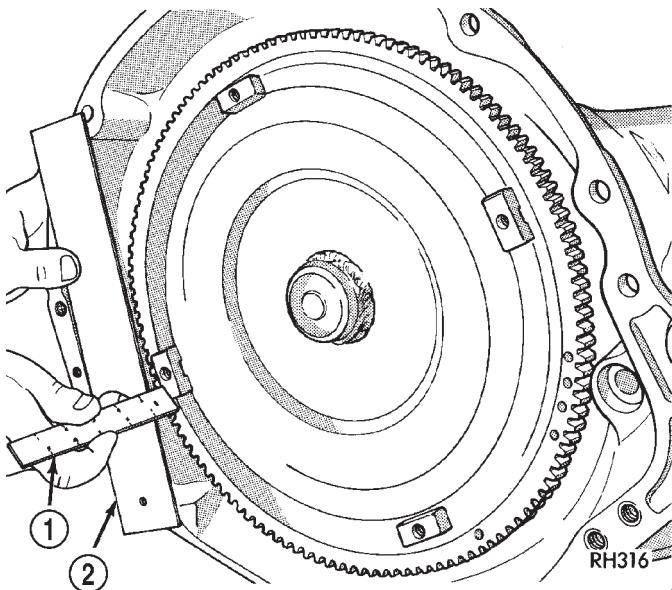
(3) Disconnect and remove propeller shaft.

(4) Remove old seal with Seal Remover C-3985-B (Fig. 77) from overdrive housing.

INSTALLATION

(1) Place seal in position on overdrive housing.

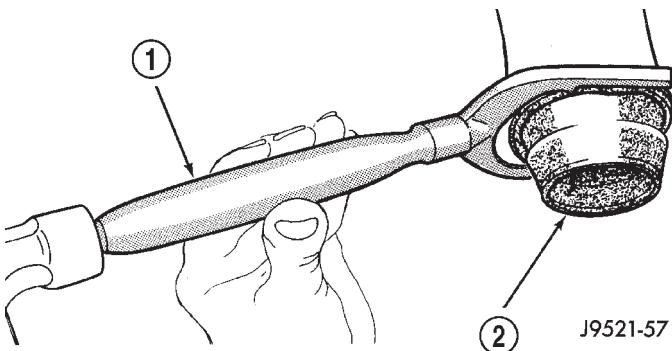
REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

**Fig. 76 Checking Torque Converter Seating**

- 1 – SCALE
2 – STRAIGHTEDGE

(2) Drive seal into overdrive housing with Seal Installer C-3995-A (Fig. 78).

(3) Carefully guide propeller shaft slip yoke into housing and onto output shaft splines. Align marks made at removal and connect propeller shaft to rear axle companion flange.

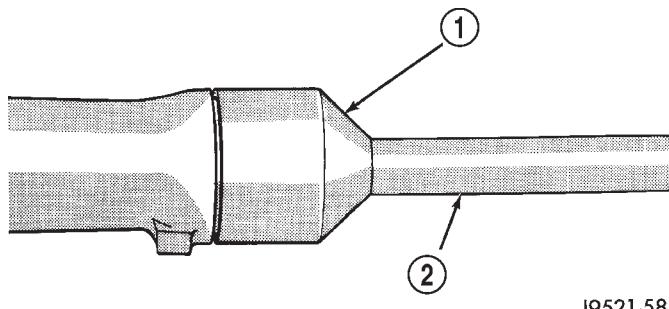
**Fig. 77 Removing Overdrive Housing Yoke Seal**

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3985-B
2 – SEAL

PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH**REMOVAL**

(1) Raise vehicle and position drain pan under switch.

- (2) Disconnect switch wires.
(3) Remove switch from case.



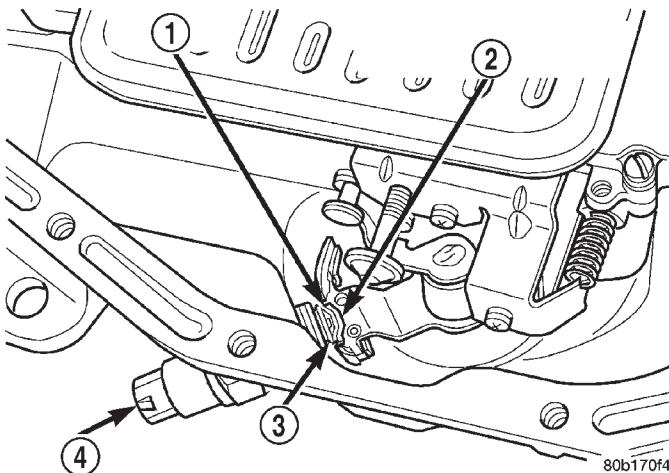
J9521-58

Fig. 78 Installing Overdrive Housing Yoke Seal

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3995-A OR C-3972-A
2 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4471

INSTALLATION

(1) Move shift lever to Park and Neutral positions. Verify that switch operating lever fingers are centered in switch opening in case (Fig. 79).

**Fig. 79 Park/Neutral Position Switch**

- 1 – NEUTRAL CONTACT
2 – MANUAL LEVER AND SWITCH PLUNGER IN REVERSE POSITION
3 – PARK CONTACT
4 – SWITCH

(2) Install new seal on switch and install switch in case. Tighten switch to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.) torque.

(3) Test continuity of new switch with 12V test lamp.

- (4) Connect switch wires and lower vehicle.
(5) Top off transmission fluid level.

GEARSHIFT CABLE**REMOVAL**

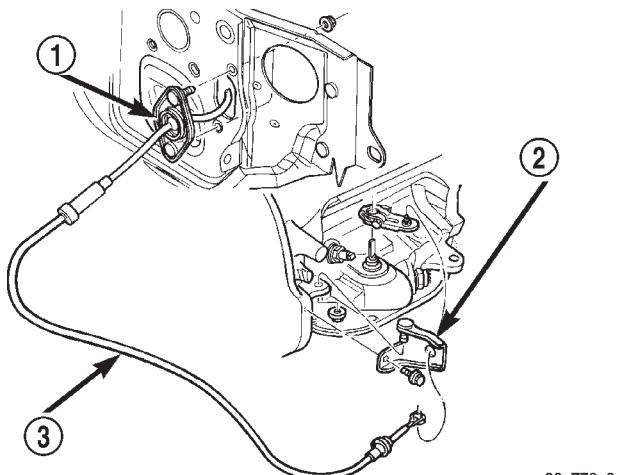
- (1) Shift transmission into Park.
(2) Remove nuts retaining the shift cable housing to the dash panel (Fig. 80).

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

(3) Disconnect cable at lower column lever and feed cable through dash panel opening to underside of vehicle (Fig. 81).

(4) Raise vehicle.

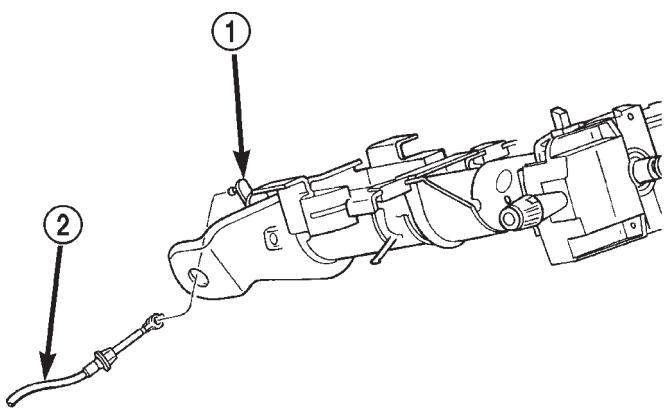
(5) Disengage cable eyelet at transmission shift lever and pull cable adjuster out of mounting bracket (Fig. 82). Remove old cable from vehicle.



80a773e9

Fig. 80 Cable Mounting

- 1 – CABLE MOUNTING
- 2 – CABLE BRACKET AT TRANS.
- 3 – GEARSHIFT CABLE



80a773ea

Fig. 81 Cable at Gearshift Lever

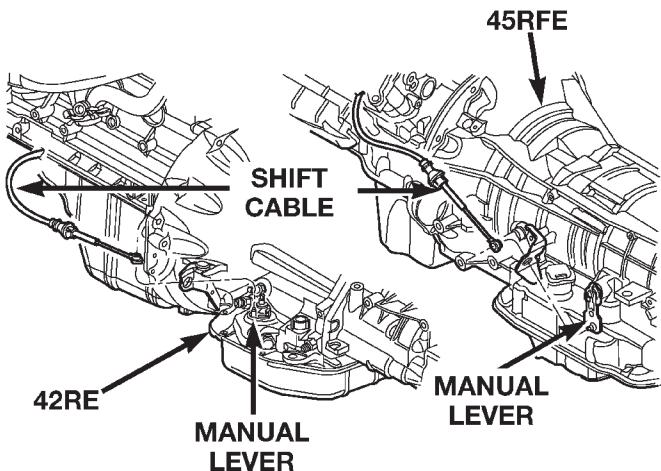
- 1 – GEARSHIFT LEVER
- 2 – GEARSHIFT CABLE

INSTALLATION

(1) Snap the cable into the transmission bracket so the retaining ears are engaged and connect cable end fitting onto the manual control lever ball stud.

(2) Lower vehicle.

(3) Route cable through hole in dash panel. Seat cable bracket to dash panel. Install retaining nuts to cable housing bracket studs inside the vehicle at the dash panel.



80ba79c4

Fig. 82 Shift Cable at the Transmission

(4) Place the auto transmission manual shift control lever in "Park" detent (rearmost) position and rotate prop shaft to ensure transmission is in park.

(5) Connect shift cable to shifter lever by snapping cable retaining ears into shifter bracket and press cable end fitting into lever.

(6) Check for proper operation of Park/Neutral switch.

(7) If the gearshift cable is out of adjustment, refer to Adjustments section.

GOVERNOR SOLENOID AND PRESSURE SENSOR

REMOVAL

(1) Hoist and support vehicle on safety stands.

(2) Remove transmission fluid pan and filter.

(3) Disengage wire connectors from pressure sensor and solenoid (Fig. 83).

(4) Remove screws holding pressure solenoid retainer to governor body.

(5) Separate solenoid retainer from governor (Fig. 84).

(6) Pull solenoid from governor body (Fig. 85).

(7) Pull pressure sensor from governor body.

(8) Remove bolts holding governor body to valve body.

(9) Separate governor body from valve body (Fig. 86).

(10) Remove governor body gasket.

INSTALLATION

Before installing the pressure sensor and solenoid in the governor body, replace O-ring seals, clean the gasket surfaces and replace gasket.

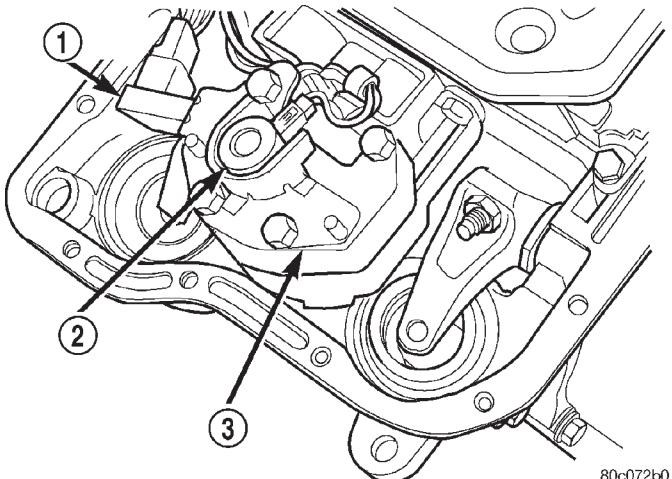
(1) Place gasket in position on back of governor body (Fig. 86).

(2) Place governor body in position on valve body.

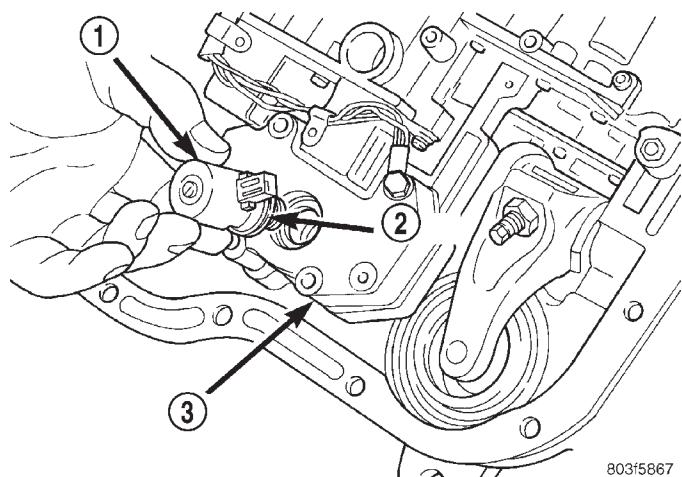
(3) Install bolts to hold governor body to valve body.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

- (4) Lubricate O-ring on pressure sensor with transmission fluid.
- (5) Align pressure sensor to bore in governor body.
- (6) Push pressure sensor into governor body.
- (7) Lubricate O-ring, on pressure solenoid, with transmission fluid.
- (8) Align pressure solenoid to bore in governor body (Fig. 85).
- (9) Push solenoid into governor body.
- (10) Place solenoid retainer in position on governor (Fig. 84).
- (11) Install screws to hold pressure solenoid retainer to governor body.
- (12) Engage wire connectors into pressure sensor and solenoid (Fig. 83).
- (13) Install transmission fluid pan and (new) filter.
- (14) Lower vehicle and road test to verify repair.

**Fig. 83 Governor Solenoid And Pressure Sensor**

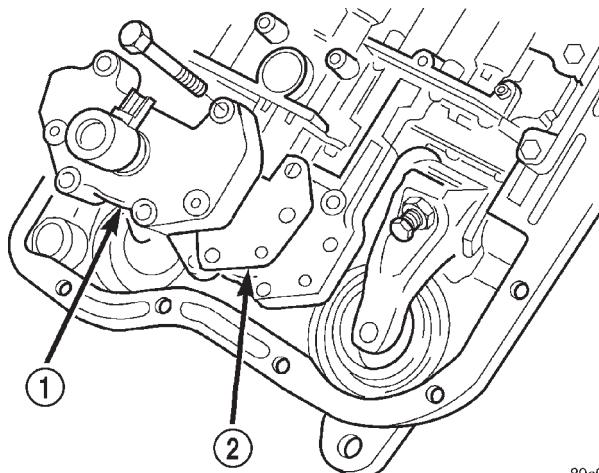
- 1 – PRESSURE SENSOR
2 – PRESSURE SOLENOID
3 – GOVERNOR



803f5867

Fig. 85 Pressure Solenoid and O-ring

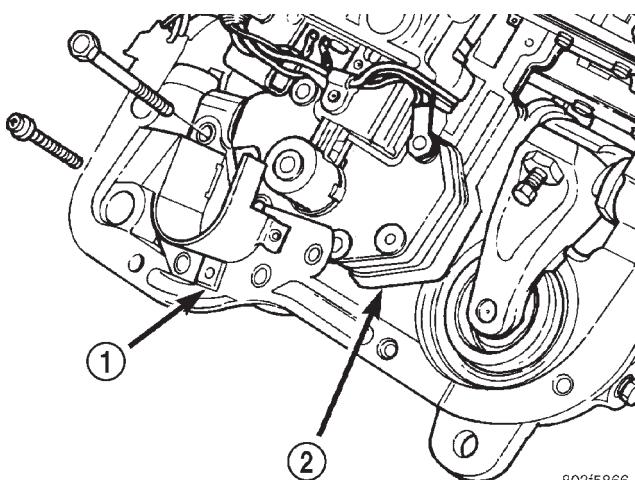
- 1 – PRESSURE SOLENOID
2 – O-RING
3 – GOVERNOR



80c072b1

Fig. 86 Governor Body and Gasket

- 1 – GOVERNOR BODY
2 – GASKET



803f5866

Fig. 84 Pressure Solenoid Retainer

- 1 – PRESSURE SOLENOID RETAINER
2 – GOVERNOR

VALVE BODY

The valve body can be removed for service without having to remove the transmission assembly.

The valve body can be disassembled for cleaning and inspection of the individual components. Refer to Disassembly and Assembly section for proper procedures.

The only replaceable valve body components are:

- Manual lever.
- Manual lever washer, seal, E-clip, and shaft seal.
- Manual lever detent ball.
- Throttle lever.
- Fluid filter.
- Pressure adjusting screw bracket.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

- Governor pressure solenoid.
- Governor pressure sensor (includes transmission temperature thermistor).
- Converter clutch/overdrive solenoid assembly and harness.
- Governor housing gasket.
- Solenoid case connector O-rings.

The remaining valve body components are serviced only as part of a complete valve body assembly.

REMOVAL

- (1) Shift transmission into NEUTRAL.
- (2) Raise vehicle.
- (3) Remove gearshift and throttle levers from shaft of valve body manual lever.
- (4) Disconnect wires at solenoid case connector (Fig. 87).
- (5) Position drain pan under transmission oil pan.
- (6) Remove transmission oil pan and gasket.
- (7) Remove fluid filter from valve body.
- (8) Remove bolts attaching valve body to transmission case.
- (9) Lower valve body enough to remove accumulator piston and springs.
- (10) Work manual lever shaft and electrical connector out of transmission case.
- (11) Lower valve body, rotate valve body away from case, pull park rod out of sprag, and remove valve body (Fig. 88).

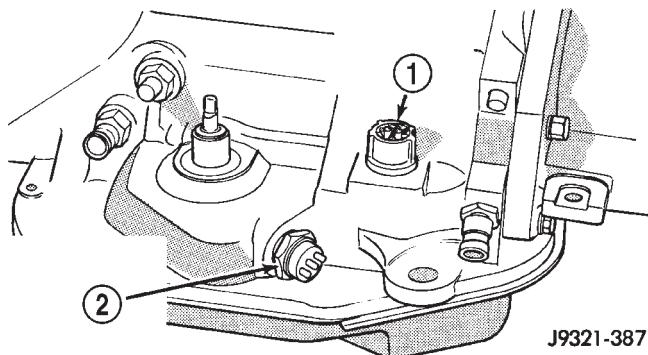
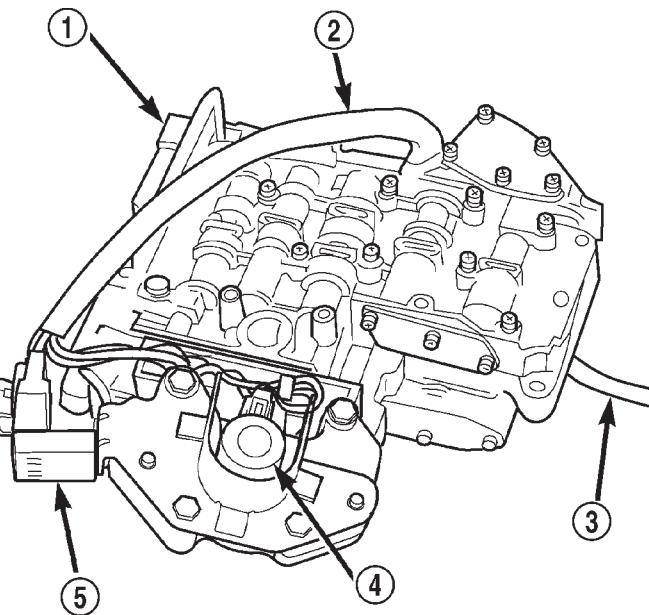


Fig. 87 Transmission Case Connector

- 1 – SOLENOID CASE CONNECTOR
2 – PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH CONNECTOR TERMINAL

INSTALLATION

- (1) Check condition of O-ring seals on valve body harness connector (Fig. 89). Replace seals on connector body if cut or worn.
- (2) Check condition of manual lever shaft seal in transmission case. Replace seal if lip is cut or worn. Install new seal with 15/16 deep well socket (Fig. 90).
- (3) Check condition of seals on accumulator piston (Fig. 91). Install new piston seals, if necessary.



80c072b2

Fig. 88 Valve Body

- 1 – VALVE BODY
2 – WIRE HARNESS
3 – PARK ROD
4 – GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID
5 – GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR

(4) Place valve body manual lever in low (1 position) so ball on park lock rod will be easier to install in sprag.

(5) Lubricate shaft of manual lever with petroleum jelly. This will ease inserting shaft through seal in case.

(6) Lubricate seal rings on valve body harness connector with petroleum jelly.

(7) Position valve body in case and work end of park lock rod into and through pawl sprag. Turn propeller shaft to align sprag and park lock teeth if necessary. The rod will click as it enters pawl. Move rod to check engagement.

CAUTION: It is possible for the park rod to displace into a cavity just above the pawl sprag during installation. Make sure the rod is actually engaged in the pawl and has not displaced into this cavity.

(8) Install accumulator springs and piston into case. Then swing valve body over piston and outer spring to hold it in place.

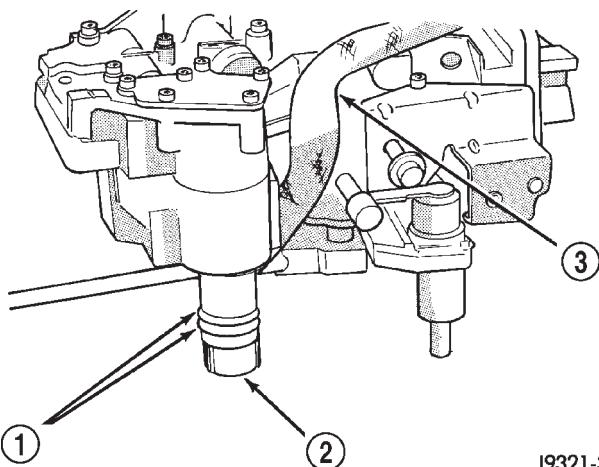
(9) Align accumulator piston and outer spring, manual lever shaft and electrical connector in case.

(10) Then seat valve body in case and install one or two bolts to hold valve body in place.

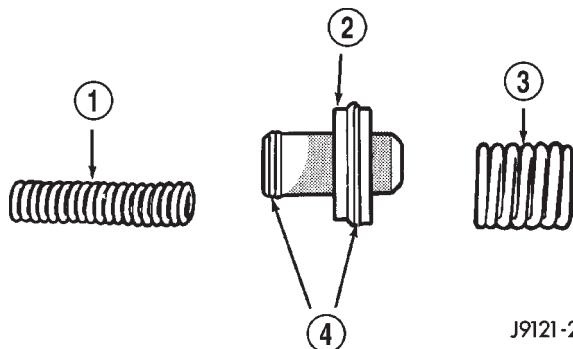
(11) Tighten valve body bolts alternately and evenly to 11 N·m (100 in. lbs.) torque.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

- (12) Install new fluid filter on valve body. Tighten filter screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.
- (13) Install throttle and gearshift levers on valve body manual lever shaft.
- (14) Check and adjust front and rear bands if necessary.
- (15) Connect solenoid case connector wires.
- (16) Install oil pan and new gasket. Tighten pan bolts to 17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (17) Lower vehicle and fill transmission with Mopar® ATF Plus 3, type 7176 fluid.
- (18) Check and adjust gearshift and throttle valve cables, if necessary.

**Fig. 89 Valve Body Harness Connector O-Ring Seal**

- 1 – CONNECTOR O-RINGS
2 – VALVE BODY HARNESS CONNECTOR
3 – HARNESS

**Fig. 91 Accumulator Piston Components**

- 1 – INNER SPRING
2 – ACCUMULATOR PISTON
3 – OUTER SPRING
4 – SEAL RINGS

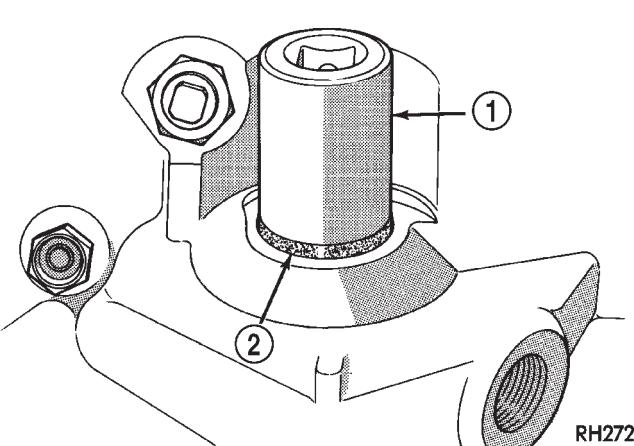
OVERDRIVE UNIT

REMOVAL

- (1) Shift transmission into Park.
- (2) Raise vehicle.
- (3) Remove transfer case, if equipped.
- (4) Mark propeller shaft universal joint(s) and axle pinion yoke, or the companion flange and flange yoke, for alignment reference at installation, if necessary.
- (5) Disconnect and remove the rear propeller shaft, if necessary.
- (6) Remove transmission oil pan, remove gasket, drain oil and reinstall pan.
- (7) If overdrive unit had malfunctioned, or if fluid is contaminated, remove entire transmission. If diagnosis indicated overdrive problems only, remove just the overdrive unit.
- (8) Support transmission with transmission jack.
- (9) Remove vehicle speed sensor.
- (10) Remove bolts attaching overdrive unit to transmission (Fig. 92).

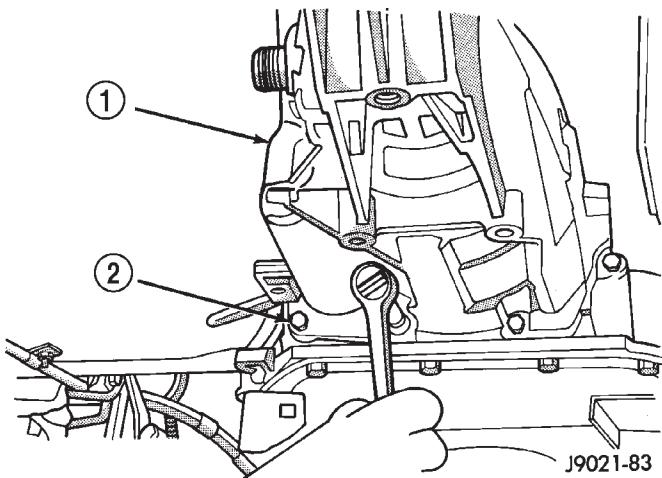
CAUTION: Support the overdrive unit with a jack before moving it rearward. This is necessary to prevent damaging the intermediate shaft. Do not allow the shaft to support the entire weight of the overdrive unit.

- (11) Carefully work overdrive unit off intermediate shaft. Do not tilt unit during removal. Keep it as level as possible.
- (12) If overdrive unit does not require service, immediately insert Alignment Tool 6227-2 in splines of planetary gear and overrunning clutch to prevent splines from rotating out of alignment. If misalignment occurs, overdrive unit will have to be disassembled in order to realign splines.

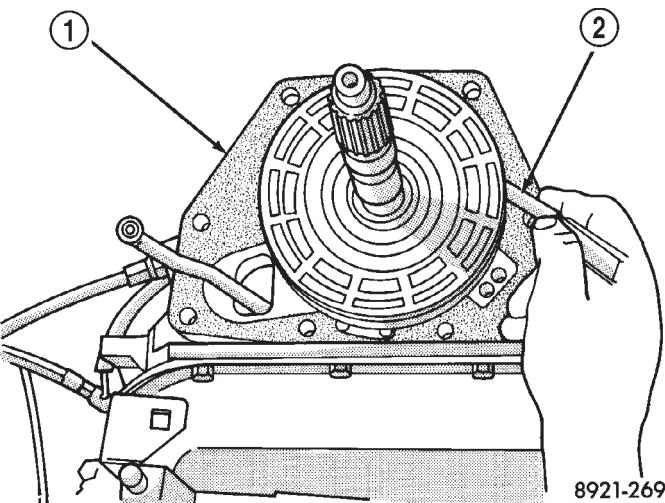
**Fig. 90 Manual Lever Shaft Seal**

- 1 – 15/16" SOCKET
2 – SEAL

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

**Fig. 92 Overdrive Unit Bolts**

1 – OVERDRIVE UNIT
2 – ATTACHING BOLTS (7)

**Fig. 93 Trimming Overdrive Case Gasket**

1 – GASKET
2 – SHARP KNIFE

(13) Remove and retain overdrive piston thrust bearing. Bearing may remain on piston or in clutch hub during removal.

(14) Position drain pan on workbench.

(15) Place overdrive unit over drain pan. Tilt unit to drain residual fluid from case.

(16) Examine fluid for clutch material or metal fragments. If fluid contains these items, overhaul will be necessary.

(17) If overdrive unit does not require any service, leave alignment tool in position. Tool will prevent accidental misalignment of planetary gear and overrunning clutch splines.

INSTALLATION

(1) Be sure overdrive unit Alignment Tool 6227-2 is fully seated before moving unit. If tool is not seated and gear splines rotate out of alignment, overdrive unit will have to be disassembled in order to realign splines.

(2) If overdrive piston retainer was not removed during service and original case gasket is no longer reusable, prepare new gasket by trimming it.

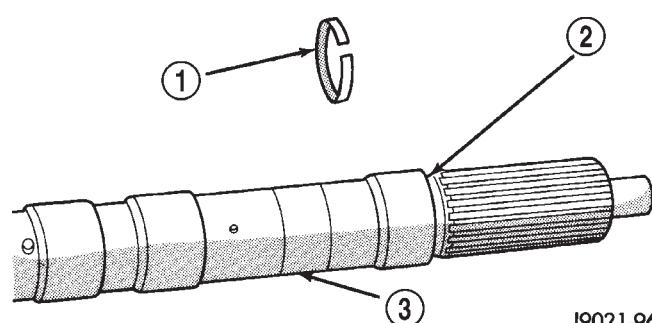
(3) Cut out old case gasket around piston retainer with razor knife (Fig. 93).

(4) Use old gasket as template and trim new gasket to fit.

(5) Position new gasket over piston retainer and on transmission case. Use petroleum jelly to hold gasket in place if necessary. Do not use any type of sealer to secure gasket. Use petroleum jelly only.

(6) Install selective spacer on intermediate shaft, if removed. Spacer goes in groove just rearward of shaft rear splines (Fig. 94).

(7) Install thrust bearing in overdrive unit sliding hub. Use petroleum jelly to hold bearing in position.

**Fig. 94 Intermediate Shaft Selective Spacer Location**

1 – SELECTIVE SPACER
2 – SPACER GROOVE
3 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT

CAUTION: Be sure the shoulder on the inside diameter of the bearing is facing forward.

(8) Verify that splines in overdrive planetary gear and overrunning clutch hub are aligned with Alignment Tool 6227-2. Overdrive unit cannot be installed if splines are not aligned. If splines have rotated out of alignment, unit will have to be disassembled to realign splines.

(9) Carefully slide Alignment Tool 6227-2 out of overdrive planetary gear and overrunning clutch splines.

(10) Raise overdrive unit and carefully slide it straight onto intermediate shaft. Insert park rod into park lock reaction plug at same time. Avoid tilting overdrive during installation as this could cause planetary gear and overrunning clutch splines to rotate out of alignment. If this occurs, it will be necessary to remove and disassemble overdrive unit to realign splines.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

(11) Work overdrive unit forward on intermediate shaft until seated against transmission case.

(12) Install bolts attaching overdrive unit to transmission unit. Tighten bolts in diagonal pattern to 34 N·m (25 ft-lbs).

(13) Install speed sensor.

(14) Connect speed sensor and overdrive wires.

(15) Install the transfer case, if equipped.

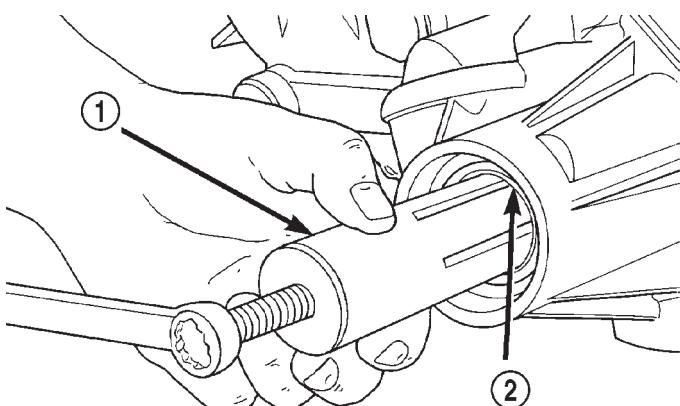
(16) Align and install rear propeller shaft, if necessary.

OVERDRIVE HOUSING BUSHING

REMOVAL

(1) Remove overdrive housing yoke seal.

(2) Insert Remover 6957 into overdrive housing. Tighten tool to bushing and remove bushing (Fig. 95).



80a11095

Fig. 95 Bushing Removal—Typical

1 – REMOVER 6957

2 – EXTENSION HOUSING BUSHING

INSTALLATION

(1) Align bushing oil hole with oil slot in overdrive housing.

(2) Tap bushing into place with Installer 6951 and Handle C-4171.

(3) Install new oil seal in housing using Seal Installer C-3995-A (Fig. 96).

OUTPUT SHAFT REAR BEARING

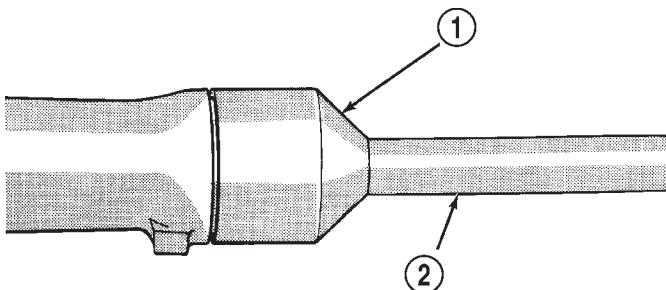
REMOVAL

(1) Remove overdrive unit from the vehicle.

(2) Remove overdrive geartrain from housing.

(3) Remove snap ring holding output shaft rear bearing into overdrive housing (Fig. 97).

(4) Using a suitable driver inserted through the rear end of housing, drive bearing from housing.



J9521-58

Fig. 96 Overdrive Housing Seal Installation

1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3995-A OR C-3972-A

2 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4471

INSTALLATION

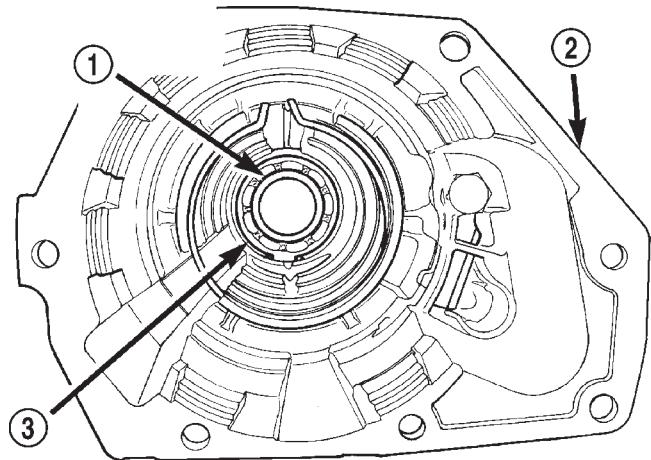
(1) Place replacement bearing in position in housing.

(2) Using a suitable driver, drive bearing into housing until the snap ring groove is visible.

(3) Install snap ring to hold bearing into housing (Fig. 97).

(4) Install overdrive geartrain into housing.

(5) Install overdrive unit in vehicle.



803f5860

Fig. 97 Output Shaft Rear Bearing

1 – OUTPUT SHAFT REAR BEARING

2 – OVERDRIVE HOUSING

3 – SNAP RING

OUTPUT SHAFT FRONT BEARING

REMOVAL

(1) Remove overdrive unit from the vehicle.

(2) Remove overdrive geartrain from housing.

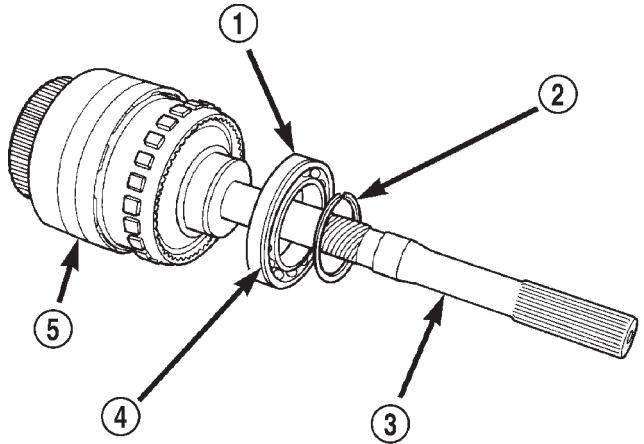
(3) Remove snap ring holding output shaft front bearing to overdrive geartrain. (Fig. 98).

(4) Pull bearing from output shaft.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

INSTALLATION

- (1) Place replacement bearing in position on geartrain with locating retainer groove toward the rear.
- (2) Push bearing onto shaft until the snap ring groove is visible.
- (3) Install snap ring to hold bearing onto output shaft (Fig. 98).
- (4) Install overdrive geartrain into housing.
- (5) Install overdrive unit in vehicle.

**Fig. 98 Output Shaft Front Bearing**

1 – OUTPUT SHAFT FRONT BEARING
2 – SNAP RING
3 – OUTPUT SHAFT
4 – GROOVE TO REAR
5 – OVERDRIVE GEARTRAIN

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

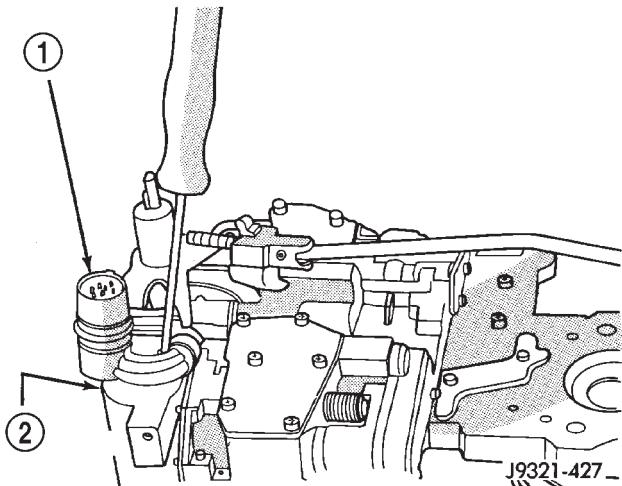
VALVE BODY

Remove the valve body from the transmission, refer to Removal and Installation procedures section in this group.

DISASSEMBLY

CAUTION: Do not clamp any valve body component in a vise. This practice can damage the component resulting in unsatisfactory operation after assembly and installation. Do not use pliers to remove any of the valves, plugs or springs and do not force any of the components out or into place. The valves and valve body housings will be damaged if force is used. Tag or mark the valve body springs for reference as they are removed. Do not allow them to become intermixed.

- (1) Remove fluid filter.
- (2) Disconnect wires from governor pressure sensor and solenoid.
- (3) Remove screws attaching governor body and retainer plate to transfer plate.
- (4) Remove retainer plate, governor body and gasket from transfer plate.
- (5) Remove governor pressure sensor from governor body.
- (6) Remove governor pressure solenoid by pulling it straight out of bore in governor body. Remove and discard solenoid O-rings if worn, cut, or torn.
- (7) Remove small shoulder bolt that secures solenoid harness case connector to 3-4 accumulator housing (Fig. 99). **Retain shoulder bolt. Either tape it to harness or thread it back into accumulator housing after connector removal.**
- (8) Unhook overdrive/converter solenoid harness from 3-4 accumulator cover plate (Fig. 100).
- (9) Turn valve body over and remove screws that attach overdrive/converter solenoid assembly to valve body (Fig. 101).
- (10) Remove solenoid and harness assembly from valve body (Fig. 102).
- (11) Remove boost valve cover (Fig. 103).
- (12) Remove boost valve retainer, valve spring and boost valve (Fig. 104).

**Fig. 99 Solenoid Harness Case Connector Shoulder Bolt**

1 – SOLENOID HARNESS CASE CONNECTOR
2 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING

- (13) Secure detent ball and spring with Retainer Tool 6583 (Fig. 105).
- (14) Remove park rod E-clip and separate rod from manual lever (Fig. 106).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

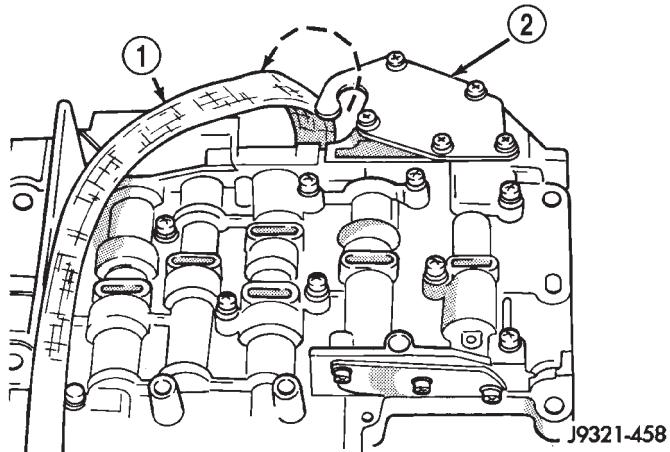


Fig. 100 Unhooking Solenoid Harness From Accumulator Cover Plate

1 – OVERDRIVE/CONVERTER SOLENOID WIRE HARNESS
2 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR COVER PLATE

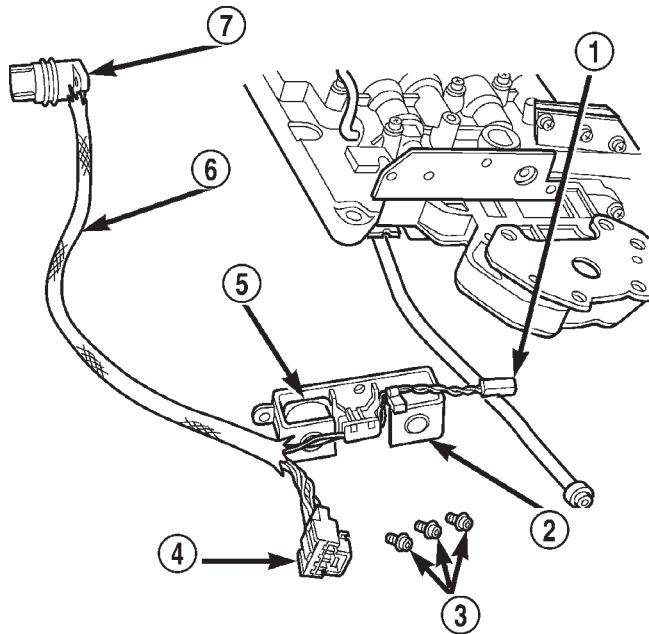


Fig. 102 Solenoid Assembly

1 – GOVERNOR SOLENOID WIRES
2 – CONVERTER CLUTCH SOLENOID
3 – SOLENOID SCREWS
4 – GOVERNOR SENSOR WIRES
5 – OVERDRIVE SOLENOID
6 – HARNESS
7 – CASE CONNECTOR

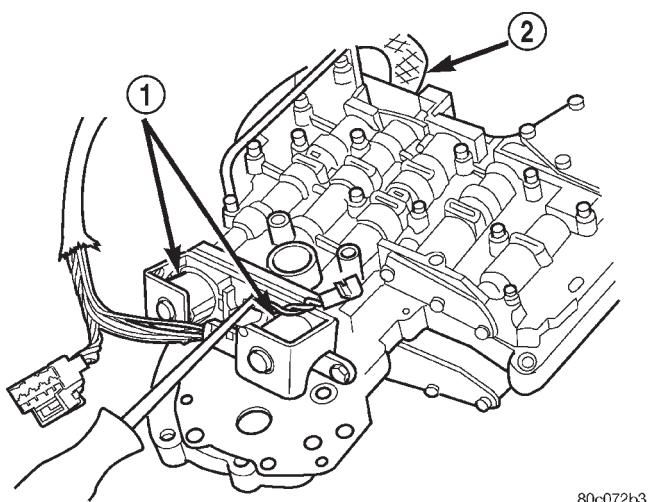


Fig. 101 Solenoid Assembly Screws

1 – OVERDRIVE/CONVERTER CLUTCH SOLENOID ASSEMBLY
2 – HARNESS

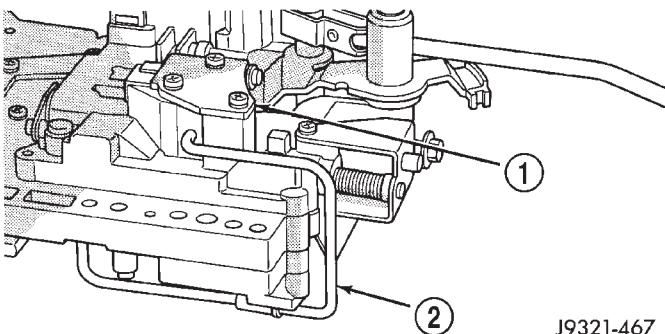
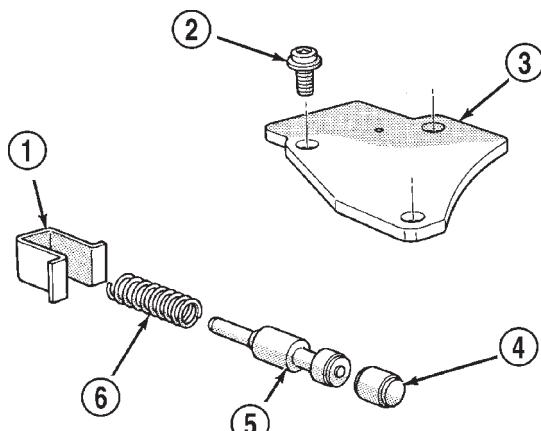


Fig. 103 Boost Valve Cover Location

1 – BOOST VALVE HOUSING AND COVER
2 – BOOST VALVE TUBE

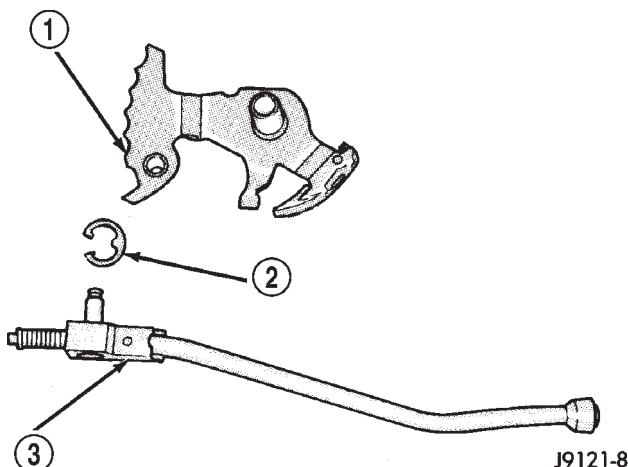
- (15) Remove E-clip and washer that retains throttle lever shaft in manual lever (Fig. 107).



J9321-468

Fig. 104 Boost Valve Components

- 1 – SPRING AND VALVE RETAINER
- 2 – COVER SCREWS
- 3 – BOOST VALVE COVER
- 4 – BOOST VALVE PLUG
- 5 – BOOST VALVE
- 6 – BOOST VALVE SPRING



J9121-81

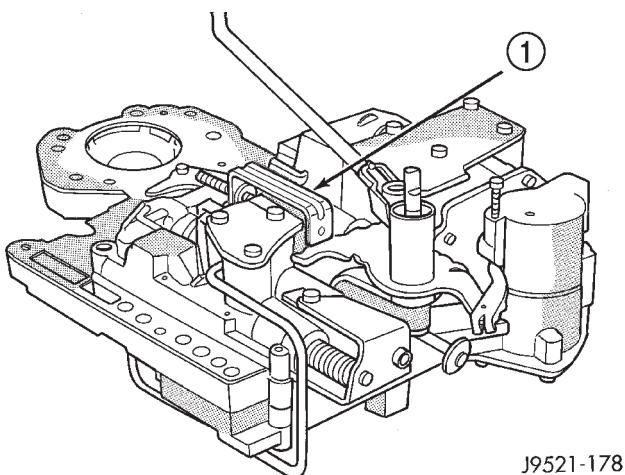
Fig. 106 Park Rod

- 1 – MANUAL LEVER
- 2 – E-CLIP
- 3 – PARK ROD

(16) Remove manual lever and throttle lever (Fig. 108). Rotate and lift manual lever off valve body and throttle lever shaft. Then slide throttle lever out of valve body.

(17) Position pencil magnet next to detent housing to catch detent ball and spring. Then carefully remove Retainer Tool 6583 and remove detent ball and spring (Fig. 109).

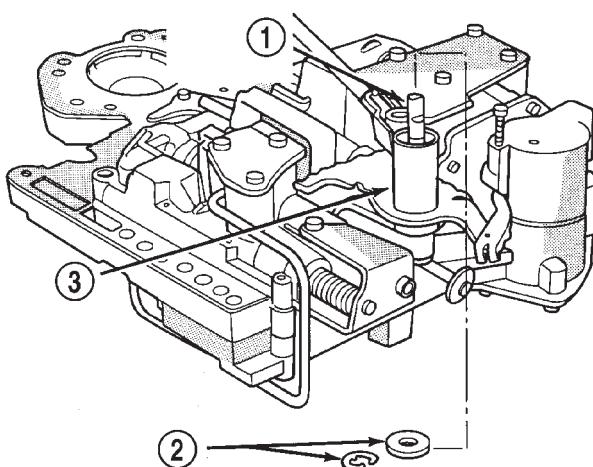
(18) Remove screws attaching pressure adjusting screw bracket to valve body and transfer plate (Fig. 110). Hold bracket firmly against spring tension while removing last screw.



J9521-178

Fig. 105 Detent Ball And Spring

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6583 POSITIONED ON DETENT HOUSING



J9321-424

Fig. 107 Throttle Lever E-Clip And Washer

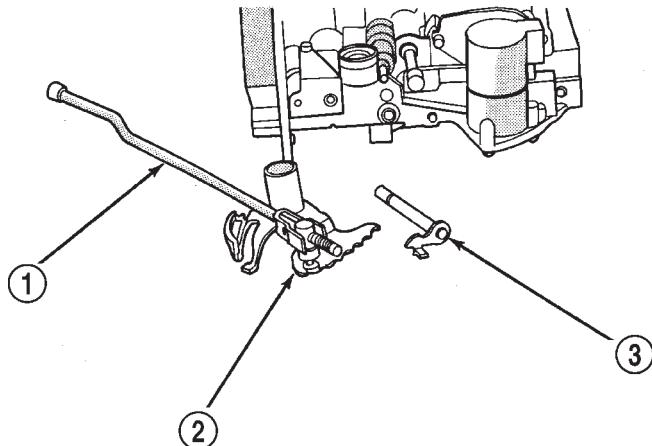
- 1 – THROTTLE LEVER SHAFT
- 2 – E-CLIP AND WASHER
- 3 – MANUAL SHAFT

(19) Remove adjusting screw bracket, line pressure adjusting screw, pressure regulator valve spring and switch valve spring (Fig. 111). **Do not remove throttle pressure adjusting screw from bracket and do not disturb setting of either adjusting screw during removal.**

(20) Turn upper housing over and remove switch valve, regulator valve and spring, and manual valve (Fig. 112).

(21) Remove kickdown detent, kickdown valve, and throttle valve and spring (Fig. 112).

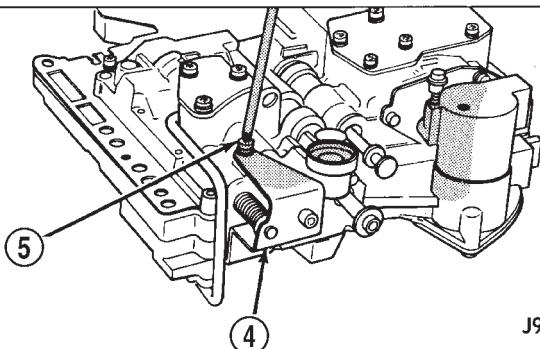
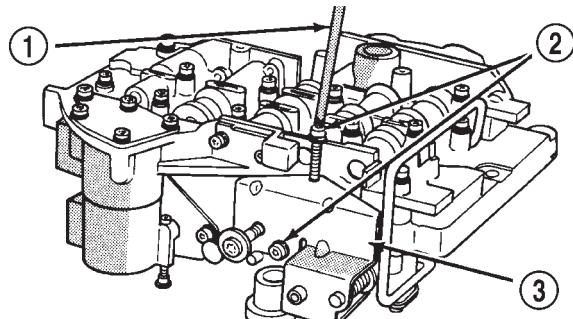
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9321-425

Fig. 108 Manual And Throttle Lever

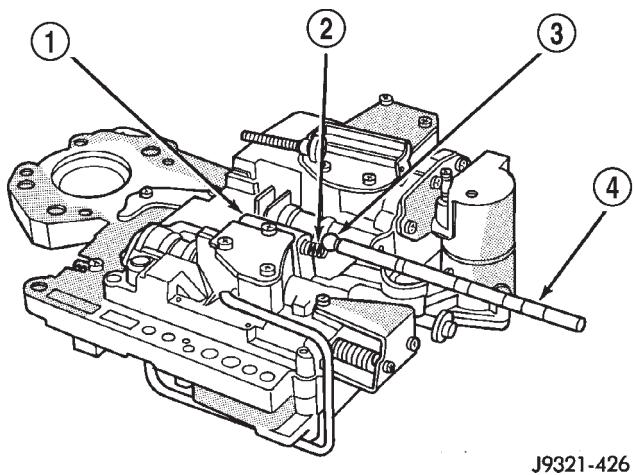
- 1 – PARK ROD
2 – MANUAL LEVER ASSEMBLY
3 – THROTTLE LEVER



J9321-430

Fig. 110 Adjusting Screw Bracket Fastener

- 1 – T25 TORX BIT
2 – REMOVE THESE SCREWS FIRST
3 – BRACKET
4 – BRACKET
5 – REMOVE THIS SCREW LAST



J9321-426

Fig. 109 Detent Ball And Spring

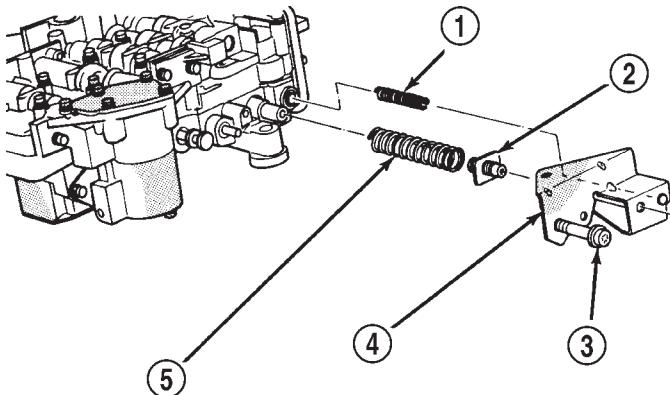
- 1 – DETENT HOUSING
2 – DETENT SPRING
3 – DETENT BALL
4 – PENCIL MAGNET

(22) Loosen left-side 3-4 accumulator housing attaching screw about 2-3 threads. Then remove center and right-side housing attaching screws (Fig. 113).

(23) Carefully rotate 3-4 accumulator housing upward and remove 3-4 shift valve spring and converter clutch valve plug and spring (Fig. 114).

(24) Remove left-side screw and remove 3-4 accumulator housing from valve body (Fig. 115).

(25) Bend back tabs on boost valve tube brace (Fig. 116).

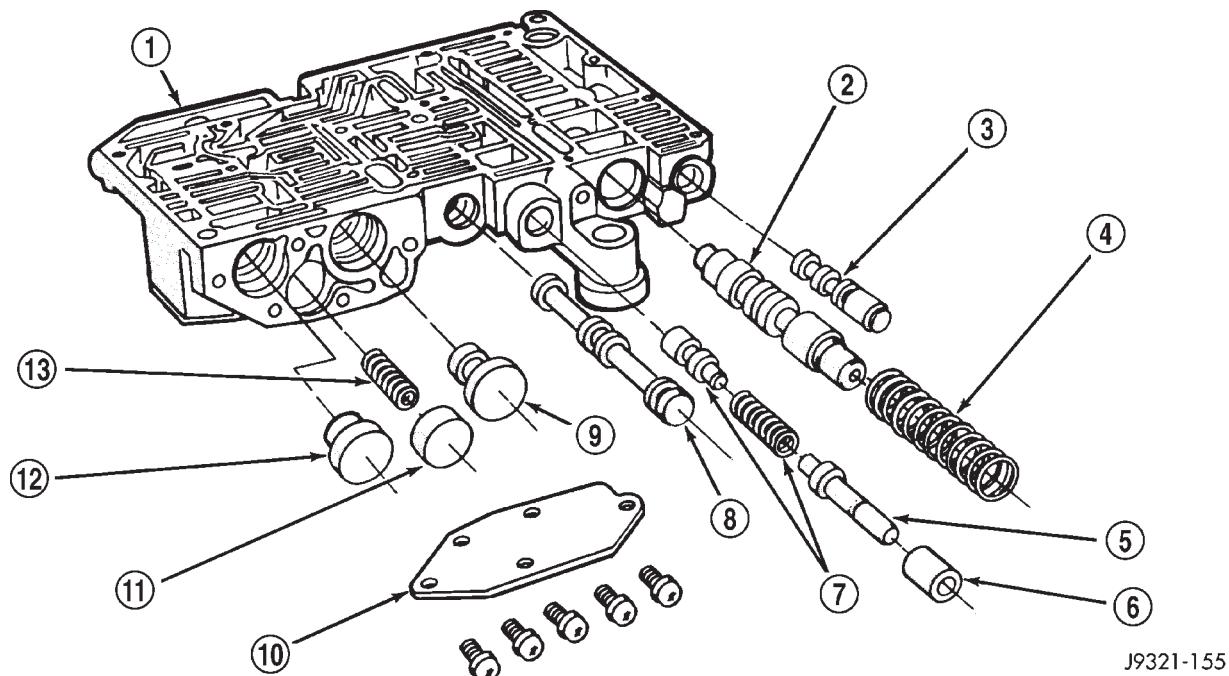


J9321-431

Fig. 111 Adjusting Screw Bracket And Spring

- 1 – SWITCH VALVE SPRING
2 – LINE PRESSURE SCREW
3 – THROTTLE PRESSURE ADJUSTING SCREW
4 – ADJUSTING SCREW BRACKET
5 – PRESSURE REGULATOR VALVE SPRING

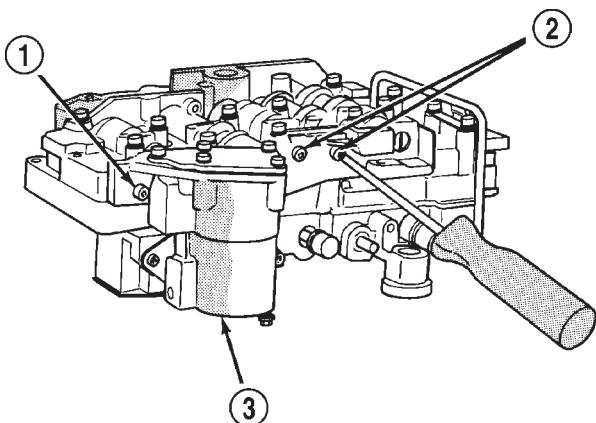
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9321-155

Fig. 112 Upper Housing Control Valve Locations

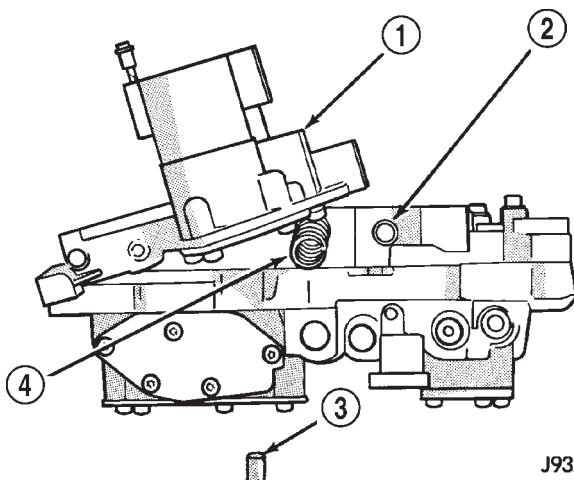
- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 - UPPER HOUSING | 8 - MANUAL VALVE |
| 2 - REGULATOR VALVE | 9 - 1-2 GOVERNOR PLUG |
| 3 - SWITCH VALVE | 10 - GOVERNOR PLUG COVER |
| 4 - REGULATOR VALVE SPRING | 11 - THROTTLE PLUG |
| 5 - KICKDOWN VALVE | 12 - 2-3 GOVERNOR PLUG |
| 6 - KICKDOWN DETENT | 13 - SHUTTLE VALVE PRIMARY SPRING |
| 7 - THROTTLE VALVE AND SPRING | |



J9321-432

Fig. 113 Accumulator Housing Screw Locations

- 1 - LOOSEN THIS SCREW
- 2 - REMOVE THESE SCREWS
- 3 - 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING

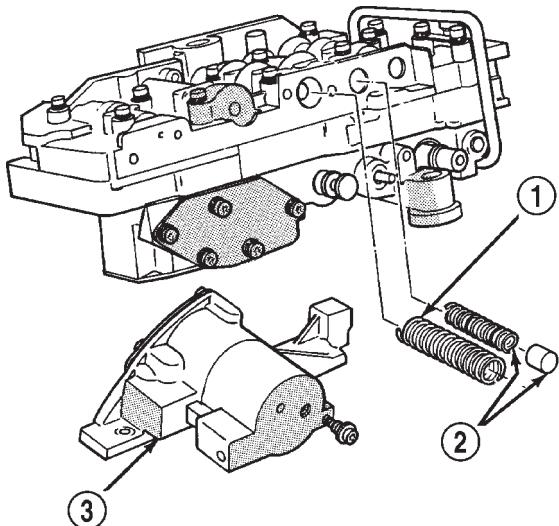


J9321-433

Fig. 114 3-4 Shift And Converter Clutch Valve Springs And Plug

- 1 - ACCUMULATOR HOUSING
- 2 - CONVERTER CLUTCH VALVE SPRING
- 3 - CLUTCH VALVE PLUG
- 4 - 3-4 SHIFT VALVE SPRING

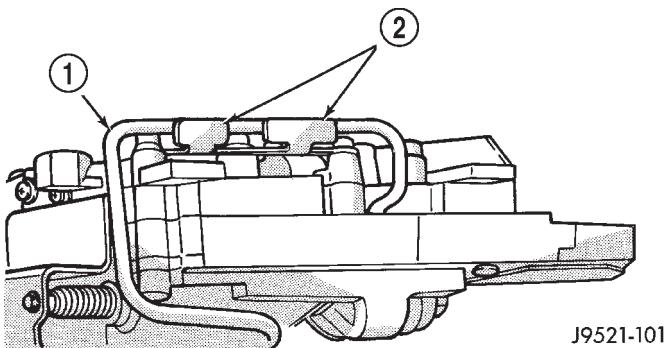
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9321-434

Fig. 115 Accumulator Housing, Valve Springs And Plug

- 1 – 3-4 SHIFT VALVE SPRING
2 – CONVERTER CLUTCH VALVE SPRING AND PLUG
3 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING



J9521-101

Fig. 116 Boost Valve Tube Brace

- 1 – BOOST VALVE TUBE
2 – TUBE BRACE (DOUBLE TAB)

(26) Remove boost valve connecting tube (Fig. 117). Disengage tube from upper housing port first. Then rock opposite end of tube back and forth to work it out of lower housing.

CAUTION: Do not use tools to loosen or pry the connecting tube out of the valve body housings. Loosen and remove the tube by hand only.

(27) Turn valve body over so lower housing is facing upward (Fig. 118). In this position, the two check balls in upper housing will remain in place and not fall out when lower housing and separator plate are removed.

(28) Remove screws attaching valve body lower housing to upper housing and transfer plate (Fig.

118). Note position of boost valve tube brace for assembly reference.

(29) Remove lower housing and overdrive separator plate from transfer plate (Fig. 118).

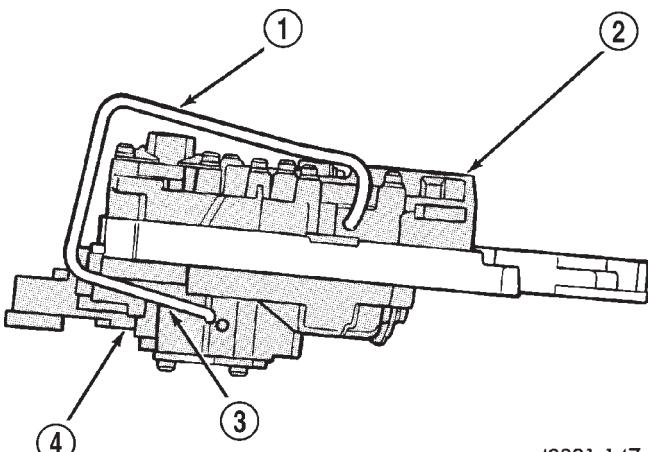
(30) Remove the ECE check ball from the transfer plate (Fig. 119). The ECE check ball is approximately 4.8 mm (3/16 in.) in diameter.

(31) Remove transfer plate from upper housing (Fig. 120).

(32) Turn transfer plate over so upper housing separator plate is facing upward.

(33) Remove upper housing separator plate from transfer plate (Fig. 121). Note position of filter in separator plate for assembly reference.

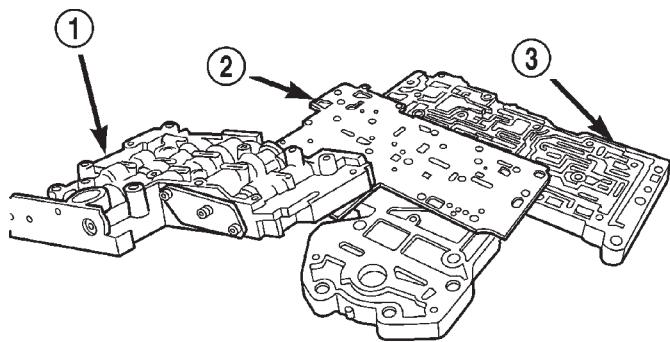
(34) Remove rear clutch and rear servo check balls from transfer plate. Note check ball location for assembly reference (Fig. 122).



J9321-147

Fig. 117 Boost Valve Tube

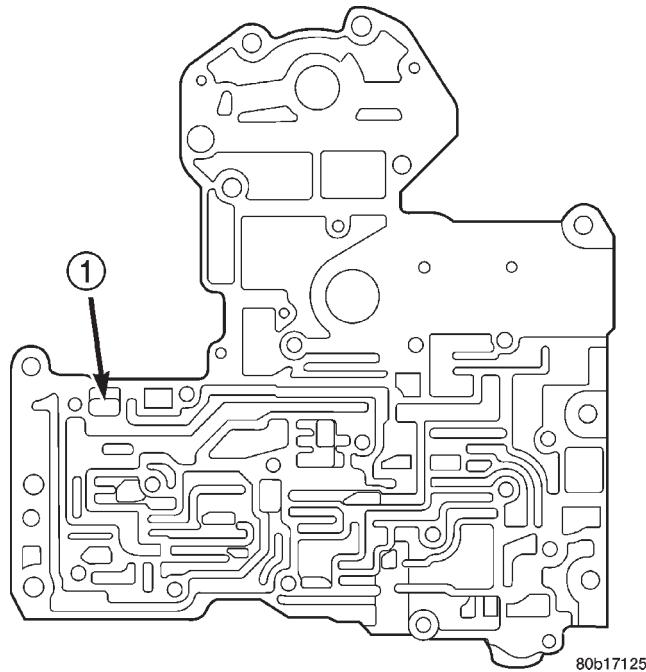
- 1 – BOOST VALVE TUBE
2 – LOWER HOUSING
3 – DISENGAGE THIS END OF TUBE FIRST
4 – UPPER HOUSING



80b170f8

Fig. 118 Lower Housing

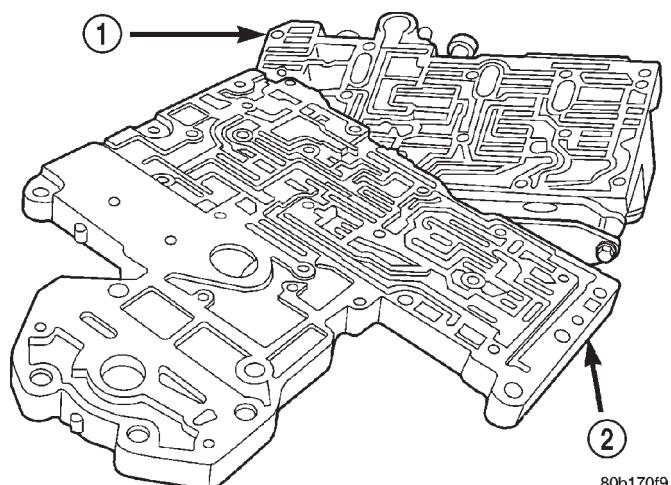
- 1 – LOWER HOUSING
2 – OVERDRIVE SEPARATOR PLATE
3 – TRANSFER PLATE AND UPPER HOUSING



80b17125

Fig. 119 ECE Check Ball

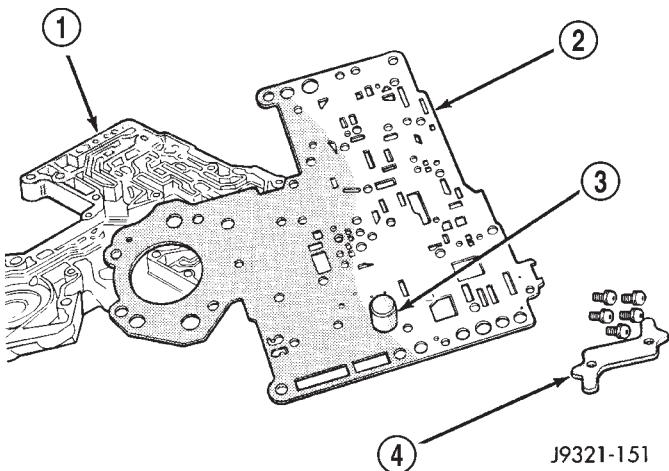
1 – ECE CHECK BALL (3/16")



80b170f9

Fig. 120 Transfer Plate

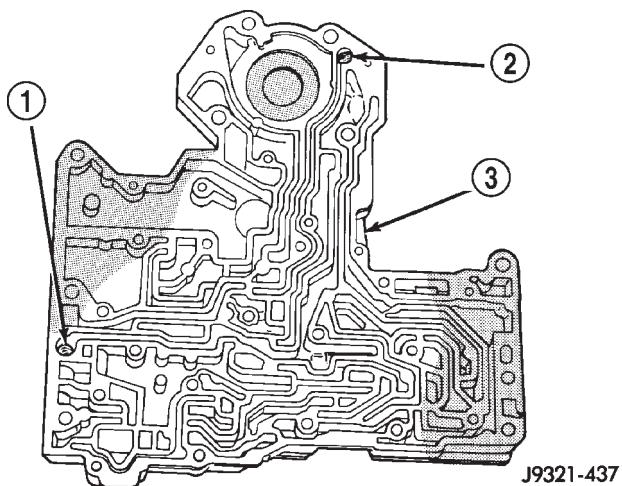
1 – UPPER HOUSING
2 – TRANSFER PLATE



J9321-151

Fig. 121 Upper Housing Separator Plate

1 – TRANSFER PLATE
2 – UPPER HOUSING SEPARATOR PLATE
3 – FILTER SCREEN
4 – BRACE



J9321-437

Fig. 122 Rear Clutch And Rear Servo Check Ball Locations

1 – REAR CLUTCH CHECK BALL
2 – REAR SERVO CHECK BALL
3 – TRANSFER PLATE

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

VALVE BODY UPPER HOUSING

(1) Note location of check balls in valve body upper housing (Fig. 123). Then remove the one large diameter and the six smaller diameter check balls.

(2) Remove governor plug and shuttle valve covers (Fig. 125).

(3) Remove E-clip that secures shuttle valve secondary spring on valve stem (Fig. 124).

(4) Remove throttle plug, primary spring, shuttle valve, secondary spring, and spring guides (Fig. 125).

(5) Remove boost valve retainer, spring and valve if not previously removed.

(6) Remove throttle plug and 1-2 and 2-3 governor plugs (Fig. 112).

(7) Turn upper housing around and remove limit valve and shift valve covers (Fig. 126).

(8) Remove limit valve housing. Then remove retainer, spring, limit valve, and 2-3 throttle plug from limit valve housing (Fig. 126).

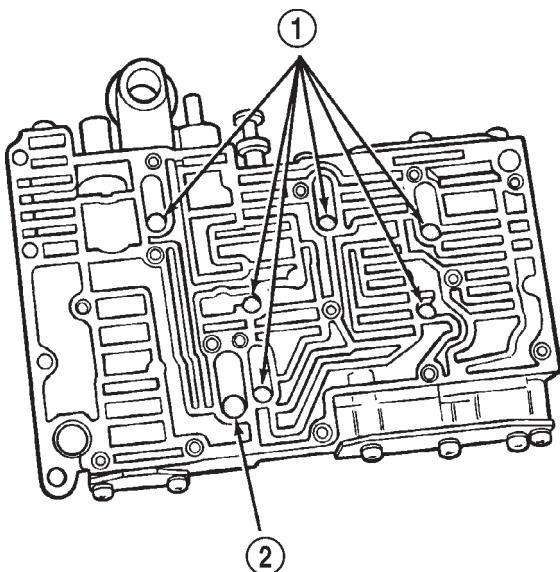
(9) Remove 1-2 shift control valve and spring (Fig. 126).

(10) Remove 1-2 shift valve and spring (Fig. 126).

(11) Remove 2-3 shift valve and spring from valve body (Fig. 126).

(12) Remove pressure plug cover (Fig. 126).

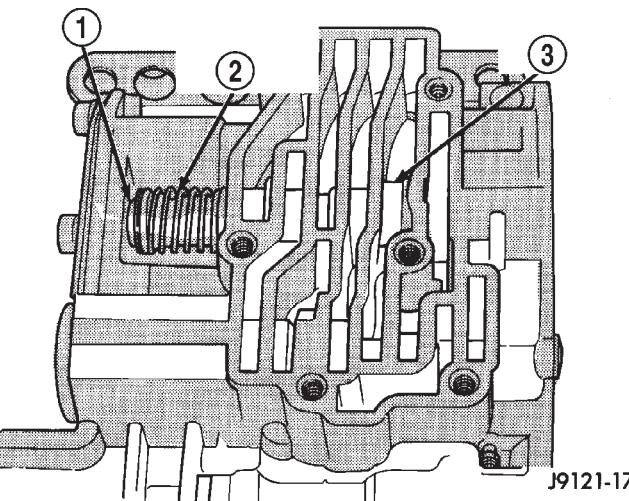
(13) Remove line pressure plug, sleeve, throttle pressure plug and spring (Fig. 126).



J9321-154

Fig. 123 Check Ball Locations In Upper Housing

- 1 - SMALL DIAMETER CHECK BALLS (6)
- 2 - LARGE DIAMETER CHECK BALL (1)



J9121-179

Fig. 124 Shuttle Valve E-Clip And Secondary Spring Location

1 - E-CLIP

2 - SECONDARY SPRING AND GUIDES

3 - SHUTTLE VALVE

VALVE BODY LOWER HOUSING

(1) Remove timing valve cover.

(2) Remove 3-4 timing valve and spring.

(3) Remove 3-4 quick fill valve, spring and plug.

(4) Remove 3-4 shift valve and spring.

(5) Remove converter clutch valve, spring and plug (Fig. 127).

(6) Remove converter clutch timing valve, retainer and valve spring.

3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING

(1) Remove end plate from housing.

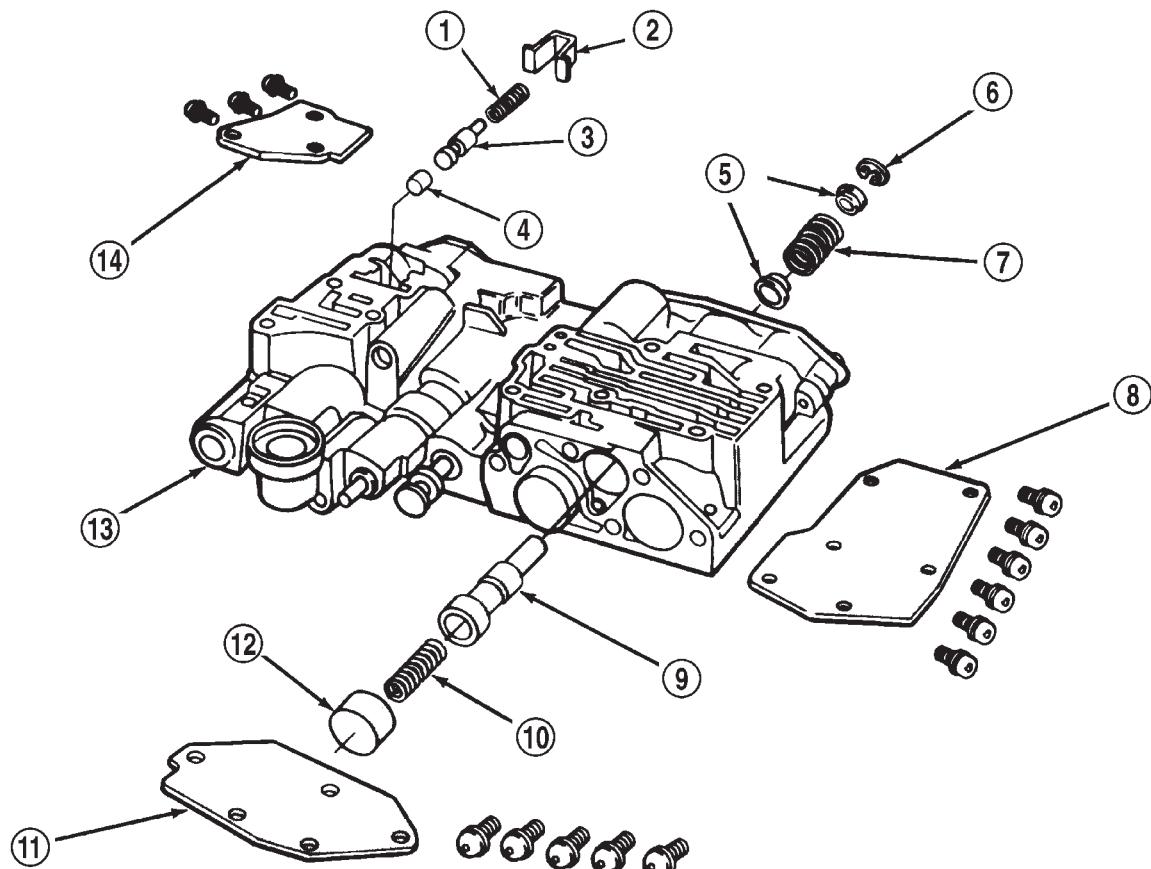
(2) Remove piston spring.

(3) Remove piston. Remove and discard piston seals (Fig. 128).

ASSEMBLY

CAUTION: Do not force valves or plugs into place during reassembly. If the valve body bores, valves and plugs are free of distortion or burrs, the valve body components should all slide into place easily. In addition, do not overtighten the transfer plate and valve body screws during reassembly. Over-tightening can distort the housings resulting in valve sticking, cross leakage and unsatisfactory operation. Tighten valve body screws to recommended torque only.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9421-217

Fig. 125 Shuttle And Boost Valve Components

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 – SPRING | 8 – SHUTTLE VALVE COVER |
| 2 – RETAINER | 9 – SHUTTLE VALVE |
| 3 – BOOST VALVE | 10 – SHUTTLE VALVE PRIMARY SPRING |
| 4 – BOOST VALVE PLUG | 11 – GOVERNOR PLUG COVER |
| 5 – SPRING GUIDES | 12 – THROTTLE PLUG |
| 6 – E-CLIP | 13 – UPPER HOUSING |
| 7 – SHUTTLE VALVE SECONDARY SPRING | 14 – BOOST VALVE COVER |

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

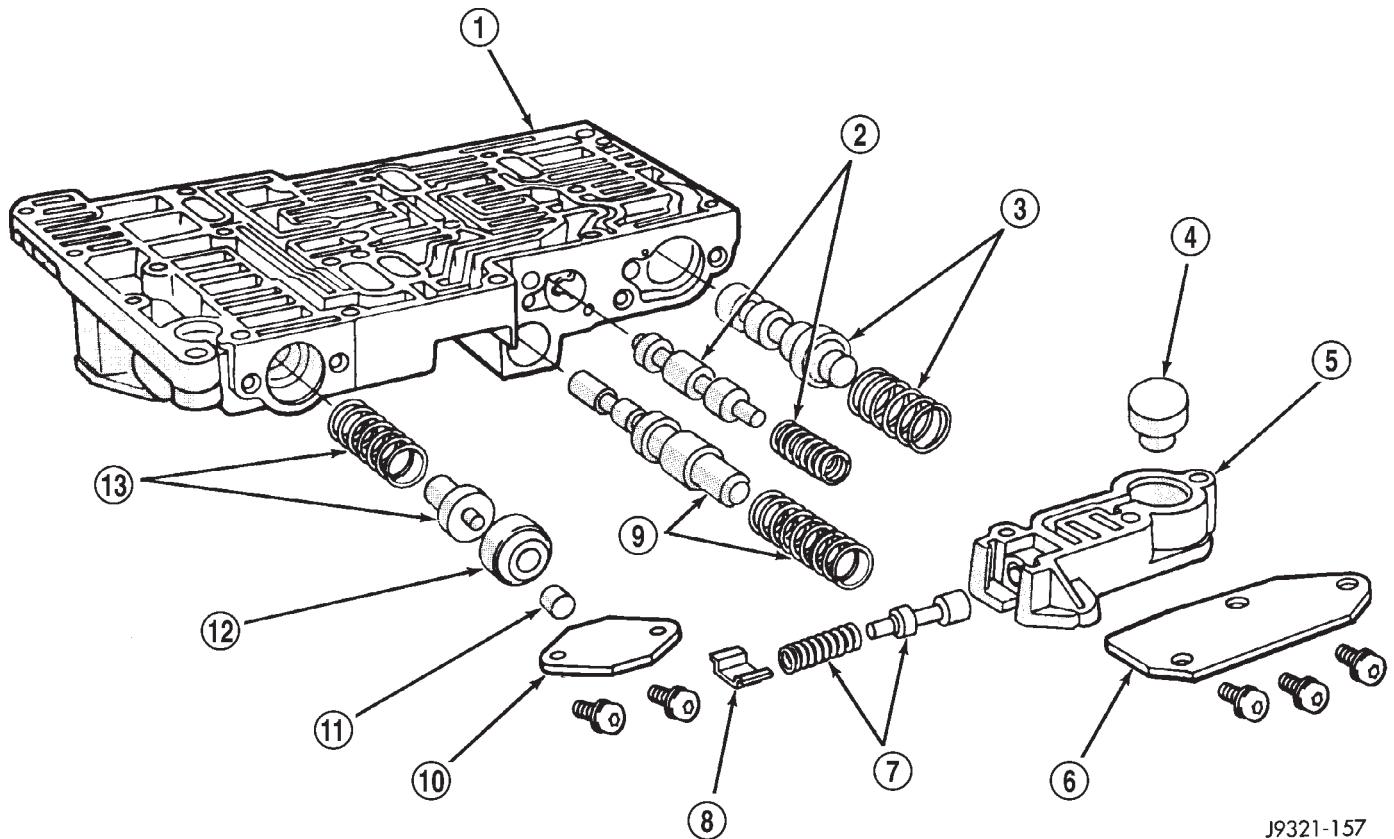
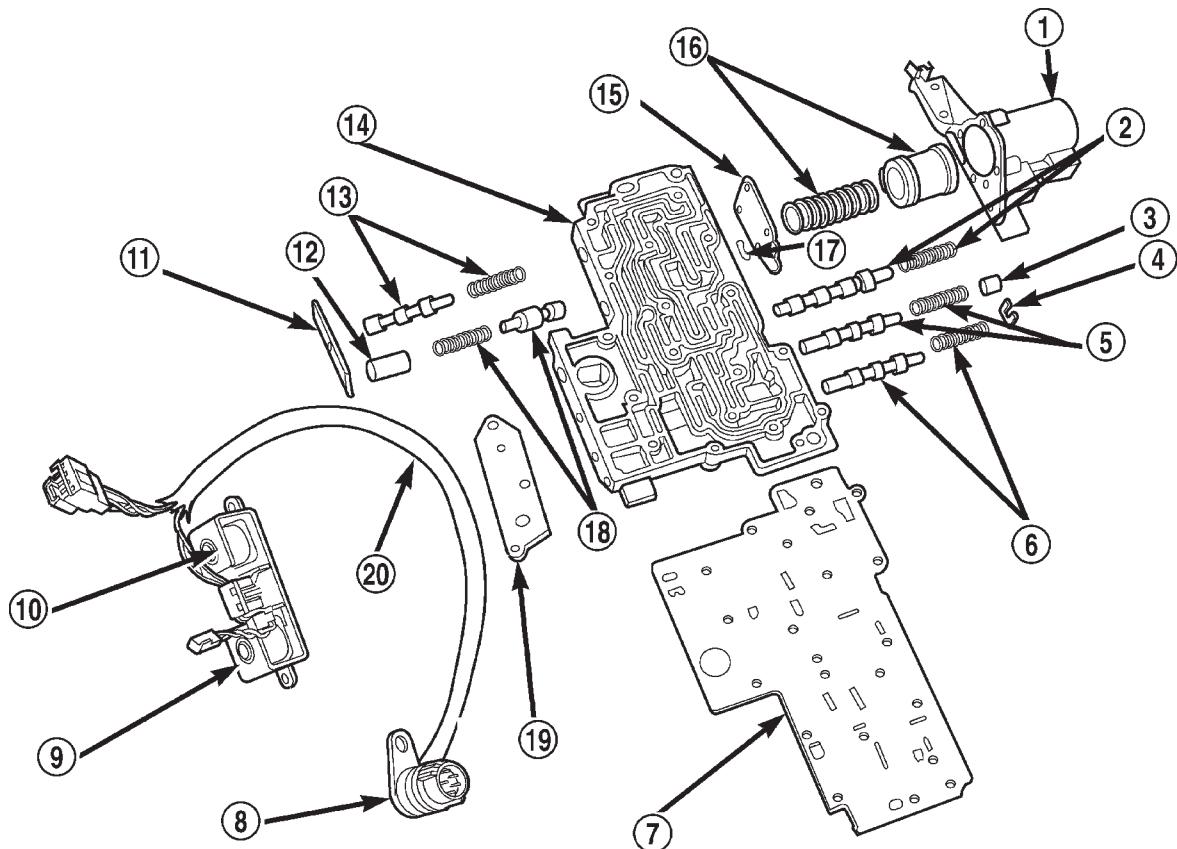


Fig. 126 Upper Housing Shift Valve And Pressure Plug Locations

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1 – UPPER HOUSING | 8 – RETAINER |
| 2 – 1-2 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING | 9 – 1-2 SHIFT CONTROL VALVE AND SPRING |
| 3 – 2-3 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING | 10 – PRESSURE PLUG COVER |
| 4 – 2-3 THROTTLE PLUG | 11 – LINE PRESSURE PLUG |
| 5 – LIMIT VALVE HOUSING | 12 – PLUG SLEEVE |
| 6 – LIMIT VALVE COVER | 13 – THROTTLE PRESSURE SPRING AND PLUG |
| 7 – LIMIT VALVE AND SPRING | |

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

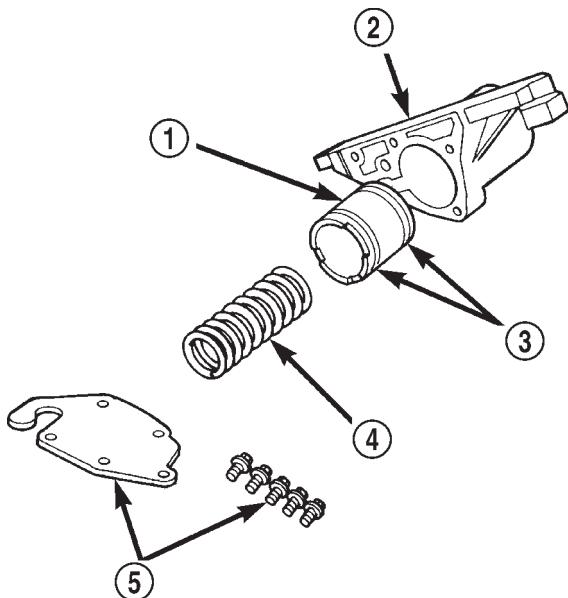


80c072b5

Fig. 127 Lower Housing Shift Valves And Springs

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 - 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING | 11 - TIMING VALVE COVER |
| 2 - 3-4 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING | 12 - PLUG |
| 3 - PLUG | 13 - 3-4 TIMING VALVE AND SPRING |
| 4 - SPRING RETAINER | 14 - LOWER HOUSING |
| 5 - CONVERTER CLUTCH VALVE AND SPRING | 15 - ACCUMULATOR END PLATE |
| 6 - CONVERTER CLUTCH TIMING VALVE AND SPRING | 16 - 3-4 ACCUMULATOR PISTON AND SPRING |
| 7 - OVERDRIVE SEPARATOR PLATE | 17 - E-CLIP |
| 8 - CASE CONNECTOR | 18 - 3-4 QUICK FILL SPRING AND VALVE |
| 9 - CONVERTER CLUTCH SOLENOID | 19 - SOLENOID GASKET |
| 10 - OVERDRIVE SOLENOID | 20 - HARNESS |

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



804d8eb9

Fig. 128 Accumulator Housing Components

- 1 – ACCUMULATOR PISTON
 2 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING
 3 – TEFLON SEALS
 4 – PISTON SPRING
 5 – COVER PLATE AND SCREWS

LOWER HOUSING

(1) Lubricate valves, springs, and the housing valve and plug bores with clean transmission fluid (Fig. 127).

(2) Install 3-4 timing valve spring and valve in lower housing.

(3) Install 3-4 quick fill valve in lower housing.

(4) Install 3-4 quick fill valve spring and plug in housing.

(5) Install timing valve end plate. Tighten end plate screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

3-4 ACCUMULATOR

(1) Lubricate accumulator piston, seals and housing piston bore with clean transmission fluid (Fig. 128).

(2) Install new seal rings on accumulator piston.

(3) Install piston and spring in housing.

(4) Install end plate on housing.

TRANSFER PLATE

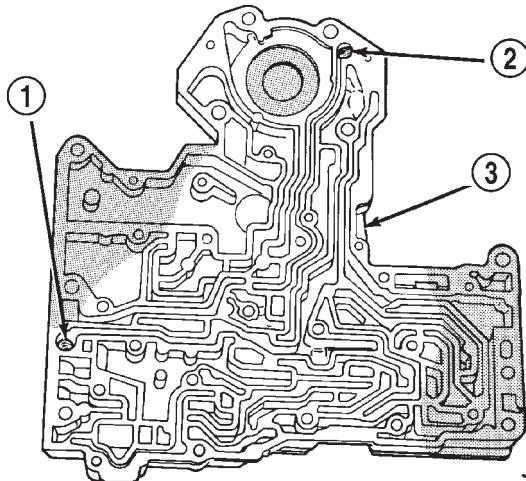
(1) Install rear clutch and rear servo check balls in transfer plate (Fig. 129).

(2) Install filter screen in upper housing separator plate (Fig. 130).

(3) Align and position upper housing separator plate on transfer plate (Fig. 131).

(4) Install brace plate (Fig. 131). Tighten brace attaching screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

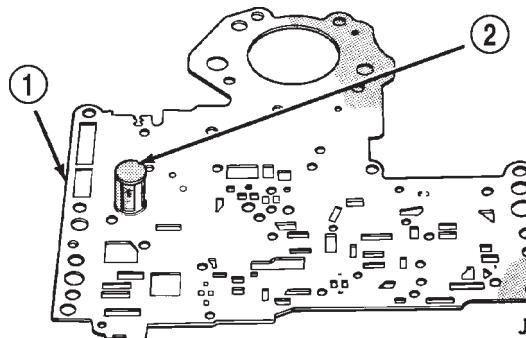
(5) Install remaining separator plate attaching screws. Tighten screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.



J9321-437

Fig. 129 Rear Clutch And Rear Servo Check Ball Locations

- 1 – REAR CLUTCH CHECK BALL
 2 – REAR SERVO CHECK BALL
 3 – TRANSFER PLATE



J9321-440

Fig. 130 Separator Plate Filter Screen Installation

- 1 – UPPER HOUSING SEPARATOR PLATE
 2 – FILTER SCREEN

UPPER AND LOWER HOUSING

(1) Position upper housing so internal passages and check ball seats are facing upward. Then install check balls in housing (Fig. 132). Eight check balls are used. The single large check ball is approximately 8.7 mm (11/32 in.) diameter. The single small check ball is approximately 4.8 mm (3/16 in.) in diameter. The remaining 6 check balls are approximately 6.3 mm (1/4 in.) in diameter.

(2) Position assembled transfer plate and upper housing separator plate on upper housing (Fig. 133). Be sure filter screen is seated in proper housing recess.

(3) Install the ECE check ball into the transfer plate (Fig. 119). The ECE check ball is approximately 4.8 mm (3/16 in.) in diameter.

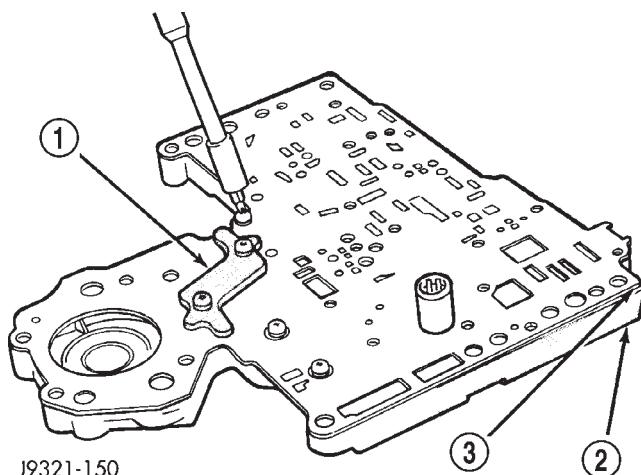


Fig. 131 Brace Plate

- 1 – BRACE
- 2 – TRANSFER PLATE
- 3 – SEPARATOR PLATE

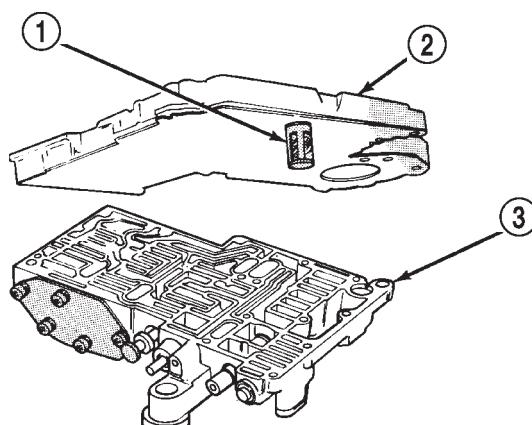


Fig. 133 Installing Transfer Plate On Upper Housing

- 1 – FILTER SCREEN
- 2 – TRANSFER PLATE/SEPARATOR PLATE ASSEMBLY
- 3 – UPPER HOUSING

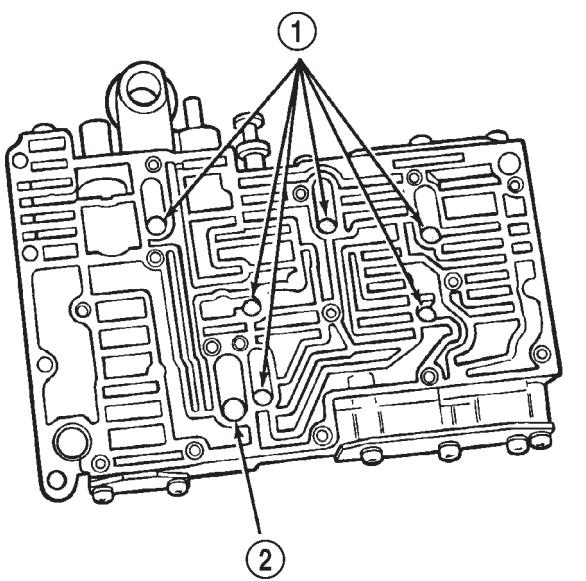


Fig. 132 Check Ball Locations In Upper Housing

- 1 – SMALL DIAMETER CHECK BALLS (6)
- 2 – LARGE DIAMETER CHECK BALL (1)

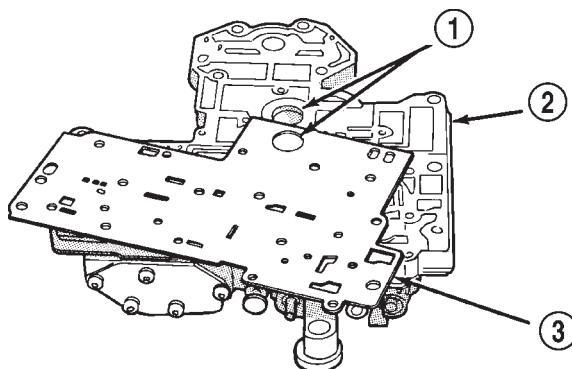


Fig. 134 Lower Housing Separator Plate

- 1 – BE SURE TO ALIGN BORES
- 2 – TRANSFER PLATE
- 3 – LOWER HOUSING (OVERDRIVE) SEPARATOR PLATE

UPPER HOUSING VALVE AND PLUG

Refer to (Fig. 136), (Fig. 137) and (Fig. 138) to perform the following steps.

- (1) Lubricate valves, plugs, springs with clean transmission fluid.
- (2) Assemble regulator valve line pressure plug, sleeve, throttle plug and spring. Insert assembly in upper housing and install cover plate. Tighten cover plate screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.
- (3) Install 1-2 and 2-3 shift valves and springs.
- (4) Install 1-2 shift control valve and spring.
- (5) Install retainer, spring, limit valve, and 2-3 throttle plug from limit valve housing.
- (6) Install limit valve housing and cover plate. Tighten screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

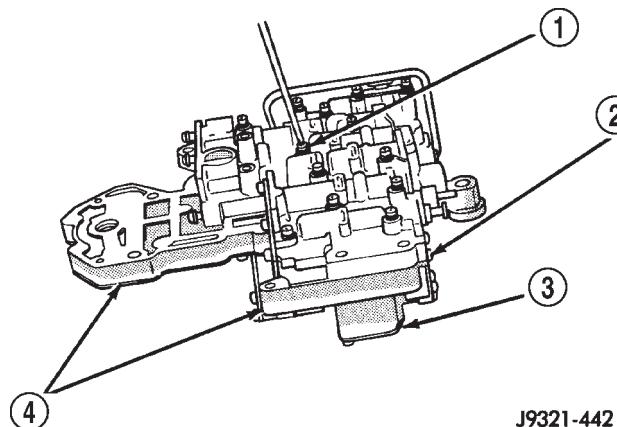


Fig. 135 Installing Lower Housing On Transfer Plate And Upper Housing

- 1 – VALVE BODY SCREWS (13)
- 2 – LOWER HOUSING
- 3 – UPPER HOUSING
- 4 – TRANSFER PLATE

(7) Install shuttle valve as follows:

(a) Insert plastic guides in shuttle valve secondary spring and install spring on end of valve.

(b) Install shuttle valve into housing.

(c) Hold shuttle valve in place.

(d) Compress secondary spring and install E-clip in groove at end of shuttle valve.

(e) Verify that spring and E-clip are properly seated before proceeding.

(8) Install shuttle valve cover plate. Tighten cover plate screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

(9) Install 1-2 and 2-3 valve governor plugs in valve body.

(10) Install shuttle valve primary spring and throttle plug.

(11) Align and install governor plug cover. Tighten cover screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

BOOST VALVE TUBE AND BRACE

(1) Position valve body assembly so lower housing is facing upward (Fig. 139).

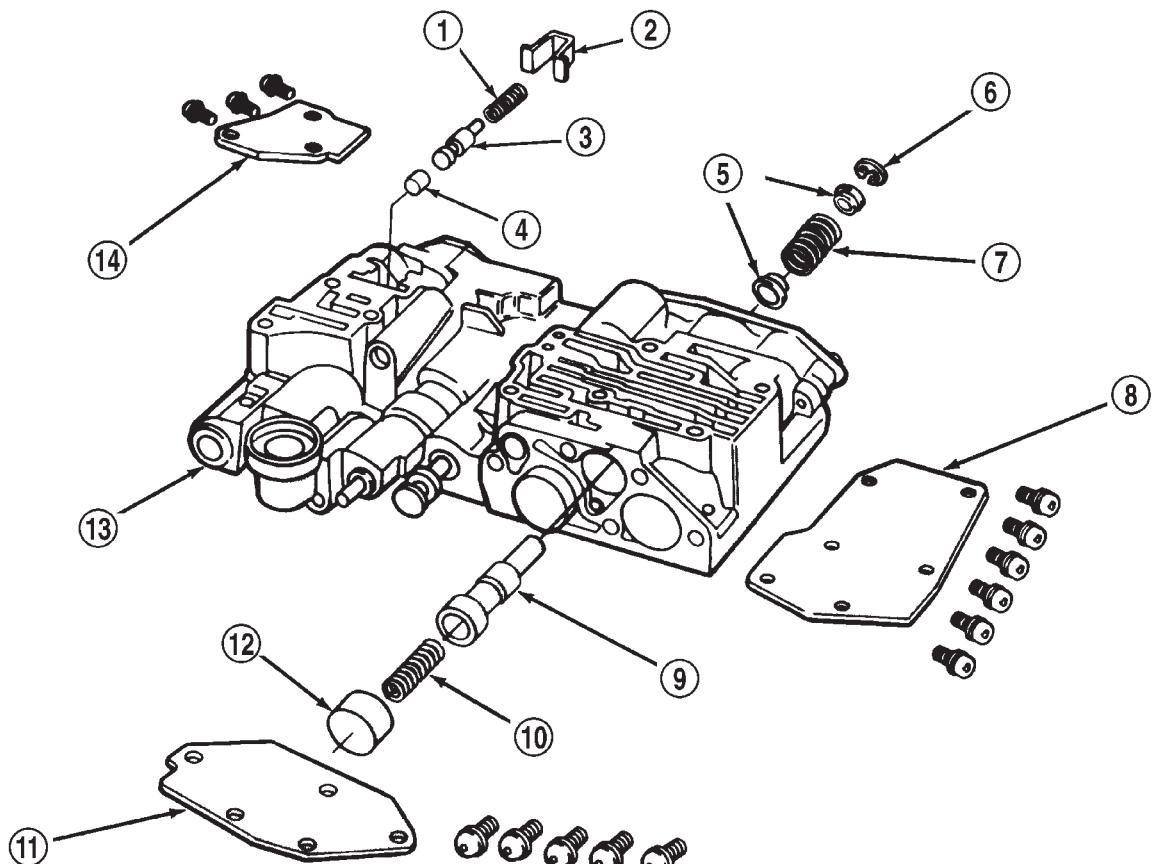


Fig. 136 Shuttle And Boost Valve Components

- 1 – SPRING
- 2 – RETAINER
- 3 – BOOST VALVE
- 4 – BOOST VALVE PLUG
- 5 – SPRING GUIDES
- 6 – E-CLIP
- 7 – SHUTTLE VALVE SECONDARY SPRING
- 8 – SHUTTLE VALVE COVER
- 9 – SHUTTLE VALVE
- 10 – SHUTTLE VALVE PRIMARY SPRING
- 11 – GOVERNOR PLUG COVER
- 12 – THROTTLE PLUG
- 13 – UPPER HOUSING
- 14 – BOOST VALVE COVER

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

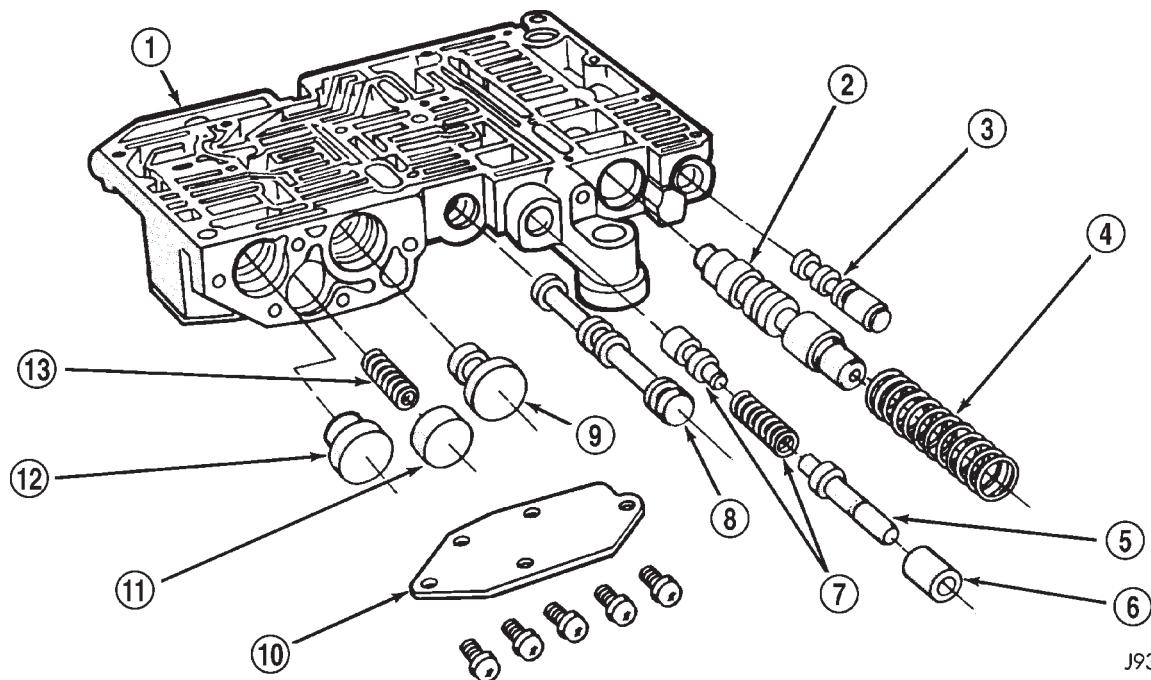
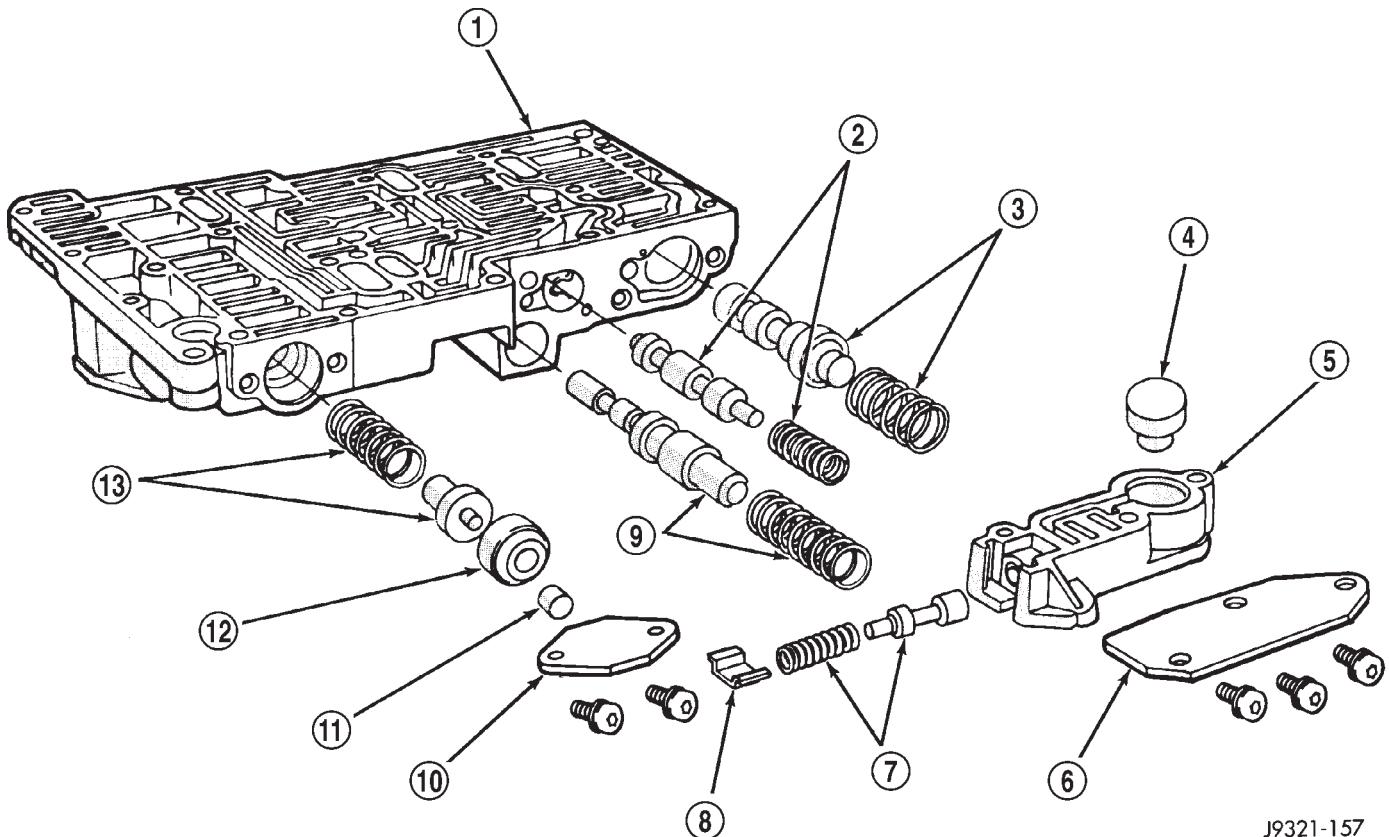


Fig. 137 Upper Housing Control Valve Locations

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 - UPPER HOUSING | 8 - MANUAL VALVE |
| 2 - REGULATOR VALVE | 9 - 1-2 GOVERNOR PLUG |
| 3 - SWITCH VALVE | 10 - GOVERNOR PLUG COVER |
| 4 - REGULATOR VALVE SPRING | 11 - THROTTLE PLUG |
| 5 - KICKDOWN VALVE | 12 - 2-3 GOVERNOR PLUG |
| 6 - KICKDOWN DETENT | 13 - SHUTTLE VALVE PRIMARY SPRING |
| 7 - THROTTLE VALVE AND SPRING | |

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9321-157

Fig. 138 Upper Housing Shift Valve And Pressure Plug Locations

- 1 – UPPER HOUSING
- 2 – 1-2 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING
- 3 – 2-3 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING
- 4 – 2-3 THROTTLE PLUG
- 5 – LIMIT VALVE HOUSING
- 6 – LIMIT VALVE COVER
- 7 – LIMIT VALVE AND SPRING

- 8 – RETAINER
- 9 – 1-2 SHIFT CONTROL VALVE AND SPRING
- 10 – PRESSURE PLUG COVER
- 11 – LINE PRESSURE PLUG
- 12 – PLUG SLEEVE
- 13 – THROTTLE PRESSURE SPRING AND PLUG

(2) Lubricate tube ends and housing ports with transmission fluid or petroleum jelly.

(3) Start tube in lower housing port first. Then swing tube downward and work opposite end of tube into upper housing port (Fig. 139).

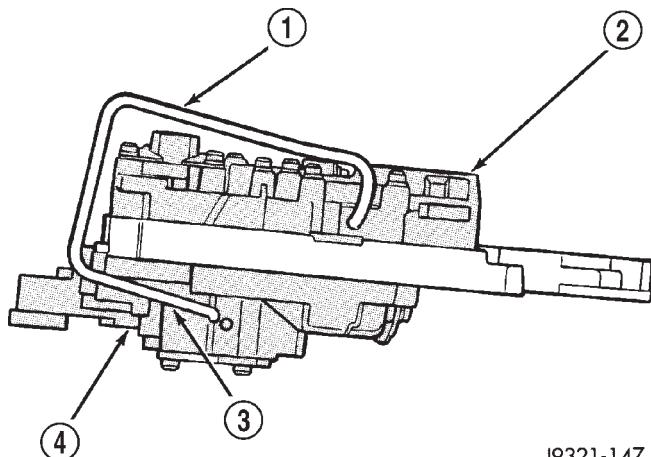
(4) Insert and seat each end of tube in housings.

(5) Slide tube brace under tube and into alignment with valve body screw holes (Fig. 140).

(6) Install and finger tighten three screws that secure tube brace to valve body housings (Fig. 140).

(7) Bend tube brace tabs up and against tube to hold it in position (Fig. 141).

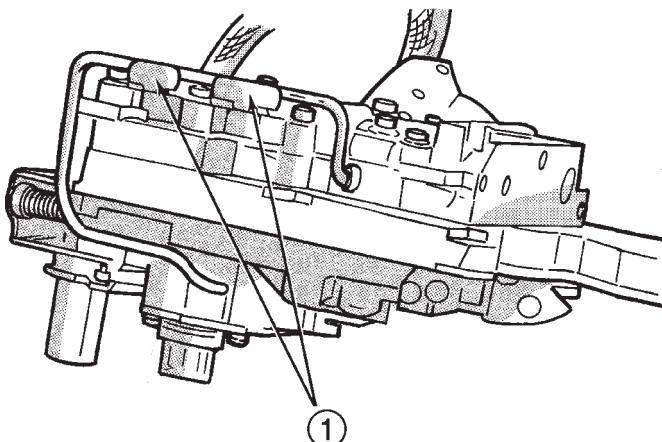
(8) Tighten all valve body housing screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque after tube and brace are installed. Tighten screws in diagonal pattern starting at center and working outward.



J9321-147

Fig. 139 Boost Valve Tube

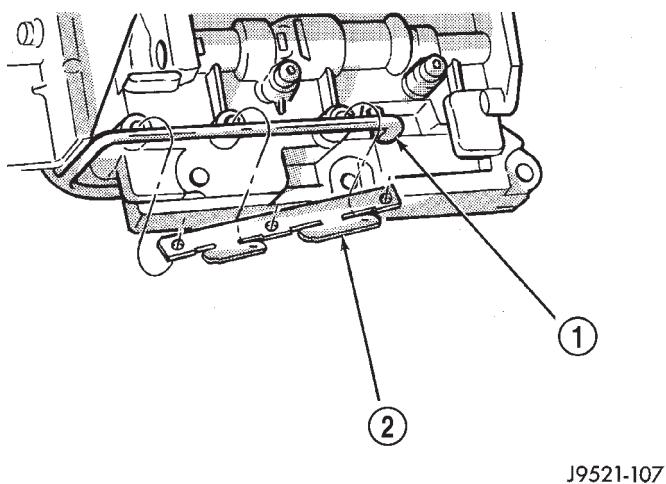
- 1 – BOOST VALVE TUBE
- 2 – LOWER HOUSING
- 3 – DISENGAGE THIS END OF TUBE FIRST
- 4 – UPPER HOUSING



J9521-108

Fig. 141 Securing Boost Valve Tube With Brace Tabs

- 1 – BEND TABS UP AGAINST TUBE AS SHOWN



J9521-107

Fig. 140 Boost Valve Tube And Brace

- 1 – BOOST VALVE TUBE
- 2 – TUBE BRACE

3-4 ACCUMULATOR

(1) Position converter clutch valve and 3-4 shift valve springs in housing (Fig. 142).

(2) Loosely attach accumulator housing with right-side screw (Fig. 142). Install only one screw at this time as accumulator must be free to pivot upward for ease of installation.

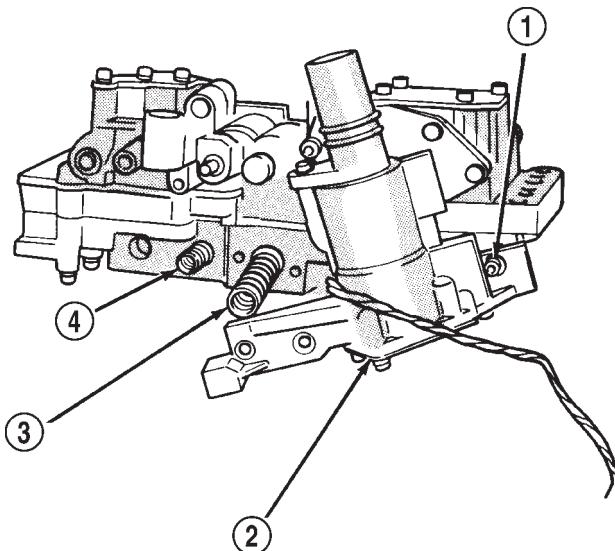
(3) Install 3-4 shift valve and spring.

(4) Install converter clutch timing valve and spring.

(5) Position plug on end of converter clutch valve spring. Then compress and hold springs and plug in place with fingers of one hand.

(6) Swing accumulator housing upward over valve springs and plug.

(7) Hold accumulator housing firmly in place and install remaining two attaching screws. Be sure springs and clutch valve plug are properly seated (Fig. 143). Tighten screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.).



J9321-160

Fig. 142 Converter Clutch And 3-4 Shift Valve Springs

- 1 – RIGHT-SIDE SCREW
- 2 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR
- 3 – 3-4 SHIFT VALVE SPRING
- 4 – CONVERTER CLUTCH VALVE SPRING

VALVE BODY FINAL

(1) Install boost valve, valve spring, retainer and cover plate. Tighten cover plate screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

(2) Insert manual lever detent spring in upper housing.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

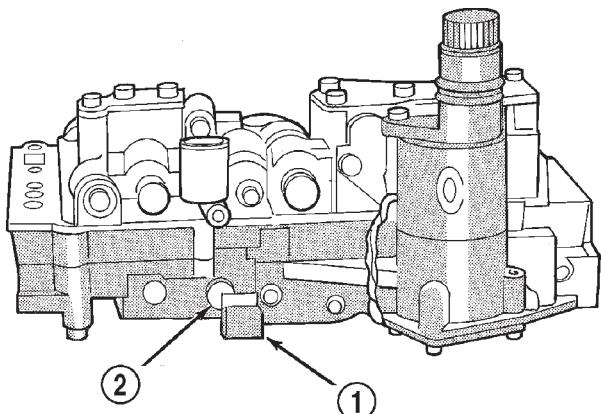


Fig. 143 Seating 3-4 Accumulator On Lower Housing

- 1 – ACCUMULATOR BOX
2 – CONVERTER CLUTCH VALVE PLUG

(3) Position detent ball on end of spring. Then hold detent ball and spring in detent housing with Retainer Tool 6583 (Fig. 144).

(4) Install throttle lever in upper housing. Then install manual lever over throttle lever and start manual lever into housing.

(5) Align manual lever with detent ball and manual valve. Hold throttle lever upward. Then press down on manual lever until fully seated. Remove detent ball retainer tool after lever is seated.

(6) Then install manual lever seal, washer and E-clip.

(7) Verify that throttle lever is aligned with end of kickdown valve stem and that manual lever arm is engaged in manual valve (Fig. 145).

(8) Position line pressure adjusting screw in adjusting screw bracket.

(9) Install spring on end of line pressure regulator valve.

(10) Install switch valve spring on tang at end of adjusting screw bracket.

(11) Install manual valve.

(12) Install throttle valve and spring.

(13) Install kickdown valve and detent.

(14) Install pressure regulator valve.

(15) Install switch valve.

(16) Position adjusting screw bracket on valve body. Align valve springs and press bracket into place. Install short, upper bracket screws first and long bottom screw last. Verify that valve springs and bracket are properly aligned. Then tighten all three bracket screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

(17) Perform Line Pressure and Throttle Pressure adjustments. Refer to adjustment section of this group for proper procedures.

(18) Lubricate solenoid case connector O-rings and shaft of manual lever with light coat of petroleum jelly.

(19) Attach solenoid case connector to 3-4 accumulator with shoulder-type screw. Connector has small locating tang that fits in dimple at top of accumulator housing (Fig. 146). Seat tang in dimple before tightening connector screw.

(20) Install solenoid assembly and gasket. Tighten solenoid attaching screws to 8 N·m (72 in. lbs.) torque.

(21) Verify that solenoid wire harness is properly routed (Fig. 147). **Solenoid harness must be clear of manual lever and park rod and not be pinched between accumulator housing and cover.**

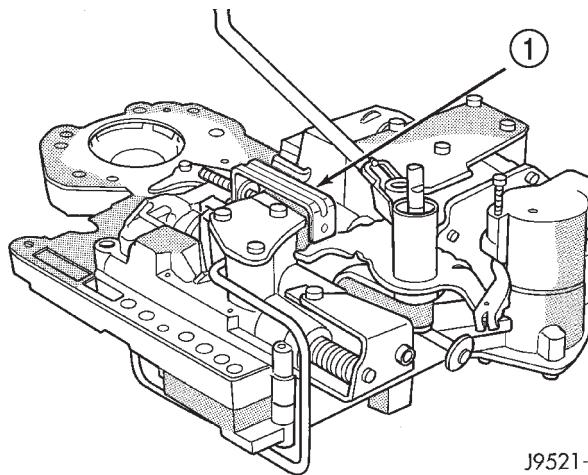


Fig. 144 Detent Ball Spring

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6583 POSITIONED ON DETENT HOUSING

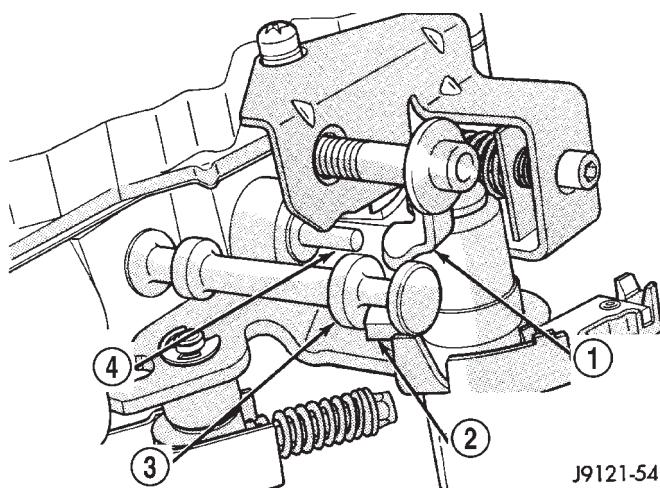


Fig. 145 Manual And Throttle Lever Alignment

- 1 – THROTTLE LEVER
2 – MANUAL LEVER VALVE ARM
3 – MANUAL VALVE
4 – KICKDOWN VALVE

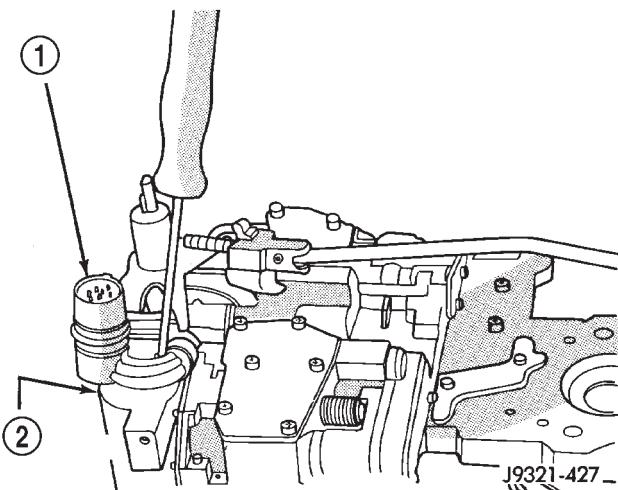


Fig. 146 Solenoid Harness Case Connector Shoulder Bolt

1 – SOLENOID HARNESS CASE CONNECTOR
2 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING

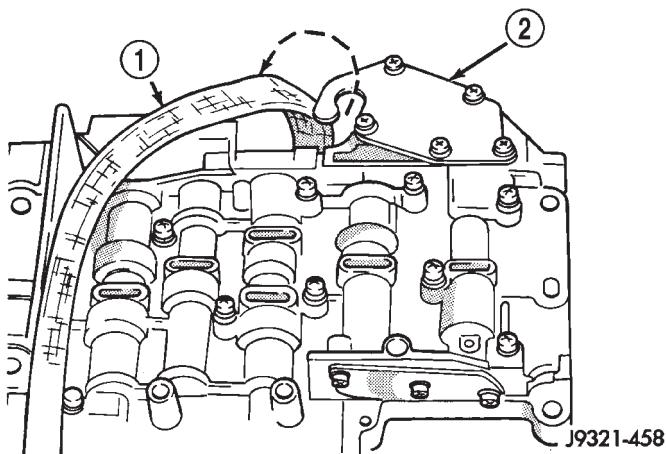


Fig. 147 Solenoid Harness Routing

1 – OVERDRIVE/CONVERTER SOLENOID WIRE HARNESS
2 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR COVER PLATE

GOVERNOR BODY, SENSOR AND SOLENOID

- (1) Turn valve body assembly over so accumulator side of transfer plate is facing down.
- (2) Install new O-rings on governor pressure solenoid and sensor.
- (3) Lubricate solenoid and sensor O-rings with clean transmission fluid.
- (4) Install governor pressure sensor in governor body.
- (5) Install governor pressure solenoid in governor body. Push solenoid in until it snaps into place in body.
- (6) Position governor body gasket on transfer plate.

(7) Install retainer plate on governor body and around solenoid. Be sure solenoid connector is positioned in retainer cutout.

(8) Align screw holes in governor body and transfer plate. Then install and tighten governor body screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

(9) Connect harness wires to governor pressure solenoid and governor pressure sensor.

(10) Install fluid filter and pan.

(11) Lower vehicle.

(12) Fill transmission with recommended fluid and road test vehicle to verify repair.

TRANSMISSION

DISASSEMBLY

(1) Clean transmission exterior with steam gun or with solvent. Wear eye protection during cleaning operations.

(2) Place transmission in a vertical position.

(3) Measure and record input shaft end play readings.

(4) Remove shift and throttle levers from valve body manual lever shaft.

(5) Place transmission in horizontal position.

(6) Remove transmission oil pan and gasket.

(7) Remove filter from valve body (Fig. 148). Keep filter screws separate from other valve body screws. Filter screws are longer and should be kept with filter.

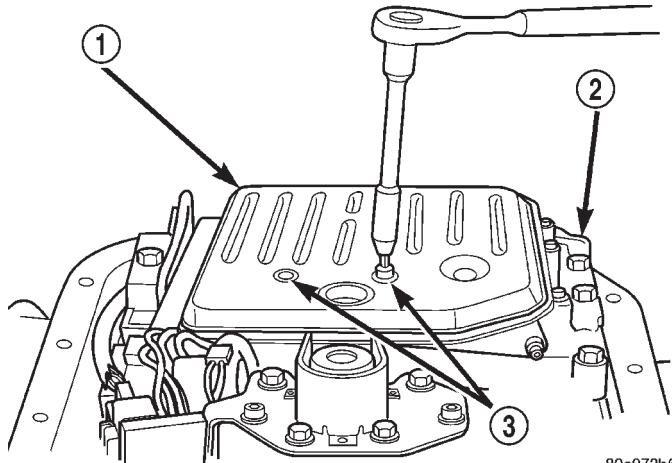


Fig. 148 Oil Filter Removal

1 – OIL FILTER
2 – VALVE BODY
3 – FILTER SCREWS (2)

(8) Remove park/neutral position switch.

(9) Remove hex head bolts attaching valve body to transmission case (Fig. 149). A total of 10 bolts are used. Note different bolt lengths for assembly reference.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(10) Remove valve body assembly. Push valve body harness connector out of case. Then work park rod and valve body out of case (Fig. 150).

(11) Remove accumulator piston and inner and outer springs (Fig. 151).

(12) Remove pump oil seal with suitable pry tool or slide-hammer mounted screw.

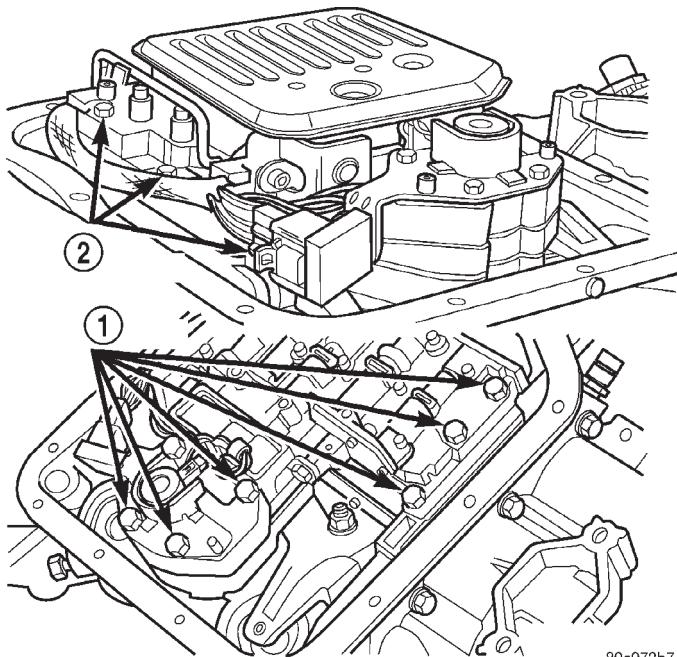


Fig. 149 Valve Body Bolt Locations

- 1 – VALVE BODY BOLTS
2 – VALVE BODY BOLTS

(13) Loosen front band adjusting screw locknut 4-5 turns. Then tighten band adjusting screw until band is tight around front clutch retainer. This prevents front/rear clutches from coming out with pump and possibly damaging clutch or pump components.

(14) Remove oil pump bolts.

(15) Thread bolts of Slide Hammer Tools C-3752 into threaded holes in pump body flange (Fig. 152).

(16) Bump slide hammer weights outward to remove pump and reaction shaft support assembly from case (Fig. 152).

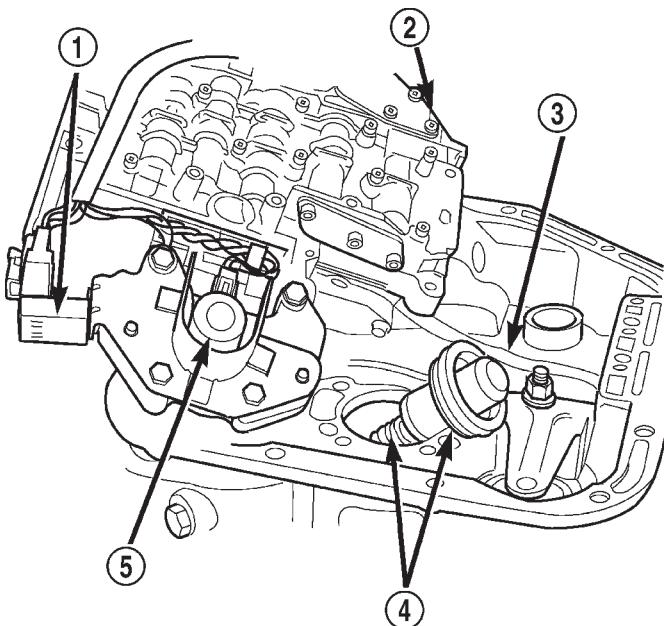


Fig. 150 Valve Body Removal

- 1 – GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR
2 – VALVE BODY
3 – PARK ROD
4 – ACCUMULATOR PISTON
5 – GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID

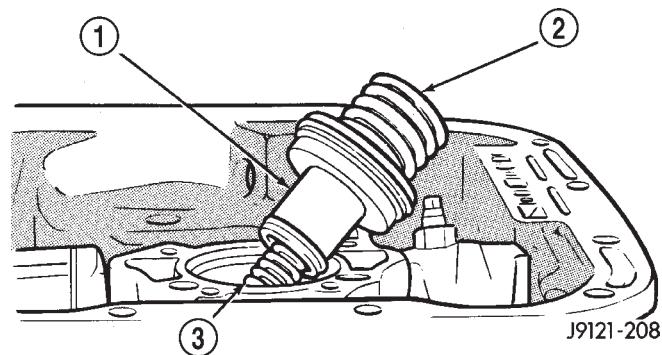


Fig. 151 Accumulator Piston And Springs

- 1 – ACCUMULATOR PISTON
2 – OUTER SPRING
3 – INNER SPRING

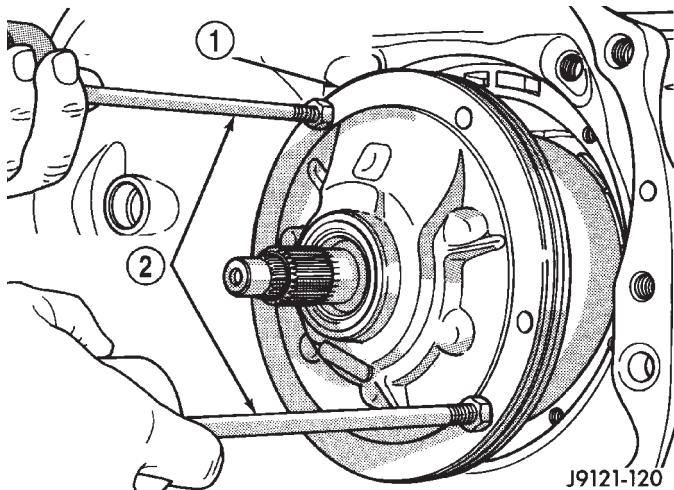


Fig. 152 Removing Oil Pump And Reaction Shaft Support Assembly

1 – OIL PUMP AND REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT ASSEMBLY
2 – SLIDE HAMMER TOOLS C-3752

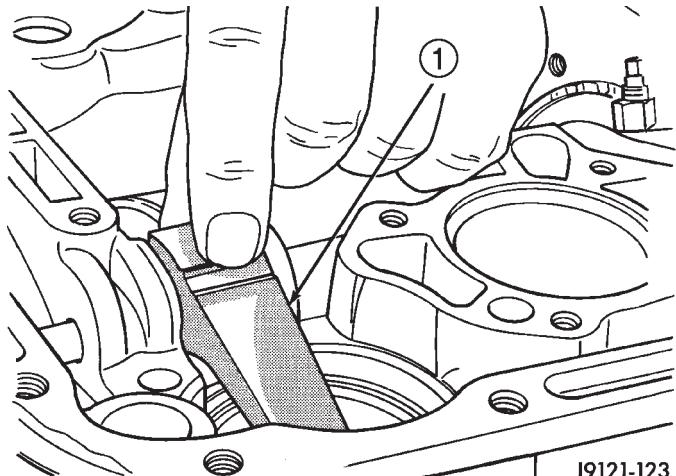


Fig. 154 Removing/Installing Front Band Lever

1 – FRONT BAND LEVER

- (17) Loosen front band adjusting screw until band is completely loose.
- (18) Squeeze front band together and remove band strut (Fig. 153).
- (19) Remove front band lever (Fig. 154).
- (20) Remove front band lever shaft plug, if necessary, from converter housing.
- (21) Remove front band lever shaft.

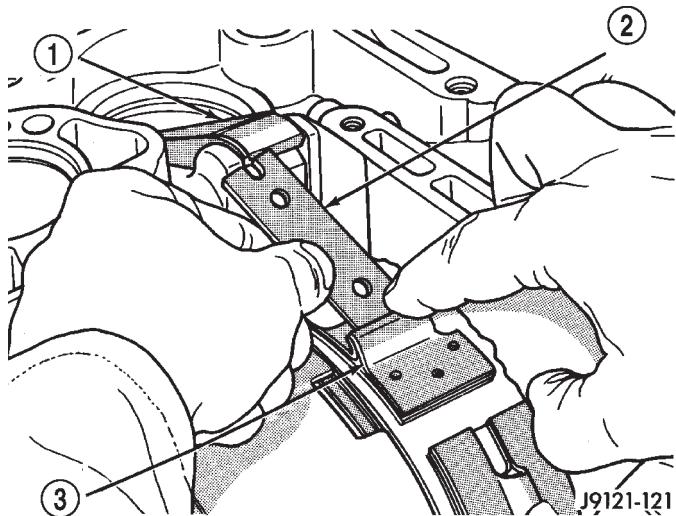


Fig. 153 Removing/Installing Front Band Strut

1 – BAND LEVER
2 – BAND STRUT
3 – FRONT BAND

- (22) Remove front and rear clutch units as assembly. Grasp input shaft, hold clutch units together and remove them from case (Fig. 155).

- (23) Lift front clutch off rear clutch (Fig. 156). Set clutch units aside for overhaul.

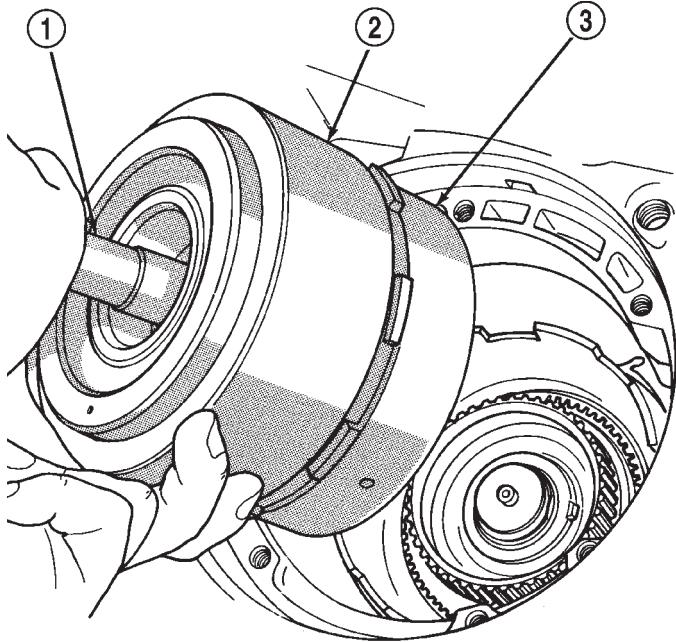


Fig. 155 Removing Front/Rear Clutch Assemblies

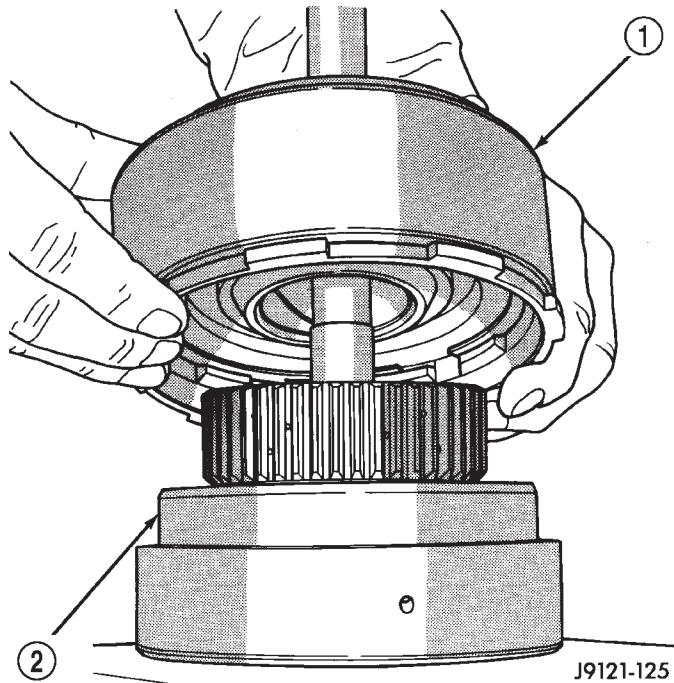
1 – INPUT SHAFT
2 – FRONT CLUTCH
3 – REAR CLUTCH

- (24) Remove intermediate shaft thrust washer from front end of shaft or from rear clutch hub (Fig. 157).

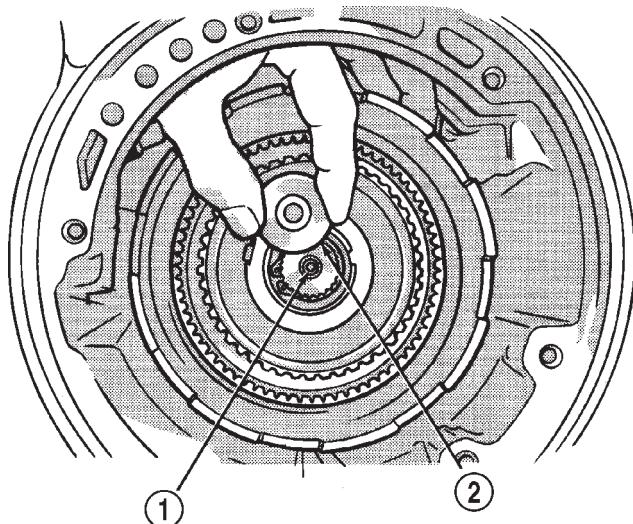
- (25) Remove output shaft thrust plate from intermediate shaft hub (Fig. 158).

- (26) Slide front band off driving shell (Fig. 159) and remove band from case.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 156 Separating Front/Rear Clutch Assemblies**

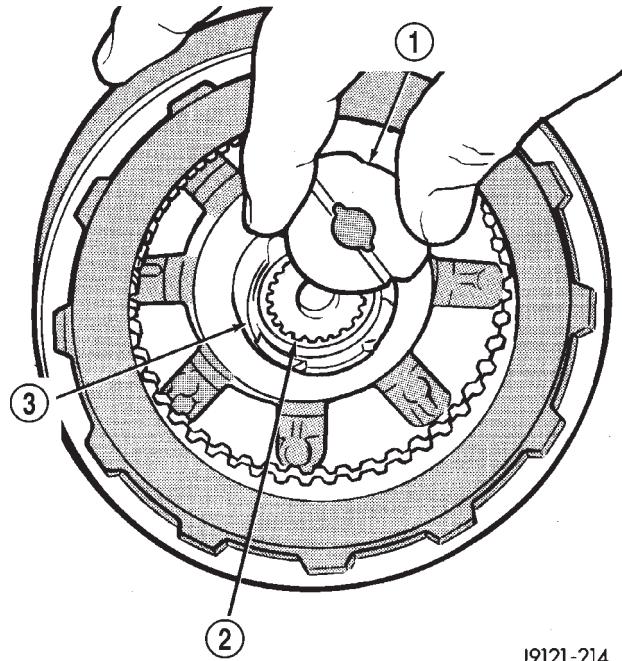
- 1 – FRONT CLUTCH
- 2 – REAR CLUTCH



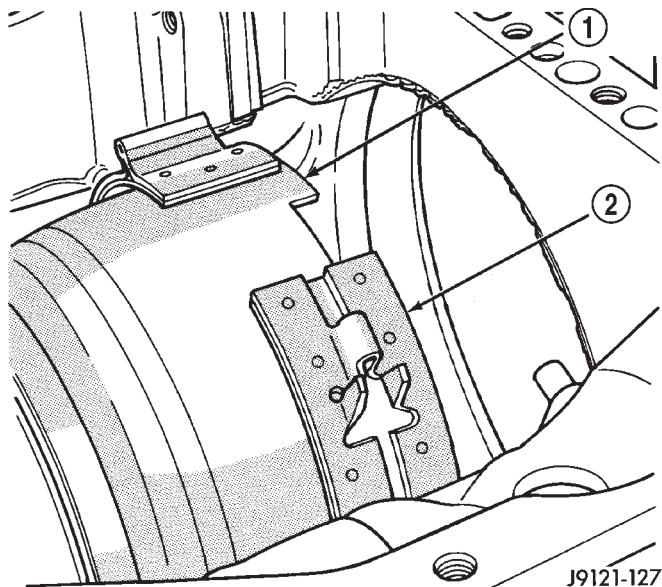
J9121-215

Fig. 158 Removing Intermediate Shaft Thrust Plate

- 1 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT HUB
- 2 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT THRUST PLATE

**Fig. 157 Removing Intermediate Shaft Thrust Washer**

- 1 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT THRUST WASHER
- 2 – INPUT SHAFT
- 3 – REAR CLUTCH RETAINER HUB

**Fig. 159 Front Band Removal/Installation**

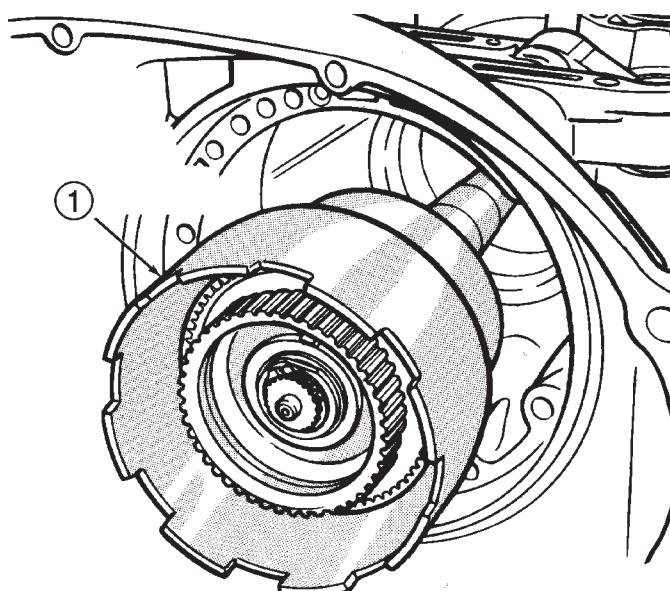
- 1 – DRIVING SHELL
- 2 – FRONT BAND

(27) Remove planetary geartrain as assembly (Fig. 160). Support geartrain with both hands during removal. Do not allow machined surfaces on intermediate shaft or overdrive piston retainer to become nicked or scratched.

(28) If overdrive unit is not to be serviced, install Alignment Shaft 6227-2 into the overdrive unit to prevent misalignment of the overdrive clutches during service of main transmission components.

(29) Loosen rear band adjusting screw 4-5 turns.

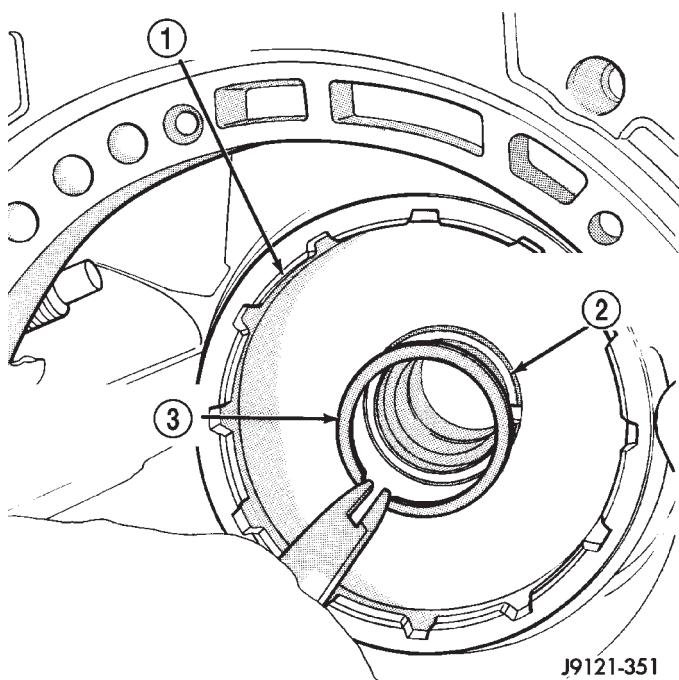
(30) Remove low-reverse drum snap ring (Fig. 161).



J9121-217

Fig. 160 Removing Planetary Geartrain And Intermediate Shaft Assembly

1 – PLANETARY GEARTRAIN AND INTERMEDIATE SHAFT ASSEMBLY



J9121-351

Fig. 161 Removing Low-Reverse Drum Snap Ring

1 – LOW-REVERSE DRUM
2 – HUB OF OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER
3 – LOW-REVERSE DRUM SNAP RING

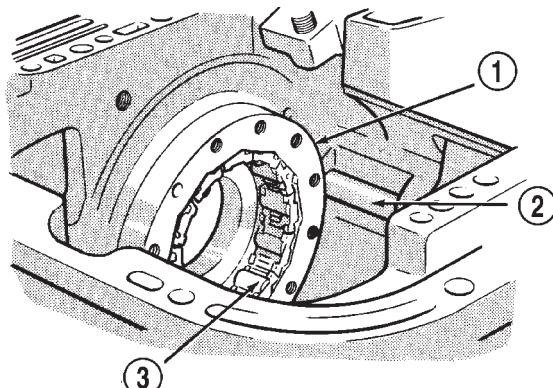
(31) Remove low-reverse drum and reverse band.

(32) Remove overrunning clutch roller and spring assembly as a unit (Fig. 162).

(33) Compress front servo rod guide about 1/8 inch with Valve Spring Compressor C-3422-B (Fig. 163).

(34) Remove front servo rod guide snap ring. **Exercise caution when removing snap ring. Servo bore can be scratched or nicked if care is not exercised.**

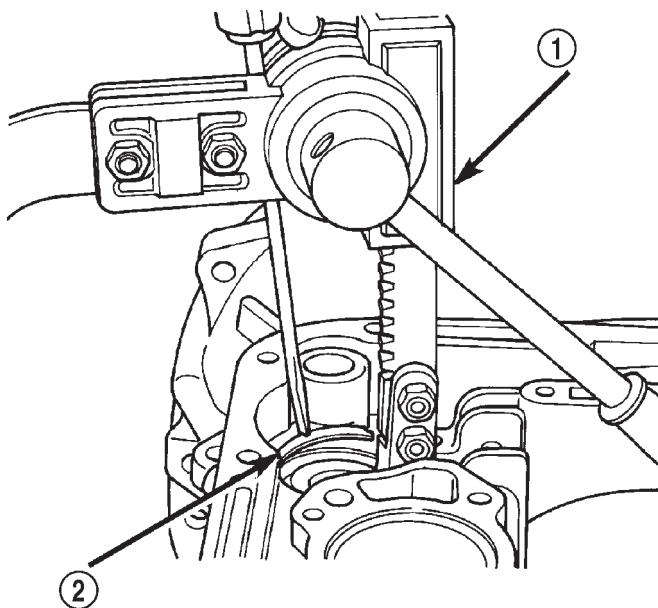
(35) Remove compressor tools and remove front servo rod guide, spring and servo piston.



J9121-222

Fig. 162 Overrunning Clutch Assembly Removal

1 – OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM
2 – REAR BAND REACTION PIN
3 – OVERRUNNING CLUTCH ASSEMBLY



80be44b7

Fig. 163 Compressing Front Servo Rod Guide

1 – SPRING COMPRESSOR TOOL C-3422-B
2 – ROD GUIDE SNAP RING

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(36) Compress rear servo spring retainer about 1/16 inch with Valve Spring Compressor C-3422-B (Fig. 164).

(37) Remove rear servo spring retainer snap ring. Then remove compressor tools and remove rear servo spring and piston.

(38) Inspect transmission components.

NOTE: TO SERVICE THE OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM OR OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER, REFER TO OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM SERVICE IN THIS SECTION.

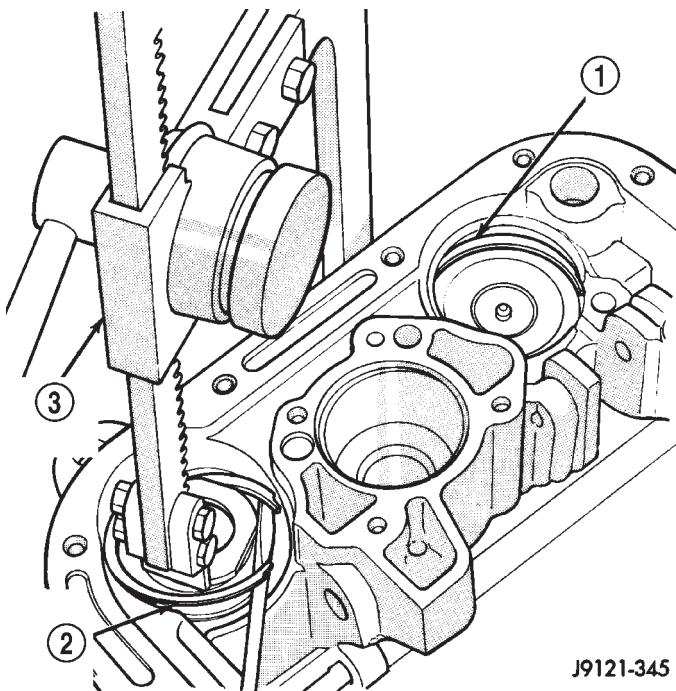


Fig. 164 Compressing Rear Servo Spring

- 1 – FRONT SERVO SNAP RING
- 2 – REAR SERVO SNAP RING
- 3 – SPECIAL TOOL

ASSEMBLY

Do not allow dirt, grease, or foreign material to enter the case or transmission components during assembly. Keep the transmission case and components clean. Also make sure the tools and workbench area used for assembly operations are equally clean.

Shop towels used for wiping off tools and hands must be made from **lint free** material. Lint will stick to transmission parts and could interfere with valve operation, or even restrict fluid passages.

Lubricate the transmission components with Mopar® transmission fluid during reassembly. Use Mopar® Door Ease, or Ru-Glyde on seals and O-rings to ease installation.

Petroleum jelly can also be used to hold thrust washers, thrust plates and gaskets in position during

assembly. However, **do not** use chassis grease, bearing grease, white grease, or similar lubricants on any transmission part. These types of lubricants can eventually block or restrict fluid passages and interfere with valve operation. Use petroleum jelly only.

Do not force parts into place. The transmission components and subassemblies are easily installed by hand when properly aligned.

If a part seems extremely difficult to install, it is either misaligned or incorrectly assembled. Also verify that thrust washers, thrust plates and seal rings are correctly positioned before assembly. These parts can interfere with proper assembly if mis-positioned.

The planetary geartrain, front/rear clutch assemblies and oil pump are all much easier to install when the transmission case is upright.

(1) Install rear servo piston, spring and retainer (Fig. 165). Install spring on top of servo piston and install retainer on top of spring.

(2) Install front servo piston assembly, servo spring and rod guide (Fig. 166).

(3) Compress front/rear servo springs with Valve Spring Compressor C-3422-B and install each servo snap ring (Fig. 167).

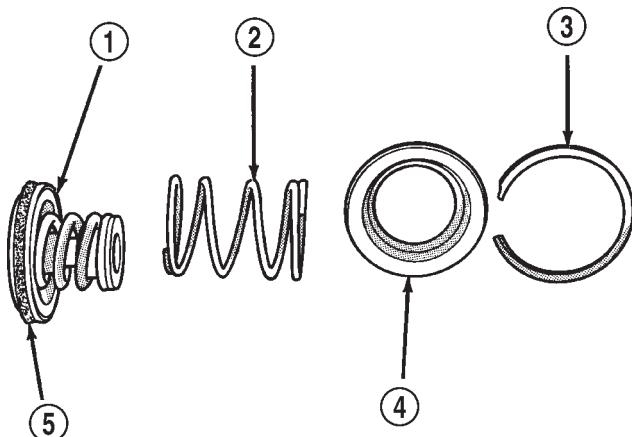


Fig. 165 Rear Servo Components

- 1 – SERVO PISTON
- 2 – PISTON SPRING
- 3 – SNAP RING
- 4 – RETAINER
- 5 – PISTON SEAL

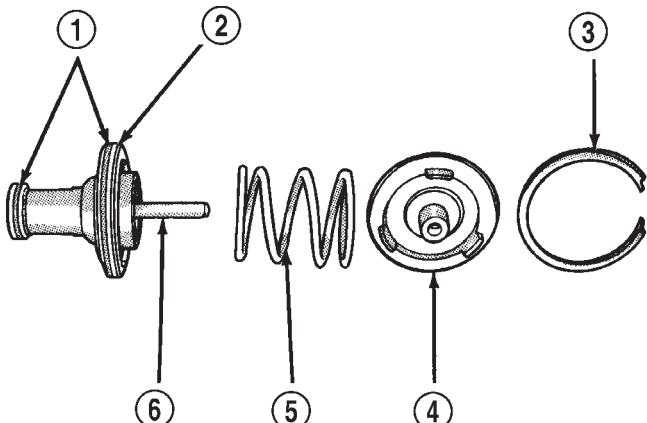
(4) Lubricate clutch cam rollers with transmission fluid.

(5) Install rear band in case (Fig. 168). Be sure twin lugs on band are seated against reaction pin.

(6) Install low-reverse drum and check overrunning clutch operation as follows:

(a) Lubricate overrunning clutch race (on drum hub) with transmission fluid.

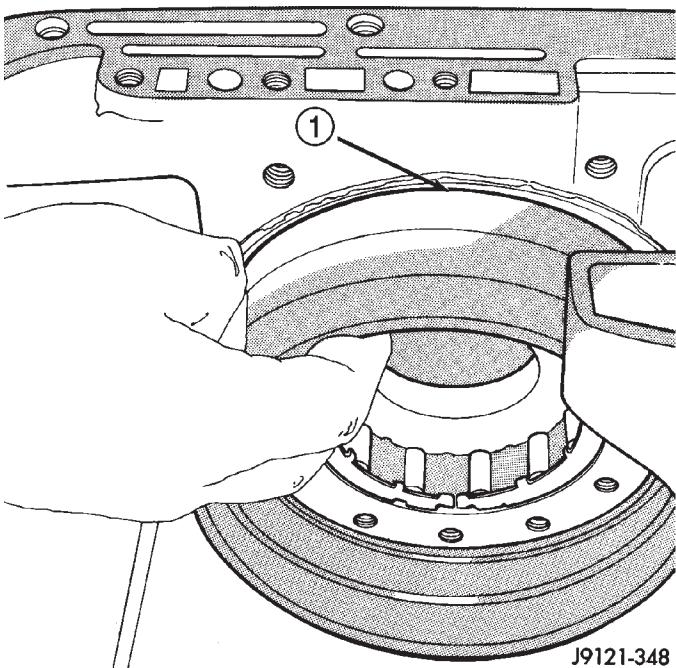
(b) Guide drum through rear band.



J9121-344

Fig. 166 Front Servo Components

- 1 - PISTON SEAL RINGS
- 2 - SERVO PISTON
- 3 - SNAP RING
- 4 - ROD GUIDE
- 5 - SPRING
- 6 - ROD

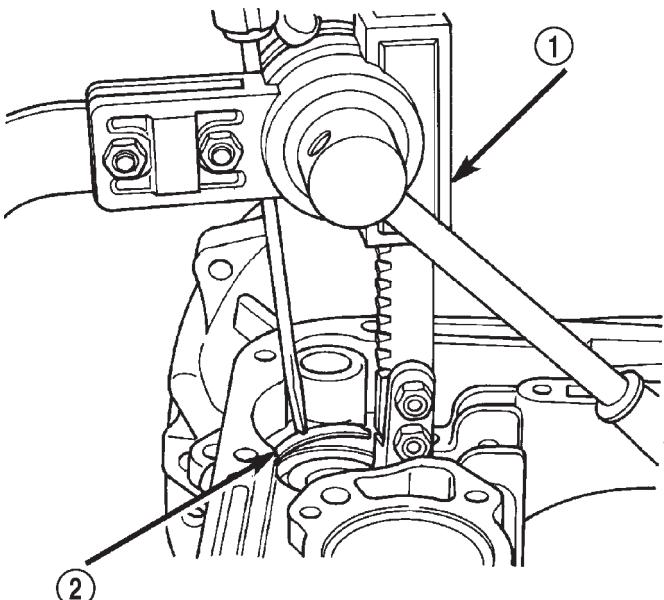


J9121-348

Fig. 168 Rear Band Installation

- 1 - REAR BAND

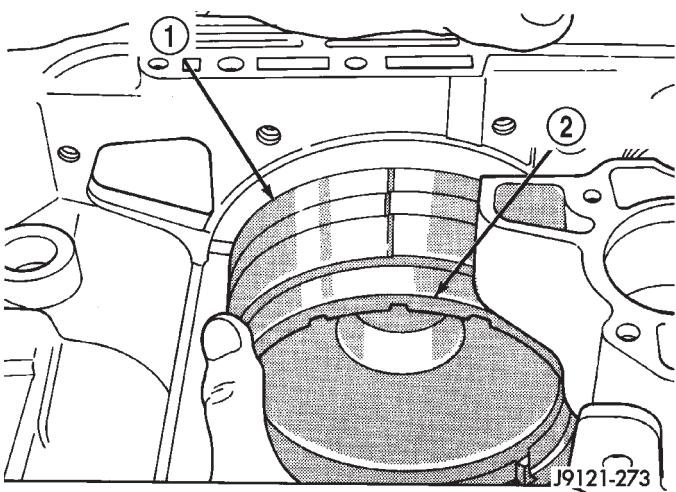
in counterclockwise direction (as viewed from front of case).



80be44b7

Fig. 167 Compressing Front/Rear Servo Springs

- 1 - SPRING COMPRESSOR TOOL C-3422-B
- 2 - ROD GUIDE SNAP RING



J9121-273

Fig. 169 Installing Low-Reverse Drum

- 1 - REAR BAND
- 2 - LOW-REVERSE DRUM

(c) Tilt drum slightly and start race (on drum hub) into overrunning clutch rollers.

(d) Press drum rearward and turn it in clockwise direction until drum seats in overrunning clutch (Fig. 169).

(e) Turn drum back and forth. **Drum should rotate freely in clockwise direction and lock**

(7) Install snap ring that secures low-reverse drum to hub of overdrive piston retainer (Fig. 170).

(8) Install rear band lever and pivot pin (Fig. 171). Align lever with pin bores in case and push pivot pin into place.

(9) Install planetary geartrain assembly (Fig. 172).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

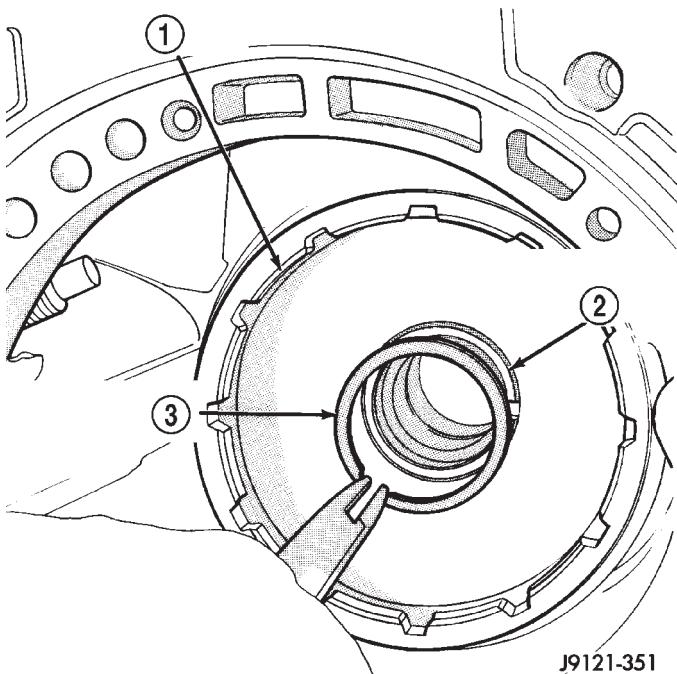


Fig. 170 Installing Low-Reverse Drum Retaining Snap Ring

- 1 – LOW-REVERSE DRUM
- 2 – HUB OF OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER
- 3 – LOW-REVERSE DRUM SNAP RING

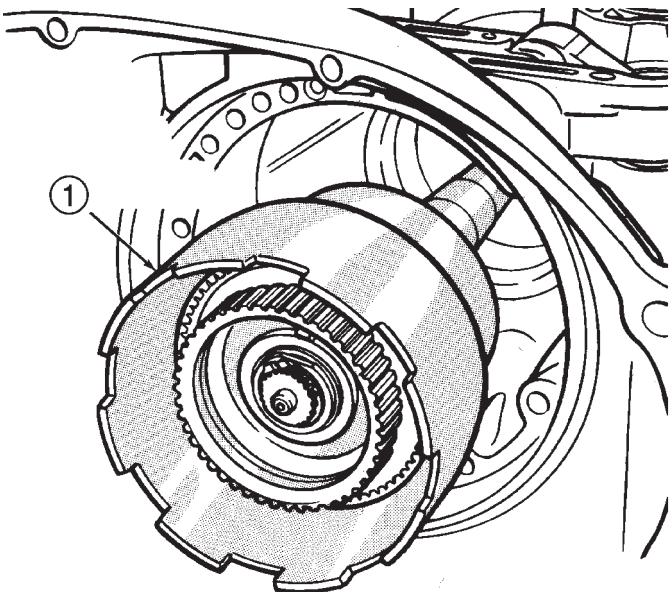


Fig. 172 Installing Planetary Geartrain

- 1 – PLANETARY GEARTRAIN AND INTERMEDIATE SHAFT ASSEMBLY

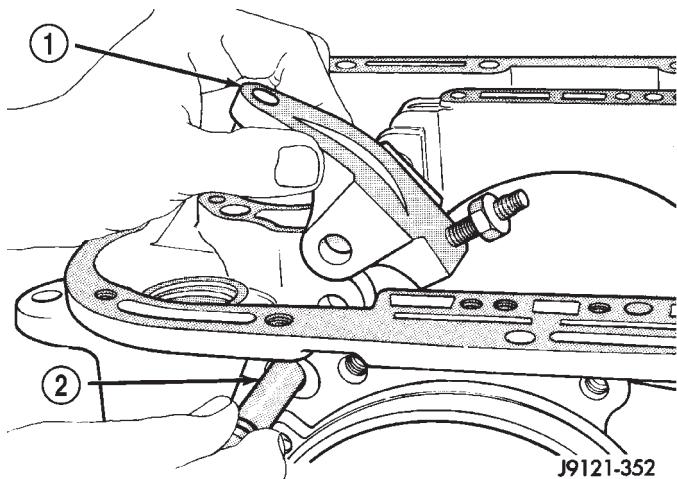


Fig. 171 Rear Band Lever And Pivot Pin Installation

- 1 – REAR BAND LEVER
- 2 – LEVER PIVOT PIN

(10) Install thrust plate on intermediate shaft hub (Fig. 173). Use petroleum jelly to hold thrust plate in place.

(11) Check seal ring on rear clutch retainer hub and seal rings on input shaft (Fig. 174). Also verify that shaft seal rings are installed in sequence shown.

(12) Install rear clutch thrust washer (Fig. 175). Use additional petroleum jelly to hold washer in place if necessary.

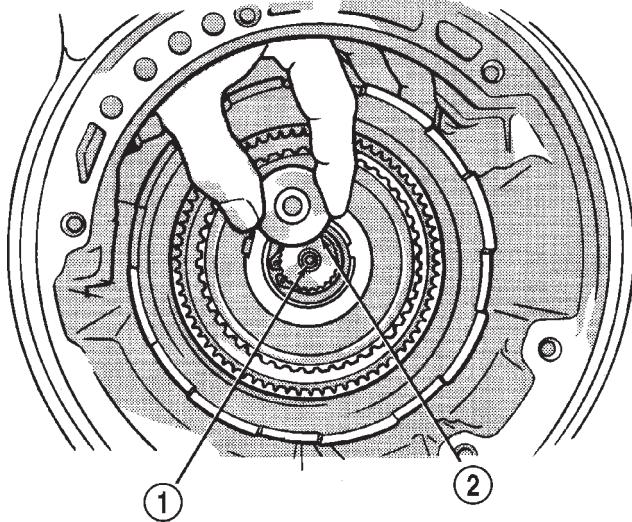


Fig. 173 Installing Intermediate Shaft Thrust Plate

- 1 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT HUB
- 2 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT THRUST PLATE

(13) Align clutch discs in front clutch and install front clutch on rear clutch (Fig. 176). Rotate front clutch retainer back and forth until completely seated on rear clutch retainer.

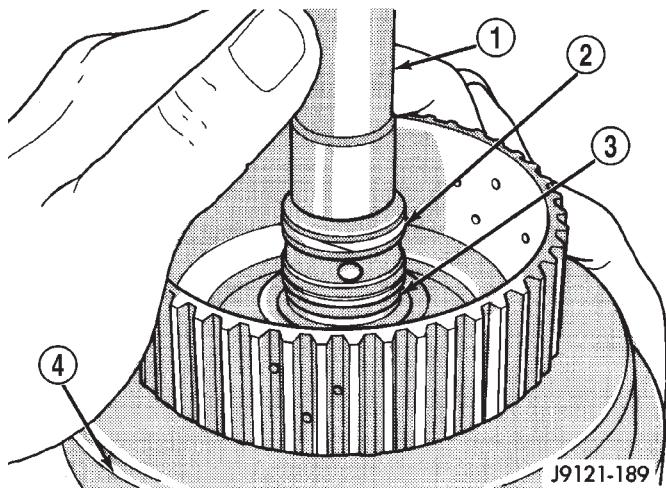


Fig. 174 Input Shaft Seal Ring Location

- 1 – INPUT SHAFT
- 2 – TEFLON SEAL RING
- 3 – METAL SEAL RING
- 4 – REAR CLUTCH RETAINER

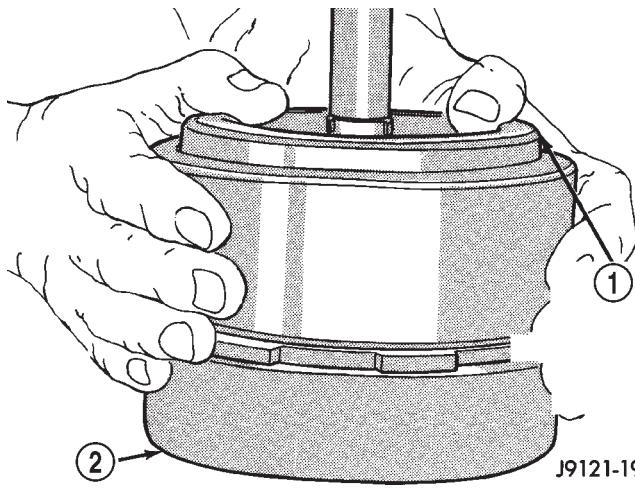


Fig. 176 Assembling Front And Rear Clutch Units

- 1 – TURN FRONT CLUTCH BACK & FORTH UNTIL SEATED
- 2 – REAR CLUTCH ASSEMBLY

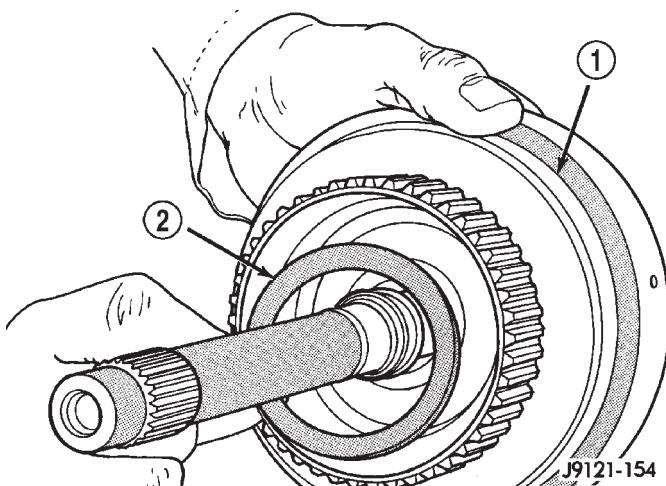


Fig. 175 Installing Rear Clutch Thrust Washer

- 1 – REAR CLUTCH RETAINER
- 2 – REAR CLUTCH THRUST WASHER (FIBER)

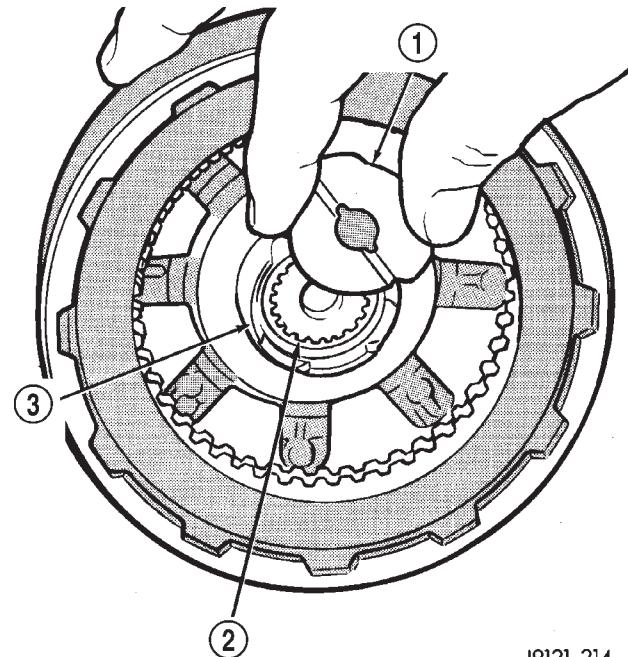


Fig. 177 Installing Intermediate Shaft Thrust Plate

- 1 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT THRUST WASHER
- 2 – INPUT SHAFT
- 3 – REAR CLUTCH RETAINER HUB

(14) Coat intermediate shaft thrust washer with petroleum jelly. Then install washer in rear clutch hub (Fig. 177). Use enough petroleum jelly to hold washer in place. **Be sure grooved side of washer faces rearward (toward output shaft) as shown. Also note that washer only fits one way in clutch hub.** Note thickness of this washer. It is a select fit part and is used to control transmission end play.

(15) Align drive teeth on rear clutch discs with small screwdriver (Fig. 178). This makes installation on front planetary easier.

(16) Raise front end of transmission upward as far as possible and support case with wood blocks. Front/rear clutch and oil pump assemblies are easier to

install if transmission is as close to upright position as possible.

(17) Slide front band into case.

(18) Install front and rear clutch units as assembly (Fig. 179). Align rear clutch with front annulus gear and install assembly in driving shell. **Be sure output shaft thrust washer and thrust plate are not displaced during installation.**

(19) Carefully work assembled clutches back and forth to engage and seat rear clutch discs on front

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

annulus gear. Also be sure front clutch drive lugs are fully engaged in slots of driving shell after installation.

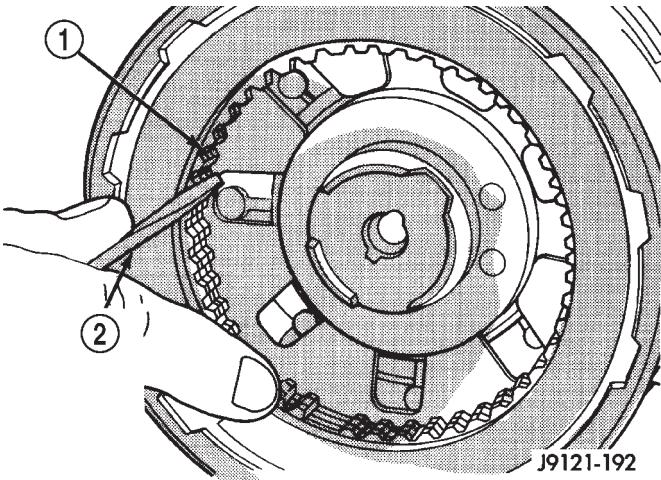


Fig. 178 Aligning Rear Clutch Disc Lugs

- 1 – REAR CLUTCH DISCS
- 2 – USE SMALL SCREWDRIVER TO ALIGN CLUTCH DISC TEETH

(22) Tighten band adjusting screw until band just grips clutch retainer. Verify that front/rear clutches are still seated before continuing.

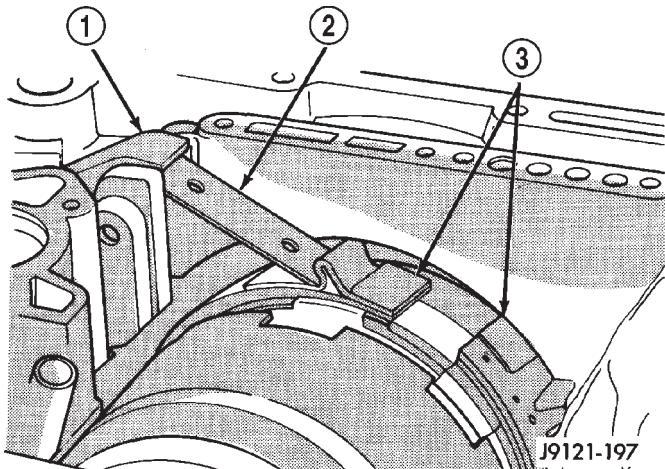


Fig. 180 Front Band Linkage Installation

- 1 – BAND LEVER
- 2 – BAND STRUT
- 3 – FRONT BAND

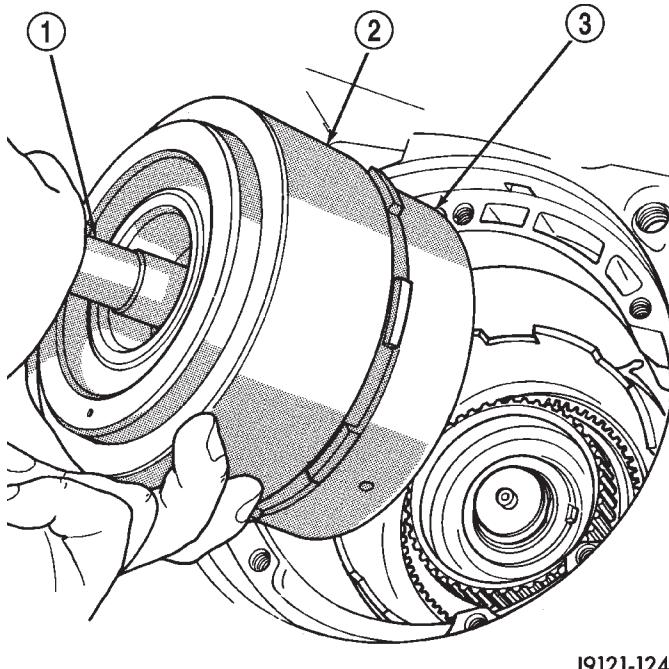


Fig. 179 Installing Front/Rear Clutch Assemblies

- 1 – INPUT SHAFT
- 2 – FRONT CLUTCH
- 3 – REAR CLUTCH

(20) Assemble front band strut.

(21) Install front band adjuster, strut and adjusting screw (Fig. 180).

(23) Check seal rings on reaction shaft support hub. Verify that seal rings are hooked together and that front clutch thrust washer is properly positioned (Fig. 181). Use petroleum jelly to hold thrust washer in place if necessary.

(24) Lubricate oil pump body seal with petroleum jelly. Lubricate pump shaft seal lip with petroleum jelly.

(25) Thread two Pilot Stud Tools C-3288-B into bolt holes in oil pump bore flange (Fig. 182).

(26) Align and install oil pump gasket (Fig. 182).

(27) Install oil pump (Fig. 183). Align and position pump on pilot studs. Slide pump down studs and work it into front clutch hub and case by hand. Then install 2 or 3 pump bolts to hold pump in place.

(28) Remove pilot stud tools and install remaining oil pump bolts. Tighten bolts alternately in diagonal pattern to 20 N·m (15 ft. lbs.).

(29) Measure input shaft end play (Fig. 184).

NOTE: If end play is incorrect, transmission is incorrectly assembled, or the intermediate shaft thrust washer is incorrect. The intermediate shaft thrust washer is selective.

(a) Attach Adapter 8266-6 to Handle 8266-8.

(b) Attach dial indicator C-3339 to Handle 8266-8.

(c) Install the assembled tool onto the input shaft of the transmission and tighten the retaining screw on Adapter 8266-6 to secure it to the input shaft.

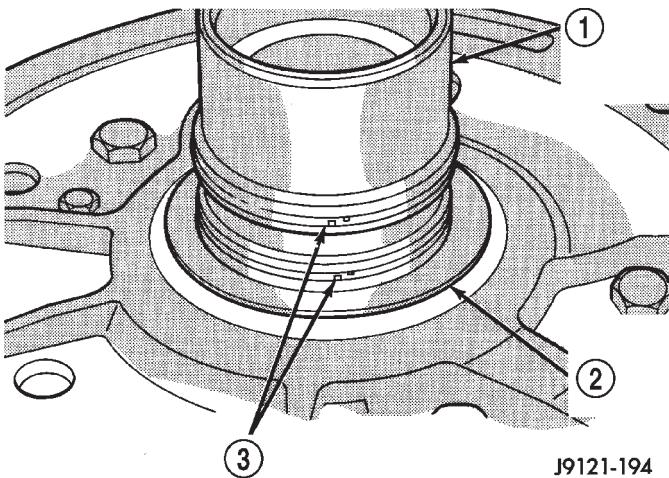


Fig. 181 Reaction Shaft Support Seal Rings And Front Clutch Thrust Washer

- 1 – REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT HUB
- 2 – FRONT CLUTCH THRUST WASHER
- 3 – SEAL RINGS

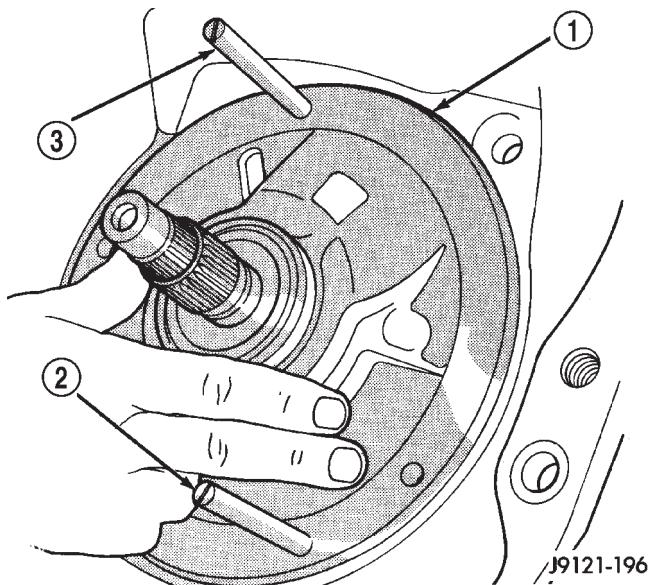


Fig. 183 Installing Oil Pump Assembly In Case

- 1 – OIL PUMP
- 2 – PILOT STUD TOOL
- 3 – PILOT STUD TOOL

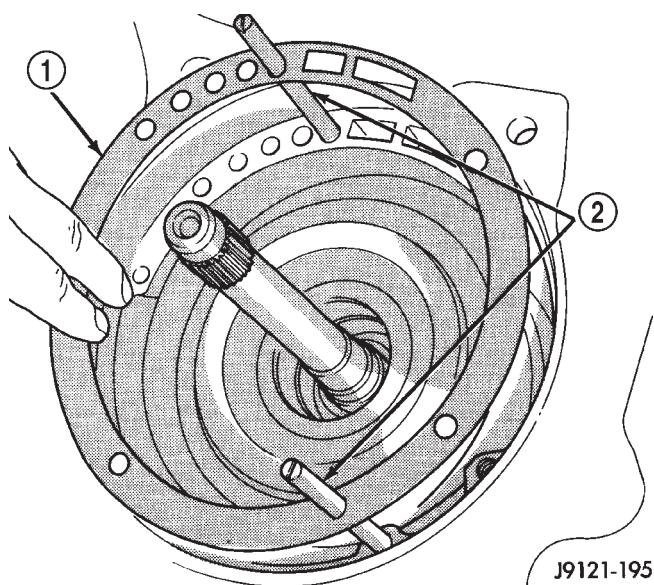


Fig. 182 Installing Pilot Studs And Oil Pump Gasket

- 1 – OIL PUMP GASKET
- 2 – PILOT STUD TOOLS C-3288-B

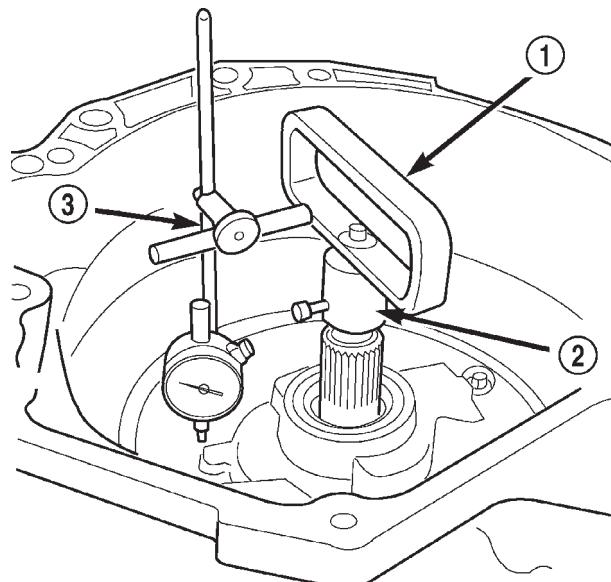


Fig. 184 Checking Input Shaft End Play

- 1 – TOOL 8266-8
- 2 – TOOL 8266-6
- 3 – TOOL C-3339

(d) Position the dial indicator plunger against a flat spot on the oil pump and zero the dial indicator.

(e) Move input shaft in and out and record reading. End play should be 0.56 - 2.31 mm (0.022 - 0.091 in.). Adjust as necessary.

(30) Install accumulator piston and inner and outer springs (Fig. 185).

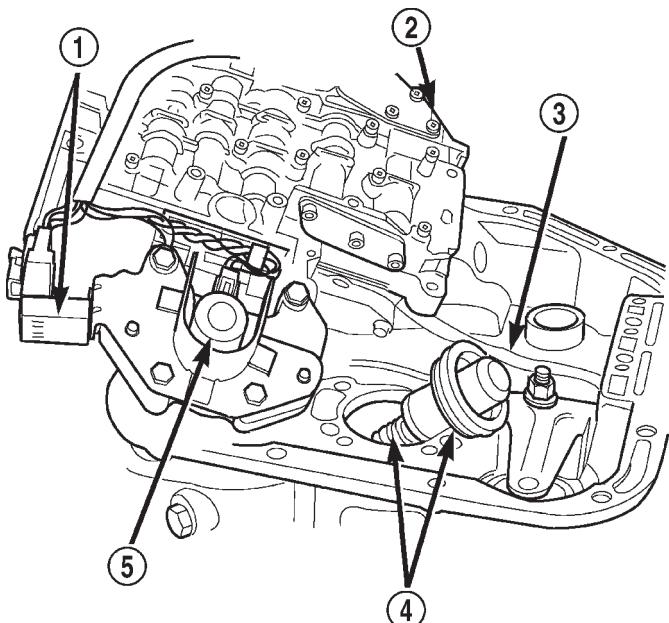
(31) Verify that valve body solenoid harness is secured in 3-4 accumulator housing cover plate.

(32) Install valve body as follows:

(a) Align and carefully insert park rod into pawl. Rod will make click noise as it enters pawl. Move rod slightly to check engagement.

(b) Align and seat valve body on case. Be sure manual lever shaft and overdrive connector are

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



80c072b8

Fig. 185 Accumulator Piston And Springs

- 1 – GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR
2 – VALVE BODY
3 – PARK ROD
4 – ACCUMULATOR PISTON
5 – GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID

fully seated in case. Also be sure valve body wiring is not pinched or kinked.

(c) Install and start all valve body attaching bolts by hand. Then tighten bolts evenly, in a diagonal pattern to 12 N·m (105 in. lbs.) torque. **Do not overtighten valve body bolts. This could result in distortion and cross leakage after installation..**

CAUTION: It is possible for the park rod to displace into a cavity just above the pawl sprag during installation. Make sure the rod is actually engaged in the pawl and has not displaced into the cavity.

(33) Install new filter on valve body. Tighten filter screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.).

(34) Adjust front and rear bands.

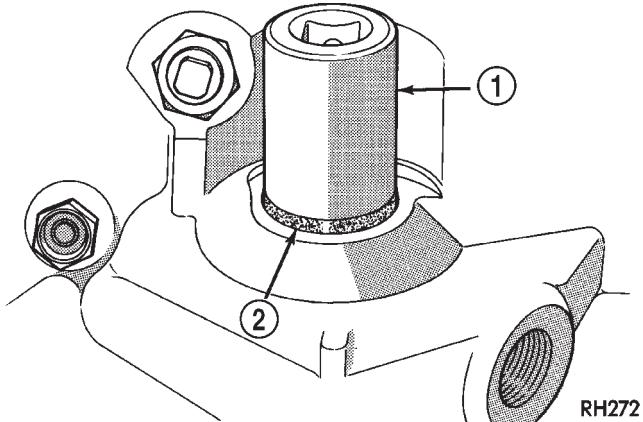
(35) Install seal on park/neutral position switch. Then install and tighten switch to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.).

(36) Install magnet in oil pan. Magnet goes on small protrusion at corner of pan.

(37) Position new oil pan gasket on case and install oil pan. Tighten pan bolts to 17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.).

(38) Install new valve body manual shaft seal in case (Fig. 186). Lubricate seal lip and manual shaft

with petroleum jelly. Start seal over shaft and into case. Seat seal with 15/16 inch, deep well socket.

**Fig. 186 Installing Manual Lever Shaft Seal**

- 1 – 15/16" SOCKET
2 – SEAL

(39) Install throttle valve and shift selector levers on valve body manual lever shaft.

OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER

DISASSEMBLY

NOTE: TO SERVICE THE OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM AND THE OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER, THE TRANSMISSION GEARTRAIN AND OVERDRIVE UNIT MUST BE REMOVED FROM THE TRANSMISSION.

- (1) Remove the overdrive piston (Fig. 187).
- (2) Remove the overdrive piston retainer bolts.
- (3) Remove overdrive piston retainer.
- (4) Remove case gasket.
- (5) Mark the position of the overrunning clutch cam in the case (Fig. 188).
- (6) Remove the overrunning clutch cam bolts.
- (7) Remove the overrunning clutch cam.

ASSEMBLY

(1) Examine bolt holes in overrunning clutch cam. Note that one hole is **not threaded** (Fig. 189). This hole must align with blank area in clutch cam bolt circle (Fig. 190). Mark hole location on clutch cam and blank area in case with grease pencil, paint stripe, or scribe mark for assembly reference.

(2) Mark location of non-threaded hole in clutch cam and blank area in bolt circle with grease pencil.

(3) Align and install overrunning clutch and cam in case (Fig. 191). **Be sure cam is correctly installed. Bolt holes in cam are slightly counter-**

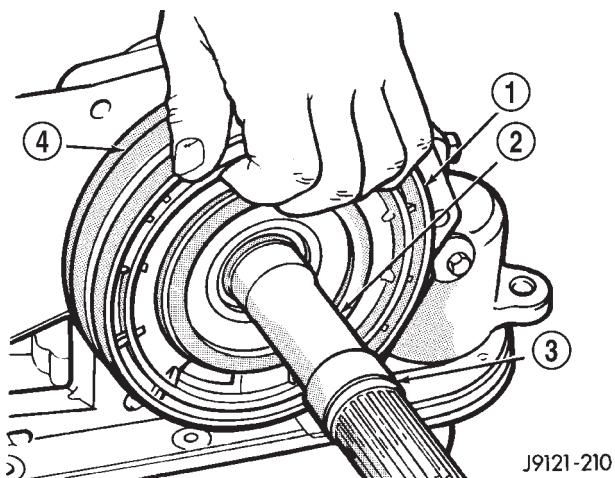


Fig. 187 Overdrive Piston Removal

- 1 – OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PISTON
- 2 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT
- 3 – SELECTIVE SPACER
- 4 – PISTON RETAINER

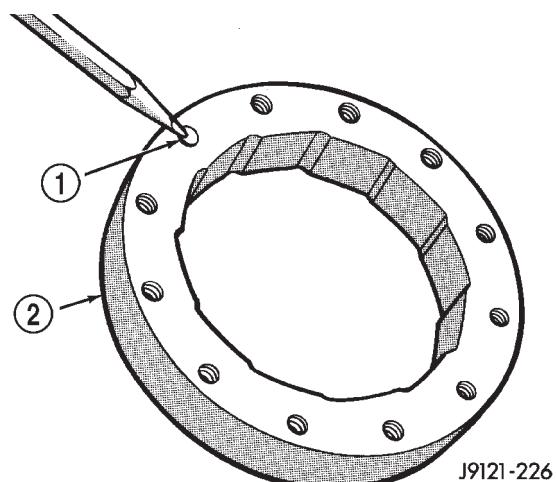


Fig. 189 Location Of Non-Threaded Hole In Clutch Cam

- 1 – NON-THREADED HOLE
- 2 – OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM

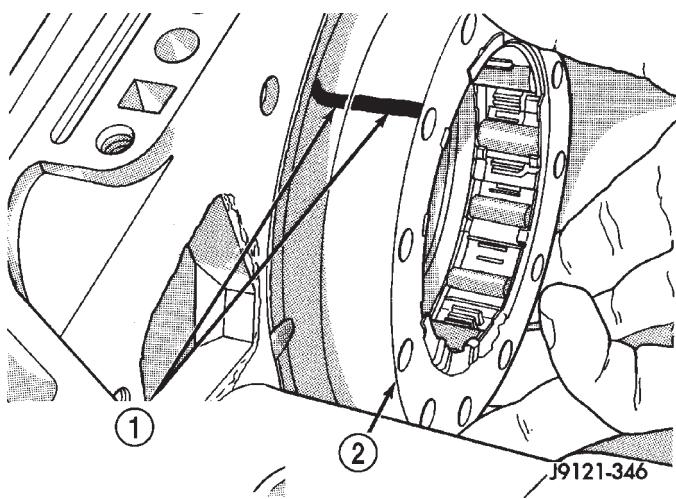


Fig. 188 Overrunning Clutch Cam Removal

- 1 – ALIGN MARKS IDENTIFYING NON-THREADED HOLE IN CAM AND CASE
- 2 – OVERRUNNING CLUTCH ASSEMBLY

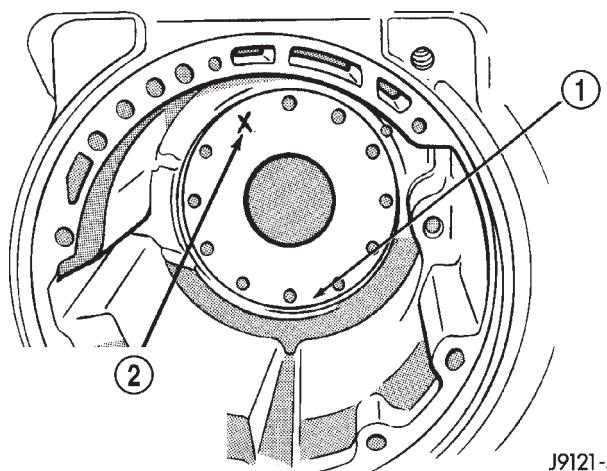


Fig. 190 Location Of Blank Area In Clutch Cam Bolt Circle

- 1 – OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM SEAT IN CASE
- 2 – NON-THREADED HOLE IN CLUTCH CAM ALIGNS HERE (BLANK AREA) OF SEAT

sunk on one side. Be sure this side of cam faces rearward (toward piston retainer).

(4) Verify that non-threaded hole in clutch cam is properly aligned. Check alignment by threading a bolt into each bolt hole. Adjust clutch cam position if necessary.

(5) Install and tighten overrunning clutch cam bolts to 17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.) torque. Note that clutch cam bolts are shorter than piston retainer bolts.

(6) Install new gasket at rear of transmission case. Use petroleum jelly to hold gasket in place. Be sure to align governor feed holes in gasket with feed passages in case (Fig. 192). Also install gasket before

overdrive piston retainer. Center hole in gasket is smaller than retainer and cannot be installed over retainer.

(7) Position overdrive piston retainer on transmission case and align bolt holes in retainer, gasket and case (Fig. 193). Then install and tighten retainer bolts to 17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.) torque.

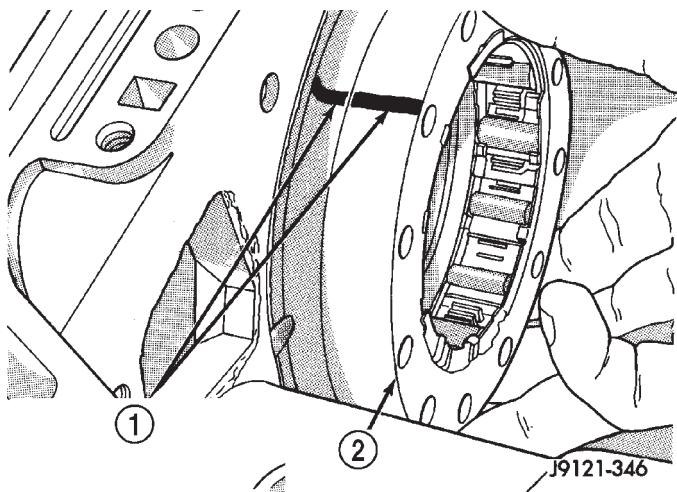
(8) Install new seals on over drive piston.

(9) Stand transmission case upright on bellhousing.

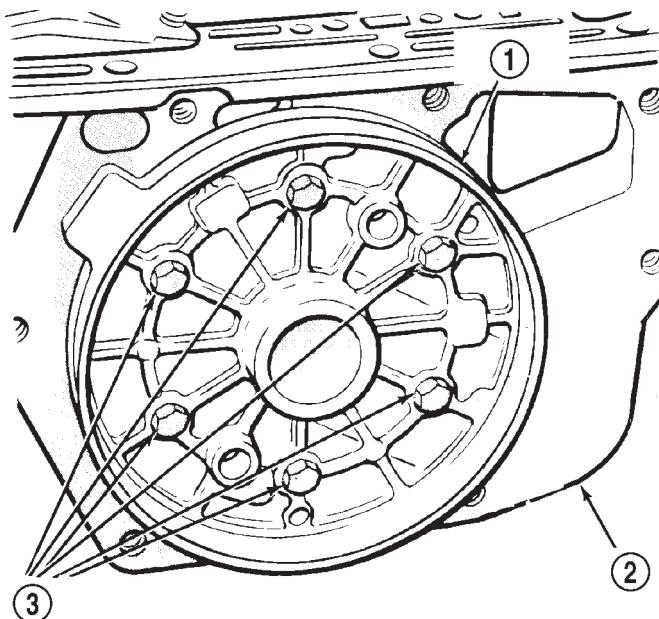
(10) Position Guide Ring 8114-1 on outer edge of overdrive piston retainer.

(11) Position Seal Guide 8114-2 on inner edge of overdrive piston retainer.

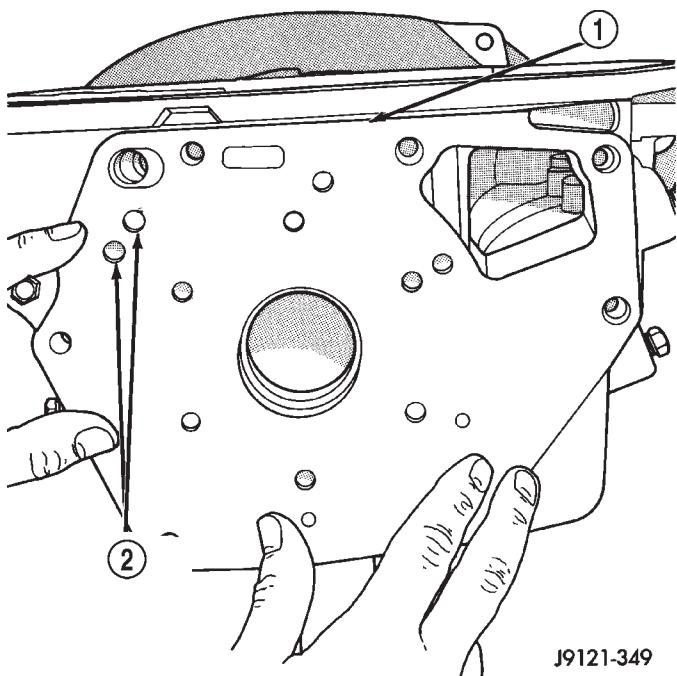
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 191 Overrunning Clutch Installation**

- 1 – ALIGN MARKS IDENTIFYING NON-THREADED HOLE IN CAM AND CASE
2 – OVERRUNNING CLUTCH ASSEMBLY

**Fig. 193 Aligning Overdrive Piston Retainer**

- 1 – PISTON RETAINER
2 – GASKET
3 – RETAINER BOLTS

**Fig. 192 Installing/Aligning Case Gasket**

- 1 – CASE GASKET
2 – BE SURE GOVERNOR TUBE FEED HOLES IN CASE AND GASKET ARE ALIGNED

(12) Install overdrive piston in overdrive piston retainer by: aligning locating lugs on overdrive piston to the two mating holes in retainer.

(a) Aligning locating lugs on overdrive piston to the two mating holes in retainer.

(b) Lubricate overdrive piston seals with Mopar® Door Ease, or equivalent.

(c) Install piston over Seal Guide 8114-2 and inside Guide Ring 8114-1.

(d) Push overdrive piston into position in retainer.

(e) Verify that the locating lugs entered the lug bores in the retainer.

NOTE: INSTALL THE REMAINING TRANSMISSION COMPONENTS AND OVERDRIVE UNIT.

FRONT SERVO PISTON**DISASSEMBLY**

- (1) Remove seal ring from rod guide (Fig. 194).
- (2) Remove small snap ring from servo piston rod. Then remove piston rod, spring and washer from piston.

(3) Remove and discard servo component O-ring and seal rings.

ASSEMBLY

Clean and inspect front servo components.

(1) Lubricate new O-ring and seal rings with petroleum jelly and install them on piston, guide and rod.

(2) Install rod in piston. Install spring and washer on rod. Compress spring and install snap ring (Fig. 194).

(3) Set servo components aside for installation during transmission reassembly.

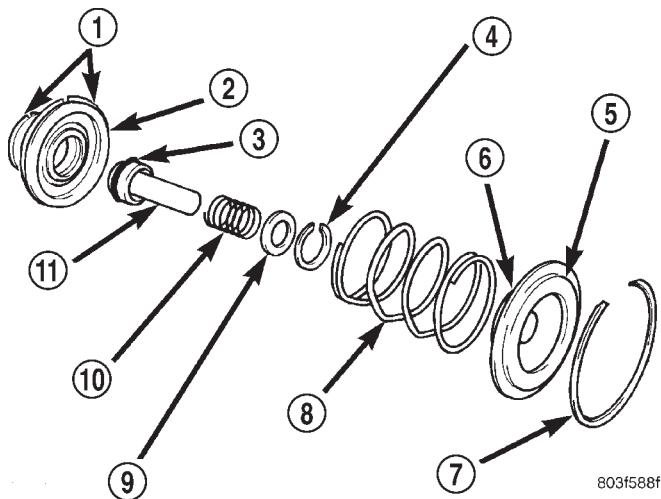


Fig. 194 Front Servo

- 1 - PISTON RINGS
- 2 - SERVO PISTON
- 3 - O-RING
- 4 - SNAP RING
- 5 - PISTON ROD GUIDE
- 6 - SEAL RING
- 7 - SNAP RING
- 8 - SERVO SPRING
- 9 - WASHER
- 10 - SPRING
- 11 - PISTON ROD

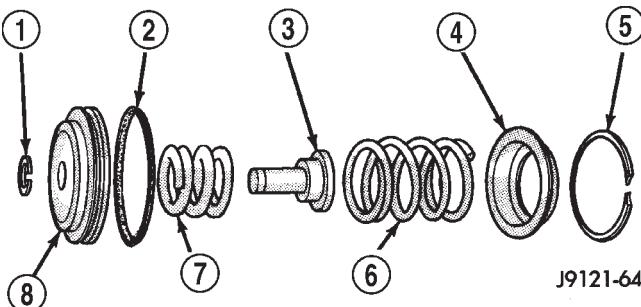


Fig. 195 Rear Servo Components

- 1 - SNAP RING
- 2 - PISTON SEAL
- 3 - PISTON PLUG
- 4 - SPRING RETAINER
- 5 - SNAP RING
- 6 - PISTON SPRING
- 7 - CUSHION SPRING
- 8 - PISTON

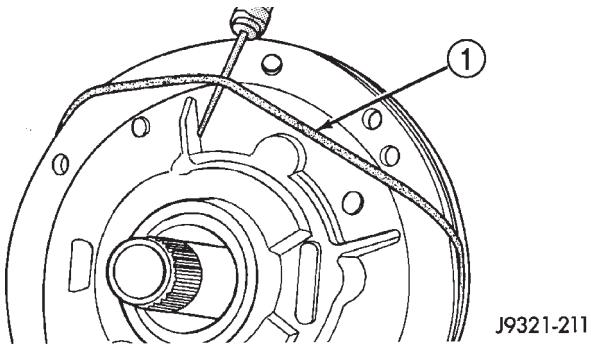


Fig. 196 Removing Pump Seal Ring

- 1 - PUMP HOUSING SEAL RING

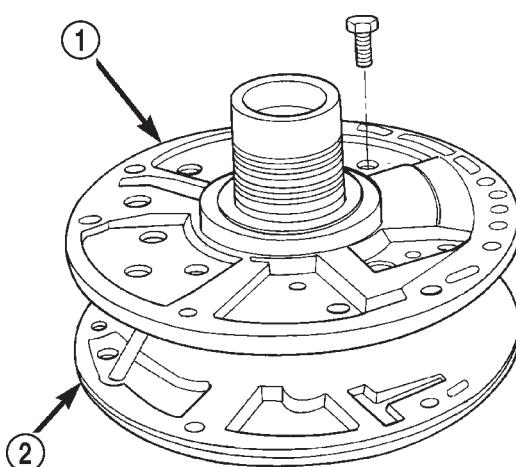


Fig. 197 Pump Support Bolts

- 1 - REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT
- 2 - PUMP

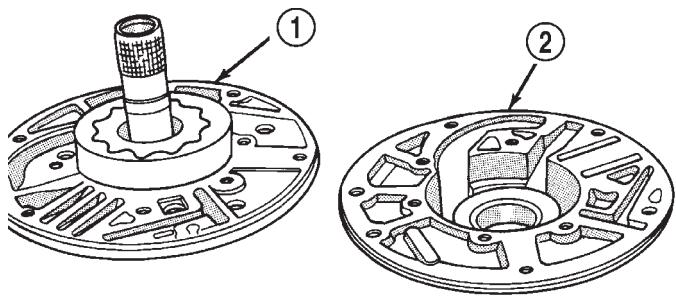
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(4) Separate support from pump housing (Fig. 198).

(5) Remove inner and outer gears from reaction shaft support (Fig. 199).

(6) If pump seal was not removed during transmission disassembly, remove seal with punch and hammer.

(7) Remove front clutch thrust washer from support hub (Fig. 200).



J9321-213

Fig. 198 Separating Pump Housing From Reaction Shaft Support

- 1 – REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT
2 – PUMP HOUSING

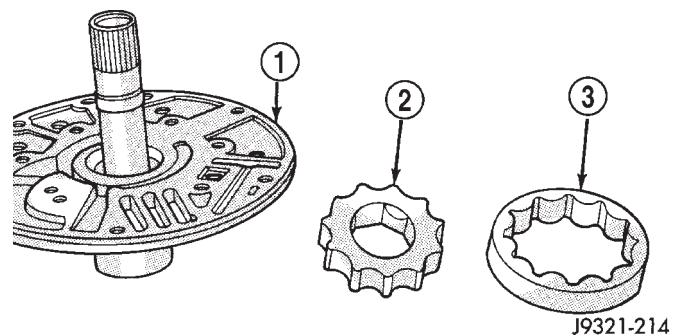


Fig. 199 Pump Gear Removal

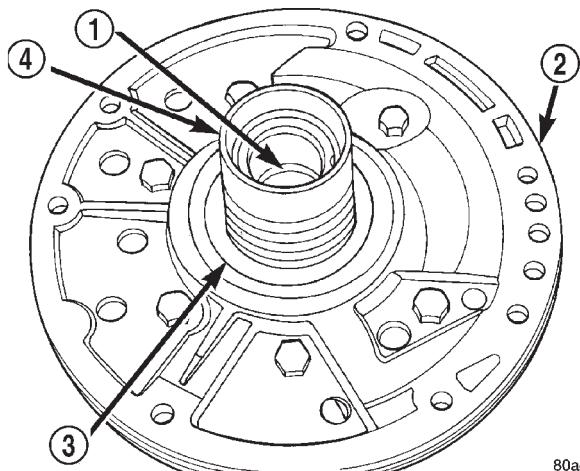
- 1 – REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT
2 – INNER GEAR
3 – OUTER GEAR

OIL PUMP BUSHING REPLACEMENT

(1) Remove pump bushing with Tool Handle C-4171 and Bushing Remover SP-3551 from Tool Set C-3887-J (Fig. 201).

(2) Install new pump bushing with Tool Handle C-4171 and Bushing Installer SP-5117 (Fig. 201). Bushing should be flush with pump housing bore.

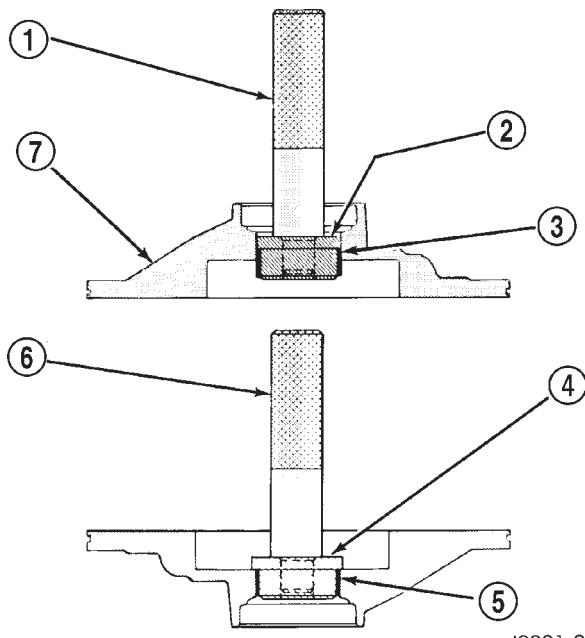
(3) Stake new pump bushing in two places with blunt punch (Fig. 202). Remove burrs from stake points with knife blade afterward.



80a483e8

Fig. 200 Support Hub Thrust Washer

- 1 – BUSHING
2 – REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT
3 – THRUST WASHER
4 – HUB



J9221-242

Fig. 201 Removing Oil Pump Bushing

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
2 – SPECIAL TOOL SP-3551
3 – BUSHING
4 – SPECIAL TOOL SP-5117
5 – BUSHING
6 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
7 – PUMP HOUSING

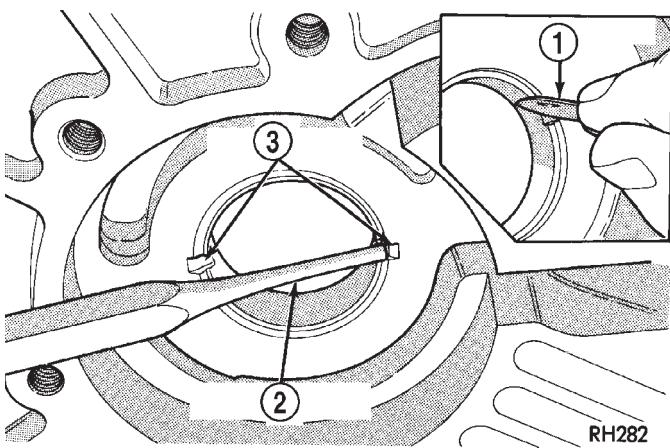


Fig. 202 Staking Oil Pump Bushing

- 1 – NARROW BLADE
- 2 – BLUNT PUNCH
- 3 – TWO STAKES

REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT BUSHING REMOVAL

(1) Assemble Bushing Remover Tools SP-1191, 3633 and 5324 (Fig. 203). **Do not clamp any part of reaction shaft or support in vise.**

(2) Hold Cup Tool SP-3633 firmly against reaction shaft and thread remover SP-5324 into bushing as far as possible by hand. Then thread remover tool 3-4 additional turns into bushing with a wrench.

(3) Turn remover tool hex nut down against remover cup to pull bushing from shaft. Clean all chips from shaft after bushing removal.

(4) Lightly grip old bushing in vise or with pliers and back remover tool out of bushing.

(5) Assemble Bushing Installer Tools C-4171 and SP-5325 (Fig. 203).

(6) Slide new bushing onto Installer Tool SP-5325.

(7) Position reaction shaft support upright on a clean smooth surface.

(8) Align bushing in bore. Then tap bushing into place until Bushing Installer SP-5325 bottoms.

(9) Clean reaction shaft support thoroughly after installing bushing.

ASSEMBLY

(1) Lubricate gear bore in pump housing with transmission fluid.

(2) Lubricate pump gears with transmission fluid.

(3) Support pump housing on wood blocks (Fig. 204).

(4) Install outer gear in pump housing (Fig. 204). Gear can be installed either way (it is not a one-way fit).

(5) Install pump inner gear (Fig. 205).

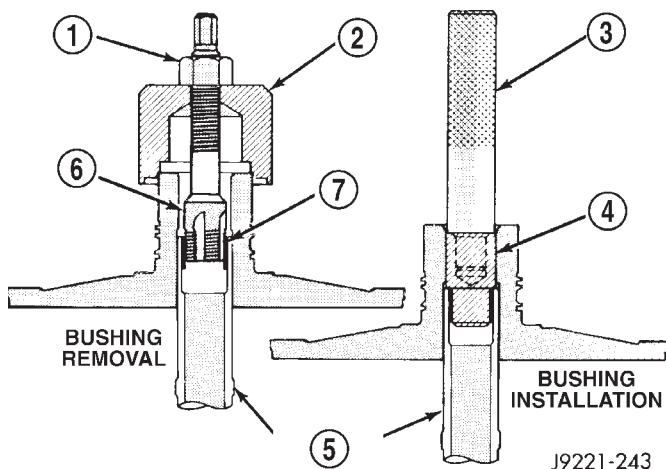


Fig. 203 Replacing Reaction Shaft Support Bushing

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL SP-1191
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL SP-3633
- 3 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
- 4 – SPECIAL TOOL SP-5325
- 5 – REACTION SHAFT
- 6 – SPECIAL TOOL SP-5324
- 7 – BUSHING

CAUTION: The pump inner gear is a one way fit. The bore on one side of the gear inside diameter (I.D.) is chamfered. Be sure the chamfered side faces forward (to front of pump).

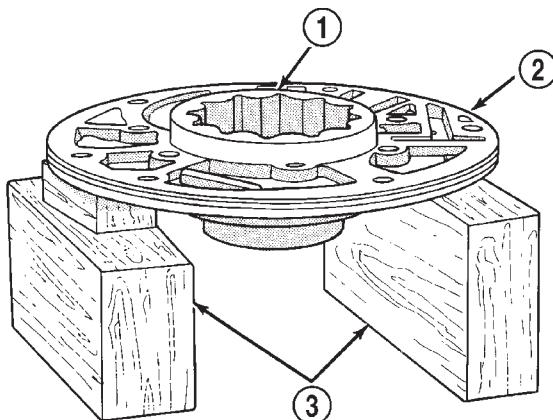
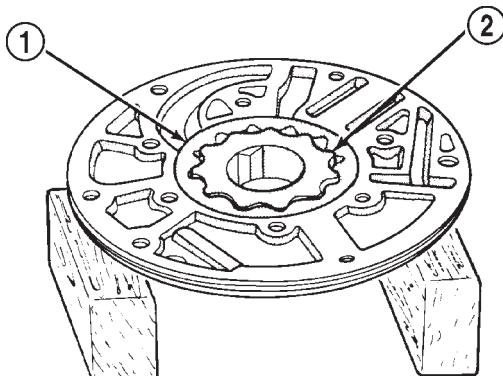


Fig. 204 Supporting Pump And Installing Outer Gear

- 1 – OUTER GEAR
- 2 – PUMP HOUSING
- 3 – WOOD BLOCKS

(6) Install new thrust washer on hub of reaction shaft support. Lubricate washer with transmission fluid or petroleum jelly.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



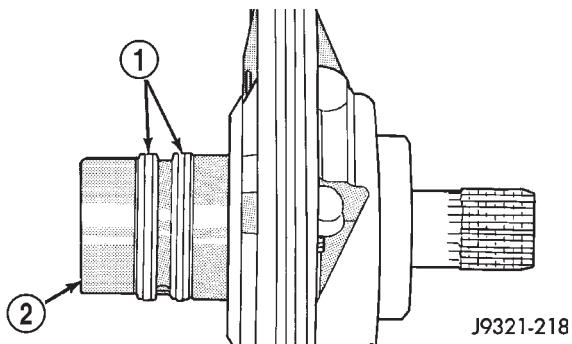
J9321-465

Fig. 205 Pump Inner Gear Installation

1 – OUTER GEAR
2 – INNER GEAR

(7) If reaction shaft seal rings are being replaced, install new seal rings on support hub (Fig. 206). Lubricate seal rings with transmission fluid or petroleum jelly after installation. Squeeze each ring until ring ends are securely hooked together.

CAUTION: The reaction shaft support seal rings will break if overspread, or twisted. If new rings are being installed, spread them only enough for installation. Also be very sure the ring ends are securely hooked together after installation. Otherwise, the rings will either prevent pump installation, or break during installation.

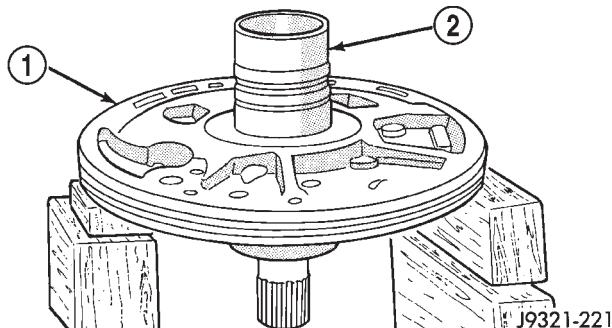
**Fig. 206 Hub Seal Ring Position**

1 – SEAL RINGS
2 – SUPPORT HUB

(8) Install reaction shaft support on pump housing (Fig. 207).

(9) Align reaction support on pump housing. Use alignment marks made at disassembly. Or, rotate support until bolt holes in support and pump housing are all aligned (holes are offset for one-way fit).

(10) Install all bolts that attach support to pump housing. Then tighten bolts finger tight.



J9321-221

Fig. 207 Assembling Reaction Shaft Support And Pump Housing

1 – PUMP HOUSING
2 – REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT

(11) Tighten support-to-pump bolts to required torque as follows:

(a) Reverse pump assembly and install it in transmission case. Position pump so bolts are facing out and are accessible.

(b) Secure pump assembly in case with 2 or 3 bolts, or with pilot studs.

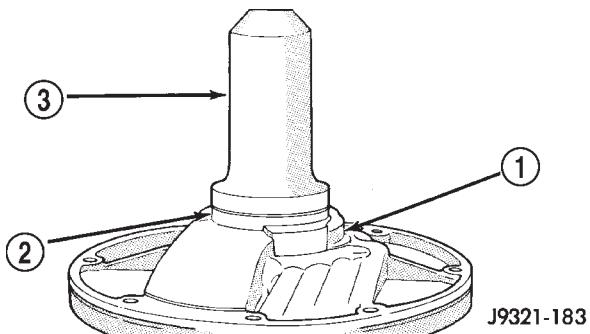
(c) Tighten support-to-pump bolts to 20 N·m (15 ft. lbs.).

(d) Remove pump assembly from transmission case.

(12) Install new oil seal in pump with Special Tool C-4193 and Tool Handle C-4171 (Fig. 208). Be sure seal lip faces inward.

(13) Install new seal ring around pump housing. Be sure seal is properly seated in groove.

(14) Lubricate lip of pump oil seal and O-ring seal with transmission fluid.

**Fig. 208 Pump Oil Seal Installation**

1 – PUMP BODY
2 – PUMP SEAL
3 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4193

FRONT CLUTCH

NOTE: The 42RE transmission uses four plates and discs for the front clutch.

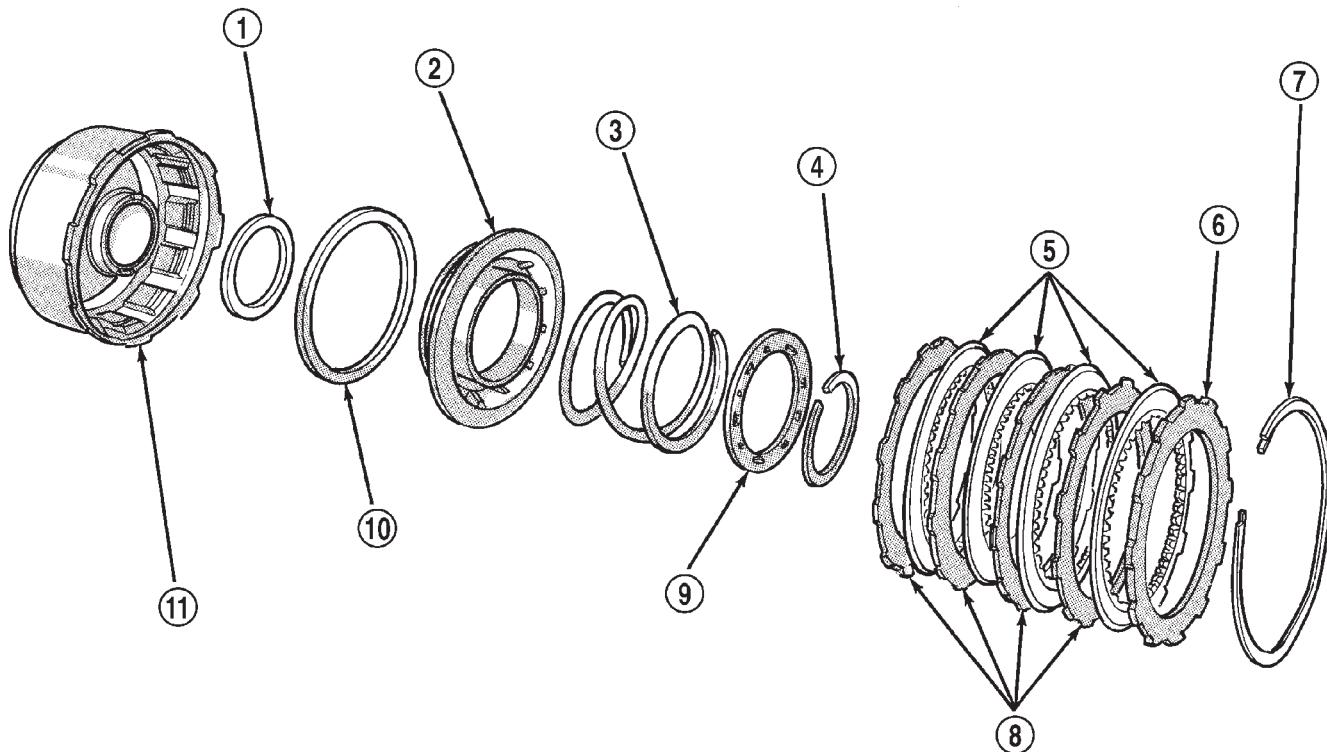


Fig. 209 42RE Front Clutch Components

J9321-222

- 1 – RETAINER HUB SEAL
- 2 – CLUTCH PISTON
- 3 – PISTON SPRING
- 4 – SPRING RETAINER SNAP RING
- 5 – CLUTCH DISCS
- 6 – PRESSURE PLATE

- 7 – SNAP RING (WAVED)
- 8 – CLUTCH PLATES
- 9 – SPRING RETAINER
- 10 – PISTON SEAL
- 11 – FRONT CLUTCH RETAINER

DISASSEMBLY

(1) Remove waved snap ring and remove pressure plate, clutch plates and clutch discs (Fig. 209).

(2) Compress clutch piston spring with Compressor Tool C-3575-A (Fig. 210). Be sure legs of tool are seated squarely on spring retainer before compressing spring.

(3) Remove retainer snap ring and remove compressor tool.

(4) Remove spring retainer and clutch spring. Note position of retainer on spring for assembly reference.

(5) Remove clutch piston from clutch retainer. Remove piston by rotating it up and out of retainer.

(6) Remove seals from clutch piston and clutch retainer hub. Discard both seals as they are not reusable.

ASSEMBLY

(1) Soak clutch discs in transmission fluid while assembling other clutch parts.

(2) Install new seals on piston and in hub of retainer. Be sure lip of each seal faces interior of clutch retainer.

(3) Lubricate lips of piston and retainer seals with liberal quantity of Mopar® Door Ease. Then lubricate retainer hub, bore and piston with light coat of transmission fluid.

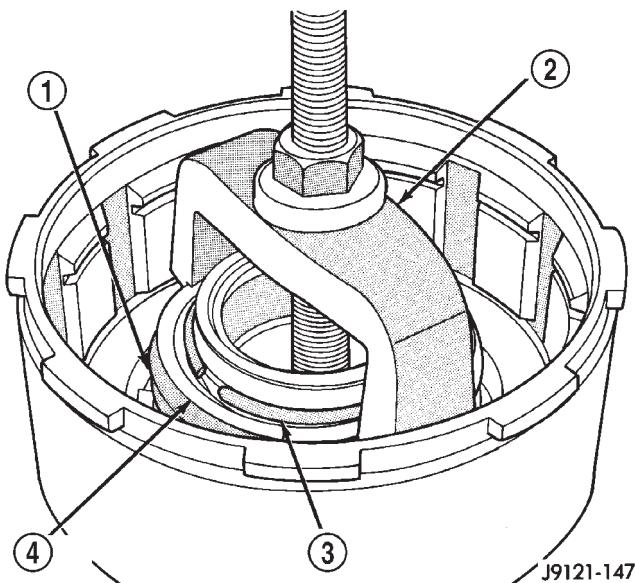
(4) Install clutch piston in retainer (Fig. 211). Use twisting motion to seat piston in bottom of retainer.

CAUTION: Never push the clutch piston straight in. This will fold the seals over causing leakage and clutch slip.

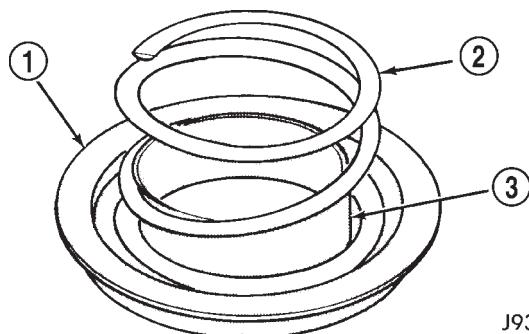
(5) Position spring in clutch piston (Fig. 212).

(6) Position spring retainer on top of piston spring (Fig. 213). **Make sure retainer is properly installed. Small raised tabs should be facing upward. Semicircular lugs on underside of retainer are for positioning retainer in spring.**

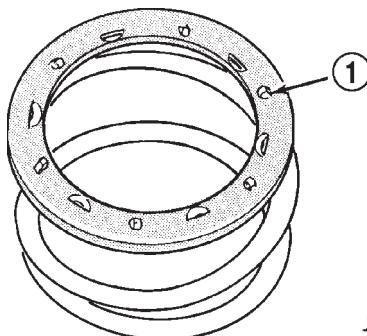
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 210 Compressing Front Clutch Piston Spring**

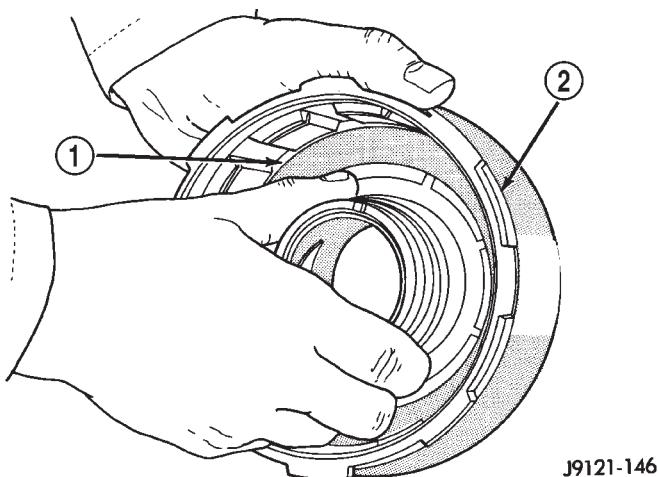
- 1 – FRONT CLUTCH SPRING
- 2 – COMPRESSOR TOOL C-3575-A
- 3 – RETAINER SNAP RING
- 4 – SPRING RETAINER

**Fig. 212 Clutch Piston Spring Installation**

- 1 – RETAINER
- 2 – CLUTCH SPRING
- 3 – PISTON

**Fig. 213 Correct Spring Retainer Installed Position**

- 1 – SMALL TABS ON RETAINER FACE UPWARD

**Fig. 211 Front Clutch Piston Installation**

- 1 – CLUTCH PISTON
- 2 – FRONT CLUTCH RETAINER

(7) Compress piston spring and retainer with Compressor Tool C-3575-A (Fig. 210). Then install new snap ring to secure spring retainer and spring.

(8) Install clutch plates and discs (Fig. 209). Install steel plate then disc until all plates and discs are installed. The front clutch uses 4 clutch discs and plates in a 42RE transmission.

(9) Install pressure plate and waved snap ring (Fig. 209).

Clearance should be 1.70 to 3.40 mm (0.067 to 0.134 in.). If clearance is incorrect, clutch discs,

plates, pressure plates and snap ring may have to be changed.

REAR CLUTCH**DISASSEMBLY**

(1) Remove fiber thrust washer from forward side of clutch retainer.

(2) Remove input shaft front/rear seal rings.

(3) Remove selective clutch pack snap ring (Fig. 214).

(4) Remove top pressure plate, clutch discs, steel plates, bottom pressure plate and wave snap ring and wave spring (Fig. 214).

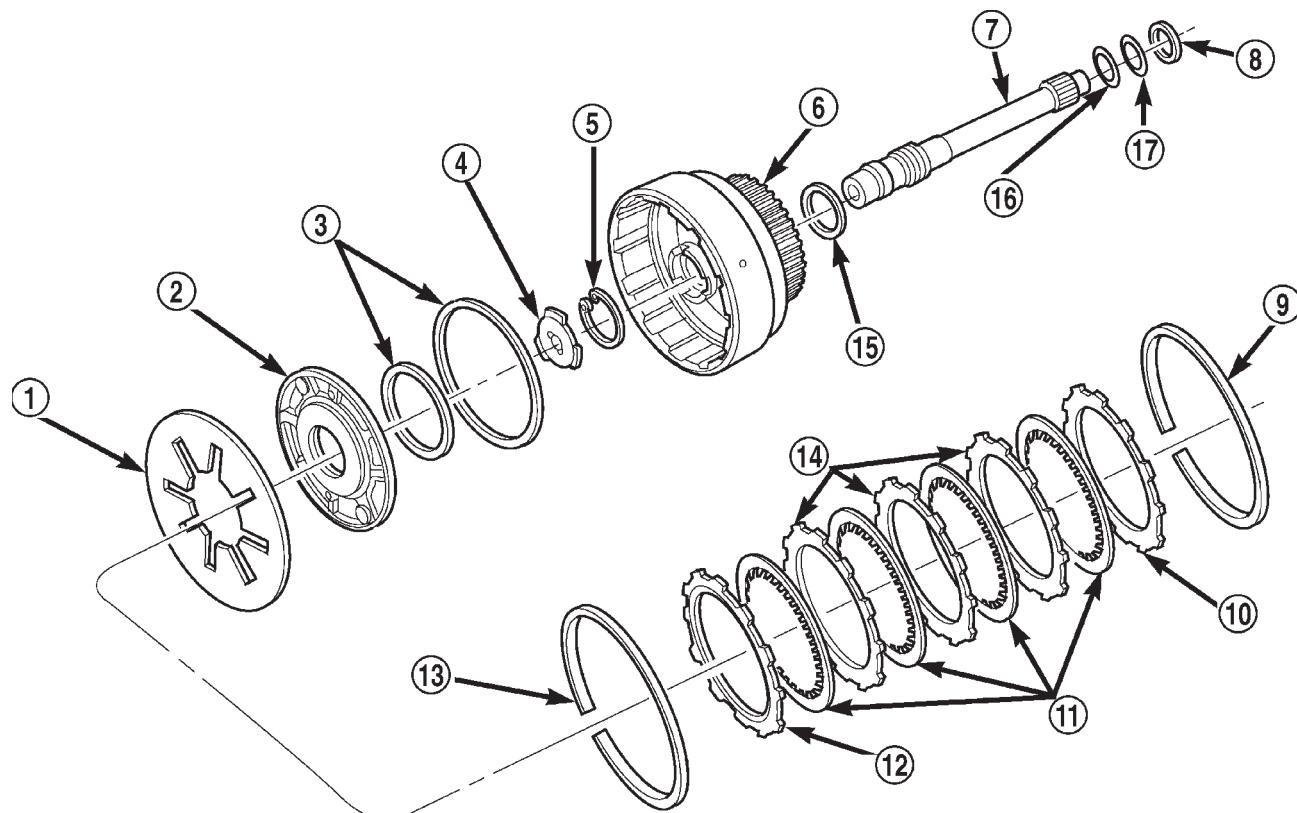
(5) Remove clutch piston with rotating motion.

(6) Remove and discard piston seals.

(7) Remove input shaft snap-ring (Fig. 215). It may be necessary to press the input shaft in slightly to relieve tension on the snap-ring.

(8) Press input shaft out of retainer with shop press and suitable size press tool. Use a suitably sized press tool to support the retainer as close to the input shaft as possible.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

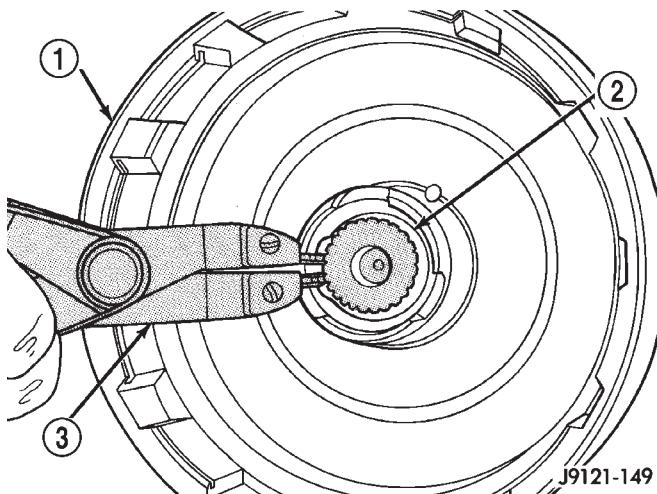


80c070a4

Fig. 214 Rear Clutch Components

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1 – PISTON SPRING | 10 – TOP PRESSURE PLATE |
| 2 – REAR CLUTCH PISTON | 11 – CLUTCH DISCS (4) |
| 3 – CLUTCH PISTON SEALS | 12 – BOTTOM PRESSURE PLATE |
| 4 – OUTPUT SHAFT THRUST WASHER (METAL) | 13 – WAVE SPRING |
| 5 – INPUT SHAFT SNAP RING | 14 – CLUTCH PLATES (3) |
| 6 – REAR CLUTCH RETAINER | 15 – RETAINER SEAL RING |
| 7 – INPUT SHAFT | 16 – SHAFT REAR SEAL RING (PLASTIC) |
| 8 – REAR CLUTCH THRUST WASHER (FIBER) | 17 – SHAFT FRONT SEAL RING (TEFLON) |
| 9 – CLUTCH PACK SNAP RING (SELECTIVE) | |

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 215 Removing/Installing Input Shaft Snap-Ring**

- 1 – REAR CLUTCH RETAINER
2 – INPUT SHAFT SNAP RING
3 – SNAP RING PLIERS

ASSEMBLY

J9121-538

(1) Soak clutch discs in transmission fluid while assembling other clutch parts.

(2) Install new seal rings on clutch retainer hub and input shaft if necessary (Fig. 216).

(a) Be sure clutch hub seal ring is fully seated in groove and is not twisted.

(3) Lubricate splined end of input shaft and clutch retainer with transmission fluid. Then press input shaft into retainer. Use a suitably sized press tool to support retainer as close to input shaft as possible.

(4) Install input shaft snap-ring (Fig. 215).

(5) Invert retainer and press input shaft in opposite direction until snap-ring is seated.

(6) Install new seals on clutch piston. Be sure lip of each seal faces interior of clutch retainer.

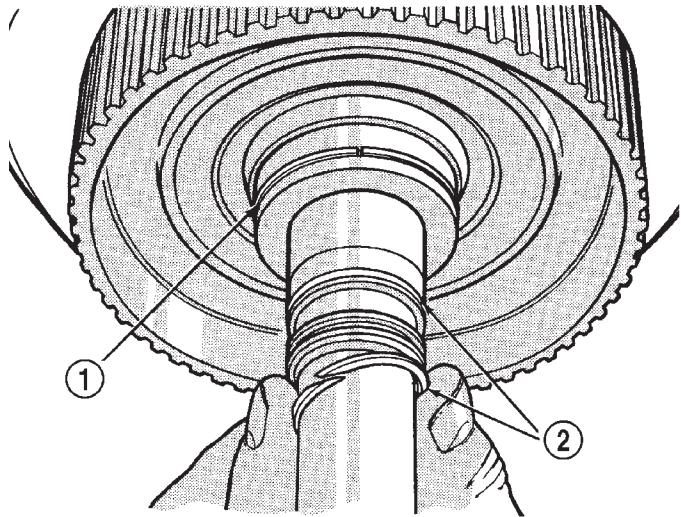
(7) Lubricate lip of piston seals with generous quantity of Mopar® Door Ease. Then lubricate retainer hub and bore with light coat of transmission fluid.

(8) Install clutch piston in retainer. Use twisting motion to seat piston in bottom of retainer. A thin strip of plastic (about 0.020" thick), can be used to guide seals into place if necessary.

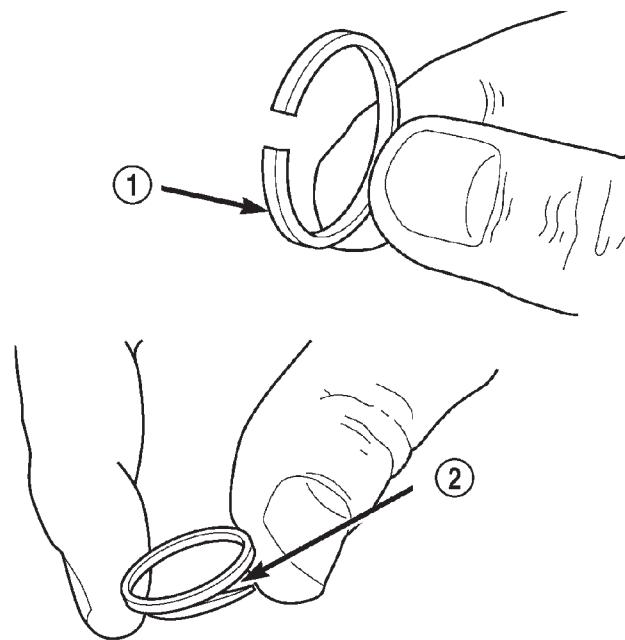
CAUTION: Never push the clutch piston straight in. This will fold the seals over causing leakage and clutch slip. In addition, never use any type of metal tool to help ease the piston seals into place. Metal tools will cut, shave, or score the seals.

(9) Install piston spring in retainer and on top of piston (Fig. 219). Concave side of spring faces downward (toward piston).

(10) Install wave spring in retainer (Fig. 219). Be sure spring is completely seated in retainer groove.

**Fig. 216 Rear Clutch Retainer And Input Shaft Seal Ring Installation**

- 1 – REAR CLUTCH RETAINER HUB SEAL RING
2 – INPUT SHAFT SEAL RINGS

**Fig. 217 Input Shaft Seal Ring Identification**

- 1 – PLASTIC REAR SEAL RING
2 – TEFLON FRONT SEAL RING (SQUEEZE RING TOGETHER SLIGHTLY BEFORE INSTALLATION FOR BETTER FIT)

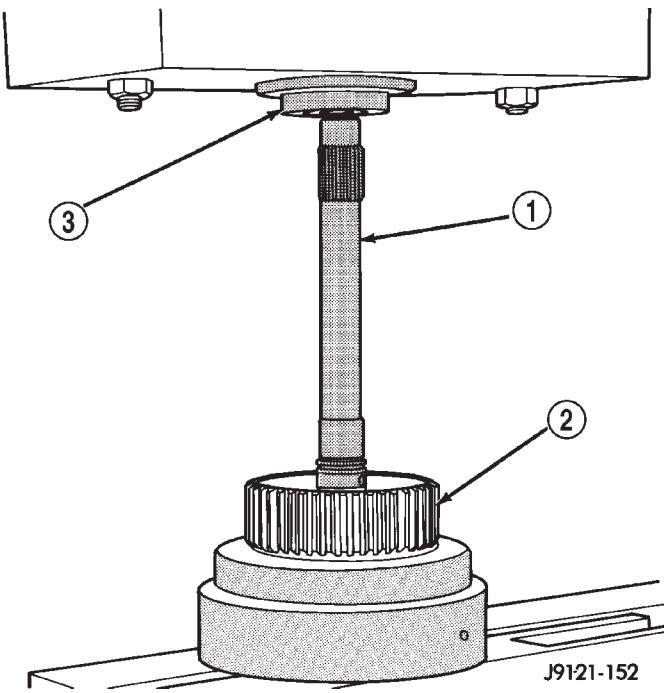


Fig. 218 Pressing Input Shaft Into Rear Clutch Retainer

- 1 – INPUT SHAFT
2 – REAR CLUTCH RETAINER
3 – PRESS RAM

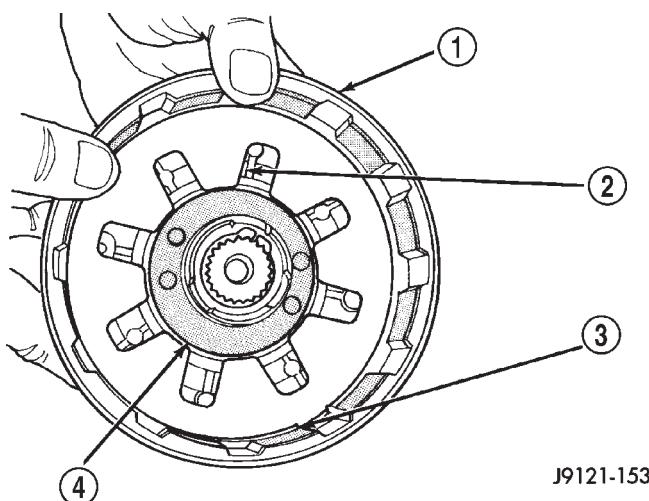


Fig. 219 Piston Spring/Wave Spring Position

- 1 – REAR CLUTCH RETAINER
2 – PISTON SPRING
3 – WAVE SPRING
4 – CLUTCH PISTON

(11) Install bottom pressure plate (Fig. 214). Ridged side of plate faces downward (toward piston) and flat side toward clutch pack.

(12) Install first clutch disc in retainer on top of bottom pressure plate. Then install a clutch plate fol-

lowed by a clutch disc until entire clutch pack is installed (4 discs and 3 plates are required) (Fig. 214).

(13) Install top pressure plate.

(14) Install selective snap ring. Be sure snap ring is fully seated in retainer groove.

(15) Using a suitable gauge bar and dial indicator, measure clutch pack clearance (Fig. 220).

(a) Position gauge bar across the clutch drum with the dial indicator pointer on the pressure plate (Fig. 220).

(b) Using two small screw drivers, lift the pressure plate and release it.

(c) Zero the dial indicator.

(d) Lift the pressure plate until it contacts the snap-ring and record the dial indicator reading.

Clearance should be 0.559 - 0.914 mm (0.022 - 0.036 in.). If clearance is incorrect, steel plates, discs, selective snap ring and pressure plates may have to be changed.

The selective snap ring thicknesses are:

- .107-.109 in.
- .098-.100 in.
- .095-.097 in.
- .083-.085 in.
- .076-.078 in.
- .071-.073 in.
- .060-.062 in.

(16) Coat rear clutch thrust washer with petroleum jelly and install washer over input shaft and into clutch retainer (Fig. 221). Use enough petroleum jelly to hold washer in place.

(17) Set rear clutch aside for installation during final assembly.

PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT

DISASSEMBLY

(1) Remove planetary snap ring (Fig. 222).

(2) Remove front annulus and planetary assembly from driving shell (Fig. 222).

(3) Remove snap ring that retains front planetary gear in annulus gear (Fig. 223).

(4) Remove tabbed thrust washer and tabbed thrust plate from hub of front annulus (Fig. 224).

(5) Separate front annulus and planetary gears (Fig. 224).

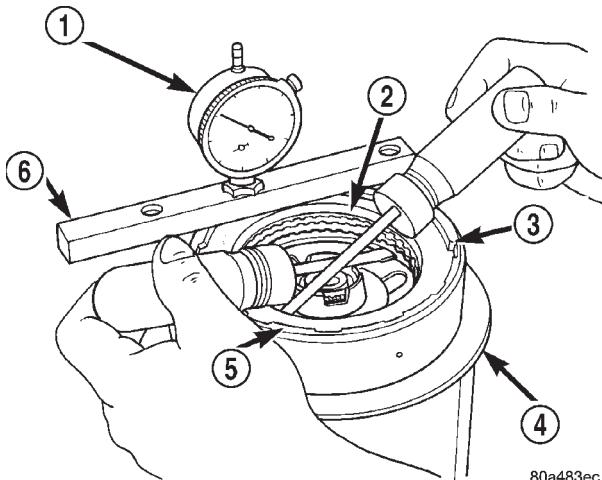
(6) Remove front planetary gear front thrust washer from annulus gear hub.

(7) Separate and remove driving shell, rear planetary and rear annulus from output shaft (Fig. 225).

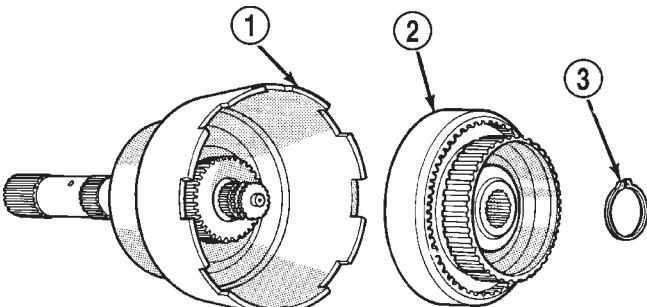
(8) Remove front planetary rear thrust washer from driving shell.

(9) Remove tabbed thrust washers from rear planetary gear.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 220 Checking Rear Clutch Pack Clearance**

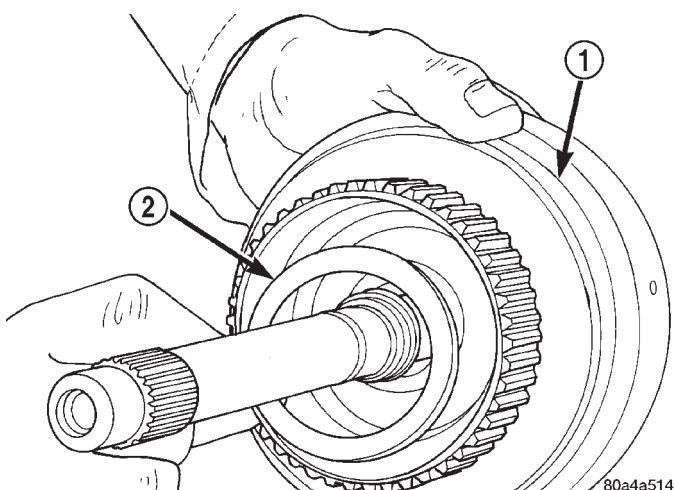
- 1 – DIAL INDICATOR
- 2 – PRESSURE PLATE
- 3 – SNAP RING
- 4 – STAND
- 5 – REAR CLUTCH
- 6 – GAUGE BAR



J9421-175

Fig. 222 Front Annulus And Planetary Assembly Removal

- 1 – DRIVING SHELL
- 2 – FRONT ANNULUS AND PLANETARY ASSEMBLY
- 3 – PLANETARY SNAP RING

**Fig. 221 Installing Rear Clutch Thrust Washer**

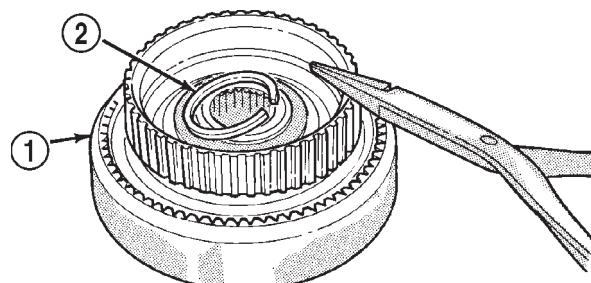
- 1 – REAR CLUTCH RETAINER
- 2 – REAR CLUTCH THRUST WASHER

(10) Remove lock ring that retains sun gear in driving shell. Then remove sun gear, spacer and thrust plates.

ASSEMBLY

(1) Lubricate output shaft and planetary components with transmission fluid. Use petroleum jelly to lubricate and hold thrust washers and plates in position.

(2) Assemble rear annulus gear and support if disassembled. Be sure support snap ring is seated and



J9421-176

Fig. 223 Front Planetary Snap Ring Removal

- 1 – FRONT ANNULUS GEAR
- 2 – PLANETARY SNAP RING

that shoulder-side of support faces rearward (Fig. 226).

(3) Install rear thrust washer on rear planetary gear. Use enough petroleum jelly to hold washer in place. Also be sure all four washer tabs are properly engaged in gear slots.

(4) Install rear annulus over and onto rear planetary gear (Fig. 226).

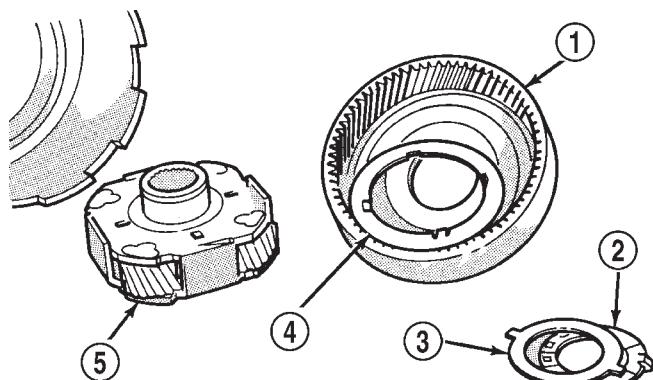
(5) Install assembled rear planetary and annulus gear on output shaft (Fig. 227). Verify that assembly is fully seated on shaft.

(6) Install front thrust washer on rear planetary gear (Fig. 228). Use enough petroleum jelly to hold washer on gear. Be sure all four washer tabs are seated in slots.

(7) Install spacer on sun gear (Fig. 229).

(8) Install thrust plate on sun gear (Fig. 230). Note that driving shell thrust plates are interchangeable. Use either plate on sun gear and at front/rear of shell.

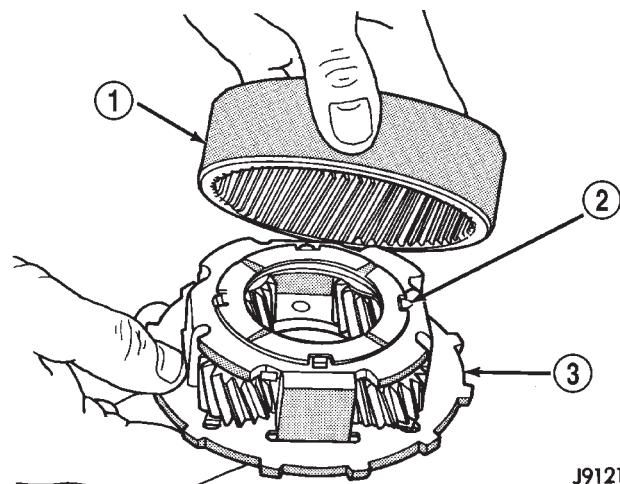
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9421-177

Fig. 224 Front Planetary And Annulus Gear Disassembly

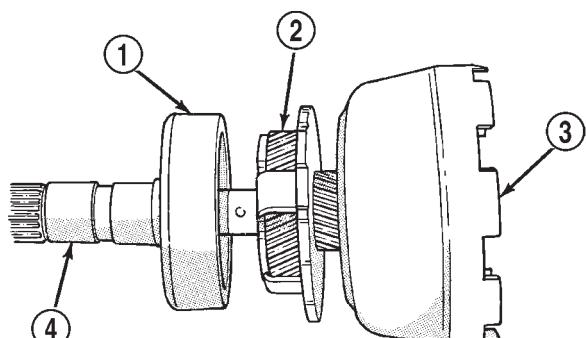
- 1 – FRONT ANNULUS
- 2 – THRUST WASHER
- 3 – THRUST PLATE
- 4 – FRONT THRUST WASHER
- 5 – FRONT PLANETARY



J9121-156

Fig. 226 Assembling Rear Annulus And Planetary Gear

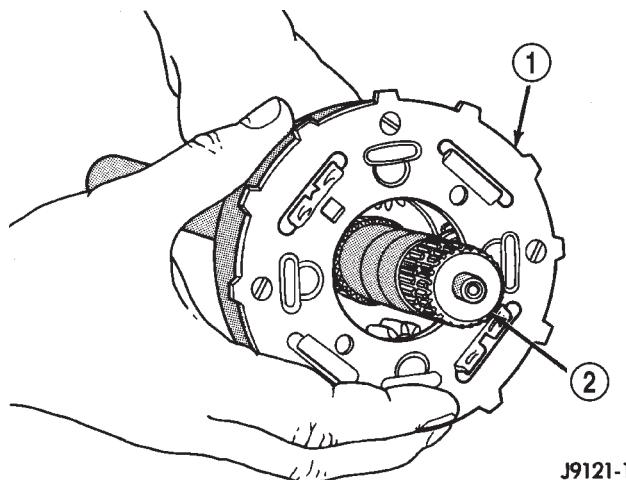
- 1 – REAR ANNULUS GEAR
- 2 – TABBED THRUST WASHER
- 3 – REAR PLANETARY



J9421-178

Fig. 225 Removing Driving Shell, Rear Planetary And Rear Annulus

- 1 – REAR ANNULUS
- 2 – REAR PLANETARY
- 3 – DRIVING SHELL
- 4 – OUTPUT SHAFT

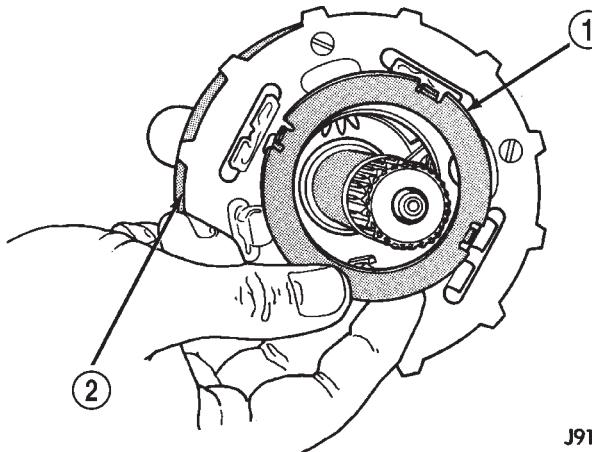


J9121-157

Fig. 227 Installing Rear Annulus And Planetary On Output Shaft

- 1 – REAR ANNULUS AND PLANETARY GEAR ASSEMBLY
- 2 – OUTPUT SHAFT

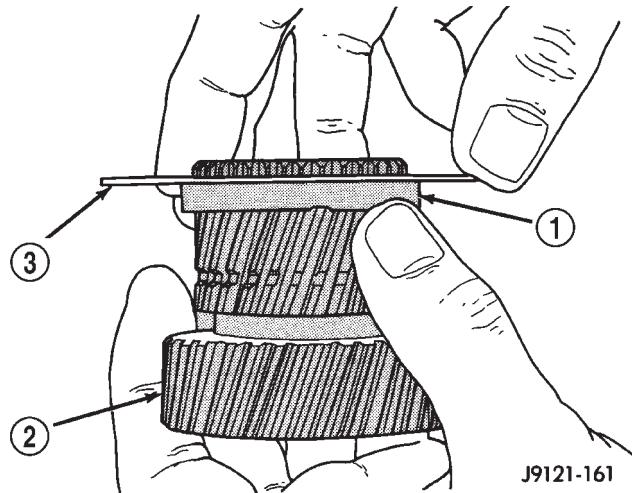
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9121-158

Fig. 228 Installing Rear Planetary Front Thrust Washer

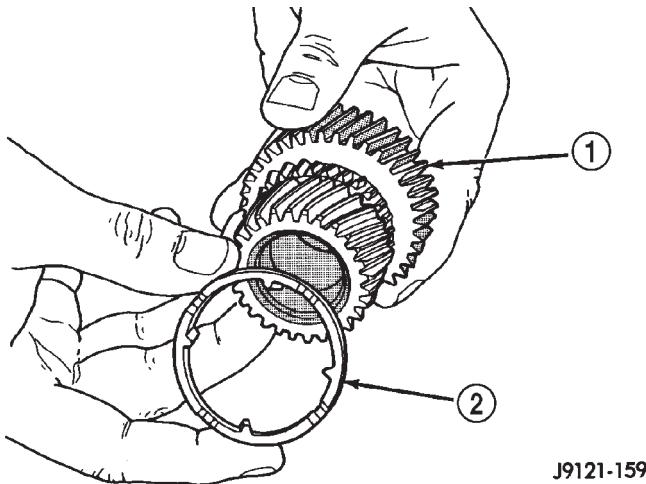
- 1 – FRONT TABBED THRUST WASHER
2 – REAR PLANETARY GEAR



J9121-161

Fig. 230 Installing Driving Shell Front Thrust Plate On Sun Gear

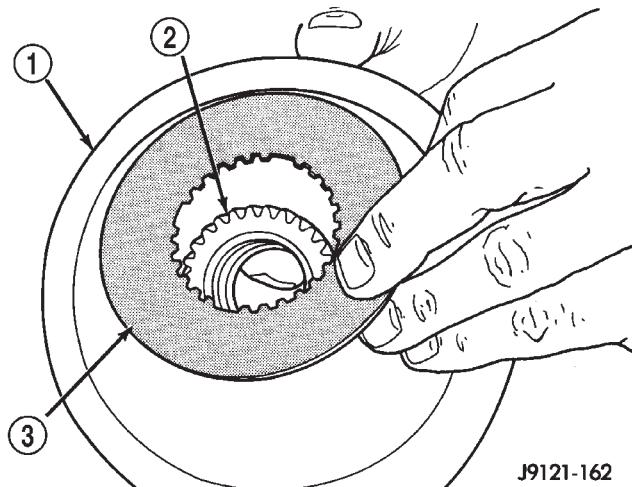
- 1 – SPACER
2 – SUN GEAR
3 – THRUST PLATE



J9121-159

Fig. 229 Installing Spacer On Sun Gear

- 1 – SUN GEAR
2 – SUN GEAR SPACER



J9121-162

Fig. 231 Installing Driving Shell Rear Thrust Plate

- 1 – DRIVING SHELL
2 – SUN GEAR
3 – REAR THRUST PLATE

(9) Hold sun gear in place and install thrust plate over sun gear at rear of driving shell (Fig. 231).

(10) Position wood block on bench and support sun gear on block (Fig. 232). This makes it easier to align and install sun gear lock ring. Keep wood block handy as it will also be used for geartrain end play check.

(11) Align rear thrust plate on driving shell and install sun gear lock ring. Be sure ring is fully seated in sun gear ring groove (Fig. 233).

(12) Install assembled driving shell and sun gear on output shaft (Fig. 234).

(13) Install rear thrust washer on front planetary gear (Fig. 235). Use enough petroleum jelly to hold washer in place and be sure all four washer tabs are seated.

(14) Install front planetary gear on output shaft and in driving shell (Fig. 236).

(15) Install front thrust washer on front planetary gear. Use enough petroleum jelly to hold washer in place and be sure all four washer tabs are seated.

(16) Assemble front annulus gear and support, if necessary. Be sure support snap ring is seated.

(17) Install front annulus on front planetary (Fig. 236).

(18) Position thrust plate on front annulus gear support (Fig. 237). **Note that plate has two tabs on it. These tabs fit in notches of annulus hub.**

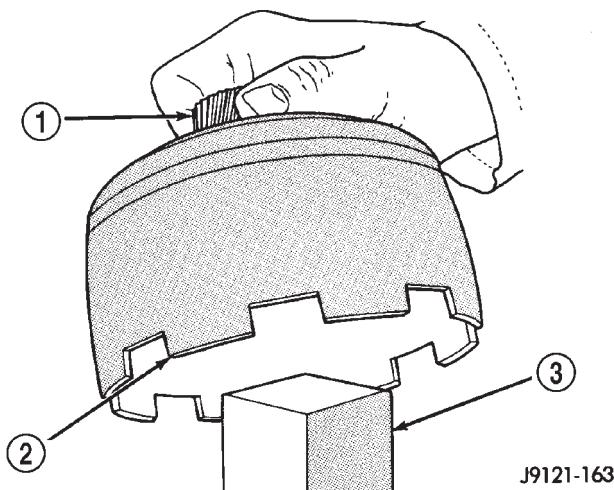


Fig. 232 Supporting Sun Gear On Wood Block

- 1 – SUN GEAR
- 2 – DRIVING SHELL
- 3 – WOOD BLOCK

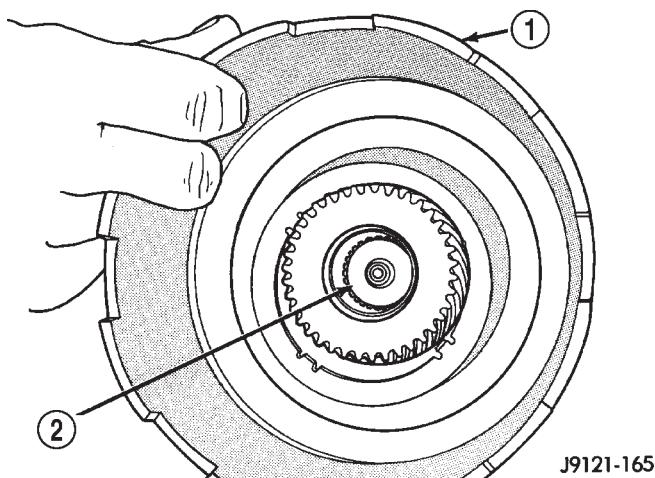


Fig. 234 Installing Assembled Sun Gear And Driving Shell On Output Shaft

- 1 – SUN GEAR/DRIVING SHELL ASSEMBLY
- 2 – OUTPUT SHAFT

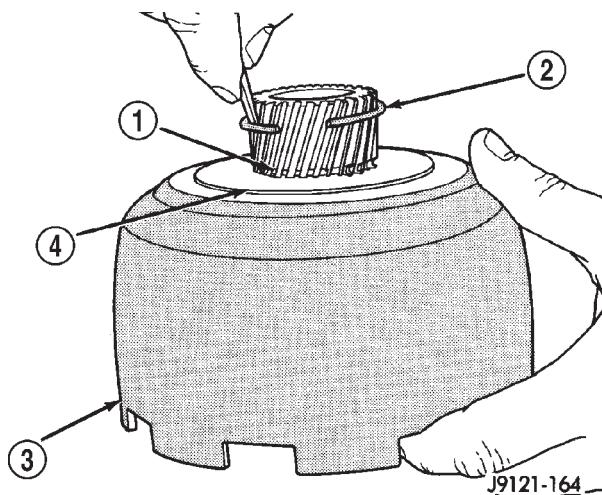


Fig. 233 Installing Sun Gear Lock Ring

- 1 – LOCK RING GROOVE
- 2 – SUN GEAR LOCK RING
- 3 – DRIVING SHELL
- 4 – REAR THRUST PLATE

(19) Install thrust washer in front annulus (Fig. 238). **Align flat on washer with flat on planetary hub. Also be sure washer tab is facing up.**

(20) Install front annulus snap ring (Fig. 239). Use snap ring pliers to avoid distorting ring during installation. Also be sure ring is fully seated.

(21) Install planetary selective snap ring with snap ring pliers (Fig. 240). Be sure ring is fully seated.

(22) Turn planetary geartrain assembly over so driving shell is facing workbench. Then support

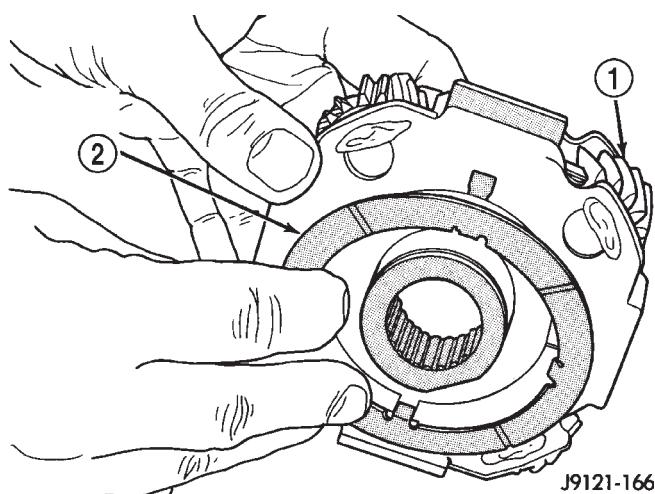


Fig. 235 Installing Rear Thrust Washer On Front Planetary Gear

- 1 – FRONT PLANETARY GEAR
- 2 – REAR TABBED THRUST WASHER

geartrain on wood block positioned under forward end of output shaft. This allows geartrain components to move forward for accurate end play check.

(23) Check planetary geartrain end play with feeler gauge (Fig. 241). Gauge goes between shoulder on output shaft and end of rear annulus support.

(24) Geartrain end play should be 0.12 to 1.22 mm (0.005 to 0.048 in.). If end play is incorrect, snap ring (or thrust washers) may have to be replaced. Snap ring is available in three different thicknesses for adjustment purposes.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

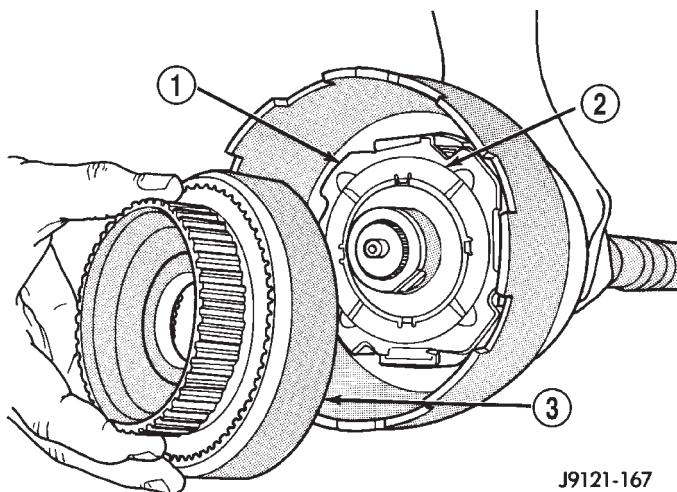


Fig. 236 Installing Front Planetary And Annulus Gears

- 1 – FRONT PLANETARY GEAR
- 2 – FRONT THRUST WASHER
- 3 – FRONT ANNULUS GEAR

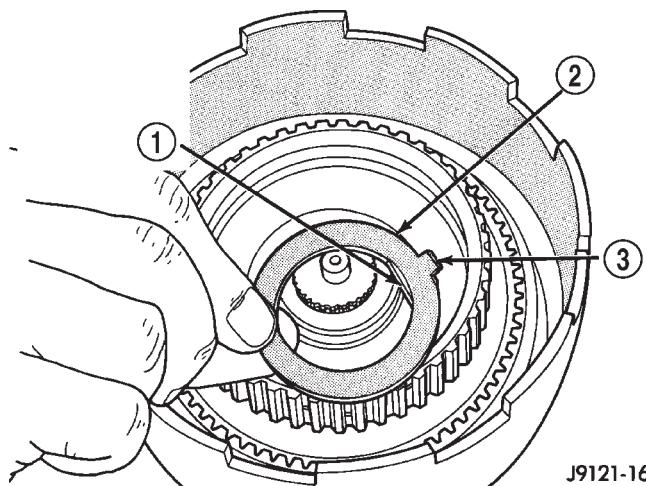


Fig. 238 Installing Front Annulus Thrust Washer

- 1 – WASHER FLAT ALIGNS WITH FLAT ON PLANETARY HUB
- 2 – FRONT ANNULUS THRUST WASHER
- 3 – TAB FACES FRONT

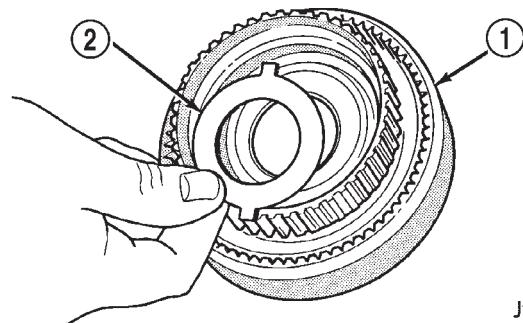


Fig. 237 Positioning Thrust Plate On Front Annulus Support

- 1 – FRONT ANNULUS SUPPORT
- 2 – THRUST PLATE

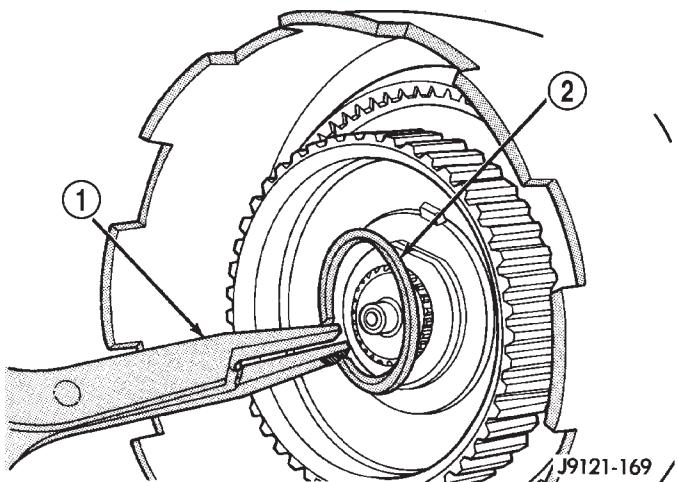
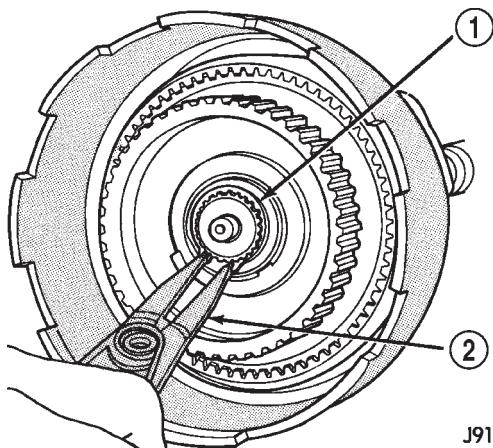


Fig. 239 Installing Front Annulus Snap Ring

- 1 – SNAP RING PLIERS
- 2 – FRONT ANNULUS SNAP RING

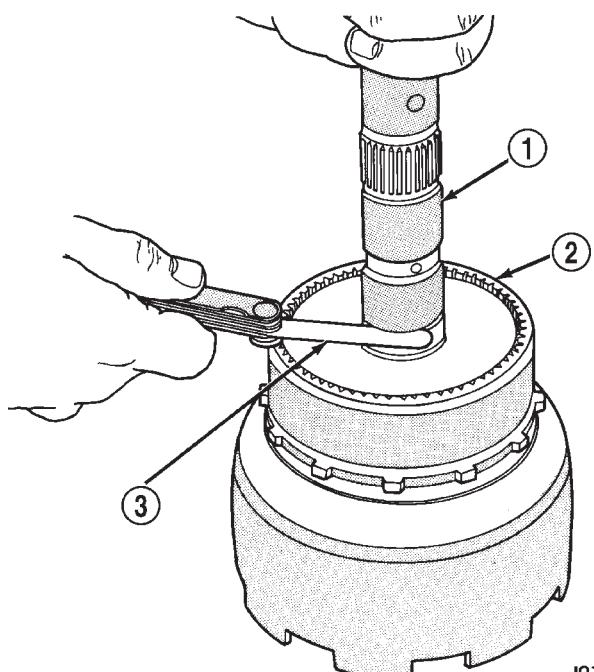
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9121-170

Fig. 240 Installing Planetary Selective Snap Ring

- 1 – SELECTIVE SNAP RING
2 – SNAP RING PLIERS



J9121-171

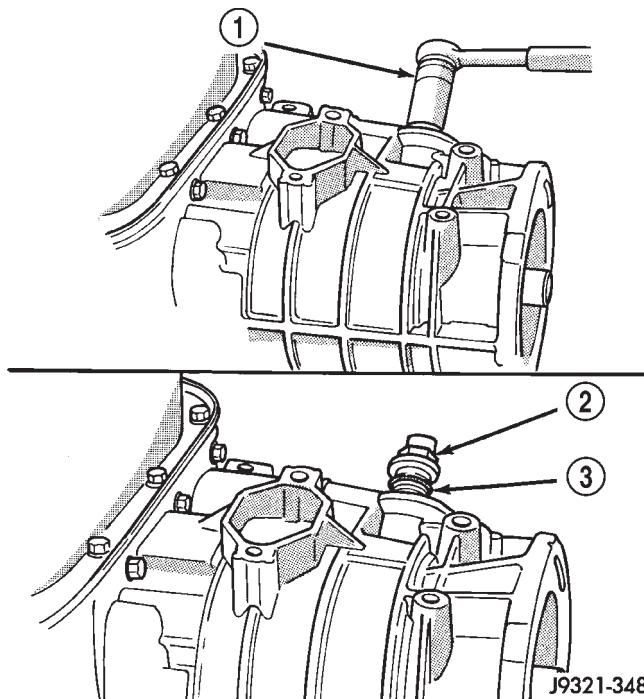
Fig. 241 Checking Planetary Geartrain End Play

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT
2 – REAR ANNULUS GEAR
3 – FEELER GAUGE

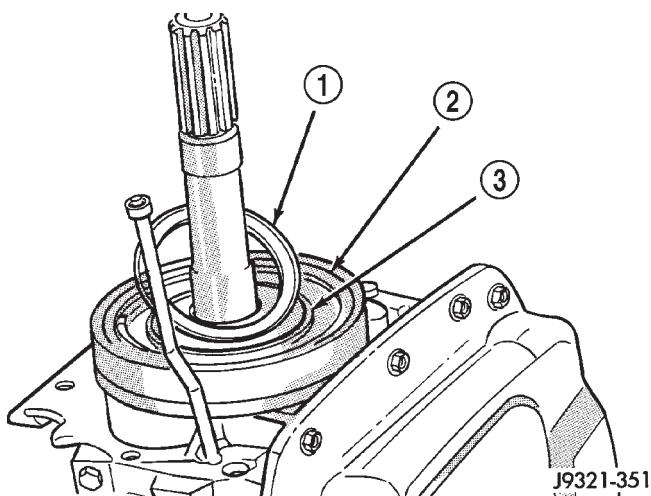
OVERDRIVE UNIT

DISASSEMBLY

- (1) Remove transmission speed sensor and O-ring seal from overdrive case (Fig. 242).
- (2) Remove overdrive piston thrust bearing (Fig. 243).

**Fig. 242** Transmission Speed Sensor Removal/
Installation

- 1 – SOCKET AND WRENCH
2 – SPEED SENSOR
3 – O-RING

**Fig. 243** Overdrive Piston Thrust Bearing Removal/
Installation

- 1 – THRUST BEARING
2 – OVERDRIVE PISTON
3 – THRUST PLATE

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

OVERDRIVE PISTON DISASSEMBLY

(1) Remove overdrive piston thrust plate (Fig. 244). Retain thrust plate. It is a select fit part and may possibly be reused.

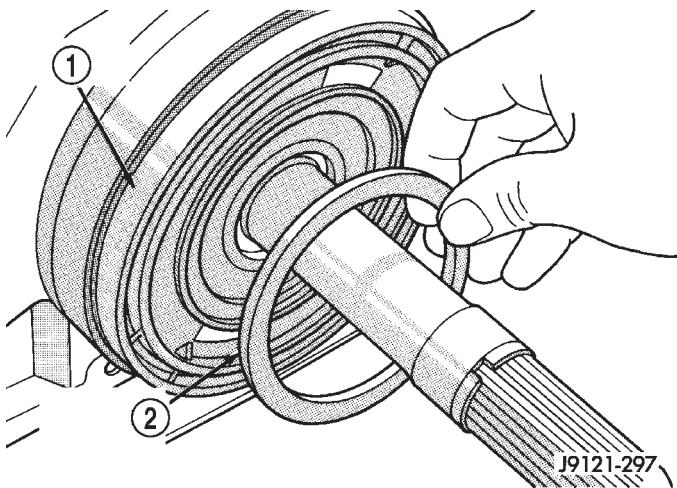


Fig. 244 Overdrive Piston Thrust Plate Removal/Installation

1 – OVERDRIVE PISTON
2 – OVERDRIVE PISTON SPACER (SELECT FIT)

(2) Remove intermediate shaft spacer (Fig. 245). Retain spacer. It is a select fit part and may possibly be reused.

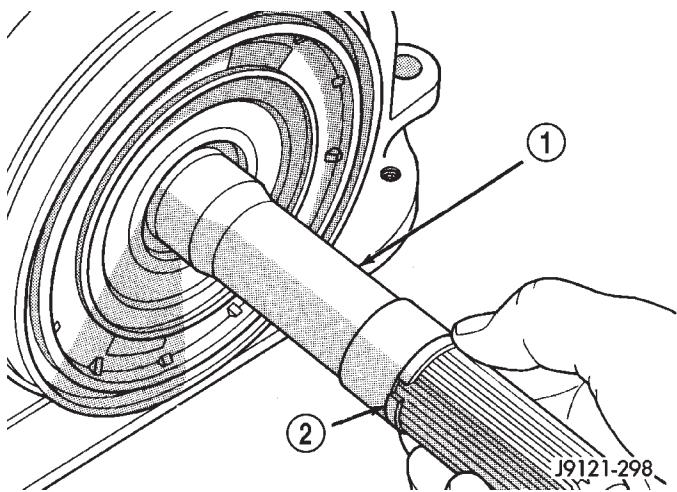


Fig. 245 Intermediate Shaft Spacer Location

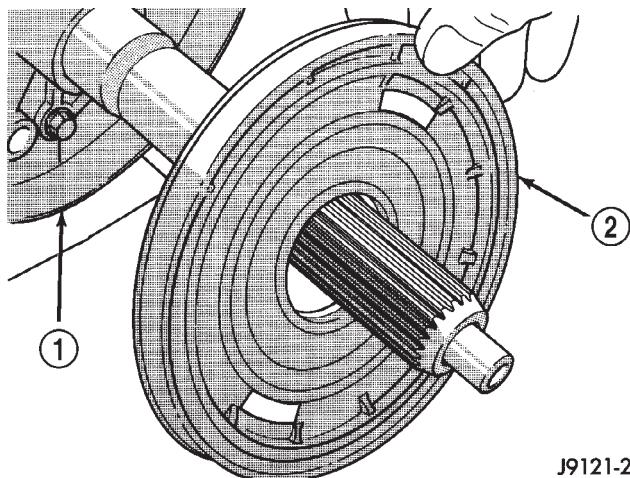
1 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT
2 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT SPACER (SELECT FIT)

(3) Remove overdrive piston from retainer (Fig. 246).

OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PACK DISASSEMBLY

(1) Remove overdrive clutch pack wire retaining ring (Fig. 247).

(2) Remove overdrive clutch pack (Fig. 248).



J9121-299

Fig. 246 Overdrive Piston Removal

1 – PISTON RETAINER
2 – OVERDRIVE PISTON

NOTE: The 42RE transmission has three clutch discs and two clutch plates.

(3) Note position of clutch pack components for assembly reference (Fig. 249).

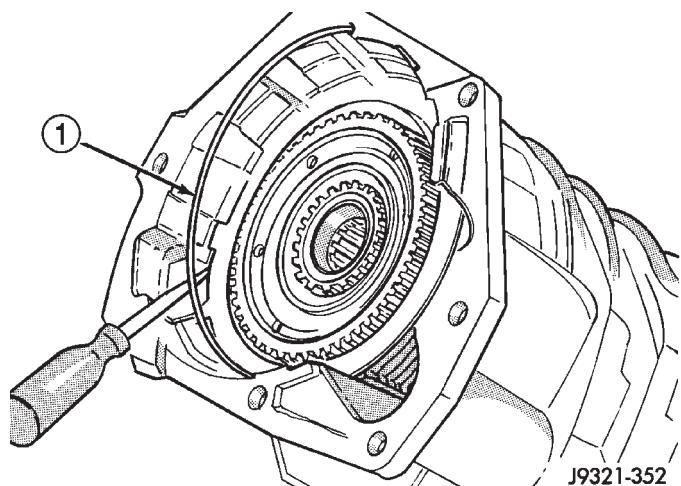


Fig. 247 Removing Overdrive Clutch Pack Retaining Ring

1 – OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PACK RETAINING RING

OVERDRIVE GEARTRAIN DISASSEMBLY

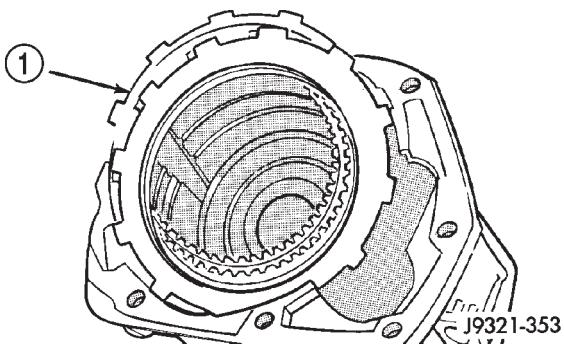
(1) Remove overdrive clutch wave spring (Fig. 250).

(2) Remove overdrive clutch reaction snap ring (Fig. 251). Note that snap ring is located in same groove as wave spring.

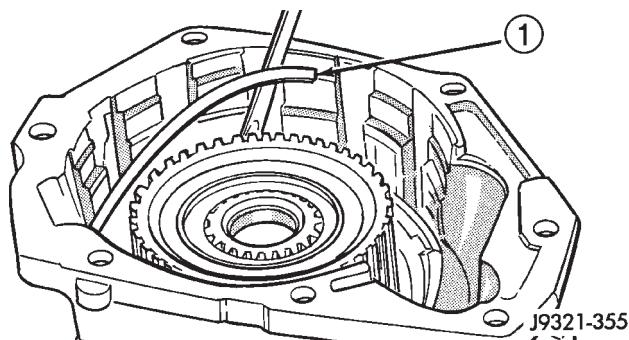
(3) Remove Torx head screws that attach access cover and gasket to overdrive case (Fig. 252).

(4) Remove access cover and gasket (Fig. 253).

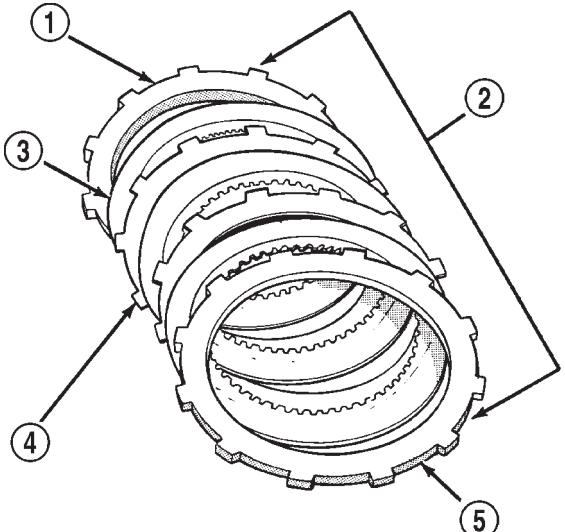
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 248 Overdrive Clutch Pack Removal**

1 – OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PACK

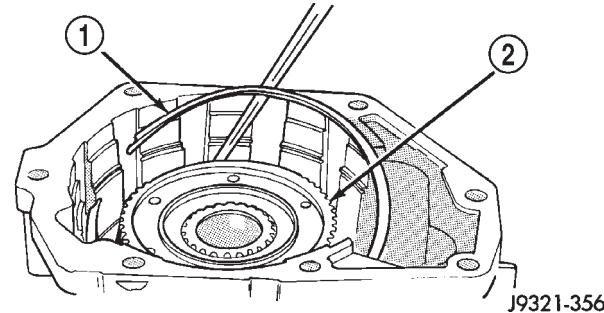
**Fig. 250 Overdrive Clutch Wave Spring Removal/Installation**

1 – WAVE SPRING

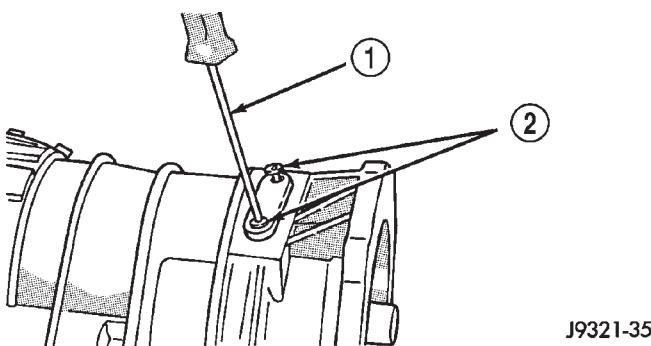
**Fig. 249 42RE Overdrive Clutch Component Position**

- 1 – PRESSURE PLATE (TO FRONT)
- 2 – OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PACK
- 3 – CLUTCH DISC (3)
- 4 – CLUTCH PLATE (2)
- 5 – REACTION PLATE (TO REAR)

(5) Expand output shaft bearing snap ring with expanding-type snap ring pliers. Then push output shaft forward to release shaft bearing from locating ring (Fig. 254).

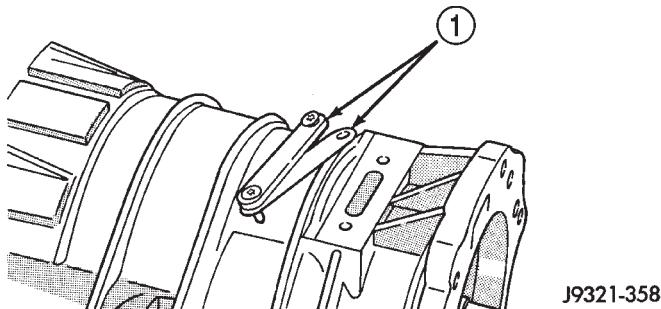
**Fig. 251 Overdrive Clutch Reaction Snap Ring Removal/Installation**

- 1 – REACTION RING
- 2 – CLUTCH HUB

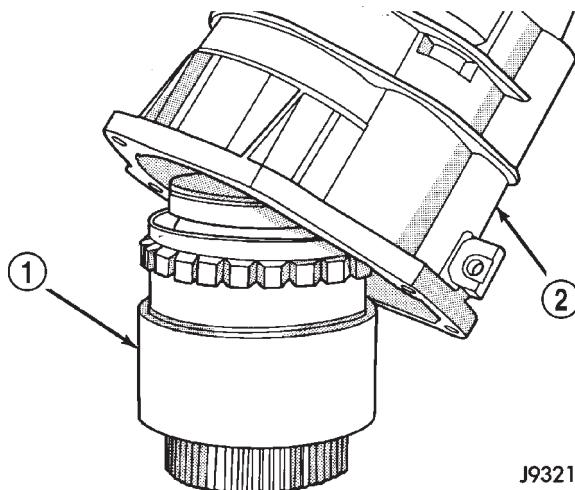
**Fig. 252 Access Cover Screw Removal/Installation**

- 1 – TORX SCREWDRIVER (T25)
- 2 – ACCESS COVER SCREWS

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

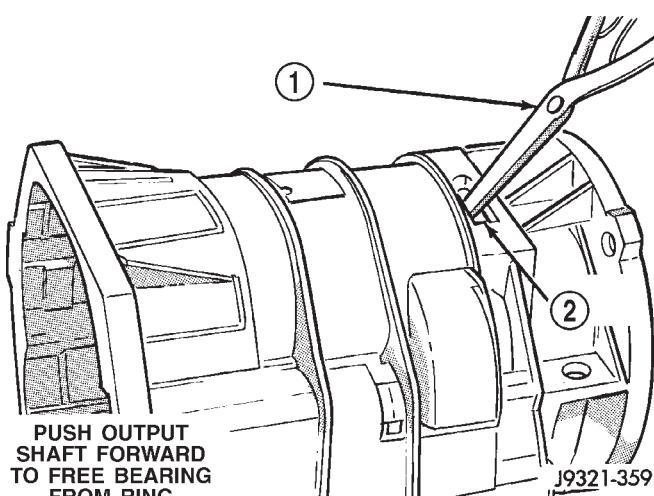
**Fig. 253 Access Cover And Gasket Removal/Installation**

1 – ACCESS COVER AND GASKET

**Fig. 255 Removing Gear Case From Geartrain Assembly**

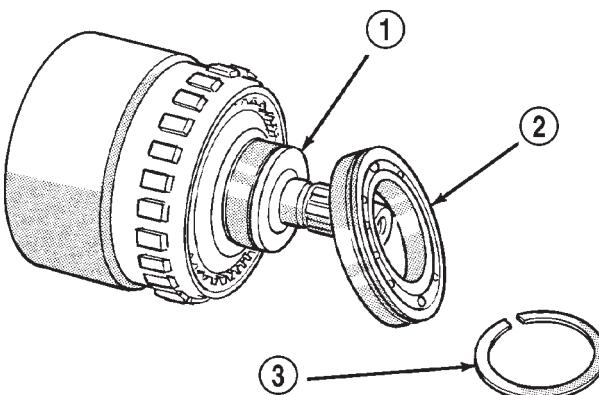
1 – GEARTRAIN ASSEMBLY

2 – GEAR CASE

**Fig. 254 Releasing Bearing From Locating Ring**

1 – EXPAND BEARING LOCATING RING WITH SNAP RING PLIERS

2 – ACCESS HOLE

**Fig. 256 Rear Bearing Removal**

1 – OUTPUT SHAFT

2 – REAR BEARING

3 – SNAP RING

(6) Lift gear case up and off geartrain assembly (Fig. 255).

(7) Remove snap ring that retains rear bearing on output shaft.

(8) Remove rear bearing from output shaft (Fig. 256).

DIRECT CLUTCH, HUB AND SPRING DISASSEMBLY

WARNING: THE NEXT STEP IN DISASSEMBLY INVOLVES COMPRESSING THE DIRECT CLUTCH SPRING. IT IS EXTREMELY IMPORTANT THAT PROPER EQUIPMENT BE USED TO COMPRESS THE SPRING AS SPRING FORCE IS APPROXIMATELY 830 POUNDS. USE SPRING COMPRESSOR TOOL 6227-1 AND A HYDRAULIC SHOP PRESS WITH A MINIMUM RAM TRAVEL OF 5-6 INCHES. THE PRESS MUST ALSO HAVE A BED THAT CAN BE ADJUSTED UP OR DOWN AS REQUIRED. RELEASE CLUTCH SPRING TENSION SLOWLY AND COMPLETELY TO AVOID PERSONAL INJURY.

(1) Mount geartrain assembly in shop press (Fig. 257).

(2) Position Compressor Tool 6227-1 on clutch hub (Fig. 257). Support output shaft flange with steel press plates as shown and center assembly under press ram.

(3) Apply press pressure slowly. Compress hub and spring far enough to expose clutch hub retaining ring and relieve spring pressure on clutch pack snap ring (Fig. 257).

(4) Remove direct clutch pack snap ring (Fig. 258).

(5) Remove direct clutch hub retaining ring (Fig. 259).

(6) Release press load slowly and completely (Fig. 260).

(7) Remove Special Tool 6227-1. Then remove clutch pack from hub (Fig. 260).

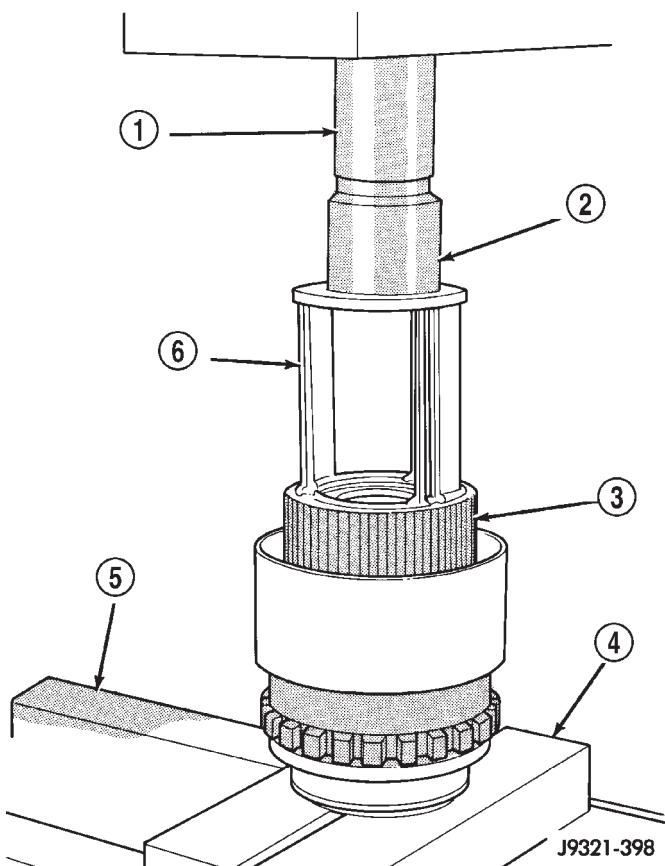


Fig. 257 Geartrain Mounted In Shop Press

- 1 – PRESS RAM
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3995-A (OR SIMILAR TOOL)
- 3 – CLUTCH HUB
- 4 – PLATES
- 5 – PRESS BED
- 6 – SPECIAL TOOL 6227-1

Geartrain Disassembly

- (1) Remove direct clutch hub and spring (Fig. 261).
- (2) Remove sun gear and spring plate. Then remove planetary thrust bearing and planetary gear (Fig. 262).
- (3) Remove overrunning clutch assembly with expanding type snap ring pliers (Fig. 263). Insert pliers into clutch hub. Expand pliers to grip hub splines and remove clutch with counterclockwise, twisting motion.
- (4) Remove thrust bearing from overrunning clutch hub.
- (5) Remove overrunning clutch from hub.
- (6) Mark position of annulus gear and direct clutch drum for assembly alignment reference (Fig. 264). Use small center punch or scribe to make alignment marks.

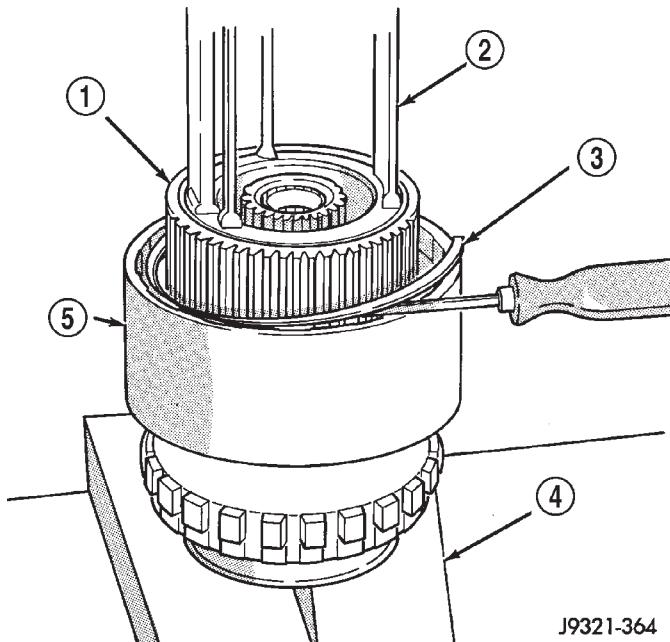


Fig. 258 Direct Clutch Pack Snap Ring Removal

- 1 – CLUTCH HUB
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL 6227-1
- 3 – DIRECT CLUTCH PACK SNAP RING
- 4 – PRESS PLATES
- 5 – CLUTCH DRUM

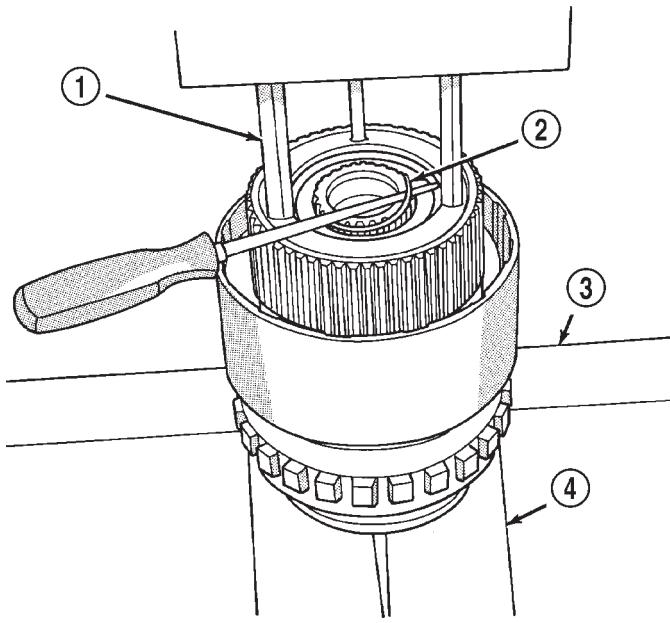
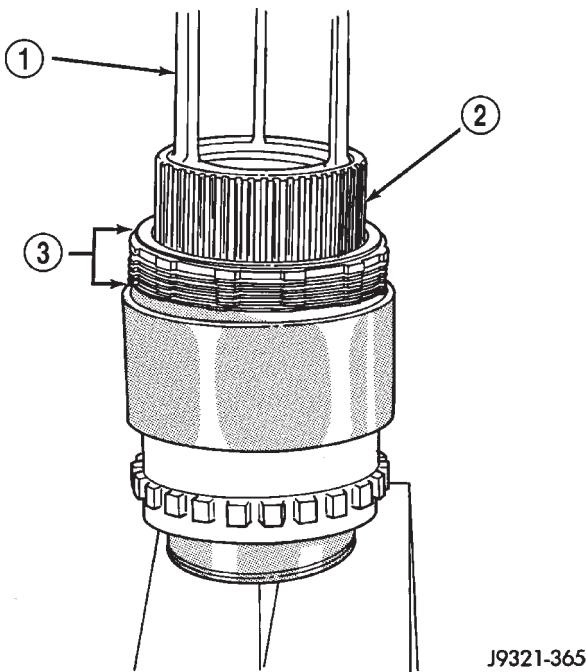


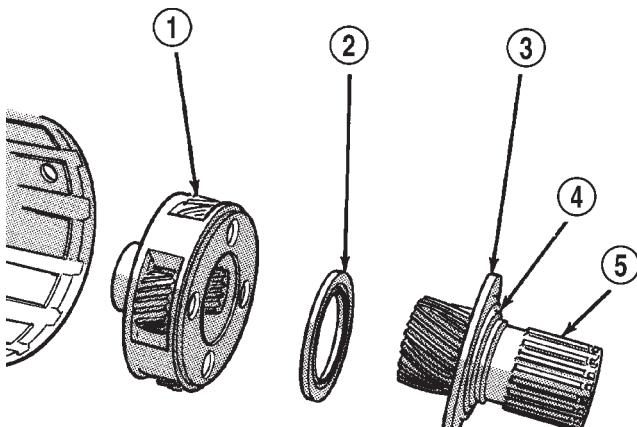
Fig. 259 Direct Clutch Hub Retaining Ring Removal

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6227-1
- 2 – CLUTCH HUB RETAINING RING
- 3 – PRESS BED
- 4 – PRESS PLATES

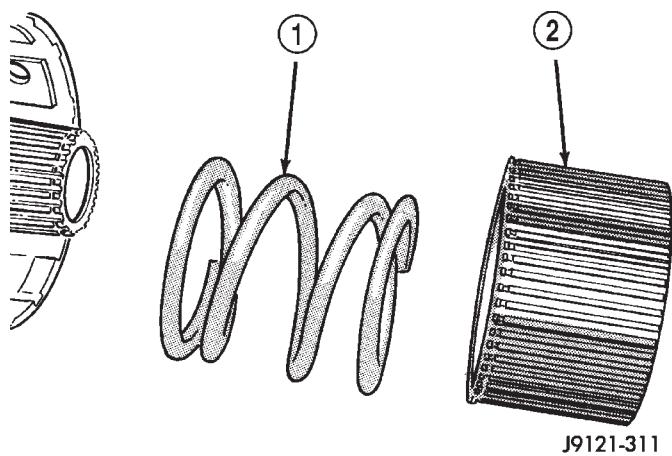
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 260 Direct Clutch Pack Removal**

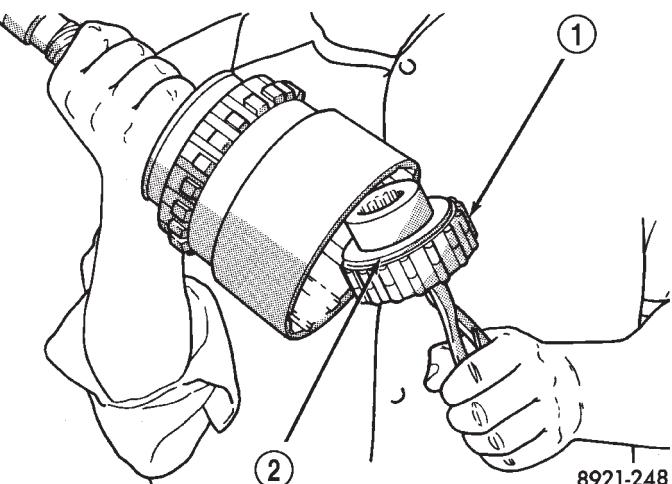
- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6227-1
2 – DIRECT CLUTCH HUB
3 – DIRECT CLUTCH PACK

**Fig. 262 Removing Sun Gear, Thrust Bearing And Planetary Gear**

- 1 – PLANETARY GEAR
2 – PLANETARY THRUST BEARING
3 – CLUTCH SPRING PLATE
4 – SPRING PLATE SNAP RING
5 – SUN GEAR

**Fig. 261 Direct Clutch Hub And Spring Removal**

- 1 – DIRECT CLUTCH SPRING
2 – DIRECT CLUTCH HUB

**Fig. 263 Overrunning Clutch Assembly Removal/Installation**

- 1 – OVERRUNNING CLUTCH
2 – NEEDLE BEARING

(11) Remove annulus gear from output shaft (Fig. 269). Use rawhide or plastic mallet to tap gear off shaft.

GEAR CASE AND PARK LOCK DISASSEMBLY

- (1) Remove locating ring from gear case.
- (2) Remove park pawl shaft retaining bolt and remove shaft, pawl and spring.
- (3) Remove reaction plug snap ring and remove reaction plug.
- (4) Remove output shaft seal.

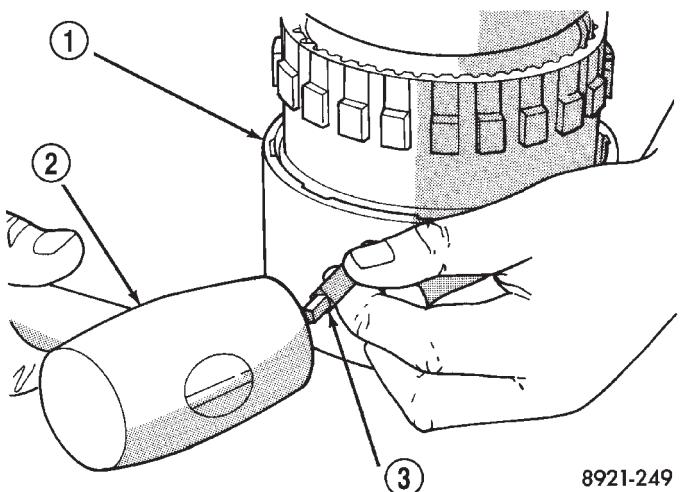
(7) Remove direct clutch drum rear retaining ring (Fig. 265).

(8) Remove direct clutch drum outer retaining ring (Fig. 266).

(9) Mark annulus gear and output shaft for assembly alignment reference (Fig. 267). Use punch or scriber to mark gear and shaft.

(10) Remove snap ring that secures annulus gear on output shaft (Fig. 268). Use two screwdrivers to unseat and work snap ring out of groove as shown.

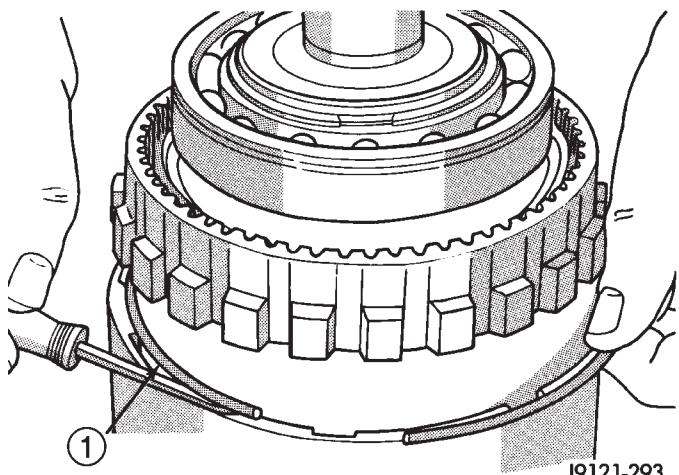
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



8921-249

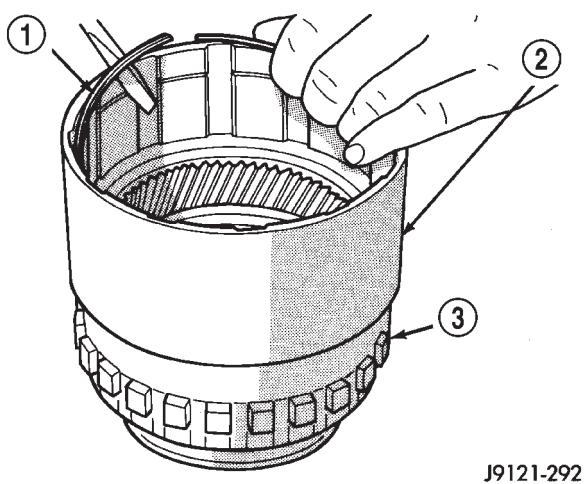
Fig. 264 Marking Direct Clutch Drum And Annulus Gear For Assembly Alignment

- 1 – DIRECT CLUTCH DRUM
- 2 – HAMMER
- 3 – PUNCH



J9121-293

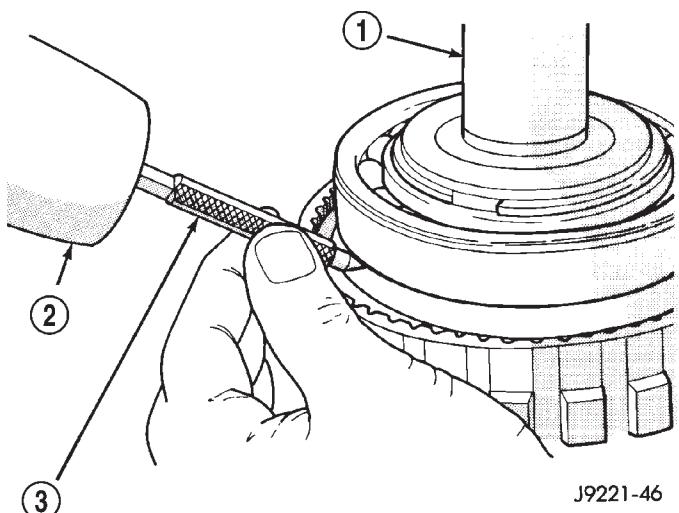
Fig. 266 Clutch Drum Outer Retaining Ring Removal
1 – OUTER RETAINING RING



J9121-292

Fig. 265 Clutch Drum Inner Retaining Ring Removal

- 1 – INNER RETAINING RING
- 2 – DIRECT CLUTCH DRUM
- 3 – ANNULUS GEAR

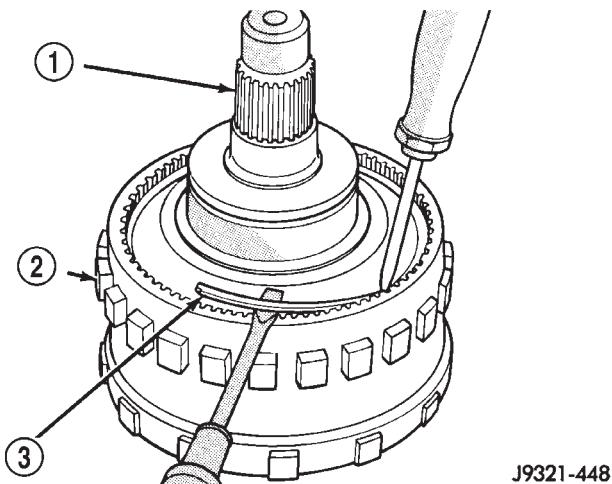


J9221-46

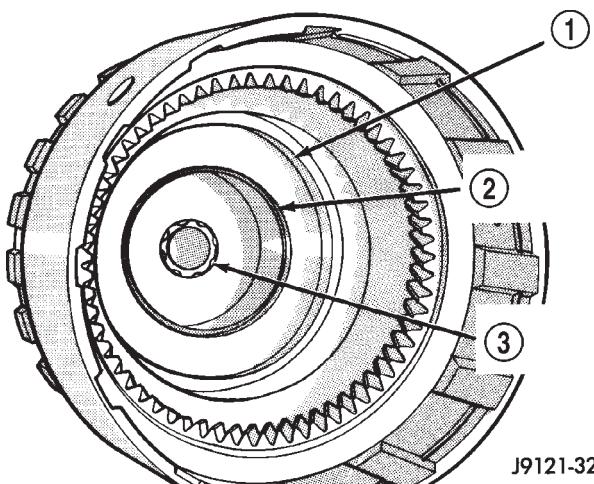
Fig. 267 Marking Annulus Gear And Output Shaft For Assembly Alignment

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT
- 2 – HAMMER
- 3 – PUNCH

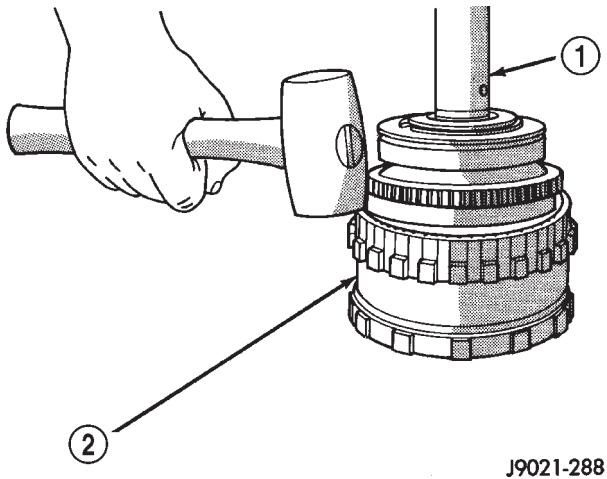
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 268 Annulus Gear Snap Ring Removal**

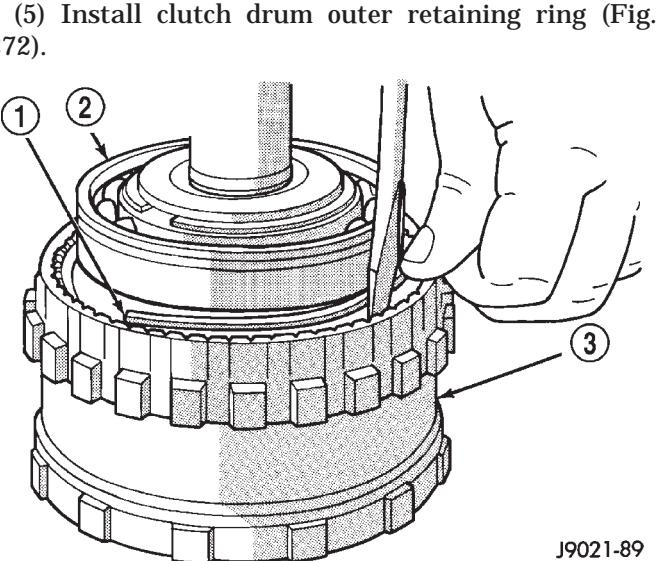
- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT
2 – ANNULUS GEAR
3 – SNAP RING

**Fig. 270 Output Shaft Pilot Bushing**

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT HUB
2 – OVERRUNNING CLUTCH HUB BUSHING
3 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT PILOT BUSHING

**Fig. 269 Annulus Gear Removal**

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT
2 – ANNULUS GEAR

**Fig. 271 Annulus Gear Installation**

- 1 – SNAP RING
2 – OUTPUT SHAFT FRONT BEARING
3 – ANNULUS GEAR

ASSEMBLY

GEARTRAIN AND DIRECT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY

(1) Soak direct clutch and overdrive clutch discs in Mopar® ATF Plus 3, type 7176, transmission fluid. Allow discs to soak for 10-20 minutes.

(2) Install new pilot bushing and clutch hub bushing in output shaft if necessary (Fig. 270). Lubricate bushings with petroleum jelly, or transmission fluid.

(3) Install annulus gear on output shaft, if removed. Then install annulus gear retaining snap ring (Fig. 271).

(4) Align and install clutch drum on annulus gear (Fig. 272). Be sure drum is engaged in annulus gear lugs.

(6) Slide clutch drum forward and install inner retaining ring (Fig. 273).

(7) Install rear bearing and snap ring on output shaft (Fig. 274). Be sure locating ring groove in bearing is toward rear.

(8) Install overrunning clutch on hub (Fig. 275). **Note that clutch only fits one way. Shoulder on clutch should seat in small recess at edge of hub.**

(9) Install thrust bearing on overrunning clutch hub. Use generous amount of petroleum jelly to hold

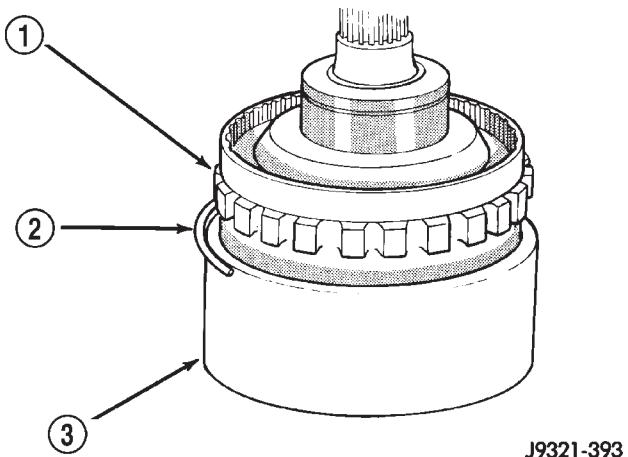


Fig. 272 Clutch Drum And Outer Retaining Ring Installation

- 1 – ANNULUS GEAR
- 2 – OUTER SNAP RING
- 3 – CLUTCH DRUM

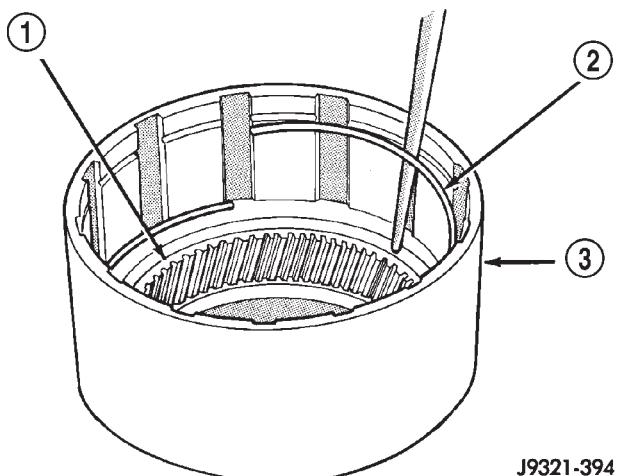


Fig. 273 Clutch Drum Inner Retaining Ring Installation

- 1 – ANNULUS GEAR
- 2 – INNER SNAP RING
- 3 – CLUTCH DRUM

bearing in place for installation. **Bearing fits one way only. Be sure bearing is seated squarely against hub. Reinstall bearing if it does not seat squarely.**

(10) Install overrunning clutch in output shaft (Fig. 276). Insert snap ring pliers in hub splines. Expand pliers to grip hub. Then install assembly with counterclockwise, twisting motion.

(11) Install planetary gear in annulus gear (Fig. 277). **Be sure planetary pinions are fully seated in annulus gear before proceeding.**

(12) Coat planetary thrust bearing and bearing contact surface of spring plate with generous amount

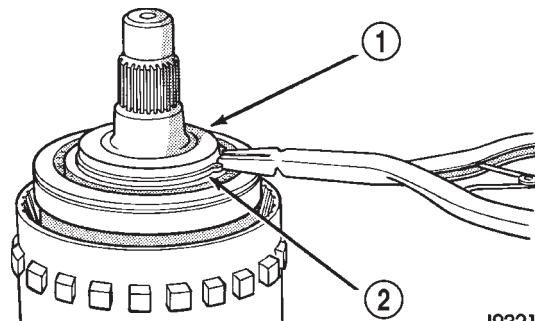


Fig. 274 Rear Bearing And Snap Ring Installation

- 1 – REAR BEARING
- 2 – SNAP RING

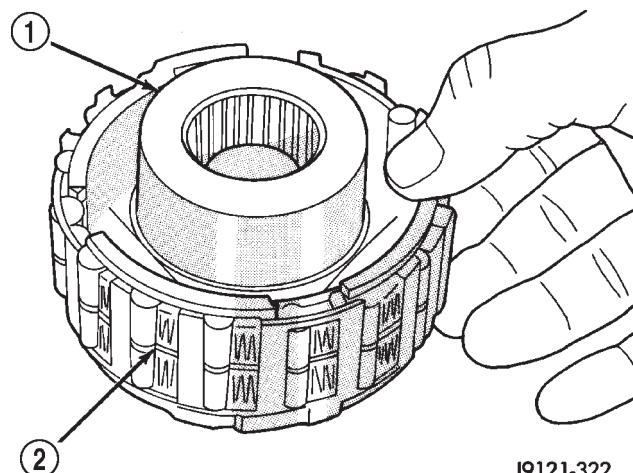


Fig. 275 Assembling Overrunning Clutch And Hub

- 1 – CLUTCH HUB
- 2 – OVERRUNNING CLUTCH

of petroleum jelly. This will help hold bearing in place during installation.

(13) Install planetary thrust bearing on sun gear (Fig. 278). Slide bearing onto gear and seat it against spring plate as shown. **Bearing fits one way only. If it does not seat squarely against spring plate, remove and reposition bearing.**

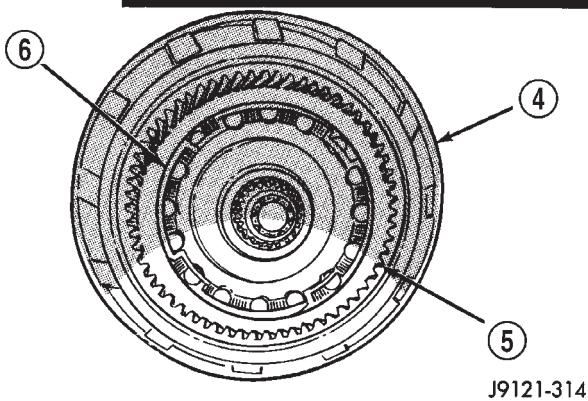
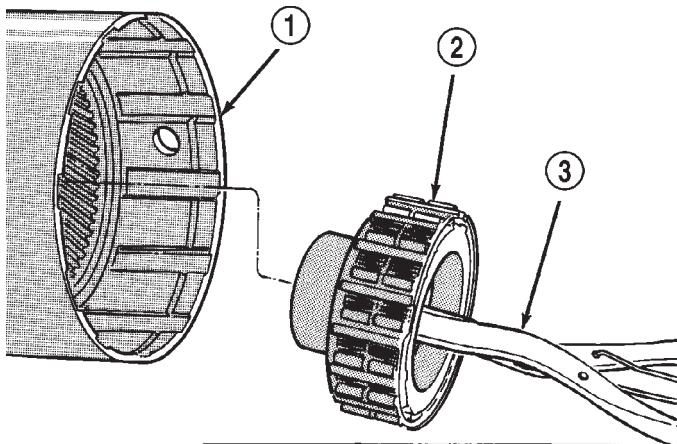
(14) Install assembled sun gear, spring plate and thrust bearing (Fig. 279). Be sure sun gear and thrust bearing are fully seated before proceeding.

(15) Mount assembled output shaft, annulus gear, and clutch drum in shop press. Direct clutch spring, hub and clutch pack are easier to install with assembly mounted in press.

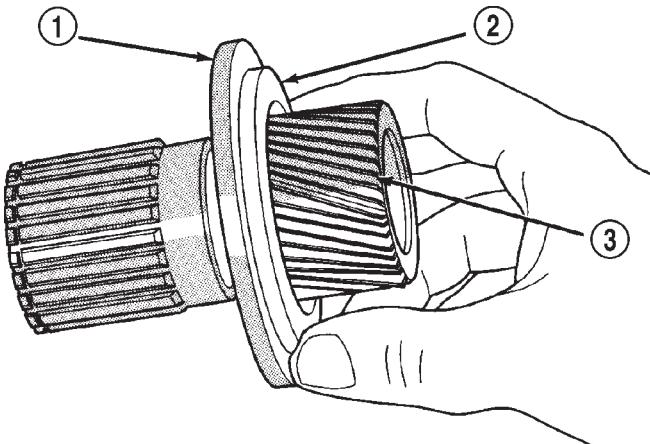
(16) Align splines in hubs of planetary gear and overrunning clutch with Alignment tool 6227-2 (Fig. 280). Insert tool through sun gear and into splines of both hubs. Be sure alignment tool is fully seated before proceeding.

(17) Install direct clutch spring (Fig. 281). Be sure spring is properly seated on spring plate.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 276 Overrunning Clutch Installation**

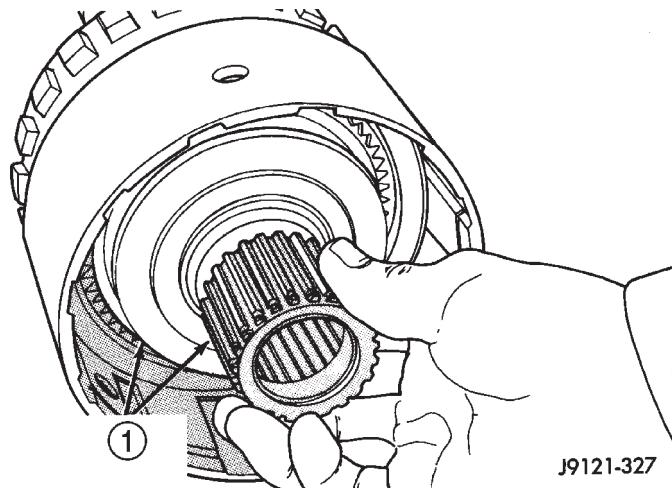
- 1 – CLUTCH DRUM
- 2 – OVERRUNNING CLUTCH ASSEMBLY
- 3 – EXPANDING-TYPE SNAP RING PLIERS
- 4 – CLUTCH DRUM
- 5 – ANNULUS GEAR
- 6 – OVERRUNNING CLUTCH ASSEMBLY SEATED IN OUTPUT SHAFT



J9121-326

Fig. 278 Planetary Thrust Bearing Installation

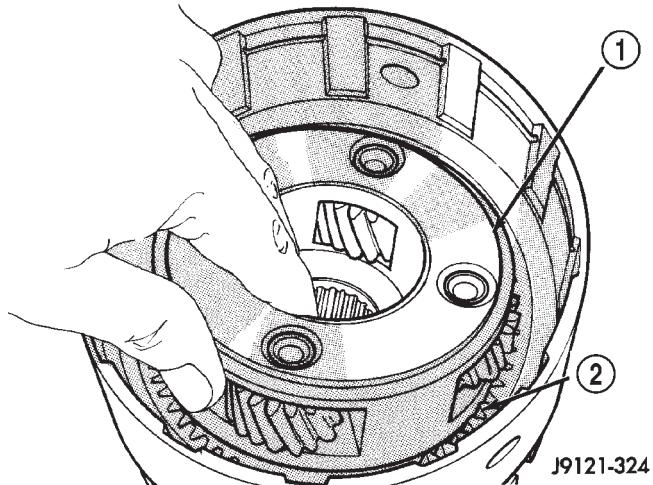
- 1 – SPRING PLATE
- 2 – PLANETARY THRUST BEARING
- 3 – SUN GEAR



J9121-327

Fig. 279 Sun Gear Installation

- 1 – SUN GEAR AND SPRING PLATE ASSEMBLY



J9121-324

Fig. 277 Planetary Gear Installation

- 1 – PLANETARY GEAR
- 2 – ANNULUS GEAR

NOTE: The 42RE transmission has 6 direct clutch discs and 5 clutch plates.

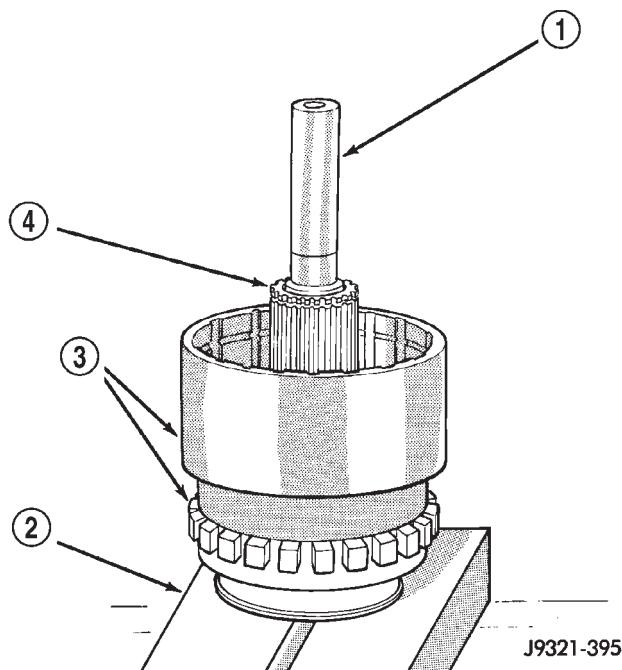
(18) Assemble and install direct clutch pack on hub as follows:

(a) Assemble clutch pack components (Fig. 282).

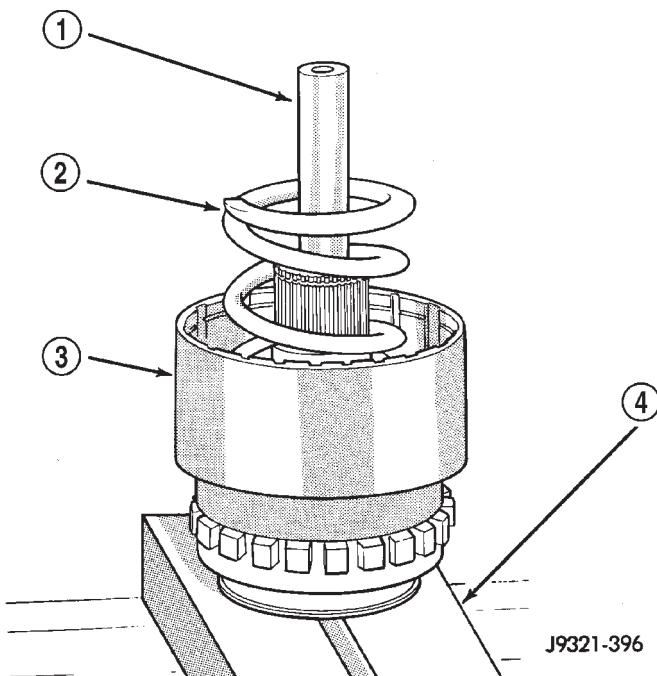
(b) Install direct clutch reaction plate on clutch hub first. Note that one side of reaction plate is counterbored. Be sure this side faces rearward. Splines at rear of hub are raised slightly. Counterbore in plate fits over raised splines. Plate should be flush with this end of hub (Fig. 283).

(c) Install first clutch disc followed by a steel plate until all discs and plates have been installed.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 280 Alignment Tool Installation**

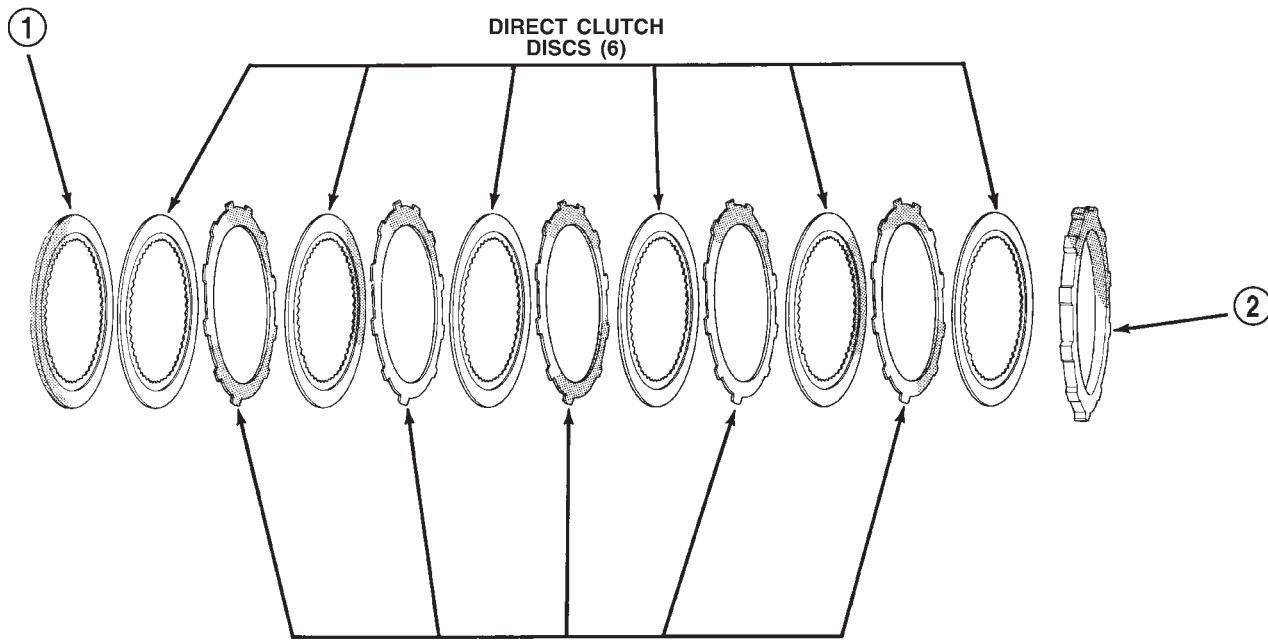
- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6227-2
2 - PRESS PLATES
3 - ASSEMBLED DRUM AND ANNULUS GEAR
4 - SUN GEAR

**Fig. 281 Direct Clutch Spring Installation**

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6227-2
2 - DIRECT CLUTCH SPRING
3 - CLUTCH HUB
4 - PRESS PLATES

(d) Install pressure plate. This is last clutch pack item to be installed. **Be sure plate is installed with shoulder side facing upward (Fig. 284).**

(19) Install clutch hub and clutch pack on direct clutch spring (Fig. 285). **Be sure hub is started on sun gear splines before proceeding.**

**Fig. 282 42RE Direct Clutch Pack Components**

J9321-368

- 1 - REACTION PLATE
2 - PRESSURE PLATE

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

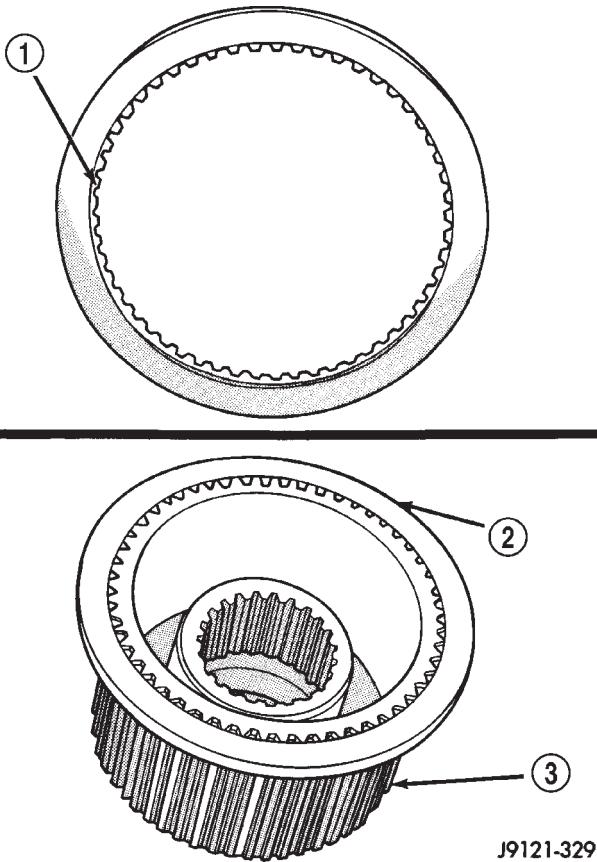


Fig. 283 Correct Position Of Direct Clutch Reaction Plate

- 1 – REACTION PLATE COUNTERBORE
- 2 – DIRECT CLUTCH REACTION PLATE (FLUSH WITH END OF HUB)
- 3 – CLUTCH HUB

WARNING: THE NEXT STEP IN GEARTRAIN ASSEMBLY INVOLVES COMPRESSING THE DIRECT CLUTCH HUB AND SPRING. IT IS EXTREMELY IMPORTANT THAT PROPER EQUIPMENT BE USED TO COMPRESS THE SPRING AS SPRING FORCE IS APPROXIMATELY 830 POUNDS. USE COMPRESSOR TOOL C-6227-1 AND A HYDRAULIC-TYPE SHOP PRESS WITH A MINIMUM RAM TRAVEL OF 6 INCHES. THE PRESS MUST ALSO HAVE A BED THAT CAN BE ADJUSTED UP OR DOWN AS REQUIRED. RELEASE CLUTCH SPRING TENSION SLOWLY AND COMPLETELY TO AVOID PERSONAL INJURY.

(20) Position Compressor Tool 6227-1 on clutch hub.

(21) Compress clutch hub and spring just enough to place tension on hub and hold it in place.

(22) Slowly compress clutch hub and spring. Compress spring and hub only enough to expose ring grooves for clutch pack snap ring and clutch hub retaining ring.

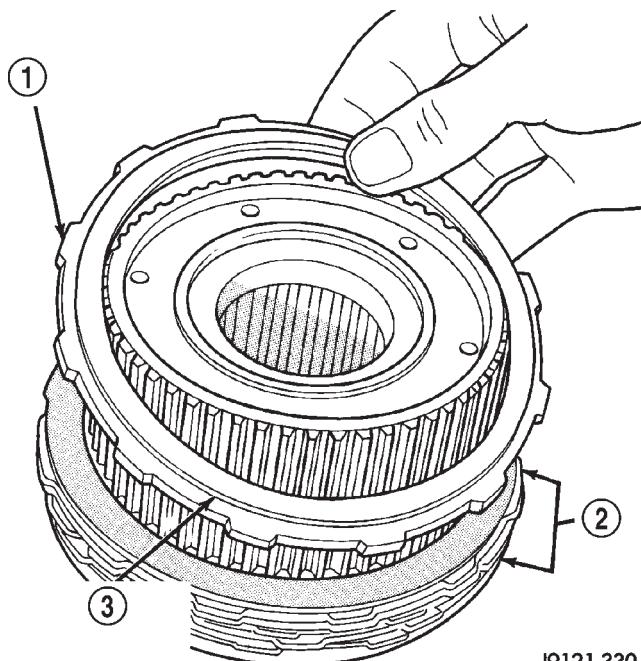


Fig. 284 Correct Position Of Direct Clutch Pressure Plate

- 1 – DIRECT CLUTCH PRESSURE PLATE
- 2 – CLUTCH PACK
- 3 – BE SURE SHOULDER SIDE OF PLATE FACES UPWARD

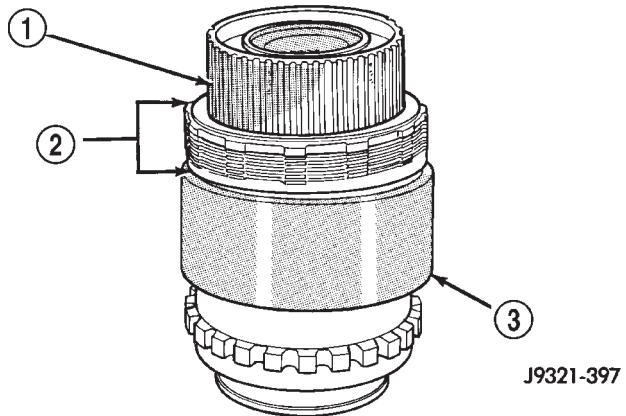


Fig. 285 Direct Clutch Pack And Clutch Hub Installation

- 1 – CLUTCH HUB
- 2 – DIRECT CLUTCH PACK
- 3 – CLUTCH DRUM

(23) Realign clutch pack on hub and seat clutch discs and plates in clutch drum.

(24) Install direct clutch pack snap ring (Fig. 286). Be very sure snap ring is fully seated in clutch drum ring groove.

(25) Install clutch hub retaining ring (Fig. 287). **Be very sure retaining ring is fully seated in sun gear ring groove.**

(26) Slowly release press ram, remove compressor tools and remove geartrain assembly.

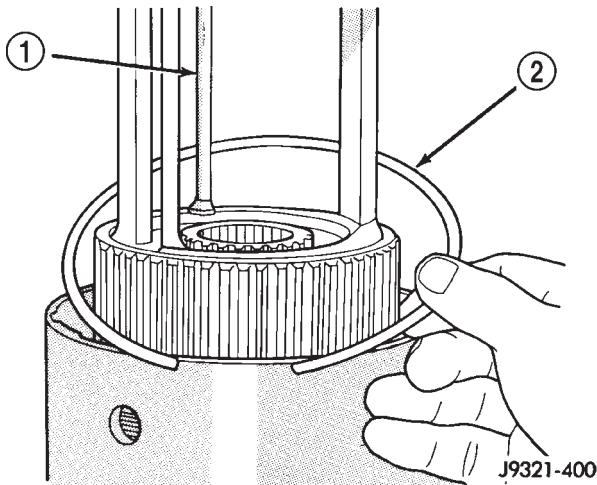


Fig. 286 Direct Clutch Pack Snap Ring Installation

1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6227-1

2 – DIRECT CLUTCH PACK SNAP RING

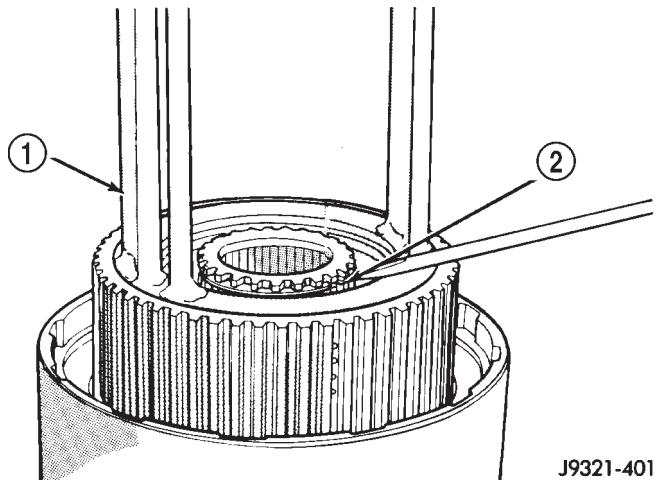


Fig. 287 Clutch Hub Retaining Ring Installation

1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6227-1

2 – CLUTCH HUB RETAINING RING

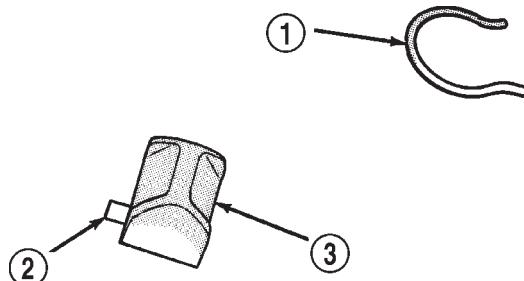
GEAR CASE ASSEMBLY

(1) Position park pawl and spring in case and install park pawl shaft. Verify that end of spring with 90° bend is hooked to pawl and straight end of spring is seated against case.

(2) Install pawl shaft retaining bolt. Tighten bolt to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.) torque.

(3) Install park lock reaction plug. **Note that plug has locating pin at rear (Fig. 288). Be sure pin is seated in hole in case before installing snap ring.**

(4) Install reaction plug snap-ring (Fig. 289). **Compress snap ring only enough for installation; do not distort it.**



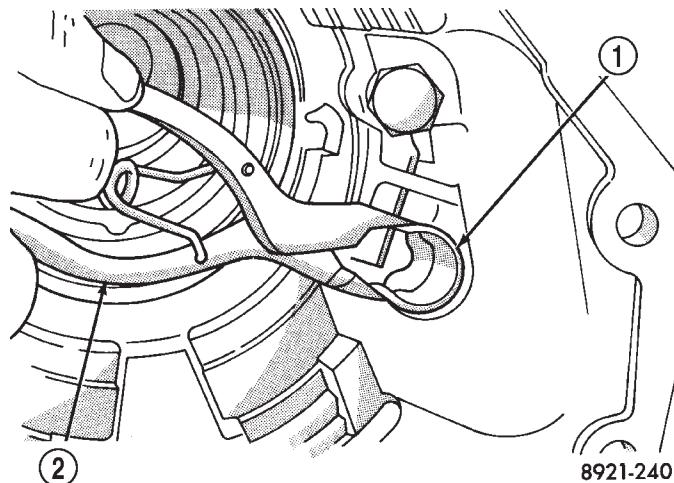
J9121-338

Fig. 288 Reaction Plug Locating Pin And Snap-Ring

1 – REACTION PLUG SNAP RING (DO NOT OVERCOMPRESS TO INSTALL)

2 – LOCATING PIN

3 – PARK LOCK REACTION PLUG



8921-240

Fig. 289 Reaction Plug And Snap-Ring Installation

1 – REACTION PLUG SNAP RING

2 – SNAP RING PLIERS

(5) Install new seal in gear case. On 4x4 gear case, use Tool Handle C-4171 and Installer C-3860-A to seat seal in case. On 4 x 2 gear case, use same Handle C-4171 and Installer C-3995-A to seat seal in case.

(6) Verify that tab ends of rear bearing locating ring extend into access hole in gear case (Fig. 290).

(7) Support geartrain on Tool 6227-1 (Fig. 291). Be sure tool is securely seated in clutch hub.

(8) Install overdrive gear case on geartrain (Fig. 291).

(9) Expand front bearing locating ring with snap ring pliers (Fig. 292). Then slide case downward until locating ring locks in bearing groove and release snap ring.

(10) Install locating ring access cover and gasket in overdrive unit case (Fig. 293).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

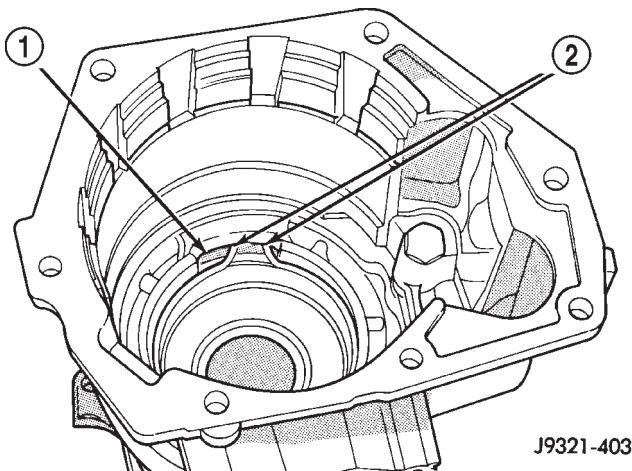


Fig. 290 Correct Rear Bearing Locating Ring Position

1 – CASE ACCESS HOLE
2 – TAB ENDS OF LOCATING RING

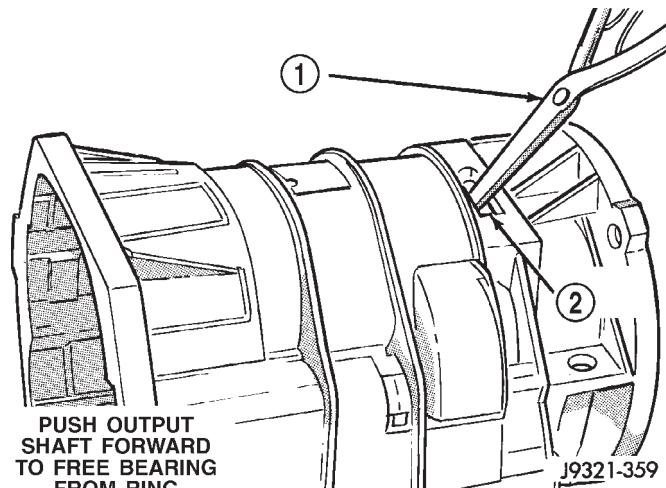


Fig. 292 Seating Locating Ring In Rear Bearing

1 – EXPAND BEARING LOCATING RING WITH SNAP RING PLIERS
2 – ACCESS HOLE

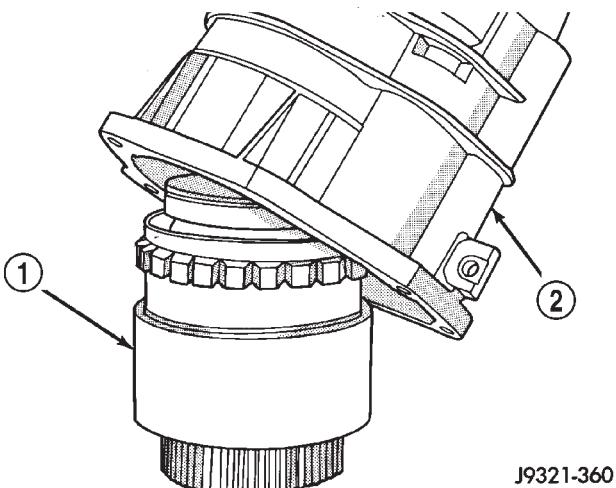


Fig. 291 Overdrive Gear Case Installation

1 – GEARTRAIN ASSEMBLY
2 – GEAR CASE

OVERDRIVE CLUTCH ASSEMBLY

(1) Install overdrive clutch reaction ring first. Reaction ring is flat with notched ends (Fig. 294).

(2) Install wave spring on top of reaction ring (Fig. 295). **Reaction ring and wave ring both fit in same ring groove.** Use screwdriver to seat each ring securely in groove. Also ensure that the ends of the two rings are offset from each other.

NOTE: The 42RE transmission has 3 overdrive clutch discs and 2 plates.

- (3) Assemble overdrive clutch pack (Fig. 296).
- (4) Install overdrive clutch reaction plate first.

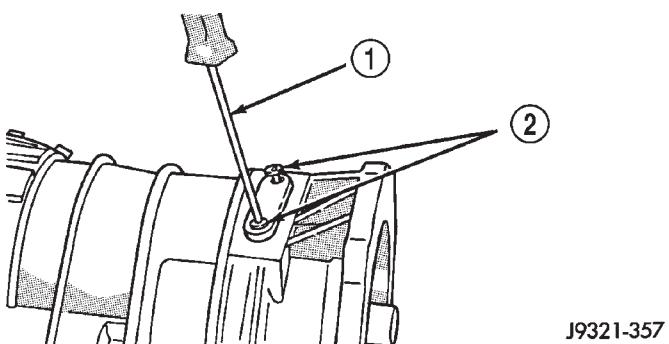


Fig. 293 Locating Ring Access Cover And Gasket Installation

1 – TORX SCREWDRIVER (T25)
2 – ACCESS COVER SCREWS

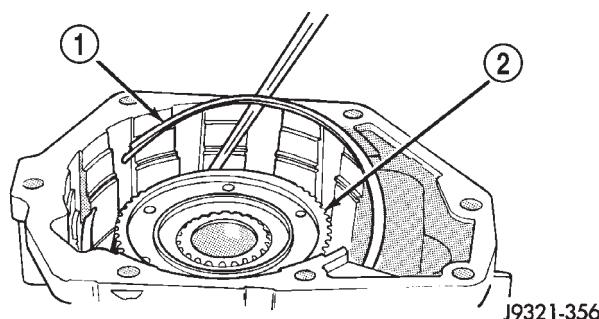
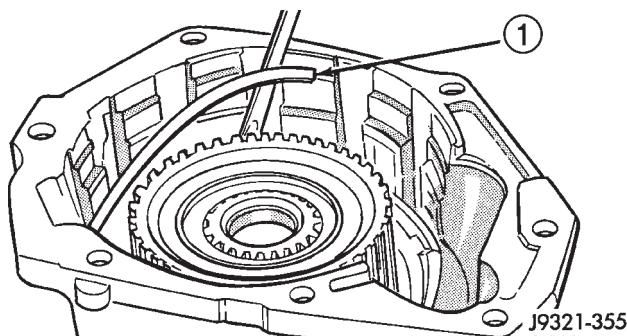


Fig. 294 Overdrive Clutch Reaction Ring Installation

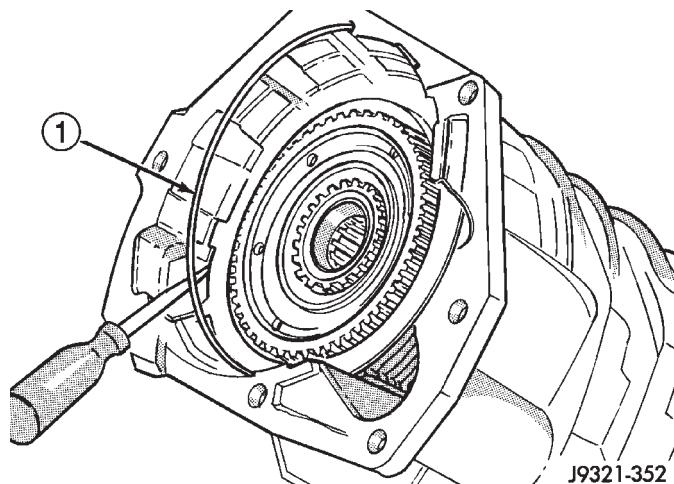
1 – REACTION RING
2 – CLUTCH HUB

- (5) Install first clutch disc followed by first clutch plate. Then install remaining clutch discs and plates in same order.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 295 Overdrive Clutch Wave Spring Installation**

1 – WAVE SPRING

**Fig. 297 Overdrive Clutch Pack Retaining Ring Installation**

1 – OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PACK RETAINING RING

INTERMEDIATE SHAFT SPACER SELECTION

(1) Place overdrive unit in vertical position. Mount it on blocks, or in workbench with appropriate size mounting hole cut into it. Be sure unit is facing upward for access to direct clutch hub. Also be sure output shaft is not loaded and internal components are moved rearward for accurate measurement.

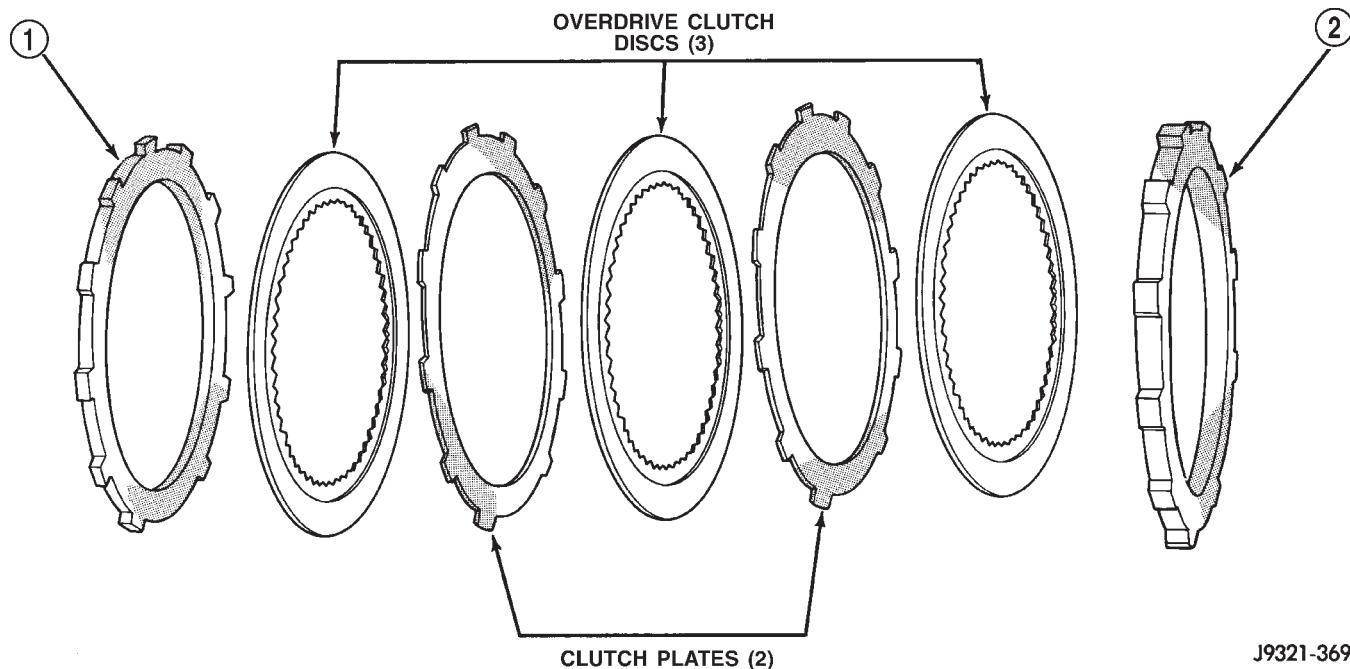
(2) Determine correct thickness intermediate shaft spacer as follows:

(a) Insert Special Tool 6312 through sun gear, planetary gear and into pilot bushing in output

shaft. Be sure tool bottoms against planetary shoulder.

(b) Position Gauge Tool 6311 across face of overdrive case (Fig. 298). Then position Dial Caliper C-4962 over gauge tool.

(c) Extend sliding scale of dial caliper downward through gauge tool slot until scale contacts end of Gauge Alignment Tool 6312. Lock scale in place.

**Fig. 296 42RE Overdrive Clutch Components**

1 – REACTION PLATE

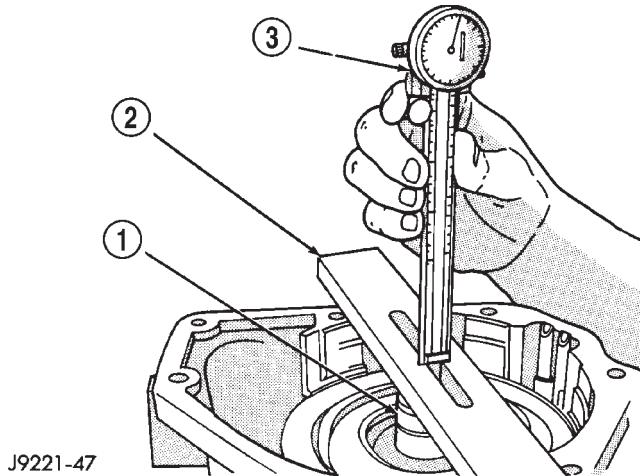
2 – PRESSURE PLATE

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

Remove dial caliper tool and note distance measured (Fig. 298).

(d) Select proper thickness end play spacer from spacer chart based on distance measured (Fig. 299).

(e) Remove Gauge Alignment Tool 6312.



J9221-47
Fig. 298 Shaft End Play Measurement

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6312
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL 6311
- 3 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4962

End Play Measurement (Inches)	Spacer Thickness (Inches)
.7336 - .7505	.158 - .159
.7506 - .7675	.175 - .176
.7676 - .7855	.193 - .194
.7856 - .8011	.211 - .212

J9121-341

Fig. 299 Intermediate Shaft End Play Spacer Selection

OD THRUST PLATE SELECTION

(1) Place overdrive unit in vertical position. Mount it on blocks, or in workbench with appropriate size mounting hole cut into it. Be sure unit is facing upward for access to direct clutch hub. Also be sure output shaft is not loaded and internal components are moved rearward for accurate measurement.

(2) Determine correct thickness overdrive piston thrust plate as follows:

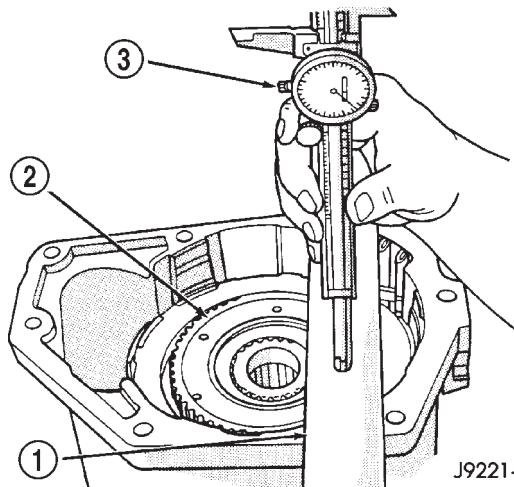
(a) Position Gauge Tool 6311 across face of overdrive case. Then position Dial Caliper C-4962 over gauge tool (Fig. 300).

(b) Measure distance to clutch hub thrust bearing seat at four points 90° apart. Then average measurements by adding them and dividing by 4.

(c) Select and install required thrust plate from information in thrust plate chart (Fig. 301).

(3) Leave Alignment Tool 6227-2 in place. Tool will keep planetary and clutch hub splines in alignment until overdrive unit is ready for installation on transmission.

(4) Transmission speed sensor can be installed at this time if desired. However, it is recommended that sensor not be installed until after overdrive unit is secured to transmission.



J9221-48

Fig. 300 Overdrive Piston Thrust Plate Measurement

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6311
- 2 - DIRECT CLUTCH HUB THRUST BEARING SEAT
- 3 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4962

End Play Measurement (Inches)	Spacer Thickness (Inches)
1.7500 - 1.7649	.108 - .110
1.7650 - 1.7799	.123 - .125
1.7800 - 1.7949	.138 - .140
1.7950 - 1.8099	.153 - .155
1.8100 - 1.8249	.168 - .170
1.8250 - 1.8399	.183 - .185
1.8400 - 1.8549	.198 - .200
1.8550 - 1.8699	.213 - .215
1.8700 - 1.8849	.228 - .230
1.8850 - 1.8999	.243 - .245

J9121-342

Fig. 301 Overdrive Piston Thrust Plate Selection

OVERDRIVE PISTON ASSEMBLY

(1) Install new seals on over drive piston.

(2) Stand transmission case upright on bellhousing.

(3) Position Guide Ring 8114-1 on outer edge of overdrive piston retainer.

(4) Position Seal Guide 8114-2 on inner edge of overdrive piston retainer.

(5) Install overdrive piston in overdrive piston retainer by: aligning locating lugs on overdrive piston to the two mating holes in retainer.

- (a) Aligning locating lugs on overdrive piston to the two mating holes in retainer.
 - (b) Lubricate overdrive piston seals with Mopar® Door Ease, or equivalent.
 - (c) Install piston over Seal Guide 8114-2 and inside Guide Ring 8114-1.
 - (d) Push overdrive piston into position in retainer.
 - (e) Verify that the locating lugs entered the lug bores in the retainer.
- (6) Install intermediate shaft spacer on intermediate shaft.
- (7) Install overdrive piston thrust plate on overdrive piston.
- (8) Install overdrive piston thrust bearing on overdrive piston.
- (9) Install transmission speed sensor and O-ring seal in overdrive case (Fig. 242).

CLEANING AND INSPECTION

VALVE BODY

Clean the valve housings, valves, plugs, springs, and separator plates with a standard parts cleaning solution only. Do not use gasoline, kerosene, or any type of caustic solution.

Do not immerse any of the electrical components in cleaning solution. Clean the governor solenoid and sensor and the dual solenoid and harness assembly by wiping them off with dry shop towels only.

Dry all except the electrical parts with compressed air. Make sure all passages are clean and free from obstructions. **Do not use rags or shop towels to dry or wipe off valve body components. Lint from these materials can stick to valve body parts, interfere with valve operation, and clog filters and fluid passages.**

Wipe the governor pressure sensor and solenoid valve with dry, lint free shop towels only. The O-rings on the sensor and solenoid valve are the only serviceable components. Be sure the vent ports in the solenoid valve are open and not blocked by dirt or debris. Replace the valve and/or sensor only when DRB scan tool diagnosis indicates this is necessary. Or, if either part has sustained physical damage (dented, deformed, broken, etc.).

CAUTION: Do not turn the small screw at the end of the solenoid valve for any reason. Turning the screw in either direction will ruin solenoid calibration and result in solenoid failure. In addition, the filter on the solenoid valve is NOT serviceable. Do not try to remove the filter as this will damage the valve housing.

Inspect the throttle and manual valve levers and shafts. Do not attempt to straighten a bent shaft or correct a loose lever. Replace these components if worn, bent, loose or damaged in any way.

Inspect all of the valve body mating surfaces for scratches, nicks, burrs, or distortion. Use a straight-edge to check surface flatness. Minor scratches may be removed with crocus cloth using only very light pressure.

Minor distortion of a valve body mating surface may be corrected by smoothing the surface with a sheet of crocus cloth. Position the crocus cloth on a surface plate, sheet of plate glass or equally flat surface. If distortion is severe or any surfaces are heavily scored, the valve body will have to be replaced.

CAUTION: Many of the valves and plugs, such as the throttle valve, shuttle valve plug, 1-2 shift valve and 1-2 governor plug, are made of coated aluminum. Aluminum components are identified by the dark color of the special coating applied to the surface (or by testing with a magnet). Do not sand aluminum valves or plugs under any circumstances. This practice could damage the special coating causing the valves/plugs to stick and bind.

Inspect the valves and plugs for scratches, burrs, nicks, or scores. Minor surface scratches on steel valves and plugs can be removed with crocus cloth but **do not round off the edges of the valve or plug lands.** Maintaining sharpness of these edges is vitally important. The edges prevent foreign matter from lodging between the valves and plugs and the bore.

Inspect all the valve and plug bores in the valve body. Use a penlight to view the bore interiors. Replace the valve body if any bores are distorted or scored. Inspect all of the valve body springs. The springs must be free of distortion, warpage or broken coils.

Check the two separator plates for distortion or damage of any kind. Inspect the upper housing, lower housing, 3-4 accumulator housing, and transfer plate carefully. Be sure all fluid passages are clean and clear. Check condition of the upper housing and transfer plate check balls as well. The check balls and ball seats must not be worn or damaged.

Trial fit each valve and plug in its bore to check freedom of operation. When clean and dry, the valves and plugs should drop freely into the bores.

Valve body bores do not change dimensionally with use. If the valve body functioned correctly when new, it will continue to operate properly after cleaning and inspection. It should not be necessary to replace a valve body assembly unless it is damaged in handling.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

The only serviceable valve body components are listed below. The remaining valve body components are serviced only as part of a complete valve body assembly. Serviceable parts are:

- dual solenoid and harness assembly
- solenoid gasket
- solenoid case connector O-rings and shoulder bolt
- switch valve and spring
- pressure adjusting screw and bracket assembly
- throttle lever
- manual lever and shaft seal
- throttle lever shaft seal, washer, and E-clip
- fluid filter and screws
- detent ball and spring
- valve body screws
- governor pressure solenoid
- governor pressure sensor and retaining clip
- park lock rod and E-clip

TRANSMISSION

GENERAL INFORMATION

Inspect the transmission bushings during overhaul. Bushing condition is important as worn, scored bushings contribute to low pressures, clutch slip and accelerated wear of other components. However, do not replace bushings as a matter of course. Replace bushings only when they are actually worn, or scored.

Use recommended tools to replace bushings. The tools are sized and designed to remove, install, and seat bushings correctly. The bushing replacement tools are included in Bushing Tool Set C-3887-B.

Pre-sized service bushings are available for replacement purposes. Only the sun gear bushings are not serviced. Low cost of the sun gear assembly makes it easier to simply replace the gear and bushings as an assembly.

Heli-Coil inserts can be used to repair damaged, stripped or worn threads in aluminum parts. These inserts are available from most automotive parts suppliers. Stainless steel inserts are recommended.

The use of crocus cloth is permissible where necessary, providing it is used carefully. When used on shafts, or valves, use extreme care to avoid rounding off sharp edges. Sharp edges are vital as they prevent foreign matter from getting between the valve and valve bore.

Do not reuse oil seals, gaskets, seal rings, or O-rings during overhaul. Replace these parts as a matter of course. Also do not reuse snap rings or E-clips that are bent or distorted. Replace these parts as well.

Lubricate transmission parts with Mopar® ATF Plus 3, Type 7176, transmission fluid during over-

haul and assembly. Use petroleum jelly, Mopar® Door Ease, or Ru-Glyde to prelubricate seals, O-rings, and thrust washers. Petroleum jelly can also be used to hold parts in place during reassembly.

TRANSMISSION CASE CLEANING AND INSPECTION

Clean the case in a solvent tank. Flush the case bores and fluid passages thoroughly with solvent. Dry the case and all fluid passages with compressed air. Be sure all solvent is removed from the case and that all fluid passages are clear.

NOTE: Do not use shop towels or rags to dry the case (or any other transmission component) unless they are made from lint-free materials. Lint will stick to case surfaces and transmission components and circulate throughout the transmission after assembly. A sufficient quantity of lint can block fluid passages and interfere with valve body operation.

Inspect the case for cracks, porous spots, worn bores, or damaged threads. Damaged threads can be repaired with Helicoil thread inserts. However, the case will have to be replaced if it exhibits any type of damage or wear.

Lubricate the front band adjusting screw threads with petroleum jelly and thread the screw part-way into the case. Be sure the screw turns freely.

OVERRUNNING CLUTCH/LOW-REVERSE DRUM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER

Clean the overrunning clutch assembly, clutch cam, low-reverse drum, and overdrive piston retainer in solvent. Dry them with compressed air after cleaning.

Inspect condition of each clutch part after cleaning. Replace the overrunning clutch roller and spring assembly if any rollers or springs are worn or damaged, or if the roller cage is distorted, or damaged. Replace the cam if worn, cracked or damaged.

Replace the low-reverse drum if the clutch race, roller surface or inside diameter is scored, worn or damaged. **Do not remove the clutch race from the low-reverse drum under any circumstances. Replace the drum and race as an assembly if either component is damaged.**

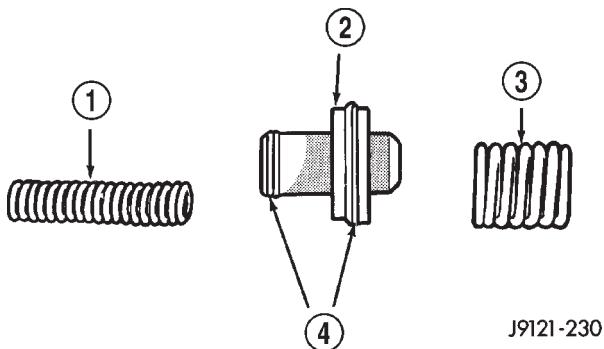
Examine the overdrive piston retainer carefully for wear, cracks, scoring or other damage. Be sure the retainer hub is a snug fit in the case and drum. Replace the retainer if worn or damaged.

ACCUMULATOR

Inspect the accumulator piston and seal rings (Fig. 302). Replace the seal rings if worn or cut. Replace the piston if chipped or cracked.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

Check condition of the accumulator inner and outer springs (Fig. 302). Replace the springs if the coils are cracked, distorted or collapsed.

**Fig. 302 Accumulator Components**

- 1 – INNER SPRING
- 2 – ACCUMULATOR PISTON
- 3 – OUTER SPRING
- 4 – SEAL RINGS

FRONT SERVO

Clean the servo piston components with solvent and dry them with compressed air. Wipe the band clean with lint free shop towels.

Replace the front band if distorted, lining is burned, flaking off, or worn to the point where the grooves in the lining material are no longer visible.

Inspect the servo components. Replace the springs if collapsed, distorted or broken. Replace the guide, rod and piston if cracked, bent, or worn. Discard the servo snap ring if distorted or warped.

Check the servo piston bore for wear. If the bore is severely scored, or damaged, it will be necessary to replace the case.

Replace any servo component if doubt exists about condition. Do not reuse suspect parts.

REAR SERVO

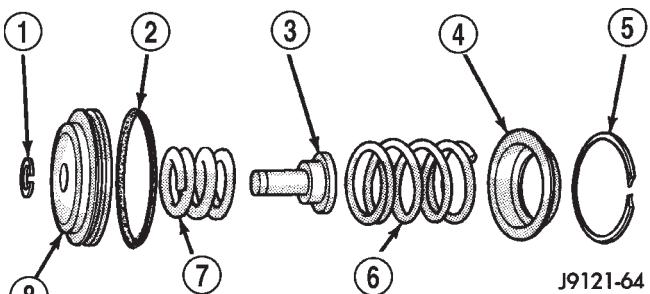
Remove and discard the servo piston seal ring (Fig. 303). Then clean the servo components with solvent and dry with compressed air. Replace either spring if collapsed, distorted or broken. Replace the plug and piston if cracked, bent, or worn. Discard the servo snap rings and use a new ones at assembly.

OIL PUMP AND REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT

(1) Clean pump and support components with solvent and dry them with compressed air.

(2) Check condition of the seal rings and thrust washer on the reaction shaft support. The seal rings do not need to be replaced unless cracked, broken, or severely worn.

(3) Inspect the pump and support components. Replace the pump or support if the seal ring grooves or machined surfaces are worn, scored, pitted, or

**Fig. 303 Rear Servo Components**

- 1 – SNAP RING
- 2 – PISTON SEAL
- 3 – PISTON PLUG
- 4 – SPRING RETAINER
- 5 – SNAP RING
- 6 – PISTON SPRING
- 7 – CUSHION SPRING
- 8 – PISTON

damaged. Replace the pump gears if pitted, worn chipped, or damaged.

(4) Inspect the pump bushing. Then check the reaction shaft support bushing. Replace either bushing only if heavily worn, scored or damaged. It is not necessary to replace the bushings unless they are actually damaged.

(5) Install the gears in the pump body and measure pump component clearances as follows:

(a) Clearance between outer gear and reaction shaft housing should be 0.010 to 0.063 mm (0.0004 to 0.0025 in.). Clearance between inner gear and reaction shaft housing should be 0.010 to 0.063 mm (0.0004 to 0.0025 in.). Both clearances can be measured at the same time by:

(I) Installing the pump gears in the pump housing.

(II) Position an appropriate piece of Plastigage™ across both gears.

(III) Align the plastigage to a flat area on the reaction shaft housing.

(IV) Install the reaction shaft to the pump housing.

(V) Separate the reaction shaft housing from the pump housing and measure the Plastigage™ following the instructions supplied with it.

(b) Clearance between inner gear tooth and outer gear should be 0.08 to 0.19 mm (0.0035 to 0.0075 in.). Measure clearance with an appropriate feeler gauge.

(c) Clearance between outer gear and pump housing should also be 0.010 to 0.19 mm (0.0035 to 0.0075 in.). Measure clearance with an appropriate feeler gauge.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

FRONT CLUTCH

Clean and inspect the front clutch components. Replace the clutch discs if warped, worn, scored, burned or charred, or if the facing is flaking off. Replace the steel plates if heavily scored, warped, or broken. Be sure the driving lugs on the plates are in good condition. The lugs must not be bent, cracked or damaged in any way.

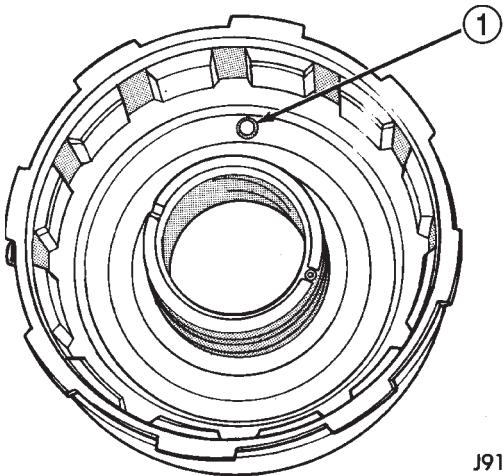
Replace the clutch spring and spring retainer if either is distorted, warped or broken.

Check the lug grooves in the clutch retainer. The steel plates should slide freely in the slots. Replace the retainer if the grooves are worn or damaged.

Check action of the check ball in the retainer (Fig. 304). The ball must move freely and not stick.

NOTE: Inspect the clutch retainer bushings carefully (Fig. 305). The retainer bushings are NOT serviceable. It will be necessary to replace the retainer if either bushing is scored, or worn.

Inspect the piston and retainer seal surfaces for nicks or scratches. Minor scratches can be removed with crocus cloth. However, replace the piston and/or retainer if the seal surfaces are seriously scored.



J9121-368

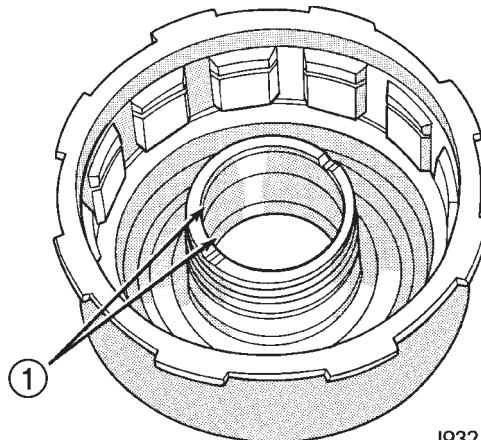
Fig. 304 Front Clutch Piston Retainer Check Ball Location

1 – RETAINER CHECK BALL

REAR CLUTCH

Clean the clutch components with solvent and dry them with compressed air. Do not use rags or shop towels to dry any of the clutch parts. Lint from such materials will adhere to component surfaces and could restrict or block fluid passages after assembly.

Replace the clutch discs if warped, worn, scored, burned/charred, the lugs are damaged, or if the facing is flaking off. Replace the top and bottom pressure plates if scored, warped, or cracked. Be sure the driving lugs on the pressure and clutch plates are



J9321-223

Fig. 305 Retainer Bushing Location/Inspection

1 – FRONT CLUTCH RETAINER BUSHINGS (NON-SERVICEABLE)

also in good condition. The lugs must not be bent, cracked or damaged in any way.

Replace the piston spring and wave spring if either part is distorted, warped or broken.

Check the lug grooves in the clutch retainer. The clutch and pressure plates should slide freely in the slots. Replace the retainer if the grooves are worn or damaged. Also check action of the check balls in the retainer and piston. Each check ball must move freely and not stick.

Replace the retainer bushing if worn, scored, or doubt exists about bushing condition.

Inspect the piston and retainer seal surfaces for nicks or scratches. Minor scratches can be removed with crocus cloth. However, replace the piston and/or retainer if the seal surfaces are seriously scored.

Check condition of the fiber thrust washer and metal output shaft thrust washer. Replace either washer if worn or damaged.

Check condition of the seal rings on the input shaft and clutch retainer hub. Replace the seal rings only if worn, distorted, or damaged. The input shaft front seal ring is teflon with chamfered ends. The rear ring is metal with interlocking ends.

Check the input shaft for wear, or damage. Replace the shaft if worn, scored or damaged in any way.

PLANETARY GEARTRAIN

Clean the planetary components in solvent and dry them with compressed air.

Check sun gear and driving shell condition. Replace the gear if damaged or if the bushings are scored or worn. The bushings are not serviceable. Replace the driving shell if worn, cracked or damaged.

Replace planetary gear sets if gears, pinion pins, or carrier are damaged in any way. Replace the annulus

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

gears and supports if either component is worn or damaged.

Inspect the geartrain spacers, thrust plates, snap rings, and thrust washers. Replace any of these parts that are worn, distorted or damaged. Do not attempt to reuse these parts.

The planetary gear thrust washers are different sizes. The large diameter washers go on the front planetary and the smaller washers go on the rear planetary. All the washers have four locating tabs on them. These tabs fit in the holes or slots provided in each planetary gear.

Inspect the output shaft carefully. Pay particular attention to the machined bushing/bearing surfaces on the shaft and the governor valve shaft bore at the shaft rear.

Replace the output shaft if the machined surfaces are scored, pitted, or damaged in any way. Also replace the shaft if the splines are damaged, or exhibits cracks at any location (especially at the governor valve shaft bore).

The annulus gears can be removed from their supports if necessary. Just remove the snap rings and separate the two parts when replacement is necessary. In addition, the annulus gear bushings can be replaced if severely worn, or scored. However it is not necessary to replace the bushings if they only exhibit normal wear. Check bushing fit on the output shaft to be sure.

OVERDRIVE UNIT

Clean the geartrain and case components with solvent. Dry all parts except the bearings with compressed air. Allow bearings to air dry.

Do not use shop towels for wiping parts dry unless the towels are made from a lint-free material. A sufficient quantity of lint (from shop towels, cloths, rags, etc.) could plug the transmission filter and fluid passages.

Discard the old case gasket and seals. Do not attempt to salvage these parts. They are not reusable. Replace any of the overdrive unit snap rings if distorted or damaged.

Minor nicks or scratches on components can be smoothed with crocus cloth. However, do not attempt to reduce severe scoring on any components with abrasive materials. Replace severely scored components; do not try to salvage them.

Check condition of the park lock components and the overdrive case.

Replace the case if cracked, scored, or damaged. Replace the park lock pawl, plug, or spring if worn or damaged. Be sure the bullet at the end of the park lock rod is in good condition. Replace the rod if the bullet is worn or the rod itself is bent or distorted. Do not attempt to straighten the rod.

Check the bushings in the overdrive case. Replace the bushings if severely scored or worn. Also replace the case seal if loose, distorted, or damaged.

Examine the overdrive and direct clutch discs and plates. Replace the discs if the facing is worn, severely scored, or burned and flaking off. Replace the clutch plates if worn, heavily scored, or cracked. Check the lugs on the clutch plates for wear. The plates should slide freely in the drum. Replace the plates or drum if binding occurs.

Check condition of the annulus gear, direct clutch hub, clutch drum and clutch spring. Replace the gear, hub and drum if worn or damaged. Replace the spring if collapsed, distorted, or cracked.

Be sure the splines and lugs on the gear, drum and hub are in good condition. The clutch plates and discs should slide freely in these components.

Inspect the thrust bearings and spring plate. Replace the plate if worn or scored. Replace the bearings if rough, noisy, brinnelled, or worn.

Inspect the planetary gear assembly and the sun gear and bushings. If either the sun gear or the bushings are damaged, replace the gear and bushings as an assembly. The gear and bushings are not serviced separately.

The planetary carrier and pinions must be in good condition. Also be sure the pinion pins are secure and in good condition. Replace the carrier if worn or damaged.

Inspect the overrunning clutch and race. The race surface should be smooth and free of scores. Replace the overrunning clutch assembly or the race if either assembly is worn or damaged in any way.

Inspect the output shaft and governor components. Replace the shaft pilot bushing and inner bushing if damaged. Replace either shaft bearing if rough or noisy. Replace the bearing snap rings if distorted or cracked.

Check the machined surfaces on the output shaft. These surfaces should clean and smooth. Very minor nicks or scratches can be smoothed with crocus cloth. Replace the shaft if worn, scored or damaged in any way.

Inspect the output shaft bushings. The small bushing is the intermediate shaft pilot bushing. The large bushing is the overrunning clutch hub bushing. Replace either bushing if scored, pitted, cracked, or worn.

ADJUSTMENTS

TRANSMISSION THROTTLE VALVE CABLE ADJUSTMENT

The transmission throttle valve is operated by a cam on the valve body throttle lever. The throttle

ADJUSTMENTS (Continued)

lever is actuated by a cable connected to the engine throttle body lever (Fig. 306). A retaining clip at the engine-end of the cable is removed to provide for cable adjustment. The retaining clip is then installed back onto the throttle valve cable to lock in the adjustment.

A correctly adjusted throttle valve cable, will cause the throttle lever on the transmission to move simultaneously with the throttle body lever from the idle position. Proper adjustment allows simultaneous movement without causing the transmission throttle lever to move ahead of, or lag behind the throttle body lever.

THROTTLE VALVE CABLE ADJUSTMENT CHECK

- (1) Turn ignition key to OFF position.
- (2) Remove air cleaner.
- (3) Slide cable off attachment stud on throttle body lever (Fig. 306).
- (4) Verify that throttle body lever is at curb idle position. Then verify that transmission throttle lever is also at idle (full forward) position.
- (5) Compare position of cable end to attachment stud on throttle body lever:

- (a) Cable end and attachment stud should be aligned (or centered on one another) to within 1 mm (0.039 in.) in either direction.
- (b) If cable end and attachment stud are misaligned (off center), cable will have to be adjusted as described in following procedure.
- (6) Reconnect cable end to attachment stud. Then with aid of a helper, observe movement of transmission throttle lever and lever on throttle body.
 - (a) If both levers move simultaneously from idle to half-throttle and back to idle position, adjustment is correct.
 - (b) If transmission throttle lever moves ahead of, or lags behind throttle body lever, cable adjustment will be necessary. Or, if throttle body lever prevents transmission lever from returning to closed position, cable adjustment will be necessary.

THROTTLE VALVE CABLE ADJUSTMENT PROCEDURE

- (1) Turn ignition switch to OFF position and shift into Park.
- (2) Remove air cleaner.
- (3) Disconnect cable end from attachment stud on throttle body. **Carefully slide cable off stud. Do not pull or pry cable off.**
- (4) Verify that transmission throttle lever is in idle (full forward) position. Then be sure lever on throttle body is at curb idle position.
- (5) Insert a small screwdriver under edge of retaining clip and remove retaining clip.
- (6) Center cable end on attachment stud to within 1 mm (0.039 in.).

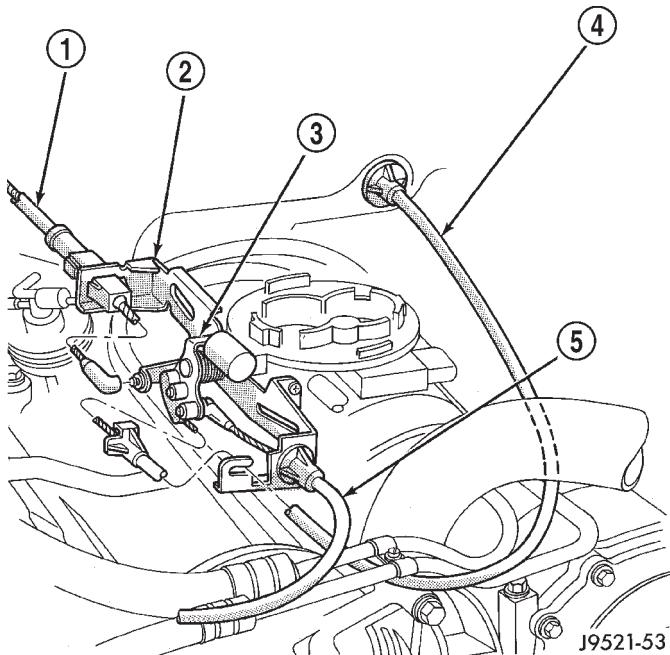


Fig. 306 Throttle Valve Cable Attachment —At Engine

-
- 1 – THROTTLE VALVE CABLE
2 – CABLE BRACKET
3 – THROTTLE BODY LEVER
4 – ACCELERATOR CABLE
5 – SPEED CONTROL CABLE
-

NOTE: Be sure that as the cable is pulled forward and centered on the throttle lever stud, the cable housing moves smoothly with the cable. Due to the angle at which the cable housing enters the spring housing, the cable housing may bind slightly and create an incorrect adjustment.

- (7) Install retaining clip onto cable housing.
- (8) Check cable adjustment. Be sure transmission throttle lever and lever on throttle body move simultaneously and as described in cable adjustment checking procedure.

GEARSHIFT CABLE

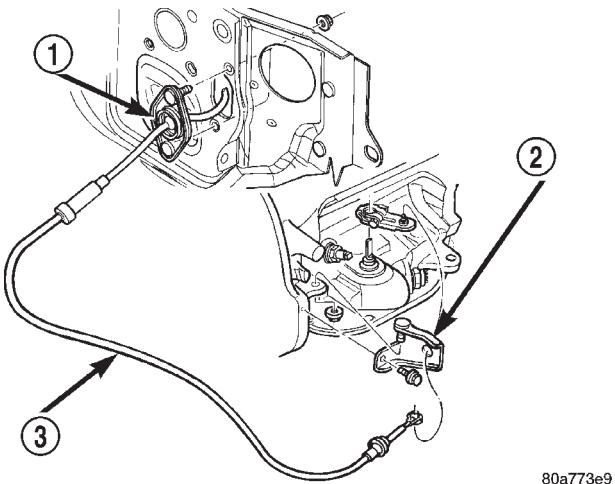
Check adjustment by starting the engine in Park and Neutral. Adjustment is OK if the engine starts only in these positions. Adjustment is incorrect if the engine starts in one but not both positions. If the engine starts in any position other than Park or Neutral, or if the engine will not start at all, the park/neutral position switch may be faulty.

Gearshift Adjustment Procedure

- (1) Shift transmission into Park.
- (2) Release cable adjuster lock (underneath the power brake booster) (Fig. 307) to unlock cable.
- (3) Raise vehicle.

ADJUSTMENTS (Continued)

- (4) Slide cable eyelet off transmission shift lever.
- (5) Verify transmission shift lever is in Park detent by moving lever fully rearward. Last rearward detent is Park position.
- (6) Verify positive engagement of transmission park lock by attempting to rotate propeller shaft. Shaft will not rotate when park lock is engaged.
- (7) Slide cable eyelet onto transmission shift lever.
- (8) Lower vehicle and check engine starting. Engine should start only in Park and Neutral.
- (9) Lock shift cable by pressing cable adjuster clamp down until it snaps into place.

**Fig. 307 Gearshift Cable Routing**

- 1 – CABLE MOUNTING
2 – CABLE BRACKET AT TRANS.
3 – GEARSHIFT CABLE

BAND ADJUSTMENTS

FRONT BAND ADJUSTMENT

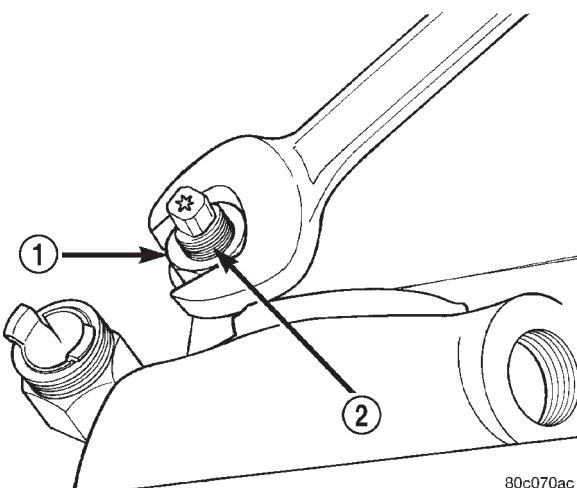
The front (kickdown) band adjusting screw is located on the left side of the transmission case above the manual valve and throttle valve levers.

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Loosen band adjusting screw locknut (Fig. 308). Then back locknut off 3-5 turns. Be sure adjusting screw turns freely in case. Apply lubricant to screw threads if necessary.
- (3) Tighten band adjusting screw to 8 N·m (72 in. lbs.) torque with Inch Pound Torque Wrench C-3380-A, a 3-in. extension and appropriate Torx™ socket.

CAUTION: If Adapter C-3705 is needed to reach the adjusting screw, tighten the screw to only 5 N·m (47-50 in. lbs.) torque.

- (4) Back off front band adjusting screw 3 turns.
- (5) Hold adjuster screw in position and tighten locknut to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.) torque.

- (6) Lower vehicle.

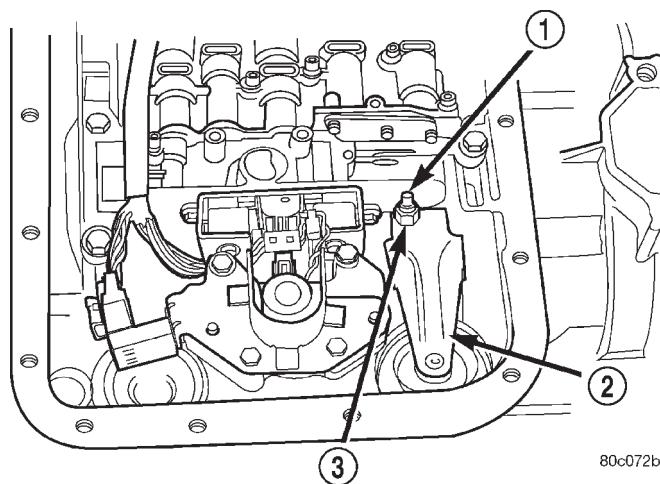
**Fig. 308 Front Band Adjustment Screw Location**

- 1 – LOCK-NUT
2 – FRONT BAND ADJUSTER

REAR BAND ADJUSTMENT

The transmission oil pan must be removed for access to the rear band adjusting screw.

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Remove transmission oil pan and drain fluid.
- (3) Loosen band adjusting screw locknut 5-6 turns (Fig. 309). Be sure adjusting screw turns freely in lever.
- (4) Tighten adjusting screw to 8 N·m (72 in. lbs.) torque.

**Fig. 309 Rear Band Adjusting Screw Location**

- 1 – ADJUSTING SCREW
2 – REAR BAND LEVER
3 – LOCKNUT

- (5) Back off adjusting screw 4 turns.
- (6) Hold adjusting screw in place and tighten locknut to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.) torque.

ADJUSTMENTS (Continued)

(7) Position new gasket on oil pan and install pan on transmission. Tighten pan bolts to 17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.) torque.

(8) Lower vehicle and refill transmission with Mopar® ATF Plus 3, Type 7176 fluid.

VALVE BODY

CONTROL PRESSURE ADJUSTMENTS

There are two control pressure adjustments on the valve body;

- Line Pressure
- Throttle Pressure

Line and throttle pressures are interdependent because each affects shift quality and timing. As a result, both adjustments must be performed properly and in the correct sequence. Adjust line pressure first and throttle pressure last.

LINE PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT

Measure distance from the valve body to the inner edge of the adjusting screw with an accurate steel scale (Fig. 310).

Distance should be 33.4 mm (1-5/16 in.).

If adjustment is required, turn the adjusting screw in, or out, to obtain required distance setting.

NOTE: The 33.4 mm (1-5/16 in.) setting is an approximate setting. Manufacturing tolerances may make it necessary to vary from this dimension to obtain desired pressure.

One complete turn of the adjusting screw changes line pressure approximately 1-2/3 psi (9 kPa).

Turning the adjusting screw counterclockwise increases pressure while turning the screw clockwise decreases pressure.

THROTTLE PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT

Insert Gauge Tool C-3763 between the throttle lever cam and the kickdown valve stem (Fig. 311).

Push the gauge tool inward to compress the kickdown valve against the spring and bottom the throttle valve.

Maintain pressure against kickdown valve spring. Turn throttle lever stop screw until the screw head touches throttle lever tang and the throttle lever cam touches gauge tool.

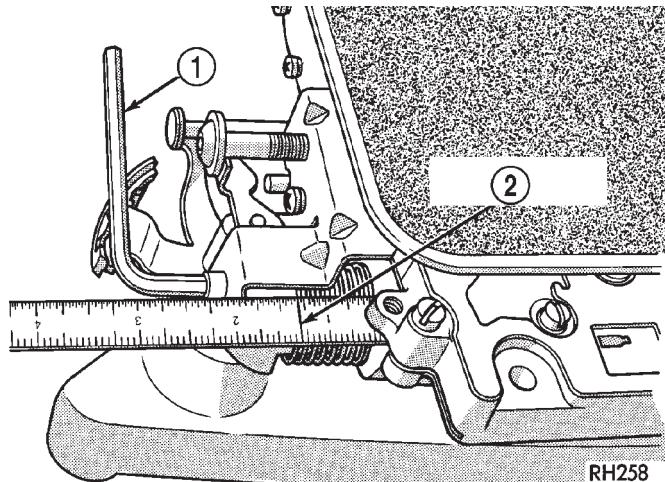
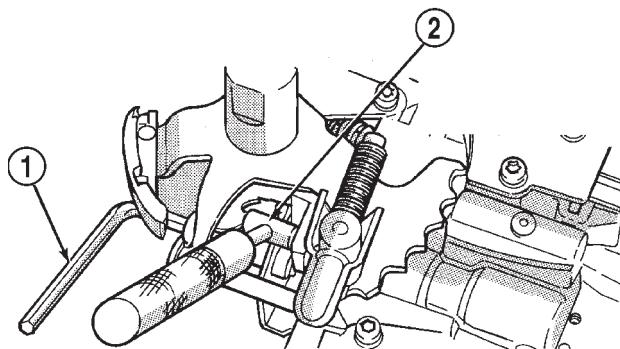


Fig. 310 Line Pressure Adjustment

1 – WRENCH
2 – 1-5/16 INCH

NOTE: The kickdown valve spring must be fully compressed and the kickdown valve completely bottomed to obtain correct adjustment.



J9521-109

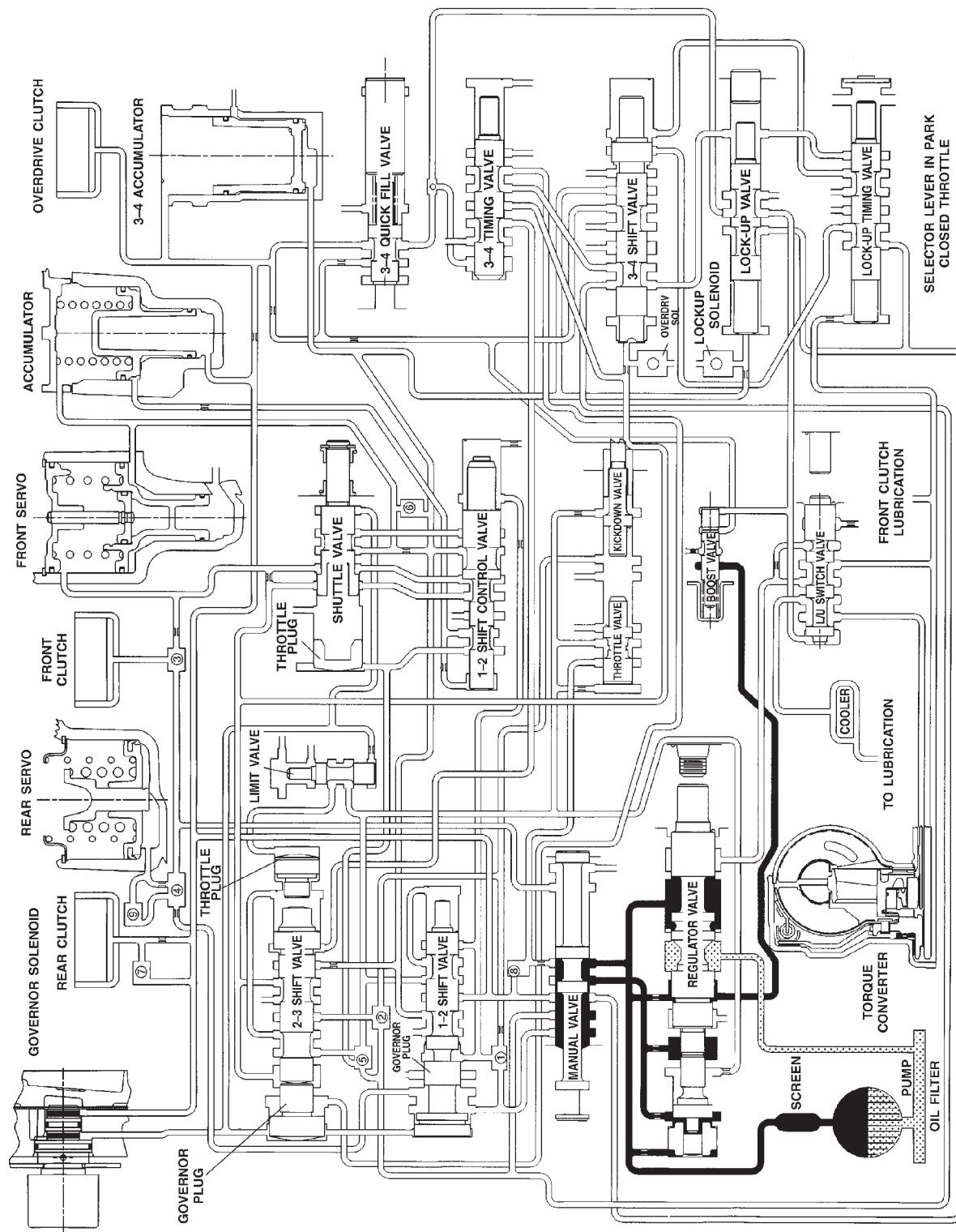
Fig. 311 Throttle Pressure Adjustment

1 – HEX WRENCH (IN THROTTLE LEVER ADJUSTING SCREW)
2 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3763 (POSITIONED BETWEEN THROTTLE LEVER AND KICKDOWN VALVE)

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS

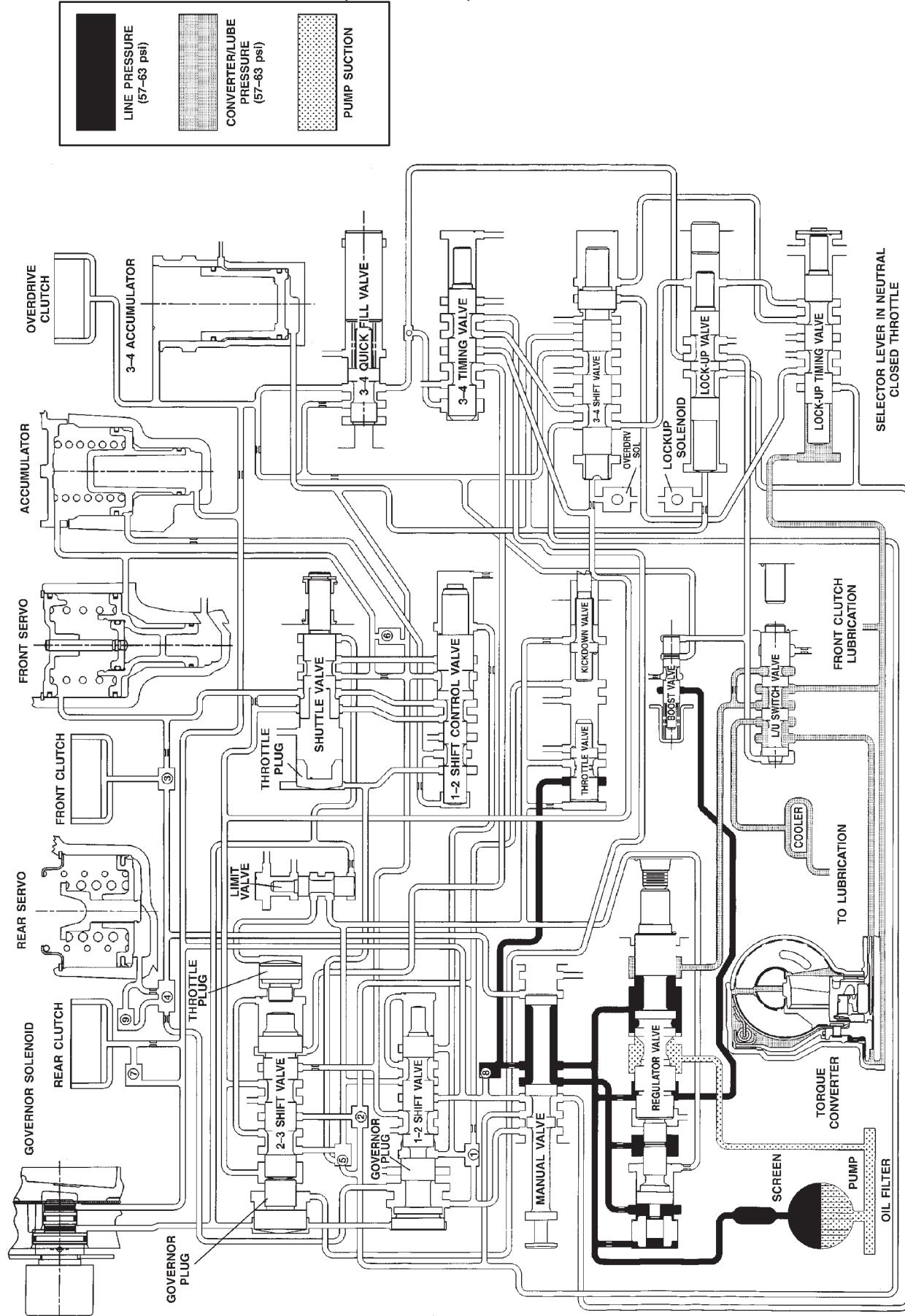
HYDRAULIC SCHEMATICS

80abid7e



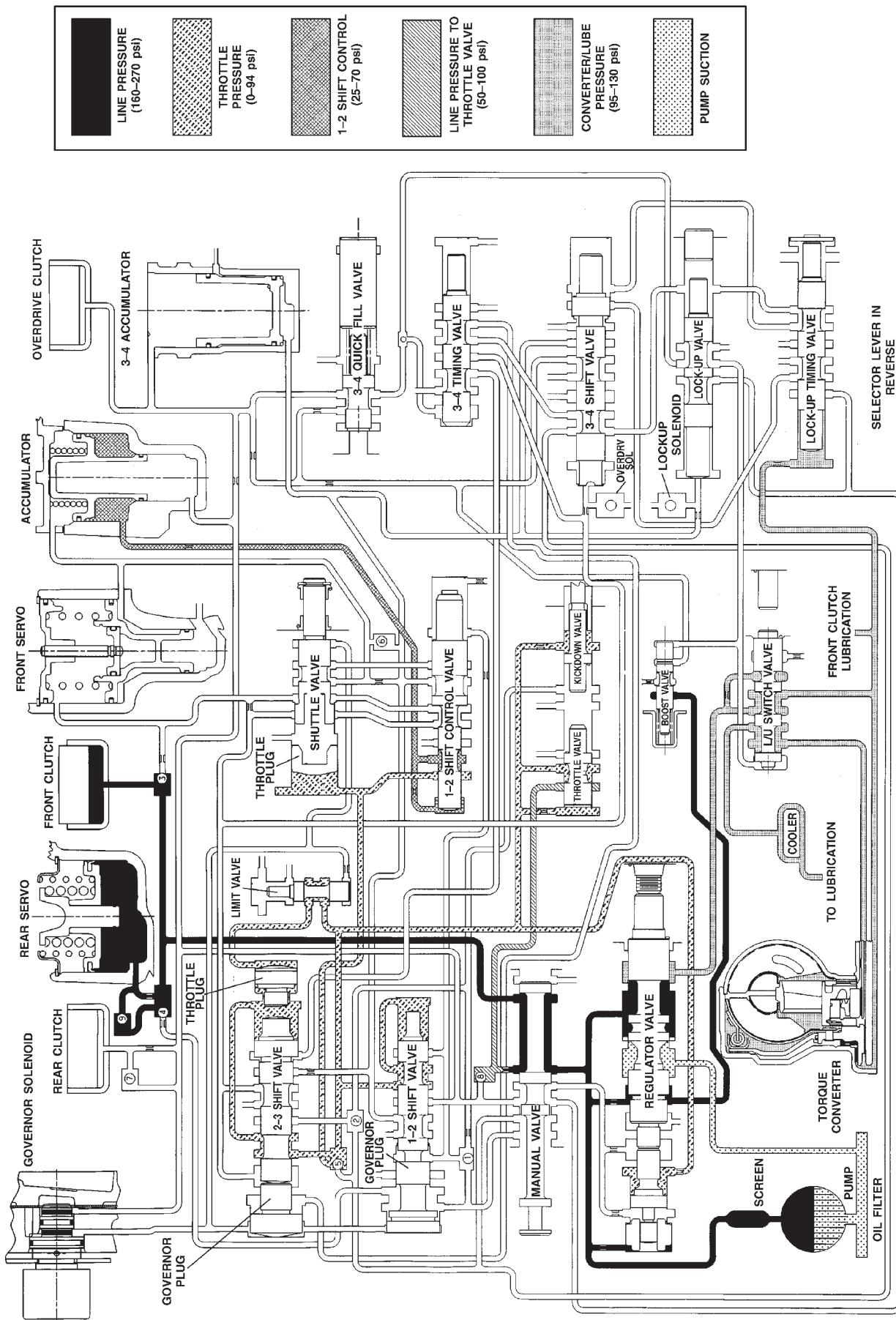
HYDRAULIC FLOW IN PARK

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



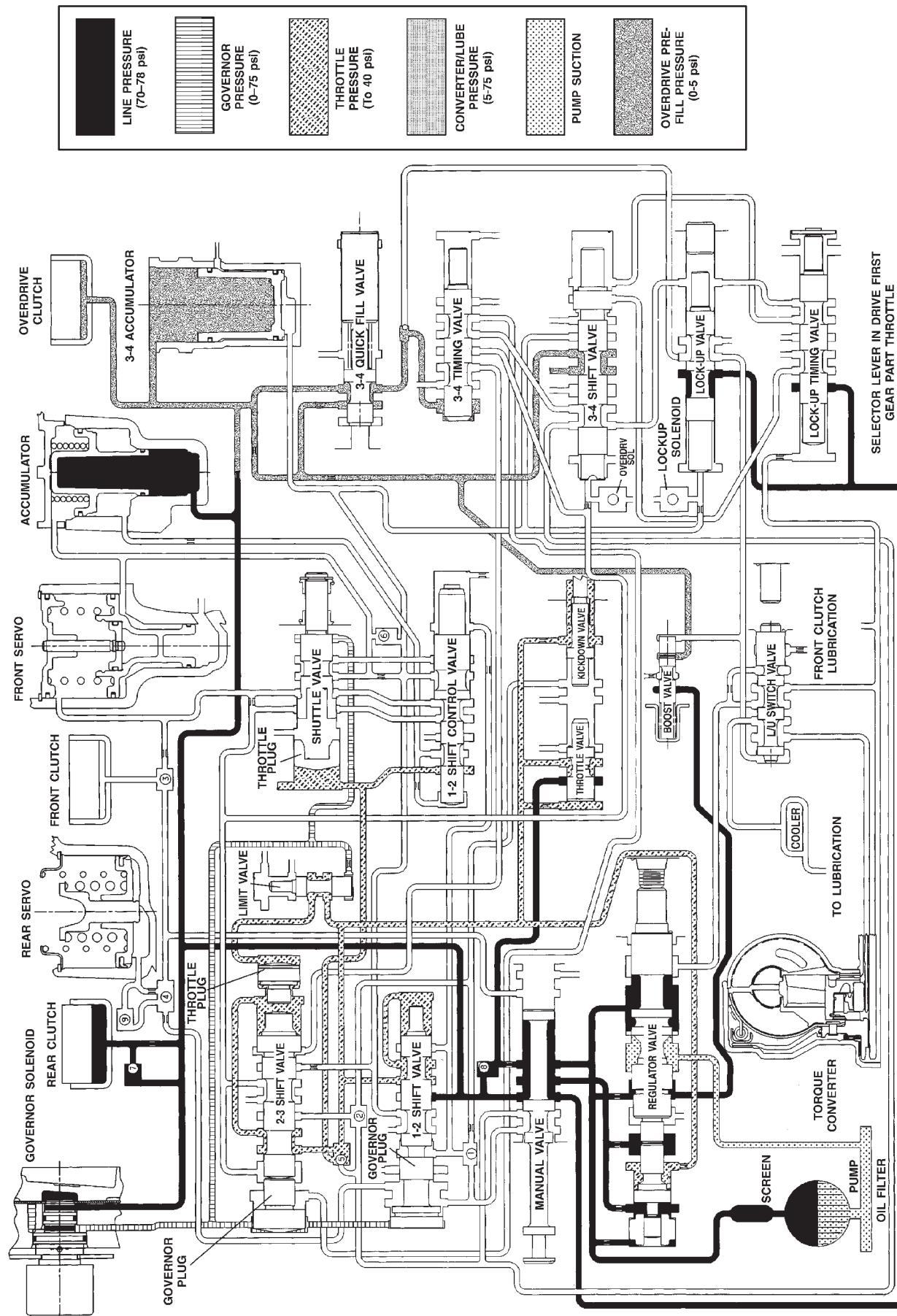
HYDRAULIC FLOW IN NEUTRAL

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



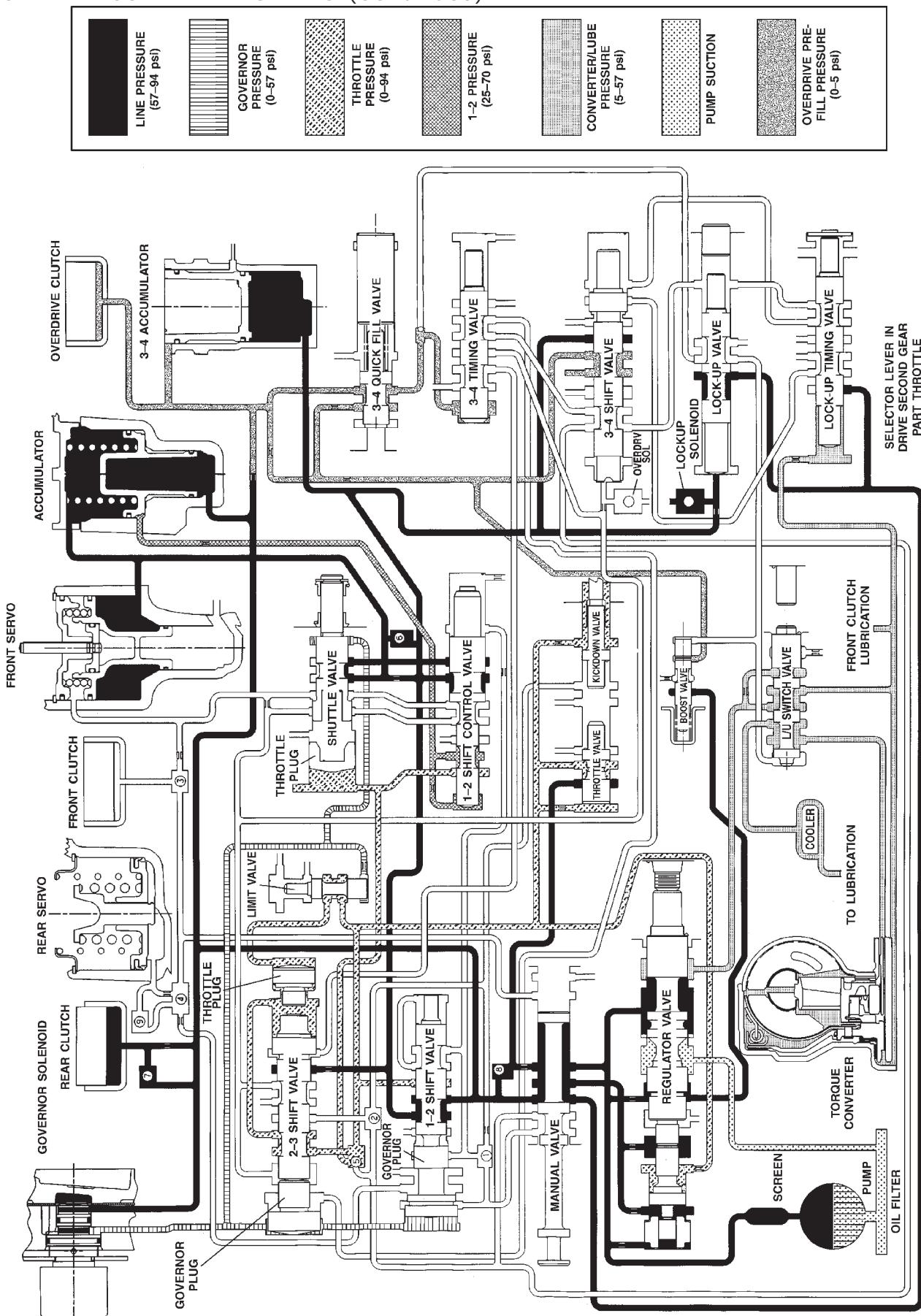
HYDRAULIC FLOW IN REVERSE

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



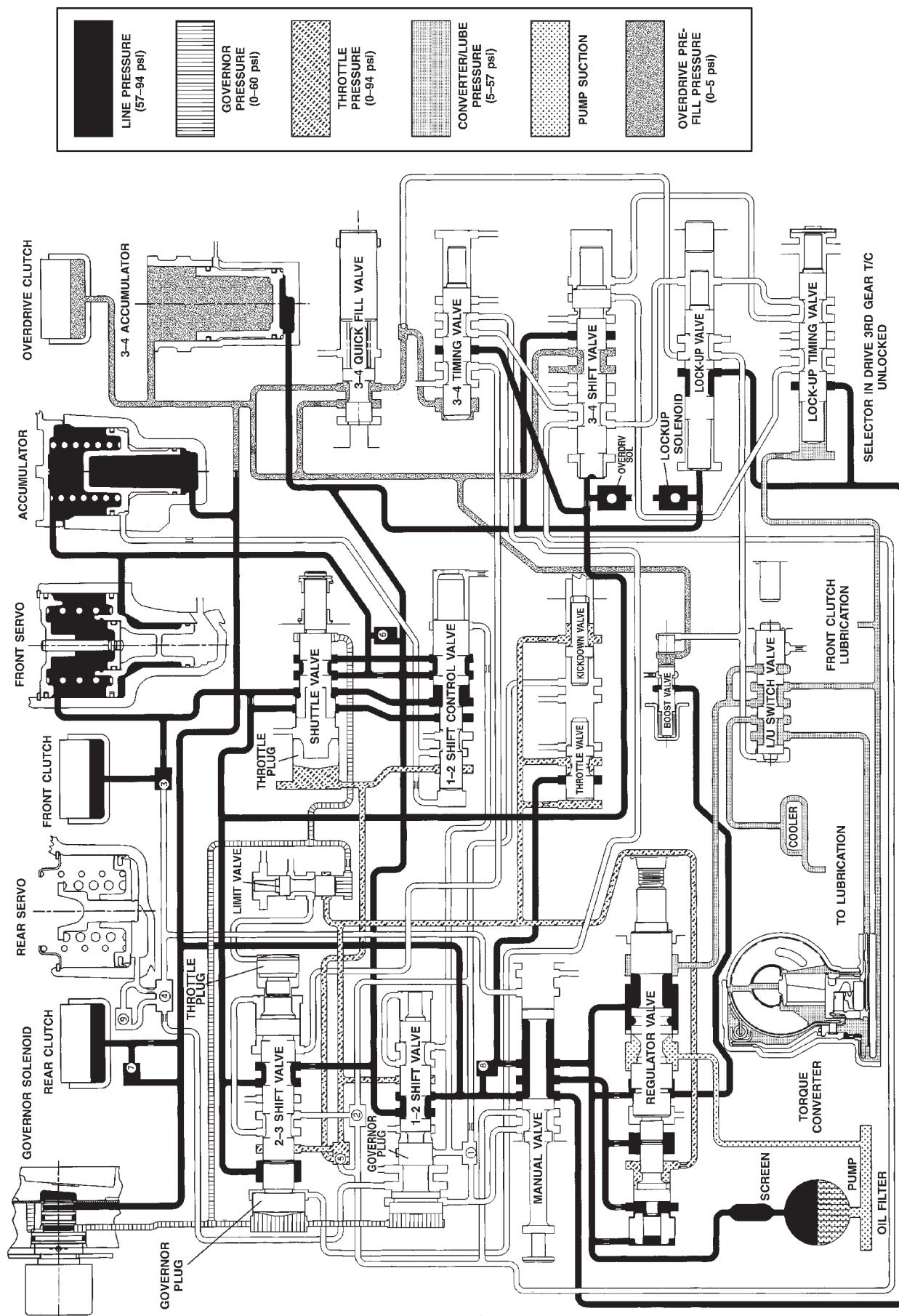
HYDRAULIC FLOW IN DRIVE FIRST GEAR

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



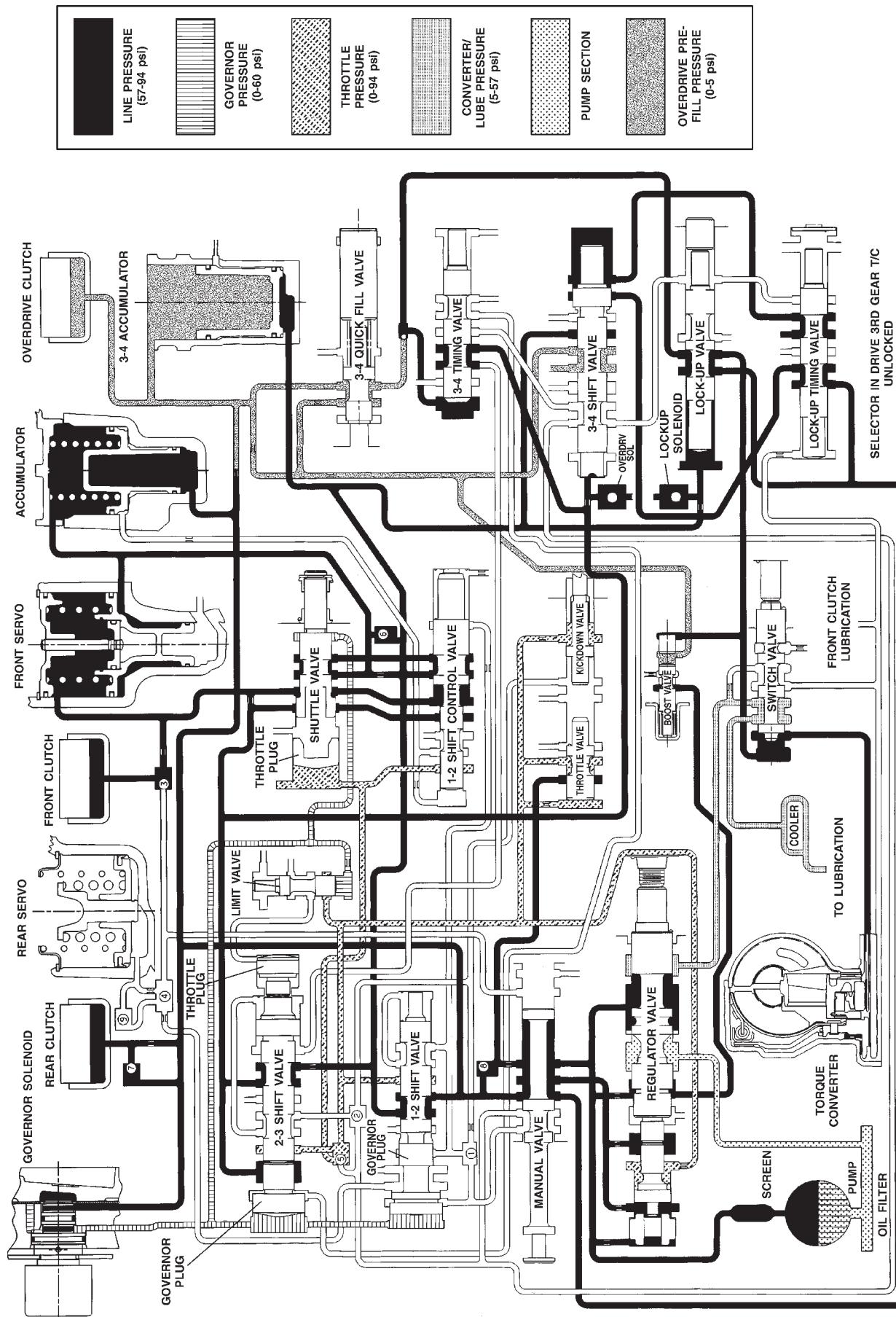
HYDRAULIC FLOW IN DRIVE SECOND GEAR

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



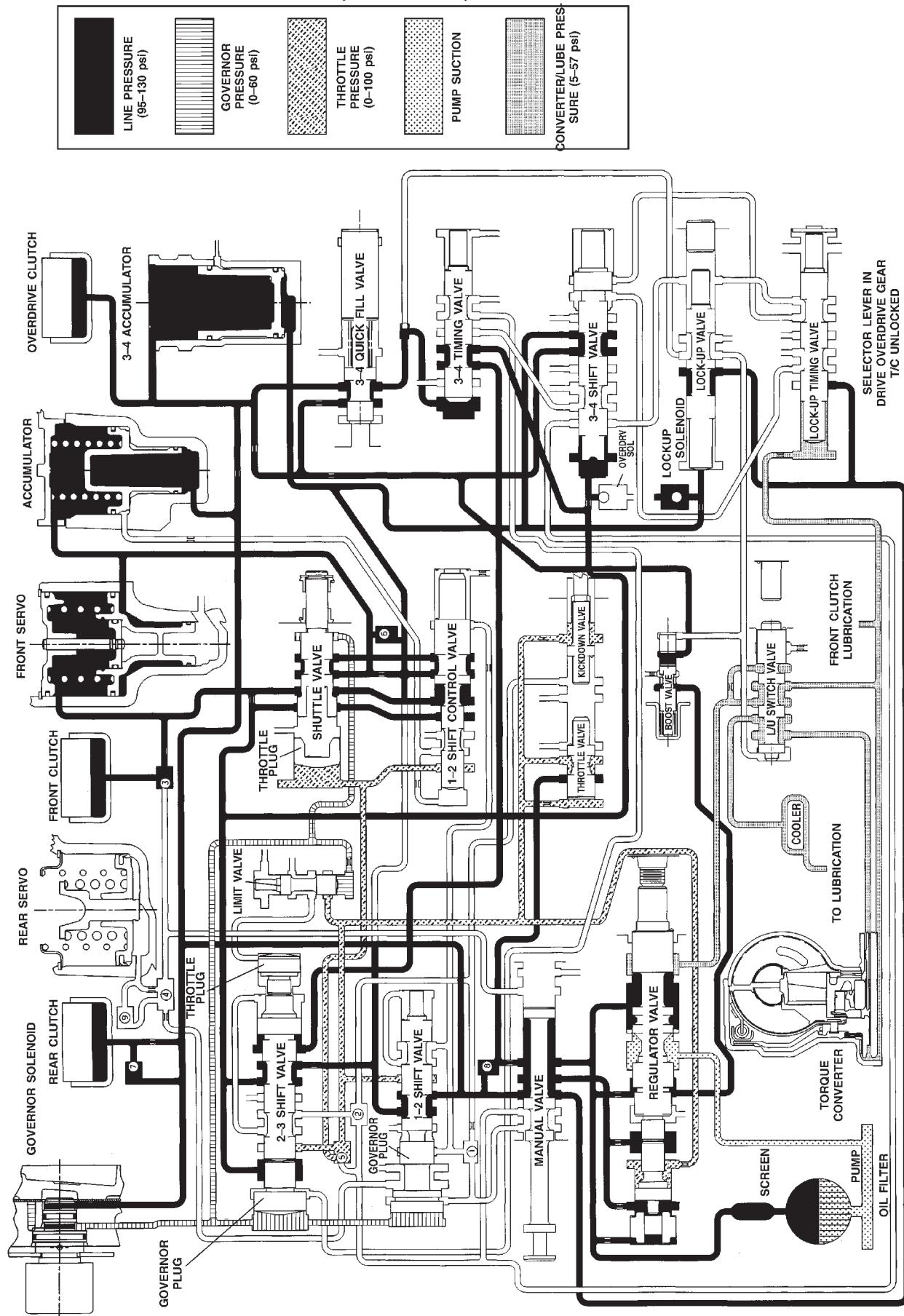
HYDRAULIC FLOW IN DRIVE THIRD GEAR (CONVERTER CLUTCH NOT APPLIED)

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



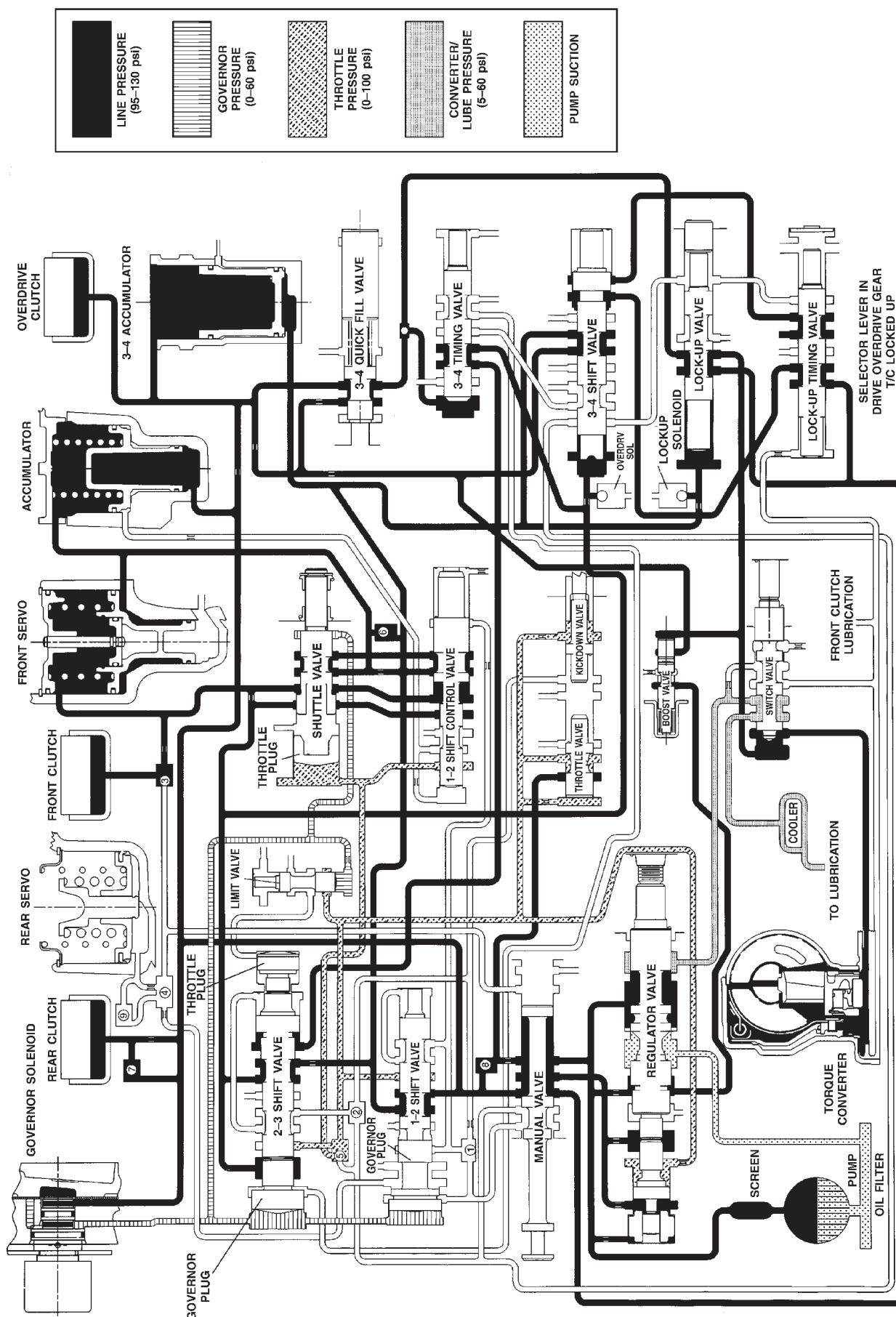
HYDRAULIC FLOW IN DRIVE THIRD GEAR (CONVERTER CLUTCH APPLIED)

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



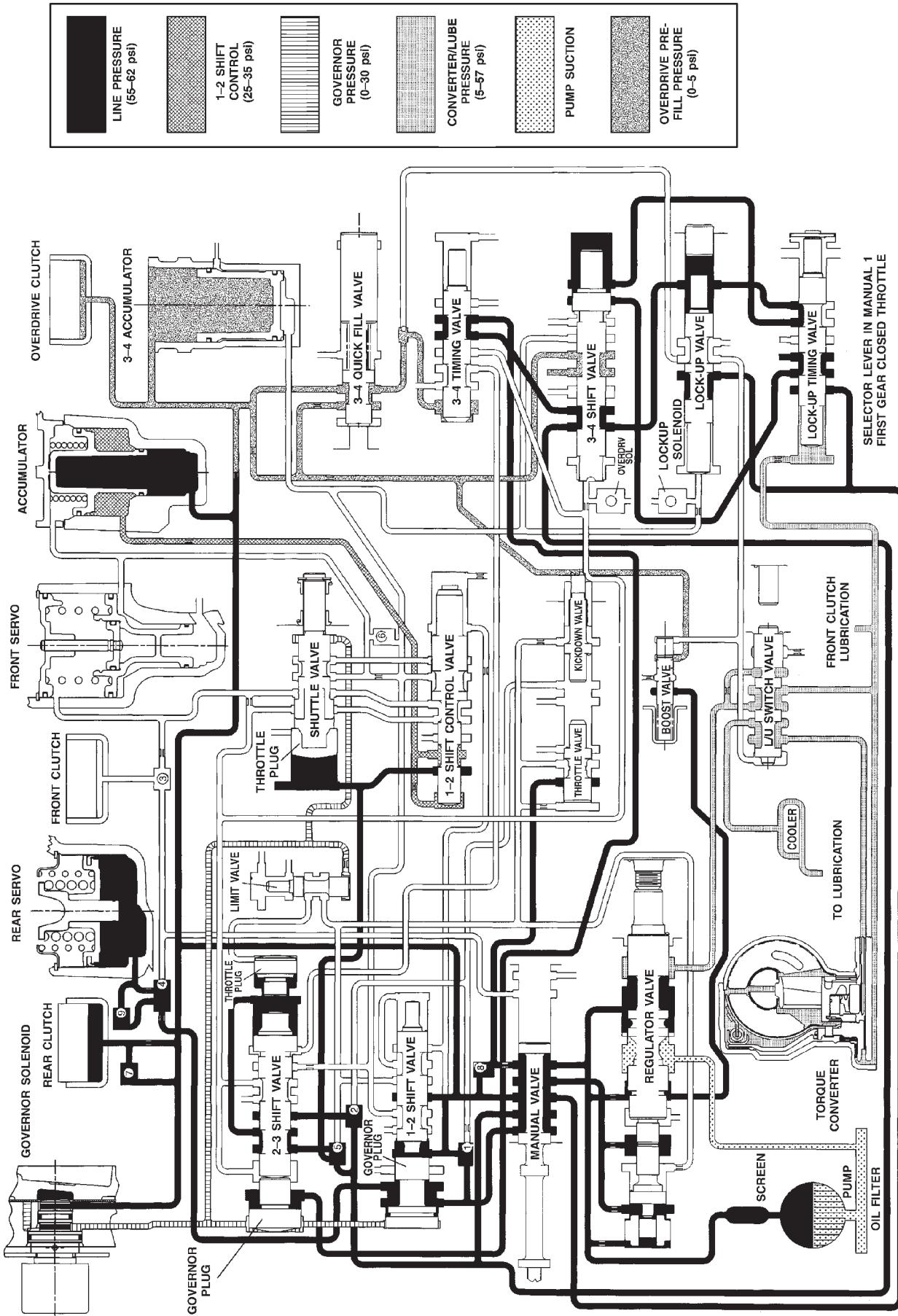
HYDRAULIC FLOW IN DRIVE FOURTH GEAR (CONVERTER CLUTCH NOT APPLIED)

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)

*HYDRAULIC FLOW IN DRIVE FOURTH GEAR (CONVERTER CLUTCH APPLIED)*

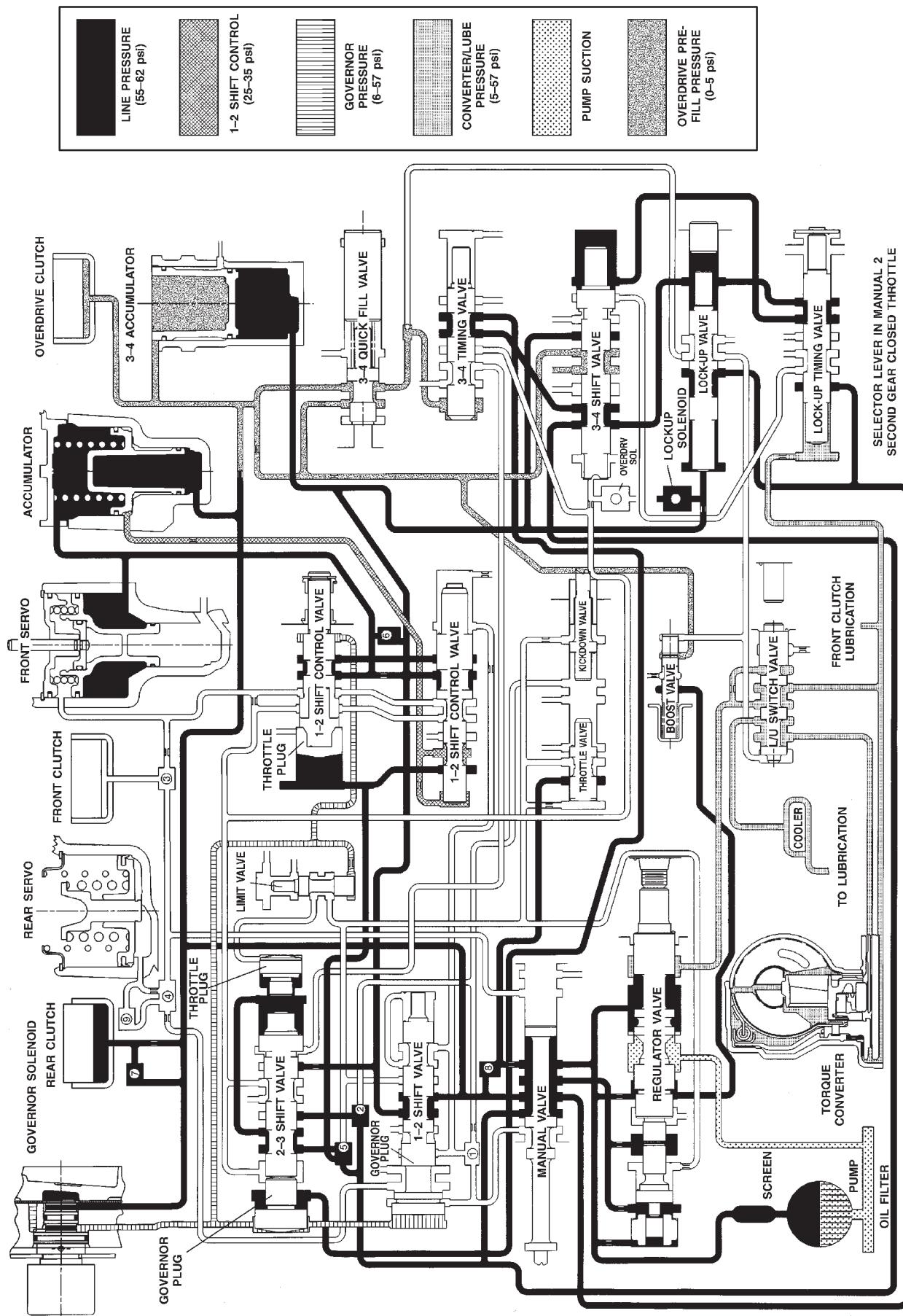
80abfd87

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



HYDRAULIC FLOW IN MANUAL LOW (1)

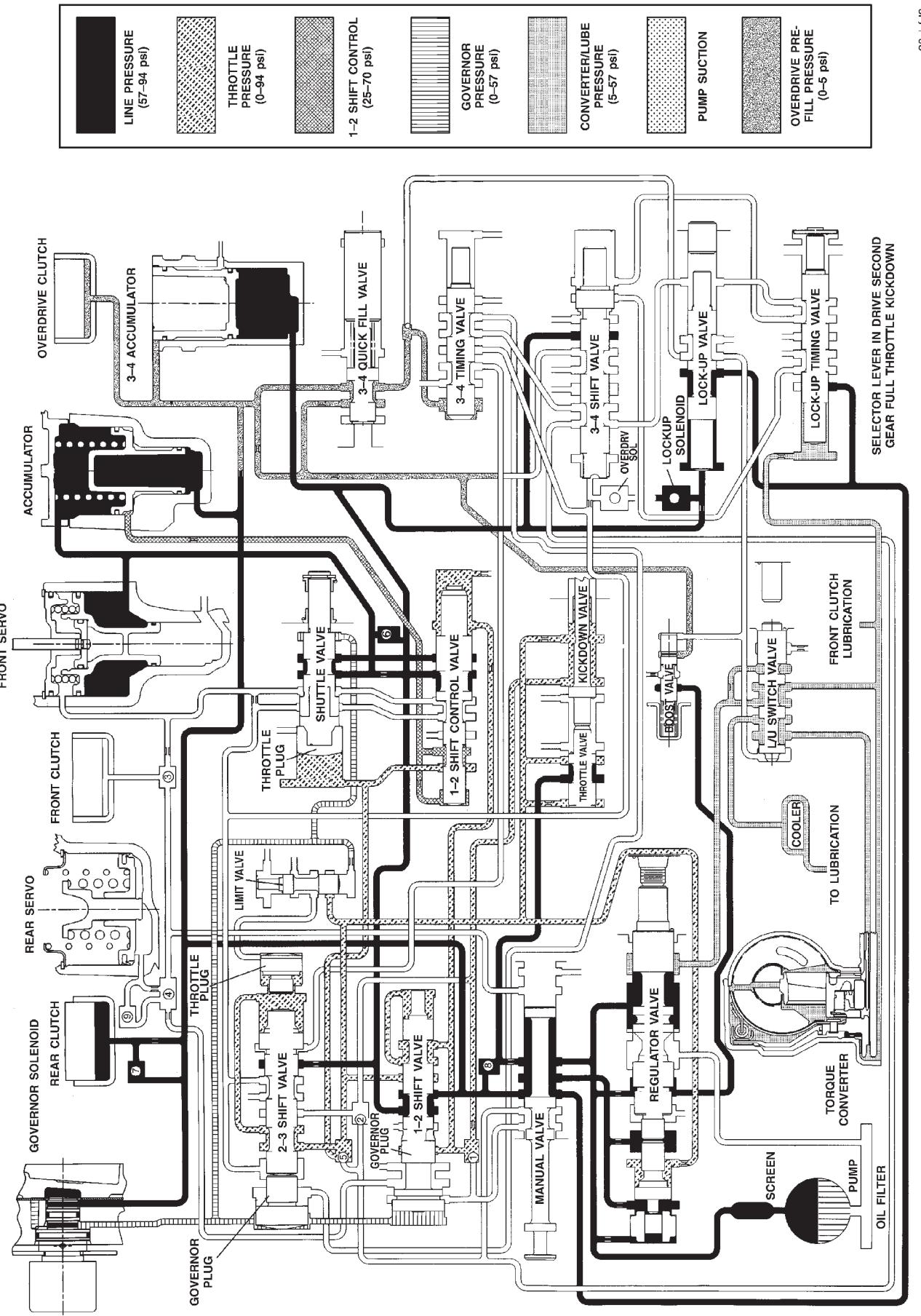
SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



HYDRAULIC FLOW IN MANUAL SECOND (2)

884

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



HYDRAULIC FLOW DURING FULL THROTTLE 3-2 DOWNSHIFT (PASSING GEAR)

80acfd8a

SPECIFICATIONS**TRANSMISSION****GENERAL**

Component	Metric	Inch
Planetary end play	0.127-1.22 mm	0.005-0.048 in.
Input shaft end play	0.56-2.31 mm	0.022-0.091 in.
Clutch pack clearance/ Front.	1.70- 3.40mm	0.067-0.134 in.
Clutch pack clearance/ Rear.	0.559-0.914 mm	0.022-0.036 in.
Front clutch	4 discs	
Rear clutch	4 discs	
Overdrive clutch	3 discs	
Direct clutch	6 discs	
42RE Band adjustment from 72 in. lbs.		
Front band	Back off 3 turns	
Rear band	Back off 4 turns	
Recommended fluid	Mopar® ATF Plus 3, type 7176	

TORQUE

DESCRIPTION	TORQUE
Fitting, cooler line at trans	18 N·m (13 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, torque convertor	31 N·m (23 ft. lbs.)
Bolt/nut, crossmember	68 N·m (50 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, driveplate to crankshaft	75 N·m (55 ft. lbs.)
Plug, front band reaction	17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.)
Locknut, front band adj.	34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.)
Switch, park/neutral	34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, fluid pan	17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.)
Screws, fluid filter	4 N·m (35 in. lbs.)
Bolt, oil pump	20 N·m (15 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, overrunning clutch cam	17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, O/D to trans.	34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, O/D piston retainer	17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.)
Plug, pressure test port	14 N·m (10 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, reaction shaft support	20 N·m (15 ft. lbs.)
Locknut, rear band	41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, speedometer adapter	11 N·m (8 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, valve body to case	12 N·m (100 in. lbs.)
Sensor, trans speed	27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.)
Screw, solenoid wiring connector	4 N·m (35 in. lbs.)
Screw, solenoid to transfer plate	4 N·m (35 in. lbs.)

GEAR RATIOS

- 1ST GEAR-2.74
- 2ND GEAR-1.54
- 3RD GEAR-1.00
- 4TH GEAR-0.69
- REV.GEAR-2.21

SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)

THRUST WASHER/SPACER/SNAP RING DIMENSIONS

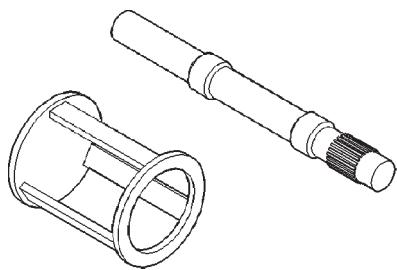
Component	Metric	Inch
Front clutch thrust washer (reaction shaft support hub)	1.55 mm	0.061 in.
Rear clutch thrust washer (clutch retainer)	1.55 mm	0.061 in.
Intermediate shaft thrust plate (shaft hub pilot)	1.5-1.6 mm	0.060-0.063 in.
Output shaft thrust washer (rear clutch hub)	Select fit to set end play	
Rear clutch pack snap ring	1.5 mm 1.95 mm 2.45 mm	0.060 in. 0.076 in. 0.098 in.
Planetary geartrain snap ring (at front of output shaft)	Select fit (three thicknesses available)	
Overdrive piston thrust plate	Thrust plate and spacer are select fit. Refer to size charts and selection procedures in Overdrive Unit D&A procedures	
Intermediate shaft spacer		

PRESSURE TEST

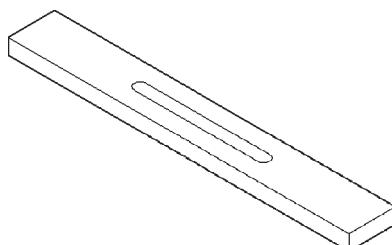
Overdrive clutch	Fourth gear only	Pressure should be 469-496 kPa (68-72 psi) with closed throttle and increase to 620-896 kPa (90-130 psi) at 1/2 to 3/4 throttle.
Line pressure (at accumulator)	Closed throttle	372-414 kPa (54-60 psi).
Front servo	Third gear only	No more than 21 kPa (3 psi) lower than line pressure.
Rear servo	1 range R range	No more than 21 kPa (3 psi) lower than line pressure. 1103 kPa (160 psi) at idle, builds to 1862 kPa (270 psi) at 1600 rpm.
Governor	D range closed throttle	Pressure should respond smoothly to changes in mph and return to 0-7 kPa (0-1.5 psi) when stopped with transmission in D, 1, 2. Pressure above 7 kPa (1.5 psi) at stand still will prevent transmission from downshifting.

SPECIAL TOOLS

RE TRANSMISSIONS

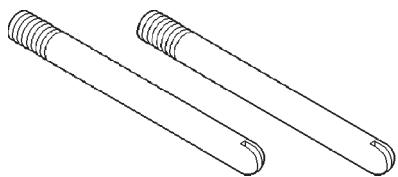


Spring Compressor and Alignment Shaft—6227

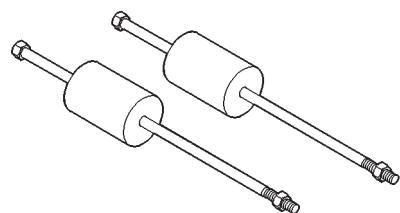


Gauge Bar—6311

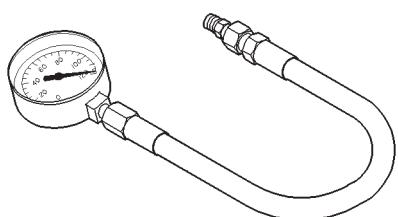
SPECIAL TOOLS (Continued)



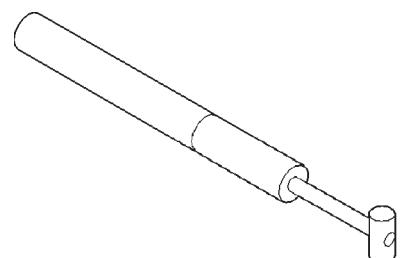
Extension Housing Pilot—C-3288-B



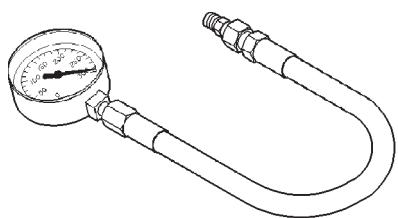
Puller, Slide Hammer—C-3752



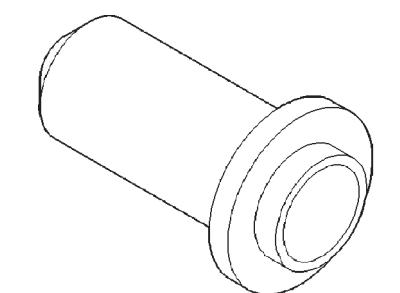
Pressure Gauge—C-3292



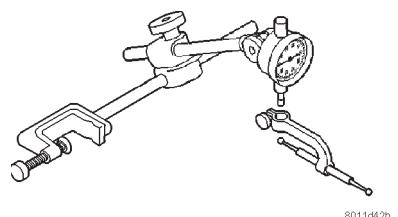
Gauge, Throttle Setting—C-3763



Pressure Gauge—C-3293SP

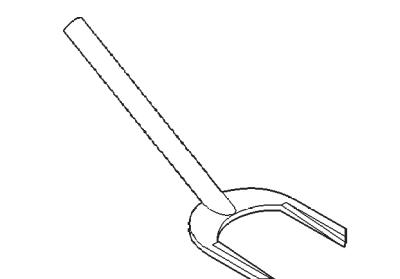


Seal Installer—C-3860-A

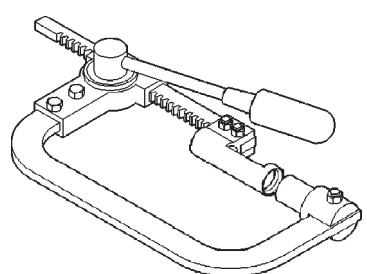


8011d42b

Dial Indicator—C-3339

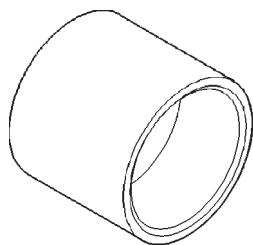


Seal Remover—C-3985-B

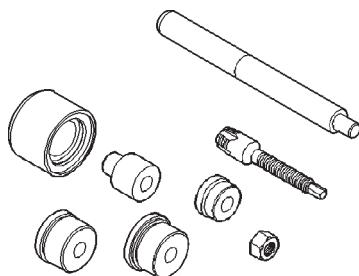


Spring Compressor—C-3422-B

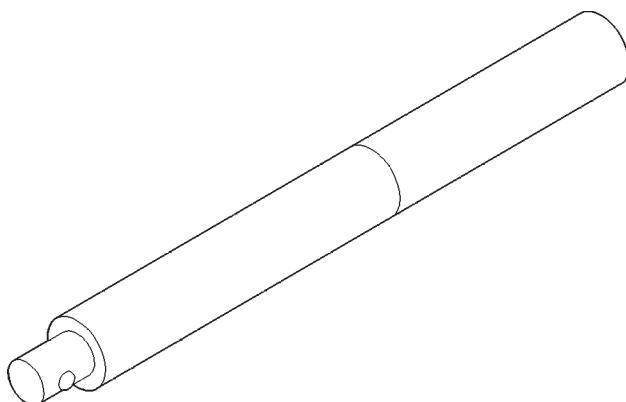
SPECIAL TOOLS (Continued)



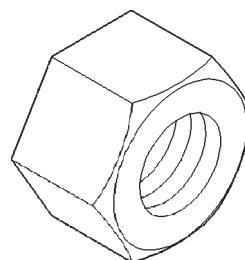
Installer—C-3995-A



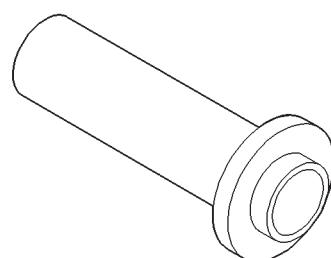
Bushing Remover/Installer Set—C-3887-J



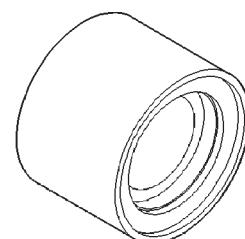
Universal Handle—C-4171



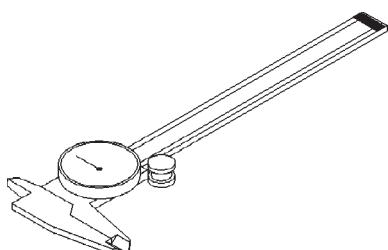
Nut, Bushing Remover—SP-1191, From kit C-3887-J



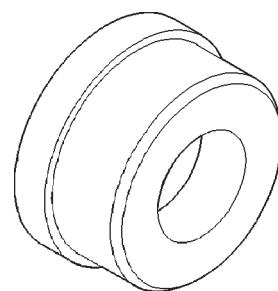
Seal Installer—C-4193-A



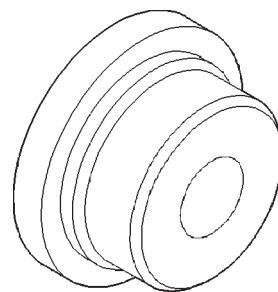
Cup, Bushing Remover—SP-3633, From kit C-3887-J



Dial Caliper—C-4962

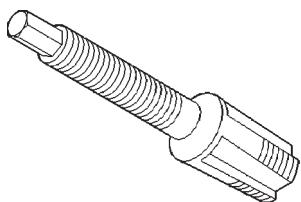


Remover, Bushing—SP-3551

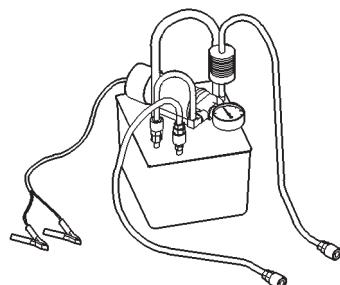


Installer, Bushing—SP-5117

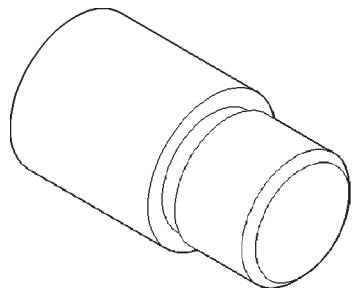
SPECIAL TOOLS (Continued)



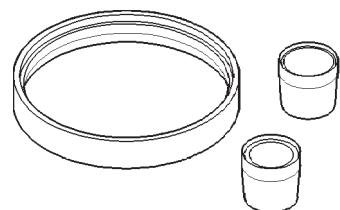
Remover, Bushing—SP-5324



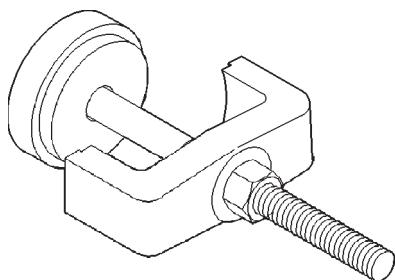
Flusher—6906



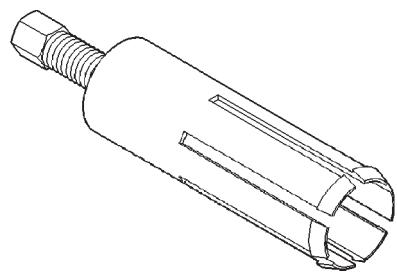
Installer, Bushing—SP-5325



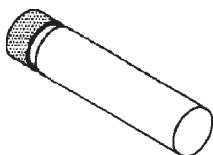
Installer—8114



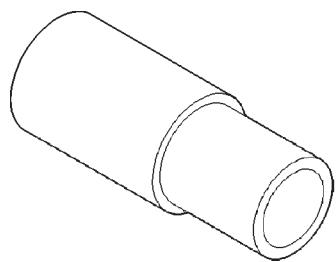
Compressor, Spring—C-3575-A



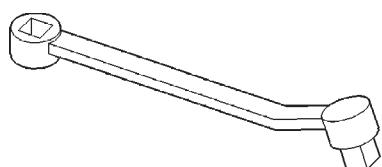
Remover—6957



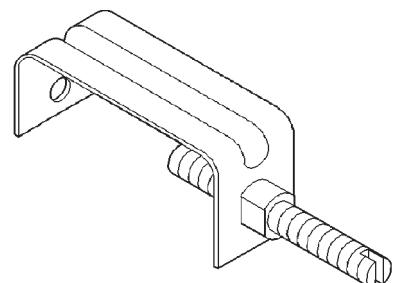
Gauge—6312



Installer—6951



Adapter—C-3705



Retainer—6583

46RE AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page	page
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION		
46RE TRANSMISSION	248	
FLUID	255	
TORQUE CONVERTER	256	
OIL PUMP	261	
VALVE BODY	261	
ACCUMULATOR	278	
PISTONS	280	
FRONT CLUTCH	281	
REAR CLUTCH	282	
OVERDRIVE CLUTCH	284	
VERRUNNING CLUTCH	284	
PLANETARY GEARSET	285	
BANDS	285	
SERVOS	286	
GEARSHIFT MECHANISM	287	
CONVERTER DRAINBACK VALVE	287	
POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE (PCM)	287	
ELECTRONIC GOVERNOR	288	
GOVERNOR PRESSURE CURVES	290	
OVERDRIVE OFF SWITCH	291	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION DIAGNOSIS	291	
EFFECTS OF INCORRECT FLUID LEVEL	291	
CAUSES OF BURNT FLUID	291	
FLUID CONTAMINATION	291	
PRELIMINARY DIAGNOSIS	292	
PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH	292	
OVERDRIVE ELECTRICAL CONTROLS	292	
GEARSHIFT CABLE	292	
ROAD TESTING	293	
ANALYZING ROAD TEST	293	
HYDRAULIC PRESSURE TEST	294	
AIR TESTING TRANSMISSION CLUTCH AND BAND OPERATION	296	
CONVERTER HOUSING FLUID LEAK DIAGNOSIS	297	
DIAGNOSIS TABLES AND CHARTS—RE TRANSMISSION	298	
SERVICE PROCEDURES		
FLUID LEVEL CHECK	309	
FLUID AND FILTER REPLACEMENT	309	
TRANSMISSION FILL PROCEDURE	310	
CONVERTER DRAINBACK CHECK VALVE SERVICE	310	
OIL PUMP VOLUME CHECK	311	
FLUSHING COOLERS AND TUBES	311	
ALUMINUM THREAD REPAIR	312	
REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION		
TRANSMISSION	312	
TORQUE CONVERTER	314	
YOKE SEAL REPLACEMENT	315	
PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH	315	
GEARSHIFT CABLE	316	
GOVERNOR SOLENOID AND PRESSURE SENSOR	317	
VALVE BODY	317	
OVERDRIVE UNIT	319	
OVERDRIVE HOUSING BUSHING	321	
OUTPUT SHAFT REAR BEARING	321	
OUTPUT SHAFT FRONT BEARING	322	
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY		
VALVE BODY	322	
TRANSMISSION	341	
VERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER	355	
FRONT SERVO PISTON	357	
REAR SERVO PISTON	358	
OIL PUMP AND REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT	358	
FRONT CLUTCH	362	
REAR CLUTCH	364	
PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT	368	
OVERDRIVE UNIT	372	
CLEANING AND INSPECTION		
VALVE BODY	388	
TRANSMISSION	391	
VERRUNNING CLUTCH/LOW-REVERSE DRUM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER	391	
ACCUMULATOR	392	
FRONT SERVO	392	
REAR SERVO	392	
OIL PUMP AND REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT	392	
FRONT CLUTCH	393	
REAR CLUTCH	393	
PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT	393	
OVERDRIVE UNIT	394	
ADJUSTMENTS		
TRANSMISSION THROTTLE VALVE CABLE ADJUSTMENT	394	
GEARSHIFT CABLE	395	
FRONT BAND ADJUSTMENT	396	
REAR BAND ADJUSTMENT	396	
VALVE BODY	396	
SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS		
HYDRAULIC SCHEMATICS	397	
SPECIFICATIONS		
RE TRANSMISSION	410	
SPECIAL TOOLS		
RE TRANSMISSION	412	

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION

46RE TRANSMISSION

DESCRIPTION

The 46RE (Fig. 1) is a four speed fully automatic transmissions with an electronic governor. The 46RE is equipped with a lock-up clutch in the torque converter. First through third gear ranges are provided by the clutches, bands, overrunning clutch, and planetary gear sets in the transmission. Fourth gear range is provided by the overdrive unit that contains an overdrive clutch, direct clutch, planetary gear set, and overrunning clutch.

The transmission contains a front, rear, and direct clutch which function as the input driving components. They also contain the kickdown (front) and the low/reverse (rear) bands which, along with the over-

running clutch and overdrive clutch, serve as the holding components. The driving and holding components combine to select the necessary planetary gear components, in the front, rear, or overdrive planetary gear set, transfer the engine power from the input shaft through to the output shaft.

The valve body is mounted to the lower side of the transmission and contains the valves to control pressure regulation, fluid flow control, and clutch/band application. The oil pump is mounted at the front of the transmission and is driven by the torque converter hub. The pump supplies the oil pressure necessary for clutch/band actuation and transmission lubrication.

The 46RE transmission is cooled by an integral fluid cooler inside the radiator.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

801834a2

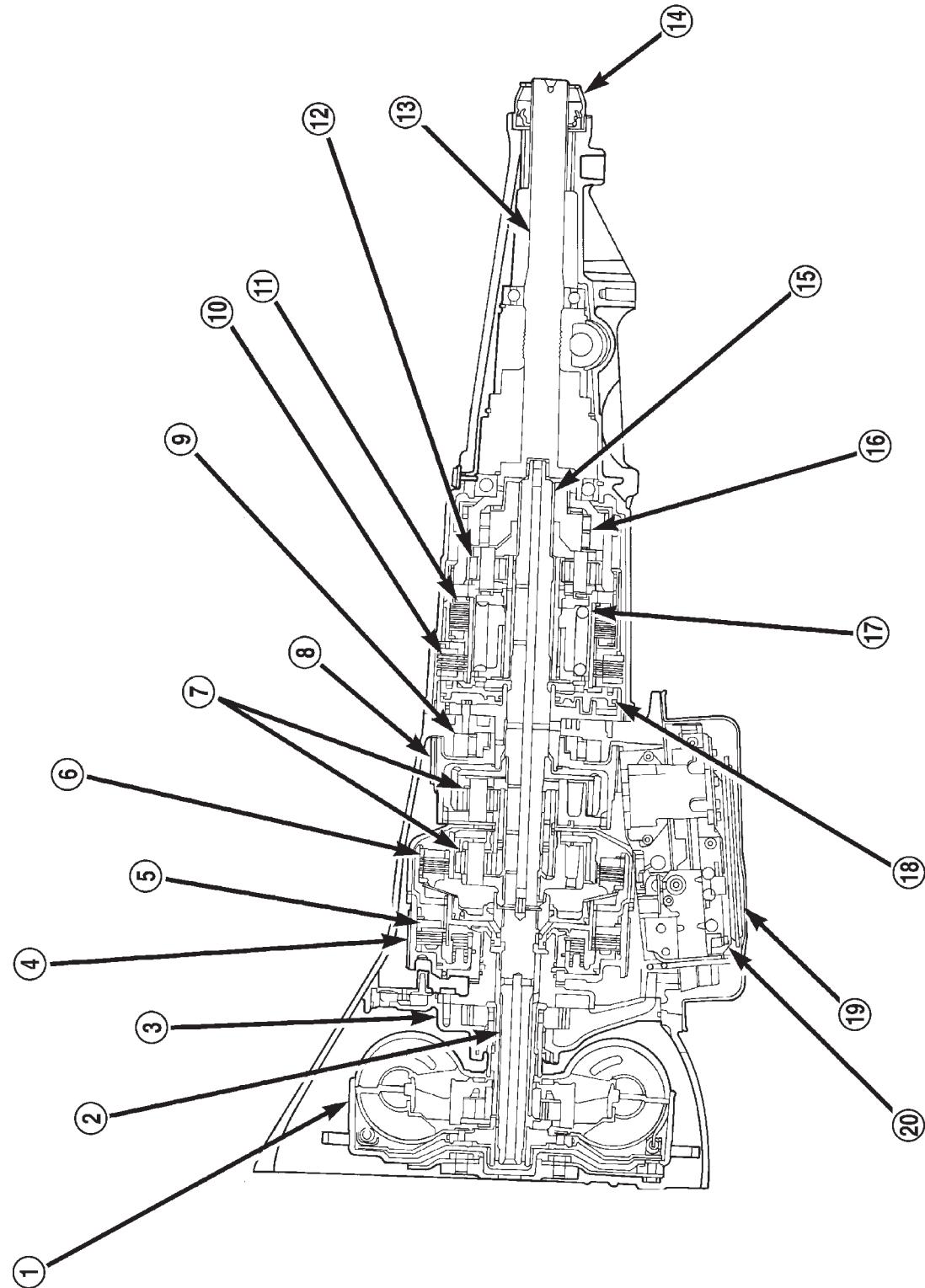


Fig. 1 46RE Transmission

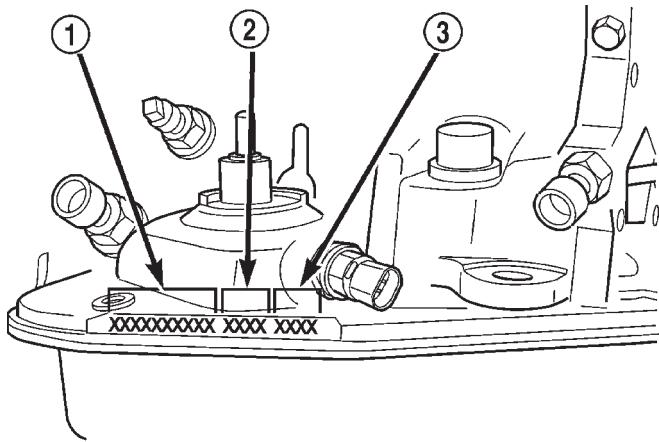
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

1 – TORQUE CONVERTER
 2 – INPUT SHAFT
 3 – OIL PUMP
 4 – FRONT BAND
 5 – FRONT CLUTCH
 6 – REAR CLUTCH
 7 – PLANETARIES
 8 – REAR BAND
 9 – OVERRUNNING CLUTCH
 10 – OVERDRIVE CLUTCH

11 – DIRECT CLUTCH
 12 – PLANETARY GEAR
 13 – OUTPUT SHAFT
 14 – SEAL
 15 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT
 16 – OVERDRIVE OVERRUNNING CLUTCH
 17 – DIRECT CLUTCH SPRING
 18 – OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER
 19 – FILTER
 20 – VALVE BODY

IDENTIFICATION

Transmission identification numbers are stamped on the left side of the case just above the oil pan gasket surface (Fig. 2). Refer to this information when ordering replacement parts.



80b11960

Fig. 2 Transmission Part And Serial Number Location

1 – PART NUMBER
 2 – BUILD DATE
 3 – SERIAL NUMBER

GEAR RATIOS

The 46RE gear ratios are:

- **1st** 2.45:1
- **2nd** 1.45:1
- **3rd** 1.00:1
- **4th** 0.69:1
- **Rev.** 2.21

OPERATION

The application of each driving or holding component is controlled by the valve body based upon the manual lever position and governor pressure. The governor pressure is a variable pressure input to the valve body and is one of the signals that a shift is necessary. First through fourth gear are obtained by selectively applying and releasing the different clutches and bands. Engine power is thereby routed

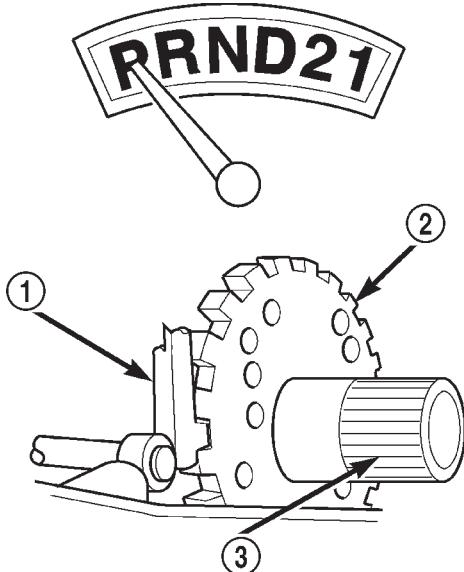
to the various planetary gear assemblies which combine with the overrunning clutch assemblies to generate the different gear ratios. The torque converter clutch is hydraulically applied and is released when fluid is vented from the hydraulic circuit by the torque converter control (TCC) solenoid on the valve body. The torque converter clutch is controlled by the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). The torque converter clutch engages in fourth gear, and in third gear when the O/D switch is OFF, when the vehicle is cruising on a level plane after the vehicle has warmed up. The torque converter clutch will disengage momentarily when an increase in engine load is sensed by the PCM, such as when the vehicle begins to go uphill or the throttle pressure is increased. The torque converter clutch feature increases fuel economy and reduces the transmission fluid temperature.

Since the overdrive clutch is applied in fourth gear only and the direct clutch is applied in all ranges except fourth gear, the transmission operation for park, neutral, and first through third gear will be described first. Once these powerflows are described, the third to fourth shift sequence will be described.

PARK POWERFLOW

As the engine is running and the crankshaft is rotating, the flexplate and torque converter, which are also bolted to it, are all rotating in a clockwise direction as viewed from the front of the engine. The notched hub of the torque converter is connected to the oil pump's internal gear, supplying the transmission with oil pressure. As the converter turns, it turns the input shaft in a clockwise direction. As the input shaft is rotating, the front clutch hub-rear clutch retainer and all their associated parts are also rotating, all being directly connected to the input shaft. The power flow from the engine through the front-clutch-hub and rear-clutch-retainer stops at the rear-clutch-retainer. Therefore, no power flow to the output shaft occurs because no clutches are applied. The only mechanism in use at this time is the parking sprag (Fig. 3), which locks the parking gear on the output shaft to the transmission case.

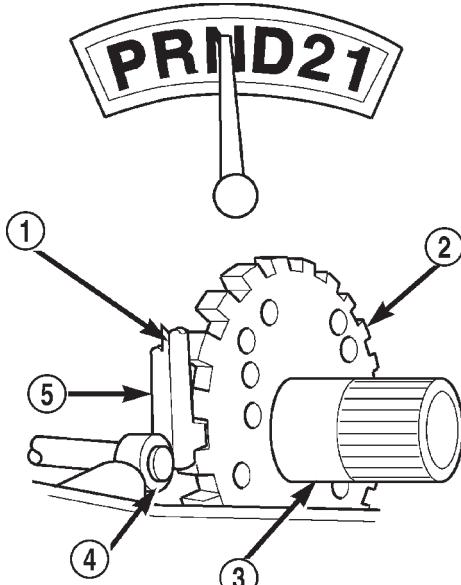
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c070a6

Fig. 3 Park Powerflow

- 1 – LEVER ENGAGED FOR PARK
- 2 – PARK SPRAG
- 3 – OUTPUT SHAFT



80c070a7

Fig. 4 Neutral Powerflow

- 1 – LEVER DISENGAGED FOR NEUTRAL
- 2 – PARK SPRAG
- 3 – OUTPUT SHAFT
- 4 – CAM
- 5 – LEVER

NEUTRAL POWERFLOW

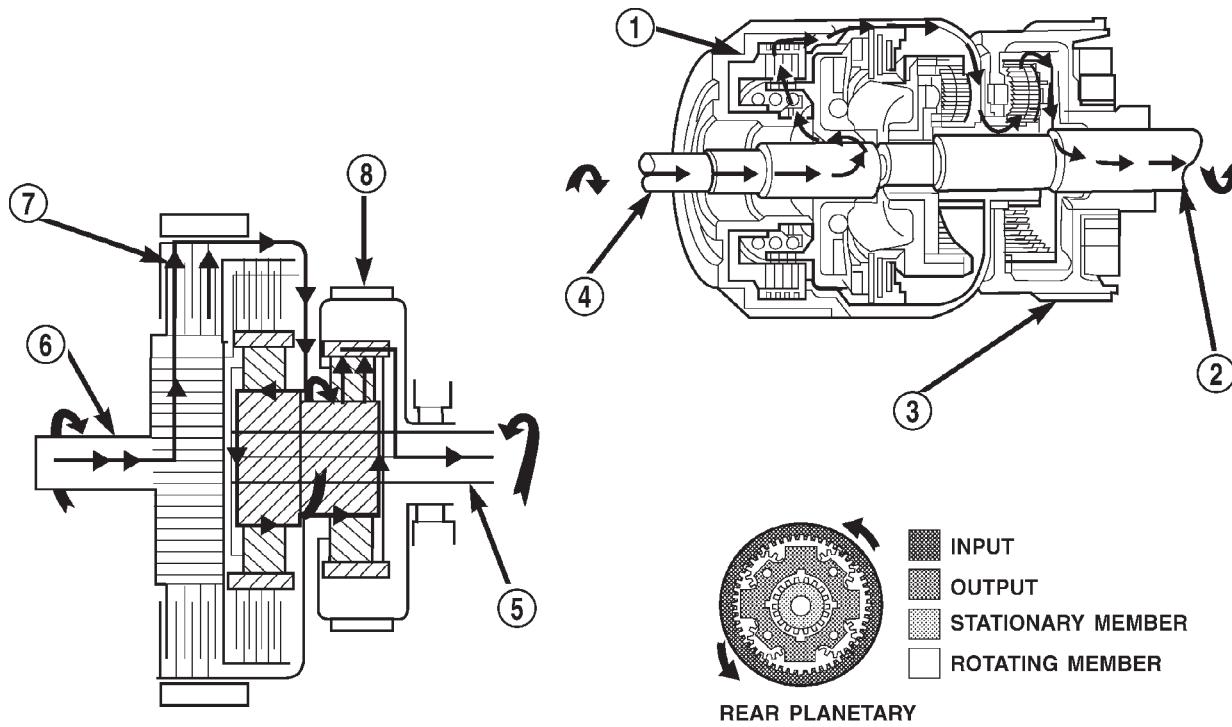
With the gear selector in the neutral position (Fig. 4), the power flow of the transmission is essentially the same as in the park position. The only operational difference is that the parking sprag has been disengaged, unlocking the output shaft from the transmission case and allowing it to move freely.

REVERSE POWERFLOW

When the gear selector is moved into the reverse position (Fig. 5), the front clutch and the rear band are applied. With the application of the front clutch, engine torque is applied to the sun gear, turning it in a clockwise direction. The clockwise rotation of the sun gear causes the rear planet pinions to rotate against engine rotation in a counterclockwise direction. The rear band is holding the low reverse drum,

which is splined to the rear carrier. Since the rear carrier is being held, the torque from the planet pinions is transferred to the rear annulus gear, which is splined to the output shaft. The output shaft in turn rotates with the annulus gear in a counterclockwise direction giving a reverse gear output. The entire transmission of torque is applied to the rear planetary gearset only. Although there is torque input to the front gearset through the sun gear, no other member of the gearset is being held. During the entire reverse stage of operation, the front planetary gears are in an idling condition.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c070a8

Fig. 5 Reverse Powerflow

1 - FRONT CLUTCH ENGAGED

2 - OUTPUT SHAFT

3 - LOW/REVERSE BAND APPLIED

4 - INPUT SHAFT

5 - OUTPUT SHAFT

6 - INPUT SHAFT

7 - FRONT CLUTCH ENGAGED

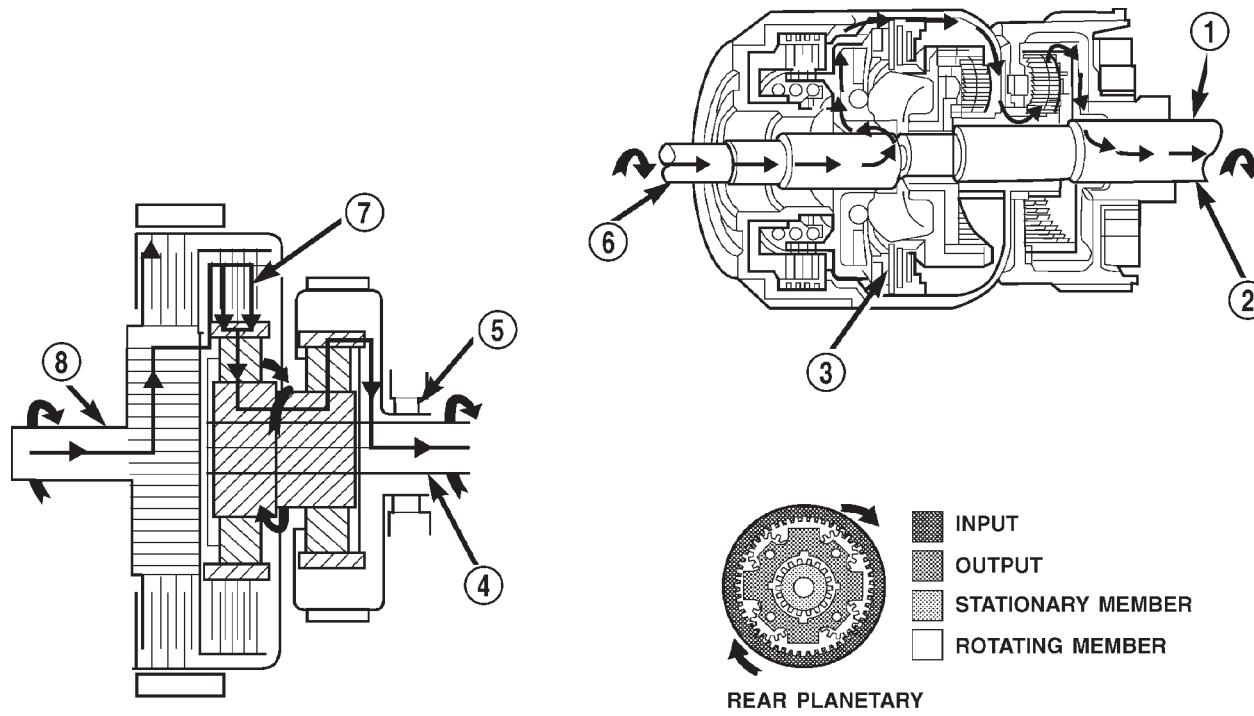
8 - LOW/REVERSE BAND APPLIED

FIRST GEAR POWERFLOW

When the gearshift lever is moved into the drive position the transmission goes into first gear (Fig. 6). As soon as the transmission is shifted from park or neutral to drive, the rear clutch applies, applying the rear clutch pack to the front annulus gear. Engine torque is now applied to the front annulus gear turning it in a clockwise direction. With the front annulus gear turning in a clockwise direction, it causes the front planets to turn in a clockwise direction. The rotation of the front planets cause the sun to revolve in a counterclockwise direction. The sun gear now transfers its counterclockwise rotation to the rear

planets which rotate back in a clockwise direction. With the rear annulus gear stationary, the rear planet rotation on the annulus gear causes the rear planet carrier to revolve in a counterclockwise direction. The rear planet carrier is splined into the low-reverse drum, and the low reverse drum is splined to the inner race of the over-running clutch. With the over-running clutch locked, the planet carrier is held, and the resulting torque provided by the planet pinions is transferred to the rear annulus gear. The rear annulus gear is splined to the output shaft and rotated along with it (clockwise) in an underdrive gear reduction mode.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

**Fig. 6 First Gear Powerflow**

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT
- 2 – OVER-RUNNING CLUTCH HOLDING
- 3 – REAR CLUTCH APPLIED
- 4 – OUTPUT SHAFT

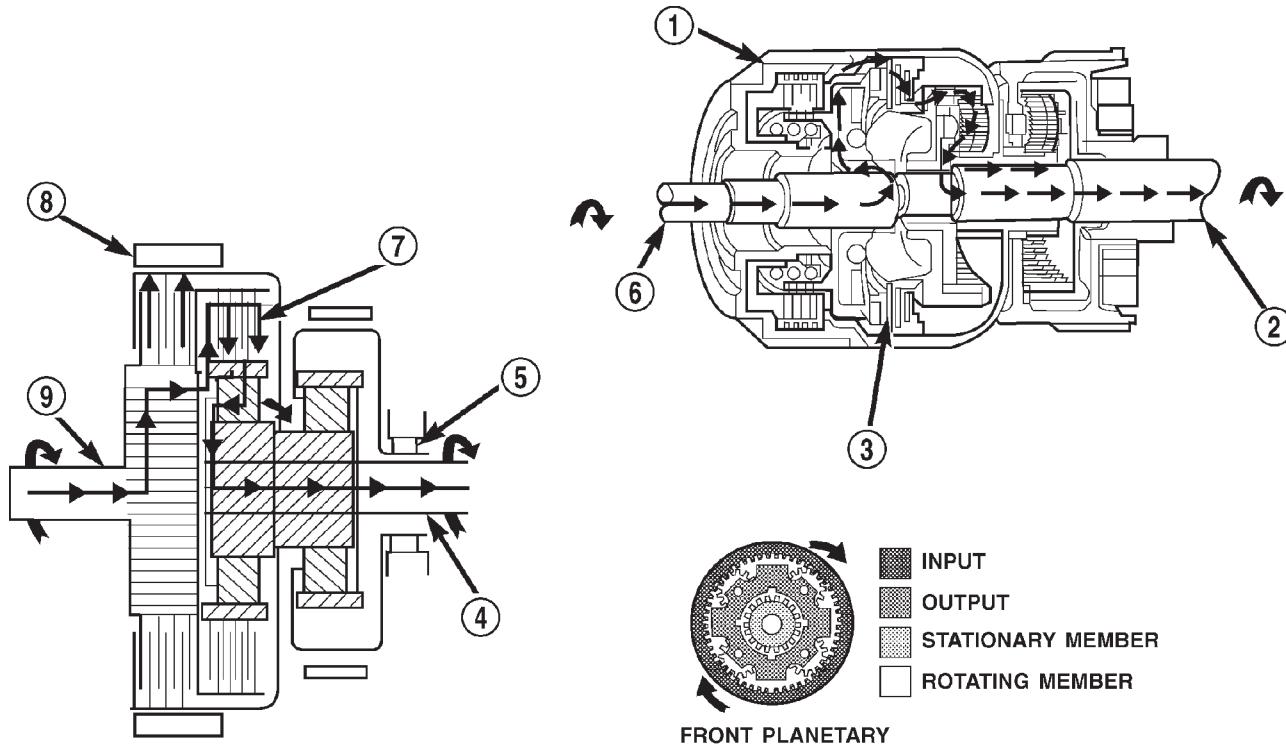
- 5 – OVER-RUNNING CLUTCH HOLDING
- 6 – INPUT SHAFT
- 7 – REAR CLUTCH APPLIED
- 8 – INPUT SHAFT

SECOND GEAR POWERFLOW

In drive-second (Fig. 7), the same elements are applied as in manual-second. Therefore, the power flow will be the same, and both gears will be discussed as one in the same. In drive-second, the transmission has proceeded from first gear to its shift point, and is shifting from first gear to second. The second gear shift is obtained by keeping the rear clutch applied and applying the front (kickdown) band. The front band holds the front clutch retainer that is locked to the sun gear driving shell. With the rear clutch still applied, the input is still on the front annulus gear turning it clockwise at engine speed.

Now that the front band is holding the sun gear stationary, the annulus rotation causes the front planets to rotate in a clockwise direction. The front carrier is then also made to rotate in a clockwise direction but at a reduced speed. This will transmit the torque to the output shaft, which is directly connected to the front planet carrier. The rear planetary annulus gear will also be turning because it is directly splined to the output shaft. All power flow has occurred in the front planetary gear set during the drive-second stage of operation, and now the over-running clutch, in the rear of the transmission, is disengaged and freewheeling on its hub.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c070aa

Fig. 7 Second Gear Powerflow

- 1 – KICKDOWN BAND APPLIED
- 2 – OUTPUT SHAFT
- 3 – REAR CLUTCH ENGAGED
- 4 – OUTPUT SHAFT
- 5 – OVER-RUNNING CLUTCH FREE-WHEELING

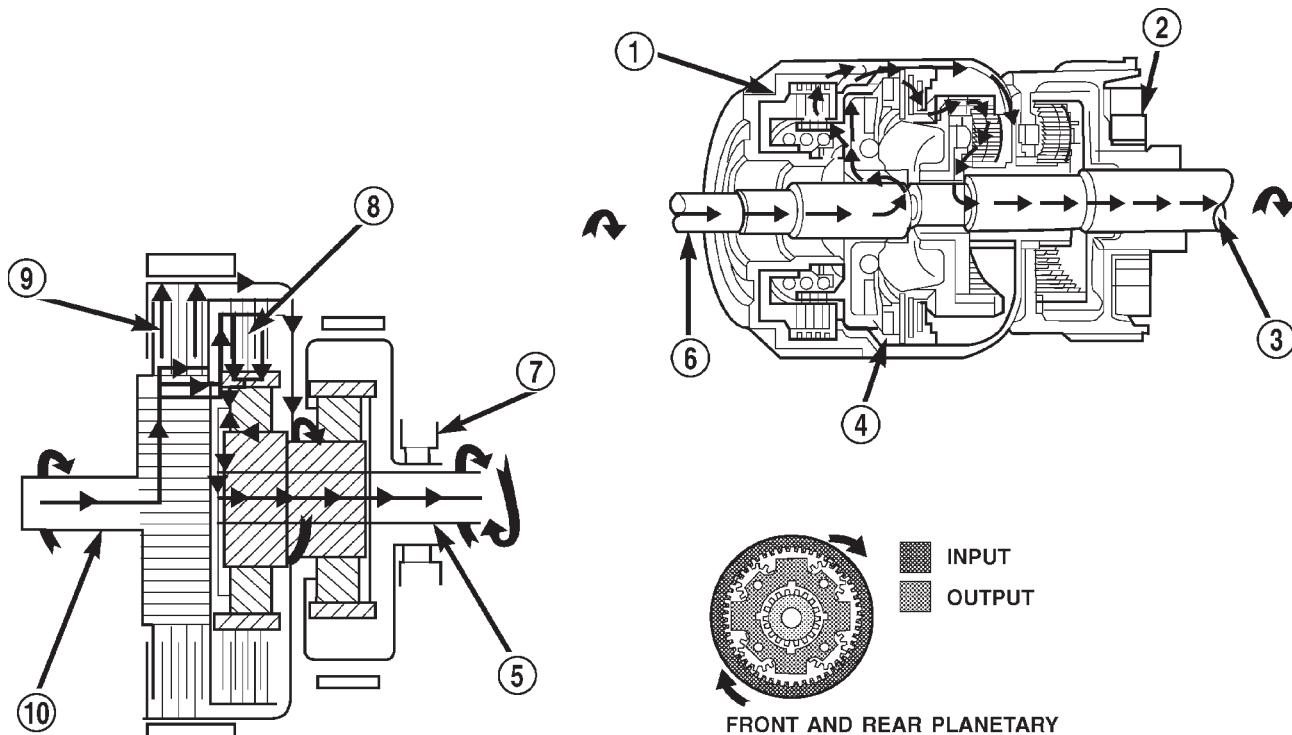
- 6 – INPUT SHAFT
- 7 – REAR CLUTCH APPLIED
- 8 – KICKDOWN BAND APPLIED
- 9 – INPUT SHAFT

DIRECT DRIVE POWERFLOW

The vehicle has accelerated and reached the shift point for the 2-3 upshift into direct drive (Fig. 8). When the shift takes place, the front band is released, and the front clutch is applied. The rear clutch stays applied as it has been in all the forward gears. With the front clutch now applied, engine torque is now on the front clutch retainer, which is locked to the sun gear driving shell. This means that the sun gear is now turning in engine rotation (clockwise) and at engine speed. The rear clutch is still applied so engine torque is also still on the front

annulus gear. If two members of the same planetary set are driven, direct drive results. Therefore, when two members are rotating at the same speed and in the same direction, it is the same as being locked up. The rear planetary set is also locked up, given the sun gear is still the input, and the rear annulus gear must turn with the output shaft. Both gears are turning in the same direction and at the same speed. The front and rear planet pinions do not turn at all in direct drive. The only rotation is the input from the engine to the connected parts, which are acting as one common unit, to the output shaft.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c070ab

Fig. 8 Direct Drive Powerflow

- 1 – FRONT CLUTCH APPLIED
- 2 – OVER-RUNNING CLUTCH FREE-WHEELING
- 3 – OUTPUT SHAFT
- 4 – REAR CLUTCH APPLIED
- 5 – OUTPUT SHAFT

- 6 – INPUT SHAFT
- 7 – OVER-RUNNING CLUTCH FREE-WHEELING
- 8 – REAR CLUTCH APPLIED
- 9 – FRONT CLUTCH APPLIED
- 10 – INPUT SHAFT

FOURTH GEAR POWERFLOW

Fourth gear overdrive range is electronically controlled and hydraulically activated. Various sensor inputs are supplied to the powertrain control module to operate the overdrive solenoid on the valve body. The solenoid contains a check ball that opens and closes a vent port in the 3-4 shift valve feed passage. The overdrive solenoid (and check ball) are not energized in first, second, third, or reverse gear. The vent port remains open, diverting line pressure from the 2-3 shift valve away from the 3-4 shift valve. The overdrive control switch must be in the ON position to transmit overdrive status to the PCM. A 3-4 upshift occurs only when the overdrive solenoid is energized by the PCM. The PCM energizes the overdrive solenoid during the 3-4 upshift. This causes the solenoid check ball to close the vent port allowing line pressure from the 2-3 shift valve to act directly on the 3-4 upshift valve. Line pressure on the 3-4 shift valve overcomes valve spring pressure moving the valve to the upshift position. This action exposes the feed passages to the 3-4 timing valve, 3-4 quick fill valve, 3-4 accumulator, and ultimately to the

overdrive piston. Line pressure through the timing valve moves the overdrive piston into contact with the overdrive clutch. The direct clutch is disengaged before the overdrive clutch is engaged. The boost valve provides increased fluid apply pressure to the overdrive clutch during 3-4 upshifts, and when accelerating in fourth gear. The 3-4 accumulator cushions overdrive clutch engagement to smooth 3-4 upshifts. The accumulator is charged at the same time as apply pressure acts against the overdrive piston.

FLUID

NOTE: Refer to the maintenance schedules in Group 0, Lubrication and Maintenance for the recommended maintenance (fluid/filter change) intervals for this transmission.

NOTE: Refer to Service Procedures in this group for fluid level checking procedures.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

DESCRIPTION

Mopar® ATF Plus 3, Type 7176, automatic transmission fluid is the recommended fluid for Daimler-Chrysler automatic transmissions.

Dexron II fluid IS NOT recommended. Clutch chatter can result from the use of improper fluid.

Mopar® ATF Plus 3, Type 7176, automatic transmission fluid when new is red in color. The ATF is dyed red so it can be identified from other fluids used in the vehicle such as engine oil or antifreeze. The red color is not permanent and is not an indicator of fluid condition. As the vehicle is driven, the ATF will begin to look darker in color and may eventually become brown. **This is normal.** A dark brown/black fluid accompanied with a burnt odor and/or deterioration in shift quality may indicate fluid deterioration or transmission component failure.

FLUID ADDITIVES

DaimlerChrysler strongly recommends against the addition of any fluids to the transmission, other than those automatic transmission fluids listed above. Exceptions to this policy are the use of special dyes to aid in detecting fluid leaks.

Various "special" additives and supplements exist that claim to improve shift feel and/or quality. These additives and others also claim to improve converter clutch operation and inhibit overheating, oxidation, varnish, and sludge. These claims have not been supported to the satisfaction of DaimlerChrysler and these additives **must not be used.** The use of transmission "sealers" should also be avoided, since they may adversely affect the integrity of transmission seals.

OPERATION

The automatic transmission fluid is selected based upon several qualities. The fluid must provide a high level of protection for the internal components by providing a lubricating film between adjacent metal components. The fluid must also be thermally stable so that it can maintain a consistent viscosity through a large temperature range. If the viscosity stays constant through the temperature range of operation, transmission operation and shift feel will remain consistent. Transmission fluid must also be a good conductor of heat. The fluid must absorb heat from the internal transmission components and transfer that heat to the transmission case.

TORQUE CONVERTER

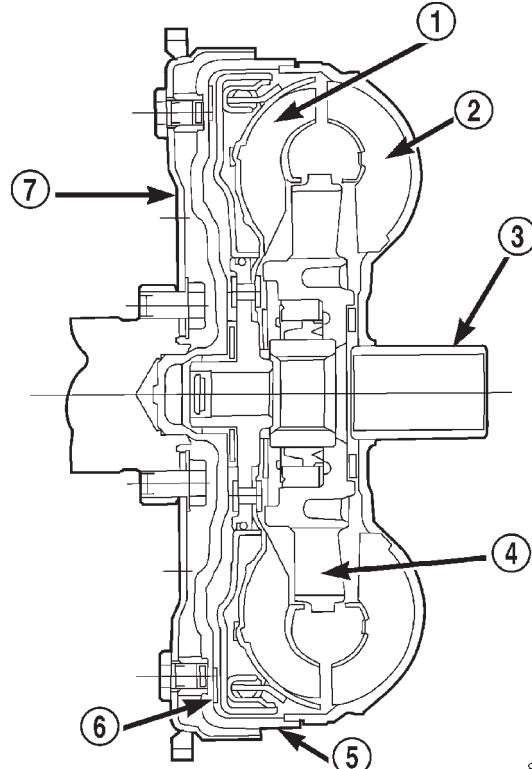
DESCRIPTION

The torque converter (Fig. 9) is a hydraulic device that couples the engine crankshaft to the transmis-

sion. The torque converter consists of an outer shell with an internal turbine, a stator, an overrunning clutch, an impeller and an electronically applied converter clutch. The converter clutch provides reduced engine speed and greater fuel economy when engaged. Clutch engagement also provides reduced transmission fluid temperatures. The converter clutch engages in third gear. The torque converter hub drives the transmission oil (fluid) pump.

The torque converter is a sealed, welded unit that is not repairable and is serviced as an assembly.

CAUTION: The torque converter must be replaced if a transmission failure resulted in large amounts of metal or fiber contamination in the fluid. If the fluid is contaminated, flush the fluid cooler and lines.



80c07135

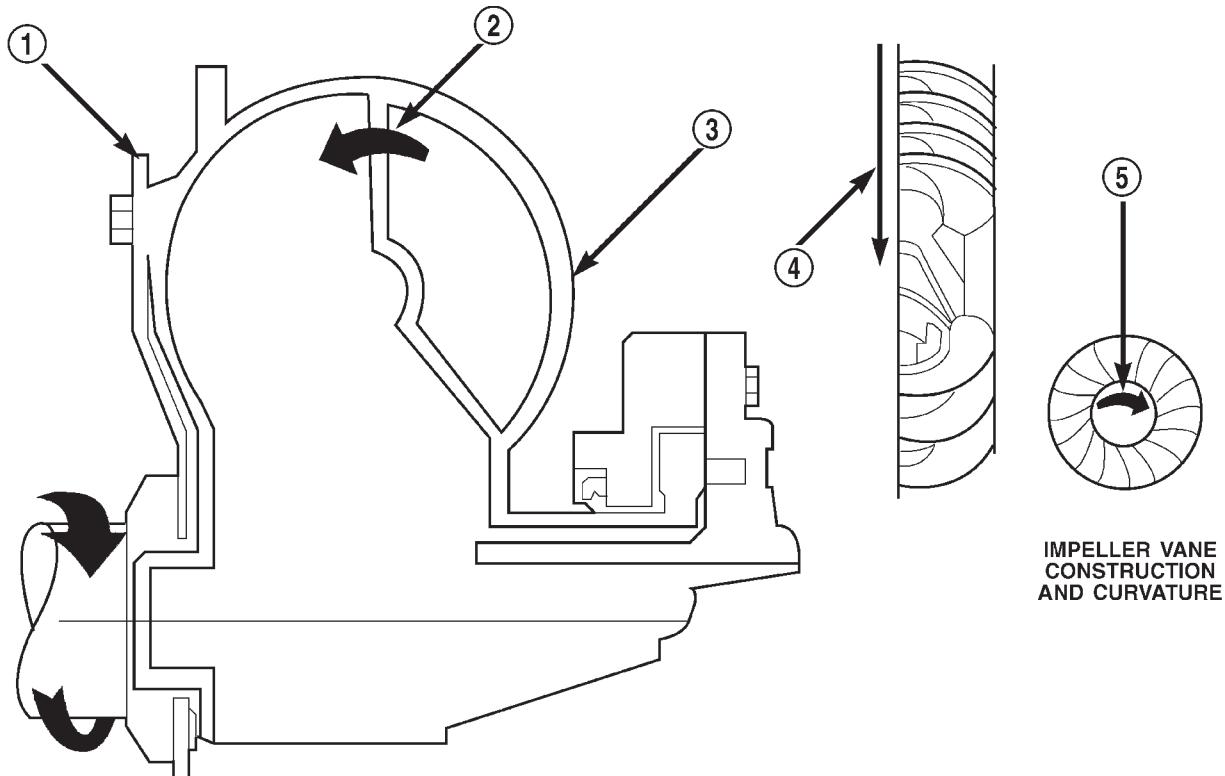
Fig. 9 Torque Converter Assembly

- 1 – TURBINE
- 2 – IMPELLER
- 3 – HUB
- 4 – STATOR
- 5 – FRONT COVER
- 6 – CONVERTER CLUTCH DISC
- 7 – DRIVE PLATE

IMPELLER

The impeller (Fig. 10) is an integral part of the converter housing. The impeller consists of curved blades placed radially along the inside of the housing on the transmission side of the converter. As the converter housing is rotated by the engine, so is the

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



IMPELLER VANE CONSTRUCTION AND CURVATURE

80bfe26a

Fig. 10 Impeller

1 – ENGINE FLEXPLATE

2 – OIL FLOW FROM IMPELLER SECTION INTO TURBINE SECTION

3 – IMPELLER VANES AND COVER ARE INTEGRAL

4 – ENGINE ROTATION

5 – ENGINE ROTATION

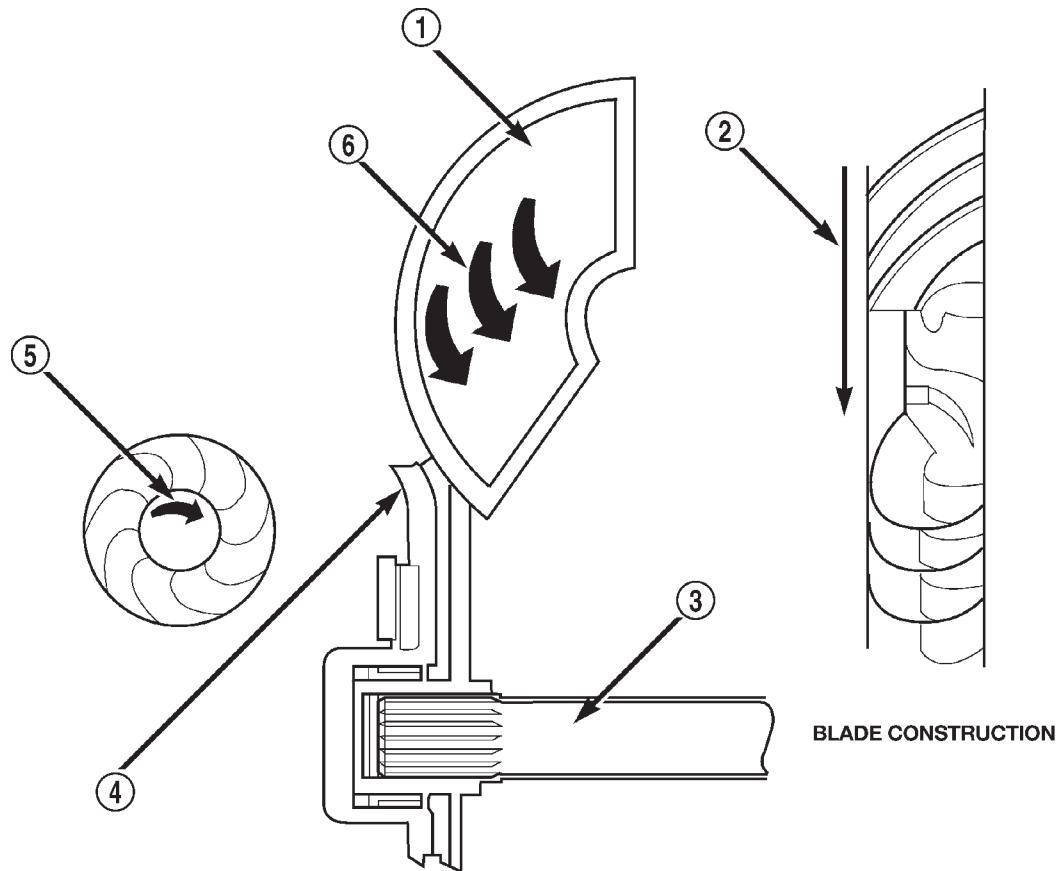
impeller, because they are one and the same and are the driving member of the system.

TURBINE

The turbine (Fig. 11) is the output, or driven, member of the converter. The turbine is mounted within

the housing opposite the impeller, but is not attached to the housing. The input shaft is inserted through the center of the impeller and splined into the turbine. The design of the turbine is similar to the impeller, except the blades of the turbine are curved in the opposite direction.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80bfe26b

Fig. 11 Turbine

- 1 – TURBINE VANE
2 – ENGINE ROTATION
3 – INPUT SHAFT

- 4 – PORTION OF TORQUE CONVERTER COVER
5 – ENGINE ROTATION
6 – OIL FLOW WITHIN TURBINE SECTION

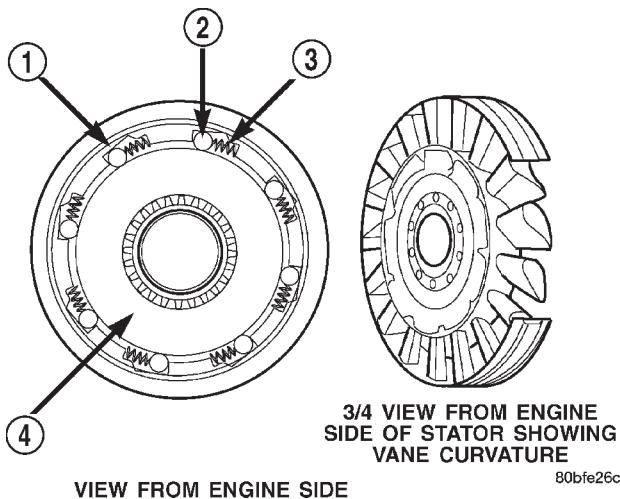
STATOR

The stator assembly (Fig. 12) is mounted on a stationary shaft which is an integral part of the oil pump. The stator is located between the impeller and turbine within the torque converter case (Fig. 13). The stator contains an over-running clutch, which allows the stator to rotate only in a clockwise direction. When the stator is locked against the over-running clutch, the torque multiplication feature of the torque converter is operational.

TORQUE CONVERTER CLUTCH (TCC)

The TCC (Fig. 14) was installed to improve the efficiency of the torque converter that is lost to the slippage of the fluid coupling. Although the fluid coupling provides smooth, shock-free power transfer, it is natural for all fluid couplings to slip. If the impeller and turbine were mechanically locked together, a zero slippage condition could be obtained. A hydraulic piston was added to the turbine, and a friction material was added to the inside of the front cover to provide this mechanical lock-up.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

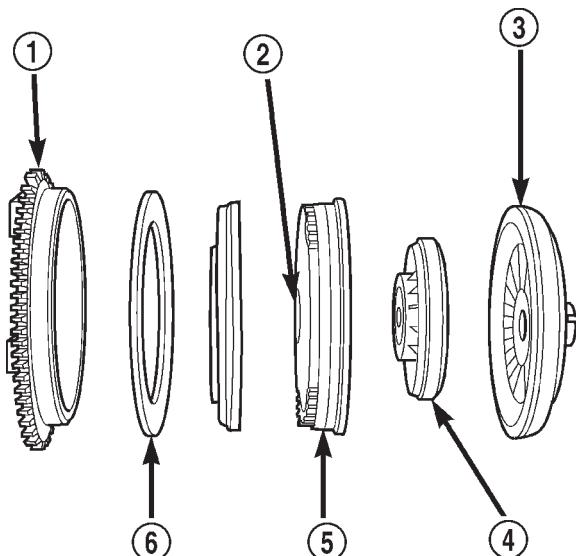
**Fig. 12 Stator Components**

1 - CAM (OUTER RACE)

2 - ROLLER

3 - SPRING

4 - INNER RACE

**Fig. 14 Torque Converter Clutch (TCC)**

1 - IMPELLER FRONT COVER

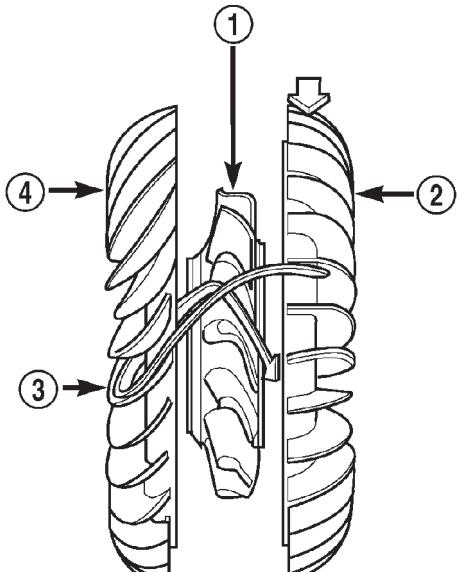
2 - THRUST WASHER ASSEMBLY

3 - IMPELLER

4 - STATOR

5 - TURBINE

6 - FRICTION DISC

**Fig. 13 Stator Location**

1 - STATOR

2 - IMPELLER

3 - FLUID FLOW

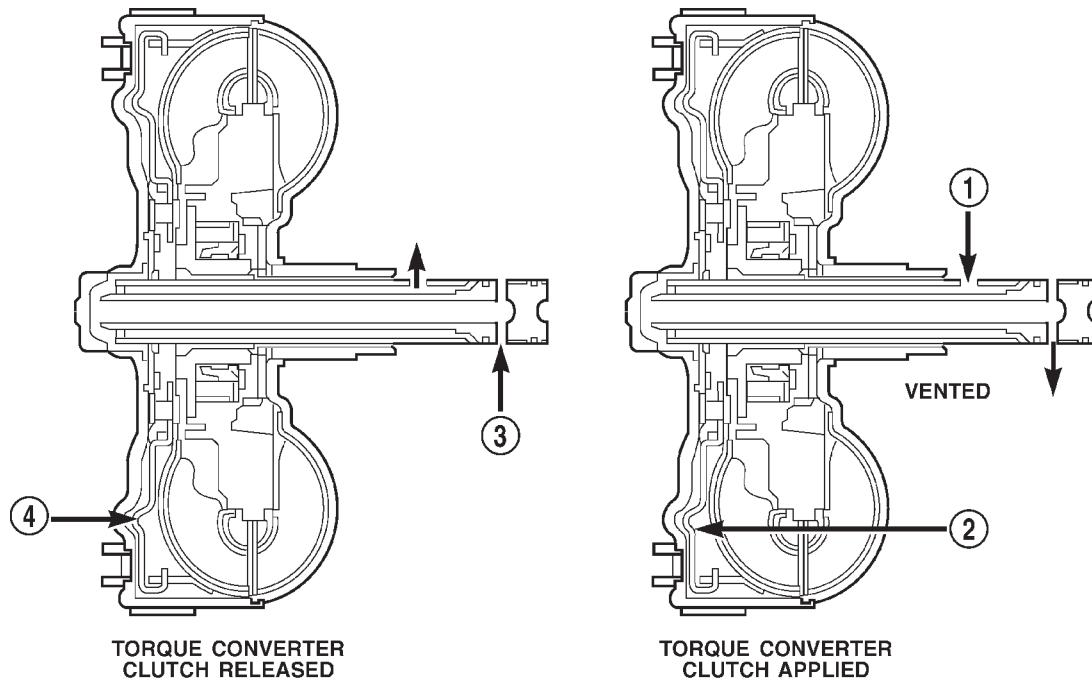
4 - TURBINE

OPERATION

The converter impeller (Fig. 15) (driving member), which is integral to the converter housing and bolted to the engine drive plate, rotates at engine speed. The converter turbine (driven member), which reacts from fluid pressure generated by the impeller, rotates and turns the transmission input shaft.

TURBINE

As the fluid that was put into motion by the impeller blades strikes the blades of the turbine, some of the energy and rotational force is transferred into the turbine and the input shaft. This causes both of them (turbine and input shaft) to rotate in a clockwise direction following the impeller. As the fluid is leaving the trailing edges of the turbine's blades it continues in a "hindering" direction back toward the impeller. If the fluid is not redirected before it strikes the impeller, it will strike the impeller in such a direction that it would tend to slow it down.



80bfe276

Fig. 15 Torque Converter Fluid Operation

- 1 – APPLY PRESSURE
2 – THE PISTON MOVES SLIGHTLY FORWARD

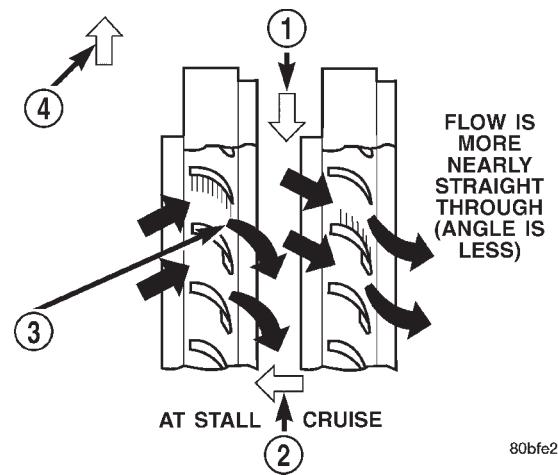
- 3 – RELEASE PRESSURE
4 – THE PISTON MOVES SLIGHTLY REARWARD

STATOR

Torque multiplication is achieved by locking the stator's over-running clutch to its shaft (Fig. 16). Under stall conditions (the turbine is stationary), the oil leaving the turbine blades strikes the face of the stator blades and tries to rotate them in a counter-clockwise direction. When this happens the over-running clutch of the stator locks and holds the stator from rotating. With the stator locked, the oil strikes the stator blades and is redirected into a "helping" direction before it enters the impeller. This circulation of oil from impeller to turbine, turbine to stator, and stator to impeller, can produce a maximum torque multiplication of about 2.4:1. As the turbine begins to match the speed of the impeller, the fluid that was hitting the stator in such a way as to cause it to lock-up is no longer doing so. In this condition of operation, the stator begins to free wheel and the converter acts as a fluid coupling.

TORQUE CONVERTER CLUTCH (TCC)

In a standard torque converter, the impeller and turbine are rotating at about the same speed and the stator is freewheeling, providing no torque multiplication. By applying the turbine's piston to the front cover's friction material, a total converter engagement can be obtained. The result of this engagement



80bfe26e

Fig. 16 Stator Operation

- 1 – DIRECTION STATOR WILL FREE WHEEL DUE TO OIL PUSHING ON BACKSIDE OF VANES
2 – FRONT OF ENGINE
3 – INCREASED ANGLE AS OIL STRIKES VANES
4 – DIRECTION STATOR IS LOCKED UP DUE TO OIL PUSHING AGAINST STATOR VANES

is a direct 1:1 mechanical link between the engine and the transmission.

Converter clutch engagement in third or fourth gear range is controlled by sensor inputs to the powertrain control module. Inputs that determine clutch

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

engagement are: coolant temperature, engine rpm, vehicle speed, throttle position, and manifold vacuum. The torque converter clutch is engaged by the clutch solenoid on the valve body. The clutch can be engaged in third and fourth gear ranges depending on overdrive control switch position. If the overdrive control switch is in the normal ON position, the clutch will engage after the shift to fourth gear, and above approximately 72 km/h (45 mph). If the control switch is in the OFF position, the clutch will engage after the shift to third gear, at approximately 56 km/h (35 mph) at light throttle.

OIL PUMP

DESCRIPTION

The oil pump (Fig. 17) is located in the pump housing inside the bell housing of the transmission case. The oil pump consists of an inner and outer gear, a housing, and a cover that also serves as the reaction shaft support.

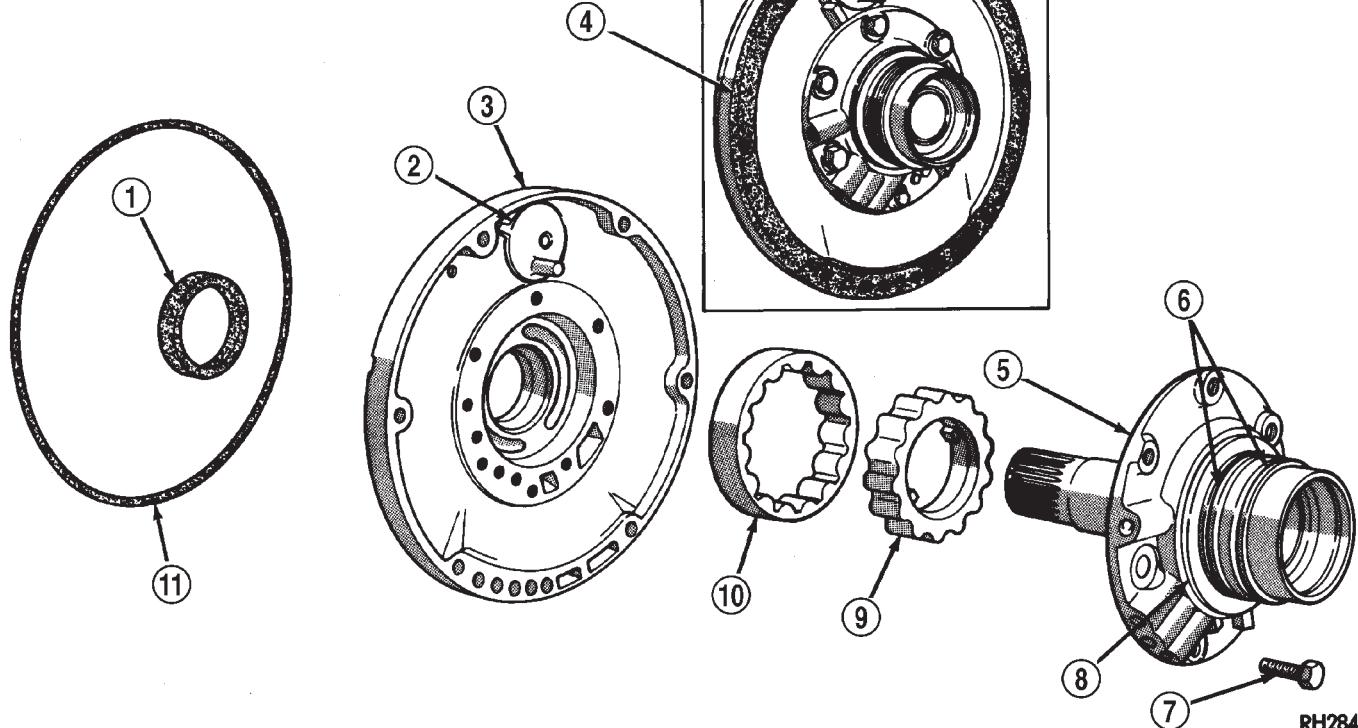


Fig. 17 Oil Pump Assembly

RH284

- 1 - OIL SEAL
- 2 - VENT BAFFLE
- 3 - OIL PUMP BODY
- 4 - GASKET
- 5 - REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT
- 6 - SEAL RINGS

OPERATION

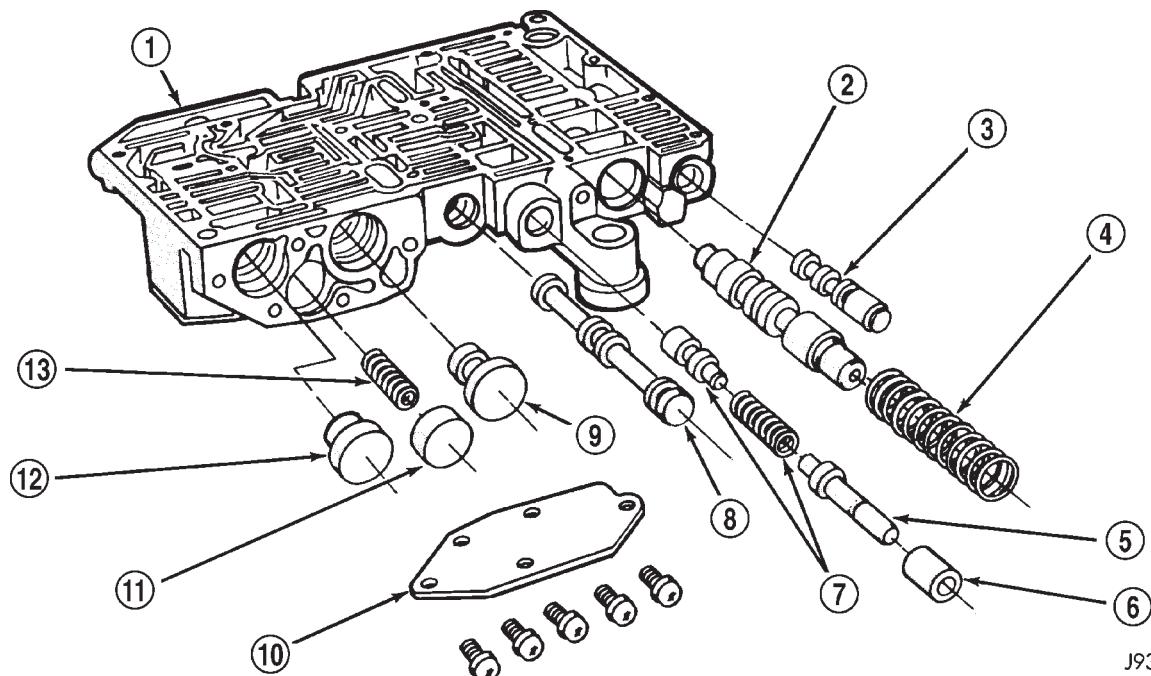
As the torque converter rotates, the converter hub rotates the inner and outer gears. As the gears rotate, the clearance between the gear teeth increases in the crescent area, and creates a suction at the inlet side of the pump. This suction draws fluid through the pump inlet from the oil pan. As the clearance between the gear teeth in the crescent area decreases, it forces pressurized fluid into the pump outlet and to the valve body.

VALVE BODY

DESCRIPTION

The valve body consists of a cast aluminum valve body, a separator plate, and transfer plate. The valve body contains valves and check balls that control fluid delivery to the torque converter clutch, bands, and frictional clutches. The valve body contains the following components (Fig. 18), (Fig. 19), (Fig. 20), and (Fig. 21):

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



J9321-155

Fig. 18 Upper Housing Control Valve Locations

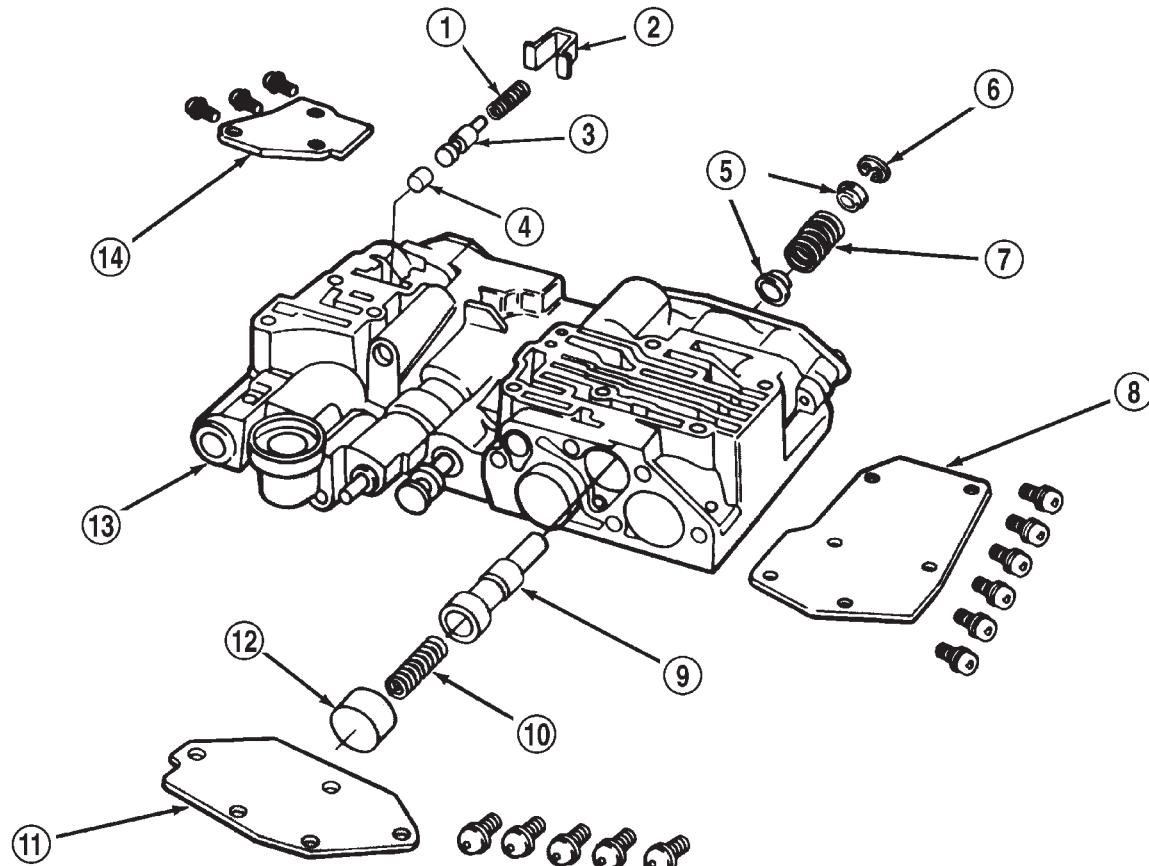
- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 - UPPER HOUSING | 8 - MANUAL VALVE |
| 2 - REGULATOR VALVE | 9 - 1-2 GOVERNOR PLUG |
| 3 - SWITCH VALVE | 10 - GOVERNOR PLUG COVER |
| 4 - REGULATOR VALVE SPRING | 11 - THROTTLE PLUG |
| 5 - KICKDOWN VALVE | 12 - 2-3 GOVERNOR PLUG |
| 6 - KICKDOWN DETENT | 13 - SHUTTLE VALVE PRIMARY SPRING |
| 7 - THROTTLE VALVE AND SPRING | |

- Regulator valve
- Regulator valve throttle pressure plug
- Line pressure plug and sleeve
- Kickdown valve
- Kickdown limit valve
- 1-2 shift valve
- 1-2 control valve
- 2-3 shift valve
- 2-3 governor plug
- 3-4 shift valve
- 3-4 timing valve
- 3-4 quick fill valve
- 3-4 accumulator

- Throttle valve
- Throttle pressure plug
- Switch valve
- Manual valve
- Converter clutch lock-up valve
- Converter clutch lock-up timing Valve
- Shuttle valve
- Shuttle valve throttle plug
- Boost Valve
- 10 check balls

By adjusting the spring pressure acting on the regulator valve, transmission line pressure can be adjusted.

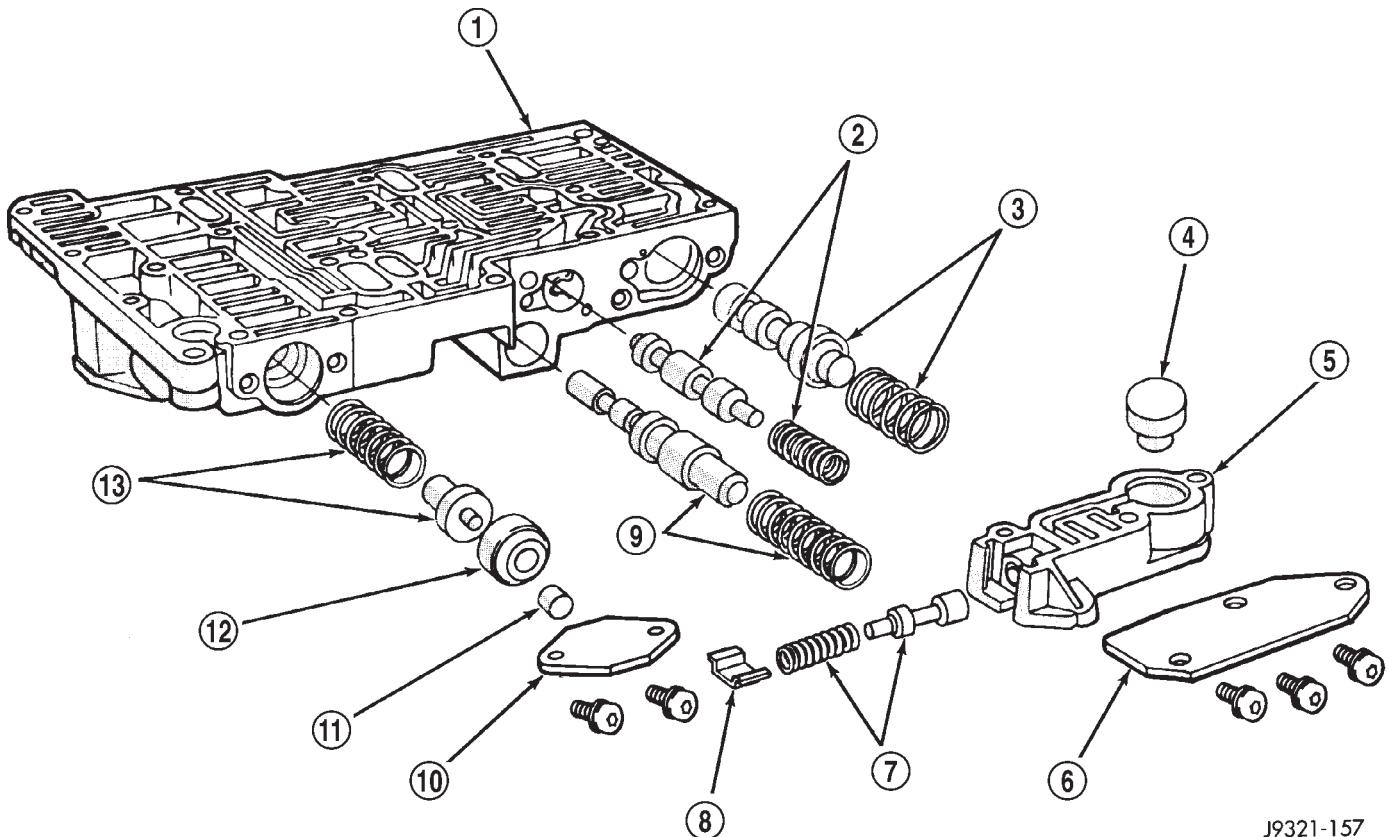
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



J9421-217

Fig. 19 Shuttle and Boost Valve Locations

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 – SPRING | 8 – SHUTTLE VALVE COVER |
| 2 – RETAINER | 9 – SHUTTLE VALVE |
| 3 – BOOST VALVE | 10 – SHUTTLE VALVE PRIMARY SPRING |
| 4 – BOOST VALVE PLUG | 11 – GOVERNOR PLUG COVER |
| 5 – SPRING GUIDES | 12 – THROTTLE PLUG |
| 6 – E-CLIP | 13 – UPPER HOUSING |
| 7 – SHUTTLE VALVE SECONDARY SPRING | 14 – BOOST VALVE COVER |



J9321-157

Fig. 20 Upper Housing Shift Valve and Pressure Plug Locations

- 1 – UPPER HOUSING
- 2 – 1-2 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING
- 3 – 2-3 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING
- 4 – 2-3 THROTTLE PLUG
- 5 – LIMIT VALVE HOUSING
- 6 – LIMIT VALVE COVER
- 7 – LIMIT VALVE AND SPRING

- 8 – RETAINER
- 9 – 1-2 SHIFT CONTROL VALVE AND SPRING
- 10 – PRESSURE PLUG COVER
- 11 – LINE PRESSURE PLUG
- 12 – PLUG SLEEVE
- 13 – THROTTLE PRESSURE SPRING AND PLUG

OPERATION

NOTE: Refer to the Hydraulic Schematics for a visual aid in determining valve location, operation and design.

REGULATOR VALVE

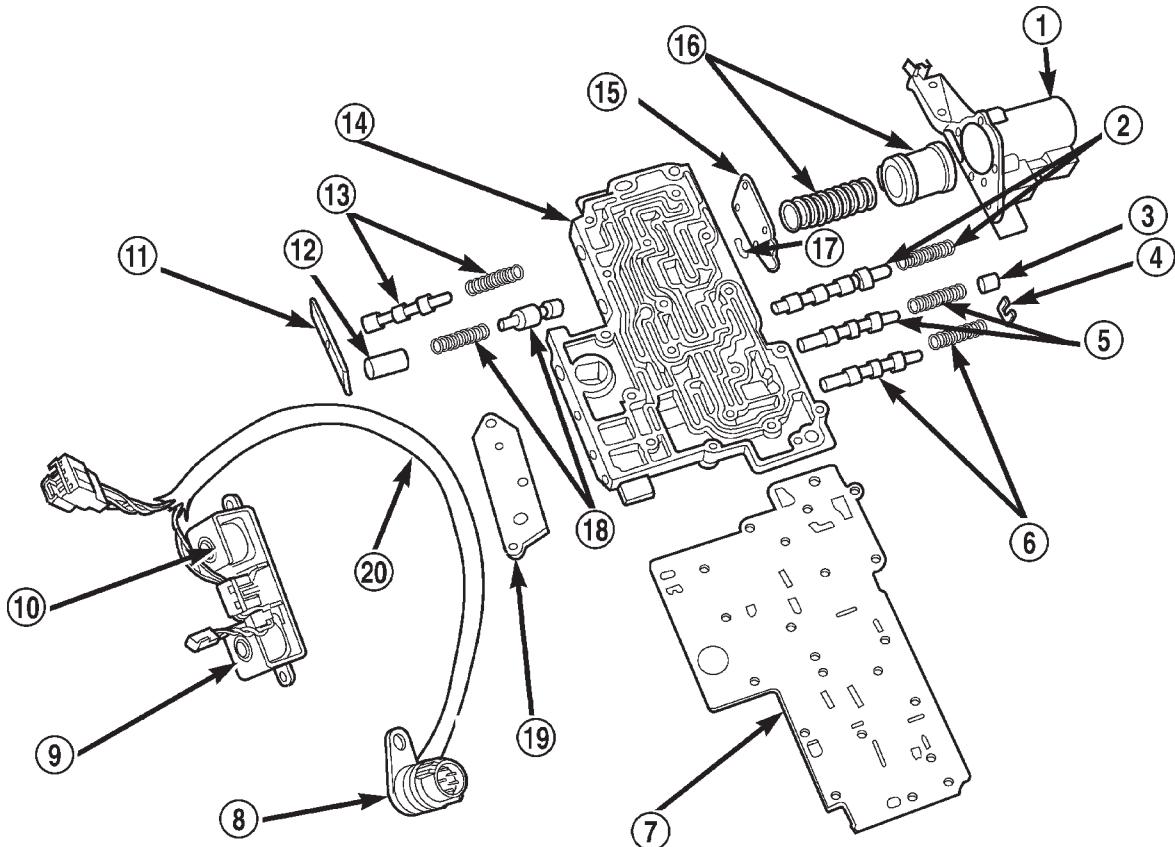
The pressure regulator valve is needed to control the hydraulic pressure within the system and reduce the amount of heat produced in the fluid. The pressure regulator valve is located in the valve body near the manual valve. The pressure regulator valve train controls the maximum pressure in the lines by metering the dumping of fluid back into the sump. Regulated pressure is referred to as "line pressure."

The regulator valve (Fig. 22) has a spring on one end that pushes the valve to the left. This closes a dump (vent) that is used to lower pressure. The closing of the dump will cause the oil pressure to

increase. Oil pressure on the opposite end of the valve pushes the valve to the right, opening the dump and lowering oil pressure. The result is spring pressure working against oil pressure to maintain the oil at specific pressures. With the engine running, fluid flows from the pump to the pressure regulator valve, manual valve, and the interconnected circuits. As fluid is sent through passages to the regulator valve, the pressure pushes the valve to the right against the large spring. It is also sent to the reaction areas on the left side of the throttle pressure plug and the line pressure plug. With the gear selector in the park position, fluid recirculates through the regulator and manual valves back to the sump.

Meanwhile, the torque converter is filled slowly. In all other gear positions (Fig. 23), fluid flows between two right side lands to the switch valve and torque converter. At low pump speeds, the flow is controlled by the pressure valve groove to reduce pressure to the torque converter. After the torque converter and

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c072b5

Fig. 21 Lower Housing Shift Valves And Springs

1 - 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING

2 - 3-4 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING

3 - PLUG

4 - SPRING RETAINER

5 - CONVERTER CLUTCH VALVE AND SPRING

6 - CONVERTER CLUTCH TIMING VALVE AND SPRING

7 - OVERDRIVE SEPARATOR PLATE

8 - CASE CONNECTOR

9 - CONVERTER CLUTCH SOLENOID

10 - OVERDRIVE SOLENOID

11 - TIMING VALVE COVER

12 - PLUG

13 - 3-4 TIMING VALVE AND SPRING

14 - LOWER HOUSING

15 - ACCUMULATOR END PLATE

16 - 3-4 ACCUMULATOR PISTON AND SPRING

17 - E-CLIP

18 - 3-4 QUICK FILL SPRING AND VALVE

19 - SOLENOID GASKET

20 - HARNESS

switch valve fill with fluid, the switch valve becomes the controlling metering device for torque converter pressure. The regulator valve then begins to control the line pressure for the other transmission circuits. The balance of the fluid pressure pushing the valve to the right and the spring pressure pushing to the left determines the size of the metering passage at land #2 (land #1 being at the far right of the valve in the diagram). As fluid leaks past the land, it moves into a groove connected to the filter or sump. As the land meters the fluid to the sump, it causes the pressure to reduce and the spring decreases the size of the metering passage. When the size of the metering passage is reduced, the pressure rises again and the size of the land is increased again. Pressure is regu-

lated by this constant balance of hydraulic and spring pressure.

The metering at land #2 establishes the line pressure throughout the transmission. It is varied according to changes in throttle position, engine speed, and transmission condition within a range of 57–94 psi (except in reverse) (Fig. 24). The regulated line pressure in reverse (Fig. 25) is held at much higher pressures than in the other gear positions: 145–280 psi. The higher pressure for reverse is achieved by the manual valve blocking the supply of line pressure to the reaction area left of land #4. With this pressure blocked, there is less area for pressure to act on to balance the force of the spring on the right. This allows line pressure to push the valve train to the right, reducing the amount of fluid returned to the pump's inlet, increasing line pressure.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

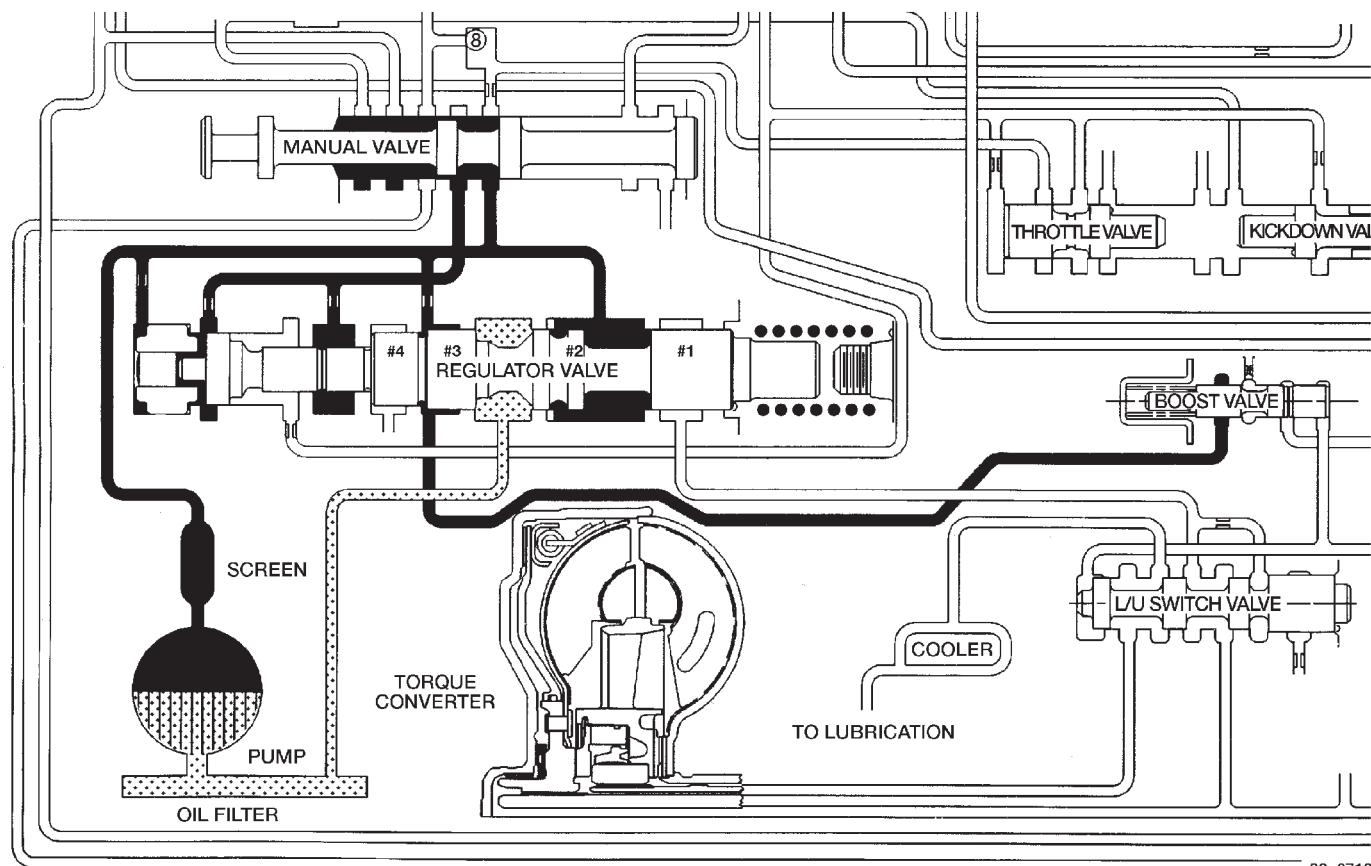


Fig. 22 Regulator Valve in Park Position

80c0713c

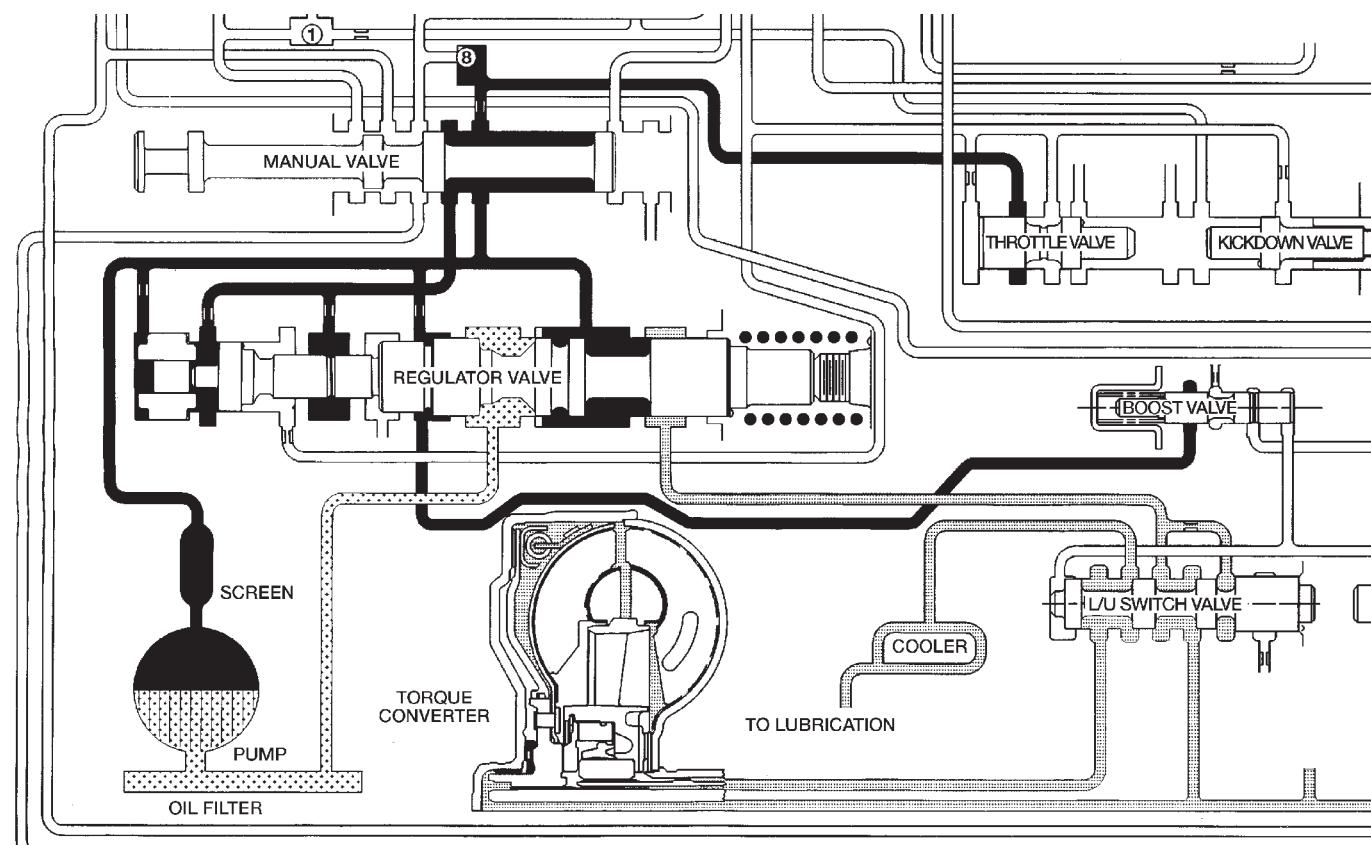
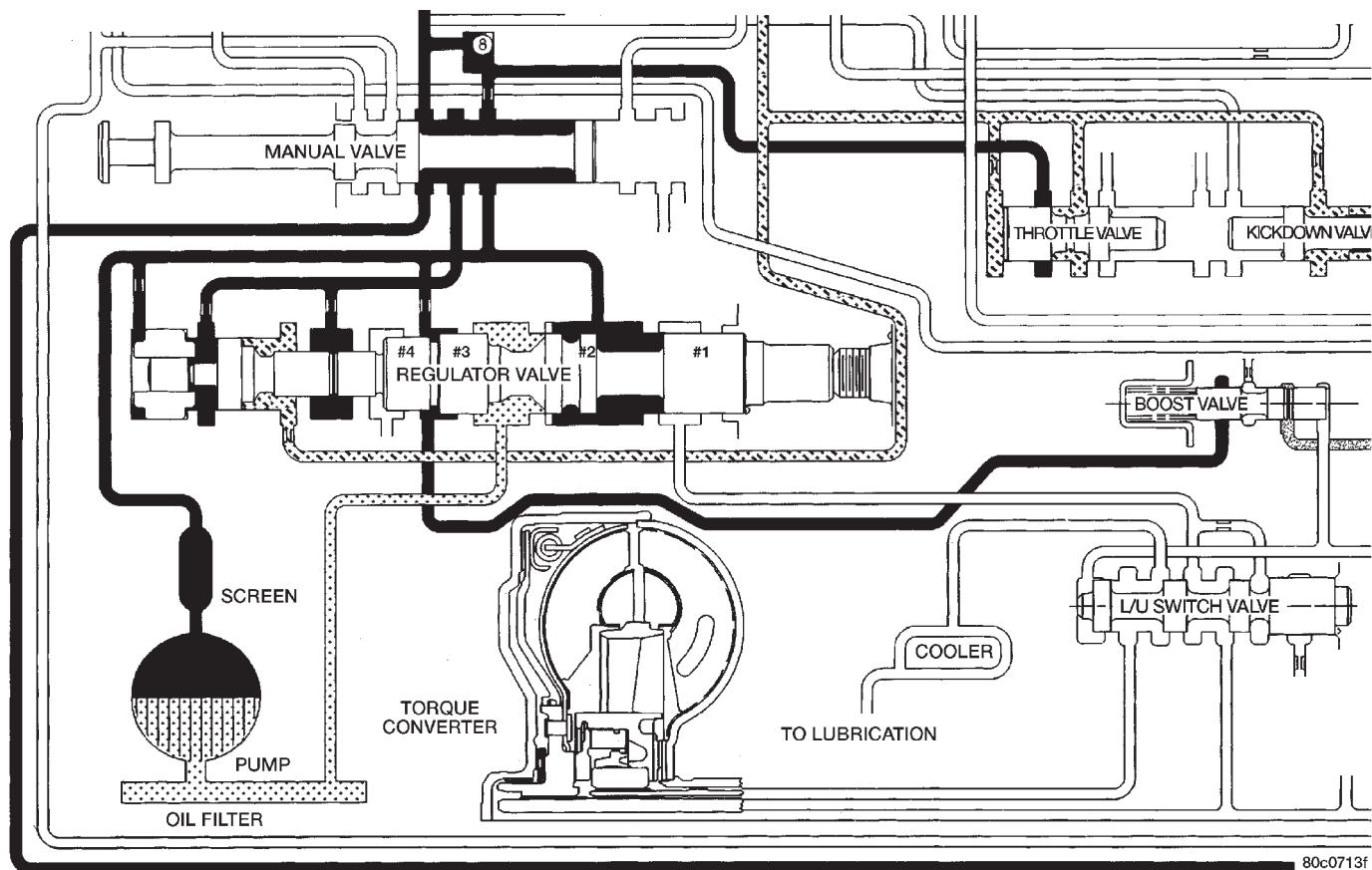


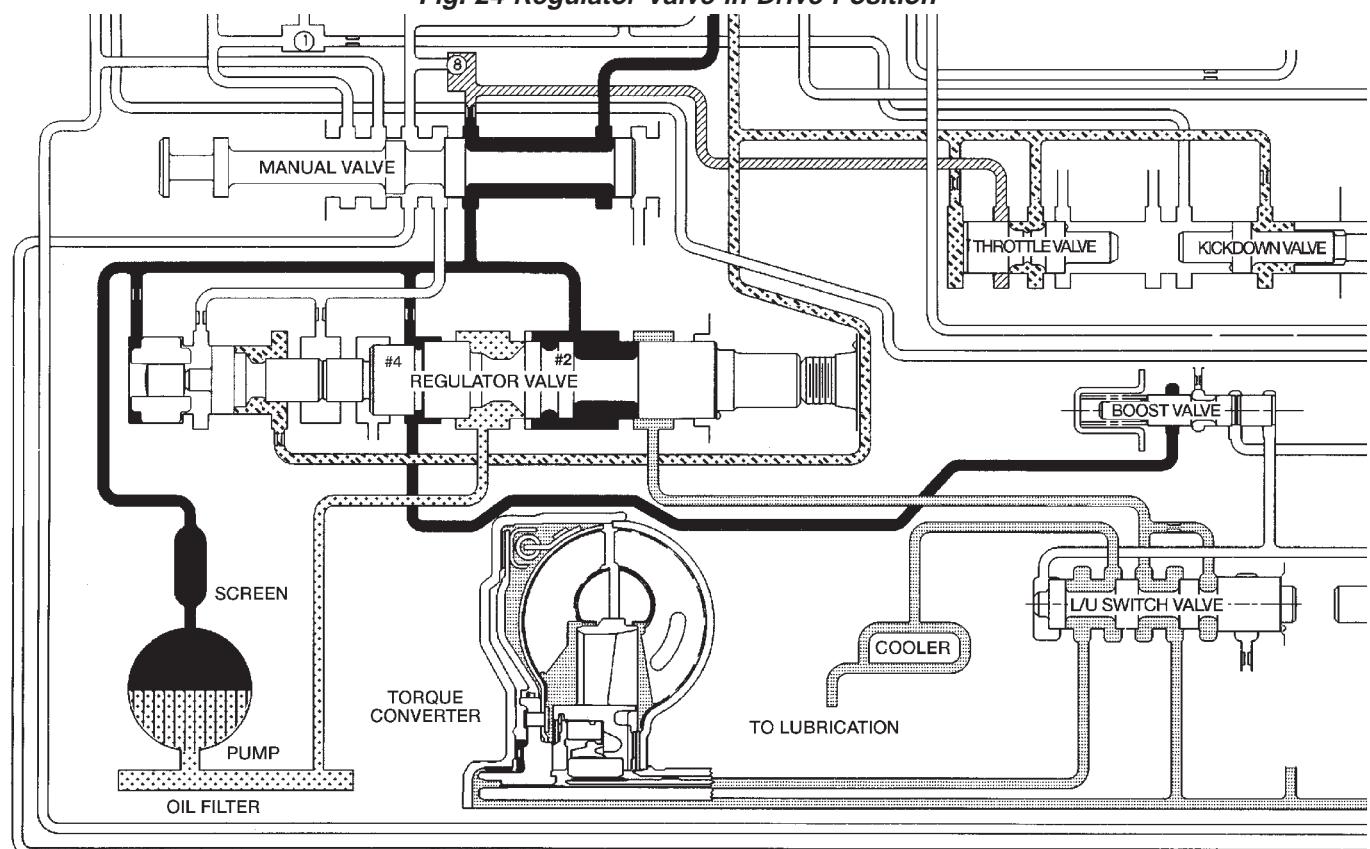
Fig. 23 Regulator Valve in Neutral Position

80c0713e

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

*Fig. 24 Regulator Valve in Drive Position*

80c0713f

*Fig. 25 Regulator Valve in Reverse Position*

80c07140

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

KICKDOWN VALVE

When the throttle valve is as far over to the left as it can go, the maximum line pressure possible will enter the throttle pressure circuit. In this case, throttle pressure will equal line pressure. With the kickdown valve (Fig. 26) pushed into the bore as far as it will go, fluid initially flows through the annular groove of the 2-3 shift valve (which will be in the direct drive position to the right).

After passing the annular groove, the fluid is routed to the spring end of the 2-3 shift valve. Fluid pressure reacting on the area of land #1 overcomes governor pressure, downshifting the 2-3 shift valve into the kickdown, or second gear stage of operation. The valve is held in the kickdown position by throttle pressure routed from a seated check ball (#2). Again, if vehicle speed is low enough, throttle pressure will also push the 1-2 shift valve left to seat its governor plug, and downshift to drive breakaway.

KICKDOWN LIMIT VALVE

The purpose of the limit valve is to prevent a 3-2 downshift at higher speeds when a part-throttle downshift is not desirable. At these higher speeds only a full throttle 3-2 downshift will occur. At low road speeds (Fig. 27) the limit valve does not come into play and does not affect the downshifts. As the vehicle's speed increases (Fig. 28), the governor pres-

sure also increases. The increased governor pressure acts on the reaction area of the bottom land of the limit valve overcoming the spring force trying to push the valve toward the bottom of its bore. This pushes the valve upward against the spring and bottoms the valve against the top of the housing. With the valve bottomed against the housing, the throttle pressure supplied to the valve will be closed off by the bottom land of the limit valve. When the supply of throttle pressure has been shut off, the 3-2 part throttle downshift plug becomes inoperative, because no pressure is acting on its reaction area.

1-2 SHIFT VALVE

The 1-2 shift valve assembly (Fig. 29), or mechanism, consists of: the 1-2 shift valve, governor plug, and a spring on the end of the valve. After the manual valve has been placed into a forward gear range, line pressure is directed to the 1-2 shift valve. As the throttle is depressed, throttle pressure is applied to the right side of the 1-2 shift valve assembly. With throttle pressure applied to the right side of the valve, there is now both spring pressure and throttle pressure acting on the valve, holding it against the governor plug. As the vehicle begins to move and build speed, governor pressure is created and is applied to the left of the valve at the governor plug.

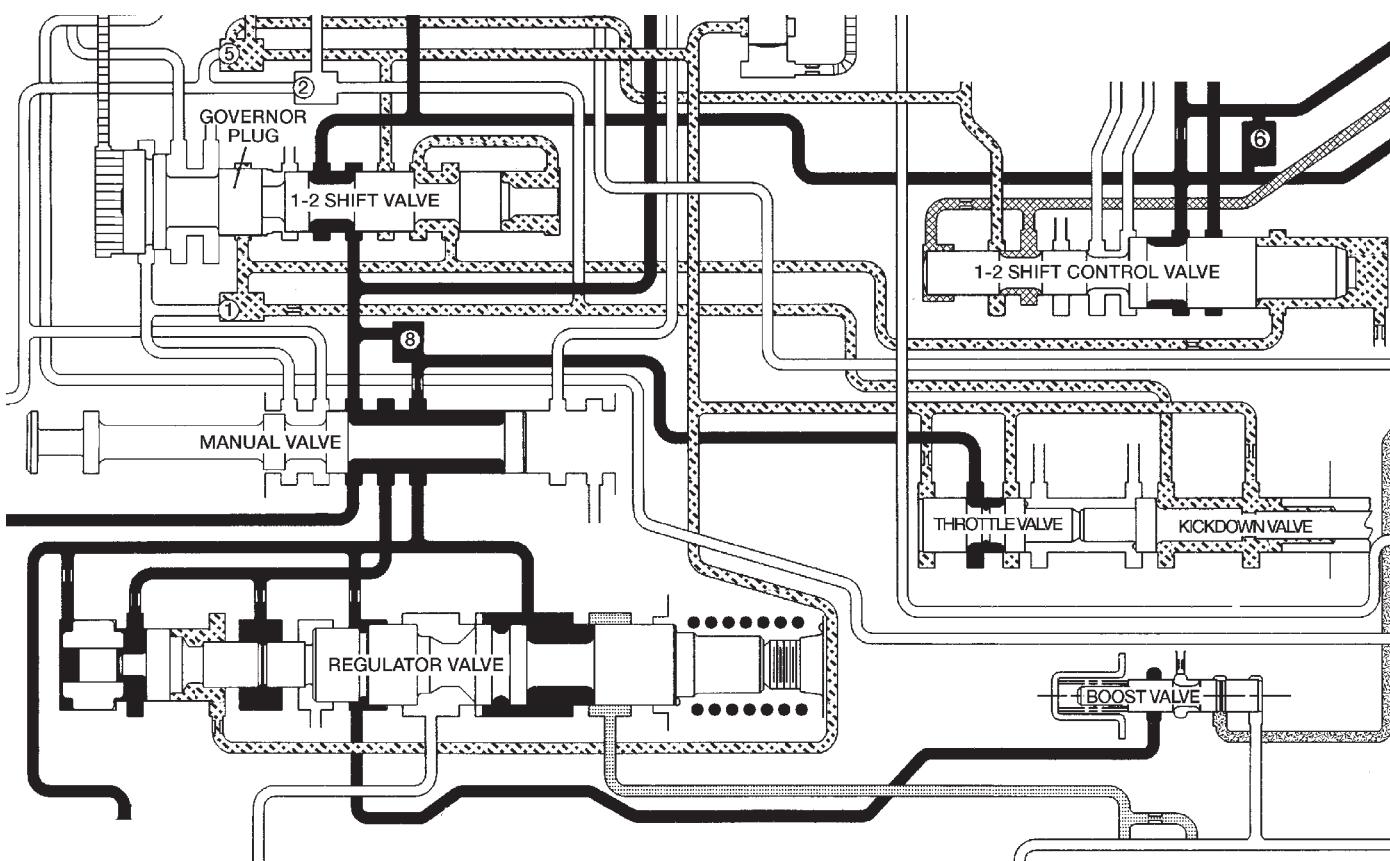
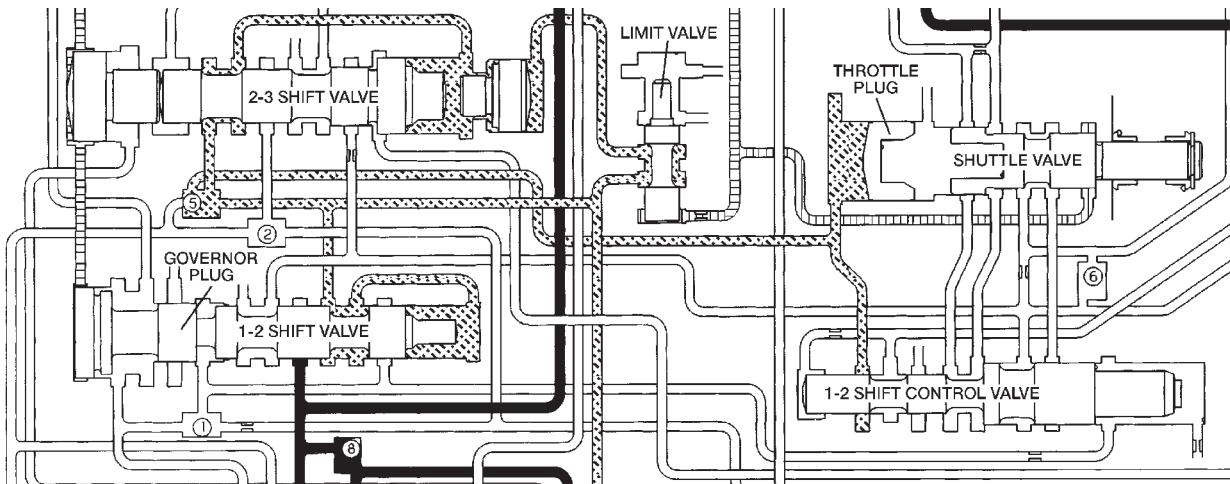


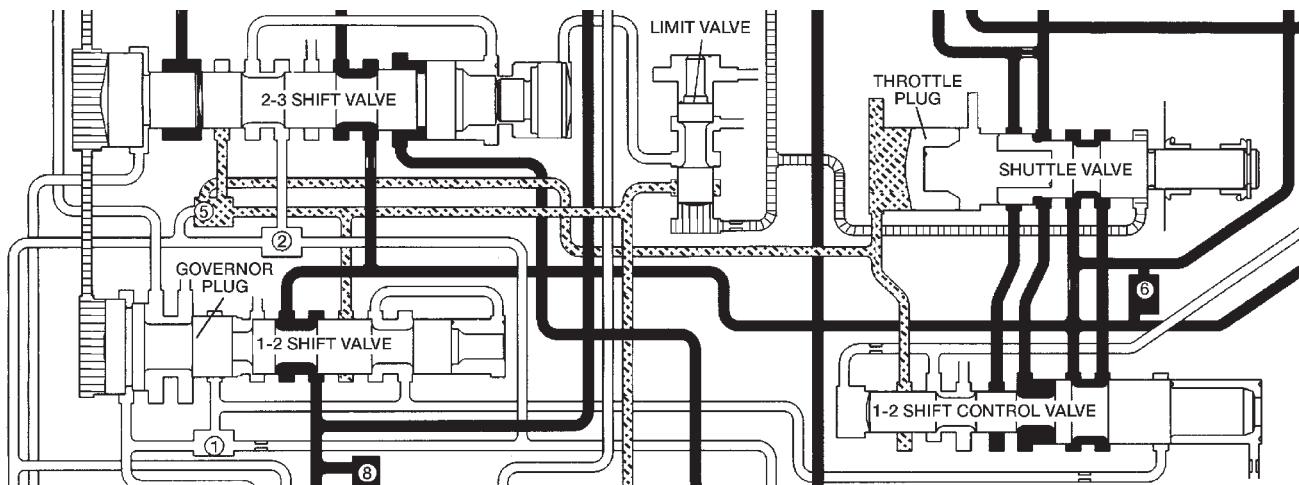
Fig. 26 Kickdown Valve—Wide Open Throttle

80c07141

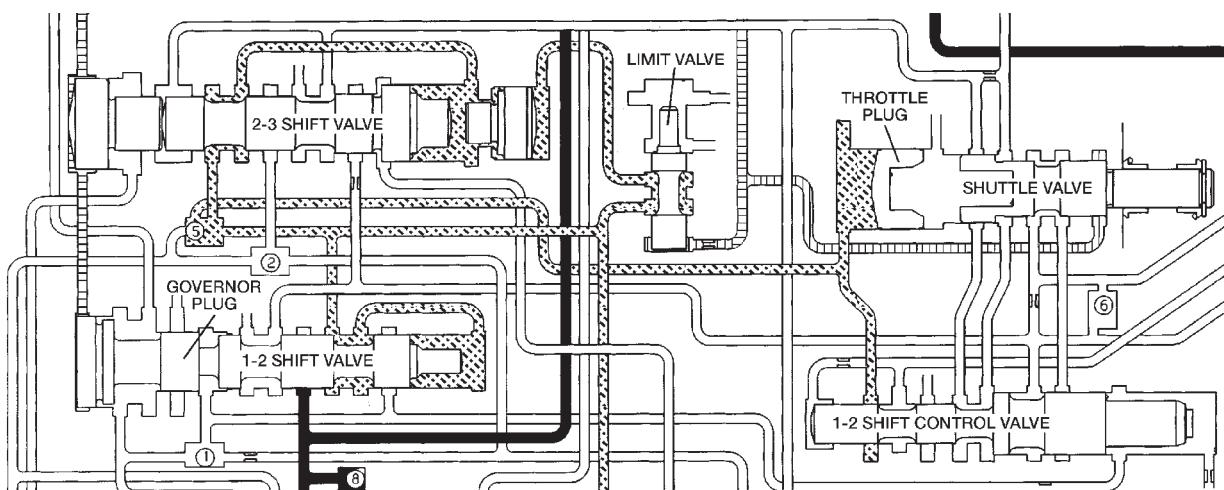
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c07142

Fig. 27 Kickdown Limit Valve-Low Speeds

80c07143

Fig. 28 Kickdown Limit Valve-High Speeds

80c07144

Fig. 29 1-2 Shift Valve-Before Shift

When governor pressure builds to a point where it can overcome the combined force of the spring and throttle pressure on the other side of the valve, the valve will begin to move over to the right. As the

valve moves to the right, the middle land of the valve will close off the circuit supplying the throttle pressure to the right side of the valve. When the throttle pressure is closed off, the valve will move even far-

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

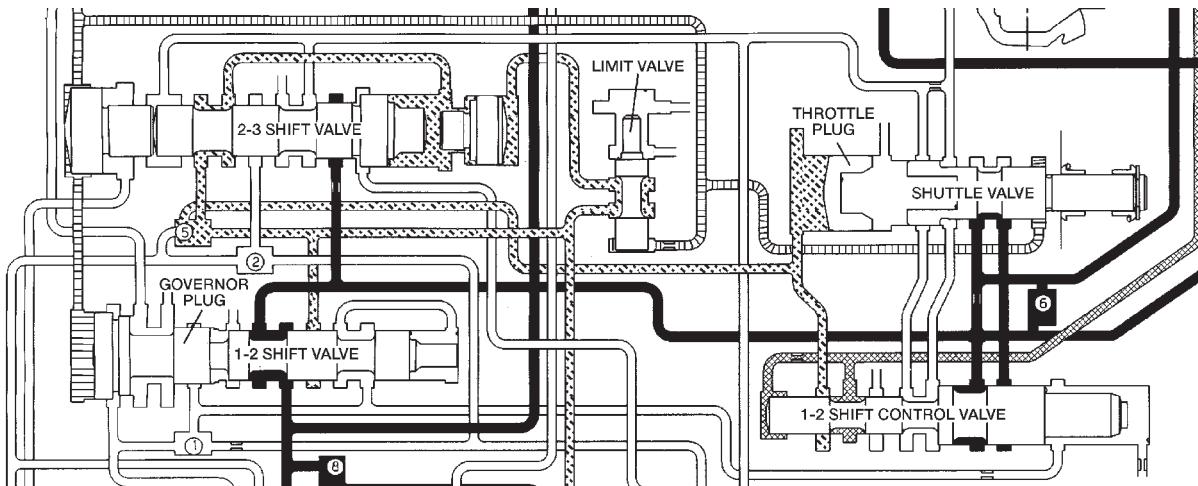


Fig. 30 1-2 Shift Valve-After Shift

80c07145

ther to the right, allowing line pressure to enter another circuit and energize the front servo, applying the front band (Fig. 30).

The governor plug serves a dual purpose:

- It allows the shift valves to move either left or right, allowing both upshifts and downshifts.
- When in a manual selection position, it will be hydraulically "blocked" into position so no upshift can occur.

The physical blocking of the upshift while in the manual "1" position is accomplished by the directing of line pressure between both lands of the governor plug. The line pressure reacts against the larger land of the plug, pushing the plug back against the end plate overcoming governor pressure. With the combination of the line pressure and spring pressure, the valve cannot move, preventing any upshift.

1-2 SHIFT CONTROL VALVE

It contains a valve with four lands and a spring. It is used as both a "relay" and "balanced" valve.

The valve has two specific operations (Fig. 31):

- Aid in quality of the 1-2 upshift.
- Aid in the quality and timing of the 3-2 kickdown ranges.

When the manual valve is set to the Drive position and the transmission is in the first or second gear range, 1-2 shift control or "modulated throttle pressure" is supplied to the middle of the accumulator piston by the 1-2 shift control valve. During the 1-2 upshift, this pressure is used to control the kickdown servo apply pressure that is needed to apply the kickdown and accumulator pistons. Thus, the 1-2 shift point is "cushioned" and the quality is improved. During a WOT kickdown, kickdown pressure is applied between the kickdown valve and the 1-2 shift control valve. This additional pressure is directed to the 1-2 shift control's spring cavity, adding to the spring load on the valve. The result of this

increased "modulated" throttle pressure is a firmer WOT upshift.

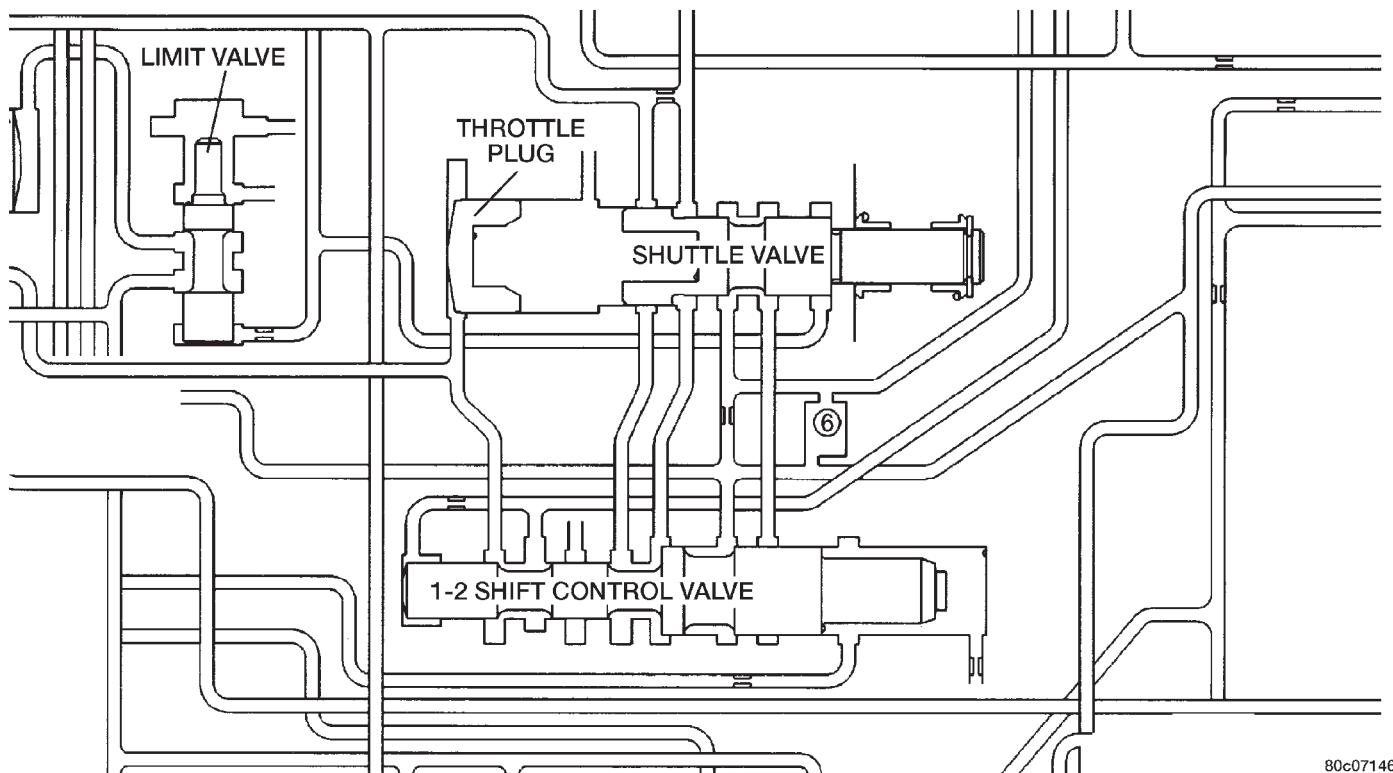
2-3 SHIFT VALVE

The 2-3 shift valve mechanism (Fig. 32) consists of the 2-3 shift valve, governor plug and spring, and a throttle plug. After the 1-2 shift valve has completed its operation and applied the front band, line pressure is directed to the 2-3 shift valve through the connecting passages from the 1-2 shift valve. The line pressure will then dead-end at land #2 until the 2-3 valve is ready to make its shift. Now that the vehicle is in motion and under acceleration, there is throttle pressure being applied to the spring side of the valve and between lands #3 and #4.

As vehicle speed increases, governor pressure increases proportionately, until it becomes great enough to overcome the combined throttle and spring pressure on the right side of the valve. When this happens, the governor plug is forced against the shift valve moving it to the right. The shift valve causes land #4 to close the passage supplying throttle pressure to the 2-3 shift valve. Without throttle pressure present in the circuit now, the governor plug will push the valve over far enough to bottom the valve in its bore. This allows land #2 to direct line pressure to the front clutch.

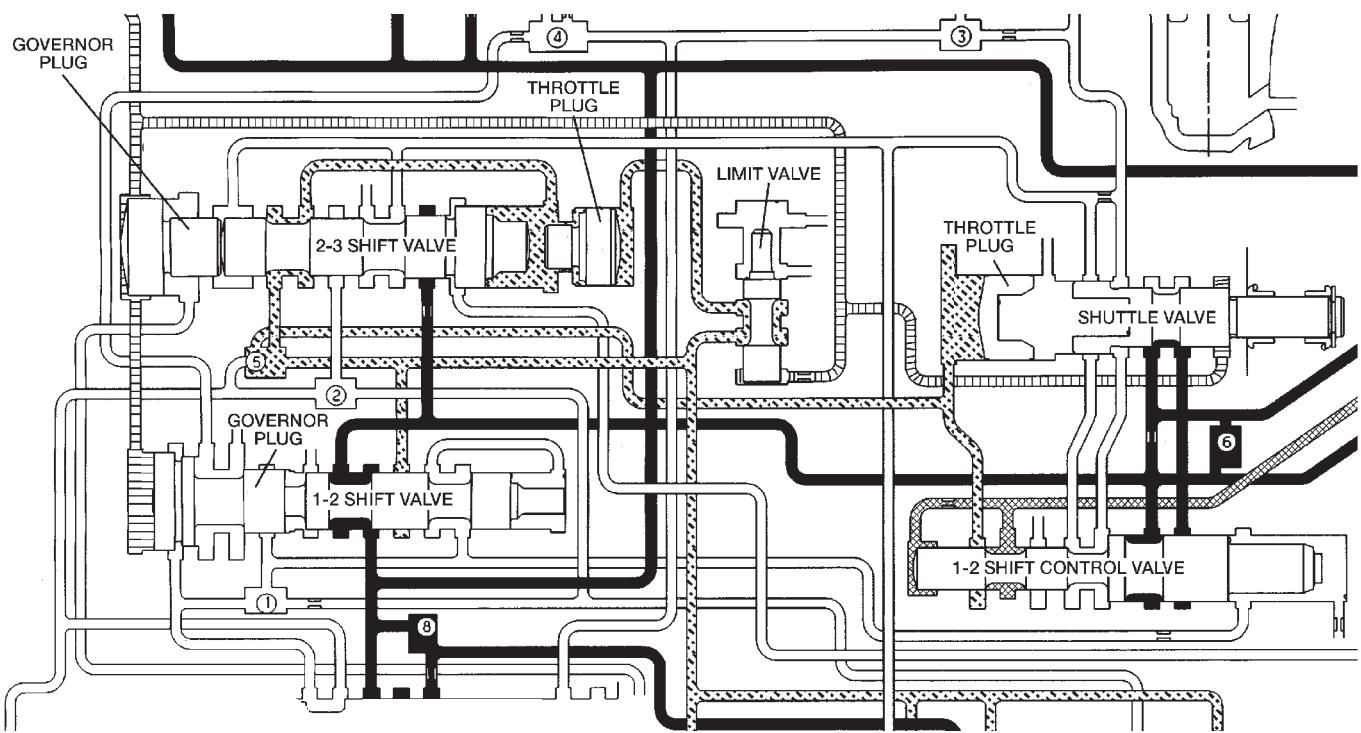
After the shift (Fig. 33), line pressure is directed to the land between the shift valve and the governor plug, and to the release side of the kickdown servo. This releases the front band and applies the front clutch, shifting into third gear or direct drive. The rear clutch remains applied, as it has been in the other gears. During a manual "1" or manual "2" gear selection, line pressure is sent between the two lands of the 2-3 governor plug. This line pressure at the governor plug locks the shift valve into the second gear position, preventing an upshift into direct drive. The theory for the blocking of the valve is the same as that of the 1-2 shift valve.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c07146

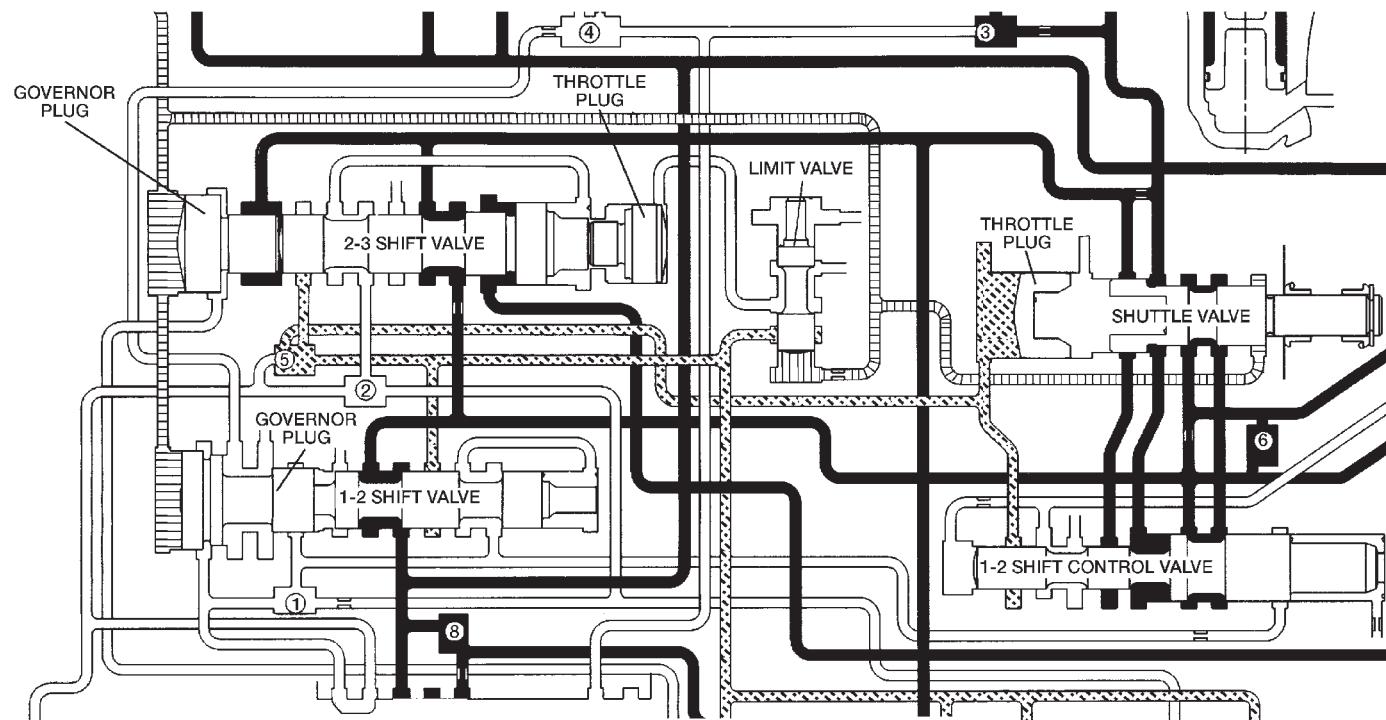
Fig. 31 1-2 Shift Control Valve



80c07147

Fig. 32 2-3 Shift Valve-Before Shift

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



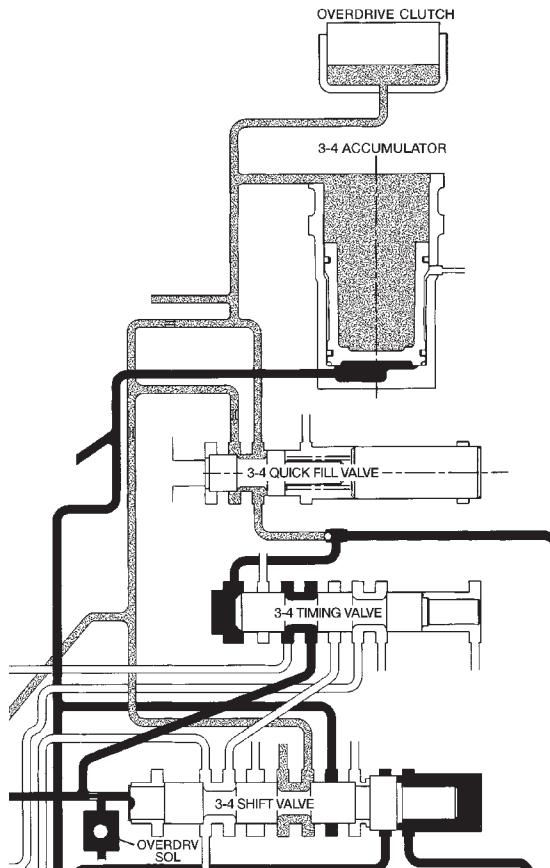
80c07148

*Fig. 33 2-3 Shift Valve-After Shift***3-4 SHIFT VALVE**

The PCM energizes the overdrive solenoid during the 3-4 upshift (Fig. 34). This causes the solenoid check ball to close the vent port allowing line pressure from the 2-3 shift valve to act directly on the 3-4 upshift valve. Line pressure on the 3-4 shift valve overcomes valve spring pressure moving the valve to the upshift position (Fig. 35). This action exposes the feed passages to the 3-4 timing valve, 3-4 quick fill valve, 3-4 accumulator, and ultimately to the overdrive piston.

3-4 TIMING VALVE

The 3-4 timing valve is moved by line pressure coming through the 3-4 shift valve (Fig. 36). The timing valve holds the 2-3 shift valve in an upshift position. The purpose is to prevent the 2-3 valve from up or downshifting before the 3-4 valve (Fig. 37).



80c0714d

Fig. 34 3-4 Shift Valve Before Shift

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

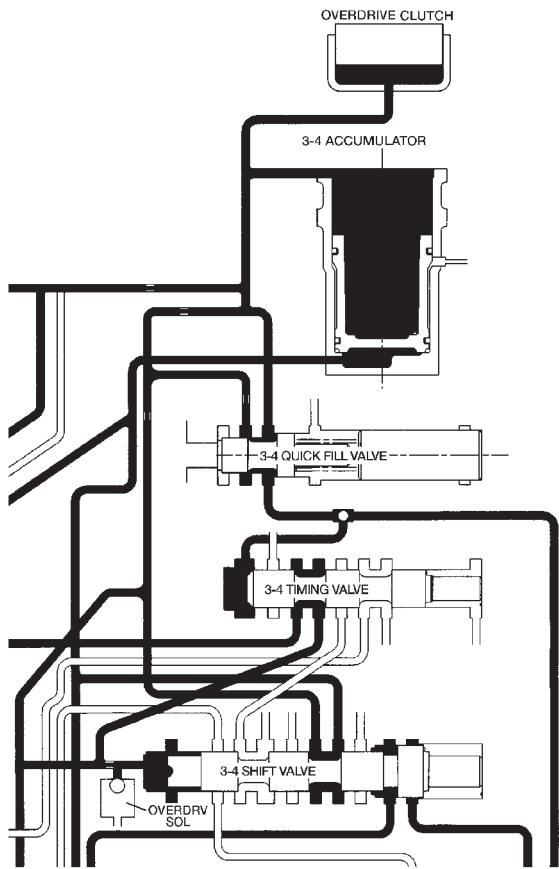


Fig. 35 3-4 Shift Valve After Shift

80c0714e

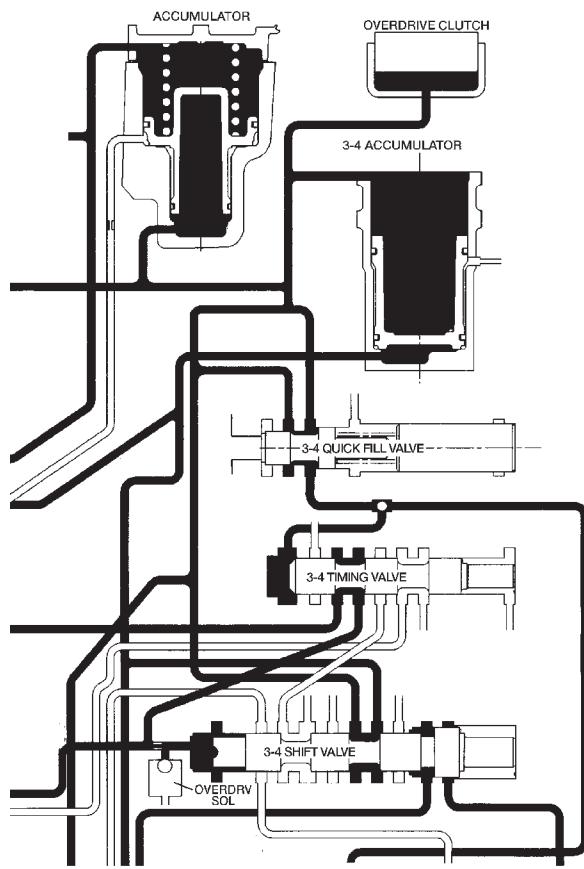
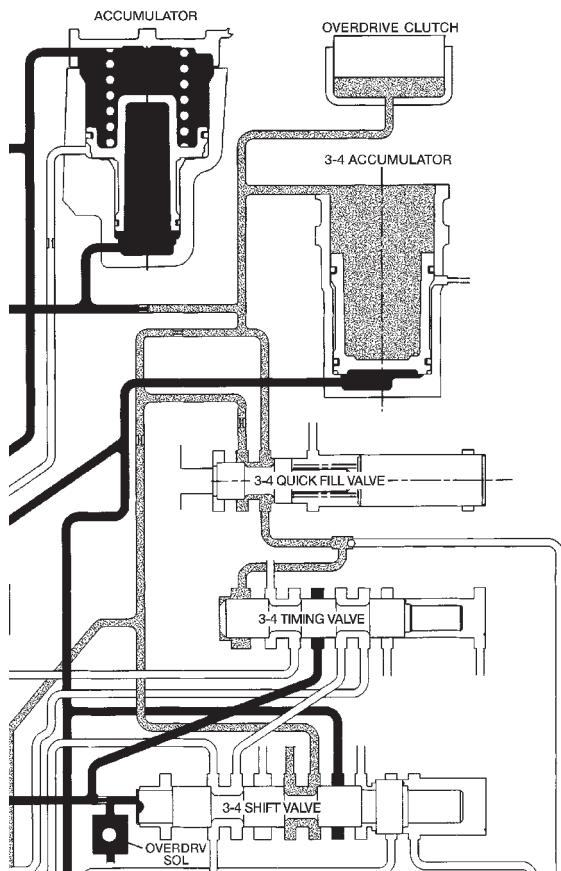


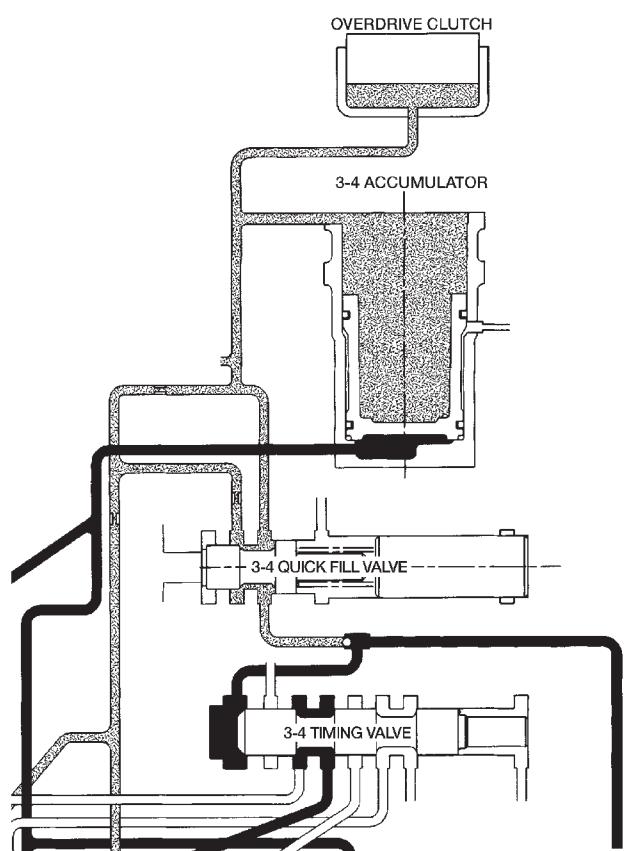
Fig. 36 3-4 Timing Valve Allowing 4-3 Shift

80c0714f

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

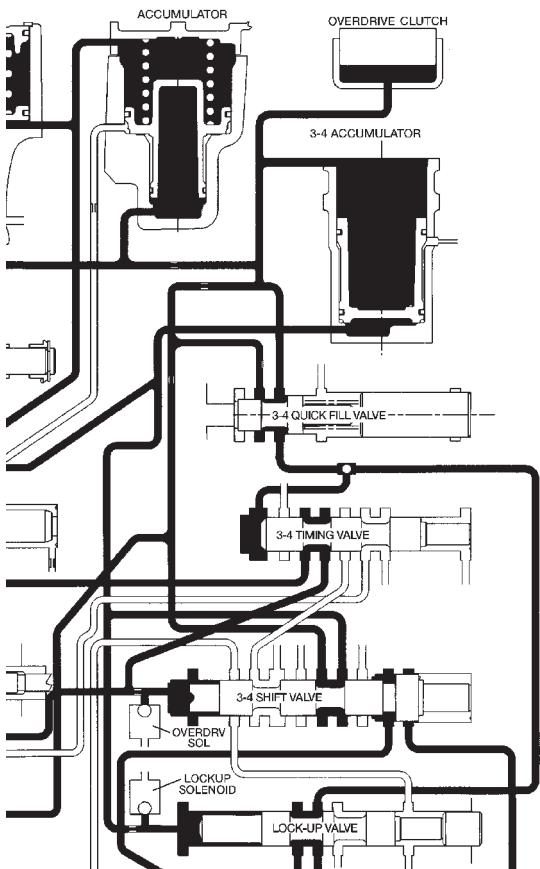
**Fig. 37 3-4 Timing Valve Allowing 3-2 Shift****3-4 QUICK FILL VALVE**

The 3-4 quick fill valve provides faster engagement of the overdrive clutch during 3-4 upshifts. The valve temporarily bypasses the clutch piston feed orifice at the start of a 3-4 upshift (Fig. 39). This exposes a larger passage into the piston retainer resulting in a much faster clutch fill and apply sequence. The quick fill valve does not bypass the regular clutch feed orifice throughout the 3-4 upshift. Instead, once a predetermined pressure develops within the clutch, the valve closes the bypass. Clutch fill is then completed through the regular feed orifice.

**Fig. 38 3-4 Quick Fill Valve Before Shift****THROTTLE VALVE**

In all gear positions the throttle valve (Fig. 40) is being supplied with line pressure. The throttle valve meters and reduces the line pressure that now becomes throttle pressure. The throttle valve is moved by a spring and the kickdown valve, which is mechanically connected to the throttle. The larger the throttle opening, the higher the throttle pressure (to a maximum of line pressure). The smaller the throttle opening, the lower the throttle pressure (to a minimum of zero at idle). As engine speed increases, the increase in pump speed increases pump output. The increase in pressure and volume must be regulated to maintain the balance within the transmission. To do this, throttle pressure is routed to the reaction area on the right side of the throttle pressure plug (in the regulator valve).

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

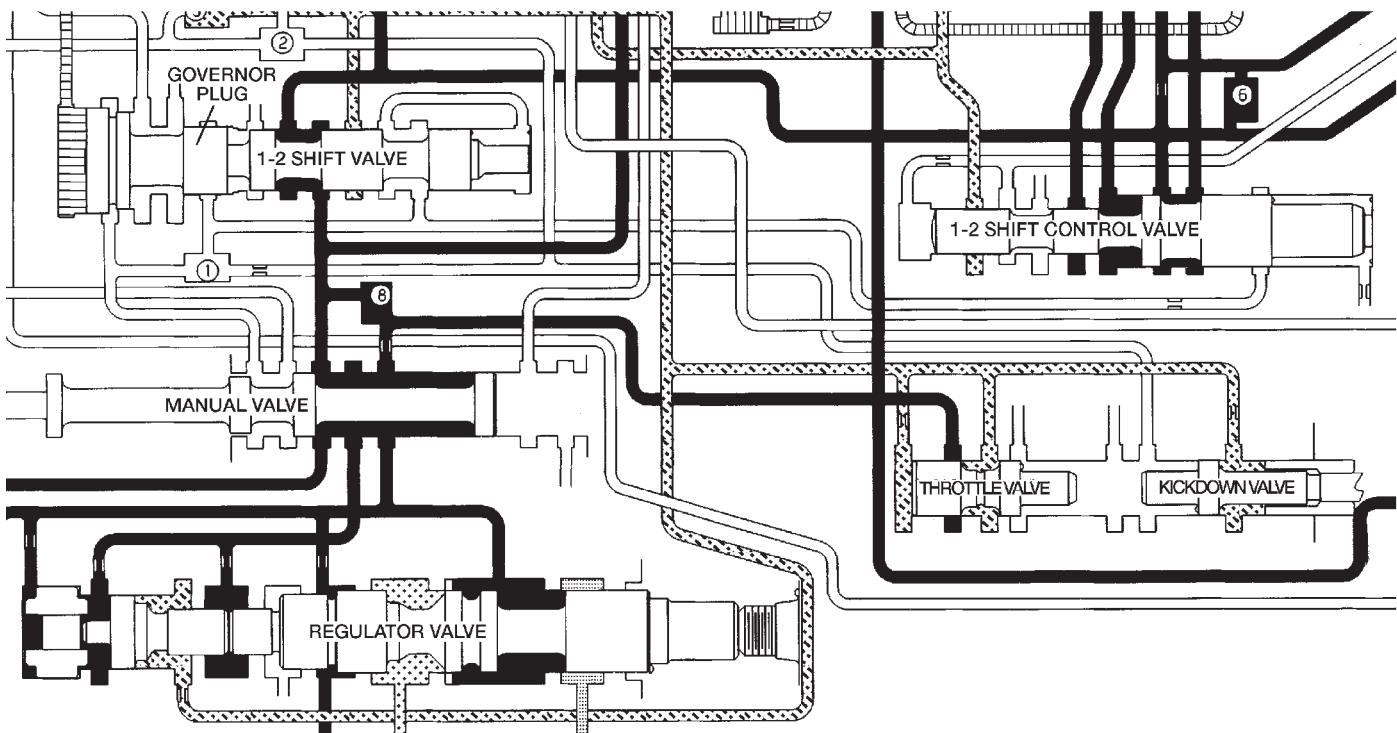


80c07154

Fig. 39 3-4 Quick Fill Valve After Shift

The higher engine speed and line pressure would open the vent too far and reduce line pressure too much. Throttle pressure, which increases with engine speed (throttle opening), is used to oppose the movement of the pressure valve to help control the metering passage at the vent. The throttle pressure is combined with spring pressure to reduce the force of the throttle pressure plug on the pressure valve. The larger spring at the right closes the regulator valve passage and maintains or increases line pressure. The increased line pressure works against the reaction area of the line pressure plug and the reaction area left of land #3 simultaneously moves the regulator valve train to the right and controls the metering passage.

The kickdown valve, along with the throttle valve, serve to delay upshifts until the correct vehicle and engine speed have been reached. It also controls downshifts upon driver demand, or increased engine load. If these valves were not in place, the shift points would be at the same speed for all throttle positions. The kickdown valve is actuated by a cam connected to the throttle. This is accomplished through either a linkage or a cable. The cam forces the kickdown valve toward the throttle valve compressing the spring between them and moving the throttle valve. As the throttle valve land starts to uncover its port, line pressure is "metered" out into the circuits and viewed as throttle pressure. This



80c07149

Fig. 40 Throttle Valve

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

increased throttle pressure is metered out into the circuits it is applied to: the 1-2 and 2-3 shift valves. When the throttle pressure is high enough, a 3-2 downshift will occur. If the vehicle speed is low enough, a 2-1 downshift will occur.

SWITCH VALVE

When the transmission is in Drive Second just before the TCC application occurs (Fig. 41), the pressure regulator valve is supplying torque converter pressure to the switch valve. The switch valve directs

this pressure through the transmission input shaft, into the converter, through the converter, back out between the input shaft and the reaction shaft, and back up to the switch valve. From the switch valve, the fluid pressure is directed to the transmission cooler, and lubrication pressure returns from the cooler to lubricate different portions of the transmission.

Once the TCC control valve has moved to the left (Fig. 42), line pressure is directed to the tip of the switch valve, forcing the valve to the right. The

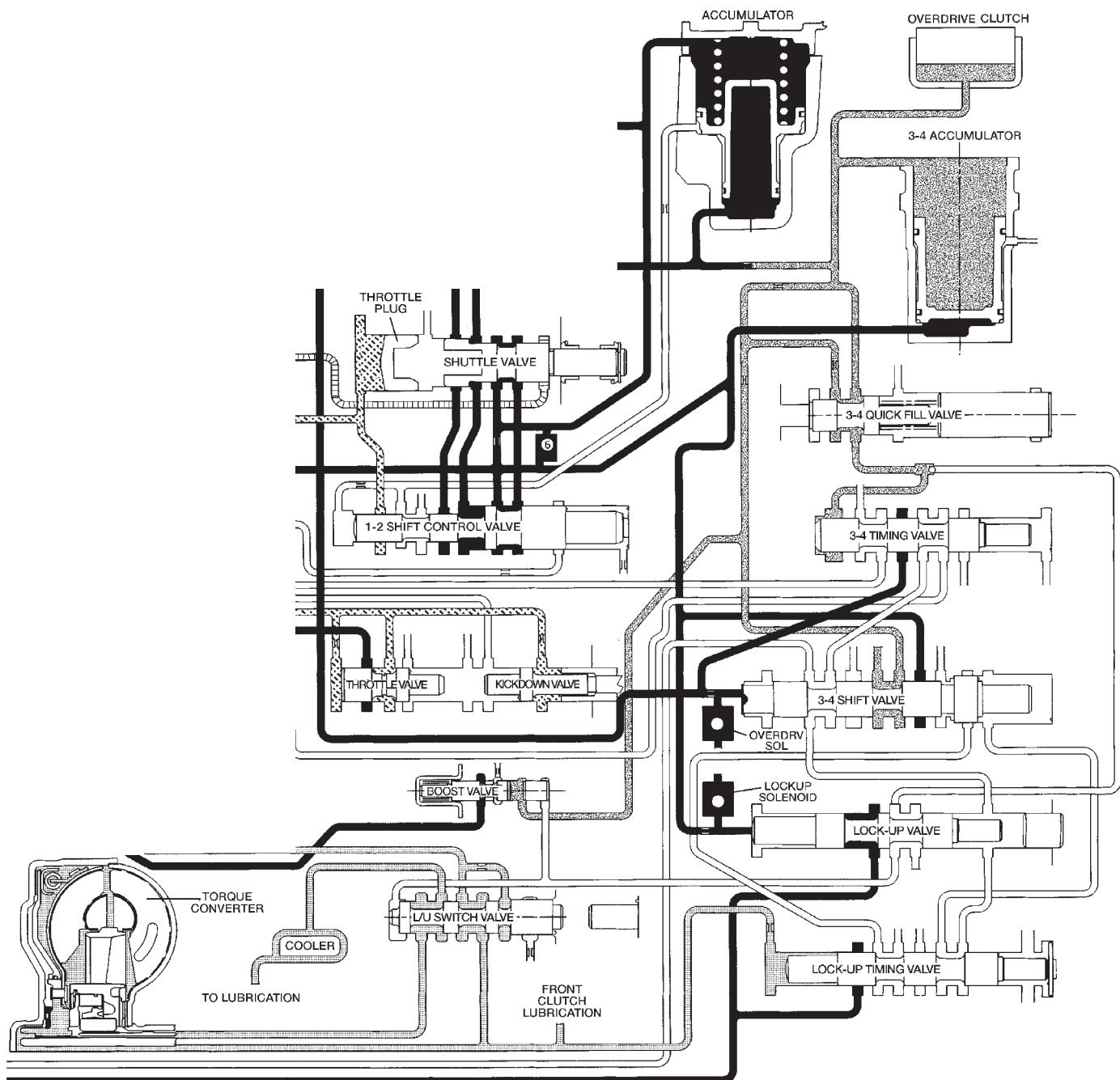


Fig. 41 Switch Valve-Torque Converter Unlocked

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

switch valve now vents oil from the front of the piston in the torque converter, and supplies line pressure to the (rear) apply side of the torque converter piston. This pressure differential causes the piston to apply against the friction material, cutting off any further flow of line pressure oil. After the switch valve is shuttled right allowing line pressure to engage the TCC, torque converter pressure is directed past the switch valve into the transmission cooler and lubrication circuits.

MANUAL VALVE

The manual valve (Fig. 43) is a relay valve. The purpose of the manual valve is to direct fluid to the correct circuit needed for a specific gear or driving range. The manual valve, as the name implies, is manually operated by the driver with a lever located on the side of the valve body. The valve is connected mechanically by either a cable or linkage to the gear-shift mechanism. The valve is held in each of its

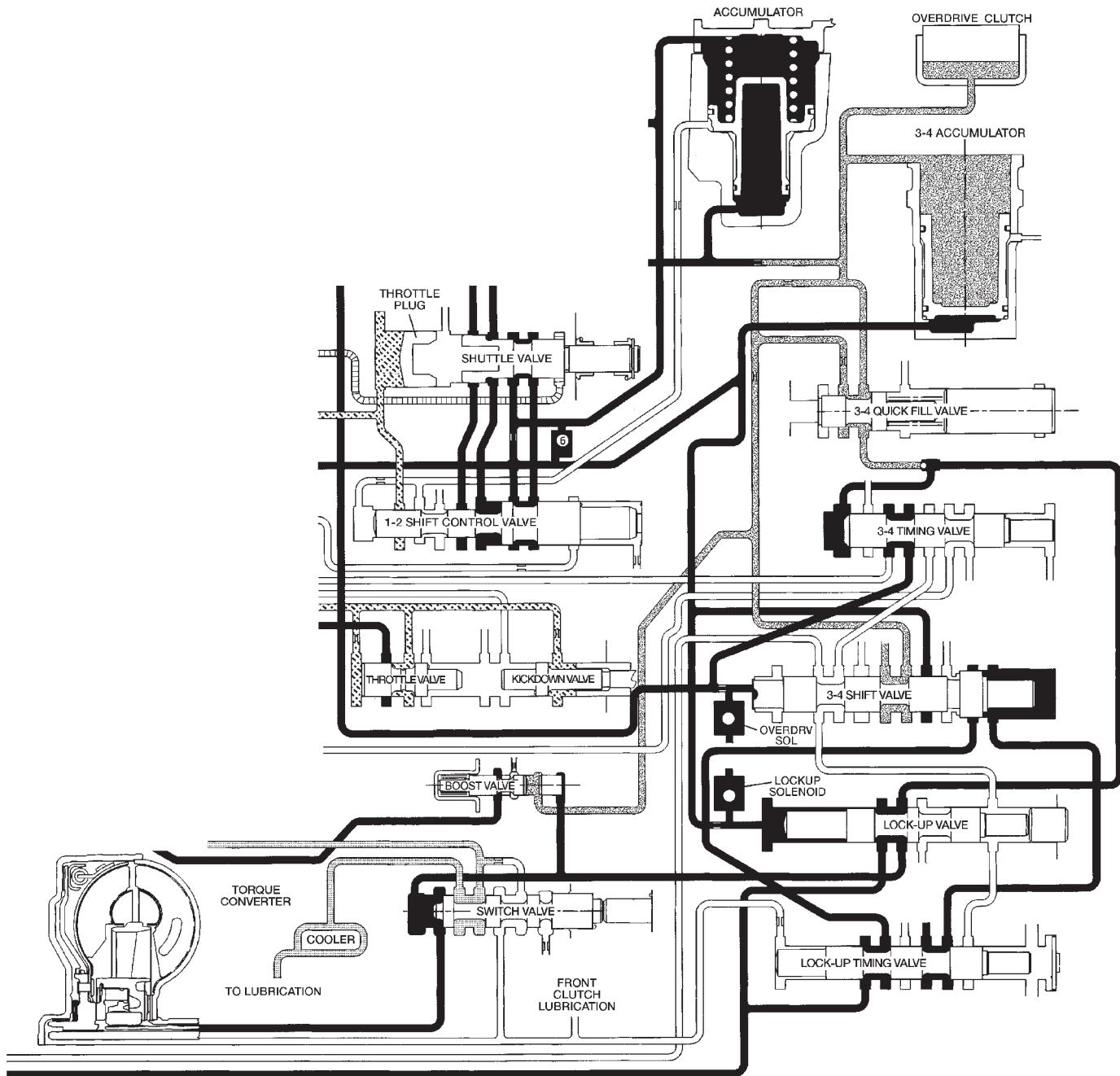
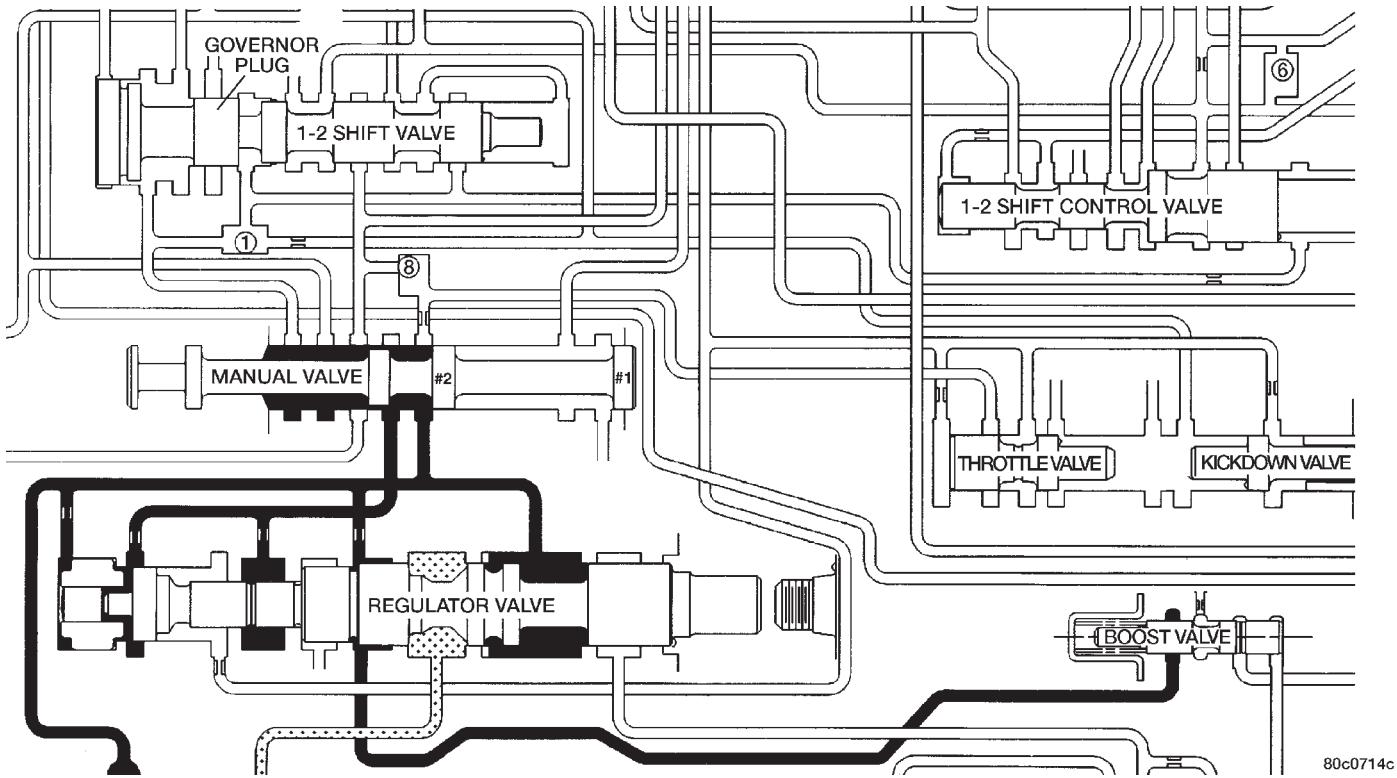


Fig. 42 Switch Valve-Torque Converter Locked

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

**Fig. 43 Manual Valve**

positions by a spring-loaded roller or ball that engages the "roostercomb" of the manual valve.

CONVERTER CLUTCH LOCK-UP VALVE

The torque converter clutch (TCC) lock-up valve controls the back (ON) side of the torque converter clutch. When the PCM energizes the TCC solenoid to engage the converter clutch piston, pressure is applied to the TCC lock-up valve which moves to the right and applies pressure to the torque converter clutch.

CONVERTER CLUTCH LOCK-UP TIMING VALVE

The torque converter clutch (TCC) lock-up timing valve is there to block any 4-3 downshift until the TCC is completely unlocked and the clutch is disengaged.

SHUTTLE VALVE

The assembly is contained in a bore in the valve body above the shift valves. When the manual valve is positioned in the Drive range, throttle pressure acts on the throttle plug of the shuttle valve (Fig. 31) to move it against a spring, increasing the spring force on the shuttle valve. During a part or full throttle 1-2 upshift, the throttle plug is bottomed by throttle pressure, holding the shuttle valve to the right against governor pressure, and opening a

by-pass circuit. The shuttle valve controls the quality of the kickdown shift by restricting the rate of fluid discharge from the front clutch and servo release circuits. During a 3-2 kickdown, fluid discharges through the shuttle by-pass circuit. When the shuttle valve closes the by-pass circuit, fluid discharge is restricted and controlled for the application of the front band. During a 2-3 "lift foot" upshift, the shuttle valve by-passes the restriction to allow full fluid flow through the by-pass groove for a faster release of the band.

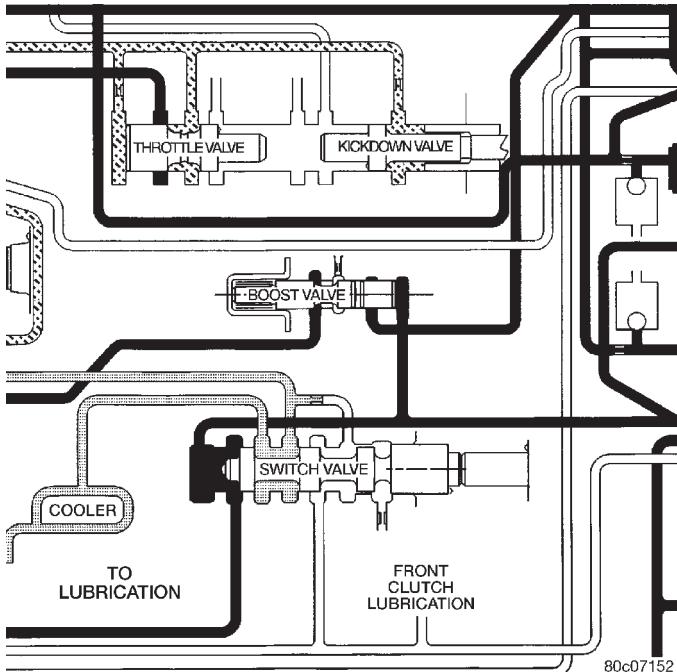
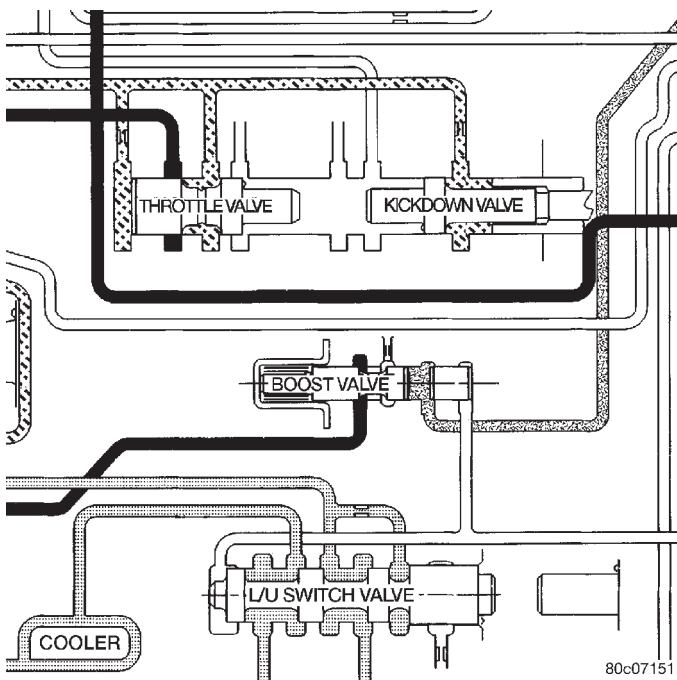
BOOST VALVE

The boost valve (Fig. 44) provides increased fluid apply pressure to the overdrive clutch during 3-4 upshifts (Fig. 45), and when accelerating in fourth gear.

ACCUMULATOR**DESCRIPTION**

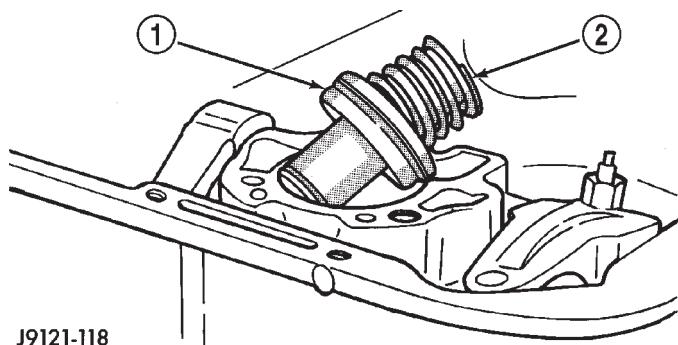
The accumulator (Fig. 46) is a hydraulic device that has the sole purpose of cushioning the application of a band or clutch. The accumulator consists of a dual-land piston and a spring located in a bore in the transmission case. The 3-4 accumulator is located in a housing attached to the side of the valve body (Fig. 47).

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

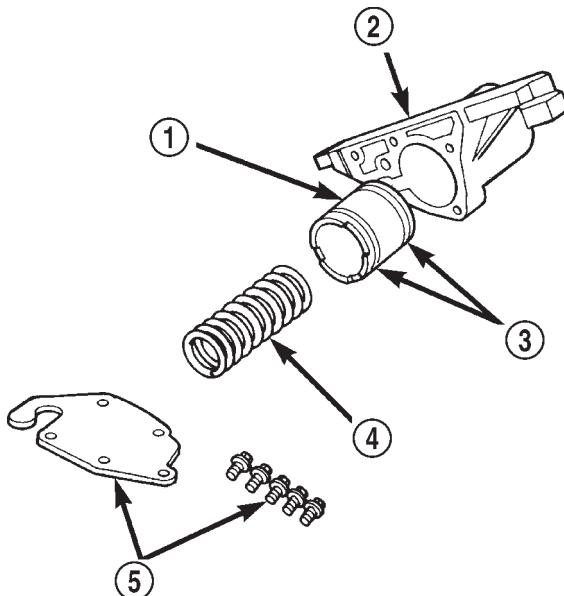


OPERATION

Both the accumulator and the 3-4 accumulator function the same. Line pressure is directed between the lands of the piston (Fig. 48), bottoming it against the accumulator plate. The accumulator stays in this position after the transmission is placed into a Drive position. When the 1-2 upshift occurs (Fig. 49), line pressure is directed to the large end of the piston and then to the kickdown servo. As the line pressure

**Fig. 46 Accumulator**

- 1 – ACCUMULATOR PISTON
2 – PISTON SPRING

**Fig. 47 3-4 Accumulator and Housing**

- 1 – ACCUMULATOR PISTON
2 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING
3 – TEFLOM SEALS
4 – PISTON SPRING
5 – COVER PLATE AND SCREWS

reaches the accumulator, the combination of spring pressure and line pressure forces the piston away from the accumulator plate. This causes a balanced pressure situation, which results in a cushioned band application. After the kickdown servo has become immovable, line pressure will finish pushing the accumulator up into its bore. When the large end of the accumulator piston is seated in its bore, the band or clutch is fully applied.

NOTE: The accumulator is shown in the inverted position for illustrative purposes.

**BOTTOMED
AGAINST ACCUMULATOR
PLATE**

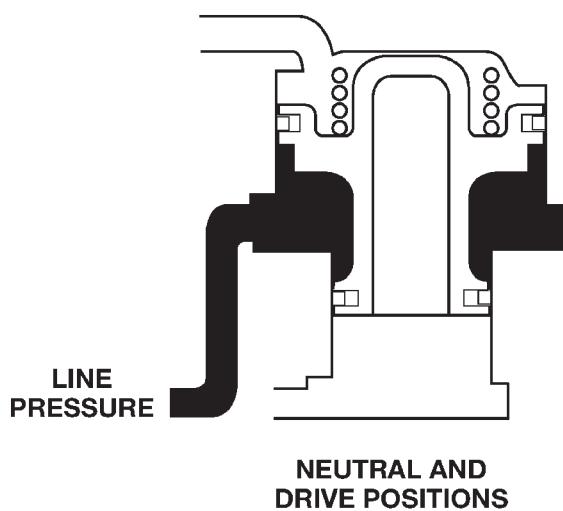


Fig. 48 Accumulator in Neutral and Drive Positions

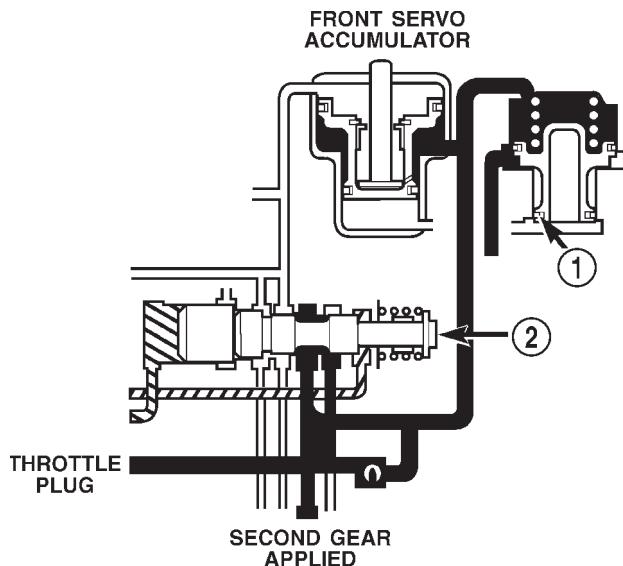


Fig. 49 Accumulator in Second Gear Position

- 1 - BOTTOM IN BORE
2 - SHUTTLE VALVE

PISTONS

DESCRIPTION

There are several sizes and types of pistons used in an automatic transmission. Some pistons are used to apply clutches, while others are used to apply bands. They all have in common the fact that they are round or circular in shape, located within a smooth walled cylinder, which is closed at one end and converts fluid pressure into mechanical movement. The

fluid pressure exerted on the piston is contained within the system through the use of piston rings or seals.

OPERATION

The principal which makes this operation possible is known as Pascal's Law. Pascal's Law can be stated as: "Pressure on a confined fluid is transmitted equally in all directions and acts with equal force on equal areas."

PRESSURE

Pressure (Fig. 50) is nothing more than force (lbs.) divided by area (in or ft.), or force per unit area. Given a 100 lb. block and an area of 100 sq. in. on the floor, the pressure exerted by the block is: 100 lbs. 100 in or 1 pound per square inch, or PSI as it is commonly referred to.

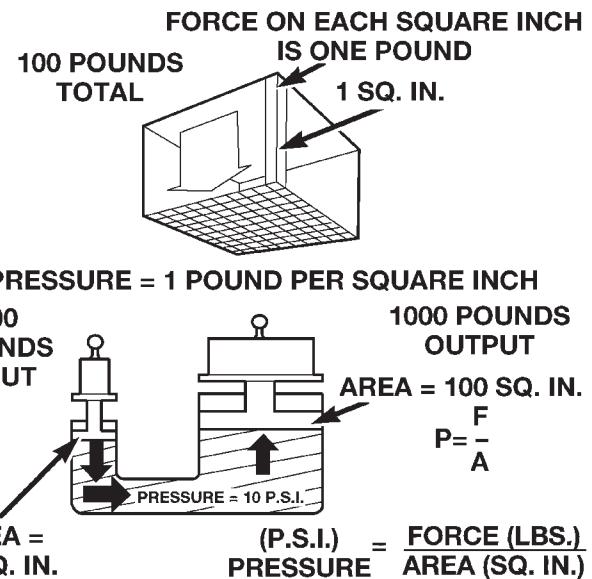


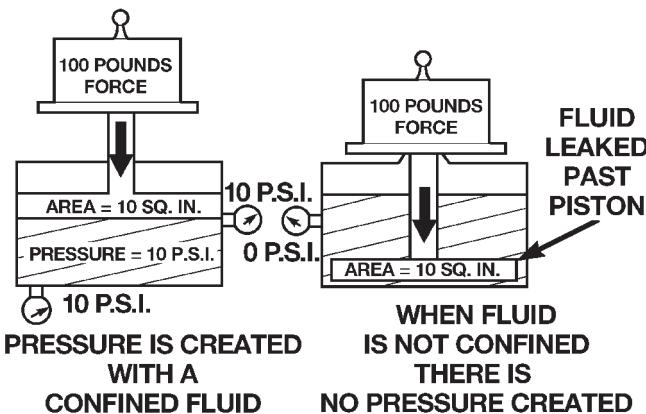
Fig. 50 Force and Pressure Relationship

PRESSURE ON A CONFINED FLUID

Pressure is exerted on a confined fluid (Fig. 51) by applying a force to some given area in contact with the fluid. A good example of this is a cylinder filled with fluid and equipped with a piston that is closely fitted to the cylinder wall. If a force is applied to the piston, pressure will be developed in the fluid. Of course, no pressure will be created if the fluid is not confined. It will simply "leak" past the piston. There must be a resistance to flow in order to create pressure. Piston sealing is extremely important in hydraulic operation. Several kinds of seals are used to accomplish this within a transmission. These include but are not limited to O-rings, D-rings, lip seals, sealing rings, or extremely close tolerances

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

between the piston and the cylinder wall. The force exerted is downward (gravity), however, the principle remains the same no matter which direction is taken. The pressure created in the fluid is equal to the force applied, divided by the piston area. If the force is 100 lbs., and the piston area is 10 sq. in., then the pressure created equals 10 PSI. Another interpretation of Pascal's Law is that regardless of container shape or size, the pressure will be maintained throughout, as long as the fluid is confined. In other words, the pressure in the fluid is the same everywhere within the container.



80bfe273

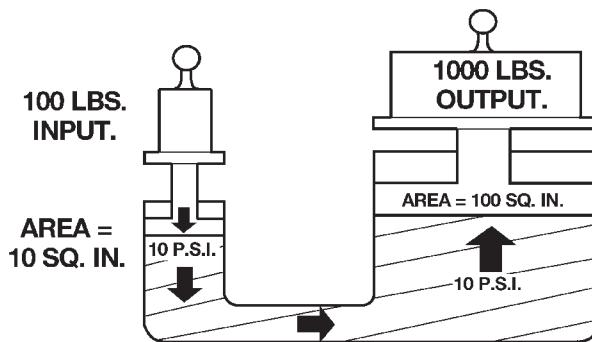
Fig. 51 Pressure on a Confined Fluid

FORCE MULTIPLICATION

Using the 10 PSI example used in the illustration (Fig. 52), a force of 1000 lbs. can be moved with a force of only 100 lbs. The secret of force multiplication in hydraulic systems is the total fluid contact area employed. The illustration, (Fig. 52), shows an area that is ten times larger than the original area. The pressure created with the smaller 100 lb. input is 10 PSI. The concept "pressure is the same everywhere" means that the pressure underneath the larger piston is also 10 PSI. Pressure is equal to the force applied divided by the contact area. Therefore, by means of simple algebra, the output force may be found. This concept is extremely important, as it is also used in the design and operation of all shift valves and limiting valves in the valve body, as well as the pistons, of the transmission, which activate the clutches and bands. It is nothing more than using a difference of area to create a difference in pressure to move an object.

PISTON TRAVEL

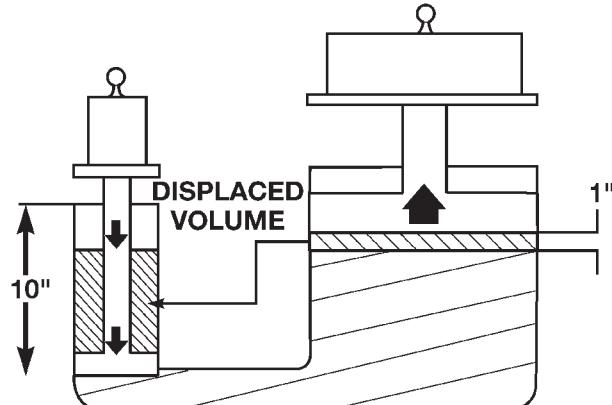
The relationship between hydraulic lever and a mechanical lever is the same. With a mechanical lever it's a weight-to-distance output rather than a pressure-to-area output. Using the same forces and areas as in the previous example, the smaller piston



80bfe274

Fig. 52 Force Multiplication

(Fig. 53) has to move ten times the distance required to move the larger piston one inch. Therefore, for every inch the larger piston moves, the smaller piston moves ten inches. This principle is true in other instances also. A common garage floor jack is a good example. To raise a car weighing 2000 lbs., an effort of only 100 lbs. may be required. For every inch the car moves upward, the input piston at the jack handle must move 20 inches downward.



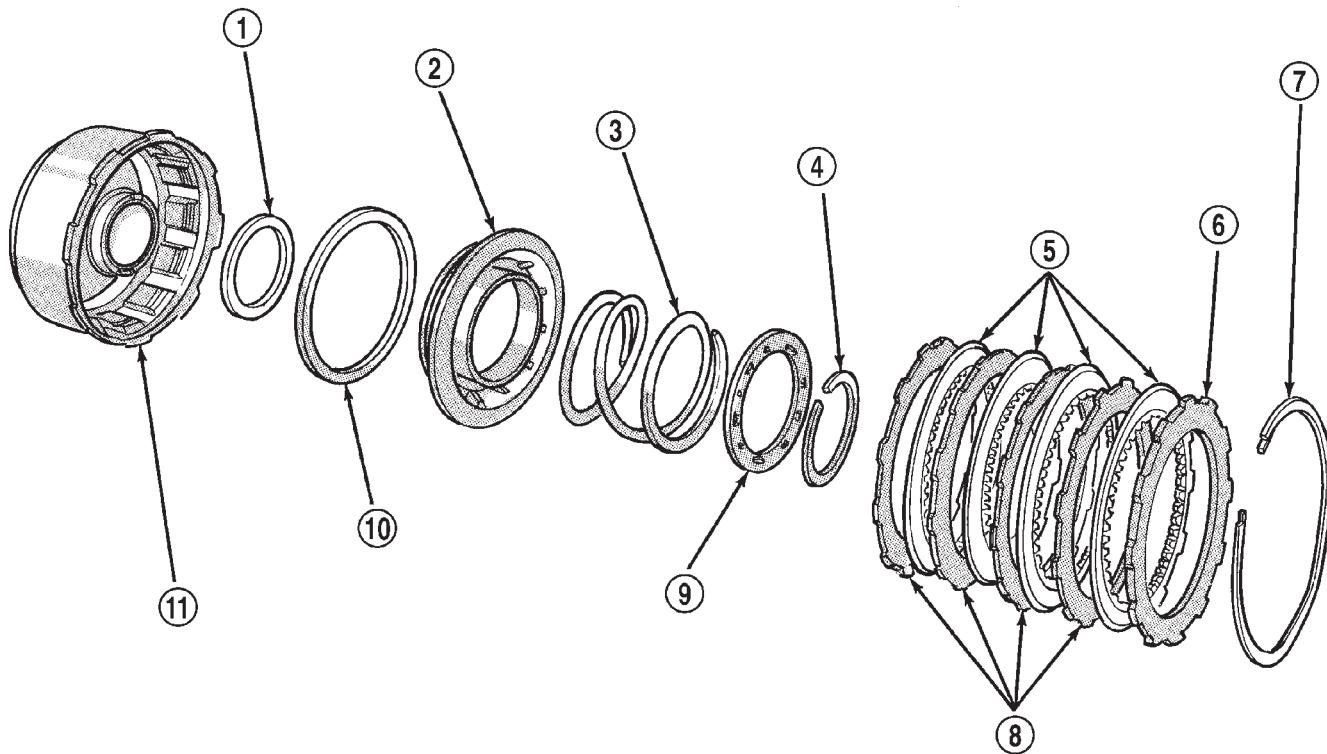
80bfe275

Fig. 53 Piston Travel

FRONT CLUTCH

DESCRIPTION

The front clutch assembly (Fig. 54) is composed of the front clutch retainer, pressure plate, four clutch plates, four driving discs, piston, piston return



J9321-222

Fig. 54 Front Clutch

- 1 – RETAINER HUB SEAL
- 2 – CLUTCH PISTON
- 3 – PISTON SPRING
- 4 – SPRING RETAINER SNAP RING
- 5 – CLUTCH DISCS
- 6 – PRESSURE PLATE

- 7 – SNAP RING (WAVED)
- 8 – CLUTCH PLATES
- 9 – SPRING RETAINER
- 10 – PISTON SEAL
- 11 – FRONT CLUTCH RETAINER

spring, return spring retainer, and snap rings. The front clutch is the forwardmost component in the transmission geartrain and is directly behind the oil pump and is considered a driving component.

NOTE: The number of discs and plates may vary with each engine and vehicle combination.

OPERATION

To apply the clutch, pressure is applied between the clutch retainer and piston. The fluid pressure is provided by the oil pump, transferred through the control valves and passageways, and enters the clutch through the hub of the reaction shaft support. With pressure applied between the clutch retainer and piston, the piston moves away from the clutch retainer and compresses the clutch pack. This action applies the clutch pack, allowing torque to flow through the input shaft into the driving discs, and into the clutch plates and pressure plate that are

lugged to the clutch retainer. The waved snap ring is used to cushion the application of the clutch pack. In some transmissions, the snap ring is selective and used to adjust clutch pack clearance.

When pressure is released from the piston, the spring returns the piston to its fully released position and disengages the clutch. The release spring also helps to cushion the application of the clutch assembly. When the clutch is in the process of being released by the release spring, fluid flows through a vent and one-way ball-check-valve located in the clutch retainer. The check-valve is needed to eliminate the possibility of plate drag caused by centrifugal force acting on the residual fluid trapped in the clutch piston retainer.

REAR CLUTCH

DESCRIPTION

The rear clutch assembly (Fig. 55) is composed of the rear clutch retainer, pressure plate, three clutch

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

plates, four driving discs, piston, Belleville spring, and snap rings. The Belleville spring acts as a lever to multiply the force applied on to it by the apply piston. The increased apply force on the rear clutch pack, in comparison to the front clutch pack, is needed to hold against the greater torque load imposed onto the rear pack. The rear clutch is directly behind the front clutch and is considered a driving component.

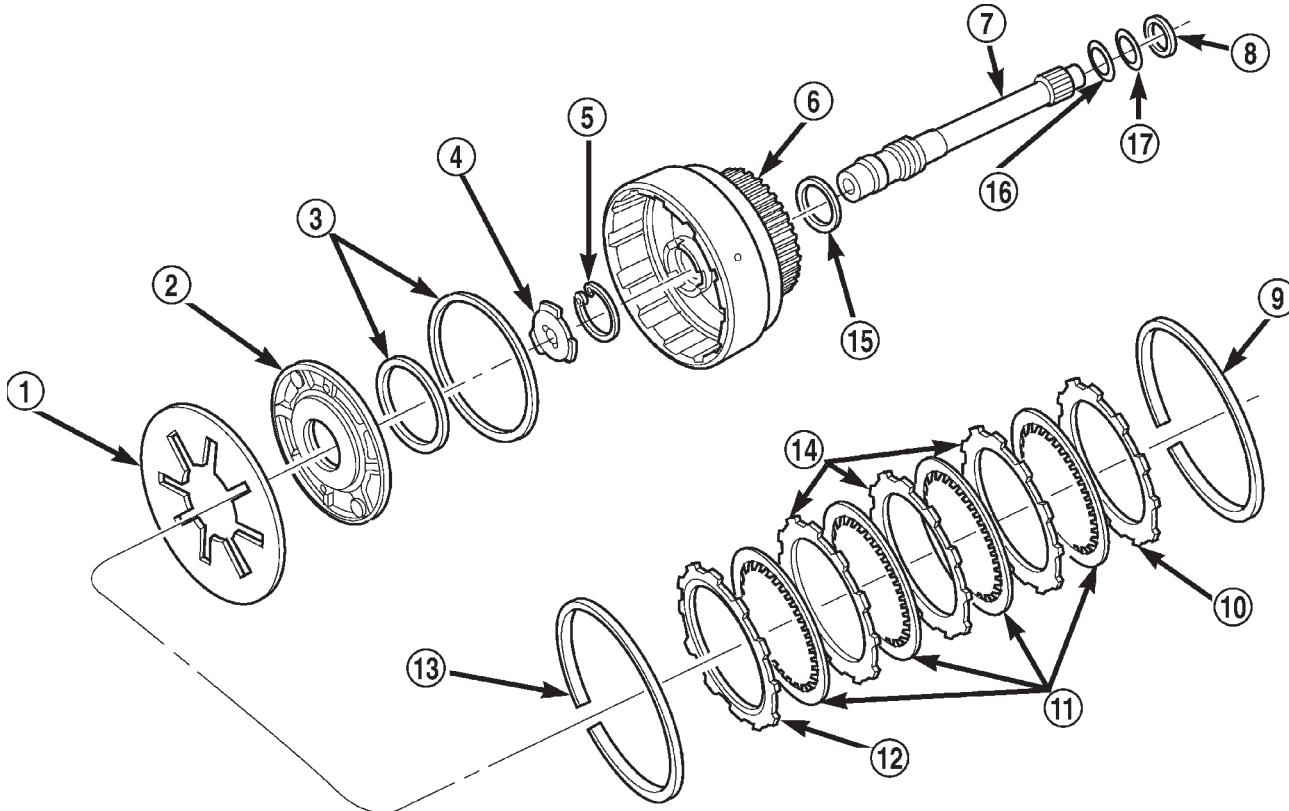
NOTE: The number of discs and plates may vary with each engine and vehicle combination.

OPERATION

To apply the clutch, pressure is applied between the clutch retainer and piston. The fluid pressure is provided by the oil pump, transferred through the

control valves and passageways, and enters the clutch through the hub of the reaction shaft support. With pressure applied between the clutch retainer and piston, the piston moves away from the clutch retainer and compresses the clutch pack. This action applies the clutch pack, allowing torque to flow through the input shaft into the driving discs, and into the clutch plates and pressure plate that are lugged to the clutch retainer. The waved snap ring is used to cushion the application of the clutch pack. In some transmissions, the snap ring is selective and used to adjust clutch pack clearance.

When pressure is released from the piston, the spring returns the piston to its fully released position and disengages the clutch. The release spring also helps to cushion the application of the clutch assem-



80c070a4

Fig. 55 Rear Clutch

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1 - PISTON SPRING | 10 - TOP PRESSURE PLATE |
| 2 - REAR CLUTCH PISTON | 11 - CLUTCH DISCS (4) |
| 3 - CLUTCH PISTON SEALS | 12 - BOTTOM PRESSURE PLATE |
| 4 - OUTPUT SHAFT THRUST WASHER (METAL) | 13 - WAVE SPRING |
| 5 - INPUT SHAFT SNAP RING | 14 - CLUTCH PLATES (3) |
| 6 - REAR CLUTCH RETAINER | 15 - RETAINER SEAL RING |
| 7 - INPUT SHAFT | 16 - SHAFT REAR SEAL RING (PLASTIC) |
| 8 - REAR CLUTCH THRUST WASHER (FIBER) | 17 - SHAFT FRONT SEAL RING (TEFLON) |
| 9 - CLUTCH PACK SNAP RING (SELECTIVE) | |

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

bly. When the clutch is in the process of being released by the release spring, fluid flows through a vent and one-way ball-check-valve located in the clutch retainer. The check-valve is needed to eliminate the possibility of plate drag caused by centrifugal force acting on the residual fluid trapped in the clutch piston retainer.

OVERDRIVE CLUTCH**DESCRIPTION**

The overdrive clutch (Fig. 56) is composed of the pressure plate, two clutch plates, three holding discs, overdrive piston retainer, piston, piston spacer, and snap rings. The overdrive clutch is the forwardmost component in the transmission overdrive unit and is considered a holding component. The overdrive piston retainer, piston, and piston spacer are located on the rear of the main transmission case.

NOTE: The number of discs and plates may vary with each engine and vehicle combination.

OPERATION

To apply the clutch, pressure is applied between the piston retainer and piston. The fluid pressure is provided by the oil pump, transferred through the control valves and passageways, and enters the clutch through passages at the lower rear portion of the valve body area. With pressure applied between

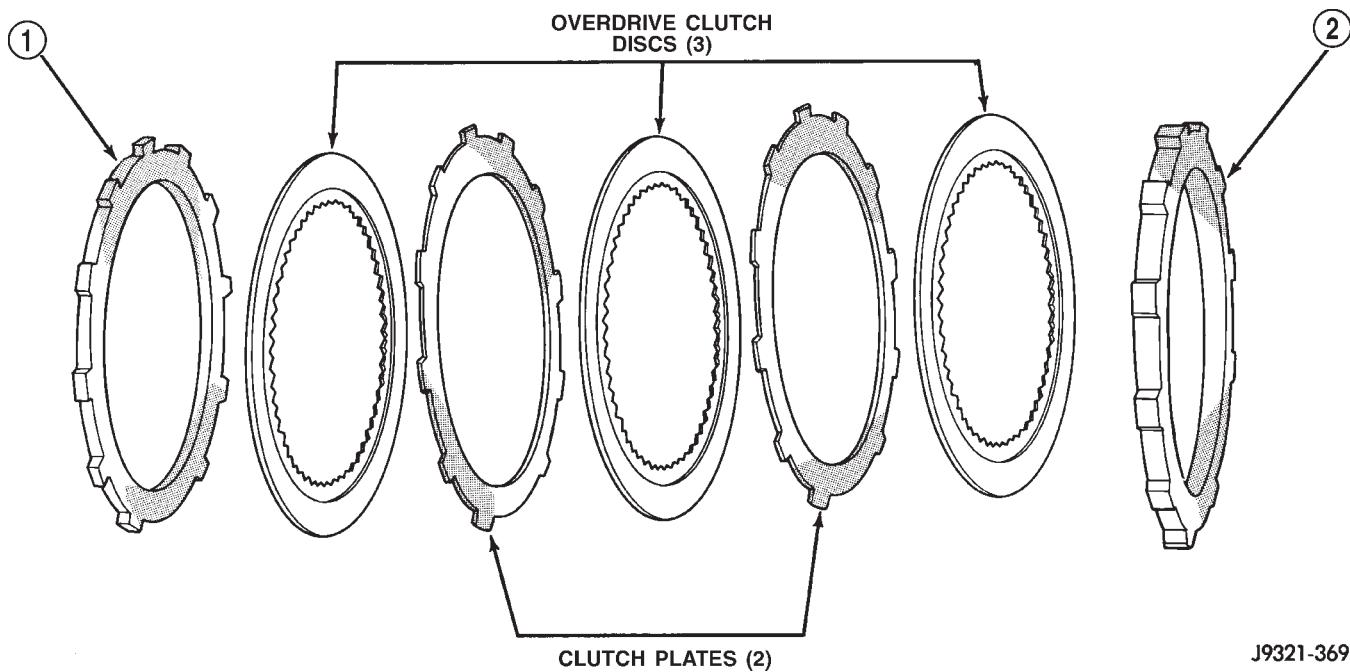
the piston retainer and piston, the piston moves away from the piston retainer and compresses the clutch pack. This action applies the clutch pack, allowing torque to flow through the intermediate shaft into the overdrive planetary gear set. The overdrive clutch discs are attached to the overdrive clutch hub while the overdrive clutch plates, reaction plate, and pressure plate are lagged to the overdrive housing. This allows the intermediate shaft to transfer the engine torque to the planetary gear and overrunning clutch. This drives the planetary gear inside the annulus, which is attached to the overdrive clutch drum and output shaft, creating the desired gear ratio. The waved snap ring is used to cushion the application of the clutch pack.

OVERRUNNING CLUTCH**DESCRIPTION**

The overrunning clutch (Fig. 57) consists of an inner race, an outer race (or cam), rollers and springs, and the spring retainer. The number of rollers and springs depends on what transmission and which overrunning clutch is being dealt with.

OPERATION

As the inner race is rotated in a clockwise direction (as viewed from the front of the transmission), the race causes the rollers to roll toward the springs, causing them to compress against their retainer. The



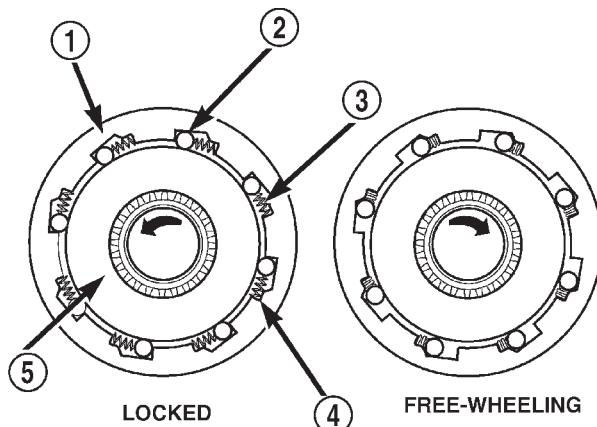
J9321-369

Fig. 56 Overdrive Clutch

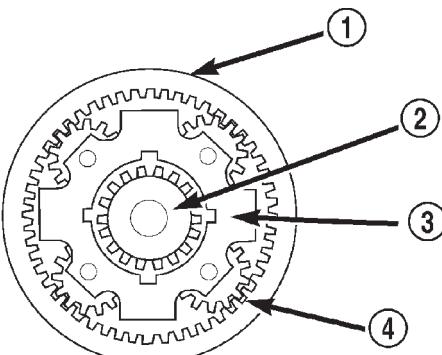
1 - REACTION PLATE

2 - PRESSURE PLATE

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

**Fig. 57 Overrunning Clutch**

- 1 – OUTER RACE (CAM)
- 2 – ROLLER
- 3 – SPRING
- 4 – SPRING RETAINER
- 5 – INNER RACE (HUB)



80be45f8

Fig. 58 Planetary Gearset

- 1 – ANNULUS GEAR
- 2 – SUN GEAR
- 3 – PLANET CARRIER
- 4 – PLANET PINIONS (4)

compression of the springs increases the clearance between the rollers and cam. This increased clearance between the rollers and cam results in a free-wheeling condition. When the inner race attempts to rotate counterclockwise, the action causes the rollers to roll in the same direction as the race, aided by the pushing of the springs. As the rollers try to move in the same direction as the inner race, they are wedged between the inner and outer races due to the design of the cam. In this condition, the clutch is locked and acts as one unit.

PLANETARY GEARSET**DESCRIPTION**

The planetary gearsets (Fig. 58) are designated as the front, rear, and overdrive planetary gear assemblies and located in such order. A simple planetary gearset consists of three main members:

- The sun gear which is at the center of the system.
- The planet carrier with planet pinion gears which are free to rotate on their own shafts and are in mesh with the sun gear.
- The annulus gear, which rotates around and is in mesh with the planet pinion gears.

NOTE: The number of pinion gears does not affect the gear ratio, only the duty rating.

OPERATION

With any given planetary gearset, several conditions must be met for power to be able to flow:

- One member must be held.
- Another member must be driven or used as an input.
- The third member may be used as an output for power flow.
- For direct drive to occur, two gear members in the front planetary gearset must be driven.

NOTE: Gear ratios are dependent on the number of teeth on the annulus and sun gears.

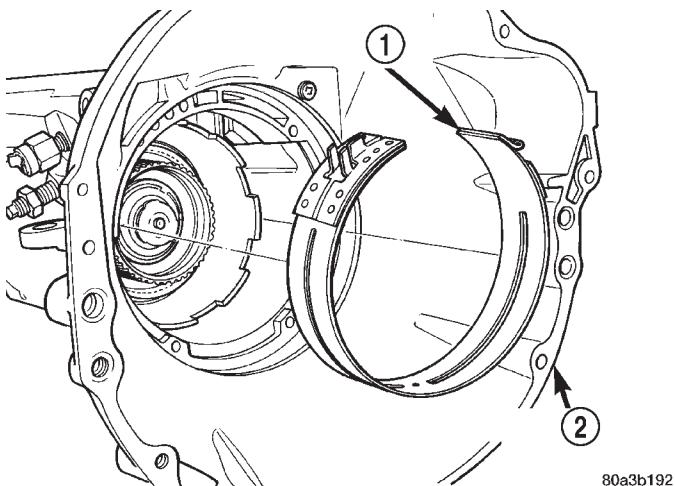
BANDS**DESCRIPTION****KICKDOWN (FRONT) BAND**

The kickdown, or "front", band (Fig. 59) holds the common sun gear of the planetary gear sets. The front (kickdown) band is made of steel, and faced on its inner circumference with a friction-type lining. One end of the band is anchored to the transmission case, and the other is acted on with a pushing force by a servo piston. The front band is a single-wrap design (the band does not completely encompass/wrap the drum that it holds).

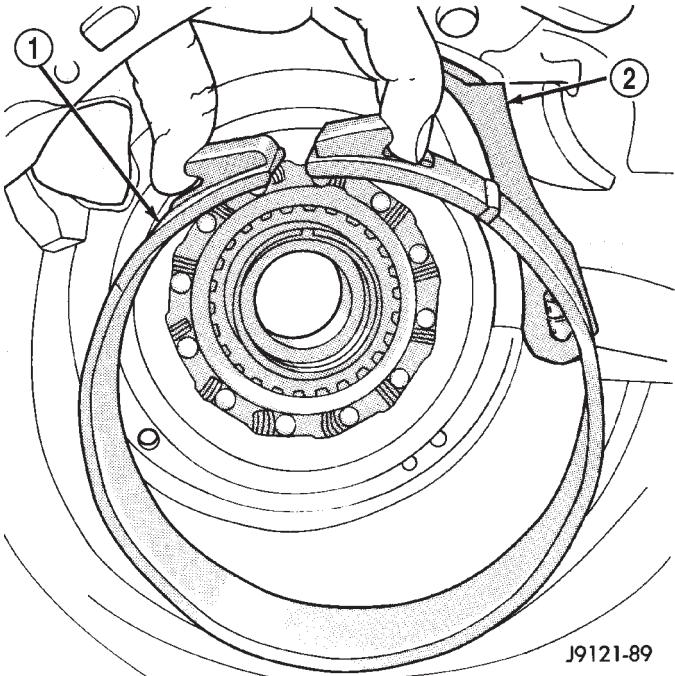
LOW/REVERSE (REAR) BAND

The low/reverse band, or "rear", band (Fig. 60) is similar in appearance and operation to the front band.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

**Fig. 59 Front Band**

- 1 – FRONT BAND
2 – TRANSMISSION HOUSING

**Fig. 60 Rear Band**

- 1 – REAR BAND
2 – BAND LINK

OPERATION**KICKDOWN (FRONT) BAND**

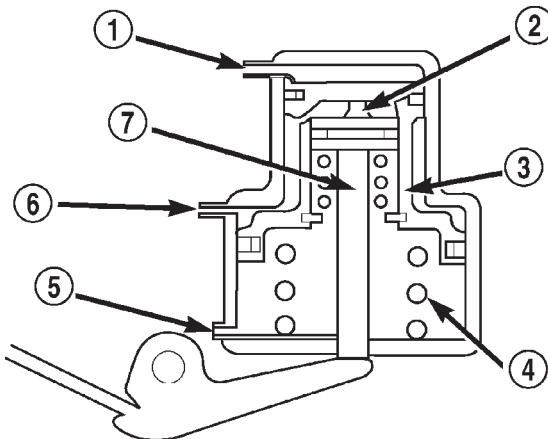
The kickdown band holds the common sun gear of the planetary gear sets by applying and holding the front clutch retainer, which is splined to the sun gear driving shell, and in turn splined directly to the sun gear. The application of the band by the servo is typically done by an apply lever and link bar.

LOW/REVERSE (REAR) BAND

The rear band holds the rear planet carrier stationary by being mounted around and applied to the low/reverse drum.

SERVOS**DESCRIPTION****KICKDOWN (FRONT) SERVO**

The kickdown servo (Fig. 61) consists of a two-land piston with an inner piston, a piston rod and guide, and a return spring. The dual-land piston uses seal rings on its outer diameters and an O-ring for the inner piston.



80be45fa

Fig. 61 Front Servo

- 1 – VENT
2 – INNER PISTON
3 – PISTON
4 – SPRING
5 – RELEASE PRESSURE
6 – APPLY PRESSURE
7 – PISTON ROD

LOW/REVERSE (REAR) SERVO

The rear (low/reverse) servo consists of a single stage or diameter piston and a spring loaded plug. The spring is used to cushion the application of the rear (low/reverse) band.

OPERATION**KICKDOWN (FRONT) SERVO**

The application of the piston is accomplished by applying pressure between the two lands of the piston. The pressure acts against the larger lower land to push the piston downward, allowing the piston rod to extend through its guide against the apply lever. Release of the servo at the 2-3 upshift is accomplished by a combination of spring and line pressure,

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

acting on the bottom of the larger land of the piston. The small piston is used to cushion the application of the band by bleeding oil through a small orifice in the larger piston. The release timing of the kickdown servo is very important to obtain a smooth but firm shift. The release has to be very quick, just as the front clutch application is taking place. Otherwise, engine runaway or a shift hesitation will occur. To accomplish this, the band retains its holding capacity until the front clutch is applied, giving a small amount of overlap between them.

LOW/REVERSE (REAR) SERVO

While in the de-energized state (no pressure applied), the piston is held up in its bore by the piston spring. The plug is held down in its bore, in the piston, by the plug spring. When pressure is applied to the top of the piston, the plug is forced down in its bore, taking up any clearance. As the piston moves, it causes the plug spring to compress, and the piston moves down over the plug. The piston continues to move down until it hits the shoulder of the plug and fully applies the band. The period of time from the initial application, until the piston is against the shoulder of the plug, represents a reduced shocking of the band that cushions the shift.

GEARSHIFT MECHANISM

DESCRIPTION

The gear shift mechanism provides six shift positions which are:

- Park (P)
- Reverse (R)
- Neutral (N)
- Drive (D)
- Manual second (2)
- Manual low (1)

OPERATION

Manual low (1) range provides first gear only. Overrun braking is also provided in this range. Manual second (2) range provides first and second gear only.

Drive range provides first, second third and overdrive fourth gear ranges. The shift into overdrive fourth gear range occurs only after the transmission has completed the shift into D third gear range. No further movement of the shift mechanism is required to complete the 3-4 shift.

The fourth gear upshift occurs automatically when the overdrive selector switch is in the ON position. No upshift to fourth gear will occur if any of the following are true:

- The transmission fluid temperature is below 10° C (50° F) or above 121° C (250° F).

- The shift to third is not yet complete.
- Vehicle speed is too low for the 3-4 shift to occur.
- Battery temperature is below -5° C (23° F).

CONVERTER DRAINBACK VALVE

DESCRIPTION

The drainback valve is located in the transmission cooler outlet (pressure) line.

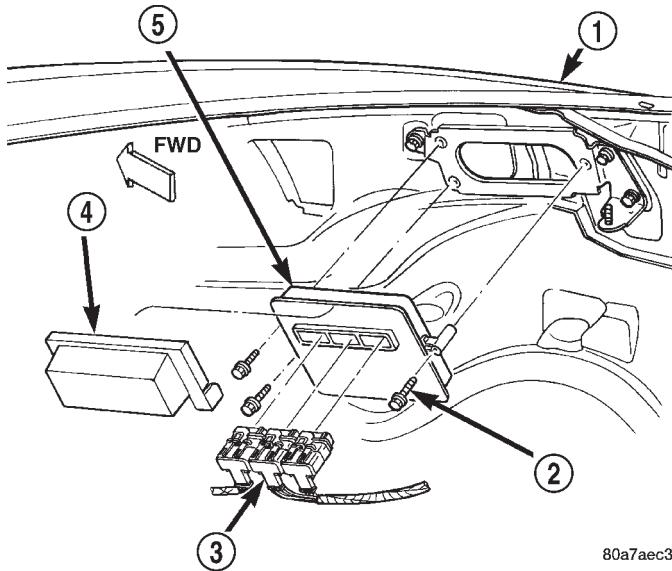
OPERATION

The valve prevents fluid from draining from the converter into the cooler and lines when the vehicle is shut down for lengthy periods. Production valves have a hose nipple at one end, while the opposite end is threaded for a flare fitting. All valves have an arrow (or similar mark) to indicate direction of flow through the valve.

POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE (PCM)

DESCRIPTION

The Powertrain Control Module (PCM) is located in the engine compartment (Fig. 62). The PCM is referred to as JTEC.



80a7aec3

Fig. 62 PCM Location

- | |
|-------------------------------------|
| 1 - RIGHT FRONT FENDER |
| 2 - PCM MOUNTING BOLTS (3) |
| 3 - 32-WAY CONNECTORS (3) |
| 4 - COVER |
| 5 - POWERTRAIN CONTROL MODULE (PCM) |

OPERATION

The PCM operates the fuel system. The PCM is a pre-programmed, triple microprocessor digital computer. It regulates ignition timing, air-fuel ratio,

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

emission control devices, charging system, certain transmission features, speed control, air conditioning compressor clutch engagement and idle speed. The PCM can adapt its programming to meet changing operating conditions.

The PCM receives input signals from various switches and sensors. Based on these inputs, the PCM regulates various engine and vehicle operations through different system components. These components are referred to as Powertrain Control Module (PCM) Outputs. The sensors and switches that provide inputs to the PCM are considered Powertrain Control Module (PCM) Inputs.

The PCM adjusts ignition timing based upon inputs it receives from sensors that react to: engine rpm, manifold absolute pressure, engine coolant temperature, throttle position, transmission gear selection (automatic transmission), vehicle speed and the brake switch.

The PCM adjusts idle speed based on inputs it receives from sensors that react to: throttle position, vehicle speed, transmission gear selection, engine coolant temperature and from inputs it receives from the air conditioning clutch switch and brake switch.

Based on inputs that it receives, the PCM adjusts ignition coil dwell. The PCM also adjusts the generator charge rate through control of the generator field and provides speed control operation.

NOTE: PCM Inputs:

- A/C request (if equipped with factory A/C)
- A/C select (if equipped with factory A/C)
- Auto shutdown (ASD) sense
- Battery temperature
- Battery voltage
- Brake switch
- CCD bus (+) circuits
- CCD bus (-) circuits
- Camshaft position sensor signal
- Crankshaft position sensor
- Data link connection for DRB scan tool
- Engine coolant temperature sensor
- Fuel level
- Generator (battery voltage) output
- Ignition circuit sense (ignition switch in on/off/crank/run position)
- Intake manifold air temperature sensor
- Leak detection pump (switch) sense (if equipped)
- Manifold absolute pressure (MAP) sensor
- Oil pressure
- Output shaft speed sensor
- Overdrive/override switch
- Oxygen sensors
- Park/neutral switch (auto. trans. only)
- Power ground
- Sensor return

- Signal ground
- Speed control multiplexed single wire input
- Throttle position sensor
- Transmission governor pressure sensor
- Transmission temperature sensor
- Vehicle speed inputs from ABS or RWAL system

NOTE: PCM Outputs:

- A/C clutch relay
- Auto shutdown (ASD) relay
- CCD bus (+/-) circuits for: speedometer, voltmeter, fuel gauge, oil pressure gauge/lamp, engine temp. gauge and speed control warn. lamp
- Data link connection for DRB scan tool
- EGR valve control solenoid (if equipped)
- EVAP canister purge solenoid
- Five volt sensor supply (primary)
- Five volt sensor supply (secondary)
- Fuel injectors
- Fuel pump relay
- Generator field driver (-)
- Generator field driver (+)
- Generator lamp (if equipped)
- Idle air control (IAC) motor
- Ignition coil
- Leak detection pump (if equipped)
- Malfunction indicator lamp (Check engine lamp).

Driven through CCD circuits.

- Overdrive indicator lamp (if equipped)
- Radiator cooling fan (2.5L engine only)
- Speed control vacuum solenoid
- Speed control vent solenoid
- Tachometer (if equipped). Driven through CCD circuits.
- Transmission convertor clutch circuit
- Transmission 3-4 shift solenoid
- Transmission relay
- Transmission temperature lamp (if equipped)
- Transmission variable force solenoid

ELECTRONIC GOVERNOR

DESCRIPTION

Governor pressure is controlled electronically. Components used for governor pressure control include:

- Governor body
- Valve body transfer plate
- Governor pressure solenoid valve
- Governor pressure sensor
- Fluid temperature thermistor
- Throttle position sensor (TPS)
- Transmission speed sensor
- Powertrain control module (PCM)

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID VALVE

The solenoid valve is a duty-cycle solenoid which regulates the governor pressure needed for upshifts and downshifts. It is an electro-hydraulic device located in the governor body on the valve body transfer plate (Fig. 63).

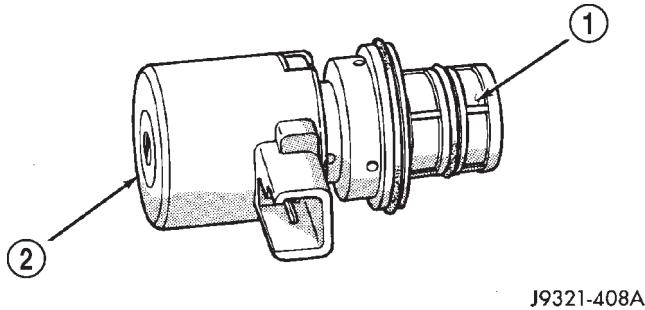


Fig. 63 Governor Pressure Solenoid Valve

- 1 - SOLENOID FILTER
- 2 - GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID

GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR

The governor pressure sensor measures output pressure of the governor pressure solenoid valve (Fig. 64).

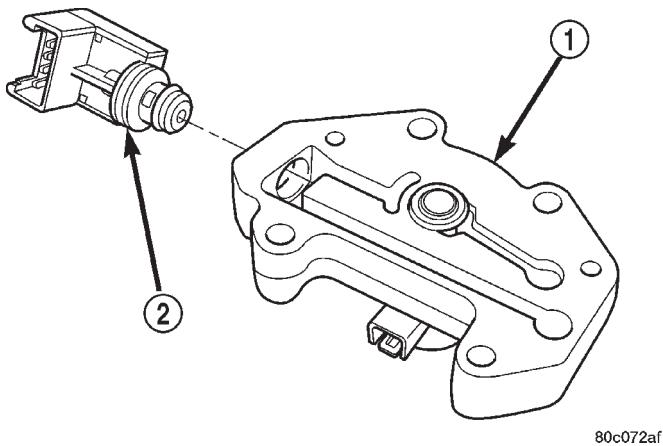


Fig. 64 Governor Pressure Sensor

- 1 - GOVERNOR BODY
- 2 - GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR/TRANSMISSION FLUID TEMPERATURE THERMISTOR

GOVERNOR BODY AND TRANSFER PLATE

The transfer plate is designed to supply transmission line pressure to the governor pressure solenoid valve and to return governor pressure.

The governor pressure solenoid valve is mounted in the governor body. The body is bolted to the lower side of the transfer plate (Fig. 64).

TRANSMISSION FLUID TEMPERATURE THERMISTOR

Transmission fluid temperature readings are supplied to the transmission control module by the ther-

mistor. The temperature readings are used to control engagement of the fourth gear overdrive clutch, the converter clutch, and governor pressure. Normal resistance value for the thermistor at room temperature is approximately 1000 ohms.

The thermistor is part of the governor pressure sensor assembly and is immersed in transmission fluid at all times.

TRANSMISSION SPEED SENSOR

The speed sensor (Fig. 65) is located in the overdrive gear case. The sensor is positioned over the park gear and monitors transmission output shaft rotating speed.

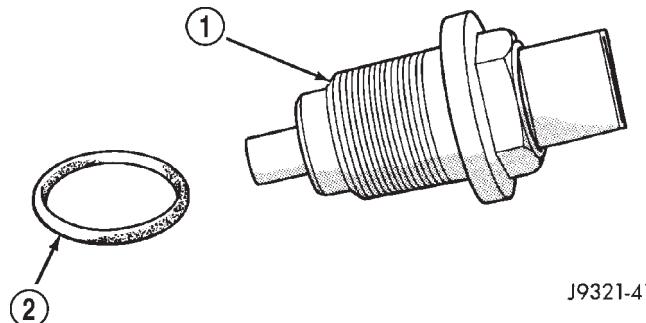


Fig. 65 Transmission Output Speed Sensor

- 1 - TRANSMISSION OUTPUT SHAFT SPEED SENSOR
- 2 - SEAL

OPERATION

Compensation is required for performance variations of two of the input devices. Though the slope of the transfer functions is tightly controlled, offset may vary due to various environmental factors or manufacturing tolerances.

The pressure transducer is affected by barometric pressure as well as temperature. Calibration of the zero pressure offset is required to compensate for shifting output due to these factors.

Normal calibration will be performed when sump temperature is above 50 degrees F, or in the absence of sump temperature data, after the first 10 minutes of vehicle operation. Calibration of the pressure transducer offset occurs each time the output shaft speed falls below 200 RPM. Calibration shall be repeated each 3 seconds the output shaft speed is below 200 RPM. A .5 second pulse of 95% duty cycle is applied to the governor pressure solenoid valve and the transducer output is read during this pulse. Averaging of the transducer signal is necessary to reject electrical noise.

Under cold conditions (below 50 degrees F sump), the governor pressure solenoid valve response may be too slow to guarantee 0 psi during the .5 second calibration pulse. Calibration pulses are continued during this period, however the transducer output

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

valves are discarded. Transducer offset must be read at key-on, under conditions which promote a stable reading. This value is retained and becomes the offset during the "cold" period of operation.

GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID VALVE

The inlet side of the solenoid valve is exposed to normal transmission line pressure. The outlet side of the valve leads to the valve body governor circuit.

The solenoid valve regulates line pressure to produce governor pressure. The average current supplied to the solenoid controls governor pressure. One amp current produces zero kPa/psi governor pressure. Zero amps sets the maximum governor pressure.

The powertrain control module (PCM) turns on the trans control relay which supplies electrical power to the solenoid valve. Operating voltage is 12 volts (DC). The PCM controls the ground side of the solenoid using the governor pressure solenoid control circuit.

GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR

The sensor output signal provides the necessary feedback to the PCM. This feedback is needed to adequately control governor pressure.

GOVERNOR BODY AND TRANSFER PLATE

The transfer plate channels line pressure to the solenoid valve through the governor body. It also channels governor pressure from the solenoid valve to the governor circuit. It is the solenoid valve that develops the necessary governor pressure.

TRANSMISSION FLUID TEMPERATURE THERMISTOR

The PCM prevents engagement of the converter clutch and overdrive clutch, when fluid temperature is below approximately 10°C (50°F).

If fluid temperature exceeds 126°C (260°F), the PCM causes a 4-3 downshift and engage the converter clutch. Engagement is according to the third gear converter clutch engagement schedule.

The overdrive OFF lamp in the instrument panel illuminates when the shift back to third occurs. The transmission will not allow fourth gear operation until fluid temperature decreases to approximately 110°C (230°F).

TRANSMISSION SPEED SENSOR

Speed sensor signals are triggered by the park gear lugs as they rotate past the sensor pickup face. Input signals from the sensor are sent to the transmission control module for processing. The vehicle speed sensor also serves as a backup for the transmission speed sensor. Signals from this sensor are shared with the powertrain control module.

GOVERNOR PRESSURE CURVES

DESCRIPTION

There are four governor pressure curves programmed into the transmission control module. The different curves allow the control module to adjust governor pressure for varying conditions. One curve is used for operation when fluid temperature is at, or below, -1°C (30°F). A second curve is used when fluid temperature is at, or above, 10°C (50°F) during normal city or highway driving. A third curve is used during wide-open throttle operation. The fourth curve is used when driving with the transfer case in low range.

OPERATION

LOW TRANSMISSION FLUID TEMPERATURE

When the transmission fluid is cold the conventional governor can delay shifts, resulting in higher than normal shift speeds and harsh shifts. The electronically controlled low temperature governor pressure curve is higher than normal to make the transmission shift at normal speeds and sooner. The PCM uses a temperature sensor in the transmission oil sump to determine when low temperature governor pressure is needed.

NORMAL OPERATION

Normal operation is refined through the increased computing power of the PCM and through access to data on engine operating conditions provided by the PCM that were not available with the previous stand-alone electronic module. This facilitated the development of a load adaptive shift strategy - the ability to alter the shift schedule in response to vehicle load condition. One manifestation of this capability is grade "hunting" prevention - the ability of the transmission logic to delay an upshift on a grade if the engine does not have sufficient power to maintain speed in the higher gear. The 3-2 downshift and the potential for hunting between gears occurs with a heavily loaded vehicle or on steep grades. When hunting occurs, it is very objectionable because shifts are frequent and accompanied by large changes in noise and acceleration.

WIDE OPEN THROTTLE OPERATION

In wide-open throttle (WOT) mode, adaptive memory in the PCM assures that up-shifts occur at the preprogrammed optimum speed. WOT operation is determined from the throttle position sensor, which is also a part of the emission control system. The initial setting for the WOT upshift is below the optimum engine speed. As WOT shifts are repeated, the PCM learns the time required to complete the shifts

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

by comparing the engine speed when the shifts occur to the optimum speed. After each shift, the PCM adjusts the shift point until the optimum speed is reached. The PCM also considers vehicle loading, grade and engine performance changes due to high altitude in determining when to make WOT shifts. It does this by measuring vehicle and engine acceleration and then factoring in the shift time.

TRANSFER CASE LOW RANGE OPERATION

On four-wheel drive vehicles operating in low range, the engine can accelerate to its peak more rapidly than in Normal range, resulting in delayed shifts and undesirable engine "flare." The low range governor pressure curve is also higher than normal to initiate upshifts sooner. The PCM compares electronic vehicle speed signal used by the speedometer to the transmission output shaft speed signal to determine when the transfer case is in low range.

OVERDRIVE OFF SWITCH

DESCRIPTION

The overdrive OFF (control) switch is located in the shift lever arm.

OPERATION

The switch is a momentary contact device that signals the PCM to toggle current status of the overdrive function. At key-on, overdrive operation is allowed. Pressing the switch once causes the overdrive OFF mode to be entered and the overdrive OFF switch lamp to be illuminated. Pressing the switch a second time causes normal overdrive operation to be restored and the overdrive lamp to be turned off. The overdrive OFF mode defaults to ON after the ignition switch is cycled OFF and ON. The normal position for the control switch is the ON position. The switch must be in this position to energize the solenoid and allow a 3-4 upshift. The control switch indicator light illuminates only when the overdrive switch is turned to the OFF position, or when illuminated by the transmission control module.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION DIAGNOSIS

Automatic transmission problems can be a result of poor engine performance, incorrect fluid level, incorrect linkage or cable adjustment, band or hydraulic control pressure adjustments, hydraulic system malfunctions or electrical/mechanical component malfunctions. Begin diagnosis by checking the easily accessible items such as: fluid level and condition, linkage adjustments and electrical connections. A

road test will determine if further diagnosis is necessary.

EFFECTS OF INCORRECT FLUID LEVEL

A low fluid level allows the pump to take in air along with the fluid. Air in the fluid will cause fluid pressures to be low and develop slower than normal. If the transmission is overfilled, the gears churn the fluid into foam. This aerates the fluid and causing the same conditions occurring with a low level. In either case, air bubbles cause fluid overheating, oxidation and varnish buildup which interferes with valve, clutch and servo operation. Foaming also causes fluid expansion which can result in fluid overflow from the transmission vent or fill tube. Fluid overflow can easily be mistaken for a leak if inspection is not careful.

CAUSES OF BURNT FLUID

Burnt, discolored fluid is a result of overheating which has two primary causes.

(1) A result of restricted fluid flow through the main and/or auxiliary cooler. This condition is usually the result of a faulty or improperly installed drainback valve, a damaged main cooler, or severe restrictions in the coolers and lines caused by debris or kinked lines.

(2) Heavy duty operation with a vehicle not properly equipped for this type of operation. Trailer towing or similar high load operation will overheat the transmission fluid if the vehicle is improperly equipped. Such vehicles should have an auxiliary transmission fluid cooler, a heavy duty cooling system, and the engine/axle ratio combination needed to handle heavy loads.

FLUID CONTAMINATION

Transmission fluid contamination is generally a result of:

- adding incorrect fluid
- failure to clean dipstick and fill tube when checking level
- engine coolant entering the fluid
- internal failure that generates debris
- overheating that generates sludge (fluid breakdown)
- failure to reverse flush cooler and lines after repair
- failure to replace contaminated converter after repair

The use of non recommended fluids can result in transmission failure. The usual results are erratic shifts, slippage, abnormal wear and eventual failure due to fluid breakdown and sludge formation. Avoid this condition by using recommended fluids only.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

The dipstick cap and fill tube should be wiped clean before checking fluid level. Dirt, grease and other foreign material on the cap and tube could fall into the tube if not removed beforehand. Take the time to wipe the cap and tube clean before withdrawing the dipstick.

Engine coolant in the transmission fluid is generally caused by a cooler malfunction. The only remedy is to replace the radiator as the cooler in the radiator is not a serviceable part. If coolant has circulated through the transmission for some time, an overhaul may also be necessary; especially if shift problems had developed.

The transmission cooler and lines should be reverse flushed whenever a malfunction generates sludge and/or debris. The torque converter should also be replaced at the same time.

Failure to flush the cooler and lines will result in recontamination. Flushing applies to auxiliary coolers as well. The torque converter should also be replaced whenever a failure generates sludge and debris. This is necessary because normal converter flushing procedures will not remove all contaminants.

PRELIMINARY DIAGNOSIS

Two basic procedures are required. One procedure for vehicles that are drivable and an alternate procedure for disabled vehicles (will not back up or move forward).

VEHICLE IS DRIVEABLE

- (1) Check for transmission fault codes using DRB scan tool.
- (2) Check fluid level and condition.
- (3) Adjust throttle and gearshift linkage if complaint was based on delayed, erratic, or harsh shifts.
- (4) Road test and note how transmission upshifts, downshifts, and engages.
- (5) Perform stall test if complaint is based on sluggish acceleration. Or, if abnormal throttle opening is needed to maintain normal speeds with a properly tuned engine.
- (6) Perform hydraulic pressure test if shift problems were noted during road test.
- (7) Perform air-pressure test to check clutch-band operation.

VEHICLE IS DISABLED

- (1) Check fluid level and condition.
- (2) Check for broken or disconnected gearshift or throttle linkage.
- (3) Check for cracked, leaking cooler lines, or loose or missing pressure-port plugs.

(4) Raise and support vehicle on safety stands, start engine, shift transmission into gear, and note following:

- (a) If propeller shaft turns but wheels do not, problem is with differential or axle shafts.
- (b) If propeller shaft does not turn and transmission is noisy, stop engine. Remove oil pan, and check for debris. If pan is clear, remove transmission and check for damaged drive plate, converter, oil pump, or input shaft.
- (c) If propeller shaft does not turn and transmission is not noisy, perform hydraulic-pressure test to determine if problem is hydraulic or mechanical.

PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH

The center terminal of the park/neutral position switch is the starter-circuit terminal. It provides the ground for the starter solenoid circuit through the selector lever in PARK and NEUTRAL positions only. The outer terminals on the switch are for the backup lamp circuit.

SWITCH TEST

To test the switch, remove the wiring connector. Test for continuity between the center terminal and the transmission case. Continuity should exist only when the transmission is in PARK or NEUTRAL.

Shift the transmission into REVERSE and test continuity at the switch outer terminals. Continuity should exist only when the transmission is in REVERSE. Continuity should not exist between the outer terminals and the case.

Check gearshift linkage adjustment before replacing a switch that tests faulty.

OVERDRIVE ELECTRICAL CONTROLS

The overdrive off switch, valve body solenoid, case connectors and related wiring can all be tested with a 12 volt test lamp or a volt/ohmmeter. Check continuity of each component when diagnosis indicates this is necessary. Refer to Group 8W, Wiring Diagrams, for component locations and circuit information.

Switch and solenoid continuity should be checked whenever the transmission fails to shift into fourth gear range.

GEARSHIFT CABLE

- (1) The shifter lever and gate positions should be in alignment with all transmission PARK, NEUTRAL, and gear detent positions.
- (2) Engine starts must be possible with shift lever in PARK or NEUTRAL gate positions only. Engine starts must not be possible in any other gear position.
- (3) With shift lever handle in:

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

(a) PARK position—Apply forward force on center of lever and remove pressure. Engine starts must be possible.

(b) PARK position—Apply rearward force on center of lever and remove pressure. Engine starts must be possible.

(c) NEUTRAL position—Normal position. Engine starts must be possible.

(d) NEUTRAL position—Engine running and brakes applied, apply forward force on center of shift lever. Transmission shall not be able to shift from neutral to reverse.

ROAD TESTING

Before road testing, be sure the fluid level and control cable adjustments have been checked and adjusted if necessary. Verify that diagnostic trouble codes have been resolved.

Observe engine performance during the road test. A poorly tuned engine will not allow accurate analysis of transmission operation.

Operate the transmission in all gear ranges. Check for shift variations and engine flare which indicates slippage. Note if shifts are harsh, spongy, delayed, early, or if part throttle downshifts are sensitive.

Slippage indicated by engine flare, usually means clutch, band or overrunning clutch problems. If the condition is advanced, an overhaul will be necessary to restore normal operation.

A slipping clutch or band can often be determined by comparing which internal units are applied in the various gear ranges. The Clutch and Band Applica-

tion chart provides a basis for analyzing road test results.

ANALYZING ROAD TEST

Refer to the Clutch and Band Application chart and note which elements are in use in the various gear ranges.

Note that the rear clutch is applied in all forward ranges (D, 2, 1). The transmission overrunning clutch is applied in first gear (D, 2 and 1 ranges) only. The rear band is applied in 1 and R range only.

Note that the overdrive clutch is applied only in fourth gear and the overdrive direct clutch and overrunning clutch are applied in all ranges except fourth gear.

For example: If slippage occurs in first gear in D and 2 range but not in 1 range, the transmission overrunning clutch is faulty. Similarly, if slippage occurs in any two forward gears, the rear clutch is slipping.

Applying the same method of analysis, note that the front and rear clutches are applied simultaneously only in D range third and fourth gear. If the transmission slips in third gear, either the front clutch or the rear clutch is slipping.

If the transmission slips in fourth gear but not in third gear, the overdrive clutch is slipping. By selecting another gear which does not use these clutches, the slipping unit can be determined. For example, if the transmission also slips in Reverse, the front clutch is slipping. If the transmission does not slip in Reverse, the rear clutch is slipping.

SHIFT LEVER POSITION	TRANSMISSION CLUTCHES AND BANDS					OVERDRIVE CLUTCHES		
	FRONT CLUTCH	FRONT BAND	REAR CLUTCH	REAR BAND	OVERRUN. CLUTCH	OVERDRIVE CLUTCH	DIRECT CLUTCH	OVERRUN. CLUTCH
Reverse	X			X			X	
Drive Range First Second Third Fourth	X X	X	X X X X		X		X X X	X X X
2-Range (Manual) Second		X	X		X		X	X
1-Range (Manual Low)			X	X	X		X	X

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

If slippage occurs during the 3-4 shift or only in fourth gear, the overdrive clutch is slipping. Similarly, if the direct clutch were to fail, the transmission would lose both reverse gear and overrun braking in 2 position (manual second gear).

If the transmission will not shift to fourth gear, the control switch, overdrive solenoid or related wiring may also be the problem cause.

This process of elimination can be used to identify a slipping unit and check operation. Proper use of the Clutch and Band Application Chart is the key.

Although road test analysis will help determine the slipping unit, the actual cause of a malfunction usually cannot be determined until hydraulic and air pressure tests are performed. Practically any condition can be caused by leaking hydraulic circuits or sticking valves.

Unless a malfunction is obvious, such as no drive in D range first gear, do not disassemble the transmission. Perform the hydraulic and air pressure tests to help determine the probable cause.

HYDRAULIC PRESSURE TEST

Hydraulic test pressures range from a low of one psi (6.895 kPa) governor pressure, to 300 psi (2068 kPa) at the rear servo pressure port in reverse.

An accurate tachometer and pressure test gauges are required. Test Gauge C-3292 has a 100 psi range and is used at the accumulator, governor, and front servo ports. Test Gauge C-3293-SP has a 300 psi range and is used at the rear servo and overdrive ports where pressures exceed 100 psi.

Pressure Test Port Locations

Test ports are located at both sides of the transmission case (Fig. 66).

Line pressure is checked at the accumulator port on the right side of the case. The front servo pressure port is at the right side of the case just behind the filler tube opening.

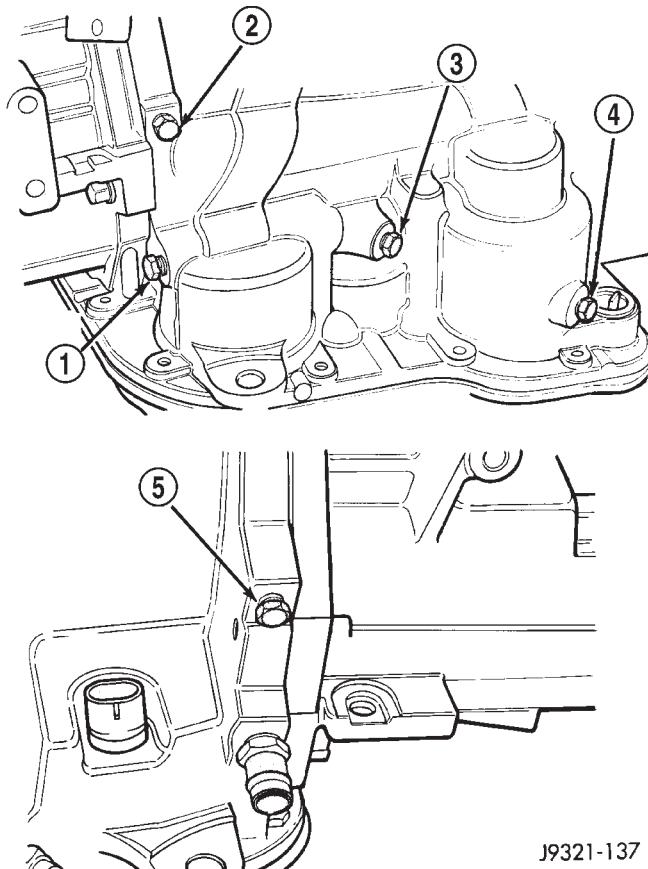
The rear servo and governor pressure ports are at the right rear of the transmission case. The overdrive clutch pressure port is at the left rear of the case.

Test One - Transmission In Manual Low

NOTE: This test checks pump output, pressure regulation, and condition of the rear clutch and servo circuit. Both test gauges are required for this test.

(1) Connect tachometer to engine. Position tachometer so it can be observed from driver seat if helper will be operating engine. Raise vehicle on hoist that will allow rear wheels to rotate freely.

(2) Connect 100 psi Gauge C-3292 to accumulator port. Then connect 300 psi Gauge C-3293-SP to rear servo port.



J9321-137

Fig. 66 Pressure Test Port Locations

- 1 – REAR SERVO TEST PORT
- 2 – GOVERNOR TEST PORT
- 3 – ACCUMULATOR TEST PORT
- 4 – FRONT SERVO TEST PORT
- 5 – OVERDRIVE CLUTCH TEST PORT

(3) Disconnect throttle and gearshift cables from levers on transmission valve body manual shaft.

(4) Have helper start and run engine at 1000 rpm.

(5) Move transmission shift lever fully forward into 1 range.

(6) Gradually move transmission throttle lever from full forward to full rearward position and note pressures on both gauges:

- Line pressure at accumulator port should be 54-60 psi (372-414 kPa) with throttle lever forward and gradually increase to 90-96 psi (621-662 kPa) as throttle lever is moved rearward.

- Rear servo pressure should be same as line pressure within 3 psi (20.68 kPa).

Test Two—Transmission In 2 Range

NOTE: This test checks pump output, line pressure and pressure regulation. Use 100 psi Test Gauge C-3292 for this test.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

(1) Leave vehicle in place on hoist and leave Test Gauge C-3292 connected to accumulator port.

(2) Have helper start and run engine at 1000 rpm.

(3) Move transmission shift lever one detent rearward from full forward position. This is 2 range.

(4) Move transmission throttle lever from full forward to full rearward position and read pressure on gauge.

(5) Line pressure should be 54-60 psi (372-414 kPa) with throttle lever forward and gradually increase to 90-96 psi (621-662 kPa) as lever is moved rearward.

Test Three—Transmission In D Range Third Gear

NOTE: This test checks pressure regulation and condition of the clutch circuits. Both test gauges are required for this test.

(1) Turn OD switch off.

(2) Leave vehicle on hoist and leave Gauge C-3292 in place at accumulator port.

(3) Move Gauge C-3293-SP over to front servo port for this test.

(4) Have helper start and run engine at 1600 rpm for this test.

(5) Move transmission shift lever two detents rearward from full forward position. This is D range.

(6) Read pressures on both gauges as transmission throttle lever is gradually moved from full forward to full rearward position:

- Line pressure at accumulator in D range third gear, should be 54-60 psi (372-414 kPa) with throttle lever forward and increase as lever is moved rearward.

- Front servo pressure in D range third gear, should be within 3 psi (21 kPa) of line pressure up to kickdown point.

Test Four—Transmission In Reverse

NOTE: This test checks pump output, pressure regulation and the front clutch and rear servo circuits. Use 300 psi Test Gauge C-3293-SP for this test.

(1) Leave vehicle on hoist and leave gauge C-3292 in place at accumulator port.

(2) Move 300 psi Gauge C-3293-SP back to rear servo port.

(3) Have helper start and run engine at 1600 rpm for test.

(4) Move transmission shift lever four detents rearward from full forward position. This is Reverse range.

(5) Move transmission throttle lever fully forward then fully rearward and note reading at Gauge C-3293-SP.

(6) Pressure should be 145 - 175 psi (1000-1207 kPa) with throttle lever forward and increase to 230 - 280 psi (1586-1931 kPa) as lever is gradually moved rearward.

Test Five—Governor Pressure

NOTE: This test checks governor operation by measuring governor pressure response to changes in vehicle speed. It is usually not necessary to check governor operation unless shift speeds are incorrect or if the transmission will not downshift. The test should be performed on the road or on a hoist that will allow the rear wheels to rotate freely.

(1) Move 100 psi Test Gauge C-3292 to governor pressure port.

(2) Move transmission shift lever two detents rearward from full forward position. This is D range.

(3) Have helper start and run engine at curb idle speed. Then firmly apply service brakes so wheels will not rotate.

(4) Note governor pressure:

- Governor pressure should be no more than 20.6 kPa (3 psi) at curb idle speed and wheels not rotating.

- If pressure exceeds 20.6 kPa (3 psi), a fault exists in governor pressure control system.

(5) Release brakes, slowly increase engine speed, and observe speedometer and pressure test gauge (do not exceed 30 mph on speedometer). Governor pressure should increase in proportion to vehicle speed. Or approximately 6.89 kPa (1 psi) for every 1 mph.

(6) Governor pressure rise should be smooth and drop back to no more than 20.6 kPa (3 psi), after engine returns to curb idle and brakes are applied to prevent wheels from rotating.

(7) Compare results of pressure test with analysis chart.

Test Six—Transmission In Overdrive Fourth Gear

NOTE: This test checks line pressure at the overdrive clutch in fourth gear range. Use 300 psi Test Gauge C-3293-SP for this test. The test should be performed on the road or on a chassis dyno.

(1) Remove tachometer; it is not needed for this test.

(2) Move 300 psi Gauge to overdrive clutch pressure test port. Then remove other gauge and reinstall test port plug.

(3) Lower vehicle.

(4) Turn OD switch on.

(5) Secure test gauge so it can be viewed from drivers seat.

(6) Start engine and shift into D range.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

(7) Increase vehicle speed gradually until 3-4 shift occurs and note gauge pressure.

(8) Pressure should be 469-496 kPa (68-72 psi) with closed throttle and increase to 620-827 kPa (90-120 psi) at 1/2 to 3/4 throttle. Note that pressure can increase to around 896 kPa (130 psi) at full throttle.

(9) Return to shop or move vehicle off chassis dyno.

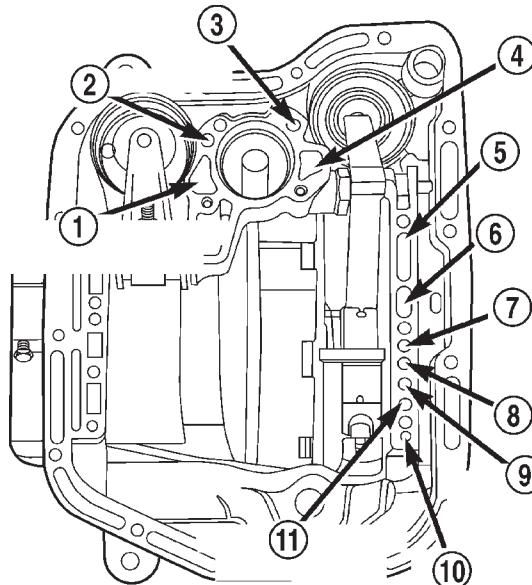
PRESSURE TEST ANALYSIS CHART

TEST CONDITION	INDICATION
Line pressure OK during any one test	Pump and regulator valve OK
Line pressure OK in R but low in D, 2, 1	Leakage in rear clutch area (seal rings, clutch seals)
Pressure low in D Fourth Gear Range	Overdrive clutch piston seal, or check ball problem
Pressure OK in 1, 2 but low in D3 and R	Leakage in front clutch area
Pressure OK in 2 but low in R and 1	Leakage in rear servo
Front servo pressure low in 2	Leakage in servo; broken servo ring or cracked servo piston
Pressure low in all positions	Clogged filter, stuck regulator valve, worn or faulty pump, low oil level
Governor pressure too high at idle speed	Governor pressure solenoid valve system fault. Refer to diagnostic book.
Governor pressure low at all mph figures	Faulty governor pressure solenoid, transmission control module, or governor pressure sensor
Lubrication pressure low at all throttle positions	Clogged fluid cooler or lines, seal rings leaking, worn pump bushings, pump, clutch retainer, or clogged filter.
Line pressure high	Output shaft plugged, sticky regulator valve
Line pressure low	Sticky regulator valve, clogged filter, worn pump

AIR TESTING TRANSMISSION CLUTCH AND BAND OPERATION

Air-pressure testing can be used to check transmission front/rear clutch and band operation. The test can be conducted with the transmission either in the vehicle or on the work bench, as a final check, after overhaul.

Air-pressure testing requires that the oil pan and valve body be removed from the transmission. The servo and clutch apply passages are shown (Fig. 67).



80b1717e

Fig. 67 Air Pressure Test Passages

- 1 – LINE PRESSURE TO ACCUMULATOR
- 2 – REAR SERVO APPLY
- 3 – FRONT SERVO APPLY
- 4 – FRONT SERVO RELEASE
- 5 – PUMP SUCTION
- 6 – PUMP PRESSURE
- 7 – FRONT CLUTCH APPLY
- 8 – REAR CLUTCH APPLY
- 9 – TO TORQUE CONVERTOR
- 10 – TO COOLER
- 11 – FROM TORQUE CONVERTER

Front Clutch Air Test

Place one or two fingers on the clutch housing and apply air pressure through front clutch apply passage. Piston movement can be felt and a soft thump heard as the clutch applies.

Rear Clutch Air Test

Place one or two fingers on the clutch housing and apply air pressure through rear clutch apply passage. Piston movement can be felt and a soft thump heard as the clutch applies.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

Front Servo Air Test

Apply air pressure to the front servo apply passage. The servo rod should extend and cause the band to tighten around the drum. Spring pressure should release the servo when air pressure is removed.

Rear Servo Air Test

Apply air pressure to the rear servo apply passage. The servo rod should extend and cause the band to tighten around the drum. Spring pressure should release the servo when air pressure is removed.

CONVERTER HOUSING FLUID LEAK

DIAGNOSIS

When diagnosing converter housing fluid leaks, two items must be established before repair.

- (1) Verify that a leak condition actually exists.
- (2) Determined the true source of the leak.

Some suspected converter housing fluid leaks may not be leaks at all. They may only be the result of residual fluid in the converter housing, or excess fluid spilled during factory fill or fill after repair. Converter housing leaks have several potential sources. Through careful observation, a leak source can be identified before removing the transmission for repair. Pump seal leaks tend to move along the drive hub and onto the rear of the converter. Pump O-ring or pump body leaks follow the same path as a seal leak (Fig. 68). Pump vent or pump attaching bolt leaks are generally deposited on the inside of the converter housing and not on the converter itself (Fig. 68). Pump seal or gasket leaks usually travel down the inside of the converter housing. Front band lever pin plug leaks are generally deposited on the housing and not on the converter.

TORQUE CONVERTER LEAK POINTS

Possible sources of converter leaks are:

- (1) Leaks at the weld joint around the outside diameter weld (Fig. 69).
- (2) Leaks at the converter hub weld (Fig. 69).

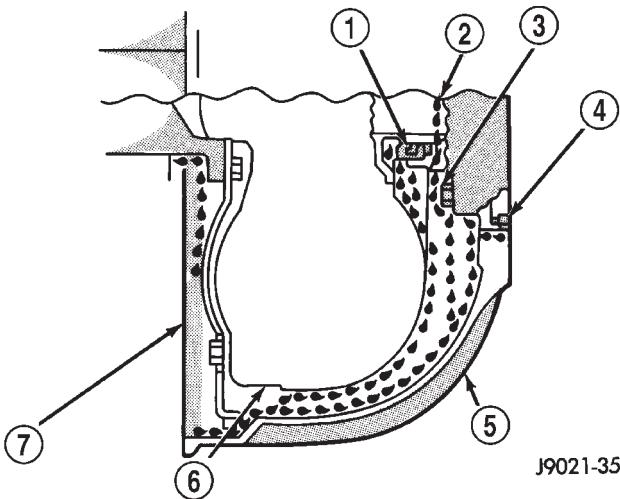
CONVERTER HOUSING AREA LEAK CORRECTION

- (1) Remove converter.

(2) Tighten front band adjusting screw until band is tight around front clutch retainer. This prevents front/rear clutches from coming out when oil pump is removed.

(3) Remove oil pump and remove pump seal. Inspect pump housing drainback and vent holes for obstructions. Clear holes with solvent and wire.

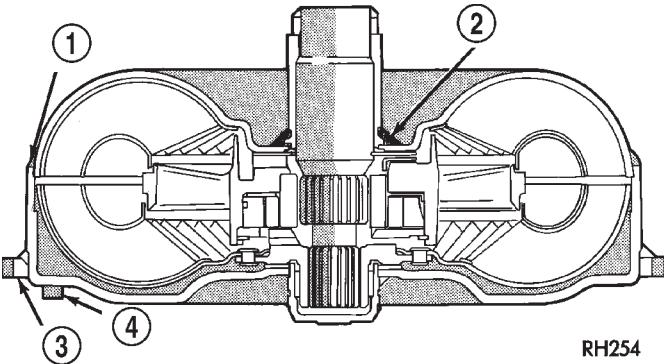
(4) Inspect pump bushing and converter hub. If bushing is scored, replace it. If converter hub is scored, either polish it with crocus cloth or replace converter.



J9021-35

Fig. 68 Converter Housing Leak Paths

- 1 – PUMP SEAL
- 2 – PUMP VENT
- 3 – PUMP BOLT
- 4 – PUMP GASKET
- 5 – CONVERTER HOUSING
- 6 – CONVERTER
- 7 – REAR MAIN SEAL LEAK



RH254

Fig. 69 Converter Leak Points—Typical

- 1 – OUTSIDE DIAMETER WELD
- 2 – TORQUE CONVERTER HUB WELD
- 3 – STARTER RING GEAR
- 4 – LUG

(5) Install new pump seal, O-ring, and gasket. Replace oil pump if cracked, porous or damaged in any way. Be sure to loosen the front band before installing the oil pump, damage to the oil pump seal may occur if the band is still tightened to the front clutch retainer.

(6) Loosen kickdown lever pin access plug three turns. Apply Loctite 592, or Permatex No. 2 to plug threads and tighten plug to 17 N·m (150 in. lbs.) torque.

(7) Adjust front band.

(8) Lubricate pump seal and converter hub with transmission fluid or petroleum jelly and install converter.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

- (9) Install transmission and converter housing dust shield.
- (10) Lower vehicle.

**DIAGNOSIS TABLES AND CHARTS—RE
TRANSMISSION**

The diagnosis charts provide additional reference when diagnosing a transmission fault. The charts provide general information on a variety of transmis-

sion, overdrive unit and converter clutch fault conditions.

The hydraulic flow charts in the Schematics and Diagrams section of this group, outline fluid flow and hydraulic circuitry. Circuit operation is provided for neutral, third, fourth and reverse gear ranges. Normal working pressures are also supplied for each of the gear ranges.

DIAGNOSIS CHARTS

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
HARSH ENGAGEMENT (FROM NEUTRAL TO DRIVE OR REVERSE)	1. Fluid Level Low	1. Add Fluid
	2. Throttle Linkage Misadjusted	2. Adjust linkage - setting may be too long.
	3. Mount and Driveline Bolts Loose	3. Check engine mount, transmission mount, propeller shaft, rear spring to body bolts, rear control arms, crossmember and axle bolt torque. Tighten loose bolts and replace missing bolts.
	4. U-Joint Worn/Broken	4. Remove propeller shaft and replace U-Joint.
	5. Axle Backlash Incorrect	5. Check per Service Manual. Correct as needed.
	6. Hydraulic Pressure Incorrect	6. Check pressure. Remove, overhaul or adjust valve body as needed.
	7. Band Misadjusted.	7. Adjust rear band.
	8. Valve Body Check Balls Missing.	8. Inspect valve body for proper check ball installation.
	9. Axle Pinion Flange Loose.	9. Replace nut and check pinion threads before installing new nut. Replace pinion gear if threads are damaged.
	10. Clutch, band or planetary component damaged.	10. Remove, disassemble and repair transmission as necessary.
	11. Converter Clutch Faulty.	11. Replace converter and flush cooler and line before installing new converter.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
DELAYED ENGAGEMENT (FROM NEUTRAL TO DRIVE OR REVERSE)	1. Fluid Level Low.	1. Correct level and check for leaks.
	2. Filter Clogged.	2. Change filter.
	3. Gearshift Linkage Misadjusted.	3. Adjust linkage and repair linkage if worn or damaged.
	4. Torque Converter Drain Back (Oil drains from torque converter into transmission sump)	4. If vehicle moves normally after 5 seconds after shifting into gear, no repair is necessary. If longer, inspect pump bushing for wear. Replace pump house.
	5. Rear Band Misadjusted.	5. Adjust band.
	6. Valve Body Filter Plugged.	6. Replace fluid and filter. If oil pan and old fluid were full of clutch disc material and/or metal particles, overhaul will be necessary.
	7. Oil Pump Gears Worn/Damaged.	7. Remove transmission and replace oil pump.
	8. Governor Circuit and Solenoid Valve Electrical Fault.	8. Test with DRB scan tool and repair as required.
	9. Hydraulic Pressure Incorrect.	9. Perform pressure test, remove transmission and repair as needed.
	10. Reaction Shaft Seal Rings Worn/Broken.	10. Remove transmission, remove oil pump and replace seal rings.
	11. Rear Clutch/Input Shaft, Rear Clutch Seal Rings Damaged.	11. Remove and disassemble transmission and repair as necessary.
	12. Regulator Valve Stuck.	12. Clean.
	13. Cooler Plugged.	13. Transfer case failure can plug cooler.
NO DRIVE RANGE (REVERSE OK)	1. Fluid Level Low.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks if drive is restored.
	2. Gearshift Linkage/Cable Loose/Misadjusted.	2. Repair or replace linkage components.
	3. Rear Clutch Burnt.	3. Remove and disassemble transmission and rear clutch and seals. Repair/replace worn or damaged parts as needed.
	4. Valve Body Malfunction.	4. Remove and disassemble valve body. Replace assembly if any valves or bores are damaged.
	5. Transmission Overrunning Clutch Broken.	5. Remove and disassemble transmission. Replace overrunning clutch.
	6. Input Shaft Seal Rings Worn/ Damaged.	6. Remove and disassemble transmission. Replace seal rings and any other worn or damaged parts.
	7. Front Planetary Failed Broken.	7. Remove and repair.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO DRIVE OR REVERSE (VEHICLE WILL NOT MOVE)	1. Fluid Level Low. 2. Gearshift Linkage/Cable Loose/Misadjusted. 3. U-Joint/Axle/Transfer Case Broken. 4. Filter Plugged. 5. Oil Pump Damaged. 6. Valve Body Malfunctioned. 7. Transmission Internal Component Damaged. 8. Park Sprag not Releasing - Check Stall Speed, Worn/Damaged/Stuck. 9. Torque Converter Damage.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks if drive is restored. 2. Inspect, adjust and reassemble linkage as needed. Replace worn/damaged parts. 3. Perform preliminary inspection procedure for vehicle that will not move. Refer to procedure in diagnosis section. 4. Remove and disassemble transmission. Repair or replace failed components as needed. Replace filter. If filter and fluid contained clutch material or metal particles, an overhaul may be necessary. Perform lube flow test. Flush oil. Replace cooler as necessary. 5. Perform pressure test to confirm low pressure. Replace pump body assembly if necessary. 6. Check and inspect valve body. Replace valve body (as assembly) if any valve or bore is damaged. Clean and reassemble correctly if all parts are in good condition. 7. Remove and disassemble transmission. Repair or replace failed components as needed. 8. Remove, disassemble, repair. 9. Inspect and replace as required.
SHIFTS DELAYED OR ERRATIC (SHIFTS ALSO HARSH AT TIMES)	1. Fluid Level Low/High. 2. Fluid Filter Clogged. 3. Throttle Linkage Misadjusted. 4. Throttle Linkage Binding. 5. Gearshift Linkage/Cable Misadjusted. 6. Clutch or Servo Failure. 7. Governor Circuit Electrical Fault. 8. Front Band Misadjusted. 9. Pump Suction Passage Leak.	1. Correct fluid level and check for leaks if low. 2. Replace filter. If filter and fluid contained clutch material or metal particles, an overhaul may be necessary. Perform lube flow test. 3. Adjust linkage as described in service section. 4. Check cable for binding. Check for return to closed throttle at transmission. 5. Adjust linkage/cable as described in service section. 6. Remove valve body and air test clutch, and band servo operation. Disassemble and repair transmission as needed. 7. Test using DRB scan tool and repair as required. 8. Adjust band. 9. Check for excessive foam on dipstick after normal driving. Check for loose pump bolts, defective gasket. Replace pump assembly if needed.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO REVERSE (D RANGES OK)	1. Gearshift Linkage/Cable Misadjusted/Damaged. 2. Park Sprag Sticking. 3. Rear Band Misadjusted/Worn. 4. Valve Body Malfunction. 5. Rear Servo Malfunction. 6. Direct Clutch in Overdrive Worn 7. Front Clutch Burnt.	1. Repair or replace linkage parts as needed. 2. Replace overdrive annulus gear. 3. Adjust band; replace. 4. Remove and service valve body. Replace valve body if any valves or valve bores are worn or damaged. 5. Remove and disassemble transmission. Replace worn/damaged servo parts as necessary. 6. Disassemble overdrive. Replace worn or damaged parts. 7. Remove and disassemble transmission. Replace worn, damaged clutch parts as required.
HAS FIRST/REVERSE ONLY (NO 1-2 OR 2-3 UPSHIFT)	1. Governor Circuit Electrical Fault. 2. Valve Body Malfunction. 3. Front Servo/Kickdown Band Damaged/Burned.	1. Test using DRB scan tool and repair as required. 2. Repair stuck 1-2 shift valve or governor plug. 3. Repair/replace.
MOVES IN 2ND OR 3RD GEAR, ABRUPTLY DOWNSHIFTS TO LOW	1. Valve Body Malfunction. 2. Governor Valve Sticking.	1. Remove, clean and inspect. Look for stuck 1-2 valve or governor plug. 2. Remove, clean and inspect. Replace faulty parts.
NO LOW GEAR (MOVES IN 2ND OR 3RD GEAR ONLY)	1. Governor Valve Sticking. 2. Governor Circuit Electrical Fault. 3. Valve Body Malfunction. 4. Front Servo Piston Cocked in Bore. 5. Front Band Linkage Malfunction	1. Remove governor, clean, inspect and repair as required. 2. Test with DRB scan tool and repair as required. 3. Remove, clean and inspect. Look for sticking 1-2 shift valve, 2-3 shift valve, governor plug or broken springs. 4. Inspect servo and repair as required. 5. Inspect linkage and look for bind in linkage.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO KICKDOWN OR NORMAL DOWNSHIFT	1. Throttle Linkage Misadjusted. 2. Accelerator Pedal Travel Restricted. 3. Valve Body Hydraulic Pressures Too High or Too Low Due to Valve Body Malfunction or Incorrect Hydraulic Control Pressure Adjustments. 4. Governor Circuit Electrical Fault. 5. Valve Body Malfunction. 6. TPS Malfunction. 7. PCM Malfunction. 8. Valve Body Malfunction.	1. Adjust linkage. 2. Verify floor mat is not under pedal, repair worn accelerator cable or bent brackets. 3. Perform hydraulic pressure tests to determine cause and repair as required. Correct valve body pressure adjustments as required. 4. Test with DRB scan tool and repair as required. 5. Perform hydraulic pressure tests to determine cause and repair as required. Correct valve body pressure adjustments as required. 6. Replace sensor, check with DRB scan tool. 7. Check with DRB scan tool and replace if required. 8. Repair sticking 1-2, 2-3 shift valves, governor plugs, 3-4 solenoid, 3-4 shift valve, 3-4 timing valve.
STUCK IN LOW GEAR (WILL NOT UPSHIFT)	1. Throttle Linkage Misadjusted/Stuck. 2. Gearshift Linkage Misadjusted. 3. Governor Component Electrical Fault. 4. Front Band Out of Adjustment. 5. Clutch or Servo Malfunction.	1. Adjust linkage and repair linkage if worn or damaged. Check for binding cable or missing return spring. 2. Adjust linkage and repair linkage if worn or damaged. 3. Check operating pressures and test with DRB scan tool, repair faulty component. 4. Adjust Band. 5. Air pressure check operation of clutches and bands. Repair faulty component.
CREEPS IN NEUTRAL	1. Gearshift Linkage Misadjusted. 2. Rear Clutch Dragging/Warped. 3. Valve Body Malfunction.	1. Adjust linkage. 2. Disassemble and repair. 3. Perform hydraulic pressure test to determine cause and repair as required.
BUZZING NOISE	1. Fluid Level Low 2. Shift Cable Misassembled. 3. Valve Body Misassembled. 4. Pump Passages Leaking 5. Cooling System Cooler Plugged. 6. Overrunning Clutch Damaged.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks. 2. Route cable away from engine and bell housing. 3. Remove, disassemble, inspect valve body. Reassemble correctly if necessary. Replace assembly if valves or springs are damaged. Check for loose bolts or screws. 4. Check pump for porous casting, scores on mating surfaces and excess rotor clearance. Repair as required. Loose pump bolts. 5. Flow check cooler circuit. Repair as needed. 6. Replace clutch.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
SLIPS IN REVERSE ONLY	1. Fluid Level Low. 2. Gearshift Linkage Misadjusted. 3. Rear Band Misadjusted. 4. Rear Band Worn. 5. Overdrive Direct Clutch Worn. 6. Hydraulic Pressure Too Low. 7. Rear Servo Leaking. 8. Band Linkage Binding.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks. 2. Adjust linkage. 3. Adjust band. 4. Replace as required. 5. Disassemble overdrive. Repair as needed. 6. Perform hydraulic pressure tests to determine cause. 7. Air pressure check clutch-servo operation and repair as required. 8. Inspect and repair as required.
SLIPS IN FORWARD DRIVE RANGES	1. Fluid Level Low. 2. Fluid Foaming. 3. Throttle Linkage Misadjusted. 4. Gearshift Linkage Misadjusted. 5. Rear Clutch Worn. 6. Low Hydraulic Pressure Due to Worn Pump, Incorrect Control Pressure Adjustments, Valve Body Warpage or Malfunction, Sticking, Leaking Seal Rings, Clutch Seals Leaking, Servo Leaks, Clogged Filter or Cooler Lines 7. Rear Clutch Malfunction, Leaking Seals or Worn Plates. 8. Overrunning Clutch Worn, Not Holding (Slips in 1 Only).	1. Add fluid and check for leaks. 2. Check for high oil level, bad pump gasket or seals, dirt between pump halves and loose pump bolts. Replace pump if necessary. 3. Adjust linkage. 4. Adjust linkage. 5. Inspect and replace as needed. 6. Perform hydraulic and air pressure tests to determine cause. 7. Air pressure check clutch-servo operation and repair as required. 8. Replace Clutch.
SLIPS IN LOW GEAR "D" ONLY, BUT NO IN 1 POSITION	Overrunning Clutch Faulty.	Replace overrunning clutch.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
GROWLING, GRATING OR SCRAPING NOISES	1. Drive Plate Broken. 2. Torque Converter Bolts Hitting Dust Shield. 3. Planetary Gear Set Broken/ Seized. 4. Overrunning Clutch Worn/Broken. 5. Oil Pump Components Scored/ Binding. 6. Output Shaft Bearing or Bushing Damaged. 7. Clutch Operation Faulty. 8. Front and Rear Bands Misadjusted.	1. Replace. 2. Dust shield bent. Replace or repair. 3. Check for debris in oil pan and repair as required. 4. Inspect and check for debris in oil pan. Repair as required. 5. Remove, inspect and repair as required. 6. Remove, inspect and repair as required. 7. Perform air pressure check and repair as required. 8. Adjust bands.
DRAGS OR LOCKS UP	1. Fluid Level Low. 2. Clutch Dragging/Failed 3. Front or Rear Band Misadjusted. 4. Case Leaks Internally. 5. Servo Band or Linkage Malfunction. 6. Overrunning Clutch Worn. 7. Planetary Gears Broken. 8. Converter Clutch Dragging.	1. Check and adjust level. 2. Air pressure check clutch operation and repair as required. 3. Adjust bands. 4. Check for leakage between passages in case. 5. Air pressure check servo operation and repair as required. 6. Remove and inspect clutch. Repair as required. 7. Remove, inspect and repair as required (look for debris in oil pan). 8. Check for plugged cooler. Perform flow check. Inspect pump for excessive side clearance. Replace pump as required.
NO 4-3 DOWNSHIFT	1. Circuit Wiring and/or Connectors Shorted. 2. PCM Malfunction. 3. TPS Malfunction 4. Lockup Solenoid Not Venting. 5. Overdrive Solenoid Not Venting. 6. Valve Body Valve Sticking.	1. Test wiring and connectors with test lamp and volt/ohmmeter. Repair wiring as necessary. Replace connectors and/or harnesses as required. 2. Check PCM operation with DRB scan tool. Replace PCM only if faulty. 3. Check TPS with DRB scan tool at PCM. 4. Remove valve body and replace solenoid assembly if plugged or shorted. 5. Remove valve body and replace solenoid if plugged or shorted. 6. Repair stuck 3-4 shift valve or lockup timing valve.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO 4-3 DOWNSHIFT WHEN CONTROL SWITCH IS TURNED OFF	1. Control Switch Open/Shorted. 2. Overdrive Solenoid Connector Shorted. 3. PCM Malfunction. 4. Valve Body Stuck Valves.	1. Test and replace switch if faulty. 2. Test solenoids and replace if seized or shorted. 3. Test with DRB scan tool. Replace PCM if faulty. 4. Repair stuck 3-4, lockup or lockup timing valve.
CLUNK NOISE FROM DRIVELINE ON CLOSED THROTTLE 4-3 DOWNSHIFT	1. Transmission Fluid Low. 2. Throttle Cable Misadjusted. 3. Overdrive Clutch Select Spacer Wrong Spacer.	1. Add Fluid. 2. Adjust cable. 3. Replace overdrive piston thrust plate spacer.
3-4 UPSHIFT OCCURS IMMEDIATELY AFTER 2-3 SHIFT	1. Overdrive Solenoid Connector or Wiring Shorted. 2. TPS Malfunction. 3. PCM Malfunction. 4. Overdrive Solenoid Malfunction. 5. Valve Body Malfunction.	1. Test connector and wiring for loose connections, shorts or ground and repair as needed. 2. Test TPS and replace as necessary. Check with DRB scan tool. 3. Test PCM with DRB scan tool and replace controller if faulty. 4. Replace solenoid. 5. Remove, disassemble, clean and inspect valve body components. Make sure all valves and plugs slide freely in bores. Polish valves with crocus cloth if needed.
WHINE/NOISE RELATED TO ENGINE SPEED	1. Fluid Level Low. 2. Shift Cable Incorrect Routing.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks. 2. Check shift cable for correct routing. Should not touch engine or bell housing.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO 3-4 UPSHIFT	1. Dash O/D Switch In OFF Position.	1. Turn control switch to ON position.
	2. Overdrive Circuit Fuse Blown.	2. Replace fuse. Determine why fuse failed and repair as necessary (i.e., shorts or grounds in circuit).
	3. O/D Switch Wire Shorted/Open Cut.	3. Check wires/connections with 12V test lamp and voltmeter. Repair damaged or loose wire/connection as necessary.
	4. Distance or Coolant Sensor Malfunction.	4. Check with DRB scan tool and repair or replace as necessary.
	5. TPS Malfunction.	5. Check with DRB scan tool and replace if necessary.
	6. Neutral Switch to PCM Wire Shorted/Cut.	6. Test switch as described in service section and replace if necessary. Engine no start.
	7. PCM Malfunction.	7. Check with DRB scan tool and replace if necessary.
	8. Overdrive Solenoid Shorted/Open.	8. Replace solenoid if shorted or open and repair loose or damaged wires (DRB scan tool).
	9. Solenoid Feed Orifice in Valve Body Blocked.	9. Remove, disassemble, and clean valve body thoroughly. Check feed orifice.
	10. Overdrive Clutch Failed.	10. Disassemble overdrive and repair as needed.
	11. Hydraulic Pressure Low.	11. Pressure test transmission to determine cause.
	12. Valve Body Valve Stuck.	12. Repair stuck 3-4 shift valve, 3-4 timing valve.
	13. O/D Piston Incorrect Spacer.	13. Remove unit, check end play and install correct spacer.
	14. Overdrive Piston Seal Failure.	14. Replace both seals.
	15. O/D Check Valve/Orifice Failed.	15. Check for free movement and secure assembly (in piston retainer). Check ball bleed orifice.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
SLIPS IN OVERDRIVE FOURTH GEAR	1. Fluid Level Low. 2. Overdrive Clutch Pack Worn. 3. Overdrive Piston Retainer Bleed Orifice Blown Out. 4. Overdrive Piston or Seal Malfunction. 5. 3-4 Shift Valve, Timing Valve or Accumulator Malfunction. 6. Overdrive Unit Thrust Bearing Failure. 7. O/D Check Valve/Bleed Orifice Failure.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks. 2. Remove overdrive unit and rebuild clutch pack. 3. Disassemble transmission, remove retainer and replace orifice. 4. Remove overdrive unit. Replace seals if worn. Replace piston if damaged. If piston retainer is damaged, remove and disassemble the transmission. 5. Remove and overhaul valve body. Replace accumulator seals. Make sure all valves operate freely in bores and do not bind or stick. Make sure valve body screws are correctly tightened and separator plates are properly positioned. 6. Disassemble overdrive unit and replace thrust bearing (NO. 1 thrust bearing is between overdrive piston and clutch hub; NO. 2 thrust bearing is between the planetary gear and the direct clutch spring plate; NO. 3 thrust bearing is between overrunning clutch hub and output shaft). 7. Check for function/secure orifice insert in O/D piston retainer.
DELAYED 3-4 UPSHIFT (SLOW TO ENGAGE)	1. Fluid Level Low. 2. Throttle Valve Cable Misadjusted. 3. Overdrive Clutch Pack Worn/ Burnt. 4. TPS Faulty. 5. Overdrive Clutch Bleed Orifice Plugged. 6. Overdrive Solenoid or Wiring Shorted/Open. 7. Overdrive Excess Clearance 8. O/D Check Valve Missing or Stuck.	1. Add fluid and check for leaks. 2. Adjust throttle valve cable. 3. Remove unit and rebuild clutch pack. 4. Test with DRB scan tool and replace as necessary 5. Disassemble transmission and replace orifice. 6. Test solenoid and check wiring for loose/corroded connections or shorts/ grounds. Replace solenoid if faulty and repair wiring if necessary. 7. Remove unit. Measure end play and select proper spacer. 8. Check for presence of check valve. Repair or replace as required.
TORQUE CONVERTER LOCKS UP IN SECOND AND/OR THIRD GEAR	Lockup Solenoid, Relay or Wiring Shorted/Open.	Test solenoid, relay and wiring for continuity, shorts or grounds. Replace solenoid and relay if faulty. Repair wiring and connectors as necessary.
HARSH 1-2, 2-3, 3-4 OR 3-2 SHIFTS	Lockup Solenoid Malfunction.	Remove valve body and replace solenoid assembly.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NO START IN PARK OR NEUTRAL	1. Gearshift Linkage/Cable Misadjusted. 2. Neutral Switch Wire Open/Cut. 3. Neutral Switch Faulty. 4. Neutral Switch Connect Faulty. 5. Valve Body Manual Lever Assembly Bent/Worn/Broken.	1. Adjust linkage/cable. 2. Check continuity with test lamp. Repair as required. 3. Refer to service section for test and replacement procedure. 4. Connectors spread open. Repair. 5. Inspect lever assembly and replace if damaged.
NO REVERSE (OR SLIPS IN REVERSE)	1. Direct Clutch Pack (front clutch) Worn. 2. Rear Band Misadjusted. 3. Front Clutch Malfunctioned/ Burned. 4. Overdrive Thrust Bearing Failure. 5. Direct Clutch Spring Collapsed/ Broken.	1. Disassemble unit and rebuild clutch pack. 2. Adjust band. 3. Air-pressure test clutch operation. Remove and rebuild if necessary. 4. Disassemble geartrain and replace bearings. 5. Remove and disassemble unit. Check clutch position and replace spring.
OIL LEAKS.	1. Fluid Lines and Fittings Loose/ Leaks/Damaged. 2. Fill Tube (where tube enters case) Leaks/Damaged. 3. Pressure Port Plug Loose Loose/Damaged. 4. Pan Gasket Leaks. 5. Valve Body Manual Lever Shaft Seal Leaks/Worn. 6. Rear Bearing Access Plate Leaks. 7. Gasket Damaged or Bolts are Loose. 8. Adapter/Extension Gasket Damaged Leaks/Damaged. 9. Neutral Switch Leaks/Damaged. 10. Converter Housing Area Leaks. 11. Pump Seal Leaks/Worn/ Damaged. 12. Torque Converter Weld Leak/Cracked Hub. 13. Case Porosity Leaks.	1. Tighten fittings. If leaks persist, replace fittings and lines if necessary. 2. Replace tube seal. Inspect tube for cracks in fill tube. 3. Tighten to correct torque. Replace plug or reseal if leak persists. 4. Tighten pan screws (150 in. lbs.). If leaks persist, replace gasket. 5. Replace shaft seal. 6. Replace gasket. Tighten screws. 7. Replace bolts or gasket or tighten both. 8. Replace gasket. 9. Replace switch and gasket. 10. Check for leaks at seal caused by worn seal or burr on converter hub (cutting seal), worn bushing, missing oil return, oil in front pump housing or hole plugged. Check for leaks past O-ring seal on pump or past pump-to-case bolts; pump housing porous, oil coming out vent due to overfill or leak past front band shaft access plug. 11. Replace seal. 12. Replace converter. 13. Replace case.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSES	CORRECTION
NOISY OPERATION IN FOURTH GEAR ONLY	1. Overdrive Clutch Discs, Plates or Snap Rings Damaged.	1. Remove unit and rebuild clutch pack.
	2. Overdrive Piston or Planetary Thrust Bearing Damaged.	2. Remove and disassemble unit. Replace either thrust bearing if damaged.
	3. Output Shaft Bearings Scored/Damaged.	3. Remove and disassemble unit. Replace either bearing if damaged.
	4. Planetary Gears Worn/Chipped.	4. Remove and overhaul overdrive unit.
	5. Overdrive Unit Overrunning Clutch Rollers Worn/Scored.	5. Remove and overhaul overdrive unit.

SERVICE PROCEDURES

FLUID LEVEL CHECK

Transmission fluid level should be checked monthly under normal operation. If the vehicle is used for trailer towing or similar heavy load hauling, check fluid level and condition weekly. Fluid level is checked with the engine running at curb idle speed, the transmission in NEUTRAL and the transmission fluid at normal operating temperature.

FLUID LEVEL CHECK PROCEDURE

(1) Transmission fluid must be at normal operating temperature for accurate fluid level check. Drive vehicle if necessary to bring fluid temperature up to normal hot operating temperature of 82°C (180°F).

(2) Position vehicle on level surface.

(3) Start and run engine at curb idle speed.

(4) Apply parking brakes.

(5) Shift transmission momentarily into all gear ranges. Then shift transmission back to Neutral.

(6) Clean top of filler tube and dipstick to keep dirt from entering tube.

(7) Remove dipstick (Fig. 70) and check fluid level as follows:

(a) Correct acceptable level is in crosshatch area.

(b) Correct maximum level is to MAX arrow mark.

(c) Incorrect level is at or below MIN line.

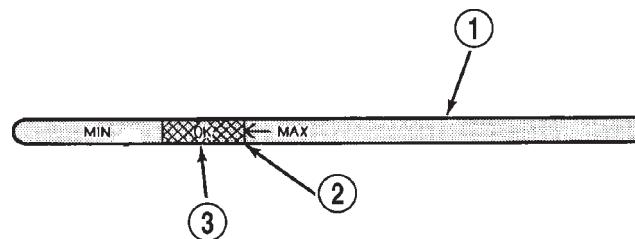
(d) If fluid is low, add only enough Mopar® ATF

Plus 3 to restore correct level. Do not overfill.

CAUTION: Do not overfill the transmission. Overfilling may cause leakage out the pump vent which can be mistaken for a pump seal leak. Overfilling will also cause fluid aeration and foaming as the excess fluid is picked up and churned by the gear train. This will significantly reduce fluid life.

FLUID AND FILTER REPLACEMENT

Refer to the Maintenance Schedules in Group 0, Lubrication and Maintenance, for proper service intervals. The service fluid fill after a filter change is approximately 3.8 liters (4.0 quarts).



804d8eae
Fig. 70 Dipstick Fluid Level Marks—Typical

- 1 – DIPSTICK
2 – MAXIMUM CORRECT FLUID LEVEL
3 – ACCEPTABLE FLUID LEVEL

REMOVAL

(1) Hoist and support vehicle on safety stands.

(2) Place a large diameter shallow drain pan beneath the transmission pan.

(3) Remove bolts holding front and sides of pan to transmission (Fig. 71).

(4) Loosen bolts holding rear of pan to transmission.

(5) Slowly separate front of pan away from transmission allowing the fluid to drain into drain pan.

(6) Hold up pan and remove remaining bolt holding pan to transmission.

(7) While holding pan level, lower pan away from transmission.

(8) Pour remaining fluid in pan into drain pan.

(9) Remove screws holding filter to valve body (Fig. 72).

(10) Separate filter from valve body and pour fluid in filter into drain pan.

(11) Dispose of used trans fluid and filter properly.

INSPECTION

Inspect bottom of pan and magnet for excessive amounts of metal or fiber contamination. A light coating of clutch or band material on the bottom of the pan does not indicate a problem unless accompanied by slipping condition or shift lag. If fluid and pan are contaminated with excessive amounts or debris, refer to the diagnosis section of this group.

SERVICE PROCEDURES (Continued)

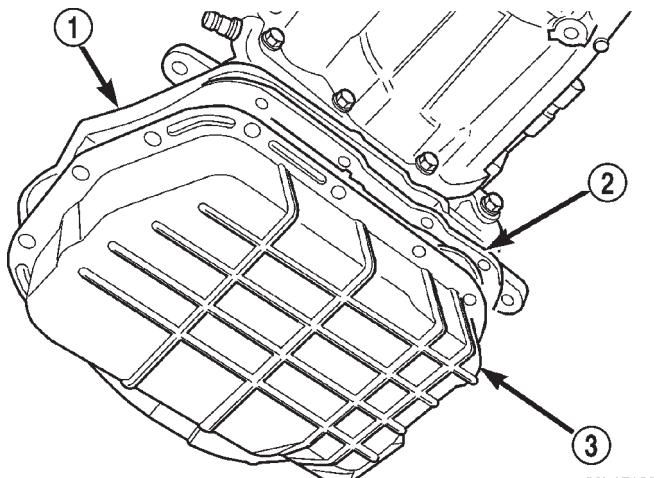


Fig. 71 Transmission Pan

80b17180

1 - TRANSMISSION

2 - GASKET

3 - PAN

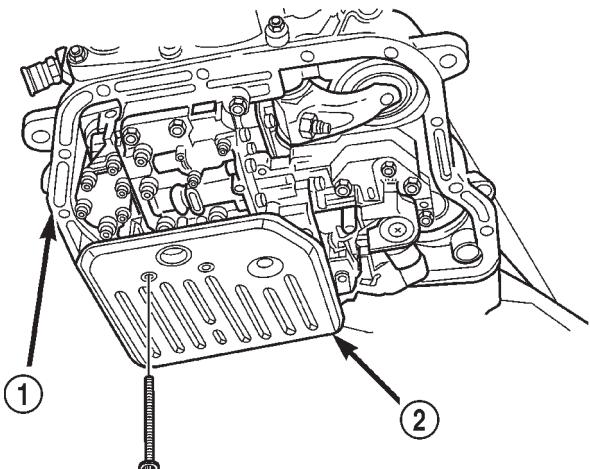


Fig. 72 Transmission Filter

80b170e8

1 - TRANSMISSION

2 - FILTER

Check the adjustment of the front and rear bands, adjust if necessary.

CLEANING

- (1) Using a suitable solvent, clean pan and magnet.
- (2) Using a suitable gasket scraper, clean gasket material from gasket surface of transmission case and the gasket flange around the pan.

INSTALLATION

- (1) Place replacement filter in position on valve body.
- (2) Install screws to hold filter to valve body (Fig. 72). Tighten screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.
- (3) Place new gasket in position on pan and install pan on transmission.
- (4) Place pan in position on transmission.

- (5) Install screws to hold pan to transmission (Fig. 71). Tighten bolts to 17 N·m (150 in. lbs.) torque.

- (6) Lower vehicle and fill transmission with Mopar® ATF Plus 3, type 7176 fluid.

TRANSMISSION FILL PROCEDURE

To avoid overfilling transmission after a fluid change or overhaul, perform the following procedure:

- (1) Remove dipstick and insert clean funnel in transmission fill tube.

- (2) Add following initial quantity of Mopar® ATF Plus 3 to transmission:

- (a) If only fluid and filter were changed, add **3 pints (1-1/2 quarts)** of ATF Plus 3 to transmission.

- (b) If transmission was completely overhauled, torque converter was replaced or drained, and cooler was flushed, add **12 pints (6 quarts)** of ATF Plus 3 to transmission.

- (3) Apply parking brakes.

- (4) Start and run engine at normal curb idle speed.

- (5) Apply service brakes, shift transmission through all gear ranges then back to NEUTRAL, set parking brake, and leave engine running at curb idle speed.

- (6) Remove funnel, insert dipstick and check fluid level. If level is low, **add fluid to bring level to MIN mark on dipstick**. Check to see if the oil level is equal on both sides of the dipstick. If one side is noticeably higher than the other, the dipstick has picked up some oil from the dipstick tube. Allow the oil to drain down the dipstick tube and re-check.

- (7) Drive vehicle until transmission fluid is at normal operating temperature.

- (8) With the engine running at curb idle speed, the gear selector in NEUTRAL, and the parking brake applied, check the transmission fluid level.

CAUTION: Do not overfill transmission, fluid foaming and shifting problems can result.

- (9) Add fluid to bring level up to MAX arrow mark.

When fluid level is correct, shut engine off, release park brake, remove funnel, and install dipstick in fill tube.

CONVERTER DRAINBACK CHECK VALVE SERVICE

The converter drainback check valve is located in the cooler outlet (pressure) line near the radiator tank. The valve prevents fluid drainback when the vehicle is parked for lengthy periods. The valve check ball is spring loaded and has an opening pressure of approximately 2 psi.

SERVICE PROCEDURES (Continued)

The valve is serviced as an assembly; it is not repairable. Do not clean the valve if restricted, or contaminated by sludge, or debris. If the valve fails, or if a transmission malfunction occurs that generates significant amounts of sludge and/or clutch particles and metal shavings, the valve must be replaced.

The valve must be removed whenever the cooler and lines are reverse flushed. The valve can be flow tested when necessary. The procedure is exactly the same as for flow testing a cooler.

If the valve is restricted, installed backwards, or in the wrong line, it will cause an overheating condition and possible transmission failure.

CAUTION: The drainback valve is a one-way flow device. It must be properly oriented in terms of flow direction for the cooler to function properly. The valve must be installed in the pressure line. Otherwise flow will be blocked and would cause an overheating condition and eventual transmission failure.

OIL PUMP VOLUME CHECK

Measuring the oil pump output volume will determine if sufficient oil flow to the transmission oil cooler exists, and whether or not an internal transmission failure is present.

Verify that the transmission fluid is at the proper level. Refer to the Fluid Level Check procedure in this section. If necessary, fill the transmission to the proper level with Mopar® ATF+3, type 7176, Automatic Transmission Fluid.

(1) Disconnect the **To cooler** line at the cooler inlet and place a collecting container under the disconnected line.

CAUTION: With the fluid set at the proper level, fluid collection should not exceed (1) quart or internal damage to the transmission may occur.

(2) Run the engine **at curb idle speed**, with the shift selector in neutral.

(3) If one quart of transmission fluid is collected in the container in 20 seconds or less, oil pump flow volume is within acceptable limits. If fluid flow is intermittent, or it takes more than 20 seconds to collect one quart of fluid, refer to the Hydraulic Pressure tests in this section for further diagnosis.

(4) Re-connect the **To cooler** line to the transmission cooler inlet.

(5) Refill the transmission to proper level.

FLUSHING COOLERS AND TUBES

When a transmission failure has contaminated the fluid, the oil cooler(s) must be flushed. The torque converter must also be replaced. This will insure that metal particles or sludged oil are not later trans-

ferred back into the reconditioned (or replaced) transmission.

The only recommended procedure for flushing coolers and lines is to use Tool 6906A Cooler Flusher.

CAUTION: The transmission oil cooler requires a two stage flushing procedure due to an internally mounted thermostat. Failure to follow the procedure can result in severe transmission damage.

WARNING: WEAR PROTECTIVE EYEWEAR THAT MEETS THE REQUIREMENTS OF OSHA AND ANSI Z87.1-1968. WEAR STANDARD INDUSTRIAL RUBBER GLOVES.

KEEP LIGHTED CIGARETTES, SPARKS, FLAMES, AND OTHER IGNITION SOURCES AWAY FROM THE AREA TO PREVENT THE IGNITION OF COMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS AND GASES. KEEP A CLASS (B) FIRE EXTINGUISHER IN THE AREA WHERE THE FLUSHER WILL BE USED.

KEEP THE AREA WELL VENTILATED.

DO NOT LET FLUSHING SOLVENT COME IN CONTACT WITH YOUR EYES OR SKIN: IF EYE CONTAMINATION OCCURS, FLUSH EYES WITH WATER FOR 15 TO 20 SECONDS. REMOVE CONTAMINATED CLOTHING AND WASH AFFECTED SKIN WITH SOAP AND WATER. SEEK MEDICAL ATTENTION.

COOLER FLUSH USING TOOL 6906A

(1) Remove cover plate filler plug on Tool 6906A. Fill reservoir 1/2 to 3/4 full of fresh flushing solution. Flushing solvents are petroleum based solutions generally used to clean automatic transmission components. **DO NOT** use solvents containing acids, water, gasoline, or any other corrosive liquids.

(2) Reinstall filler plug on Tool 6906A.

(3) Verify pump power switch is turned OFF. Connect red alligator clip to positive (+) battery post. Connect black (-) alligator clip to a good ground.

(4) Disconnect the cooler lines at the transmission.

NOTE: When flushing transmission cooler and lines, **ALWAYS** reverse flush.

NOTE: The converter drainback valve must be removed and an appropriate replacement hose installed to bridge the space between the transmission cooler line and the cooler fitting. Failure to remove the drainback valve will prevent reverse flushing the system. A suitable replacement hose can be found in the adapter kit supplied with the flushing tool.

(5) Connect the BLUE pressure line to the OUTLET (From) cooler line.

SERVICE PROCEDURES (Continued)

(6) Connect the CLEAR return line to the INLET (To) cooler line.

(7) Remove the transmission oil cooler from the vehicle. Refer to the Group 7, Cooling System, for the proper procedures.

(8) Remove the transmission oil cooler thermostat. Refer to the Group 7, Cooling System, for the proper procedures.

(9) Re-install the thermostat cover onto the oil cooler and install the snap ring.

(10) Re-connect the oil cooler to the transmission cooler lines.

(11) Turn pump ON for two to three minutes to flush cooler(s) and lines.

NOTE: This flushes the bypass circuit of the cooler only.

(12) Turn pump OFF.

(13) Remove the thermostat cover from the oil cooler.

(14) Install Special Tool Cooler Plug 8414 into the transmission oil cooler.

(15) Turn pump ON for two to three minutes to flush cooler(s) and lines.

NOTE: This flushes the main oil cooler core passages only.

(16) Turn pump OFF.

(17) Remove the thermostat cover from the oil cooler.

(18) Remove Special Tool Cooler Plug 8414 from the transmission oil cooler.

(19) Install a new thermostat spring, thermostat, cover, and snap-ring into the transmission oil cooler.

(20) Install the transmission oil cooler onto the vehicle.

(21) Disconnect CLEAR suction line from reservoir at cover plate. Disconnect CLEAR return line at cover plate, and place it in a drain pan.

(22) Turn pump ON for 30 seconds to purge flushing solution from cooler and lines. Turn pump OFF.

(23) Place CLEAR suction line into a one quart container of Mopar® ATF Plus 3, type 7176 automatic transmission fluid.

(24) Turn pump ON until all transmission fluid is removed from the one quart container and lines. This purges any residual cleaning solvent from the transmission cooler and lines. Turn pump OFF.

(25) Disconnect alligator clips from battery. Reconnect flusher lines to cover plate, and remove flushing adapters from cooler lines.

ALUMINUM THREAD REPAIR

Damaged or worn threads in the aluminum transmission case and valve body can be repaired by the

use of Heli-Coils, or equivalent. This repair consists of drilling out the worn-out damaged threads. Then tap the hole with a special Heli-Coil tap, or equivalent, and installing a Heli-Coil insert, or equivalent, into the hole. This brings the hole back to its original thread size.

Heli-Coil, or equivalent, tools and inserts are readily available from most automotive parts suppliers.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION

TRANSMISSION

The overdrive unit can be removed and serviced separately. It is not necessary to remove the entire transmission assembly to perform overdrive unit repairs.

CAUTION: The transmission and torque converter must be removed as an assembly to avoid component damage. The converter drive plate, pump bushing, or oil seal can be damaged if the converter is left attached to the driveplate during removal.

REMOVAL

(1) Disconnect battery negative cable.

(2) Hoist and support vehicle.

(3) Remove skid plate, if equipped.

(4) Remove skid plate support crossmember, if equipped.

(5) Disconnect and lower or remove necessary exhaust components.

(6) Remove starter motor.

(7) Support engine with suitable support stand and wood block.

(8) Remove bolts attaching engine-to-transmission brackets to transmission.

(9) Remove bolt and nut attaching each engine-to-transmission bracket to the motor mounts.

(10) Remove bolts holding the engine-to-transmission brackets to the front axle, if equipped.

(11) Loosen bolts attaching engine-to-transmission brackets to each side of the engine block.

(12) Raise engine slightly.

(13) Remove torque converter access cover.

(14) Tighten bolts attaching engine-to-transmission brackets to each side of the engine block.

(15) Lower engine.

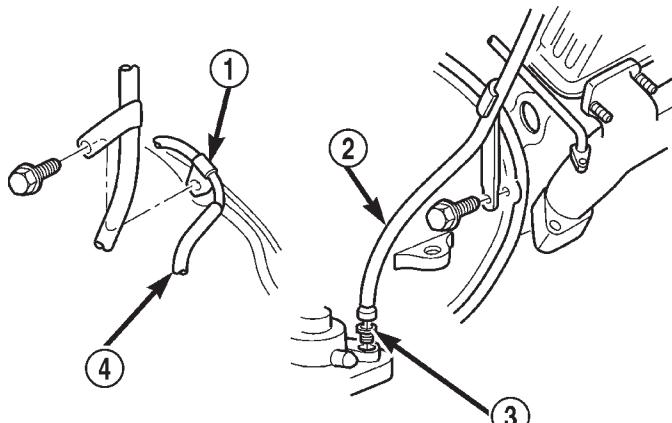
(16) Disconnect fluid cooler lines at transmission.

(17) If transmission is being removed for overhaul, remove transmission oil pan, drain fluid and reinstall pan.

(18) Remove fill tube bracket bolts and pull tube out of transmission. Retain fill tube seal. On 4 x 4

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

models, it will also be necessary to remove bolt attaching transfer case vent tube to converter housing (Fig. 73).



80b170f3

Fig. 73 Fill Tube Attachment

- 1 - TRANSFER CASE VENT TUBE
- 2 - FILL TUBE (V8)
- 3 - TUBE SEAL
- 4 - FILL TUBE (V6)

(19) Rotate crankshaft in clockwise direction until converter bolts are accessible. Then remove bolts one at a time. Rotate crankshaft with socket wrench on dampener bolt.

(20) Mark propeller shaft and axle yokes for assembly alignment. Then disconnect and remove propeller shaft.

(21) Disconnect wires from park/neutral position switch and transmission solenoid.

(22) Disconnect throttle valve cable from transmission bracket and throttle valve lever.

(23) On 4 x 4 models, disconnect shift rod from transfer case shift lever. Or remove shift lever from transfer case and tie rod and lever to chassis component with wire.

(24) Raise transmission slightly with service jack to relieve load on crossmember and supports.

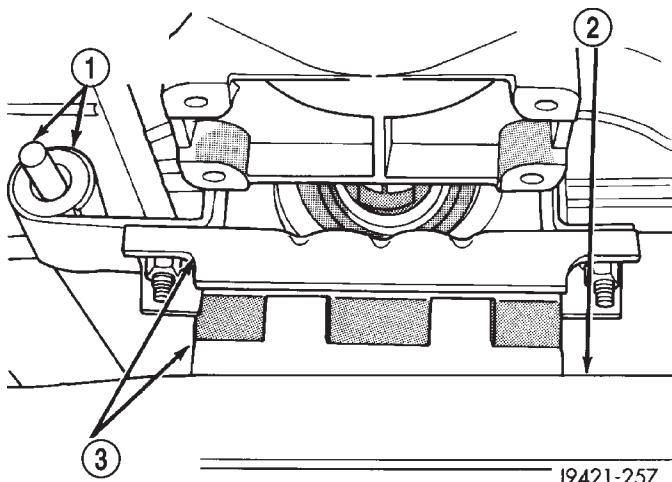
(25) Remove bolts securing rear support and cushion to transmission and crossmember. Raise transmission slightly, slide exhaust hanger arm from bracket (Fig. 74) and remove rear support.

(26) Remove bolts attaching crossmember to frame and remove crossmember.

(27) On 4 x 4 models, disconnect vent hose from transfer case. Then remove transfer case with transmission jack or aid of helper.

(28) Remove all converter housing bolts.

(29) Carefully work transmission and torque converter assembly rearward off engine block dowels.



J9421-257

Fig. 74 Rear Support Cushion

- 1 - EXHAUST PIPE ARM AND BRACKET
- 2 - CROSMEMBER
- 3 - REAR SUPPORT AND CUSHION

(30) Lower transmission and remove assembly from under the vehicle.

INSTALLATION

(1) Check torque converter hub and hub drive notches for sharp edges burrs, scratches, or nicks. Polish the hub and notches with 320/400 grit paper and crocus cloth if necessary. The hub must be smooth to avoid damaging pump seal at installation.

(2) Lubricate oil pump seal lip with transmission fluid.

(3) Lubricate converter pilot hub pocket in the rear of the crankshaft with a light coating of Mopar® High Temp Grease.

(4) Align and install converter in oil pump.

(5) Carefully insert converter in oil pump. Then rotate converter back and forth until fully seated in pump gears.

(6) Check converter seating with steel scale and straightedge (Fig. 75). Surface of converter lugs should be 1/2 in. to rear of straightedge when converter is fully seated.

(7) Temporarily secure converter with wedge tool or C-clamp.

(8) Position transmission on jack and secure it with chains.

(9) Check condition of converter driveplate. Replace the plate if cracked, distorted or damaged. **Also be sure transmission dowel pins are seated in engine block and protrude far enough to hold transmission in alignment.**

(10) Raise transmission and align converter with drive plate and converter housing with engine block.

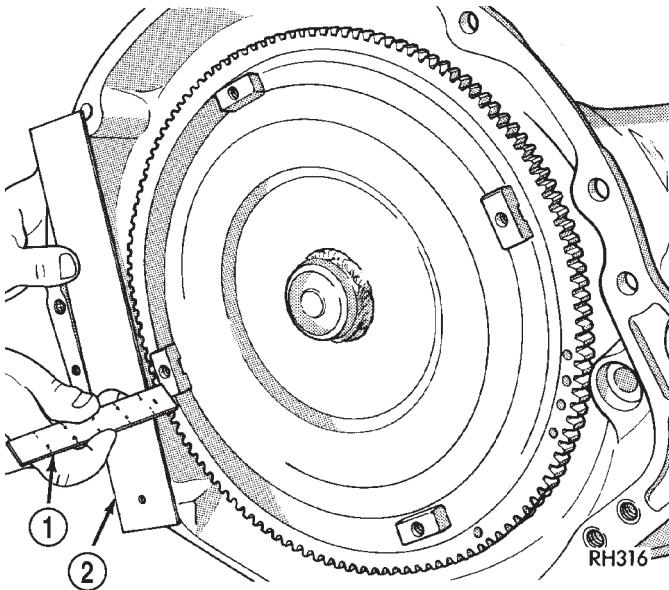


Fig. 75 Typical Method Of Checking Converter Seating

1 – SCALE
2 – STRAIGHTEDGE

(11) Move transmission forward. Then raise, lower or tilt transmission to align converter housing with engine block dowels.

(12) Carefully work transmission forward and over engine block dowels until converter hub is seated in crankshaft.

(13) Install bolts attaching converter housing to engine.

(14) Install rear support. Then lower transmission onto crossmember and install bolts attaching transmission mount to crossmember.

(15) Install new plastic retainer grommet on any shift linkage rod or lever that was disconnected. Grommets should not be reused.

(16) Connect gearshift and throttle cable to transmission.

(17) Connect wires to park/neutral position switch, transmission solenoid(s) and oxygen sensor. Be sure transmission harnesses are properly routed.

CAUTION: It is essential that correct length bolts be used to attach the converter to the driveplate. Bolts that are too long will damage the clutch surface inside the converter.

(18) Install torque converter-to-driveplate bolts. Tighten bolts to 31 N·m (270 in. lbs.).

(19) Raise engine slightly.

(20) Loosen bolts attaching engine-to-transmission brackets to each side of the engine block.

(21) Install converter housing access cover.

(22) Install bolts attaching engine-to-transmission brackets to transmission.

(23) Tighten bolts attaching engine-to-transmission brackets to each side of the engine block.

(24) Lower engine.

(25) Install bolt and nut attaching each engine-to-transmission bracket to the motor mounts.

(26) Remove engine support.

(27) Install bolts to hold engine-to-transmission brackets to the front axle, if equipped.

(28) Install starter motor and cooler line bracket.

(29) Connect cooler lines to transmission.

(30) Install transmission fill tube. Install new seal on tube before installation.

(31) Install exhaust components.

(32) Install transfer case, if necessary.

(33) Align and connect propeller shaft(s).

(34) Install rear skid plate, if equipped.

(35) Adjust gearshift linkage and throttle valve cable if necessary.

(36) Install front skid plate, if equipped.

(37) Lower vehicle.

(38) Fill transmission with Mopar® ATF Plus 3, Type 7176 fluid.

TORQUE CONVERTER

REMOVAL

(1) Remove transmission and torque converter from vehicle.

(2) Place a suitable drain pan under the converter housing end of the transmission.

CAUTION: Verify that transmission is secure on the lifting device or work surface, the center of gravity of the transmission will shift when the torque converter is removed creating an unstable condition.

The torque converter is a heavy unit. Use caution when separating the torque converter from the transmission.

(3) Pull the torque converter forward until the center hub clears the oil pump seal.

(4) Separate the torque converter from the transmission.

INSTALLATION

Check converter hub and drive notches for sharp edges, burrs, scratches, or nicks. Polish the hub and notches with 320/400 grit paper or crocus cloth if necessary. The hub must be smooth to avoid damaging the pump seal at installation.

(1) Lubricate converter hub and oil pump seal lip with transmission fluid.

(2) Place torque converter in position on transmission.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

CAUTION: Do not damage oil pump seal or bushing while inserting torque converter into the front of the transmission.

(3) Align torque converter to oil pump seal opening.

(4) Insert torque converter hub into oil pump.

(5) While pushing torque converter inward, rotate converter until converter is fully seated in the oil pump gears.

(6) Check converter seating with a scale and straightedge (Fig. 76). Surface of converter lugs should be 1/2 in. to rear of straightedge when converter is fully seated.

(7) If necessary, temporarily secure converter with C-clamp attached to the converter housing.

(8) Install the transmission in the vehicle.

(9) Fill the transmission with the recommended fluid.

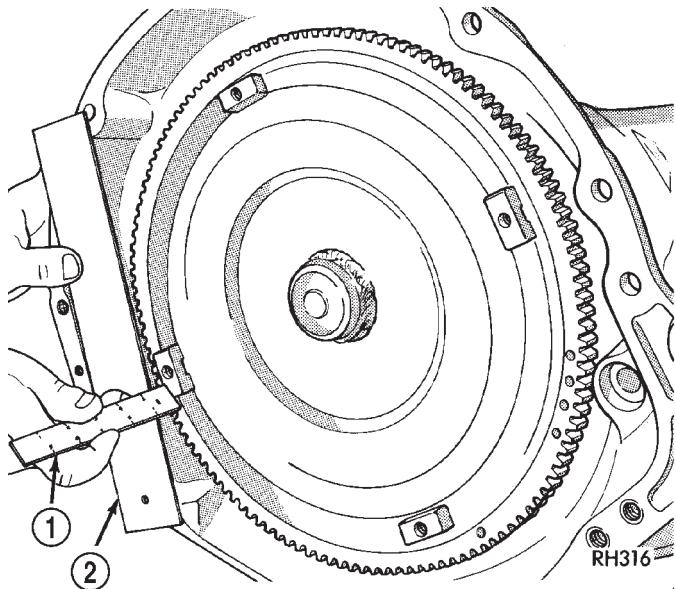


Fig. 76 Checking Torque Converter Seating

1 – SCALE

2 – STRAIGHTEDGE

YOKE SEAL REPLACEMENT

REMOVAL

(1) Raise vehicle.

(2) Mark propeller shaft and axle companion flange for alignment reference.

(3) Disconnect and remove propeller shaft.

(4) Remove old seal with Seal Remover C-3985-B (Fig. 77) from overdrive housing.

INSTALLATION

(1) Place seal in position on overdrive housing.

(2) Drive seal into overdrive housing with Seal Installer C-3995-A (Fig. 78).

(3) Carefully guide propeller shaft slip yoke into housing and onto output shaft splines. Align marks made at removal and connect propeller shaft to rear axle companion flange.

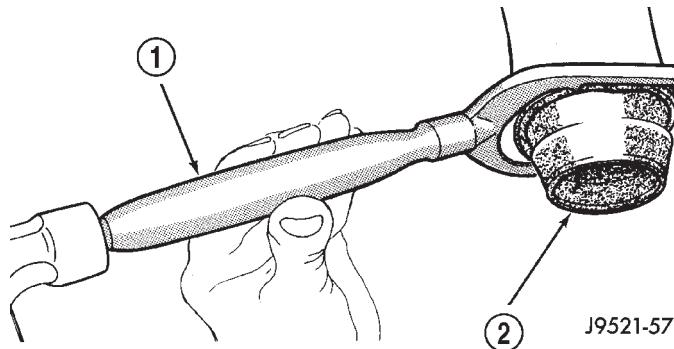


Fig. 77 Removing Overdrive Housing Yoke Seal

1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3985-B

2 – SEAL

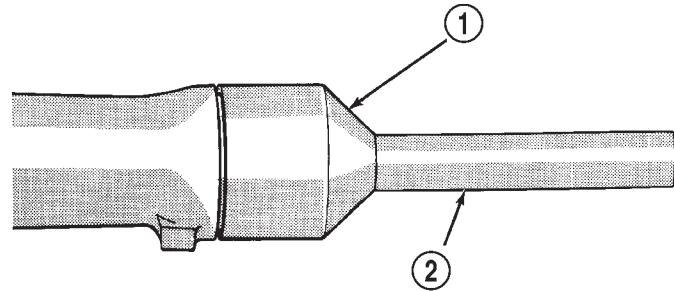


Fig. 78 Installing Overdrive Housing Yoke Seal

1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3995-A OR C-3972-A

2 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4471

PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH

REMOVAL

(1) Raise vehicle and position drain pan under switch.

(2) Disconnect switch wires.

(3) Remove switch from case.

INSTALLATION

(1) Move shift lever to Park and Neutral positions. Verify that switch operating lever fingers are centered in switch opening in case (Fig. 79).

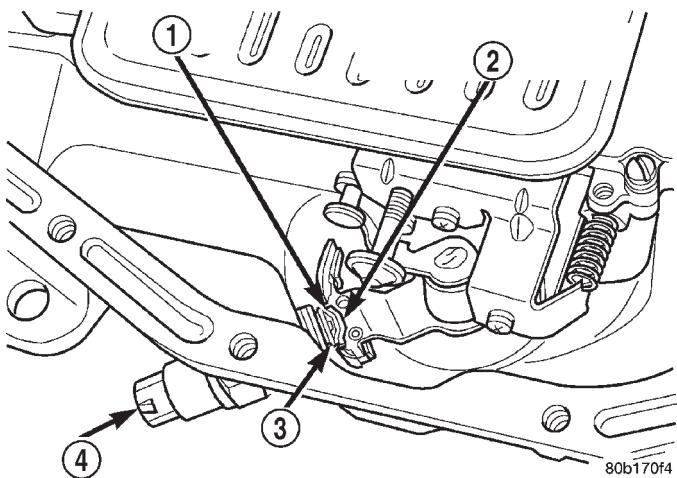
(2) Install new seal on switch and install switch in case. Tighten switch to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.) torque.

(3) Test continuity of new switch with 12V test lamp.

(4) Connect switch wires and lower vehicle.

(5) Top off transmission fluid level.

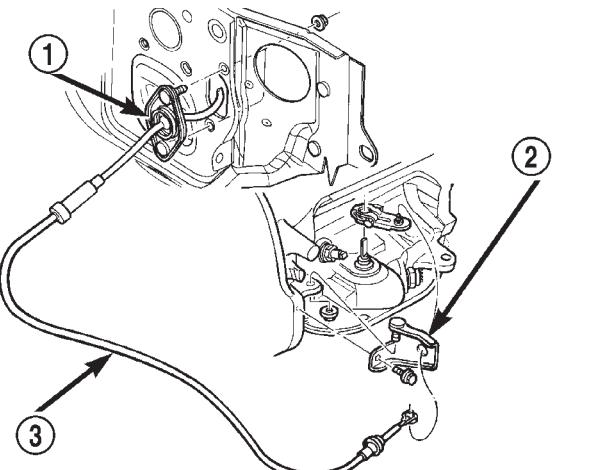
REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

**Fig. 79 Park/Neutral Position Switch**

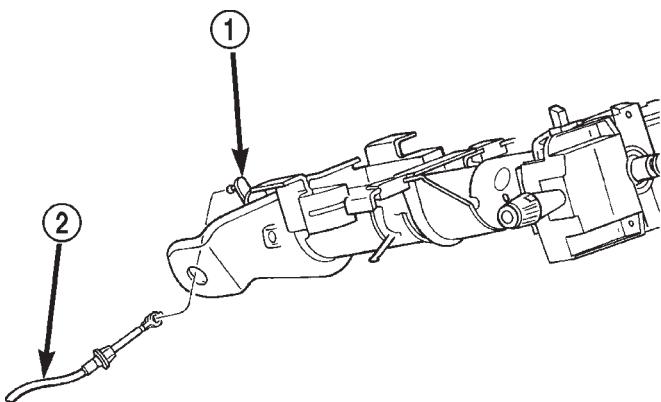
- 1 – NEUTRAL CONTACT
- 2 – MANUAL LEVER AND SWITCH PLUNGER IN REVERSE POSITION
- 3 – PARK CONTACT
- 4 – SWITCH

GEARSHIFT CABLE**REMOVAL**

- (1) Shift transmission into Park.
- (2) Remove nuts retaining the shift cable housing to the dash panel (Fig. 80).
- (3) Disconnect cable at lower column lever and feed cable through dash panel opening to underside of vehicle (Fig. 81).
- (4) Raise vehicle.
- (5) Disengage cable eyelet at transmission shift lever and pull cable adjuster out of mounting bracket (Fig. 82). Remove old cable from vehicle.

**Fig. 80 Cable Mounting**

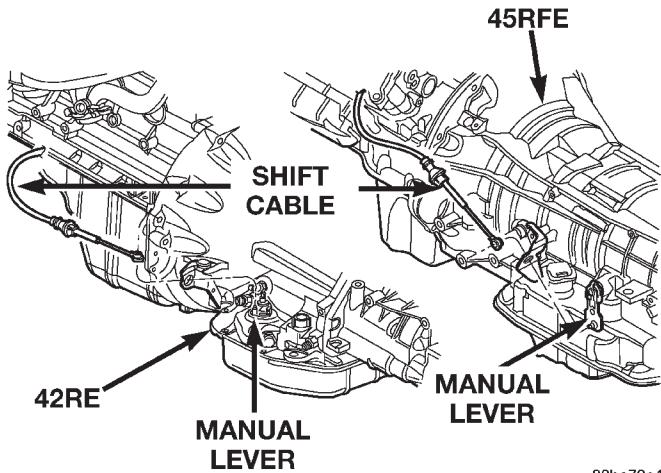
- 1 – CABLE MOUNTING
- 2 – CABLE BRACKET AT TRANS.
- 3 – GEARSHIFT CABLE



80a773ea

Fig. 81 Cable at Gearshift Lever

- 1 – GEARSHIFT LEVER
- 2 – GEARSHIFT CABLE

**Fig. 82 Shift Cable at the Transmission****INSTALLATION**

- (1) Snap the cable into the transmission bracket so the retaining ears are engaged and connect cable end fitting onto the manual control lever ball stud.
- (2) Lower vehicle.
- (3) Route cable through hole in dash panel. Seat cable bracket to dash panel. Install retaining nuts to cable housing bracket studs inside the vehicle at the dash panel.
- (4) Place the auto transmission manual shift control lever in "Park" detent (rearmost) position and rotate prop shaft to ensure transmission is in park.
- (5) Connect shift cable to shifter lever by snapping cable retaining ears into shifter bracket and press cable end fitting into lever.
- (6) Check for proper operation of Park/Neutral switch.
- (7) If the gearshift cable is out of adjustment, refer to Adjustments section.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

GOVERNOR SOLENOID AND PRESSURE SENSOR

REMOVAL

- (1) Hoist and support vehicle on safety stands.
- (2) Remove transmission fluid pan and filter.
- (3) Disengage wire connectors from pressure sensor and solenoid (Fig. 83).
- (4) Remove screws holding pressure solenoid retainer to governor body.
- (5) Separate solenoid retainer from governor (Fig. 84).
- (6) Pull solenoid from governor body (Fig. 85).
- (7) Pull pressure sensor from governor body.
- (8) Remove bolts holding governor body to valve body.
- (9) Separate governor body from valve body (Fig. 86).
- (10) Remove governor body gasket.

INSTALLATION

Before installing the pressure sensor and solenoid in the governor body, replace O-ring seals, clean the gasket surfaces and replace gasket.

- (1) Place gasket in position on back of governor body (Fig. 86).
- (2) Place governor body in position on valve body.
- (3) Install bolts to hold governor body to valve body.
- (4) Lubricate O-ring on pressure sensor with transmission fluid.
- (5) Align pressure sensor to bore in governor body.
- (6) Push pressure sensor into governor body.
- (7) Lubricate O-ring, on pressure solenoid, with transmission fluid.
- (8) Align pressure solenoid to bore in governor body (Fig. 85).
- (9) Push solenoid into governor body.
- (10) Place solenoid retainer in position on governor (Fig. 84).
- (11) Install screws to hold pressure solenoid retainer to governor body.
- (12) Engage wire connectors into pressure sensor and solenoid (Fig. 83).
- (13) Install transmission fluid pan and (new) filter.
- (14) Lower vehicle and road test to verify repair.

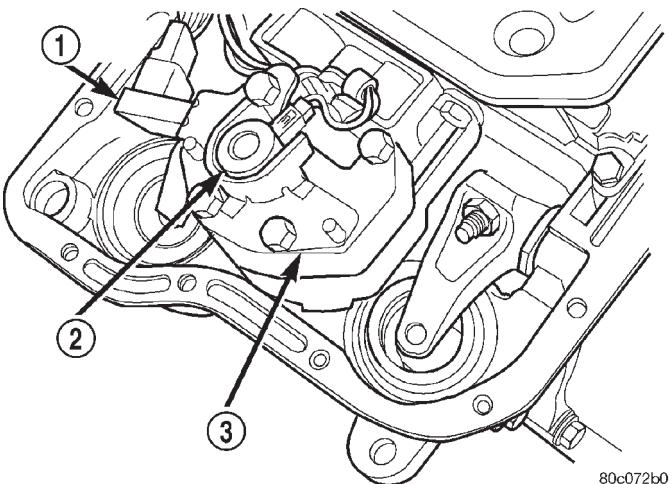
VALVE BODY

The valve body can be removed for service without having to remove the transmission assembly.

The valve body can be disassembled for cleaning and inspection of the individual components. Refer to Disassembly and Assembly section for proper procedures.

The only replaceable valve body components are:

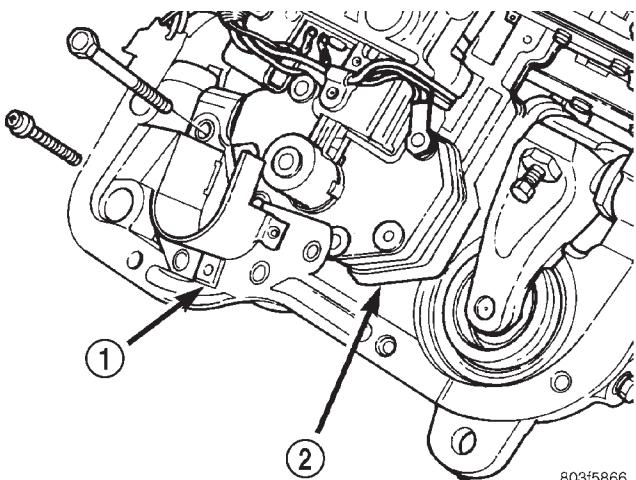
- Manual lever.



80c072b0

Fig. 83 Governor Solenoid And Pressure Sensor

- 1 – PRESSURE SENSOR
2 – PRESSURE SOLENOID
3 – GOVERNOR



803f5866

Fig. 84 Pressure Solenoid Retainer

- 1 – PRESSURE SOLENOID RETAINER
2 – GOVERNOR

- Manual lever washer, seal, E-clip, and shaft seal.
- Manual lever detent ball.
- Throttle lever.
- Fluid filter.
- Pressure adjusting screw bracket.
- Governor pressure solenoid.
- Governor pressure sensor (includes transmission temperature thermistor).
- Converter clutch/overdrive solenoid assembly and harness.
- Governor housing gasket.
- Solenoid case connector O-rings.

The remaining valve body components are serviced only as part of a complete valve body assembly.

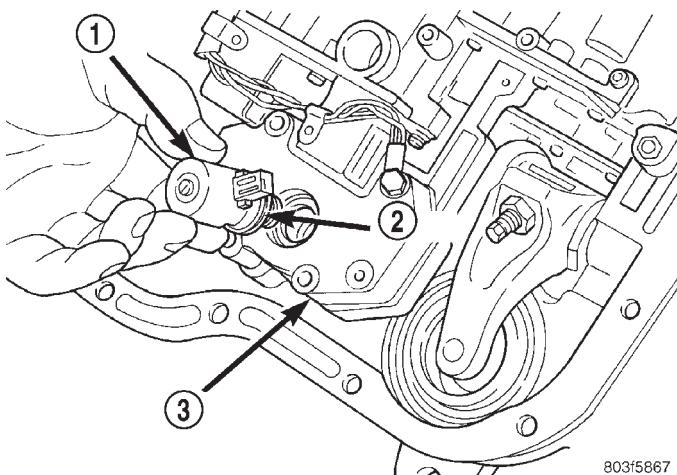


Fig. 85 Pressure Solenoid and O-ring

- 1 - PRESSURE SOLENOID
- 2 - O-RING
- 3 - GOVERNOR

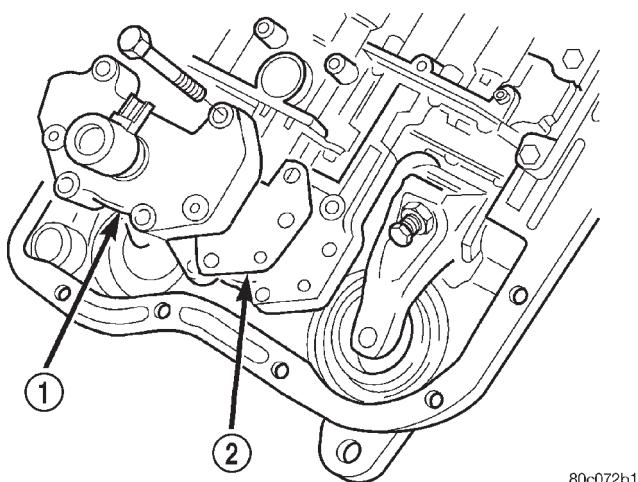


Fig. 86 Governor Body and Gasket

- 1 - GOVERNOR BODY
- 2 - GASKET

REMOVAL

- (1) Shift transmission into NEUTRAL.
- (2) Raise vehicle.
- (3) Remove gearshift and throttle levers from shaft of valve body manual lever.
- (4) Disconnect wires at solenoid case connector (Fig. 87).
- (5) Position drain pan under transmission oil pan.
- (6) Remove transmission oil pan and gasket.
- (7) Remove fluid filter from valve body.
- (8) Remove bolts attaching valve body to transmission case.
- (9) Lower valve body enough to remove accumulator piston and springs.

(10) Work manual lever shaft and electrical connector out of transmission case.

(11) Lower valve body, rotate valve body away from case, pull park rod out of sprag, and remove valve body (Fig. 88).

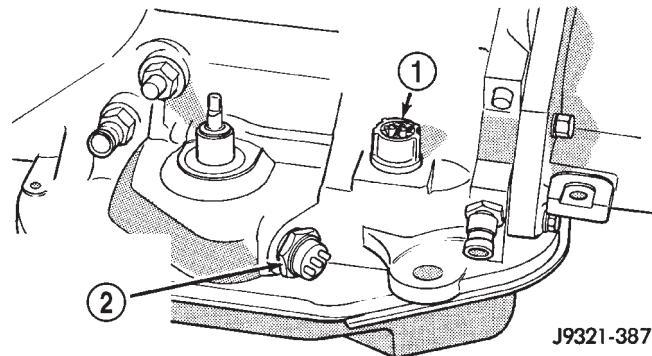


Fig. 87 Transmission Case Connector

- 1 - SOLENOID CASE CONNECTOR
- 2 - PARK/NEUTRAL POSITION SWITCH CONNECTOR TERMINAL

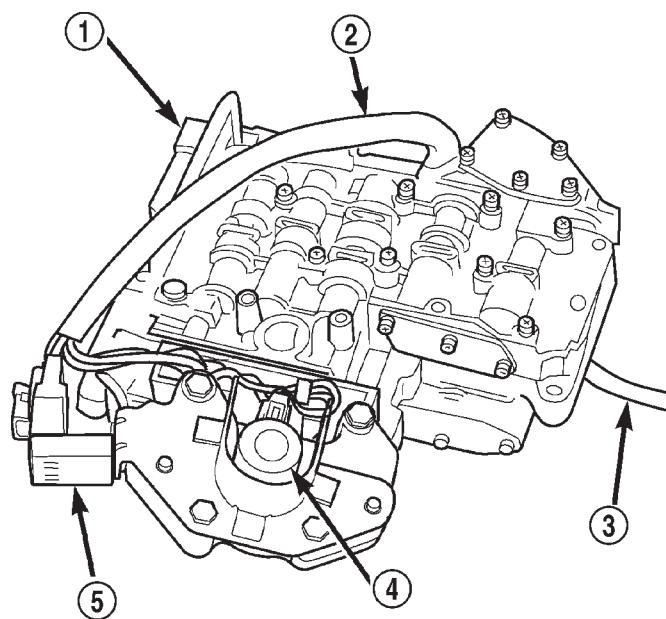


Fig. 88 Valve Body

- 1 - VALVE BODY
- 2 - WIRE HARNESS
- 3 - PARK ROD
- 4 - GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID
- 5 - GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR

INSTALLATION

- (1) Check condition of O-ring seals on valve body harness connector (Fig. 89). Replace seals on connector body if cut or worn.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

(2) Check condition of manual lever shaft seal in transmission case. Replace seal if lip is cut or worn. Install new seal with 15/16 deep well socket (Fig. 90).

(3) Check condition of seals on accumulator piston (Fig. 91). Install new piston seals, if necessary.

(4) Place valve body manual lever in low (1 position) so ball on park lock rod will be easier to install in sprag.

(5) Lubricate shaft of manual lever with petroleum jelly. This will ease inserting shaft through seal in case.

(6) Lubricate seal rings on valve body harness connector with petroleum jelly.

(7) Position valve body in case and work end of park lock rod into and through pawl sprag. Turn propeller shaft to align sprag and park lock teeth if necessary. The rod will click as it enters pawl. Move rod to check engagement.

CAUTION: It is possible for the park rod to displace into a cavity just above the pawl sprag during installation. Make sure the rod is actually engaged in the pawl and has not displaced into this cavity.

(8) Install accumulator springs and piston into case. Then swing valve body over piston and outer spring to hold it in place.

(9) Align accumulator piston and outer spring, manual lever shaft and electrical connector in case.

(10) Then seat valve body in case and install one or two bolts to hold valve body in place.

(11) Tighten valve body bolts alternately and evenly to 11 N·m (100 in. lbs.) torque.

(12) Install new fluid filter on valve body. Tighten filter screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

(13) Install throttle and gearshift levers on valve body manual lever shaft.

(14) Check and adjust front and rear bands if necessary.

(15) Connect solenoid case connector wires.

(16) Install oil pan and new gasket. Tighten pan bolts to 17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.) torque.

(17) Lower vehicle and fill transmission with Mopar® ATF Plus 3, type 7176 fluid.

(18) Check and adjust gearshift and throttle valve cables, if necessary.

OVERDRIVE UNIT

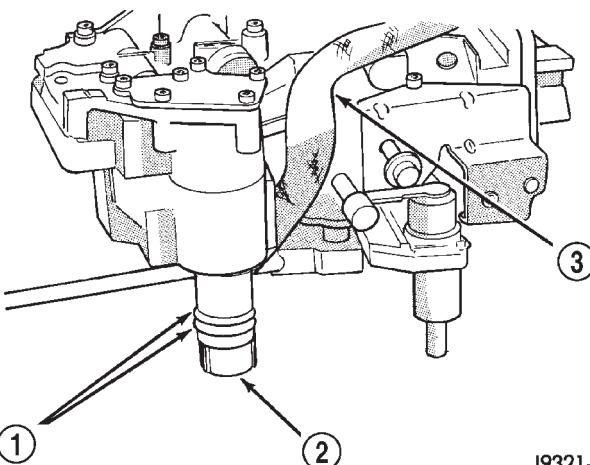
REMOVAL

(1) Shift transmission into Park.

(2) Raise vehicle.

(3) Remove transfer case, if equipped.

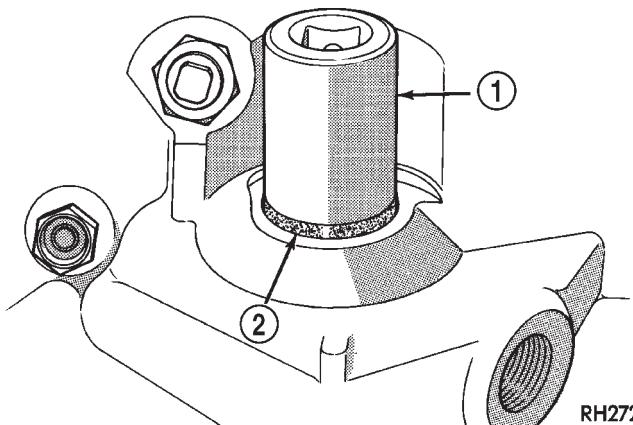
(4) Mark propeller shaft universal joint(s) and axle pinion yoke, or the companion flange and flange yoke, for alignment reference at installation, if necessary.



J9321-389

Fig. 89 Valve Body Harness Connector O-Ring Seal

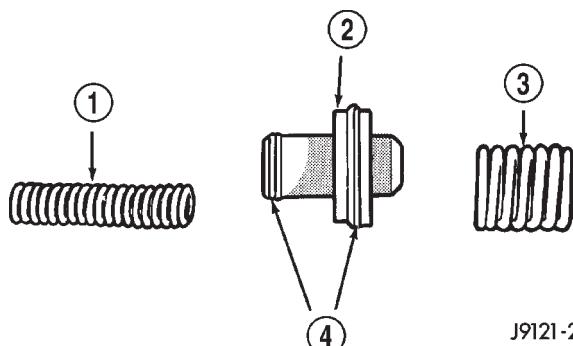
- 1 – CONNECTOR O-RINGS
- 2 – VALVE BODY HARNESS CONNECTOR
- 3 – HARNESS



RH272

Fig. 90 Manual Lever Shaft Seal

- 1 – 15/16" SOCKET
- 2 – SEAL



J9121-230

Fig. 91 Accumulator Piston Components

- 1 – INNER SPRING
- 2 – ACCUMULATOR PISTON
- 3 – OUTER SPRING
- 4 – SEAL RINGS

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

(5) Disconnect and remove the rear propeller shaft, if necessary.

(6) Remove transmission oil pan, remove gasket, drain oil and reinstall pan.

(7) If overdrive unit had malfunctioned, or if fluid is contaminated, remove entire transmission. If diagnosis indicated overdrive problems only, remove just the overdrive unit.

(8) Support transmission with transmission jack.

(9) Remove vehicle speed sensor.

(10) Remove bolts attaching overdrive unit to transmission (Fig. 92).

CAUTION: Support the overdrive unit with a jack before moving it rearward. This is necessary to prevent damaging the intermediate shaft. Do not allow the shaft to support the entire weight of the overdrive unit.

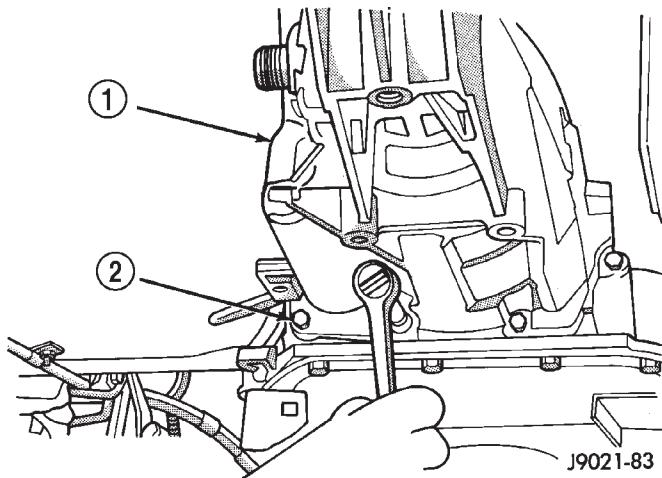


Fig. 92 Overdrive Unit Bolts

1 – OVERDRIVE UNIT

2 – ATTACHING BOLTS (7)

(11) Carefully work overdrive unit off intermediate shaft. Do not tilt unit during removal. Keep it as level as possible.

(12) If overdrive unit does not require service, immediately insert Alignment Tool 6227-2 in splines of planetary gear and overrunning clutch to prevent splines from rotating out of alignment. If misalignment occurs, overdrive unit will have to be disassembled in order to realign splines.

(13) Remove and retain overdrive piston thrust bearing. Bearing may remain on piston or in clutch hub during removal.

(14) Position drain pan on workbench.

(15) Place overdrive unit over drain pan. Tilt unit to drain residual fluid from case.

(16) Examine fluid for clutch material or metal fragments. If fluid contains these items, overhaul will be necessary.

(17) If overdrive unit does not require any service, leave alignment tool in position. Tool will prevent accidental misalignment of planetary gear and overrunning clutch splines.

INSTALLATION

(1) Be sure overdrive unit Alignment Tool 6227-2 is fully seated before moving unit. If tool is not seated and gear splines rotate out of alignment, overdrive unit will have to be disassembled in order to realign splines.

(2) If overdrive piston retainer was not removed during service and original case gasket is no longer reusable, prepare new gasket by trimming it.

(3) Cut out old case gasket around piston retainer with razor knife (Fig. 93).

(4) Use old gasket as template and trim new gasket to fit.

(5) Position new gasket over piston retainer and on transmission case. Use petroleum jelly to hold gasket in place if necessary. Do not use any type of sealer to secure gasket. Use petroleum jelly only.

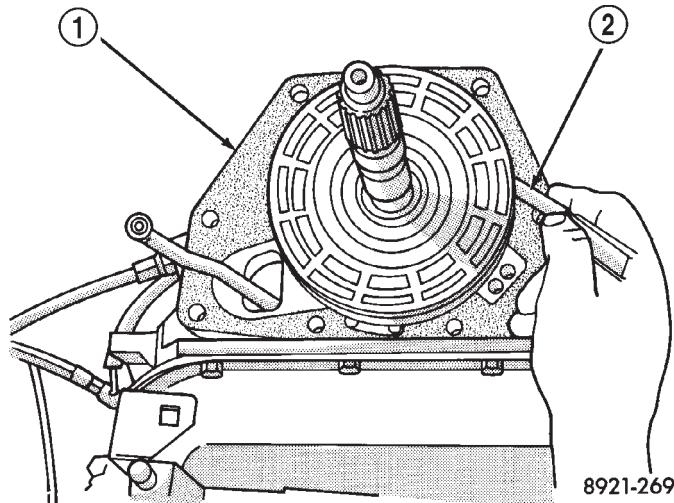


Fig. 93 Trimming Overdrive Case Gasket

1 – GASKET

2 – SHARP KNIFE

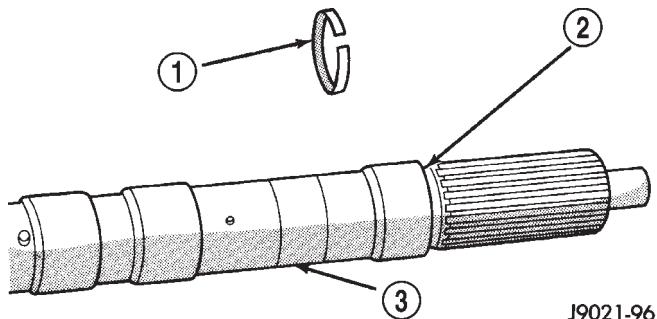
(6) Install selective spacer on intermediate shaft, if removed. Spacer goes in groove just rearward of shaft rear splines (Fig. 94).

(7) Install thrust bearing in overdrive unit sliding hub. Use petroleum jelly to hold bearing in position.

CAUTION: Be sure the shoulder on the inside diameter of the bearing is facing forward.

(8) Verify that splines in overdrive planetary gear and overrunning clutch hub are aligned with Alignment Tool 6227-2. Overdrive unit cannot be installed if splines are not aligned. If splines have rotated out

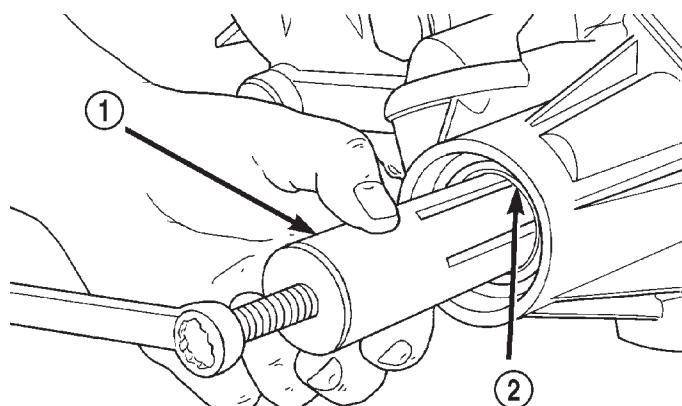
REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)



J9021-96

Fig. 94 Intermediate Shaft Selective Spacer Location

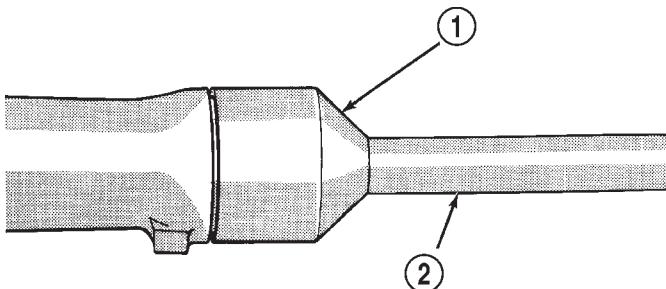
- 1 – SELECTIVE SPACER
2 – SPACER GROOVE
3 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT



80a11095

Fig. 95 Bushing Removal—Typical

- 1 – REMOVER 6957
2 – EXTENSION HOUSING BUSHING



J9521-58

Fig. 96 Overdrive Housing Seal Installation

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3995-A OR C-3972-A
2 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4471

OUTPUT SHAFT REAR BEARING**REMOVAL**

- (1) Remove overdrive unit from the vehicle.
- (2) Remove overdrive geartrain from housing.
- (3) Remove snap ring holding output shaft rear bearing into overdrive housing (Fig. 97).
- (4) Using a suitable driver inserted through the rear end of housing, drive bearing from housing.

INSTALLATION

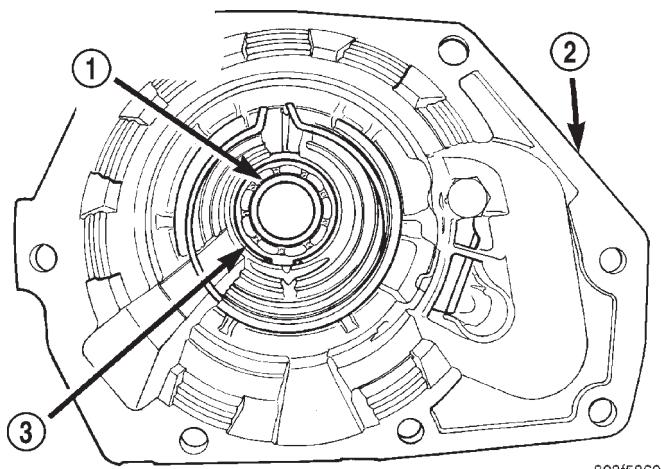
- (1) Place replacement bearing in position in housing.
- (2) Using a suitable driver, drive bearing into housing until the snap ring groove is visible.
- (3) Install snap ring to hold bearing into housing (Fig. 97).
- (4) Install overdrive geartrain into housing.
- (5) Install overdrive unit in vehicle.

OVERDRIVE HOUSING BUSHING**REMOVAL**

- (1) Remove overdrive housing yoke seal.
- (2) Insert Remover 6957 into overdrive housing. Tighten tool to bushing and remove bushing (Fig. 95).

INSTALLATION

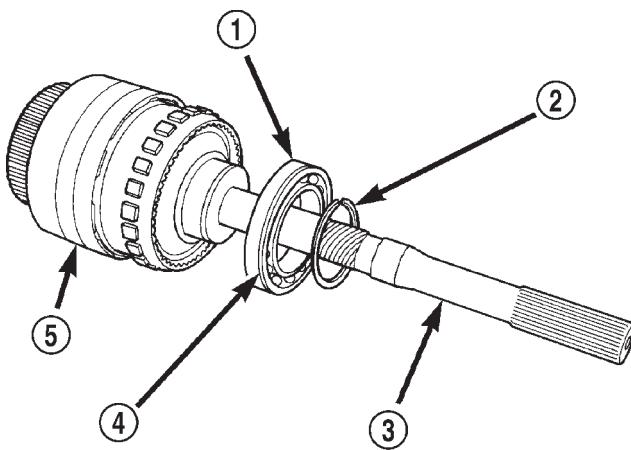
- (1) Align bushing oil hole with oil slot in overdrive housing.
- (2) Tap bushing into place with Installer 6951 and Handle C-4171.
- (3) Install new oil seal in housing using Seal Installer C-3995-A (Fig. 96).



803f5860

Fig. 97 Output Shaft Rear Bearing

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT REAR BEARING
- 2 – OVERDRIVE HOUSING
- 3 – SNAP RING



803f5861

Fig. 98 Output Shaft Front Bearing

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT FRONT BEARING
- 2 – SNAP RING
- 3 – OUTPUT SHAFT
- 4 – GROOVE TO REAR
- 5 – OVERDRIVE GEARTRAIN

OUTPUT SHAFT FRONT BEARING

REMOVAL

- (1) Remove overdrive unit from the vehicle.
- (2) Remove overdrive geartrain from housing.
- (3) Remove snap ring holding output shaft front bearing to overdrive geartrain. (Fig. 98).
- (4) Pull bearing from output shaft.

INSTALLATION

- (1) Place replacement bearing in position on geartrain with locating retainer groove toward the rear.
- (2) Push bearing onto shaft until the snap ring groove is visible.
- (3) Install snap ring to hold bearing onto output shaft (Fig. 98).
- (4) Install overdrive geartrain into housing.
- (5) Install overdrive unit in vehicle.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

VALVE BODY

Remove the valve body from the transmission, refer to Removal and Installation procedures section in this group.

DISASSEMBLY

CAUTION: Do not clamp any valve body component in a vise. This practice can damage the component resulting in unsatisfactory operation after assembly and installation. Do not use pliers to remove any of the valves, plugs or springs and do not force any of the components out or into place. The valves and valve body housings will be damaged if force is used. Tag or mark the valve body springs for reference as they are removed. Do not allow them to become intermixed.

- (1) Remove fluid filter.
- (2) Disconnect wires from governor pressure sensor and solenoid.
- (3) Remove screws attaching governor body and retainer plate to transfer plate.
- (4) Remove retainer plate, governor body and gasket from transfer plate.
- (5) Remove governor pressure sensor from governor body
- (6) Remove governor pressure solenoid by pulling it straight out of bore in governor body. Remove and discard solenoid O-rings if worn, cut, or torn.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(7) Remove small shoulder bolt that secures solenoid harness case connector to 3-4 accumulator housing (Fig. 99). **Retain shoulder bolt. Either tape it to harness or thread it back into accumulator housing after connector removal.**

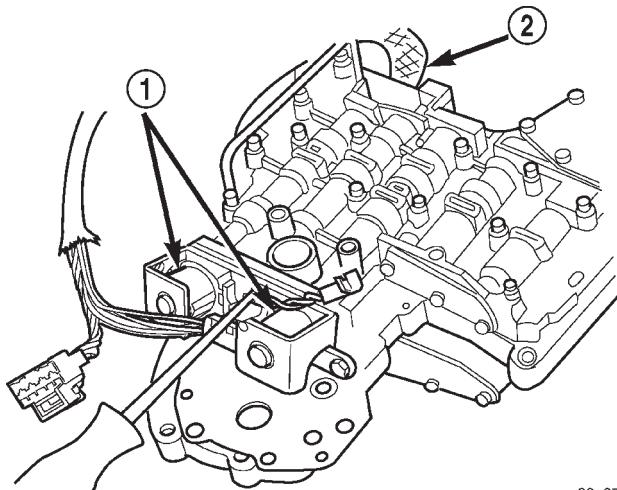
(8) Unhook overdrive/converter solenoid harness from 3-4 accumulator cover plate (Fig. 100).

(9) Turn valve body over and remove screws that attach overdrive/converter solenoid assembly to valve body (Fig. 101).

(10) Remove solenoid and harness assembly from valve body (Fig. 102).

(11) Remove boost valve cover (Fig. 103).

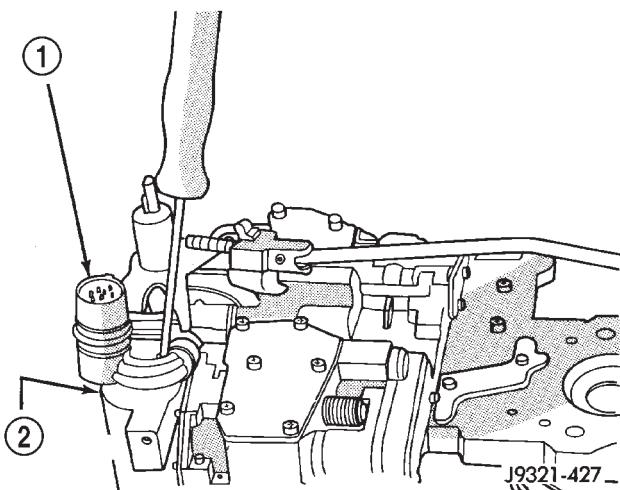
(12) Remove boost valve retainer, valve spring and boost valve (Fig. 104).



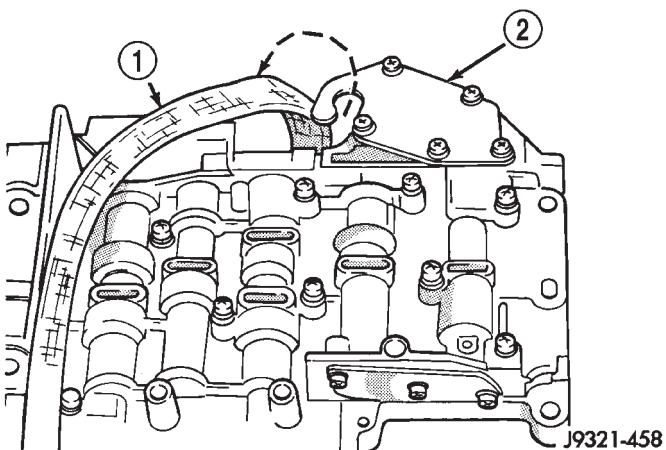
80c072b3

Fig. 101 Solenoid Assembly Screws

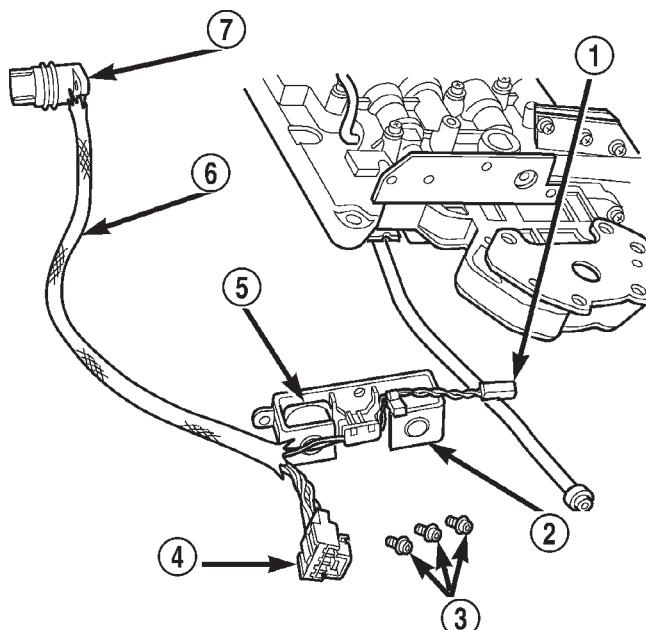
1 – OVERDRIVE/CONVERTER CLUTCH SOLENOID ASSEMBLY
2 – HARNESS

**Fig. 99 Solenoid Harness Case Connector Shoulder Bolt**

1 – SOLENOID HARNESS CASE CONNECTOR
2 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING

**Fig. 100 Unhooking Solenoid Harness From Accumulator Cover Plate**

1 – OVERDRIVE/CONVERTER SOLENOID WIRE HARNESS
2 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR COVER PLATE



80c072b4

Fig. 102 Solenoid Assembly

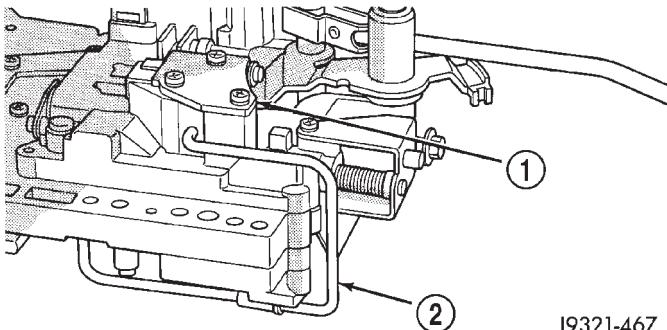
1 – GOVERNOR SOLENOID WIRES
2 – CONVERTER CLUTCH SOLENOID
3 – SOLENOID SCREWS
4 – GOVERNOR SENSOR WIRES
5 – OVERDRIVE SOLENOID
6 – HARNESS
7 – CASE CONNECTOR

(13) Secure detent ball and spring with Retainer Tool 6583 (Fig. 105).

(14) Remove park rod E-clip and separate rod from manual lever (Fig. 106).

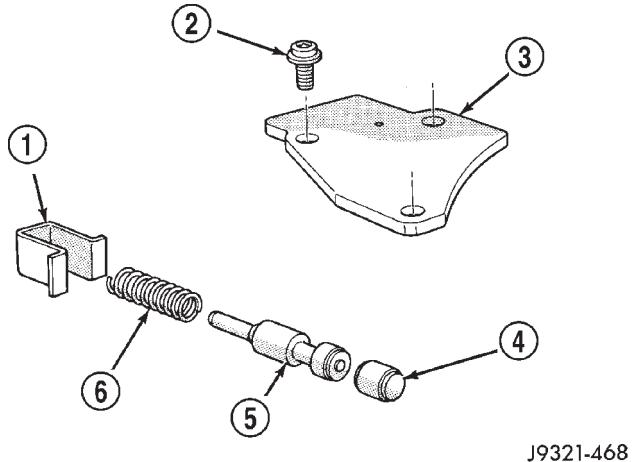
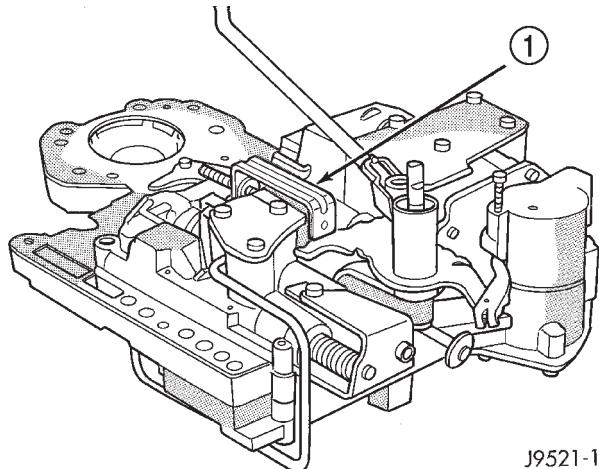
(15) Remove E-clip and washer that retains throttle lever shaft in manual lever (Fig. 107).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 103 Boost Valve Cover Location**

1 – BOOST VALVE HOUSING AND COVER

2 – BOOST VALVE TUBE

**Fig. 104 Boost Valve Components**

1 – SPRING AND VALVE RETAINER

2 – COVER SCREWS

3 – BOOST VALVE COVER

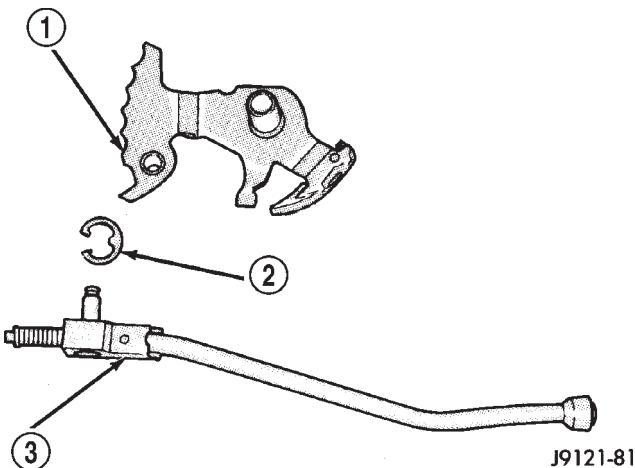
4 – BOOST VALVE PLUG

5 – BOOST VALVE

6 – BOOST VALVE SPRING

Fig. 105 Detent Ball And Spring

1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6583 POSITIONED ON DETENT HOUSING

**Fig. 106 Park Rod**

1 – MANUAL LEVER

2 – E-CLIP

3 – PARK ROD

(16) Remove manual lever and throttle lever (Fig. 108). Rotate and lift manual lever off valve body and throttle lever shaft. Then slide throttle lever out of valve body.

(17) Position pencil magnet next to detent housing to catch detent ball and spring. Then carefully remove Retainer Tool 6583 and remove detent ball and spring (Fig. 109).

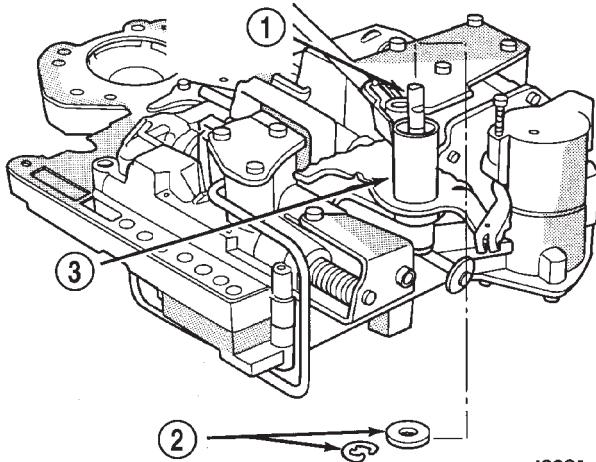
(18) Remove screws attaching pressure adjusting screw bracket to valve body and transfer plate (Fig. 110). Hold bracket firmly against spring tension while removing last screw.

(19) Remove adjusting screw bracket, line pressure adjusting screw, pressure regulator valve spring and switch valve spring (Fig. 111). **Do not remove throttle pressure adjusting screw from bracket and do not disturb setting of either adjusting screw during removal.**

(20) Turn upper housing over and remove switch valve, regulator valve and spring, and manual valve (Fig. 112).

(21) Remove kickdown detent, kickdown valve, and throttle valve and spring (Fig. 112).

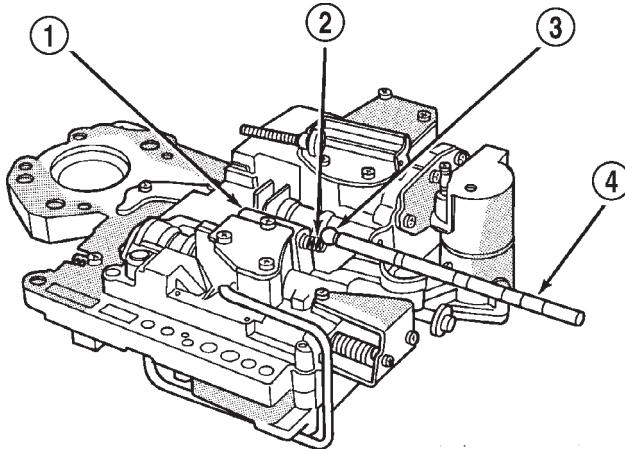
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9321-424

Fig. 107 Throttle Lever E-Clip And Washer

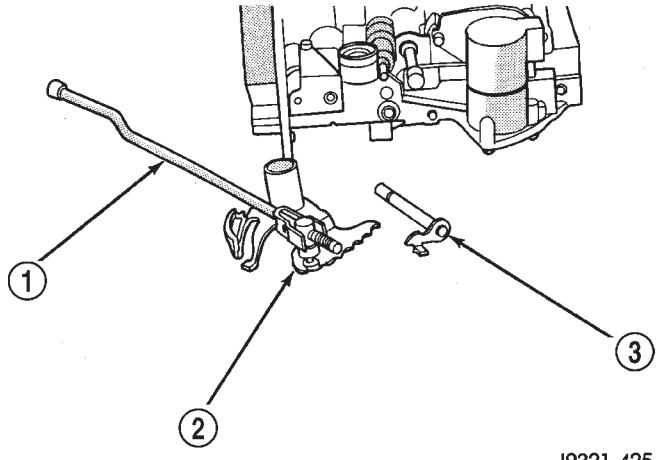
- 1 – THROTTLE LEVER SHAFT
- 2 – E-CLIP AND WASHER
- 3 – MANUAL SHAFT



J9321-426

Fig. 109 Detent Ball And Spring

- 1 – DETENT HOUSING
- 2 – DETENT SPRING
- 3 – DETENT BALL
- 4 – PENCIL MAGNET



J9321-425

Fig. 108 Manual And Throttle Lever

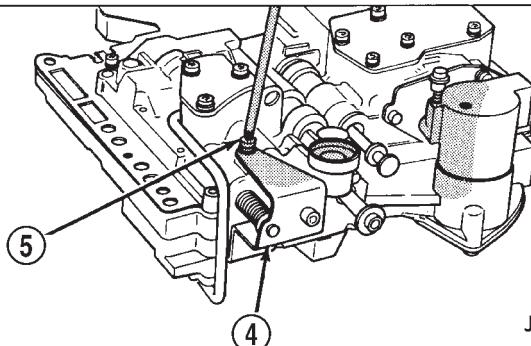
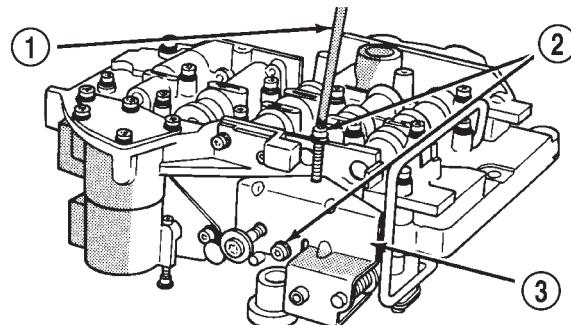
- 1 – PARK ROD
- 2 – MANUAL LEVER ASSEMBLY
- 3 – THROTTLE LEVER

(22) Loosen left-side 3-4 accumulator housing attaching screw about 2-3 threads. Then remove center and right-side housing attaching screws (Fig. 113).

(23) Carefully rotate 3-4 accumulator housing upward and remove 3-4 shift valve spring and converter clutch valve plug and spring (Fig. 114).

(24) Remove left-side screw and remove 3-4 accumulator housing from valve body (Fig. 115).

(25) Bend back tabs on boost valve tube brace (Fig. 116).

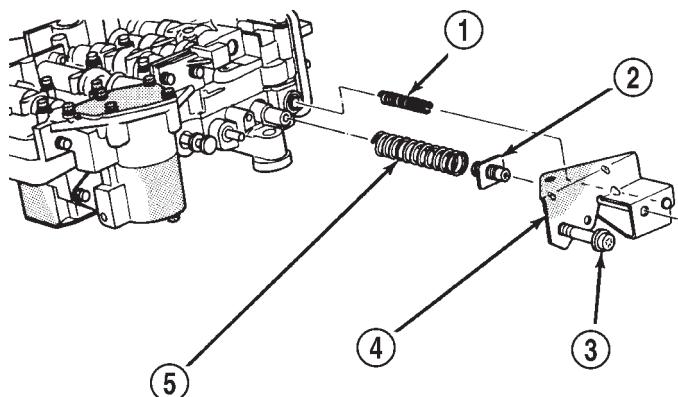


J9321-430

Fig. 110 Adjusting Screw Bracket Fastener

- 1 – T25 TORX BIT
- 2 – REMOVE THESE SCREWS FIRST
- 3 – BRACKET
- 4 – BRACKET
- 5 – REMOVE THIS SCREW LAST

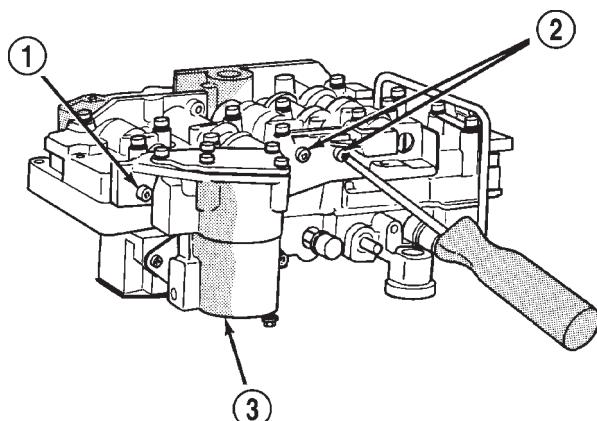
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9321-431

Fig. 111 Adjusting Screw Bracket And Spring

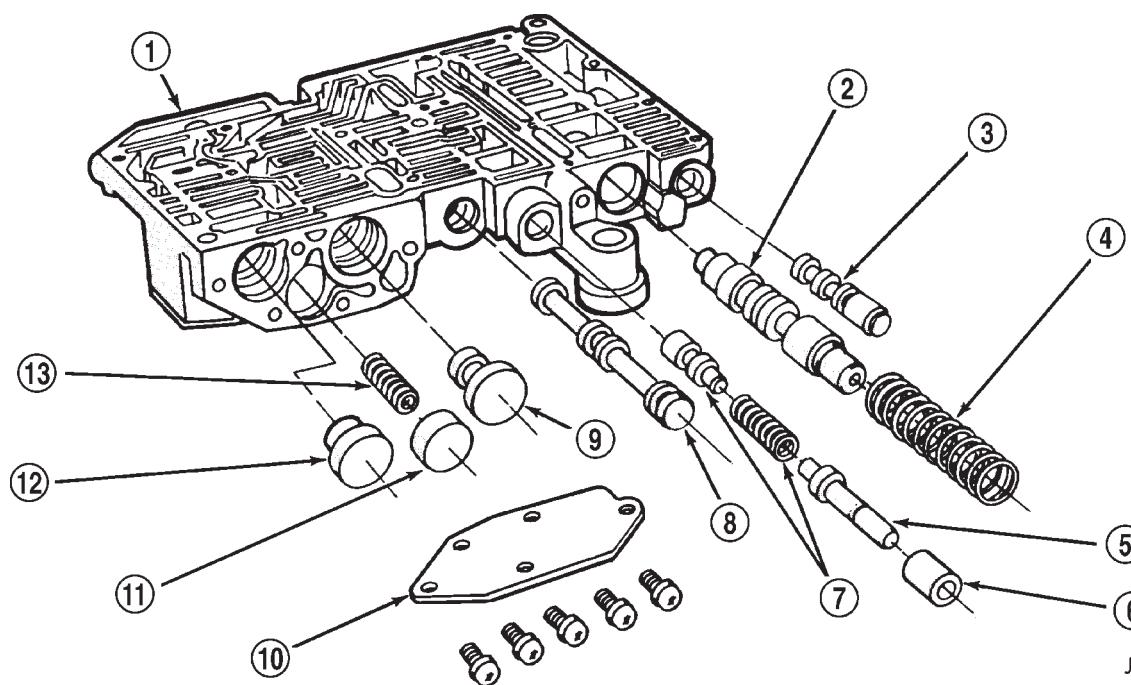
- 1 – SWITCH VALVE SPRING
- 2 – LINE PRESSURE SCREW
- 3 – THROTTLE PRESSURE ADJUSTING SCREW
- 4 – ADJUSTING SCREW BRACKET
- 5 – PRESSURE REGULATOR VALVE SPRING



J9321-432

Fig. 113 Accumulator Housing Screw Locations

- 1 – LOOSEN THIS SCREW
- 2 – REMOVE THESE SCREWS
- 3 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING



J9321-155

Fig. 112 Upper Housing Control Valve Locations

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 – UPPER HOUSING | 8 – MANUAL VALVE |
| 2 – REGULATOR VALVE | 9 – 1-2 GOVERNOR PLUG |
| 3 – SWITCH VALVE | 10 – GOVERNOR PLUG COVER |
| 4 – REGULATOR VALVE SPRING | 11 – THROTTLE PLUG |
| 5 – KICKDOWN VALVE | 12 – 2-3 GOVERNOR PLUG |
| 6 – KICKDOWN DETENT | 13 – SHUTTLE VALVE PRIMARY SPRING |
| 7 – THROTTLE VALVE AND SPRING | |

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

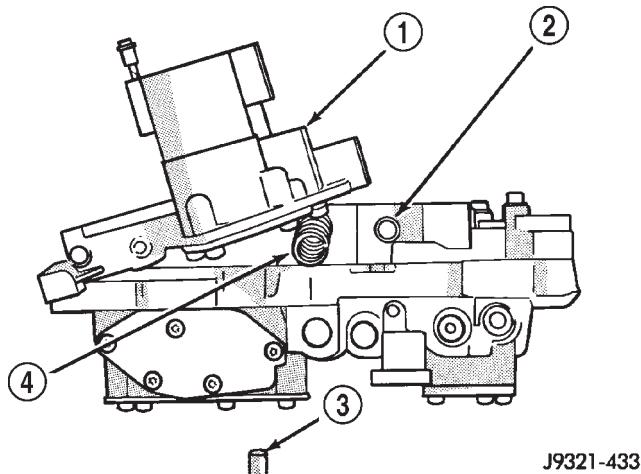
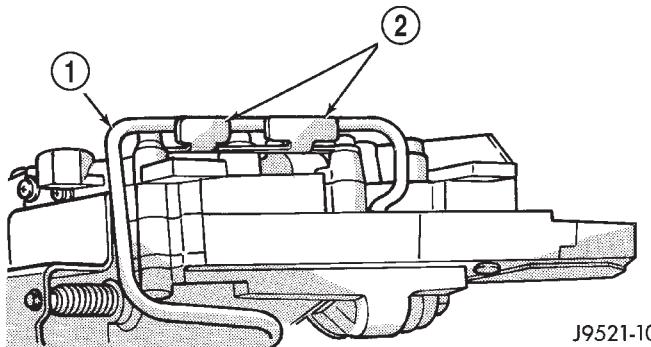


Fig. 114 3-4 Shift And Converter Clutch Valve Springs And Plug

- 1 – ACCUMULATOR HOUSING
- 2 – CONVERTER CLUTCH VALVE SPRING
- 3 – CLUTCH VALVE PLUG
- 4 – 3-4 SHIFT VALVE SPRING

J9321-433



J9521-101

Fig. 116 Boost Valve Tube Brace

- 1 – BOOST VALVE TUBE
- 2 – TUBE BRACE (DOUBLE TAB)

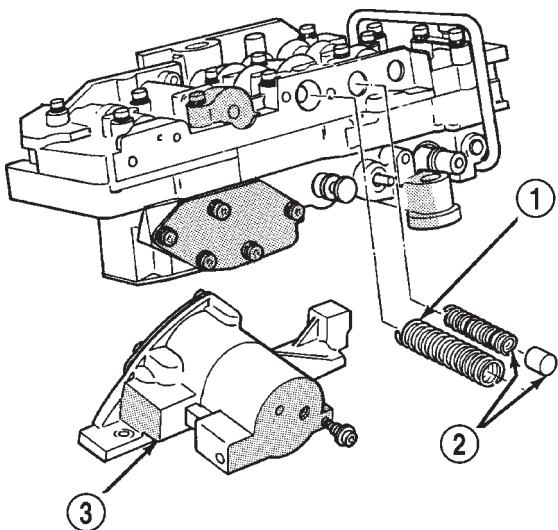


Fig. 115 Accumulator Housing, Valve Springs And Plug

- 1 – 3-4 SHIFT VALVE SPRING
- 2 – CONVERTER CLUTCH VALVE SPRING AND PLUG
- 3 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING

J9321-434

(26) Remove boost valve connecting tube (Fig. 117). Disengage tube from upper housing port first. Then rock opposite end of tube back and forth to work it out of lower housing.

CAUTION: Do not use tools to loosen or pry the connecting tube out of the valve body housings. Loosen and remove the tube by hand only.

(27) Turn valve body over so lower housing is facing upward (Fig. 118). In this position, the two check balls in upper housing will remain in place and not fall out when lower housing and separator plate are removed.

(28) Remove screws attaching valve body lower housing to upper housing and transfer plate (Fig. 118). **Note position of boost valve tube brace for assembly reference.**

(29) Remove lower housing and overdrive separator plate from transfer plate (Fig. 118).

(30) Remove the ECE check ball from the transfer plate (Fig. 119). The ECE check ball is approximately 4.8 mm (3/16 in.) in diameter.

(31) Remove transfer plate from upper housing (Fig. 120).

(32) Turn transfer plate over so upper housing separator plate is facing upward.

(33) Remove upper housing separator plate from transfer plate (Fig. 121). Note position of filter in separator plate for assembly reference.

(34) Remove rear clutch and rear servo check balls from transfer plate. Note check ball location for assembly reference (Fig. 122).

VALVE BODY UPPER HOUSING

(1) Note location of check balls in valve body upper housing (Fig. 123). Then remove the one large diameter and the six smaller diameter check balls.

(2) Remove governor plug and shuttle valve covers (Fig. 125).

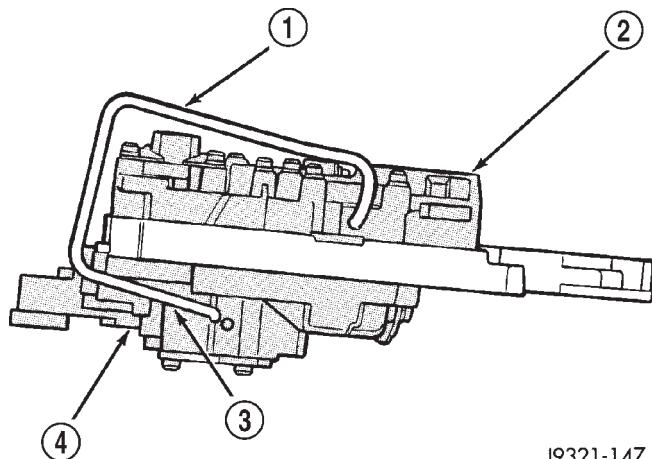
(3) Remove E-clip that secures shuttle valve secondary spring on valve stem (Fig. 124).

(4) Remove throttle plug, primary spring, shuttle valve, secondary spring, and spring guides (Fig. 125).

(5) Remove boost valve retainer, spring and valve if not previously removed.

(6) Remove throttle plug and 1-2 and 2-3 governor plugs (Fig. 112).

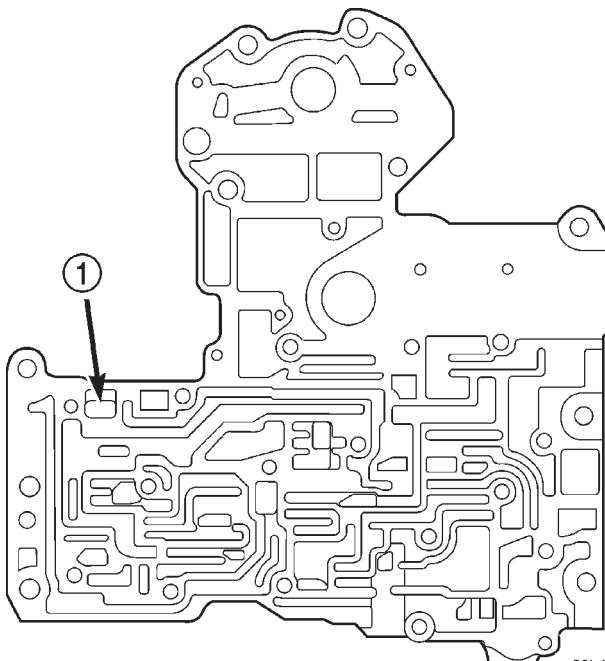
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9321-147

Fig. 117 Boost Valve Tube

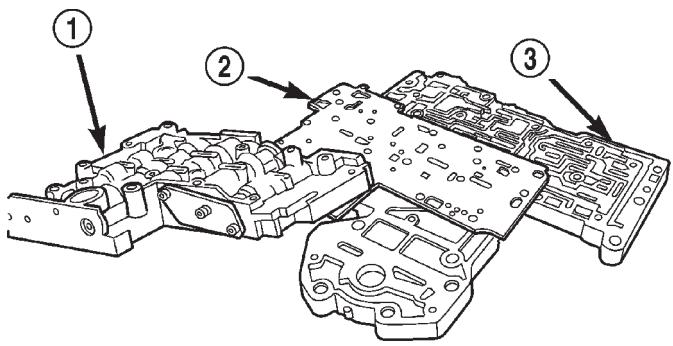
- 1 – BOOST VALVE TUBE
- 2 – LOWER HOUSING
- 3 – DISENGAGE THIS END OF TUBE FIRST
- 4 – UPPER HOUSING



80b17125

Fig. 119 ECE Check Ball

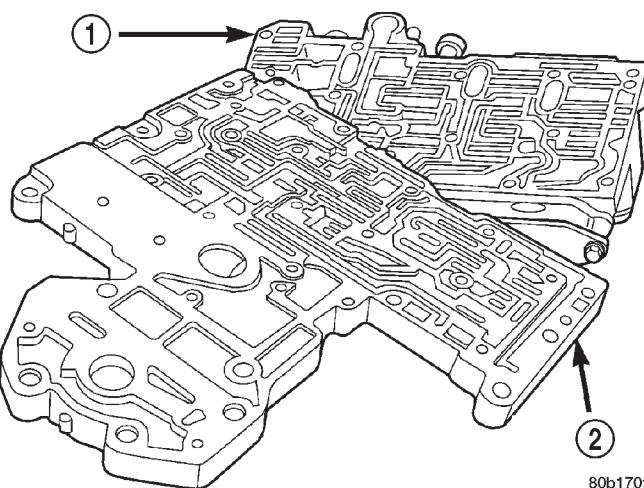
- 1 – ECE CHECK BALL (3/16")



80b170f8

Fig. 118 Lower Housing

- 1 – LOWER HOUSING
- 2 – OVERDRIVE SEPARATOR PLATE
- 3 – TRANSFER PLATE AND UPPER HOUSING



80b170f9

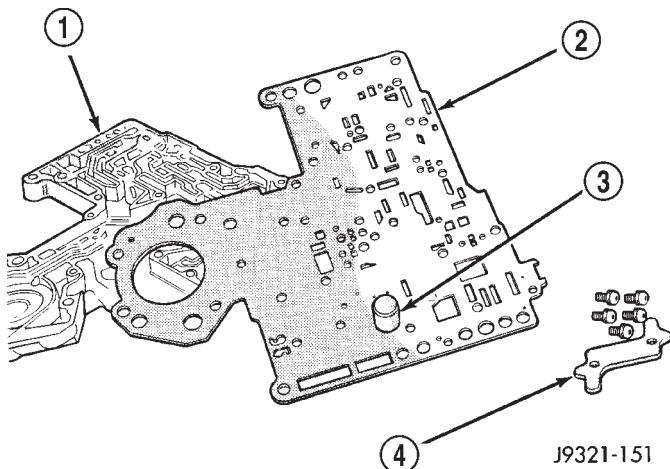
Fig. 120 Transfer Plate

- 1 – UPPER HOUSING
- 2 – TRANSFER PLATE

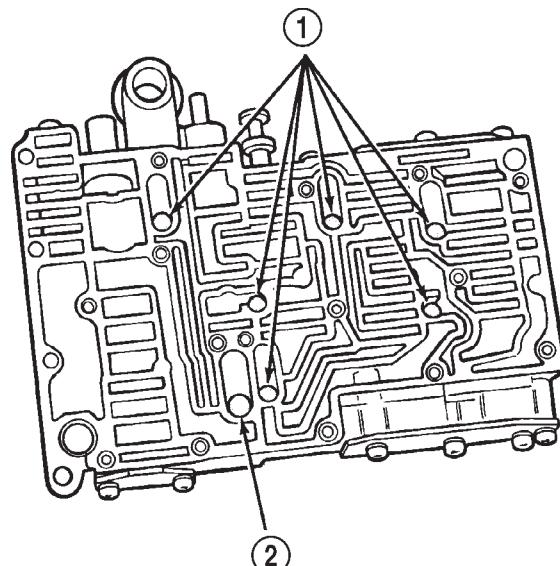
(7) Turn upper housing around and remove limit valve and shift valve covers (Fig. 126).

(8) Remove limit valve housing. Then remove retainer, spring, limit valve, and 2-3 throttle plug from limit valve housing (Fig. 126).

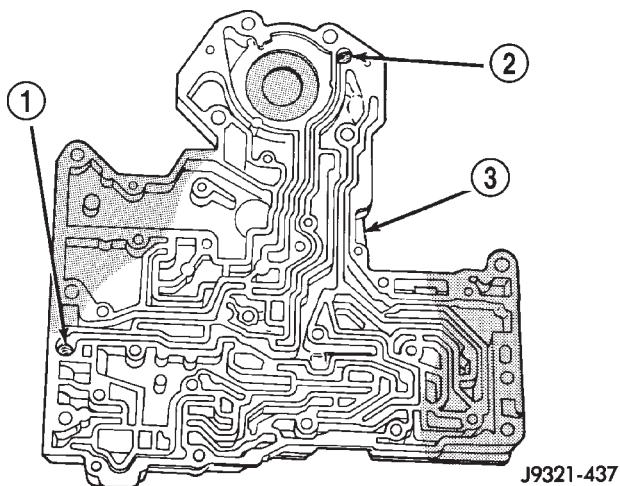
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 121 Upper Housing Separator Plate**

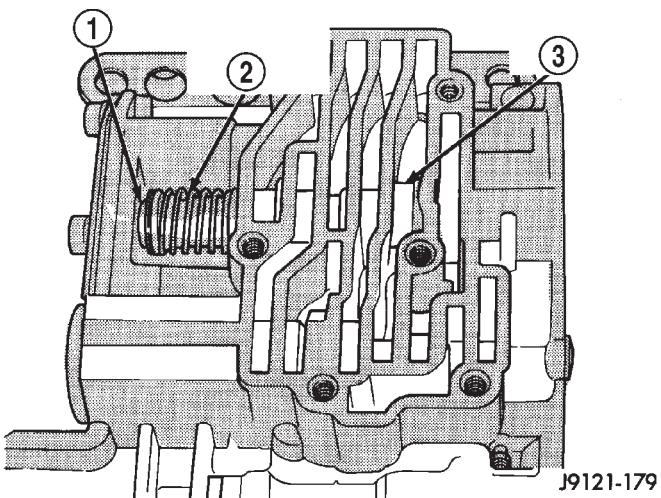
- 1 – TRANSFER PLATE
- 2 – UPPER HOUSING SEPARATOR PLATE
- 3 – FILTER SCREEN
- 4 – BRACE

**Fig. 123 Check Ball Locations In Upper Housing**

- 1 – SMALL DIAMETER CHECK BALLS (6)
- 2 – LARGE DIAMETER CHECK BALL (1)

**Fig. 122 Rear Clutch And Rear Servo Check Ball Locations**

- 1 – REAR CLUTCH CHECK BALL
- 2 – REAR SERVO CHECK BALL
- 3 – TRANSFER PLATE

**Fig. 124 Shuttle Valve E-Clip And Secondary Spring Location**

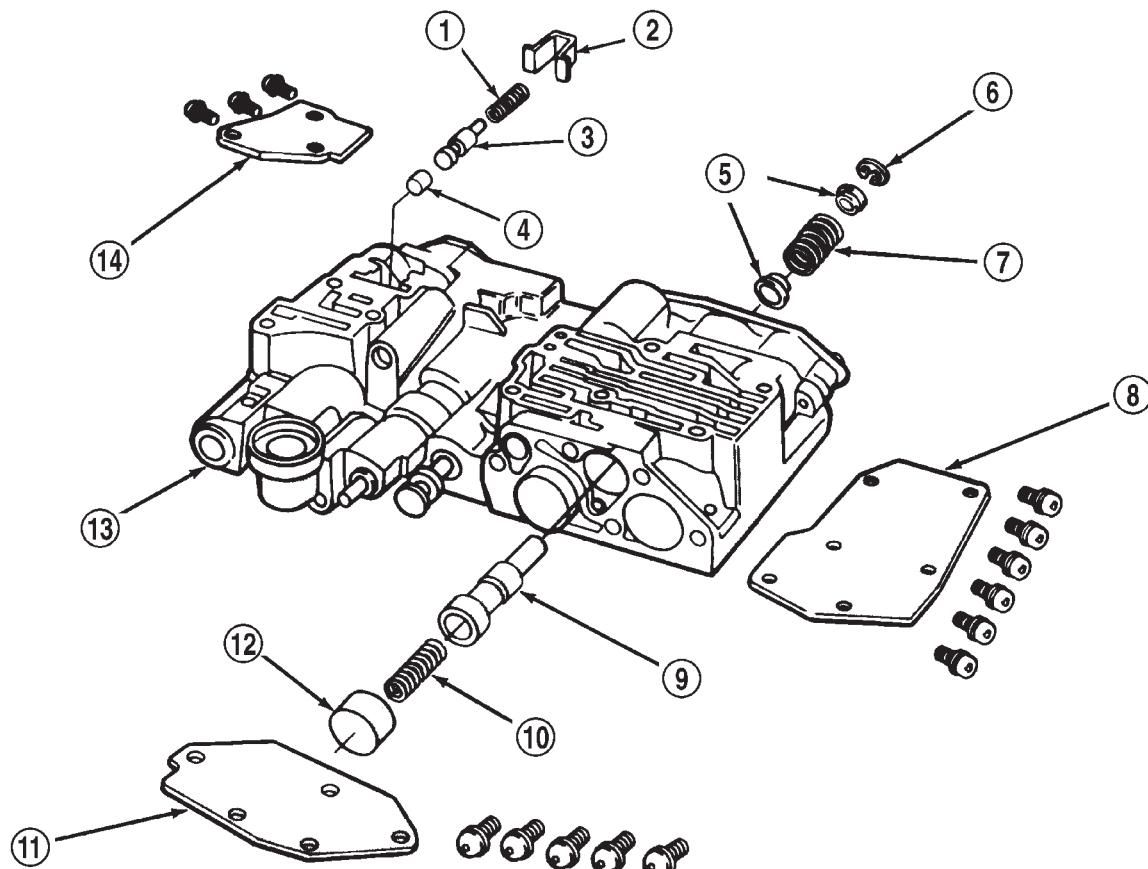
- 1 – E-CLIP
- 2 – SECONDARY SPRING AND GUIDES
- 3 – SHUTTLE VALVE

VALVE BODY LOWER HOUSING

- (1) Remove timing valve cover.
- (2) Remove 3-4 timing valve and spring.
- (3) Remove 3-4 quick fill valve, spring and plug.
- (4) Remove 3-4 shift valve and spring.
- (5) Remove converter clutch valve, spring and plug (Fig. 127).

- (9) Remove 1-2 shift control valve and spring (Fig. 126).
- (10) Remove 1-2 shift valve and spring (Fig. 126).
- (11) Remove 2-3 shift valve and spring from valve body (Fig. 126).
- (12) Remove pressure plug cover (Fig. 126).
- (13) Remove line pressure plug, sleeve, throttle pressure plug and spring (Fig. 126).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

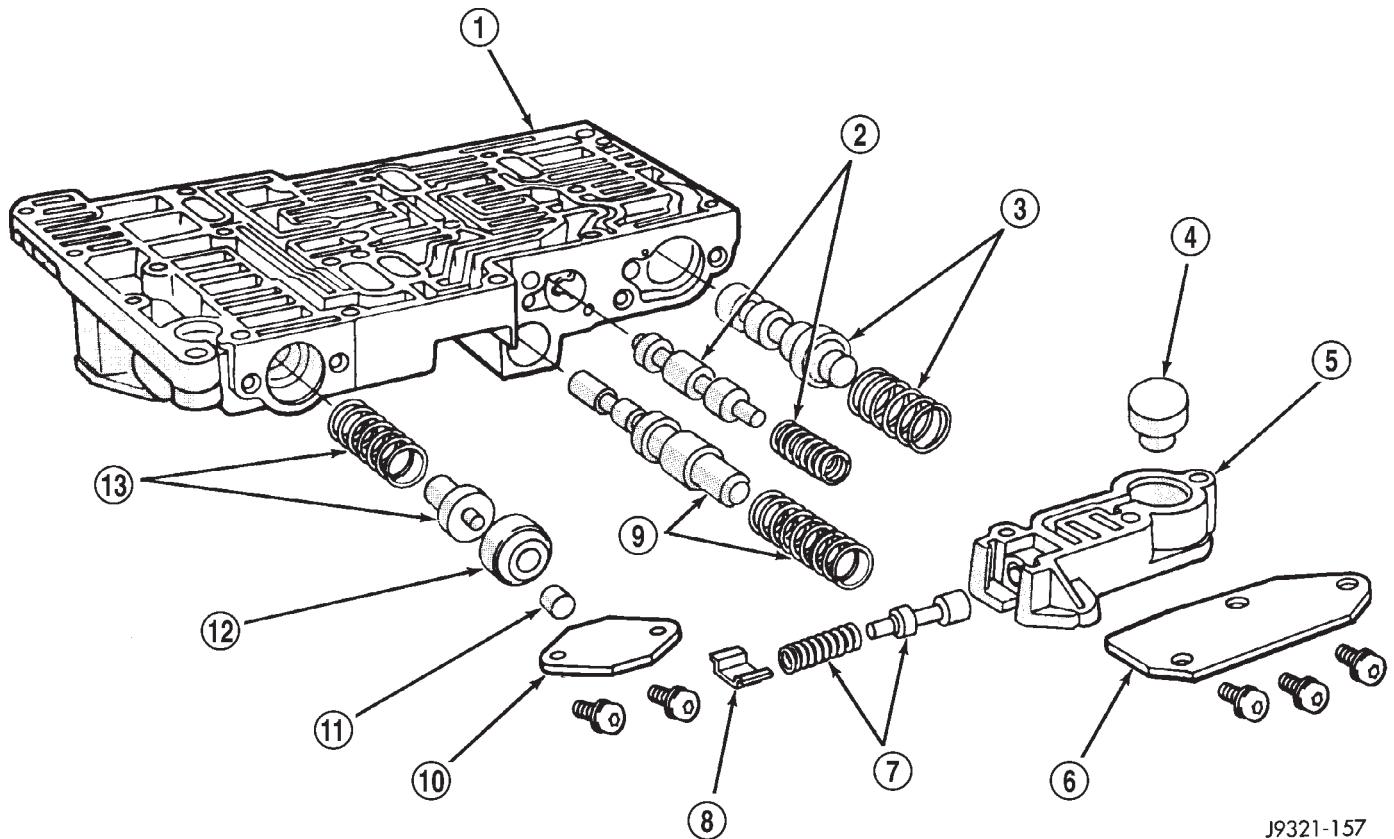


J9421-217

Fig. 125 Shuttle And Boost Valve Components

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 – SPRING | 8 – SHUTTLE VALVE COVER |
| 2 – RETAINER | 9 – SHUTTLE VALVE |
| 3 – BOOST VALVE | 10 – SHUTTLE VALVE PRIMARY SPRING |
| 4 – BOOST VALVE PLUG | 11 – GOVERNOR PLUG COVER |
| 5 – SPRING GUIDES | 12 – THROTTLE PLUG |
| 6 – E-CLIP | 13 – UPPER HOUSING |
| 7 – SHUTTLE VALVE SECONDARY SPRING | 14 – BOOST VALVE COVER |

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

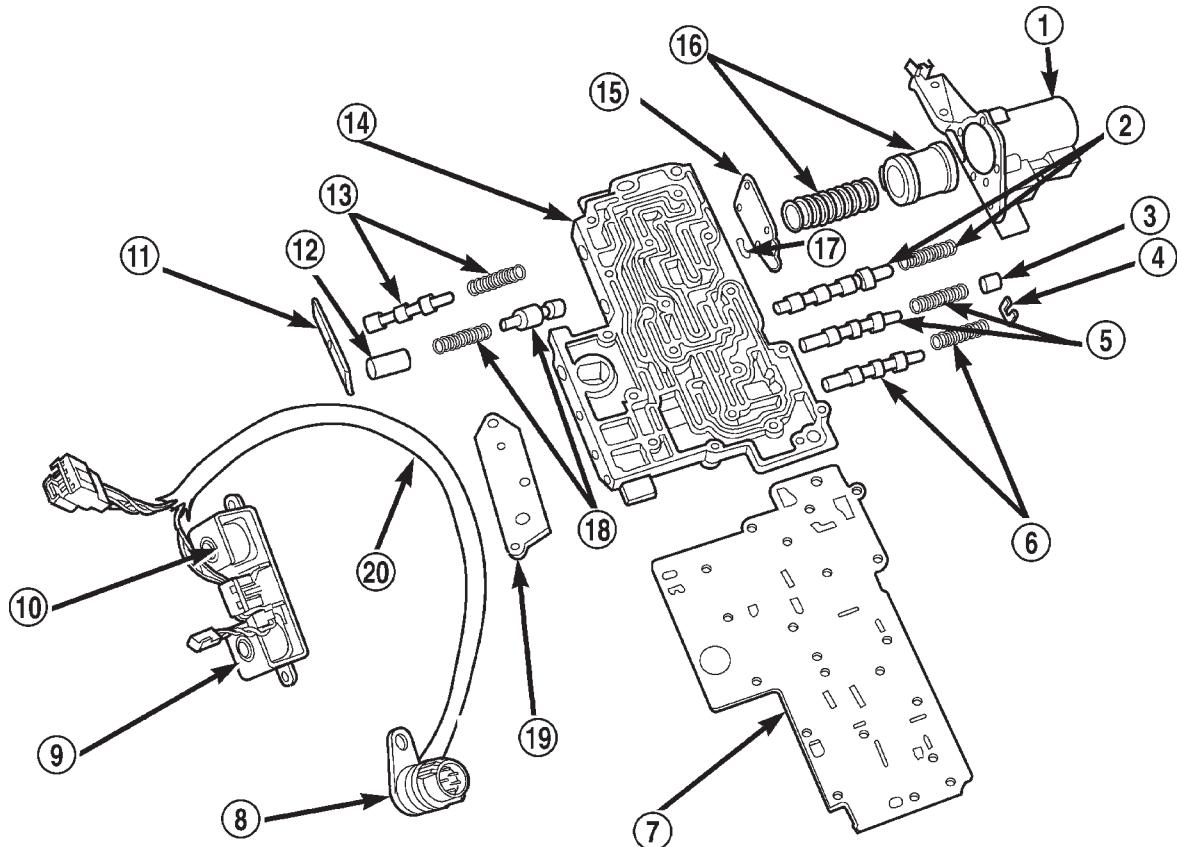


J9321-157

Fig. 126 Upper Housing Shift Valve And Pressure Plug Locations

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1 – UPPER HOUSING | 8 – RETAINER |
| 2 – 1-2 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING | 9 – 1-2 SHIFT CONTROL VALVE AND SPRING |
| 3 – 2-3 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING | 10 – PRESSURE PLUG COVER |
| 4 – 2-3 THROTTLE PLUG | 11 – LINE PRESSURE PLUG |
| 5 – LIMIT VALVE HOUSING | 12 – PLUG SLEEVE |
| 6 – LIMIT VALVE COVER | 13 – THROTTLE PRESSURE SPRING AND PLUG |
| 7 – LIMIT VALVE AND SPRING | |

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



80c072b5

Fig. 127 Lower Housing Shift Valves And Springs

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING | 11 – TIMING VALVE COVER |
| 2 – 3-4 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING | 12 – PLUG |
| 3 – PLUG | 13 – 3-4 TIMING VALVE AND SPRING |
| 4 – SPRING RETAINER | 14 – LOWER HOUSING |
| 5 – CONVERTER CLUTCH VALVE AND SPRING | 15 – ACCUMULATOR END PLATE |
| 6 – CONVERTER CLUTCH TIMING VALVE AND SPRING | 16 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR PISTON AND SPRING |
| 7 – OVERDRIVE SEPARATOR PLATE | 17 – E-CLIP |
| 8 – CASE CONNECTOR | 18 – 3-4 QUICK FILL SPRING AND VALVE |
| 9 – CONVERTER CLUTCH SOLENOID | 19 – SOLENOID GASKET |
| 10 – OVERDRIVE SOLENOID | 20 – HARNESS |

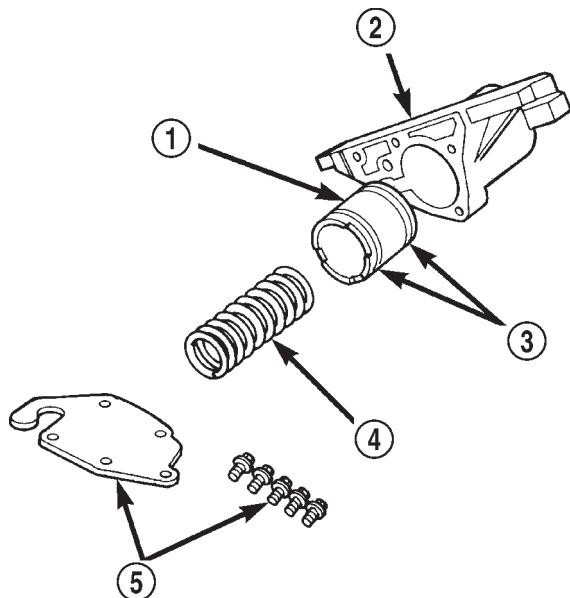
(6) Remove converter clutch timing valve, retainer and valve spring.

3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING

(1) Remove end plate from housing.

(2) Remove piston spring.
 (3) Remove piston. Remove and discard piston seals (Fig. 128).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 128 Accumulator Housing Components**

- 1 – ACCUMULATOR PISTON
 2 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING
 3 – TEFLON SEALS
 4 – PISTON SPRING
 5 – COVER PLATE AND SCREWS

804d8eb9

ASSEMBLY

CAUTION: Do not force valves or plugs into place during reassembly. If the valve body bores, valves and plugs are free of distortion or burrs, the valve body components should all slide into place easily. In addition, do not overtighten the transfer plate and valve body screws during reassembly. Overtightening can distort the housings resulting in valve sticking, cross leakage and unsatisfactory operation. Tighten valve body screws to recommended torque only.

LOWER HOUSING

- (1) Lubricate valves, springs, and the housing valve and plug bores with clean transmission fluid (Fig. 127).
- (2) Install 3-4 timing valve spring and valve in lower housing.
- (3) Install 3-4 quick fill valve in lower housing.
- (4) Install 3-4 quick fill valve spring and plug in housing.
- (5) Install timing valve end plate. Tighten end plate screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

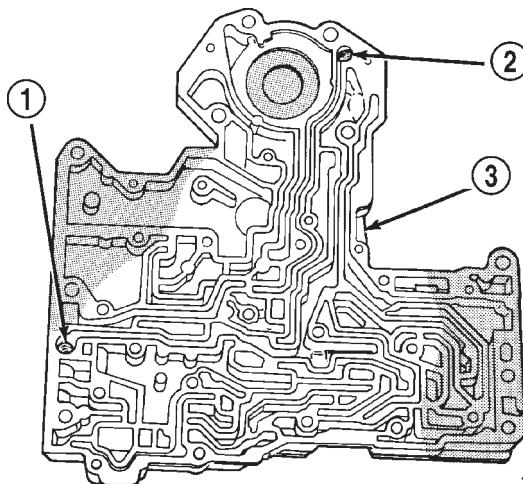
3-4 ACCUMULATOR

- (1) Lubricate accumulator piston, seals and housing piston bore with clean transmission fluid (Fig. 128).

- (2) Install new seal rings on accumulator piston.
- (3) Install piston and spring in housing.
- (4) Install end plate on housing.

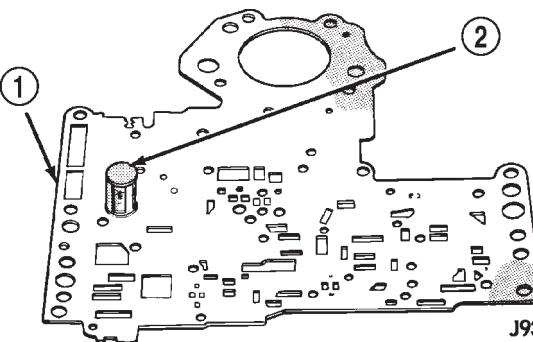
TRANSFER PLATE

- (1) Install rear clutch and rear servo check balls in transfer plate (Fig. 129).
- (2) Install filter screen in upper housing separator plate (Fig. 130).
- (3) Align and position upper housing separator plate on transfer plate (Fig. 131).
- (4) Install brace plate (Fig. 131). Tighten brace attaching screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.
- (5) Install remaining separator plate attaching screws. Tighten screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

**Fig. 129 Rear Clutch And Rear Servo Check Ball Locations**

- 1 – REAR CLUTCH CHECK BALL
 2 – REAR SERVO CHECK BALL
 3 – TRANSFER PLATE

J9321-437

**Fig. 130 Separator Plate Filter Screen Installation**

- 1 – UPPER HOUSING SEPARATOR PLATE
 2 – FILTER SCREEN

UPPER AND LOWER HOUSING

- (1) Position upper housing so internal passages and check ball seats are facing upward. Then install

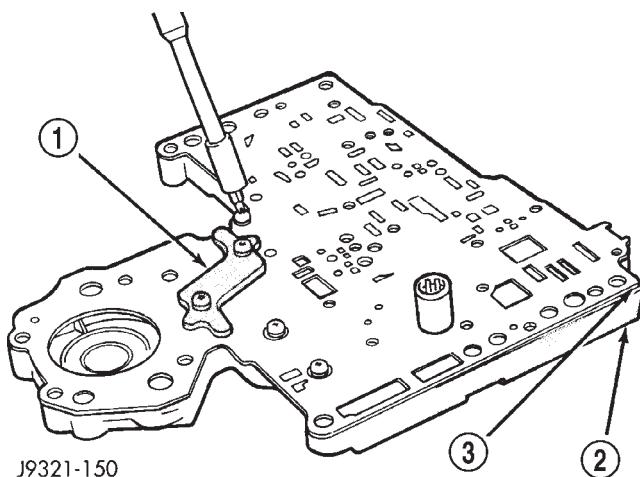


Fig. 131 Brace Plate

- 1 – BRACE
- 2 – TRANSFER PLATE
- 3 – SEPARATOR PLATE

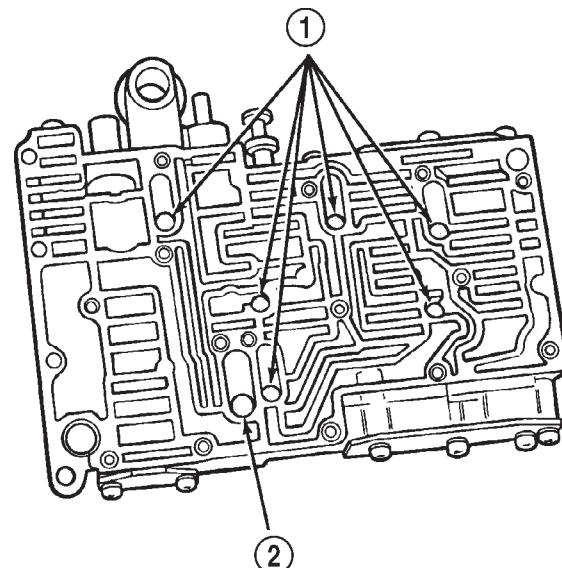


Fig. 132 Check Ball Locations In Upper Housing

- 1 – SMALL DIAMETER CHECK BALLS (6)
- 2 – LARGE DIAMETER CHECK BALL (1)

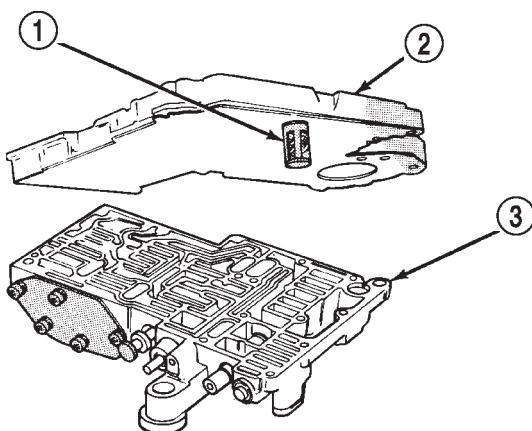
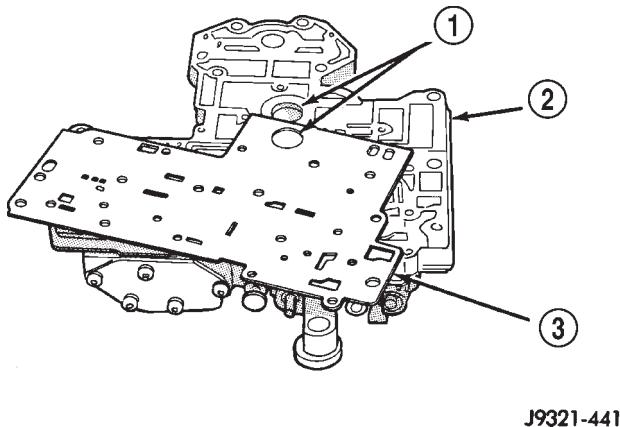


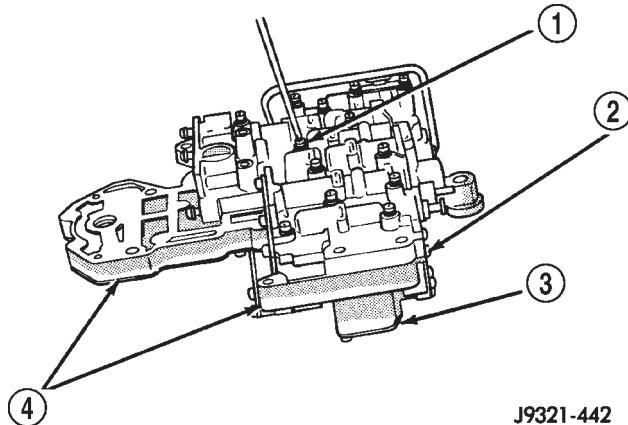
Fig. 133 Installing Transfer Plate On Upper Housing

- 1 – FILTER SCREEN
- 2 – TRANSFER PLATE/SEPARATOR PLATE ASSEMBLY
- 3 – UPPER HOUSING

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 134 Lower Housing Separator Plate**

- 1 – BE SURE TO ALIGN BORES
- 2 – TRANSFER PLATE
- 3 – LOWER HOUSING (OVERDRIVE) SEPARATOR PLATE

**Fig. 135 Installing Lower Housing On Transfer Plate And Upper Housing**

- 1 – VALVE BODY SCREWS (13)
- 2 – LOWER HOUSING
- 3 – UPPER HOUSING
- 4 – TRANSFER PLATE

UPPER HOUSING VALVE AND PLUG

Refer to (Fig. 136), (Fig. 137) and (Fig. 138) to perform the following steps.

(1) Lubricate valves, plugs, springs with clean transmission fluid.

(2) Assemble regulator valve line pressure plug, sleeve, throttle plug and spring. Insert assembly in upper housing and install cover plate. Tighten cover plate screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

(3) Install 1-2 and 2-3 shift valves and springs.

(4) Install 1-2 shift control valve and spring.

(5) Install retainer, spring, limit valve, and 2-3 throttle plug from limit valve housing.

(6) Install limit valve housing and cover plate. Tighten screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.).

(7) Install shuttle valve as follows:

(a) Insert plastic guides in shuttle valve secondary spring and install spring on end of valve.

(b) Install shuttle valve into housing.

(c) Hold shuttle valve in place.

(d) Compress secondary spring and install E-clip in groove at end of shuttle valve.

(e) Verify that spring and E-clip are properly seated before proceeding.

(8) Install shuttle valve cover plate. Tighten cover plate screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

(9) Install 1-2 and 2-3 valve governor plugs in valve body.

(10) Install shuttle valve primary spring and throttle plug.

(11) Align and install governor plug cover. Tighten cover screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

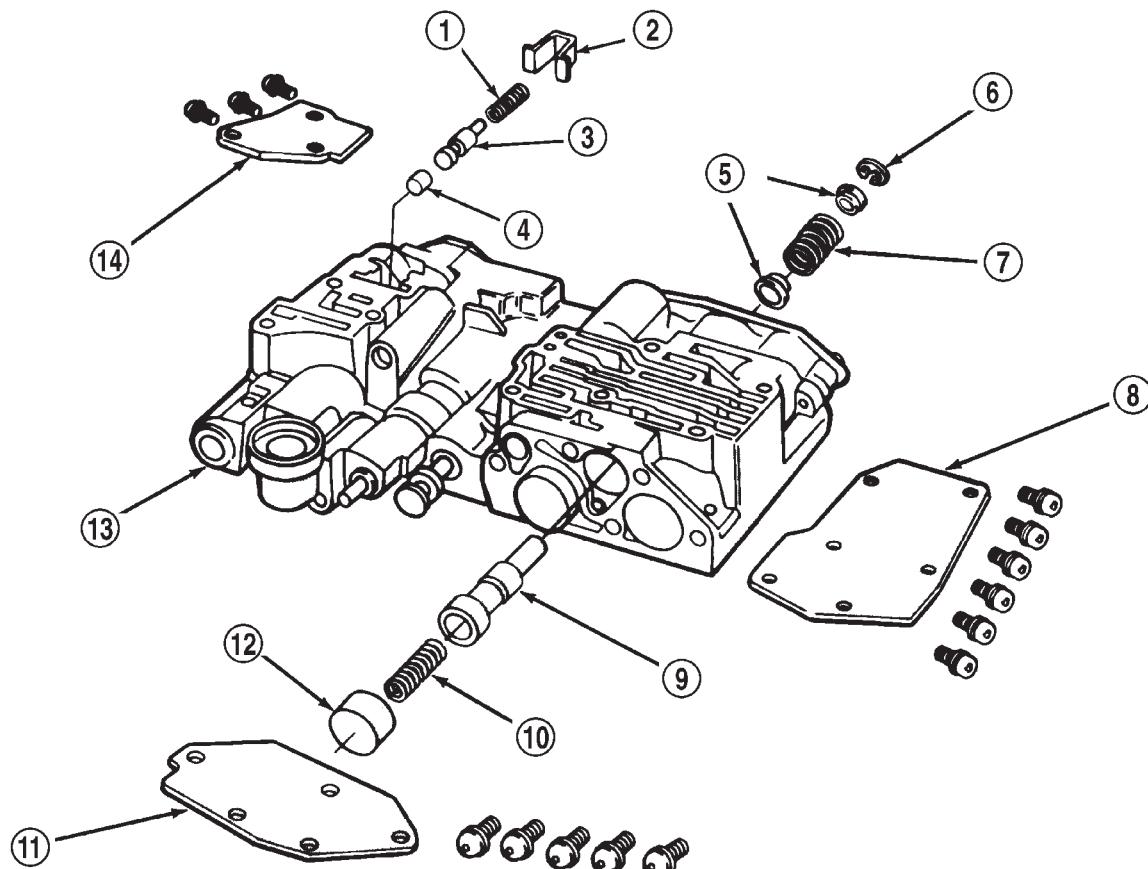
BOOST VALVE TUBE AND BRACE

(1) Position valve body assembly so lower housing is facing upward (Fig. 139).

(2) Lubricate tube ends and housing ports with transmission fluid or petroleum jelly.

(3) Start tube in lower housing port first. Then swing tube downward and work opposite end of tube into upper housing port (Fig. 139).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

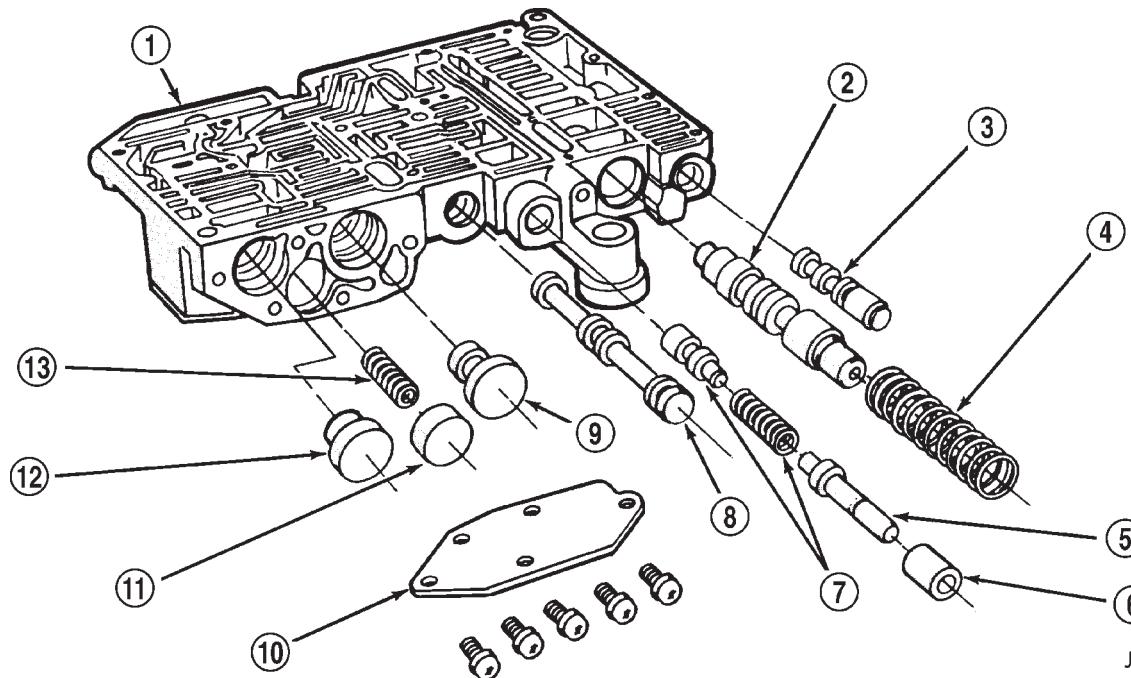


J9421-217

Fig. 136 Shuttle And Boost Valve Components

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 – SPRING | 8 – SHUTTLE VALVE COVER |
| 2 – RETAINER | 9 – SHUTTLE VALVE |
| 3 – BOOST VALVE | 10 – SHUTTLE VALVE PRIMARY SPRING |
| 4 – BOOST VALVE PLUG | 11 – GOVERNOR PLUG COVER |
| 5 – SPRING GUIDES | 12 – THROTTLE PLUG |
| 6 – E-CLIP | 13 – UPPER HOUSING |
| 7 – SHUTTLE VALVE SECONDARY SPRING | 14 – BOOST VALVE COVER |

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

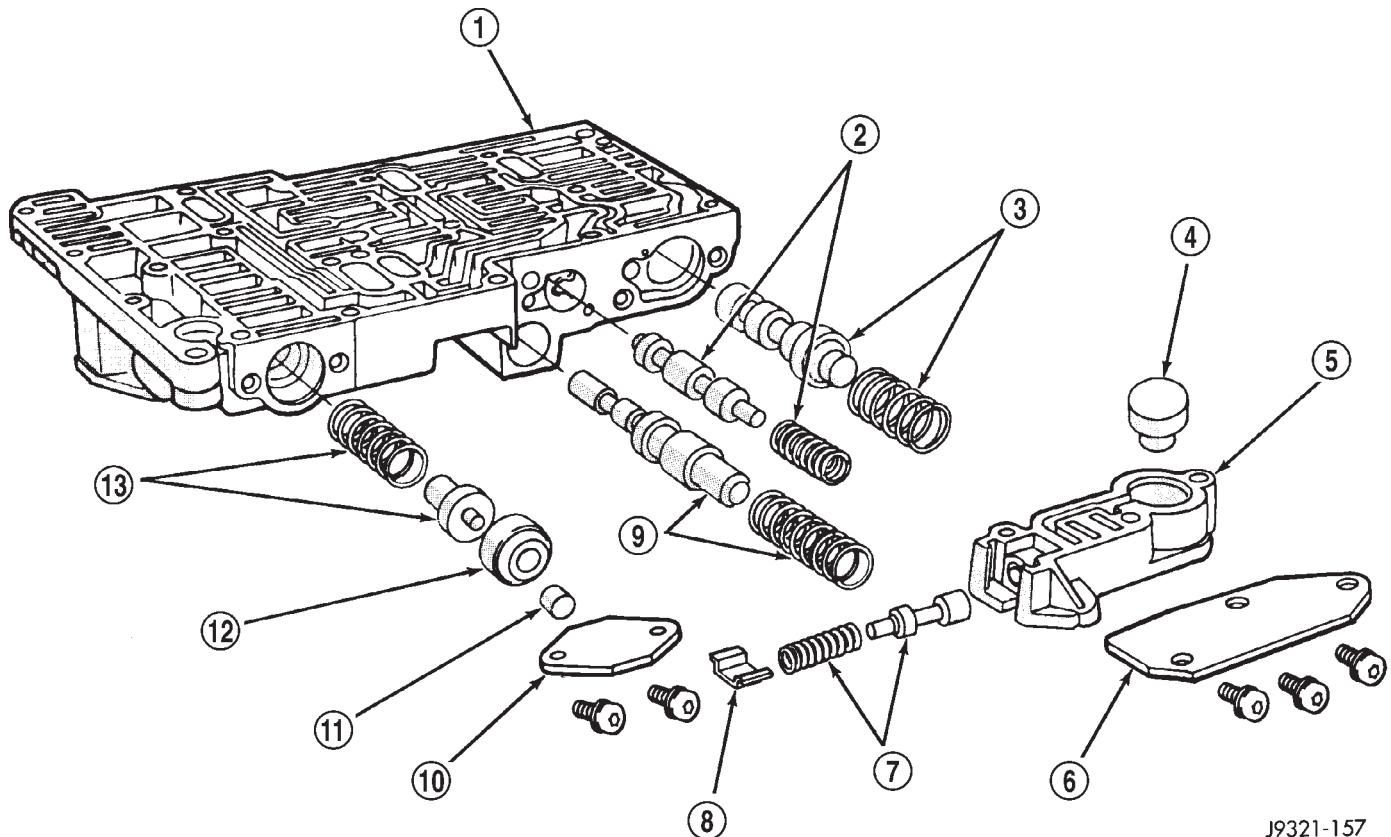


J9321-155

Fig. 137 Upper Housing Control Valve Locations

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 — UPPER HOUSING | 8 — MANUAL VALVE |
| 2 — REGULATOR VALVE | 9 — 1-2 GOVERNOR PLUG |
| 3 — SWITCH VALVE | 10 — GOVERNOR PLUG COVER |
| 4 — REGULATOR VALVE SPRING | 11 — THROTTLE PLUG |
| 5 — KICKDOWN VALVE | 12 — 2-3 GOVERNOR PLUG |
| 6 — KICKDOWN DETENT | 13 — SHUTTLE VALVE PRIMARY SPRING |
| 7 — THROTTLE VALVE AND SPRING | |

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

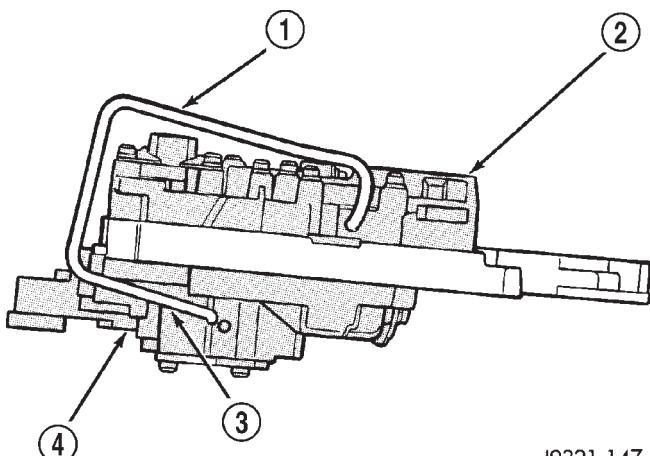


J9321-157

Fig. 138 Upper Housing Shift Valve And Pressure Plug Locations

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1 – UPPER HOUSING | 8 – RETAINER |
| 2 – 1-2 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING | 9 – 1-2 SHIFT CONTROL VALVE AND SPRING |
| 3 – 2-3 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING | 10 – PRESSURE PLUG COVER |
| 4 – 2-3 THROTTLE PLUG | 11 – LINE PRESSURE PLUG |
| 5 – LIMIT VALVE HOUSING | 12 – PLUG SLEEVE |
| 6 – LIMIT VALVE COVER | 13 – THROTTLE PRESSURE SPRING AND PLUG |
| 7 – LIMIT VALVE AND SPRING | |

- (4) Insert and seat each end of tube in housings.
- (5) Slide tube brace under tube and into alignment with valve body screw holes (Fig. 140).
- (6) Install and finger tighten three screws that secure tube brace to valve body housings (Fig. 140).
- (7) Bend tube brace tabs up and against tube to hold it in position (Fig. 141).
- (8) Tighten all valve body housing screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque after tube and brace are installed. Tighten screws in diagonal pattern starting at center and working outward.

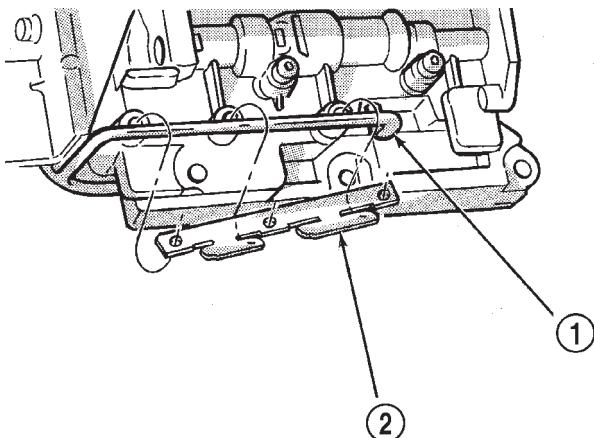


J9321-147

Fig. 139 Boost Valve Tube

- 1 – BOOST VALVE TUBE
- 2 – LOWER HOUSING
- 3 – DISENGAGE THIS END OF TUBE FIRST
- 4 – UPPER HOUSING

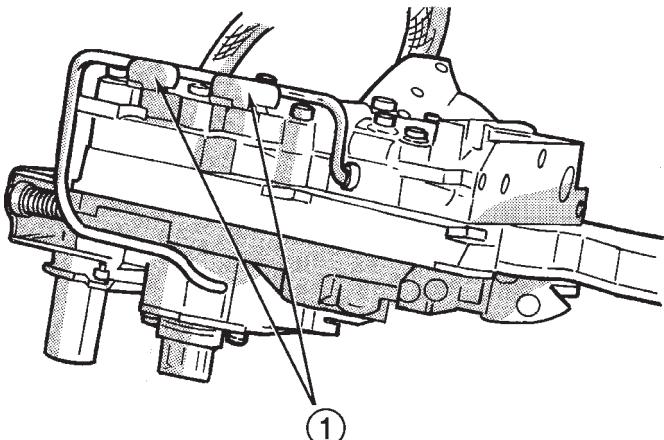
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9521-107

Fig. 140 Boost Valve Tube And Brace

- 1 – BOOST VALVE TUBE
2 – TUBE BRACE



J9521-108

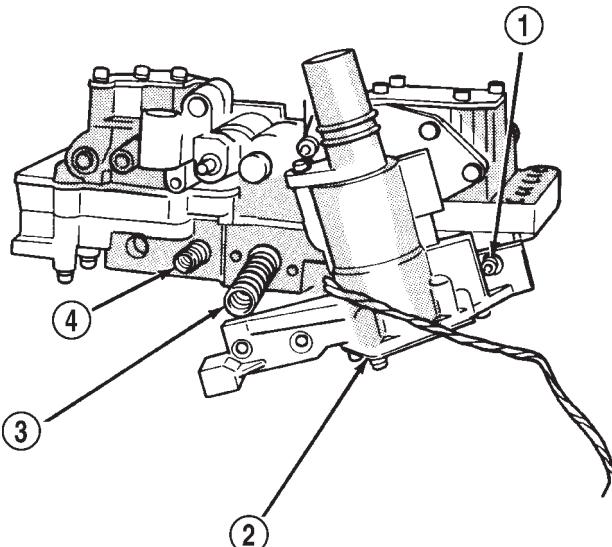
Fig. 141 Securing Boost Valve Tube With Brace Tabs

- 1 – BEND TABS UP AGAINST TUBE AS SHOWN

3-4 ACCUMULATOR

- (1) Position converter clutch valve and 3-4 shift valve springs in housing (Fig. 142).
- (2) Loosely attach accumulator housing with right-side screw (Fig. 142). Install only one screw at this time as accumulator must be free to pivot upward for ease of installation.
- (3) Install 3-4 shift valve and spring.
- (4) Install converter clutch timing valve and spring.
- (5) Position plug on end of converter clutch valve spring. Then compress and hold springs and plug in place with fingers of one hand.
- (6) Swing accumulator housing upward over valve springs and plug.

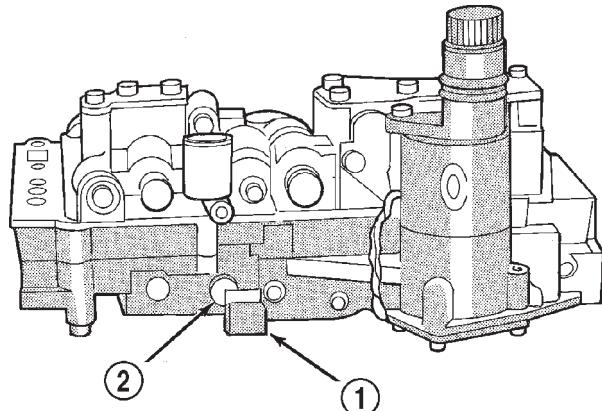
(7) Hold accumulator housing firmly in place and install remaining two attaching screws. Be sure springs and clutch valve plug are properly seated (Fig. 143). Tighten screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.).



J9321-160

Fig. 142 Converter Clutch And 3-4 Shift Valve Springs

- 1 – RIGHT-SIDE SCREW
2 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR
3 – 3-4 SHIFT VALVE SPRING
4 – CONVERTER CLUTCH VALVE SPRING



J9521-180

Fig. 143 Seating 3-4 Accumulator On Lower Housing

- 1 – ACCUMULATOR BOX
2 – CONVERTER CLUTCH VALVE PLUG

VALVE BODY FINAL

- (1) Install boost valve, valve spring, retainer and cover plate. Tighten cover plate screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.
- (2) Insert manual lever detent spring in upper housing.

(3) Position detent ball on end of spring. Then hold detent ball and spring in detent housing with Retainer Tool 6583 (Fig. 144).

(4) Install throttle lever in upper housing. Then install manual lever over throttle lever and start manual lever into housing.

(5) Align manual lever with detent ball and manual valve. Hold throttle lever upward. Then press down on manual lever until fully seated. Remove detent ball retainer tool after lever is seated.

(6) Then install manual lever seal, washer and E-clip.

(7) Verify that throttle lever is aligned with end of kickdown valve stem and that manual lever arm is engaged in manual valve (Fig. 145).

(8) Position line pressure adjusting screw in adjusting screw bracket.

(9) Install spring on end of line pressure regulator valve.

(10) Install switch valve spring on tang at end of adjusting screw bracket.

(11) Install manual valve.

(12) Install throttle valve and spring.

(13) Install kickdown valve and detent.

(14) Install pressure regulator valve.

(15) Install switch valve.

(16) Position adjusting screw bracket on valve body. Align valve springs and press bracket into place. Install short, upper bracket screws first and long bottom screw last. Verify that valve springs and bracket are properly aligned. Then tighten all three bracket screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

(17) Perform Line Pressure and Throttle Pressure adjustments. Refer to adjustment section of this group for proper procedures.

(18) Lubricate solenoid case connector O-rings and shaft of manual lever with light coat of petroleum jelly.

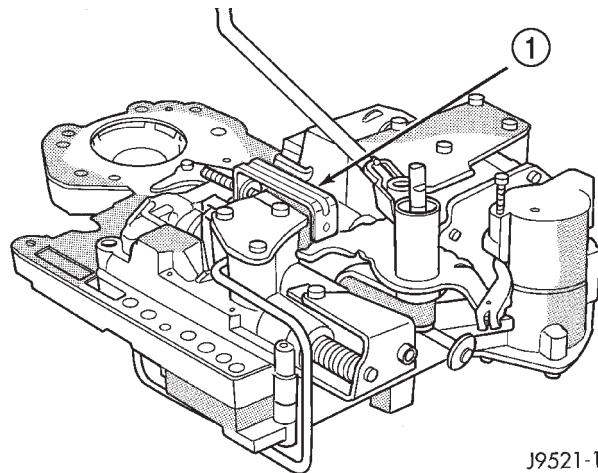
(19) Attach solenoid case connector to 3-4 accumulator with shoulder-type screw. Connector has small locating tang that fits in dimple at top of accumulator housing (Fig. 146). Seat tang in dimple before tightening connector screw.

(20) Install solenoid assembly and gasket. Tighten solenoid attaching screws to 8 N·m (72 in. lbs.) torque.

(21) Verify that solenoid wire harness is properly routed (Fig. 147). **Solenoid harness must be clear of manual lever and park rod and not be pinched between accumulator housing and cover.**

GOVERNOR BODY, SENSOR AND SOLENOID

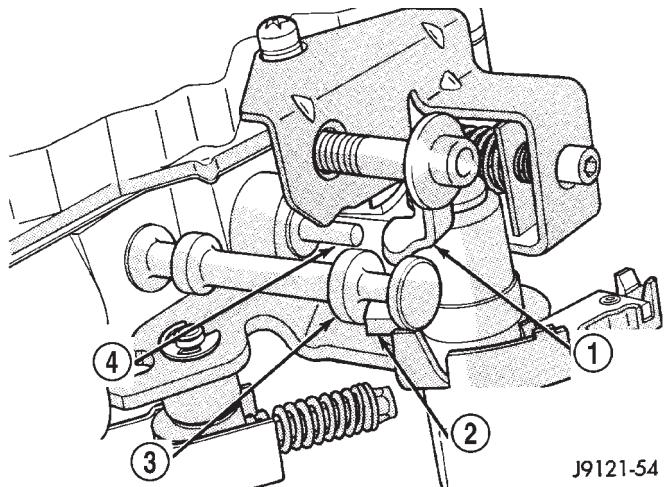
(1) Turn valve body assembly over so accumulator side of transfer plate is facing down.



J9521-178

Fig. 144 Detent Ball Spring

1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6583 POSITIONED ON DETENT HOUSING



J9121-54

Fig. 145 Manual And Throttle Lever Alignment

1 – THROTTLE LEVER

2 – MANUAL LEVER VALVE ARM

3 – MANUAL VALVE

4 – KICKDOWN VALVE

(2) Install new O-rings on governor pressure sole-noid and sensor.

(3) Lubricate solenoid and sensor O-rings with clean transmission fluid.

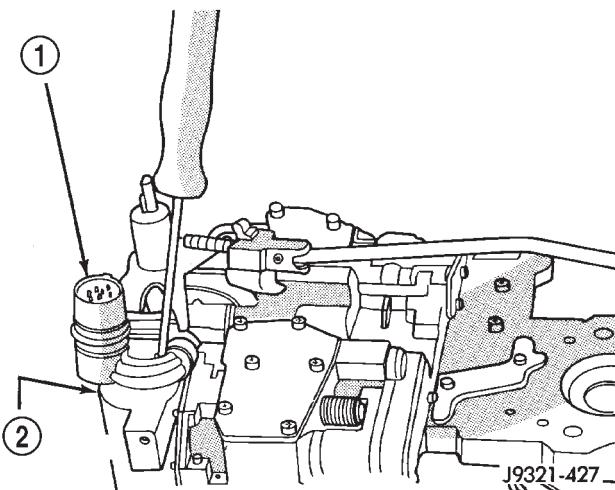
(4) Install governor pressure sensor in governor body.

(5) Install governor pressure solenoid in governor body. Push solenoid in until it snaps into place in body.

(6) Position governor body gasket on transfer plate.

(7) Install retainer plate on governor body and around solenoid. Be sure solenoid connector is positioned in retainer cutout.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



**Fig. 146 Solenoid Harness Case Connector
Shoulder Bolt**

1 – SOLENOID HARNESS CASE CONNECTOR
2 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR HOUSING

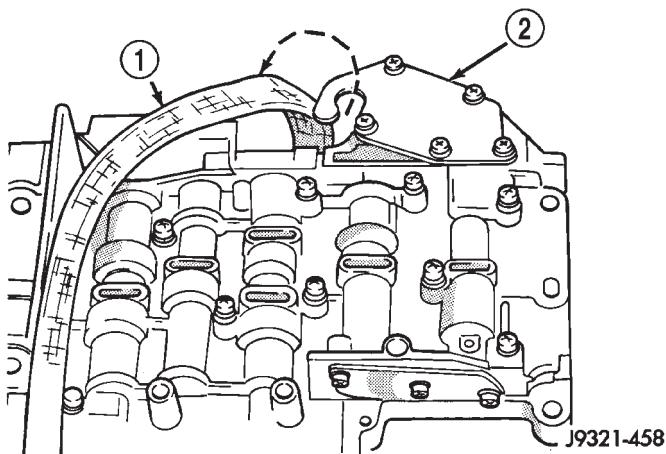


Fig. 147 Solenoid Harness Routing

1 – OVERDRIVE/CONVERTER SOLENOID WIRE HARNESS
2 – 3-4 ACCUMULATOR COVER PLATE

(8) Align screw holes in governor body and transfer plate. Then install and tighten governor body screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.) torque.

(9) Connect harness wires to governor pressure solenoid and governor pressure sensor.

(10) Install fluid filter and pan.

(11) Lower vehicle.

(12) Fill transmission with recommended fluid and road test vehicle to verify repair.

TRANSMISSION

DISASSEMBLY

- (1) Clean exterior of transmission with suitable solvent or pressure washer.
- (2) Place transmission in vertical position.
- (3) Measure and record the input shaft end-play measurement.
- (4) Remove throttle and shift levers from valve body manual shaft and throttle lever shaft.
- (5) Remove transmission oil pan and gasket.
- (6) Remove filter from valve body (Fig. 148). Keep filter screws separate from other valve body screws. Filter screws are longer and should be kept with filter.

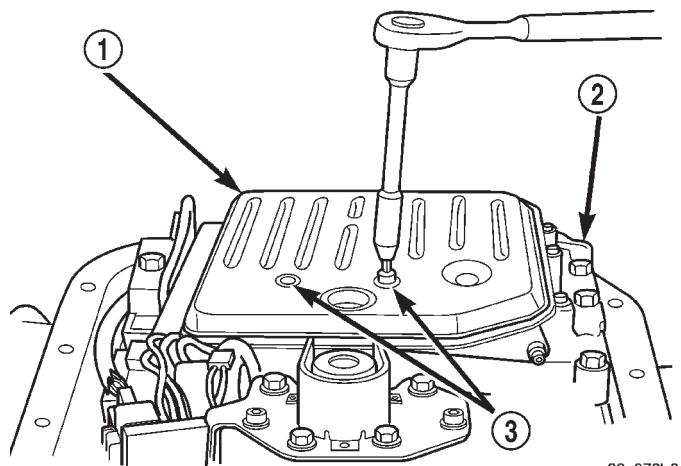


Fig. 148 Oil Filter Removal

1 – OIL FILTER
2 – VALVE BODY
3 – FILTER SCREWS (2)

(7) Remove park/neutral position switch and seal.

(8) Remove hex head bolts attaching valve body to transmission case (Fig. 149). A total of 10 bolts are used. Note different bolt lengths for assembly reference.

(9) Remove valve body assembly. Push valve body harness connector out of case. Then work park rod and valve body out of case (Fig. 150).

(10) Remove accumulator outer spring, piston and inner spring (Fig. 151). Note position of piston and springs for assembly reference. Remove and discard piston seals if worn or cut.

(11) Remove pump oil seal with suitable pry tool or slide-hammer mounted screw.

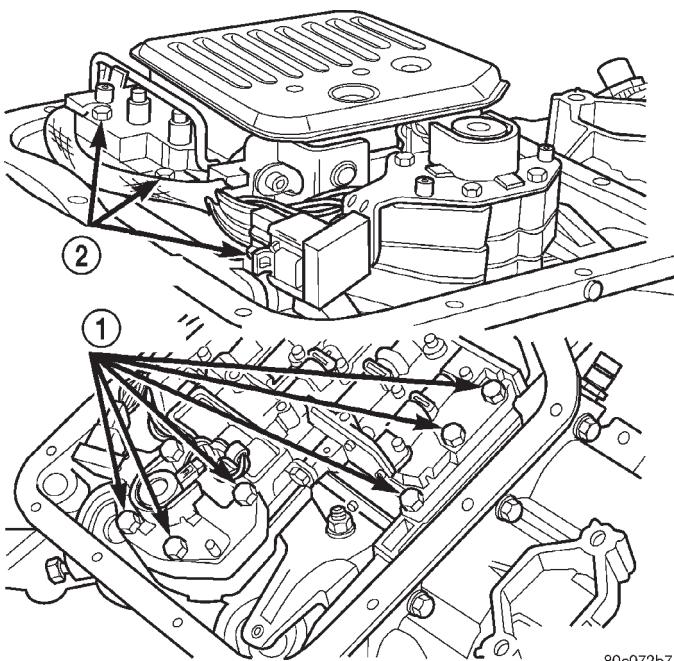


Fig. 149 Valve Body Bolt Locations

- 1 – VALVE BODY BOLTS
- 2 – VALVE BODY BOLTS

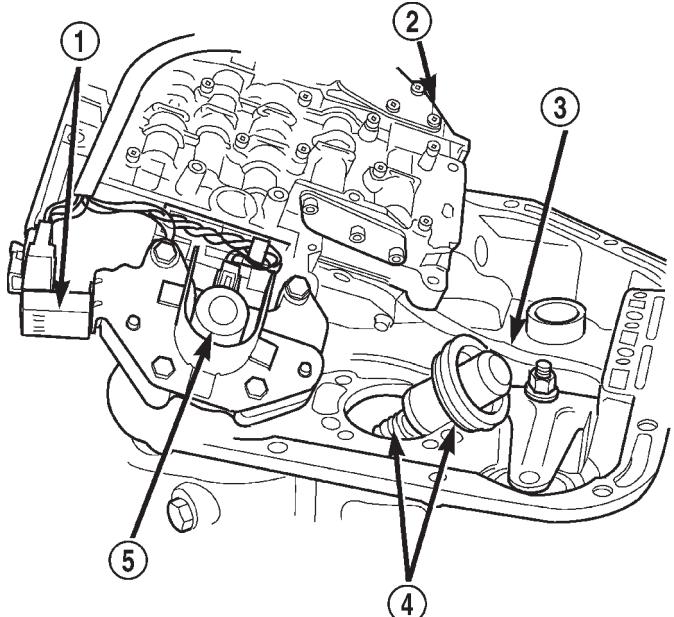


Fig. 150 Valve Body Removal

- 1 – GOVERNOR PRESSURE SENSOR
- 2 – VALVE BODY
- 3 – PARK ROD
- 4 – ACCUMULATOR PISTON
- 5 – GOVERNOR PRESSURE SOLENOID

(12) Remove front band lever pin access plug (Fig. 152). Use square end of 1/4 in. drive extension to remove plug as shown.

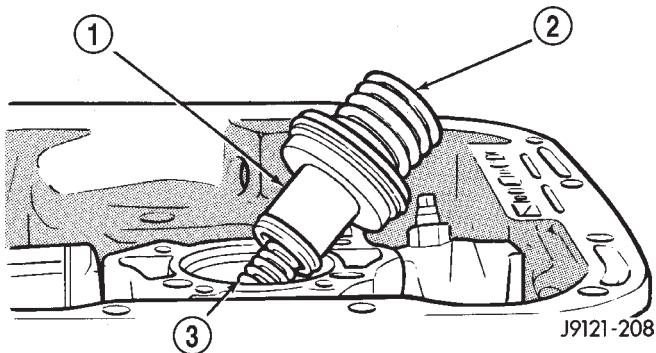


Fig. 151 Accumulator Component Removal

- 1 – ACCUMULATOR PISTON
- 2 – OUTER SPRING
- 3 – INNER SPRING

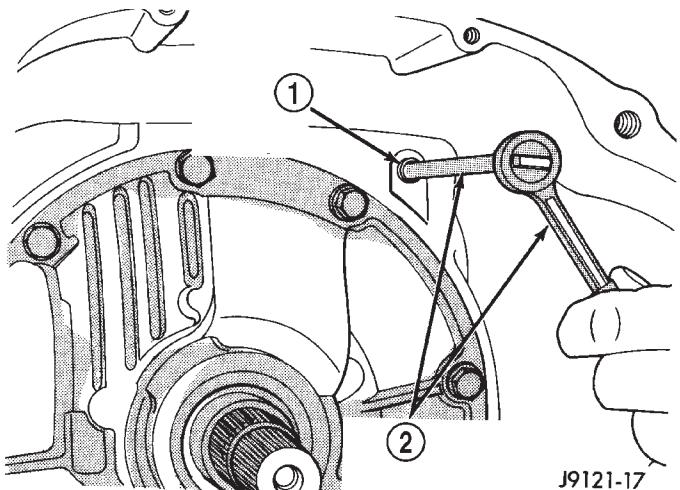


Fig. 152 Front Band Lever Pin Access Plug

- 1 – FRONT BAND REACTION PIN ACCESS PLUG
- 2 – 1/4 DRIVE EXTENSION AND RATCHET

(13) Remove oil pump and reaction shaft support assembly as follows:

(a) Tighten front band adjusting screw until band is tight around front clutch retainer (Fig. 153). This will prevent retainer from coming out with pump and possibly damaging clutch or pump components.

(b) Remove oil pump bolts.

(c) Thread Slide Hammer Tools C-3752 into threaded holes in flange of oil pump housing (Fig. 154).

(d) Remove oil pump and reaction shaft support by bumping slide hammers outward alternately to pull pump from case (Fig. 155).

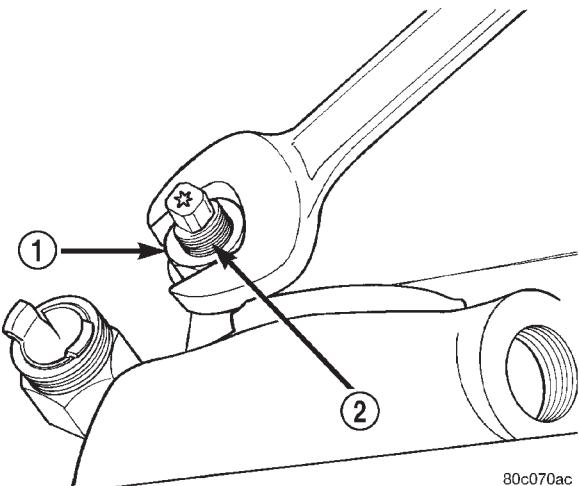
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(14) Remove oil pump gasket (Fig. 156). Note gasket position in case for assembly reference.

(15) Loosen front band adjusting screw until band is completely loose.

(16) Remove front band strut and anchor (Fig. 157).

(17) Squeeze front band together slightly and slide band over front clutch retainer and out of case (Fig. 158).

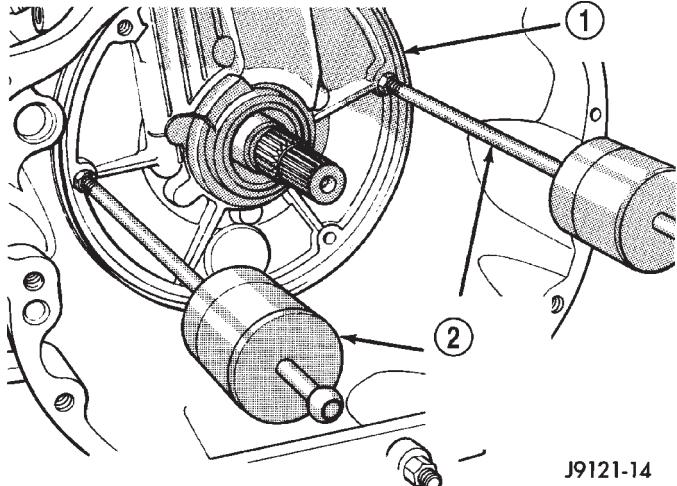


80c070ac

Fig. 153 Tightening Front Band To Hold Front Clutch In Place

1 – LOCK-NUT

2 – FRONT BAND ADJUSTER



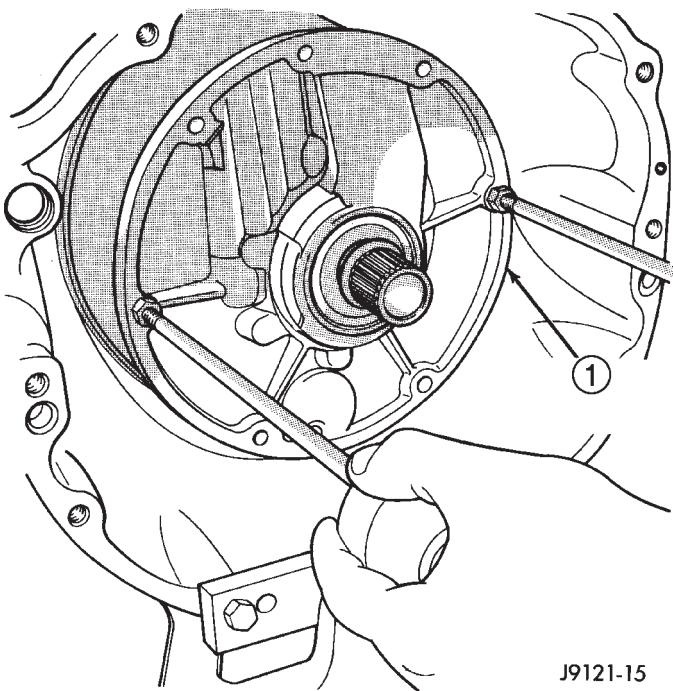
J9121-14

Fig. 154 Oil Pump Removal Tools

1 – PUMP HOUSING

2 – SLIDE HAMMER TOOLS (THREAD INTO PUMP HOUSING)

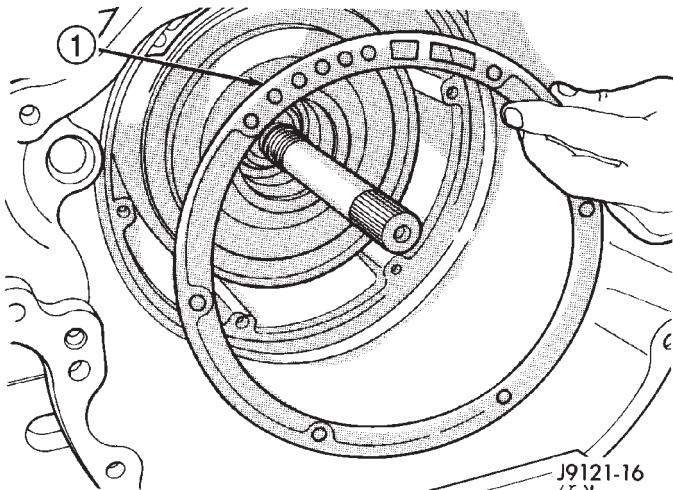
(18) Remove front and rear clutch assemblies as a unit (Fig. 159).



J9121-15

Fig. 155 Oil Pump Removal

1 – OIL PUMP AND REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT



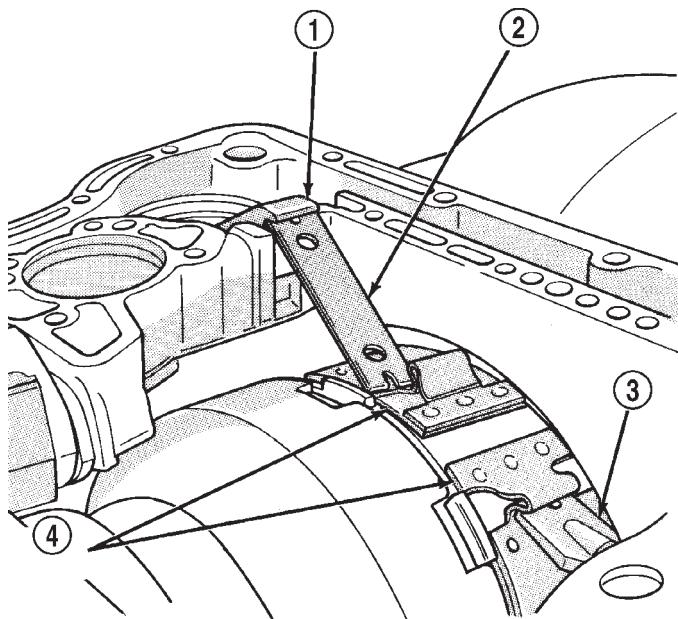
J9121-16

Fig. 156 Oil Pump Gasket

1 – OIL PUMP GASKET

(19) Remove front band reaction pin and lever. Start pin through lever and out of case bore with drift or punch. Then use pencil magnet to withdraw pin completely (Fig. 160).

(20) Remove intermediate shaft thrust washer. Triangular shaped washer will either be on shaft pilot hub or in rear clutch retainer (Fig. 161).



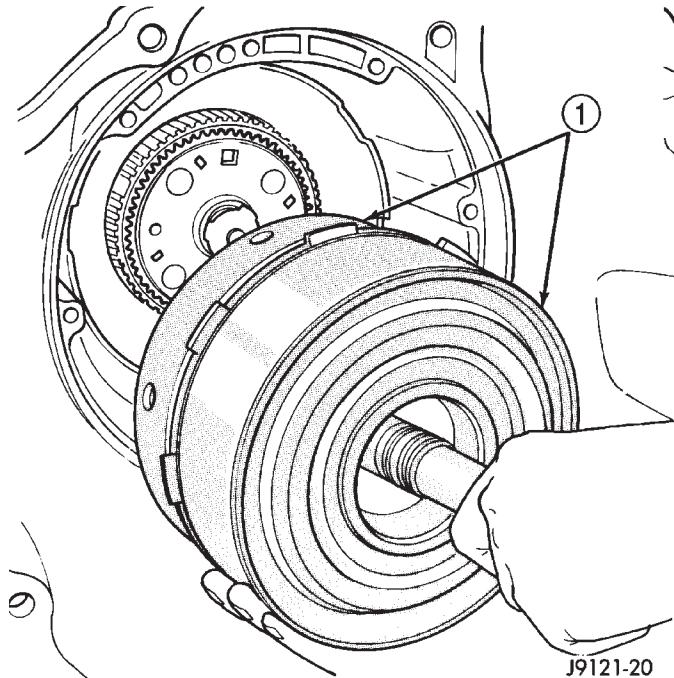
J9121-18

Fig. 157 Front Band Linkage

- 1 – LEVER
- 2 – STRUT
- 3 – ANCHOR
- 4 – FRONT BAND

(24) Loosen rear band locknut and loosen adjusting screw 3-4 turns.

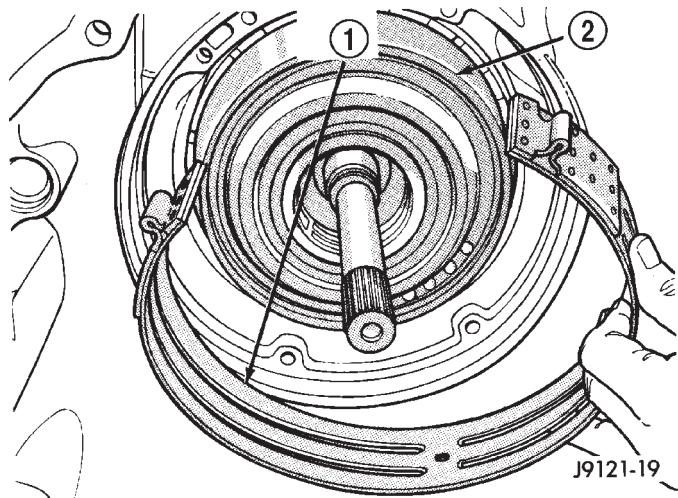
(25) Remove snap ring that retains low-reverse drum on overdrive piston retainer hub (Fig. 164).



J9121-20

Fig. 159 Removing Front/Rear Clutch Assemblies

- 1 – FRONT AND REAR CLUTCH ASSEMBLIES



J9121-19

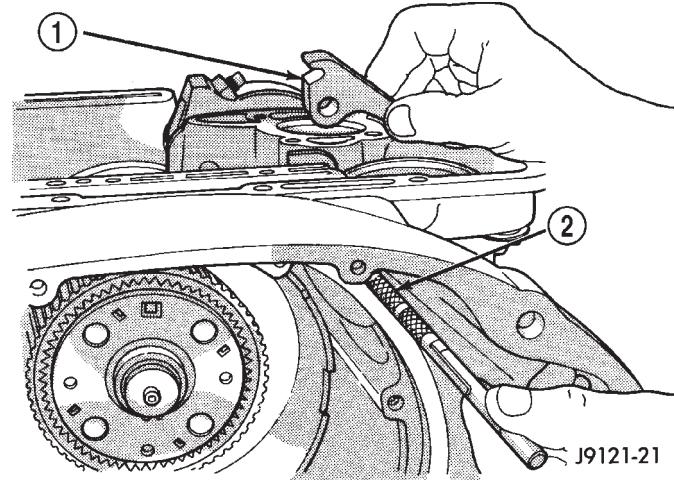
Fig. 158 Front Band

- 1 – FRONT BAND
- 2 – FRONT CLUTCH RETAINER

(21) Remove thrust plate from intermediate shaft hub (Fig. 162).

(22) Remove intermediate shaft-planetary geartrain assembly (Fig. 163).

(23) If overdrive unit is not to be serviced, install Alignment Shaft 6227-2 into the overdrive unit to prevent misalignment of the overdrive clutches during service of main transmission components.



J9121-21

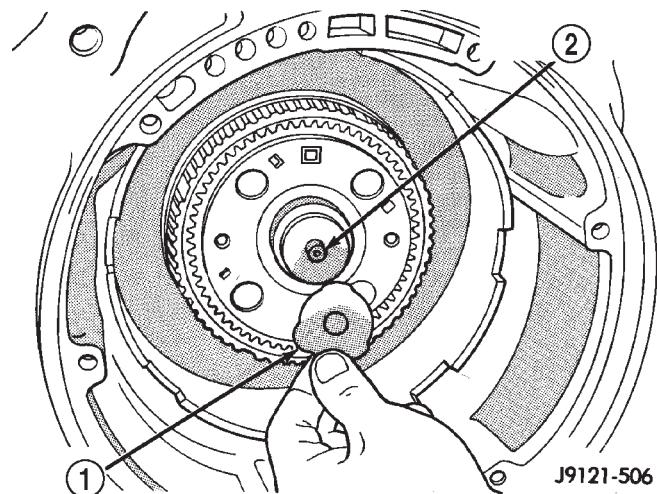
Fig. 160 Front Band Lever And Pin

- 1 – BAND LEVER
- 2 – USE PENCIL MAGNET TO REMOVE REACTION PIN

(26) Slide low-reverse drum and thrust washer off piston retainer hub and out of rear band (Fig. 165).

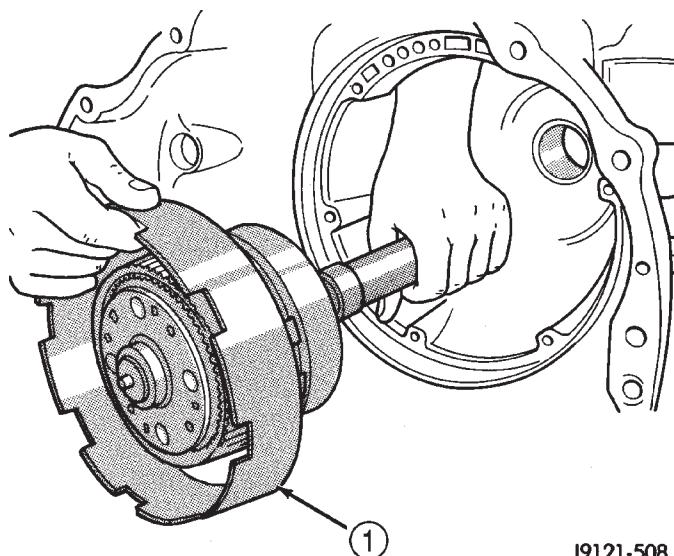
(27) Note that overrunning clutch race will remain on splines of low-reverse drum after removal (Fig. 166). **The race is a permanent press fit on the hub splines. Do not attempt to remove the race.**

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

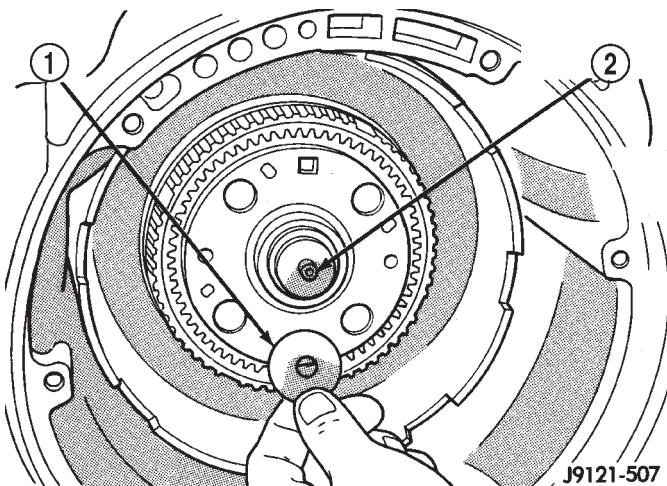
**Fig. 161 Intermediate Shaft Thrust Washer**

1 – THRUST WASHER

2 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT PILOT HUB

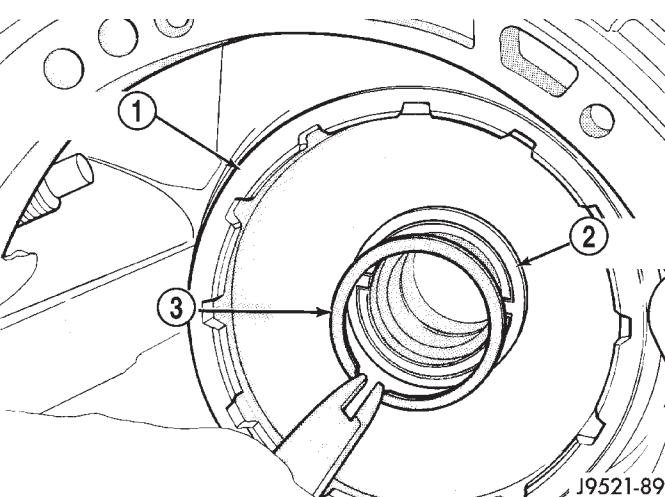
**Fig. 163 Intermediate Shaft And Planetary Geartrain**

1 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT AND PLANETARY GEAR TRAIN ASSEMBLY

**Fig. 162 Intermediate Shaft Thrust Plate**

1 – SHAFT THRUST PLATE

2 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT PILOT HUB

**Fig. 164 Low-Reverse Drum Snap Ring**

1 – LOW-REVERSE DRUM

2 – TABBED WASHER

3 – SNAP RING

(29) Remove rear band adjusting lever, reaction lever and pin (Fig. 168).

(30) Remove strut from rear band. Keep strut with levers and pin for cleaning, inspection and assembly reference.

(31) Remove rear band and link (Fig. 169).

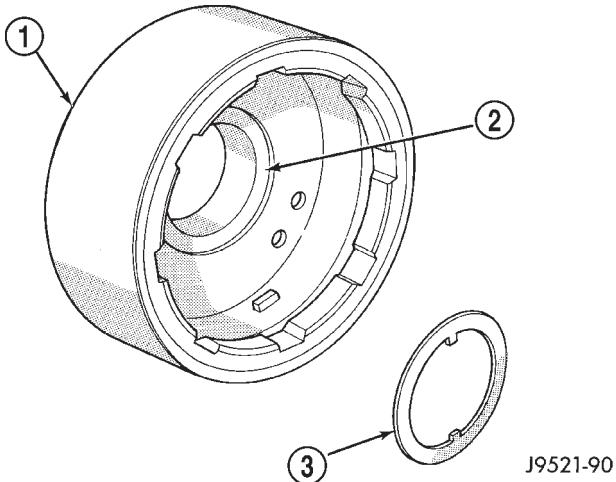


Fig. 165 Low-Reverse Drum And Thrust Washer

- 1 – LOW-REVERSE DRUM
- 2 – SPOTFACE FOR WASHER
- 3 – THRUST WASHER

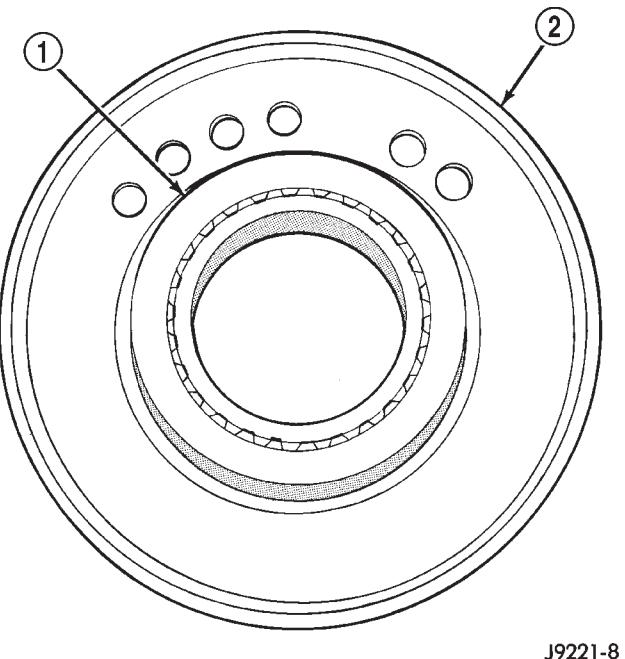


Fig. 166 Overrunning Clutch Race Position On Low-Reverse Drum

- 1 – OVERRUNNING CLUTCH RACE
- 2 – LOW-REVERSE DRUM

(32) Compress front servo rod guide with large C-clamp and Tool C-4470, or Compressor Tool

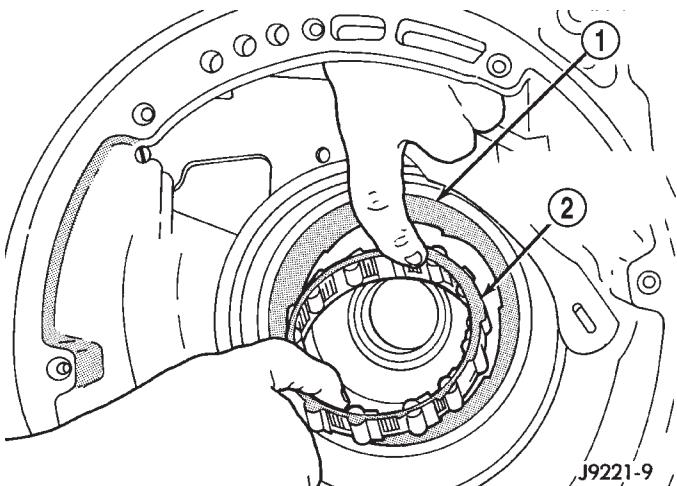


Fig. 167 Overrunning Clutch

- 1 – CLUTCH CAM
- 2 – OVERRUNNING CLUTCH ASSEMBLY

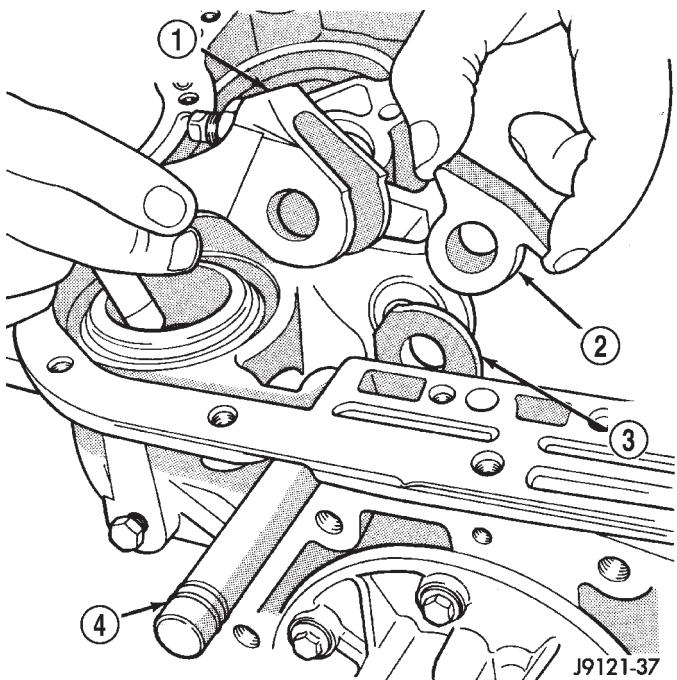


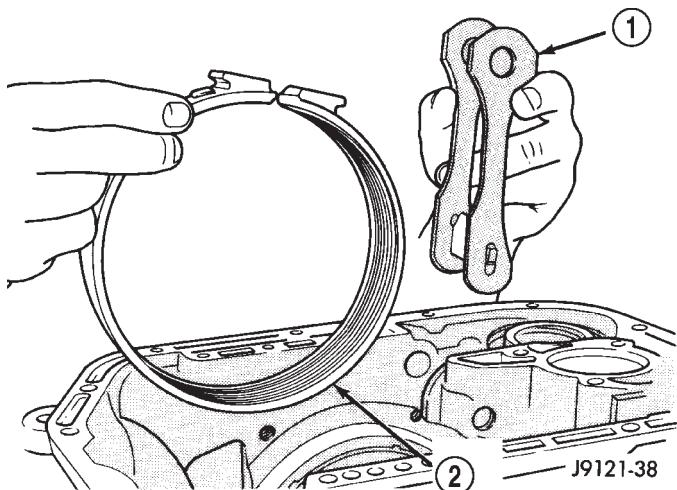
Fig. 168 Rear Band Levers And Pins

- 1 – REAR BAND ADJUSTING LEVER
- 2 – REACTION LEVER
- 3 – BAND LINK
- 4 – REAR BAND REACTION PIN

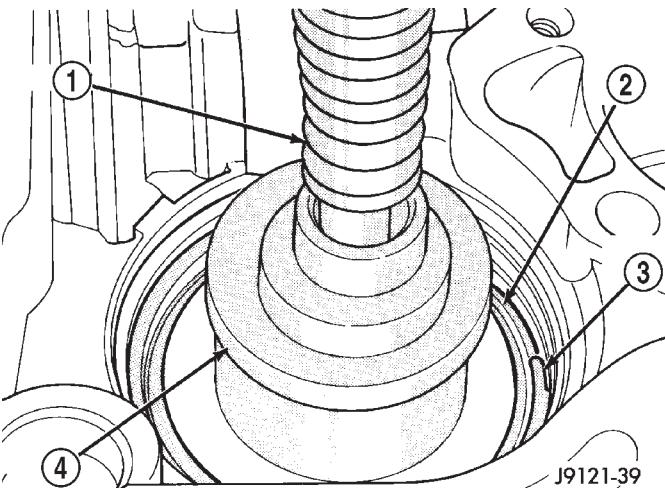
C-3422-B (Fig. 170). Compress guide only enough to permit snap ring removal (about 1/8 in.).

(33) Remove servo piston snap ring (Fig. 170). Unseat one end of ring. Then carefully work removal tool around back of ring until free of ring groove. **Exercise caution when removing snap ring. Servo bore can be scratched or nicked if care is not exercised.**

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 169 Rear Band And Link**

- 1 – BAND LINK
2 – REAR BAND

**Fig. 170 Front Servo Retaining Snap Ring**

- 1 – C-CLAMP
2 – FRONT SERVO ROD GUIDE
3 – SNAP RING
4 – TOOL C-4470

(34) Remove tools and remove servo piston and spring.

(35) Compress rear servo piston with C-clamp and Tool C-4470, or Valve Spring Compressor C-3422-B (Fig. 171). Compress servo spring retainer only enough to permit snap ring removal.

(36) Remove servo piston snap ring (Fig. 171). Start one end of ring out of bore. Then carefully work removal tool around back of snap ring until free of ring groove. **Exercise caution when removing snap ring. Servo bore can be scratched or nicked if care is not exercised.**

(37) Remove tools and remove rear servo retainer, spring and piston assembly.

ASSEMBLY

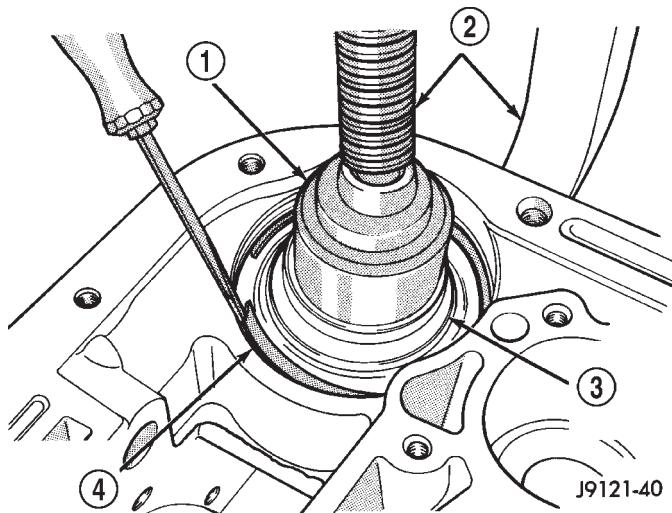
Do not allow dirt, grease, or foreign material to enter the case or transmission components during assembly. Keep the transmission case and components clean. Also make sure the tools and workbench area used for reassembly operations are equally clean.

Shop towels used for wiping off tools and your hands must be made from **lint free** materials. Lint will stick to transmission parts and could interfere with valve operation or even restrict fluid passages.

Lubricate transmission clutch and gear components with Mopar® ATF Plus 3, type 7176, during reassembly. Soak clutch discs in transmission fluid before installation.

Use Mopar® Door Ease, or Ru-Glyde on piston seals and O-rings to ease installation. Petroleum jelly can also be used to lubricate and hold thrust washers and plates in position during assembly.

Do not use chassis grease, bearing grease, white grease, or similar lubricants on any part.

**Fig. 171 Rear Servo Retaining Snap Ring**

- 1 – TOOL C-4470
2 – C-CLAMP
3 – REAR SERVO SPRING RETAINER
4 – RETAINER SNAP RING

These types of lubricants can eventually block or restrict fluid passages and valve operation. Use petroleum jelly only.

Do not force parts into place. The transmission components and sub-assemblies are easily installed by hand when properly aligned. If a part seems difficult to install, it is either misaligned or incorrectly assembled. Verify that thrust washers, thrust plates and seal rings are correctly positioned.

The planetary geartrain, front/rear clutch assemblies and oil pump are all much easier to install

when the transmission case is upright. Either tilt the case upward with wood blocks, or cut a hole in the bench large enough for the intermediate shaft and rear support. Then lower the shaft and support into the hole and support the rear of the case directly on the bench.

FRONT/REAR SERVO

(1) Lubricate rear servo piston seal with Mopar® Door Ease or ATF Plus 3. Lubricate servo bore in case with ATF Plus 3.

(2) Install rear servo piston in case. Position piston at slight angle to bore and insert piston with twisting motion (Fig. 172).

(3) Install rear servo spring and retainer in case bore (Fig. 173). Be sure spring is seated on piston.

(4) Compress rear servo piston with C-clamp or Valve Spring Compressor C-3422-B and install servo piston snap ring (Fig. 174).

(5) Lubricate front servo piston components and servo bore in case with transmission fluid.

(6) Install front servo piston in bore. Carefully "run" small, suitable tool around piston ring to press it back into groove and ease installation (Fig. 175). Rotate piston into bore at same time. Rock piston slightly to ease piston ring past snap ring groove and into bore.

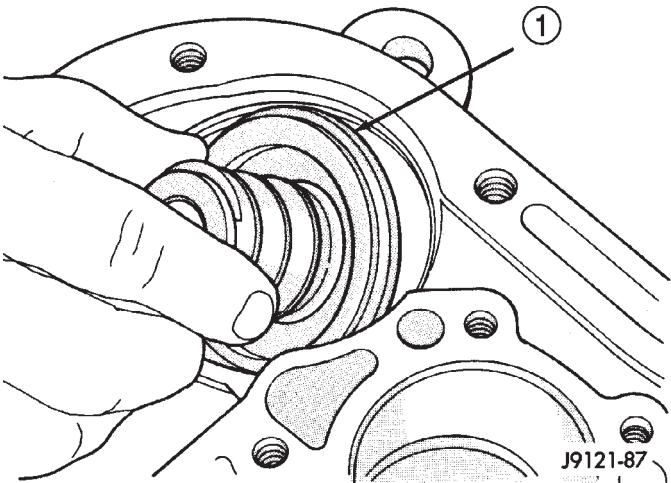


Fig. 172 Rear Servo Piston

1 – REAR SERVO PISTON

(7) Bottom front servo piston in bore and install servo spring.

(8) Install front servo piston rod guide as follows:

(a) Place Tool SP-5560 (or similar size tool) on guide and position C-clamp on tool and case (Fig. 176).

(b) Slowly compress rod guide while simultaneously easing seal ring into bore with suitable tool.

(9) Install rod guide snap ring (Fig. 176).

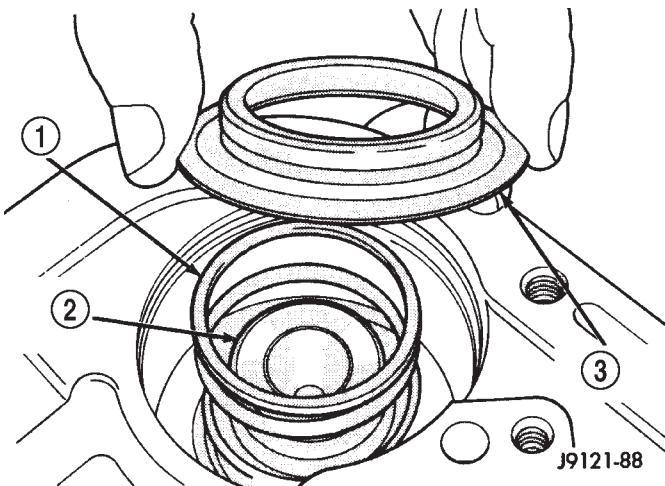


Fig. 173 Rear Servo Piston Spring And Retainer

- 1 – PISTON SPRING
- 2 – REAR SERVO PISTON
- 3 – SPRING RETAINER

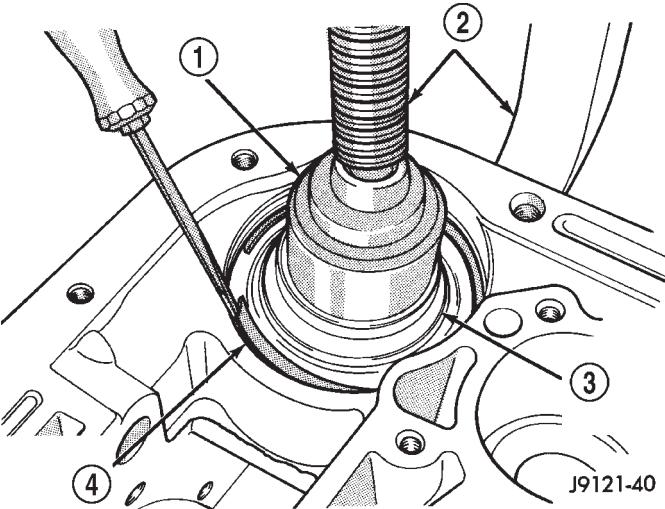


Fig. 174 Rear Servo Snap Ring

- 1 – TOOL C-4470
- 2 – C-CLAMP
- 3 – REAR SERVO SPRING RETAINER
- 4 – RETAINER SNAP RING

OVERRUNNING CLUTCH, REAR BAND, AND LOW-REVERSE DRUM

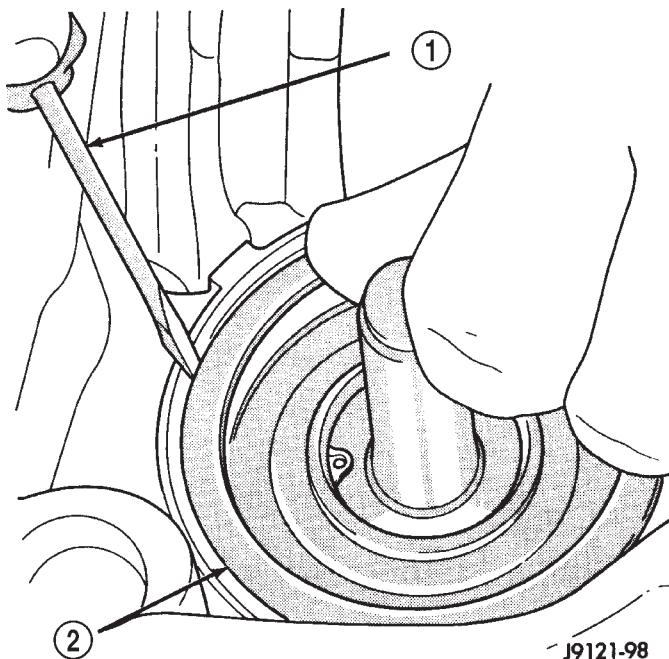
(1) Install overrunning clutch components if not yet installed.

(2) Position rear band and link in case (Fig. 177).

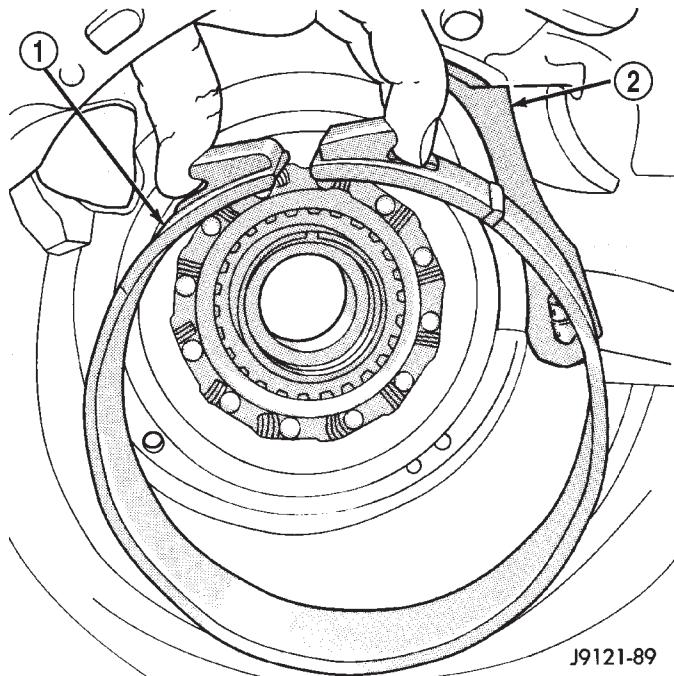
(3) Install low-reverse drum (Fig. 178). Slide drum through rear band, onto piston retainer hub and into engagement with overrunning clutch and race.

(4) Install thrust washer in low-reverse drum spot-face (Fig. 179). Use petroleum jelly to hold washer in place.

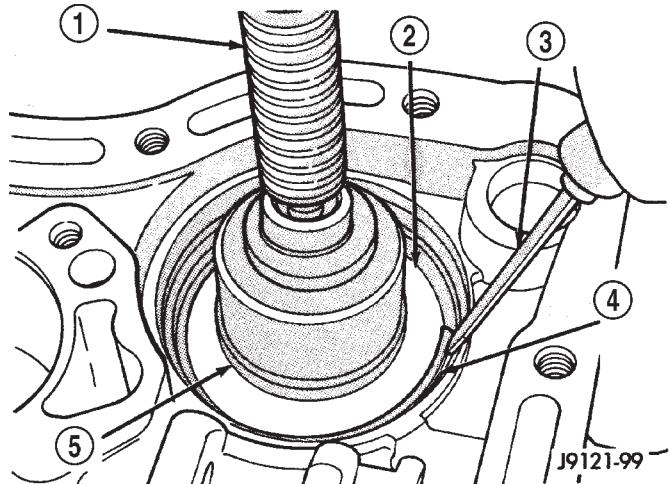
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 175 Front Servo Piston**

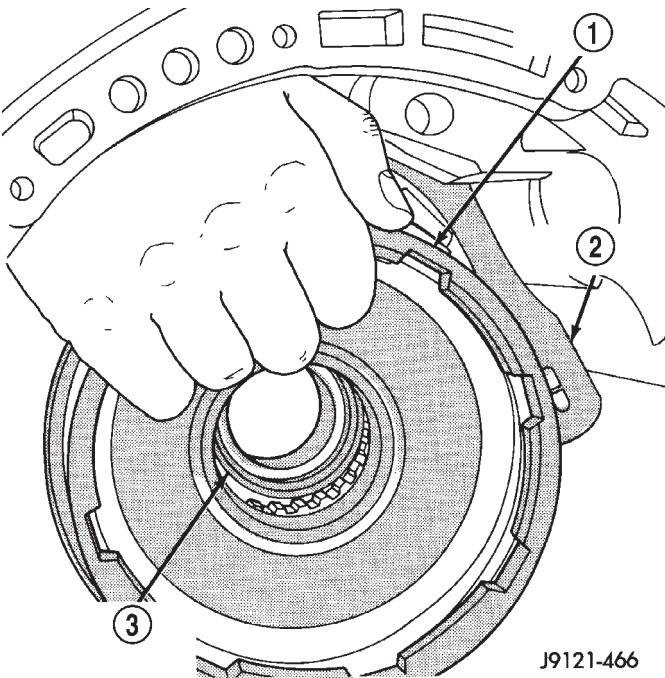
- 1 – USE SUITABLE TOOL TO HELP SEAT PISTON RING
2 – FRONT SERVO PISTON

**Fig. 177 Rear Band And Link**

- 1 – REAR BAND
2 – BAND LINK

**Fig. 176 Front Servo Rod Guide And Snap Ring**

- 1 – C-CLAMP
2 – ROD GUIDE
3 – SMALL SCREWDRIVER
4 – ROD GUIDE SNAP RING
5 – TOOL SP-5560

**Fig. 178 Low-Reverse Drum**

- 1 – LOW-REVERSE DRUM
2 – REAR BAND LINK
3 – HUB OF OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER

(5) Install snap ring that secures low-reverse drum to piston retainer hub (Fig. 179).

(6) Insert band reaction pin part way into case and band link (Fig. 180).

(7) Install rear band adjusting lever, reaction lever, and strut (Fig. 181). Be sure levers and strut are

aligned and engaged before seating band reaction pin in case.

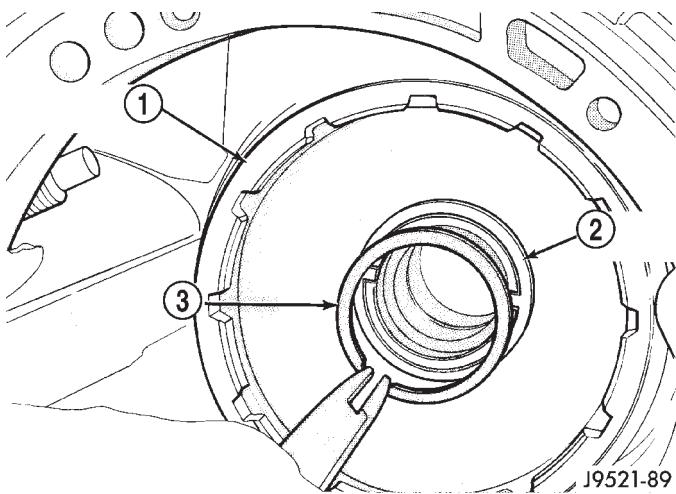


Fig. 179 Low-Reverse Drum Snap Ring

- 1 – LOW-REVERSE DRUM
- 2 – TABBED WASHER
- 3 – SNAP RING

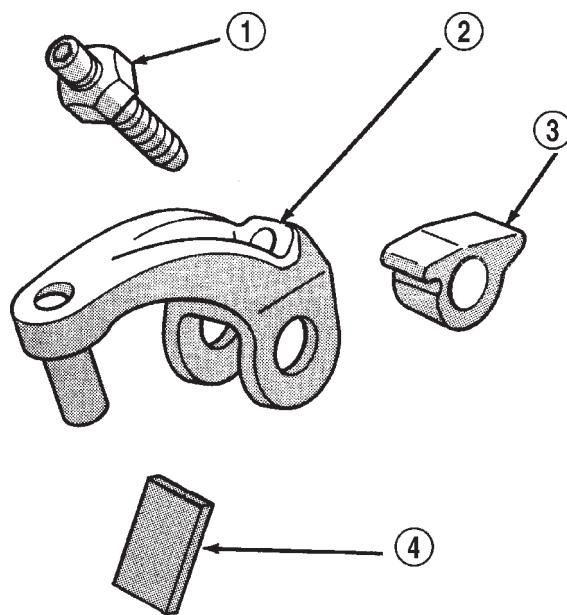


Fig. 181 Rear Band Levers And Strut

- 1 – ADJUSTING SCREW AND NUT
- 2 – ADJUSTING LEVER
- 3 – REACTION LEVER
- 4 – STRUT

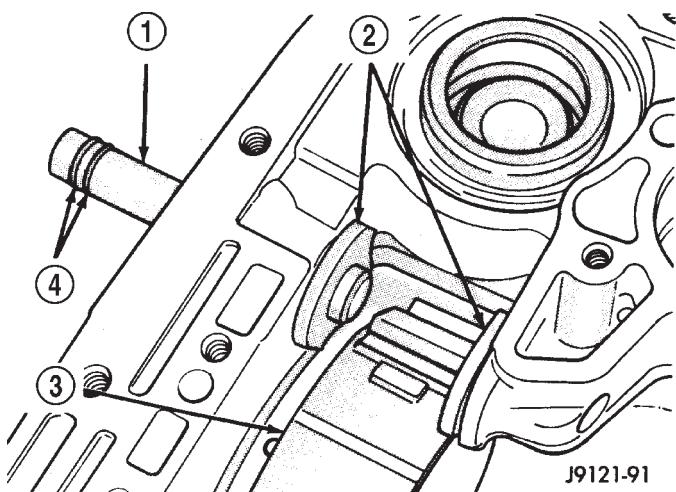


Fig. 180 Rear Band Reaction Pin

- 1 – REACTION PIN
- 2 – BAND LINK
- 3 – REAR BAND
- 4 – O-RINGS

PLANETARY GEARTRAIN, FRONT/REAR CLUTCH, AND FRONT BAND

(1) Remove Alignment Shaft 6227-2, if installed previously.

(2) Install assembled intermediate shaft and planetary geartrain (Fig. 182). **Support shaft carefully during installation. Do not allow shaft bearing/bushing surfaces to become nicked or scratched.**

(3) Lubricate intermediate shaft thrust plate with petroleum jelly and install plate on shaft pilot hub (Fig. 183).

(4) Check input shaft front seal rings, fiber thrust washer and rear seal ring (Fig. 184). Be ends of rear seal ring are hooked together and diagonal cut ends of front seal rings are firmly seated against each other as shown. Lubricate seal rings with petroleum jelly after checking them.

(5) Assemble front and rear clutches (Fig. 185). Align lugs on front clutch discs. Mount front clutch on rear clutch. Turn front clutch retainer back and forth until front clutch discs are fully seated on rear clutch splined hub.

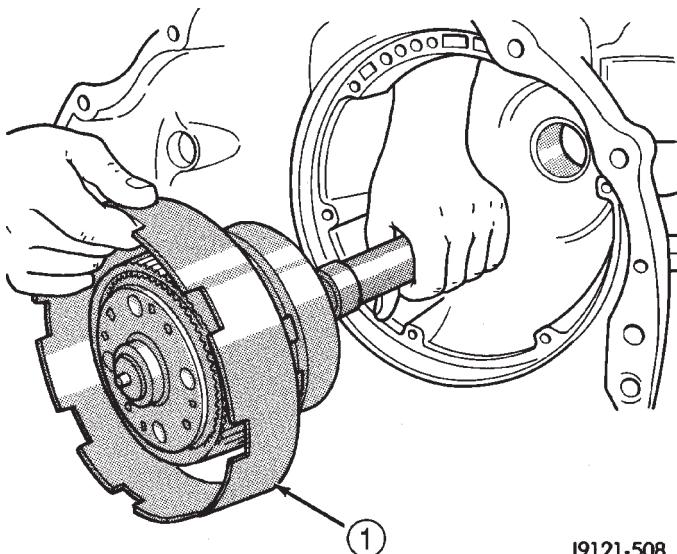
(6) Install intermediate shaft thrust washer in hub of rear clutch retainer (Fig. 186). Use petroleum jelly to hold washer in place. Position washer so grooves are facing outward. **Washer only fits one way in clutch retainer hub.**

(7) Place transmission case in upright position, or place blocks under front end of transmission repair stand to tilt case rearward. This makes it easier to install front/rear clutch assembly.

(8) Align discs in rear clutch. Then install and engage assembly in front planetary and driving shell (Fig. 187). Turn clutch retainers back and forth until both clutches are seated.

(9) Position front band lever in case and over servo rod guide. Then install front band lever pin in case and slide it through lever.

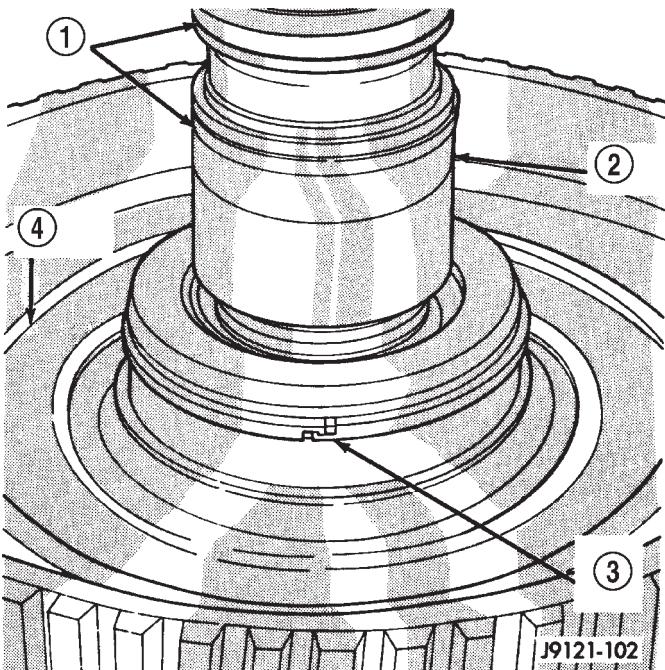
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9121-508

Fig. 182 Intermediate Shaft And Planetary Geartrain

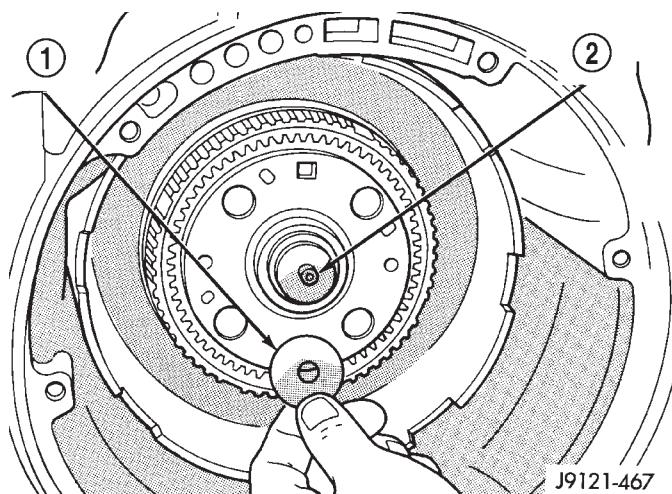
1 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT AND PLANETARY GEAR TRAIN ASSEMBLY



J9121-102

Fig. 184 Input Shaft Seal Ring And Thrust Washer

1 – FRONT SEAL RINGS
 2 – INPUT SHAFT
 3 – REAR SEAL RING
 4 – THRUST WASHER



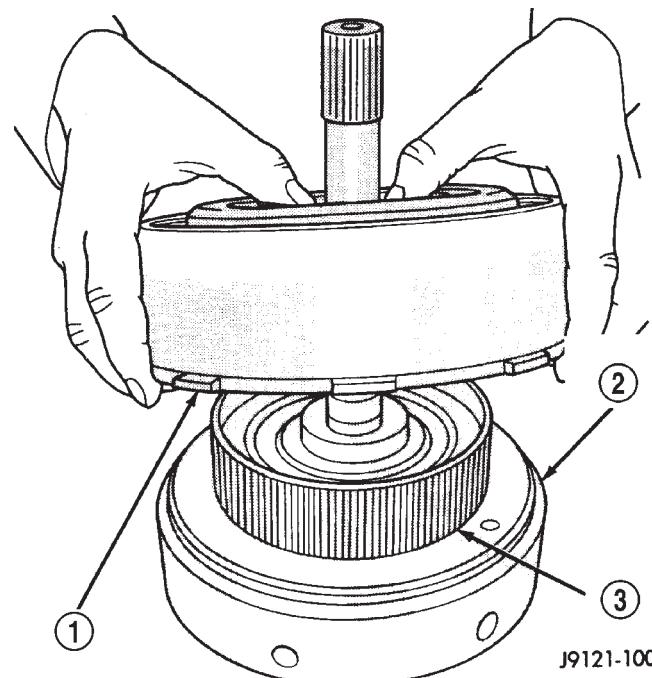
J9121-467

Fig. 183 Intermediate Shaft Thrust Plate1 – SHAFT THRUST PLATE
2 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT PILOT HUB

(10) Coat threads of front band pin access plug with sealer and install it in case. Tighten plug to 17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.) torque.

(11) Slide front band over front clutch retainer and install front band strut and anchor (Fig. 188).

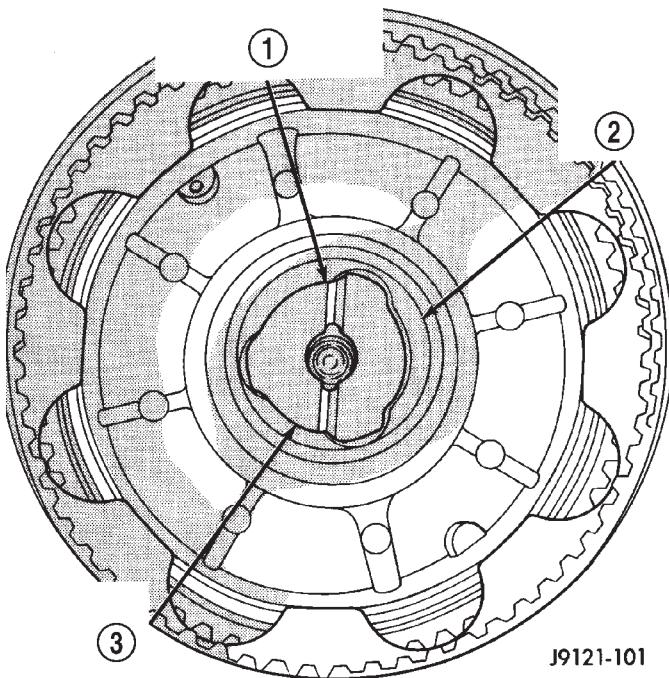
(12) Tighten front band adjusting screw until band is tight on clutch retainer. This will hold clutches in place while oil pump is being installed. **Verify that front/rear clutch assembly is still properly seated before tightening band.**



J9121-100

Fig. 185 Assembling Front And Rear Clutches

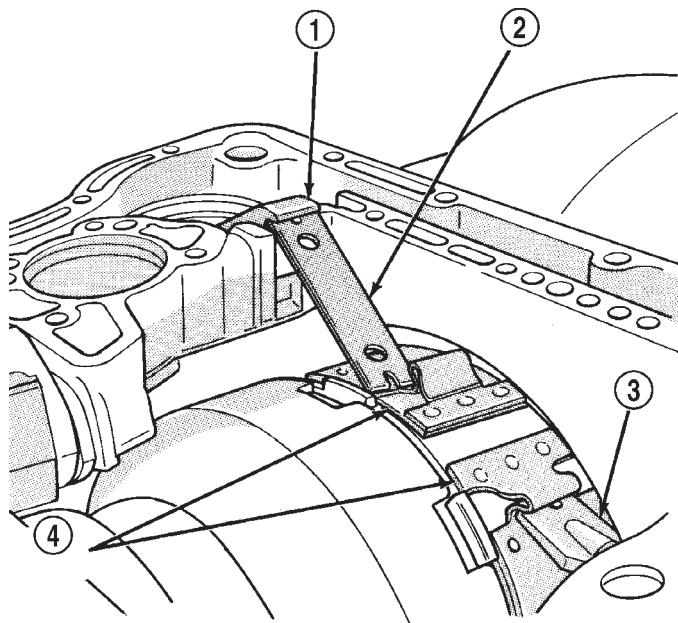
1 – FRONT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY
 2 – REAR CLUTCH ASSEMBLY
 3 – REAR CLUTCH SPLINED HUB



J9121-101

Fig. 186 Intermediate Shaft Thrust Washer

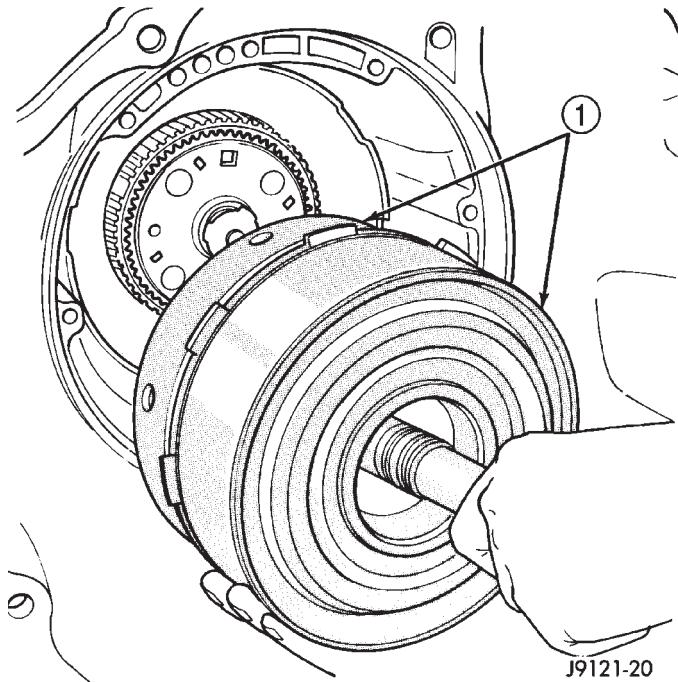
- 1 – BE SURE WASHER GROOVES FACE OUT AS SHOWN
- 2 – REAR CLUTCH RETAINER HUB
- 3 – OUTPUT SHAFT THRUST WASHER



J9121-18

Fig. 188 Front Band And Linkage

- 1 – LEVER
- 2 – STRUT
- 3 – ANCHOR
- 4 – FRONT BAND



J9121-20

Fig. 187 Front/Rear Clutch Assemblies

- 1 – FRONT AND REAR CLUTCH ASSEMBLIES

OIL PUMP

(1) Install oil pump Pilot Studs C-3288-B in case (Fig. 189).

(2) Install new oil pump gasket on pilot studs and seat it in case. Be sure gasket is properly aligned with fluid passages in case (Fig. 189).

(3) Coat front clutch thrust washer with petroleum jelly to hold it in place. Then install washer over reaction shaft hub and seat it on pump (Fig. 190).

CAUTION: The thrust washer bore (I.D.), is chamfered on one side. Make sure the chamfered side is installed so it faces the pump.

(4) Check seal rings on reaction shaft support. Be sure rings are hooked together correctly. Also be sure fiber thrust washer is in position (Fig. 191). Use extra petroleum jelly to hold washer in place if necessary.

(5) Lubricate oil pump seals with petroleum Mopar® ATF Plus 3, type 7176.

(6) Mount oil pump on pilot studs and slide pump into case opening (Fig. 192). **Work pump into case by hand. Do not use a mallet or similar tools to seat pump.**

(7) Remove pilot studs and install oil pump bolts. Tighten pump bolts alternately and evenly to fully seat pump in case. Then final-tighten pump bolts to 20 N·m (15 ft. lbs.) torque.

(8) Verify correct installation. Rotate input and intermediate shafts and check for bind. If bind exists, components are either mis-assembled, or not seated.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

Disassemble and correct as necessary before proceeding.

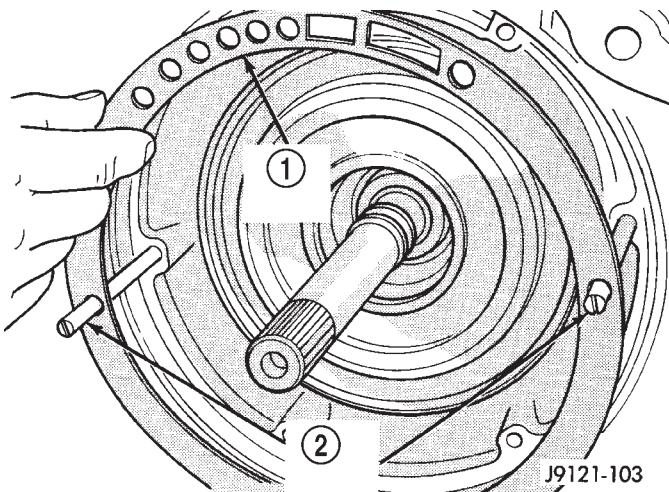


Fig. 189 Oil Pump Gasket And Pilot Studs

- 1 – OIL PUMP GASKET
- 2 – PILOT STUDS C-3288-B

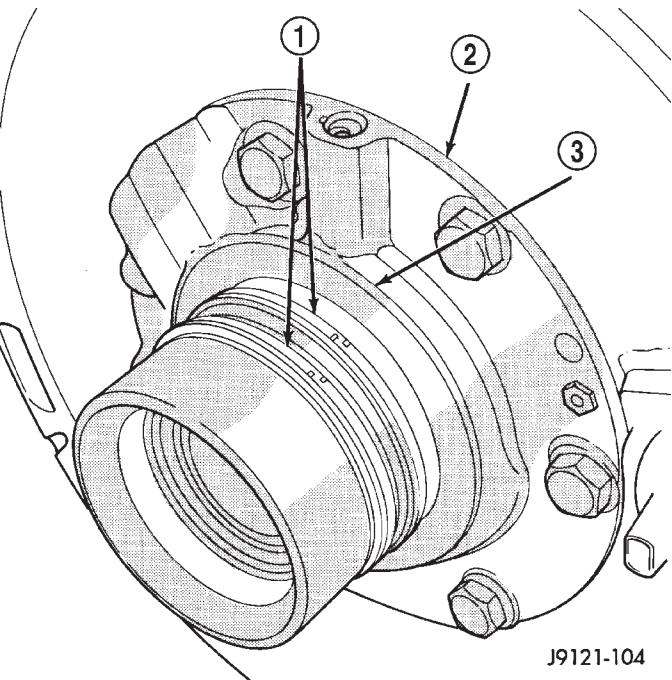


Fig. 191 Reaction Shaft Seal Ring And Thrust Washer

- 1 – SEAL RINGS
- 2 – REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT
- 3 – THRUST WASHER (FIBER)

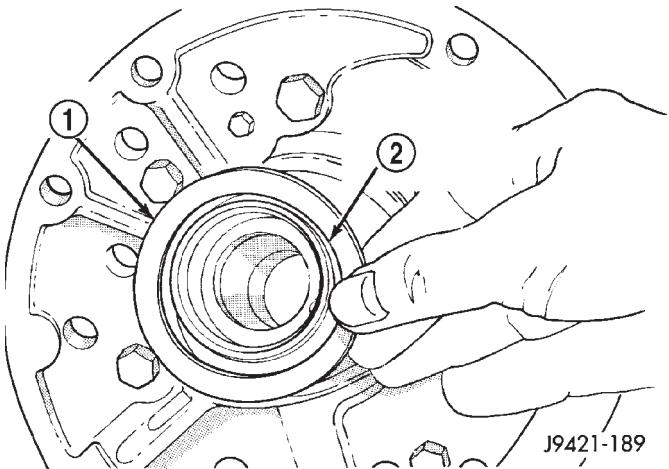


Fig. 190 Front Clutch Thrust Washer

- 1 – THRUST WASHER
- 2 – CHAMFERED SIDE OF WASHER BORE GOES TOWARD PUMP

INPUT SHAFT END PLAY CHECK

NOTE: Overdrive unit must be installed in order to correctly measure the input shaft end-play.

- (1) Measure input shaft end play (Fig. 193).

NOTE: If end play is incorrect, transmission is incorrectly assembled, or reaction shaft thrust washer is incorrect. The reaction shaft thrust washer is selective.

- (a) Attach Adapter 8266-5 to Handle 8266-8.

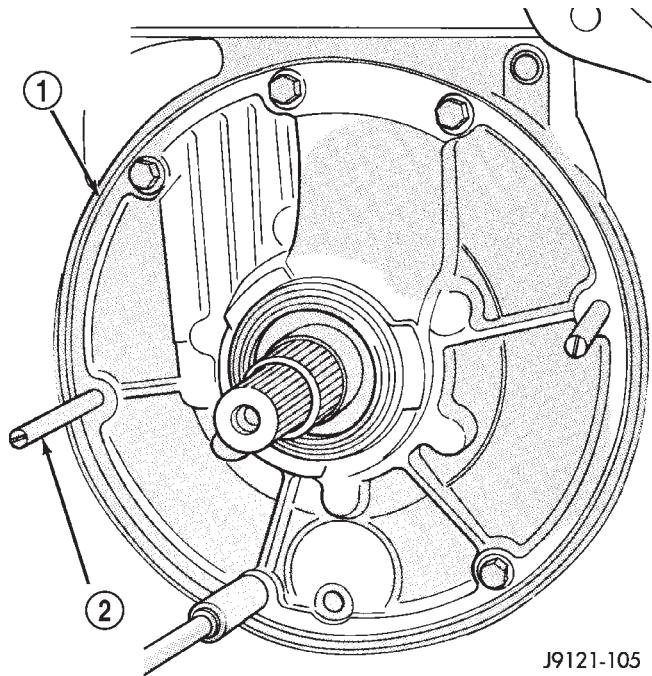


Fig. 192 Oil Pump

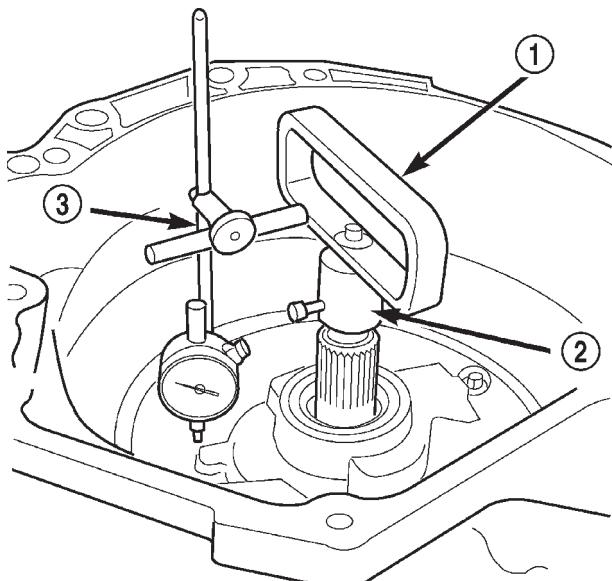
- 1 – SEAT OIL PUMP IN CASE BY HAND
- 2 – REMOVE PILOT STUDS WHEN PUMP IS SEADED

- (b) Attach dial indicator C-3339 to Handle 8266-8.

(c) Install the assembled tool onto the input shaft of the transmission and tighten the retaining screw on Adapter 8266-5 to secure it to the input shaft.

(d) Position the dial indicator plunger against a flat spot on the oil pump and zero the dial indicator.

(e) Move input shaft in and out and record reading. End play should be 0.86 - 2.13 mm (0.034 - 0.084 in.). Adjust as necessary.



80c070b4

Fig. 193 Checking Input Shaft End Play

- 1 – TOOL 8266-8
- 2 – TOOL 8266-5
- 3 – TOOL C-3339

ACCUMULATOR, VALVE BODY, OIL PAN, AND TORQUE CONVERTER

(1) Install accumulator inner spring, piston and outer spring (Fig. 194).

(2) Verify that park/neutral position switch has **not** been installed in case. Valve body can not be installed if switch is in position.

(3) Install new valve body manual shaft seal in case (Fig. 195). Lubricate seal lip and manual shaft with petroleum jelly. Start seal over shaft and into case. Seat seal with 15/16 inch, deep well socket.

(4) Install valve body as follows:

(a) Start park rod into park pawl. If rod will not slide past park pawl, pawl is engaged in park gear. Rotate overdrive output shaft with suitable size 12 point socket; this will free pawl and allow rod to engage.

(b) Align and seat valve body on case. Be sure manual lever shaft and overdrive connector are fully seated in case.

(c) Install and start all valve body attaching bolts by hand. Then tighten bolts evenly, in a diagonal pattern to 12 N·m (105 in. lbs.) torque. **Do not overtighten valve body bolts. This could result in distortion and cross leakage after installation.**

(5) Install new filter on valve body. Tighten filter screws to 4 N·m (35 in. lbs.).

(6) Install seal on park/neutral position switch. Then install and tighten switch to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.).

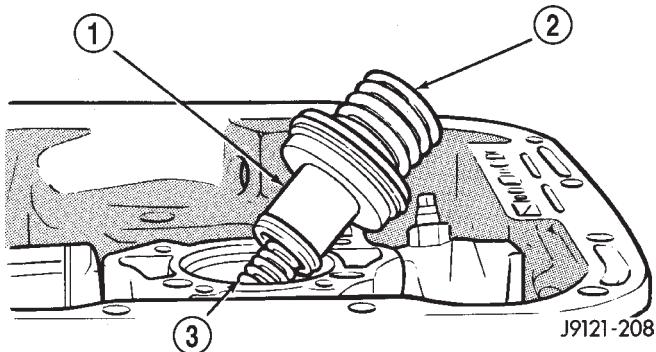


Fig. 194 Accumulator Piston And Springs

- 1 – ACCUMULATOR PISTON
- 2 – OUTER SPRING
- 3 – INNER SPRING

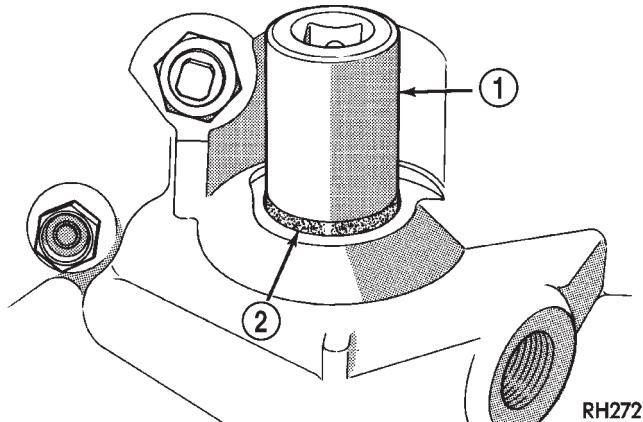


Fig. 195 Manual Lever Shaft Seal

- 1 – 15/16" SOCKET
- 2 – SEAL

CAUTION: If the condition of the transmission before the overhaul procedure caused excessive metallic or fiber contamination in the fluid, replace the torque converter and reverse flush the cooler(s) and cooler lines. Fluid contamination and transmission failure can result if not done.

(7) Install torque converter. Use C-clamp or metal strap to hold converter in place for installation.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

BAND ADJUSTMENT AND FINAL

- (1) Adjust front and rear bands as follows:
 - (a) Loosen locknut on each band adjusting screw 4-5 turns.
 - (b) Tighten both adjusting screws to 8 N·m (72 in. lbs.).
 - (c) Back off front band adjusting screw 2-7/8 turns.
 - (d) Back off rear band adjusting screw 2 turns.
 - (e) Hold each adjusting screw in position and tighten locknut to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (2) Install magnet in oil pan. Magnet seats on small protrusion at corner of pan.
- (3) Position new oil pan gasket on case and install oil pan. Tighten pan bolts to 17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.).
- (4) Install throttle valve and shift selector levers on valve body manual lever shaft.
- (5) Apply small quantity of dielectric grease to terminal pins of solenoid case connector and neutral switch.
- (6) Fill transmission with recommended fluid. Refer to Service Procedures section of this group.

OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER

NOTE: TO SERVICE THE OVERRUNNING CLUTCH CAM AND THE OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER, THE TRANSMISSION GEARTRAIN AND OVERDRIVE UNIT MUST BE REMOVED FROM THE TRANSMISSION.

DISASSEMBLY

- (1) Remove the overdrive piston (Fig. 196).
- (2) Remove the overdrive piston retainer bolts.
- (3) Remove overdrive piston retainer.
- (4) Remove case gasket.
- (5) Tap old cam out of case with pin punch. Insert punch through bolt holes at rear of case (Fig. 197). Alternate position of punch to avoid cocking cam during removal.
- (6) Clean clutch cam bore and case. Be sure to remove all chips/shavings generated during cam removal.

ASSEMBLY

- (1) Temporarily install overdrive piston retainer in case. Use 3-4 bolts to secure retainer.
- (2) Align and start new clutch cam and spring retainer in case. Be sure serrations on cam and in case are aligned (Fig. 198). Then tap cam into case just enough to hold it in place.
- (3) **Verify that cam is correctly positioned before proceeding any further. Narrow ends of**

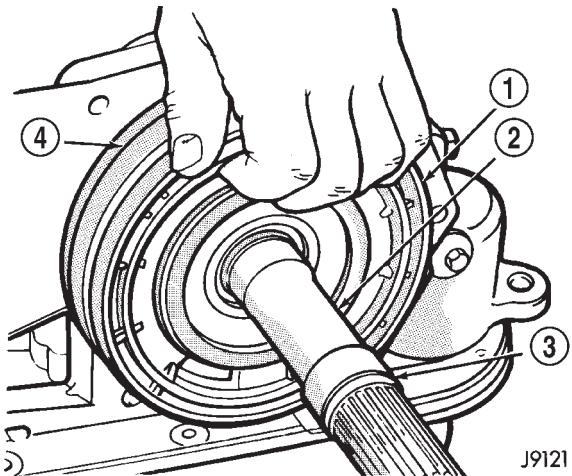


Fig. 196 Overdrive Piston Removal

- 1 – OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PISTON
2 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT
3 – SELECTIVE SPACER
4 – PISTON RETAINER

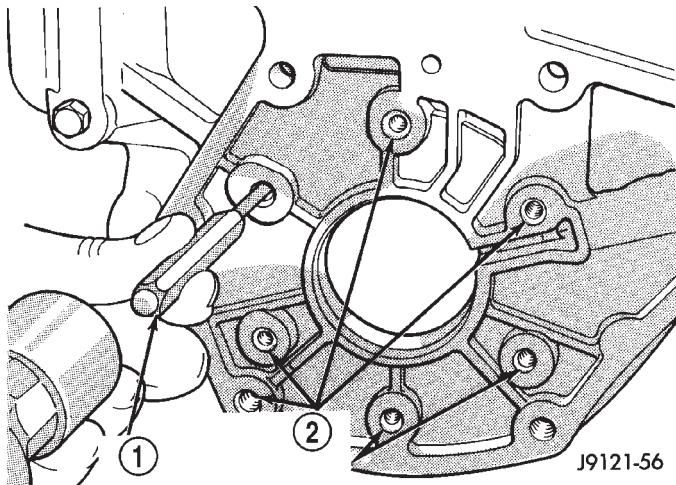


Fig. 197 Overrunning Clutch Cam

- 1 – PIN PUNCH
2 – REAR SUPPORT BOLT HOLES

cam ramps should be to left when cam is viewed from front end of case (Fig. 198).

- (4) Insert Adapter Tool SP-5124 into piston retainer (Fig. 199).
- (5) Assemble Puller Bolt SP-3701 and Press Plate SP-3583-A (Fig. 200).
- (6) Install assembled puller plate and bolt (Fig. 201). Insert bolt through cam, case and adapter tool. Be sure plate is seated squarely on cam.
- (7) Hold puller plate and bolt in place and install puller nut SP-3701 on puller bolt (Fig. 202).
- (8) Tighten puller nut to press clutch cam into case (Fig. 202). **Be sure cam is pressed into case evenly and does not become cocked.**

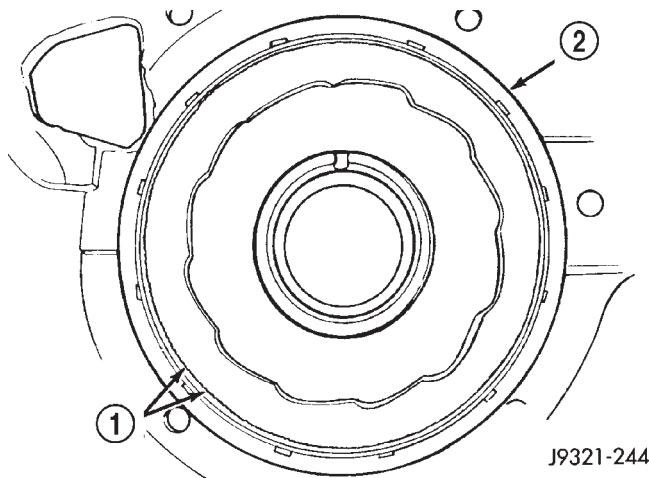


Fig. 198 Positioning Replacement Clutch Cam In Case

1 – ALIGN SERRATIONS ON CAM AND IN CASE
2 – CLUTCH CAM

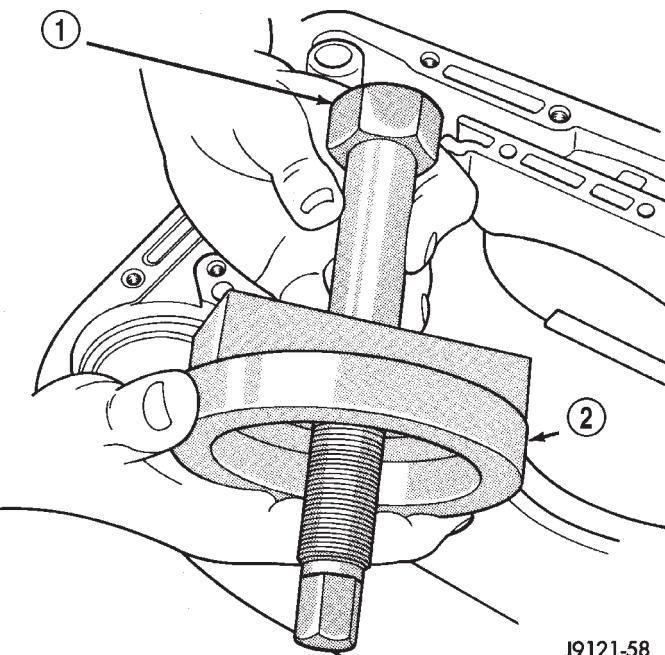


Fig. 200 Assembling Clutch Cam Puller Bolt And Press Plate

1 – PULLER BOLT SP-3701
2 – PRESS PLATE SP-3583-A

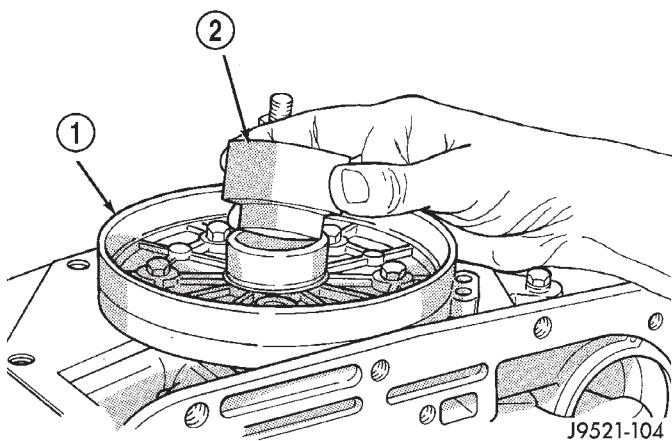


Fig. 199 Positioning Adapter Tool In Overdrive Piston Retainer

1 – PISTON RETAINER
2 – SPECIAL TOOL SP5124

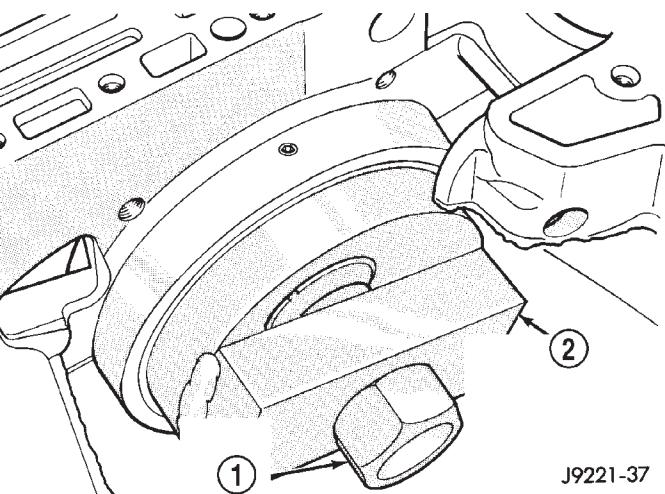


Fig. 201 Positioning Puller Plate On Clutch Cam

1 – SPECIAL TOOL SP-3701
2 – BE SURE PLATE SP-3583-A IS SEATED SQUARELY ON CAM

overdrive piston retainer. Center hole in gasket is smaller than retainer and cannot be installed over retainer.

(14) Position overdrive piston retainer on transmission case and align bolt holes in retainer, gasket and case (Fig. 204). Then install and tighten retainer bolts to 17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.) torque.

(15) Install new seals on overdrive piston.

(16) Stand transmission case upright on bellhousing.

(9) Remove clutch cam installer tools.

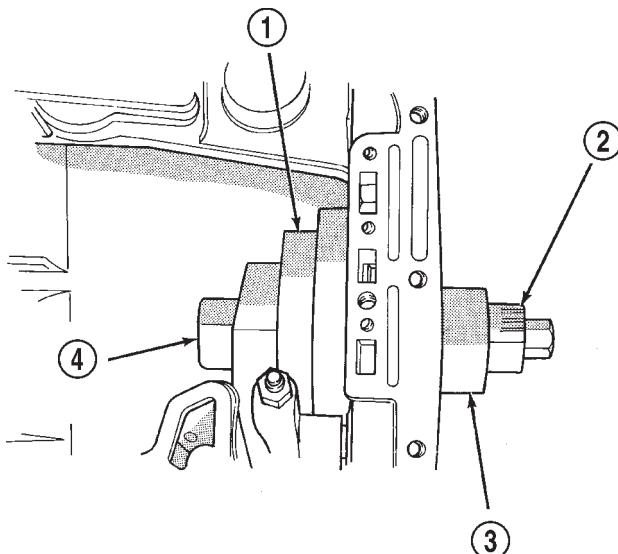
(10) Stake case in 12 places around clutch cam to help secure cam in case. Use blunt punch or chisel to stake case.

(11) Remove piston retainer from case. Cover retainer with plastic sheeting, or paper to keep it dust free.

(12) Clean case and cam thoroughly. Be sure any chips/shavings generated during cam installation are removed from case.

(13) Install new gasket at rear of transmission case. Use petroleum jelly to hold gasket in place. Be sure to align governor feed holes in gasket with feed passages in case (Fig. 203). Also install gasket before

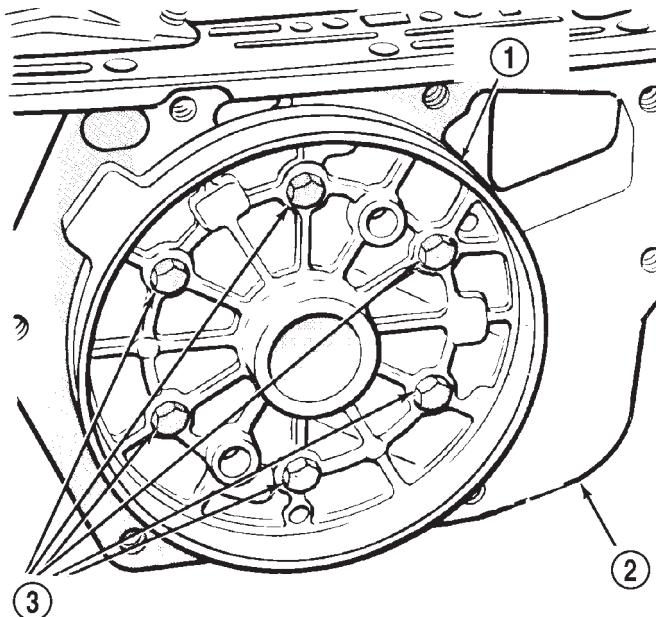
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9521-105

Fig. 202 Pressing Overrunning Clutch Cam Into Case

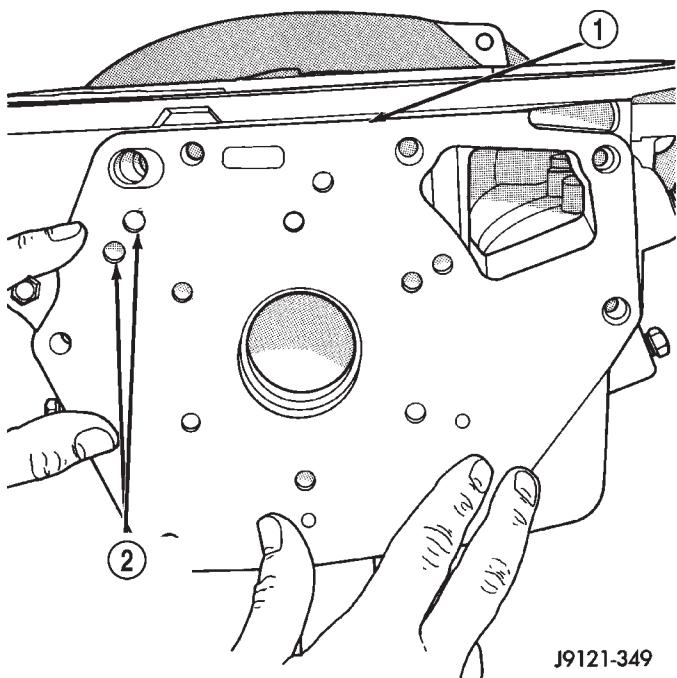
- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL SP3583-A
- 2 – TIGHTEN NUT TO DRAW CAM INTO CASE (NUT IS PART OF BOLT SP3701)
- 3 – SPECIAL TOOL SP5124
- 4 – SPECIAL TOOL SP3701



J9321-464

Fig. 204 Aligning Overdrive Piston Retainer

- 1 – PISTON RETAINER
- 2 – GASKET
- 3 – RETAINER BOLTS



J9121-349

Fig. 203 Installing/Aligning Case Gasket

- 1 – CASE GASKET
- 2 – BE SURE GOVERNOR TUBE FEED HOLES IN CASE AND GASKET ARE ALIGNED

(17) Position Guide Ring 8114-1 on outer edge of overdrive piston retainer.

(18) Position Seal Guide 8114-3 on inner edge of overdrive piston retainer.

(19) Install overdrive piston in overdrive piston retainer by: aligning locating lugs on overdrive piston to the two mating holes in retainer.

(a) Aligning locating lugs on overdrive piston to the two mating holes in retainer.

(b) Lubricate overdrive piston seals with Mopar® Door Ease, or equivalent.

(c) Install piston over Seal Guide 8114-3 and inside Guide Ring 8114-1.

(d) Push overdrive piston into position in retainer.

(e) Verify that the locating lugs entered the lug bores in the retainer.

FRONT SERVO PISTON

DISASSEMBLY

(1) Remove seal ring from rod guide (Fig. 205).

(2) Remove small snap ring from servo piston rod. Then remove piston rod, spring and washer from piston.

(3) Remove and discard servo component O-ring and seal rings.

ASSEMBLY

Clean and inspect front servo components.

(1) Lubricate new O-ring and seal rings with petroleum jelly and install them on piston, guide and rod.

(2) Install rod in piston. Install spring and washer on rod. Compress spring and install snap ring (Fig. 205).

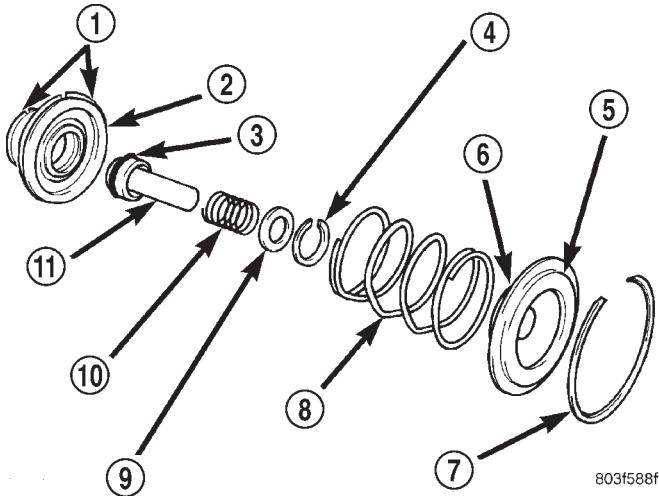


Fig. 205 Front Servo

- 1 – PISTON RINGS
- 2 – SERVO PISTON
- 3 – O-RING
- 4 – SNAP RING
- 5 – PISTON ROD GUIDE
- 6 – SEAL RING
- 7 – SNAP RING
- 8 – SERVO SPRING
- 9 – WASHER
- 10 – SPRING
- 11 – PISTON ROD

REAR SERVO PISTON

DISASSEMBLY

(1) Remove small snap ring and remove plug and spring from servo piston (Fig. 206).

(2) Remove and discard servo piston seal ring.

ASSEMBLY

(1) Lubricate piston and guide seals with petroleum jelly. Lubricate other servo parts with Mopar® ATF Plus 3, Type 7176, transmission fluid.

(2) Install new seal ring on servo piston.

(3) Assemble piston, plug, spring and new snap ring.

(4) Lubricate piston seal lip with petroleum jelly.

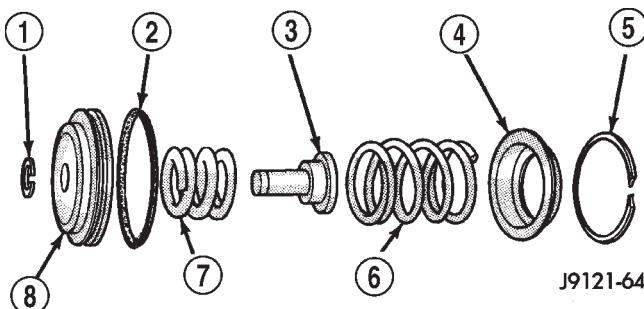


Fig. 206 Rear Servo Components

- 1 – SNAP RING
- 2 – PISTON SEAL
- 3 – PISTON PLUG
- 4 – SPRING RETAINER
- 5 – SNAP RING
- 6 – PISTON SPRING
- 7 – CUSHION SPRING
- 8 – PISTON

OIL PUMP AND REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT

DISASSEMBLY

(1) Mark position of support in oil pump body for assembly alignment reference. Use scribe or paint to make alignment marks.

(2) Place pump body on two wood blocks.

(3) Remove reaction shaft support bolts and separate support from pump body (Fig. 207).

(4) Remove pump inner and outer gears (Fig. 208).

(5) Remove O-ring seal from pump body (Fig. 209).

Discard seal after removal.

(6) Remove oil pump seal with Remover Tool C-3981. Discard seal after removal.

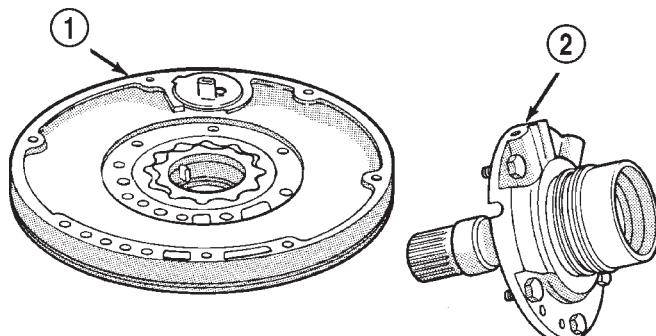
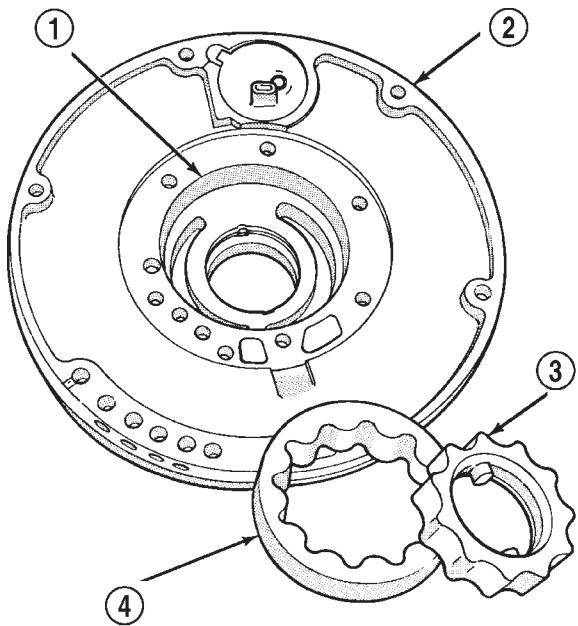


Fig. 207 Reaction Shaft Support

- 1 – OIL PUMP
- 2 – REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9321-177

Fig. 208 Pump Gear

- 1 – GEAR BORE
- 2 – PUMP BODY
- 3 – INNER GEAR
- 4 – OUTER GEAR

OIL PUMP BUSHING REMOVAL

(1) Position pump housing on clean, smooth surface with gear cavity facing down.

(2) Remove bushing with Tool Handle C-4171 and Bushing Remover SP-3550 (Fig. 210).

REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT BUSHING REMOVAL

(1) Assemble Cup Tool SP-3633, Nut SP-1191 and Bushing Remover SP-5301 (Fig. 212).

(2) Hold cup tool firmly against reaction shaft. Thread remover tool into bushing as far as possible by hand.

(3) Using wrench, thread remover tool an additional 3-4 turns into bushing to firmly engage tool.

(4) Tighten tool hex nut against cup tool to pull bushing from shaft. Clean all chips from shaft and support after bushing removal.

ASSEMBLY**OIL PUMP BUSHING INSTALLATION**

(1) Assemble Tool Handle C-4171 and Bushing Installer SP-5118.

(2) Place bushing on installer tool and start bushing into shaft.

(3) Tap bushing into place until Installer Tool SP-5118 bottoms in pump cavity. Keep tool and bushing square with bore. Do not allow bushing to become cocked during installation.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

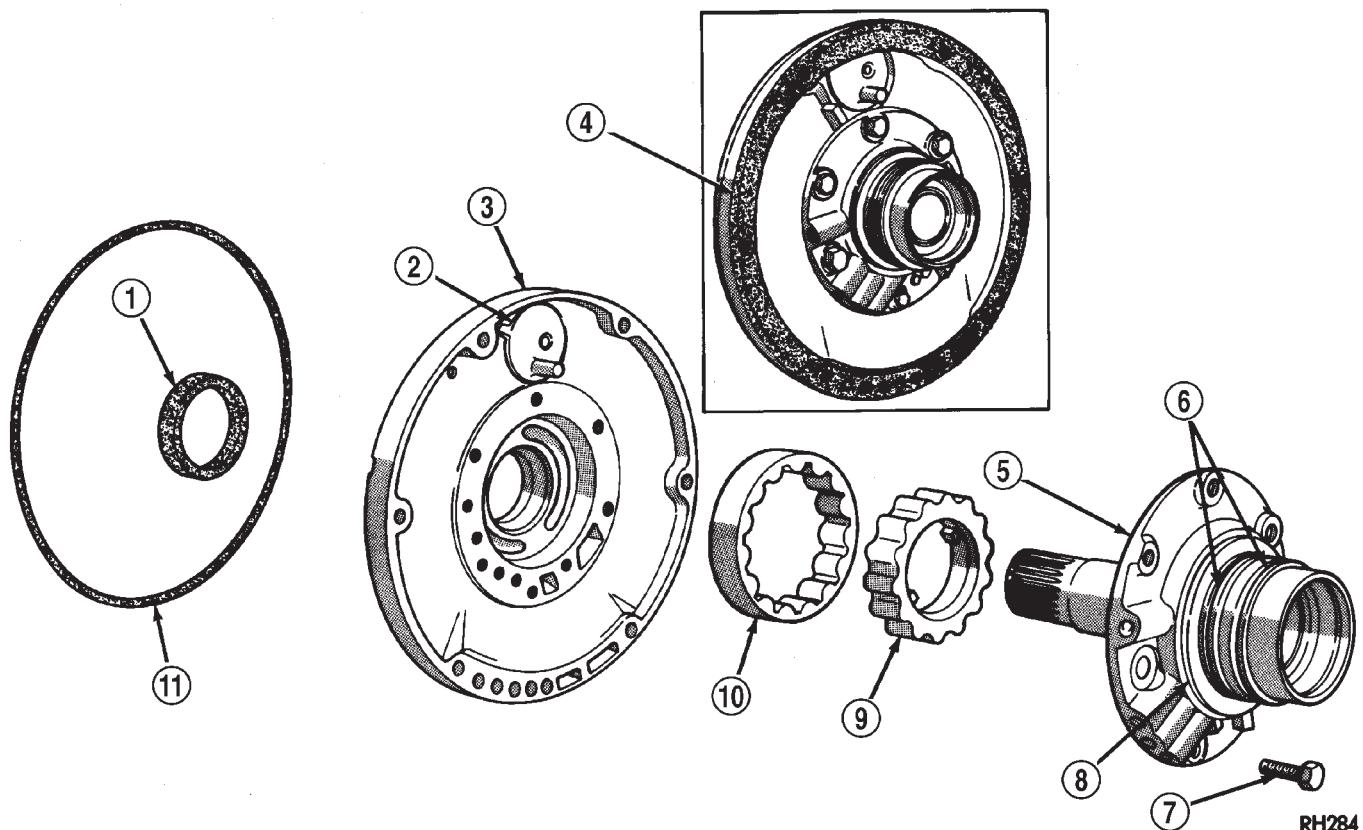


Fig. 209 Oil Pump And Reaction Shaft Components

- 1 – OIL SEAL
2 – VENT BAFFLE
3 – OIL PUMP BODY
4 – GASKET
5 – REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT
6 – SEAL RINGS

- 7 – BOLTS (6)
8 – #1 THRUST WASHER (SELECTIVE)
9 – INNER GEAR
10 – OUTER GEAR
11 – "O" RING

RH284

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(4) Stake pump bushing in two places with blunt punch. Remove burrs from stake points with knife blade (Fig. 211).

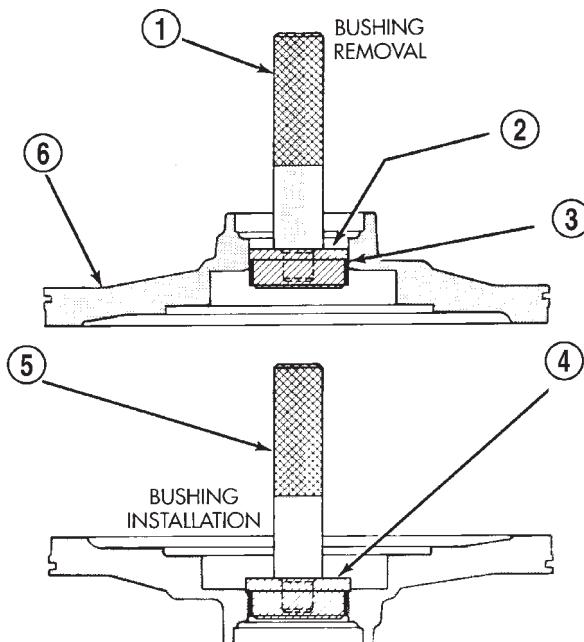


Fig. 210 Oil Pump Bushing

- 1 – BUSHING REMOVAL
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL SP-3550
- 3 – BUSHING
- 4 – SPECIAL TOOL SP-5118
- 5 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
- 6 – PUMP HOUSING

J9221-244

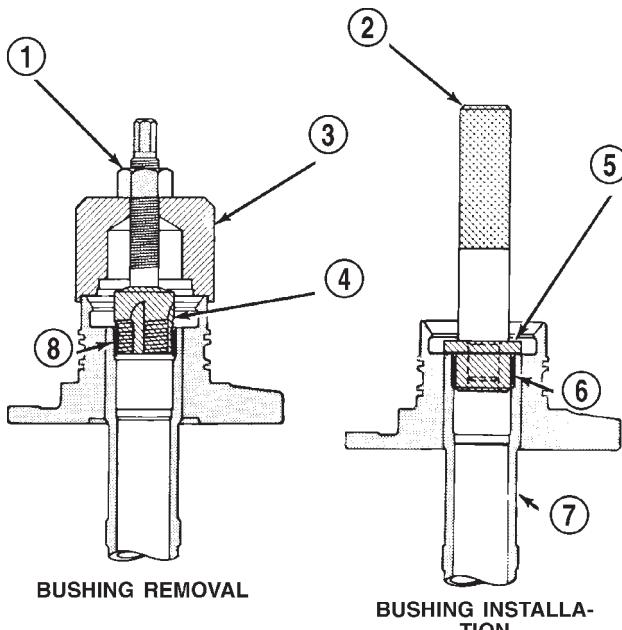
REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT BUSHING INSTALLATION

(1) Place reaction shaft support upright on a clean, smooth surface.

(2) Assemble Bushing Installer Tools C-4171 and SP-5302. Then slide new bushing onto installer tool (Fig. 212).

(3) Start bushing in shaft. Tap bushing into shaft until installer tool bottoms against support flange.

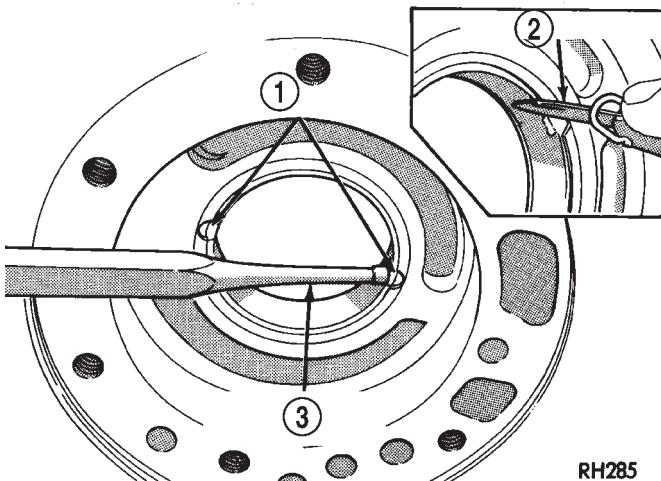
(4) Clean reaction shaft support thoroughly after bushing replacement (to remove any chips).



J9221-245

Fig. 212 Reaction Shaft Bushing

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL SP-1191
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
- 3 – SPECIAL TOOL SP-3633
- 4 – SPECIAL TOOL SP-5301
- 5 – SPECIAL TOOL SP-5302
- 6 – BUSHING
- 7 – REACTION SHAFT
- 8 – BUSHING



RH285

Fig. 211 Staking-Deburring Oil Pump Bushing

- 1 – TWO STAKES
- 2 – NARROW BLADE
- 3 – BLUNT PUNCH

(1) Lubricate pump gears with transmission fluid and install them in pump body.

(2) Install thrust washer on reaction shaft support hub. Lubricate washer with petroleum jelly or transmission fluid before installation.

(3) If reaction shaft seal rings are being replaced, install new seal rings on support hub. Lubricate seal rings with transmission fluid or petroleum jelly after installation. Squeeze each ring until ring ends are securely hooked together.

CAUTION: The reaction shaft support seal rings will break if overspread, or twisted. If new rings are being installed, spread them only enough for installation. Also be very sure the ring ends are securely hooked together after installation. Otherwise, the rings will either prevent pump installation, or break during installation.

(4) Align and install reaction shaft support on pump body.

(5) Install bolts attaching reaction shaft support to pump. Tighten bolts to 20 N·m (175 in. lbs.) torque.

(6) Install new pump seal with Installer Tool C-3860-A (Fig. 213). Use hammer or mallet to tap seal into place.

(7) Install new O-ring on pump body. Lubricate oil seal and O-ring with petroleum jelly.

(8) Cover pump assembly to prevent dust entry and set aside for assembly installation.

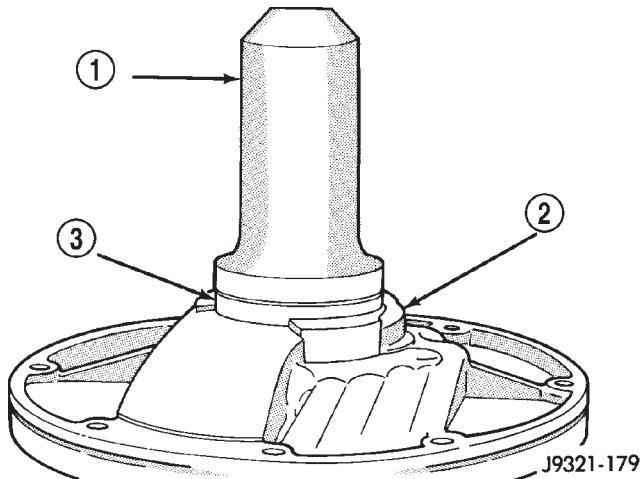


Fig. 213 Oil Pump Seal

1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3860-A

2 – PUMP BODY

3 – PUMP SEAL

FRONT CLUTCH

DISASSEMBLY

(1) Remove waved snap ring and remove reaction plate, clutch plates and clutch discs.

(2) Compress clutch piston retainer and piston springs with Compressor Tool C-3863-A (Fig. 214).

(3) Remove retainer snap ring and remove compressor tool.

(4) Remove clutch piston springs (Fig. 215). **Note position of piston springs for assembly reference.**

(5) Remove clutch piston from retainer with a twisting motion.

(6) Remove and discard clutch piston inner and outer seals.

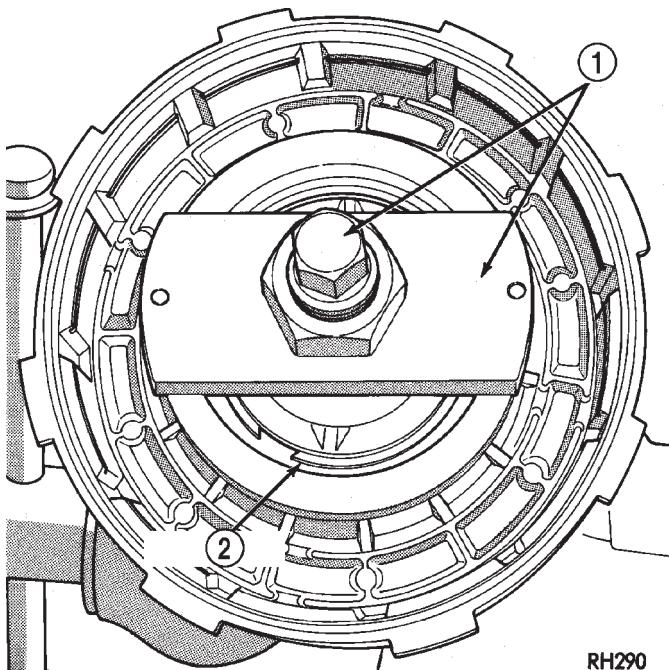


Fig. 214 Removing Front Clutch Spring Retainer Snap Ring

1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3863-A

2 – SNAP RING

(7) Assemble Tool Handle C-4171 and Bushing Remover SP-3629 (Fig. 216).

(8) Insert remover tool in bushing and drive bushing straight out of clutch retainer.

ASSEMBLY

(1) Mount Bushing Installer SP-5511 on tool handle (Fig. 216).

(2) Slide new bushing onto installer tool and start bushing into retainer.

(3) Tap new bushing into place until installer tool bottoms against clutch retainer.

(4) Remove installer tools and clean retainer thoroughly.

(5) Soak clutch discs in transmission fluid.

(6) Install new inner and outer seals on clutch piston. Be sure seal lips face interior of retainer.

(7) Lubricate new inner and outer piston seals with Ru-Glyde, or Mopar® Door Ease.

(8) Install clutch piston in retainer. Use twisting motion to seat piston in bottom of retainer. A thin strip of plastic (about 0.015 - 0.020 in. thick), can be used to guide seals into place if necessary.

CAUTION: Never push the clutch piston straight in. This will fold the seals over causing leakage and clutch slip. In addition, never use any type of metal tool to help ease the piston seals into place. Metal tools will cut, shave, or score the seals.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

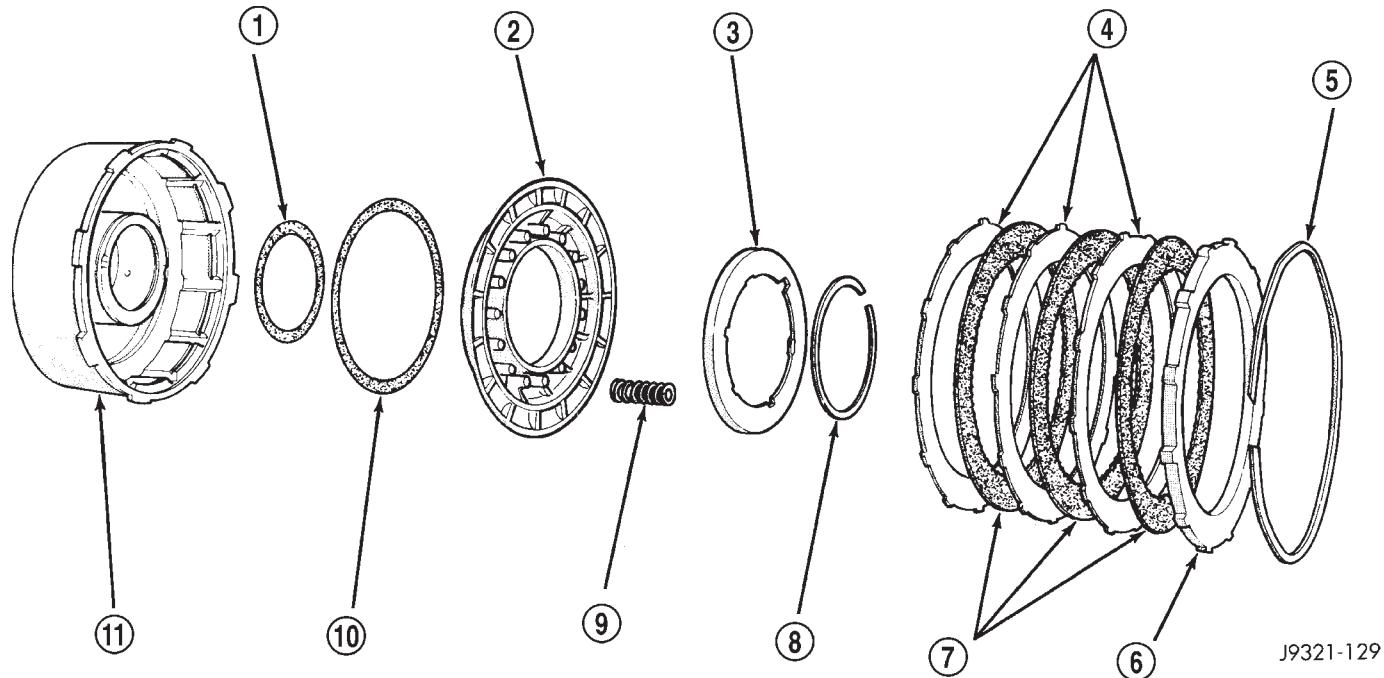
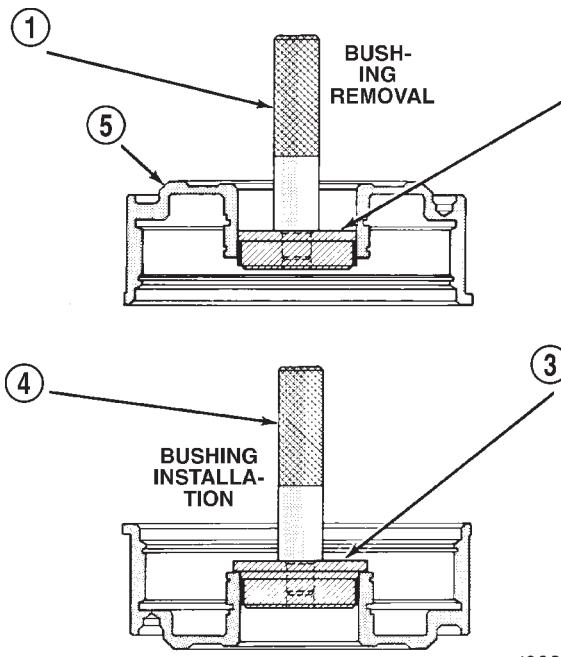


Fig. 215 Front Clutch Components

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 – INNER PISTON SEAL | 7 – CLUTCH DISCS |
| 2 – CLUTCH PISTON | 8 – RETAINER SNAP RING |
| 3 – CLUTCH PISTON SPRING RETAINER | 9 – CLUTCH PISTON SPRINGS (9) |
| 4 – CLUTCH PLATES | 10 – OUTER PISTON SEAL |
| 5 – CLUTCH PACK SNAP RING (WAVED) | 11 – FRONT CLUTCH RETAINER |
| 6 – REACTION PLATE | |

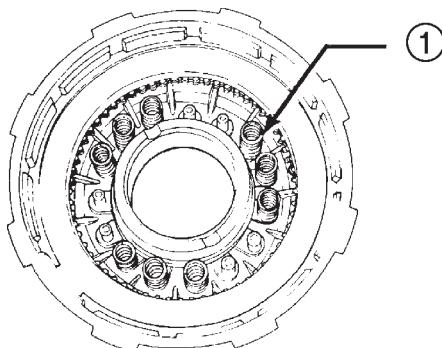


J9221-247

Fig. 216 Front Clutch Retainer Bushing Replacement Tools

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
- 2 - SPECIAL TOOL SP-3629
- 3 - SPECIAL TOOL SP-5511
- 4 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
- 5 - FRONT CLUTCH RETAINER

(9) Install and position nine clutch piston springs (Fig. 217).



J9521-75

Fig. 217 Front Clutch Spring Position

- 1 - 9 SPRING CLUTCH

(10) Install spring retainer on top of piston springs.

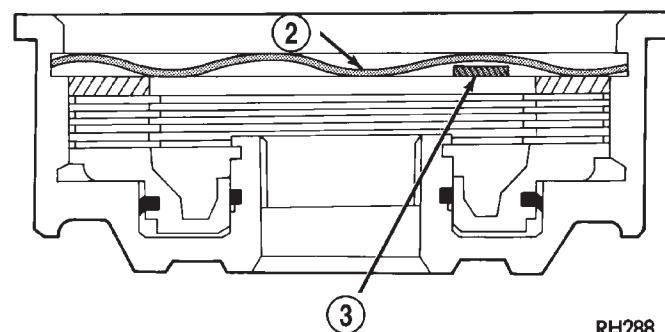
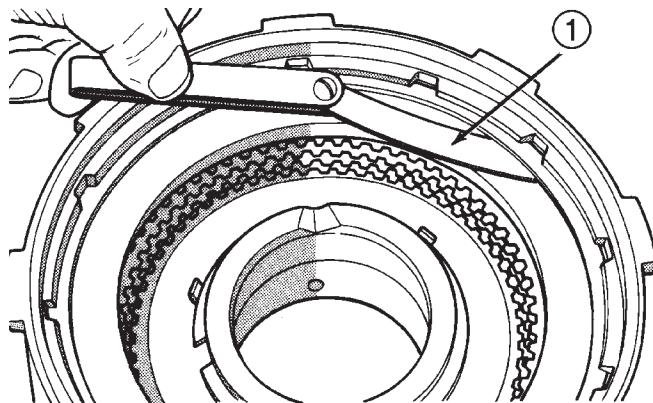
(11) Compress spring retainer and piston springs with Tool C-3863-A.

(12) Install spring retainer snap ring and remove compressor tool.

(13) Install clutch plates and discs (Fig. 215). Three clutch discs, three steel plates and one reaction plate are required.

(14) Install reaction plate followed by waved snap ring.

(15) Check clutch pack clearance with feeler gauge (Fig. 218). Clearance between waved spring and pressure plate should 1.78 - 3.28 mm (0.070 - 0.129 in.). If clearance is incorrect, clutch plates, clutch discs, snap ring, or pressure plate may have to be changed.



RH288

Fig. 218 Typical Method Of Measuring Front Clutch Pack Clearance

- 1 - FEELER GAUGE
- 2 - WAVED SNAP RING
- 3 - FEELER GAUGE

REAR CLUTCH

DISASSEMBLY

(1) Remove fiber thrust washer from forward side of clutch retainer.

(2) Remove input shaft front/rear seal rings.

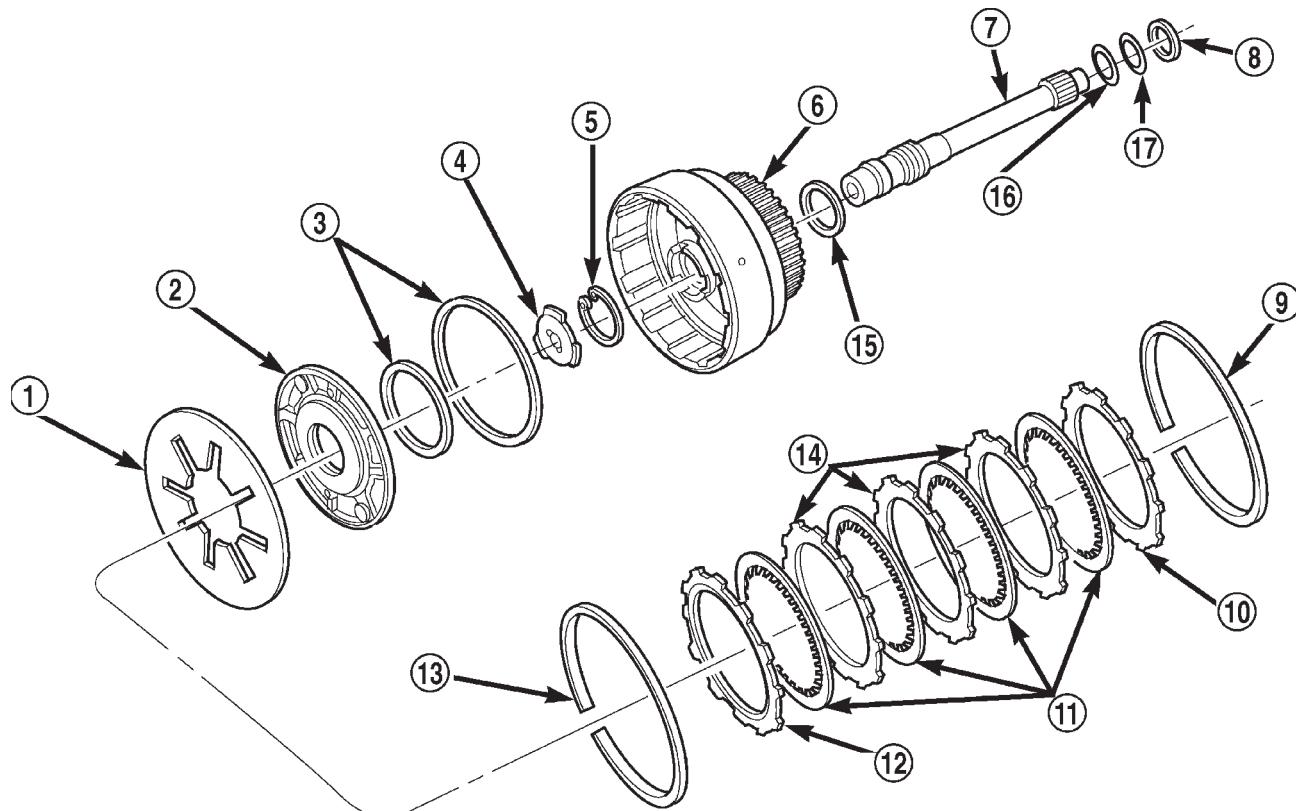
(3) Remove selective clutch pack snap ring (Fig. 219).

(4) Remove top pressure plate, clutch discs, steel plates, bottom pressure plate and wave snap ring and wave spring (Fig. 219).

(5) Remove clutch piston with rotating motion.

(6) Remove and discard piston seals.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



80c070a4

Fig. 219 Rear Clutch Components

- 1 – PISTON SPRING
 2 – REAR CLUTCH PISTON
 3 – CLUTCH PISTON SEALS
 4 – OUTPUT SHAFT THRUST WASHER (METAL)
 5 – INPUT SHAFT SNAP RING
 6 – REAR CLUTCH RETAINER
 7 – INPUT SHAFT
 8 – REAR CLUTCH THRUST WASHER (FIBER)
 9 – CLUTCH PACK SNAP RING (SELECTIVE)

- 10 – TOP PRESSURE PLATE
 11 – CLUTCH DISCS (4)
 12 – BOTTOM PRESSURE PLATE
 13 – WAVE SPRING
 14 – CLUTCH PLATES (3)
 15 – RETAINER SEAL RING
 16 – SHAFT REAR SEAL RING (PLASTIC)
 17 – SHAFT FRONT SEAL RING (TEFLON)

(7) Remove input shaft snap-ring (Fig. 220). It may be necessary to press the input shaft in slightly to relieve tension on the snap-ring.

(8) Press input shaft out of retainer with shop press and suitable size press tool. Use a suitably sized press tool to support the retainer as close to the input shaft as possible.

ASSEMBLY

(1) Soak clutch discs in transmission fluid while assembling other clutch parts.

(2) Install new seal rings on clutch retainer hub and input shaft if necessary (Fig. 221).

(a) Be sure clutch hub seal ring is fully seated in groove and is not twisted.

(3) Lubricate splined end of input shaft and clutch retainer with transmission fluid. Then press input shaft into retainer (Fig. 223). Use a suitably sized

press tool to support retainer as close to input shaft as possible.

(4) Install input shaft snap-ring (Fig. 220).

(5) Invert retainer and press input shaft in opposite direction until snap-ring is seated.

(6) Install new seals on clutch piston. Be sure lip of each seal faces interior of clutch retainer.

(7) Lubricate lip of piston seals with generous quantity of Mopar® Door Ease. Then lubricate retainer hub and bore with light coat of transmission fluid.

(8) Install clutch piston in retainer. Use twisting motion to seat piston in bottom of retainer. A thin strip of plastic (about 0.020" thick), can be used to guide seals into place if necessary.

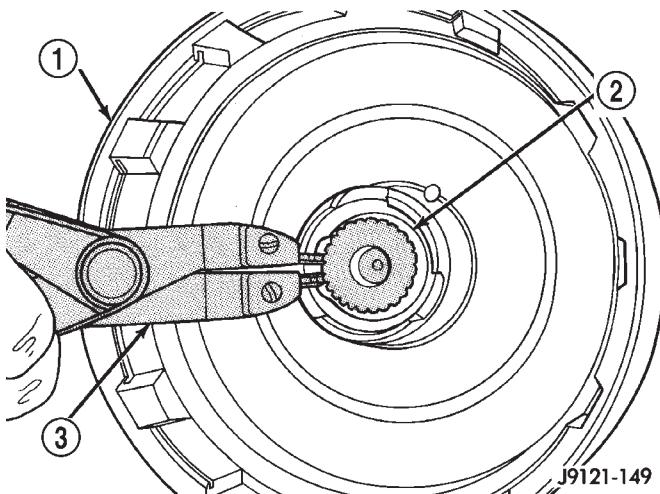
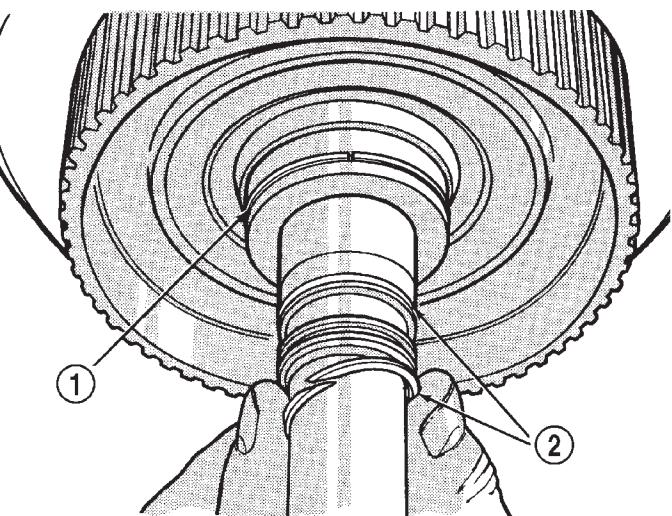


Fig. 220 Removing/Installing Input Shaft Snap-Ring

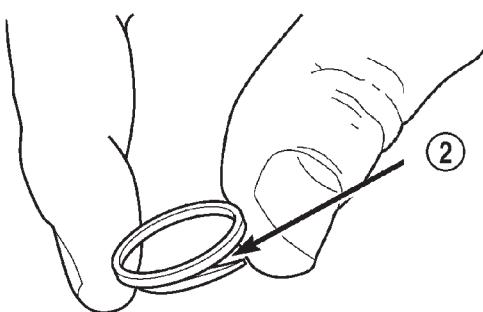
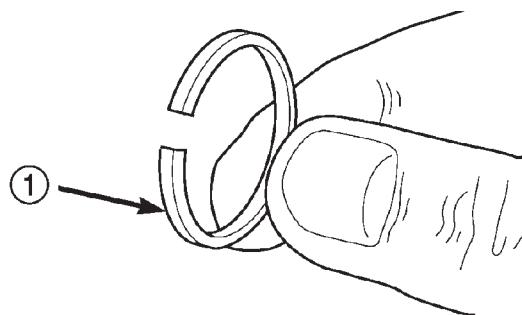
- 1 – REAR CLUTCH RETAINER
- 2 – INPUT SHAFT SNAP RING
- 3 – SNAP RING PLIERS



J9121-538

Fig. 221 Rear Clutch Retainer And Input Shaft Seal Ring Installation

- 1 – REAR CLUTCH RETAINER HUB SEAL RING
- 2 – INPUT SHAFT SEAL RINGS



80c070a5

Fig. 222 Input Shaft Seal Ring Identification

- 1 – PLASTIC REAR SEAL RING
- 2 – TEFLON FRONT SEAL RING (SQUEEZE RING TOGETHER SLIGHTLY BEFORE INSTALLATION FOR BETTER FIT)

selective snap ring and pressure plates may have to be changed.

CAUTION: Never push the clutch piston straight in. This will fold the seals over causing leakage and clutch slip. In addition, never use any type of metal tool to help ease the piston seals into place. Metal tools will cut, shave, or score the seals.

(9) Install piston spring in retainer and on top of piston (Fig. 224). Concave side of spring faces downward (toward piston).

(10) Install wave spring in retainer (Fig. 224). Be sure spring is completely seated in retainer groove.

(11) Install bottom pressure plate (Fig. 219). Ridged side of plate faces downward (toward piston) and flat side toward clutch pack.

(12) Install first clutch disc in retainer on top of bottom pressure plate. Then install a clutch plate followed by a clutch disc until entire clutch pack is installed (4 discs and 3 plates are required) (Fig. 219).

(13) Install top pressure plate.

(14) Install selective snap ring. Be sure snap ring is fully seated in retainer groove.

(15) Using a suitable gauge bar and dial indicator, measure clutch pack clearance (Fig. 225).

(a) Position gauge bar across the clutch drum with the dial indicator pointer on the pressure plate (Fig. 225).

(b) Using two small screw drivers, lift the pressure plate and release it.

(c) Zero the dial indicator.

(d) Lift the pressure plate until it contacts the snap-ring and record the dial indicator reading.

Clearance should be 0.635 - 0.914 mm (0.025 - 0.036 in.). If clearance is incorrect, steel plates, discs,

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

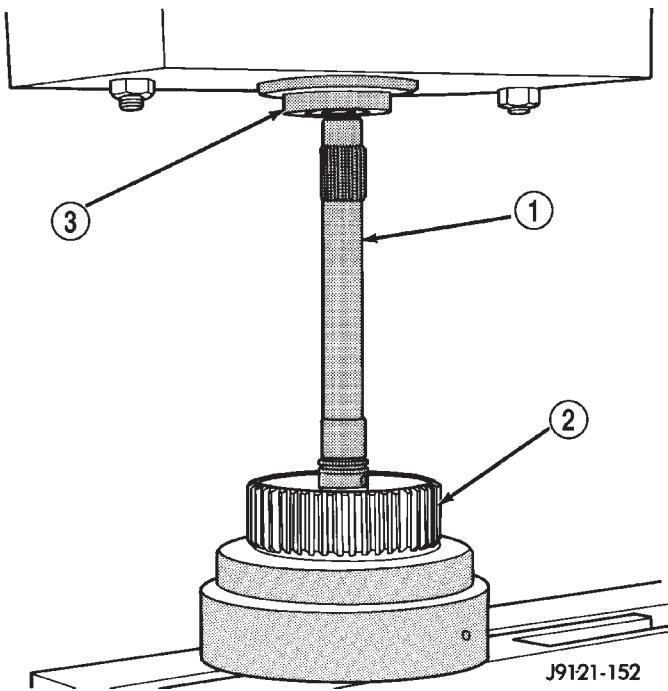


Fig. 223 Pressing Input Shaft Into Rear Clutch Retainer

- 1 – INPUT SHAFT
- 2 – REAR CLUTCH RETAINER
- 3 – PRESS RAM

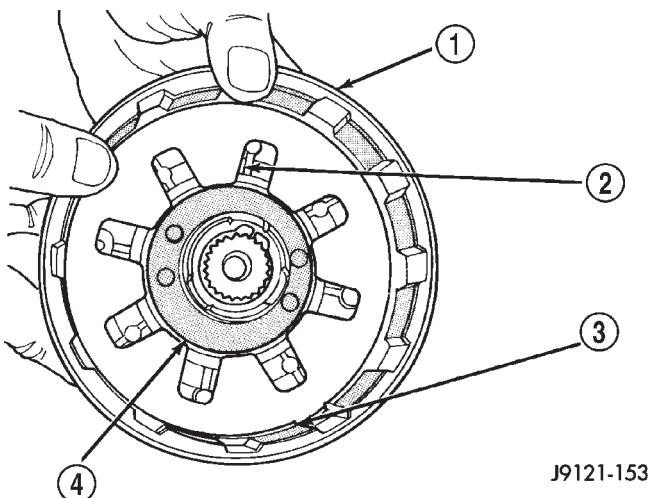


Fig. 224 Piston Spring/Wave Spring Position

- 1 – REAR CLUTCH RETAINER
- 2 – PISTON SPRING
- 3 – WAVE SPRING
- 4 – CLUTCH PISTON

The selective snap ring thicknesses are:

- .107-.109 in.
- .098-.100 in.
- .095-.097 in.
- .083-.085 in.

- .076-.078 in.
- .071-.073 in.
- .060-.062 in.

(16) Coat rear clutch thrust washer with petroleum jelly and install washer over input shaft and into clutch retainer (Fig. 226). Use enough petroleum jelly to hold washer in place.

(17) Set rear clutch aside for installation during final assembly.

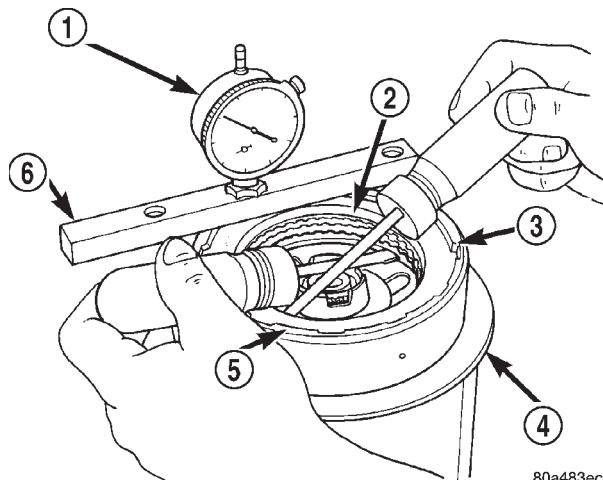


Fig. 225 Checking Rear Clutch Pack Clearance

- 1 – DIAL INDICATOR
- 2 – PRESSURE PLATE
- 3 – SNAP RING
- 4 – STAND
- 5 – REAR CLUTCH
- 6 – GAUGE BAR

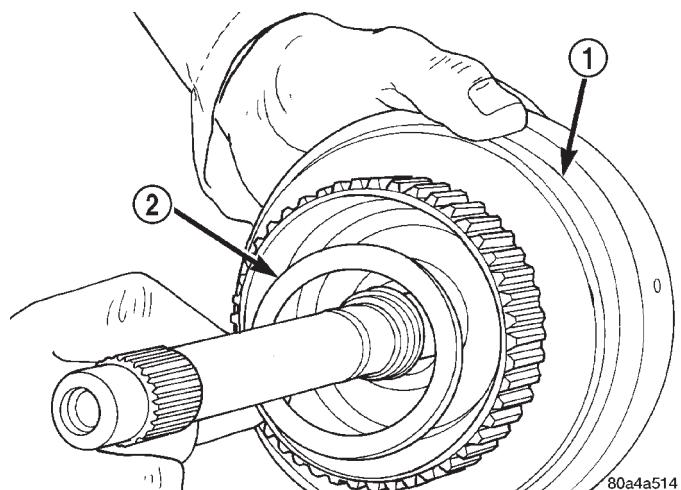


Fig. 226 Installing Rear Clutch Thrust Washer

- 1 – REAR CLUTCH RETAINER
- 2 – REAR CLUTCH THRUST WASHER

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT

DISASSEMBLY

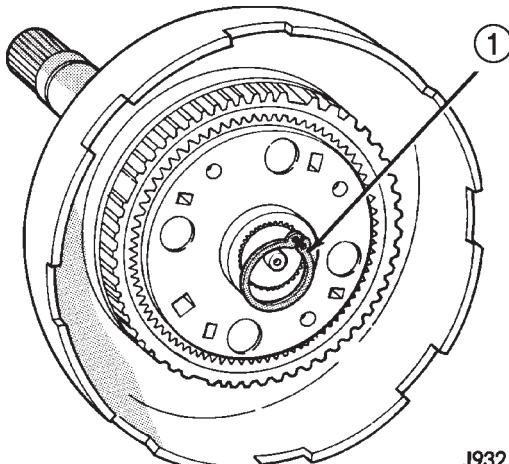
(1) Remove planetary snap ring from intermediate shaft (Fig. 227). Discard snap ring as it is not reusable.

(2) Remove front planetary gear and front annulus gear as assembly (Fig. 228).

(3) Remove front planetary gear and thrust washer from front annulus gear (Fig. 229). Note thrust washer position for assembly reference.

(4) Remove tabbed thrust washer from driving shell (Fig. 230). Note washer position for assembly reference.

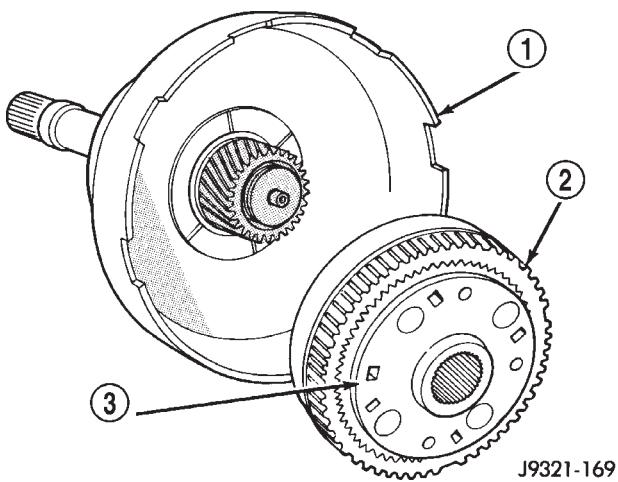
(5) Remove sun gear and driving shell as assembly (Fig. 231).



J9321-168

Fig. 227 Removing Planetary Snap Ring

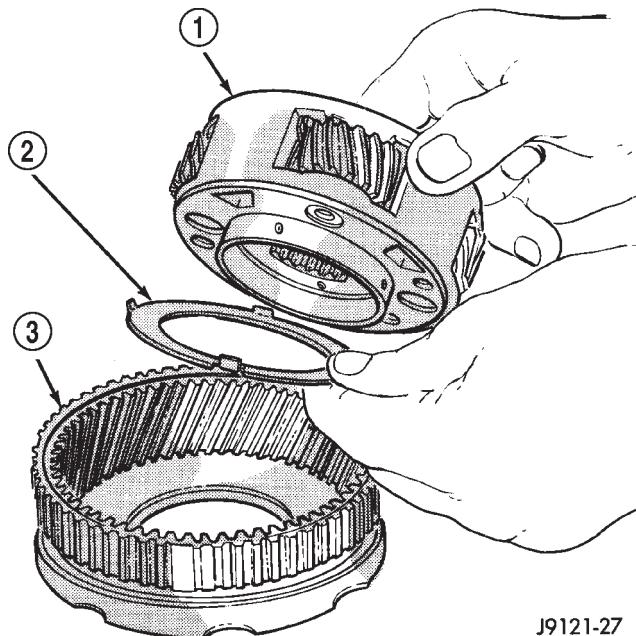
1 – PLANETARY SNAP RING



J9321-169

Fig. 228 Removing Front Planetary And Annulus Gears

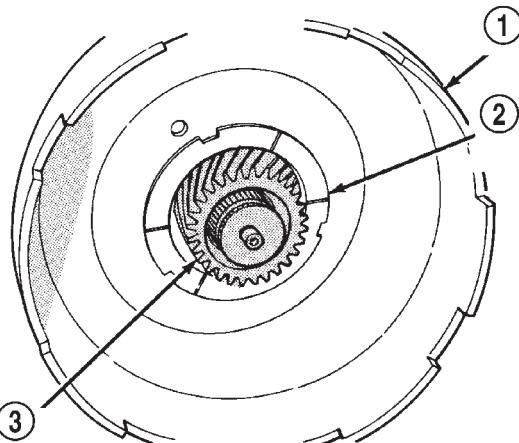
1 – DRIVING SHELL
2 – FRONT ANNULUS GEAR
3 – FRONT PLANETARY GEAR



J9121-27

Fig. 229 Disassembling Front Planetary And Annulus Gears

1 – FRONT PLANETARY GEAR
2 – TABBED THRUST WASHER
3 – FRONT ANNULUS GEAR



J9321-170

Fig. 230 Driving Shell Thrust Washer Removal

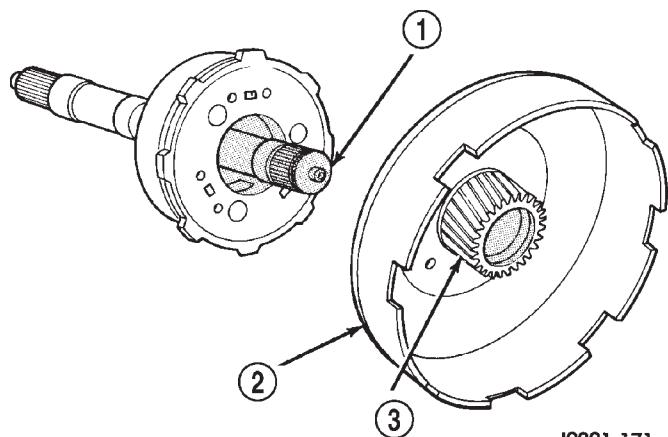
1 – DRIVING SHELL
2 – TABBED THRUST WASHER
3 – SUN GEAR

(6) Remove tabbed thrust washer from rear planetary gear (Fig. 232). Note washer position on gear for assembly reference.

(7) Remove rear planetary gear and rear annulus gear from intermediate shaft (Fig. 233).

(8) Remove thrust plate from rear annulus gear (Fig. 234).

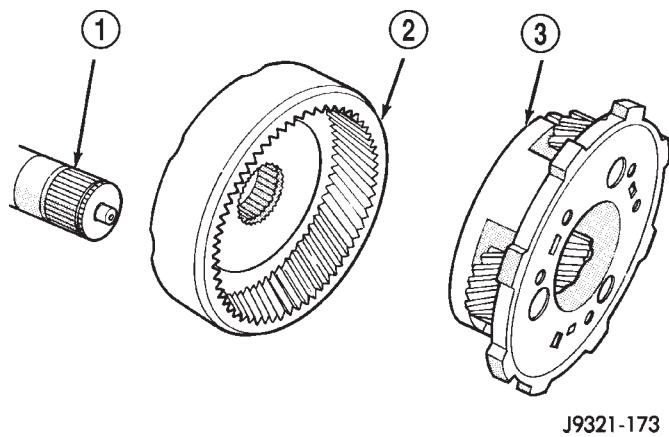
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9321-171

Fig. 231 Sun Gear And Driving Shell Removal

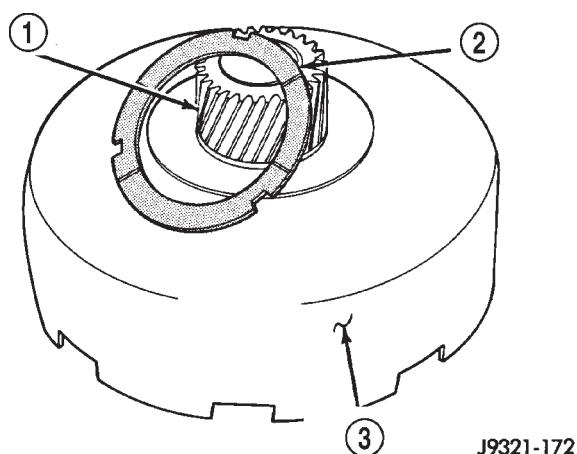
- 1 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT
- 2 – DRIVING SHELL
- 3 – SUN GEAR



J9321-173

Fig. 233 Rear Planetary And Annulus Gear Removal

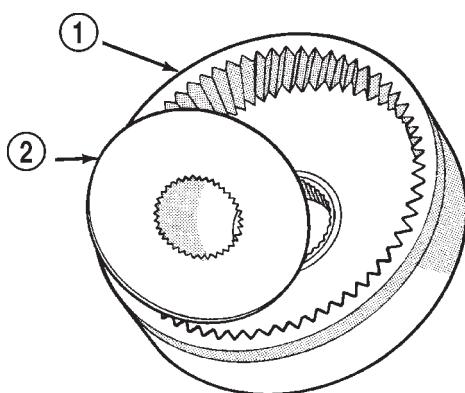
- 1 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT
- 2 – REAR ANNULUS GEAR
- 3 – REAR PLANETARY GEAR



J9321-172

Fig. 232 Rear Planetary Thrust Washer Removal

- 1 – SUN GEAR
- 2 – REAR PLANETARY THRUST WASHER
- 3 – DRIVING SHELL



J9321-174

Fig. 234 Rear Annulus Thrust Plate Removal

- 1 – REAR ANNULUS GEAR
- 2 – THRUST PLATE

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

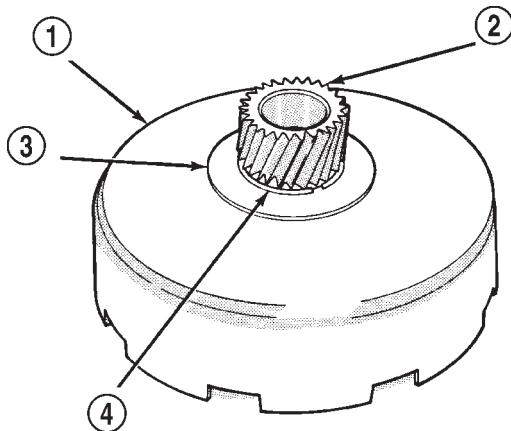
ASSEMBLY

(1) Lubricate sun gear and planetary gears with transmission fluid during assembly. Use petroleum jelly to lubricate intermediate shaft bushing surfaces, thrust washers and thrust plates and to hold these parts in place during assembly.

(2) Install front snap ring on sun gear and install gear in driving shell. Then install thrust plate over sun gear and against rear side of driving shell (Fig. 235). Install rear snap ring to secure sun gear and thrust plate in driving shell.

(3) Install rear annulus gear on intermediate shaft (Fig. 236).

(4) Install thrust plate in annulus gear (Fig. 237). Be sure plate is seated on shaft splines and against gear.



J9321-175

Fig. 235 Sun Gear Installation

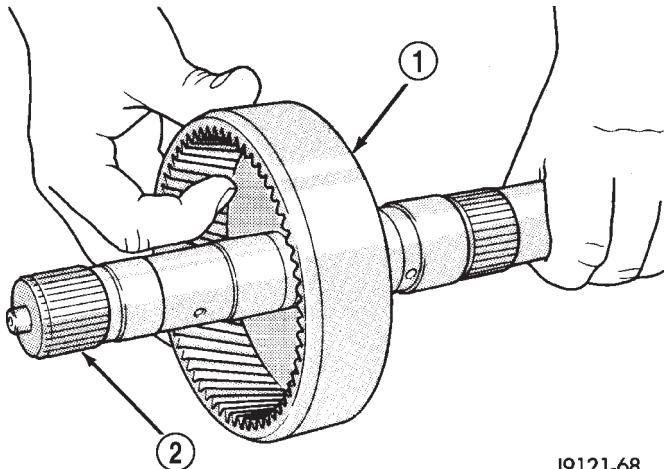
- 1 – DRIVING SHELL
- 2 – SUN GEAR
- 3 – THRUST PLATE
- 4 – SUN GEAR REAR RETAINING RING

(5) Install rear planetary gear in rear annulus gear (Fig. 238). Be sure planetary carrier is seated against annulus gear.

(6) Install tabbed thrust washer on front face of rear planetary gear (Fig. 239). Seat washer tabs in matching slots in face of gear carrier. Use extra petroleum jelly to hold washer in place if desired.

(7) Lubricate sun gear bushings with petroleum jelly or transmission fluid.

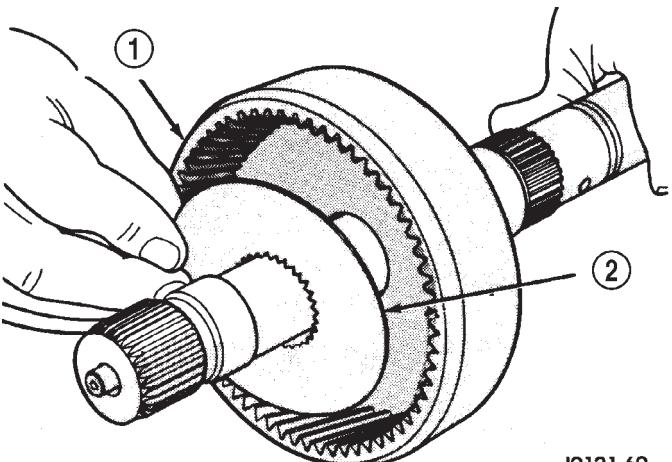
(8) Install sun gear and driving shell on intermediate shaft (Fig. 240). Seat shell against rear planetary gear. Verify that thrust washer on planetary gear was not displaced during installation.



J9121-68

Fig. 236 Installing Rear Annulus Gear On Intermediate Shaft

- 1 – REAR ANNULUS GEAR
- 2 – OUTPUT SHAFT



J9121-69

Fig. 237 Installing Rear Annulus Thrust Plate

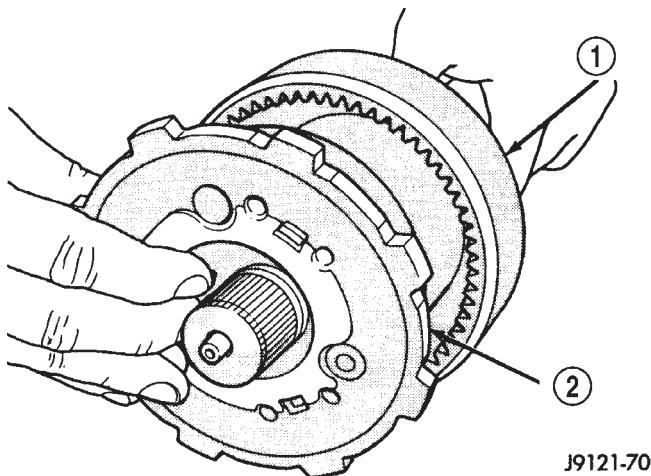
- 1 – REAR ANNULUS GEAR
- 2 – THRUST PLATE

(9) Install tabbed thrust washer in driving shell (Fig. 241), be sure washer tabs are seated in tab slots of driving shell. Use extra petroleum jelly to hold washer in place if desired.

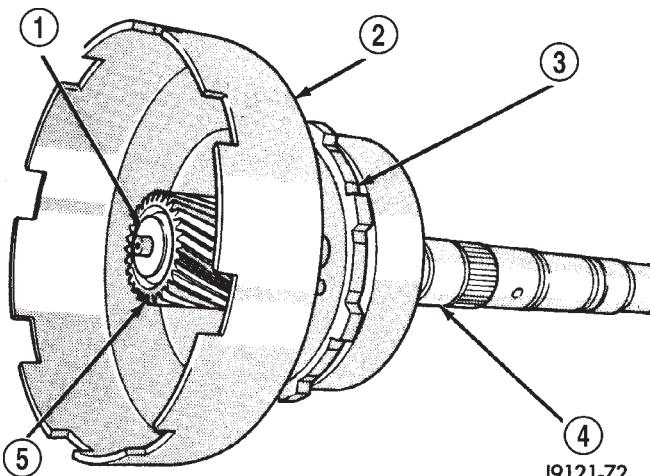
(10) Install tabbed thrust washer on front planetary gear (Fig. 242). Seat washer tabs in matching slots in face of gear carrier. Use extra petroleum jelly to hold washer in place if desired.

(11) Install front annulus gear over and onto front planetary gear (Fig. 243). Be sure gears are fully meshed and seated.

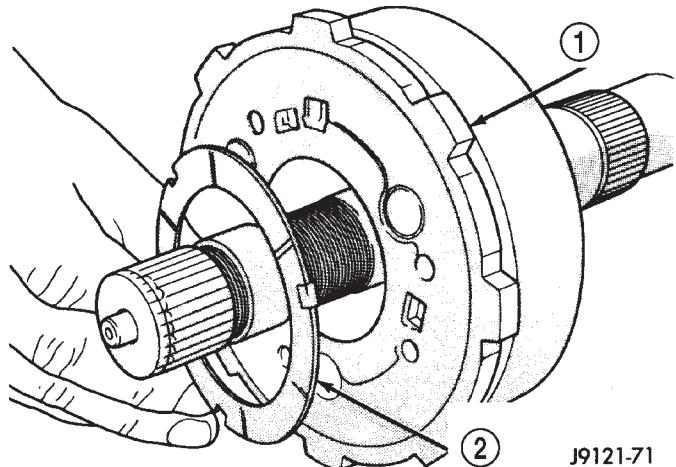
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 238 Installing Rear Planetary Gear**

- 1 – REAR ANNULUS GEAR
2 – REAR PLANETARY GEAR

**Fig. 240 Installing Sun Gear And Driving Shell**

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT
2 – DRIVING SHELL
3 – REAR PLANETARY GEAR
4 – OUTPUT SHAFT
5 – SUN GEAR

**Fig. 239 Installing Rear Planetary Thrust Washer**

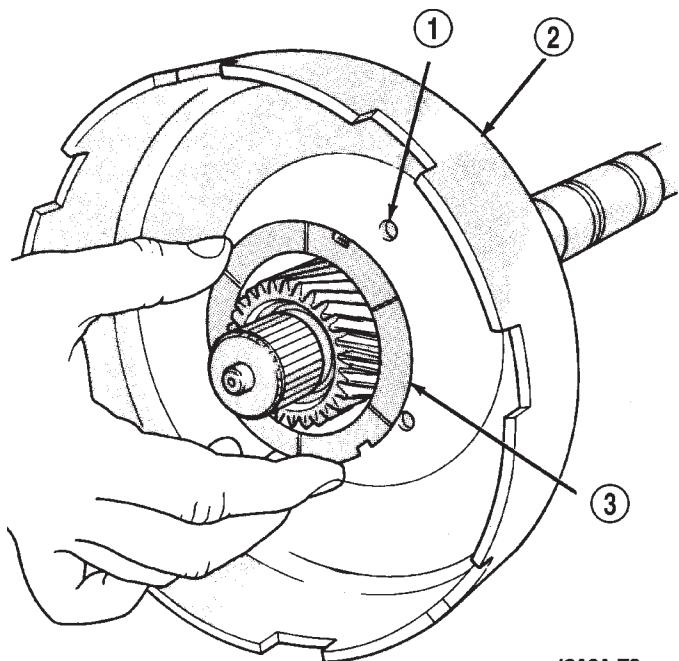
- 1 – REAR PLANETARY GEAR
2 – TABBED THRUST WASHER

(12) Install front planetary and annulus gear assembly (Fig. 244). Hold gears together and slide them onto shaft. Be sure planetary pinions are seated on sun gear and that planetary carrier is seated on intermediate shaft.

(13) Place geartrain in upright position. Rotate gears to be sure all components are seated and properly assembled. Snap ring groove at forward end of intermediate shaft will be completely exposed when components are assembled correctly.

(14) Install new planetary snap ring in groove at end of intermediate shaft (Fig. 245).

(15) Turn planetary geartrain over. Position wood block under front end of intermediate shaft and support geartrain on shaft. Be sure all geartrain parts

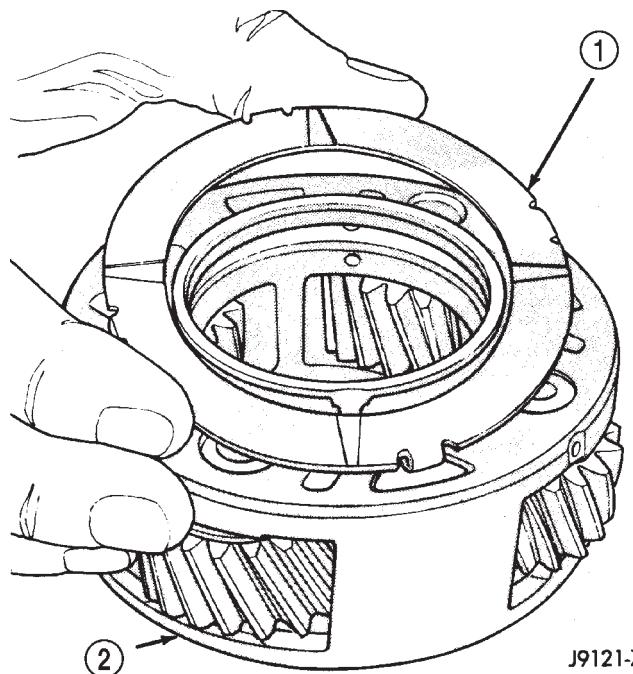
**Fig. 241 Installing Driving Shell Thrust Washer**

- 1 – TAB SLOTS (3)
2 – DRIVING SHELL
3 – TABBED THRUST WASHER

have moved forward against planetary snap ring. This is important for accurate end play check.

(16) Check planetary geartrain end play with feeler gauge (Fig. 246). Insert gauge between rear annulus gear and shoulder on intermediate shaft as

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

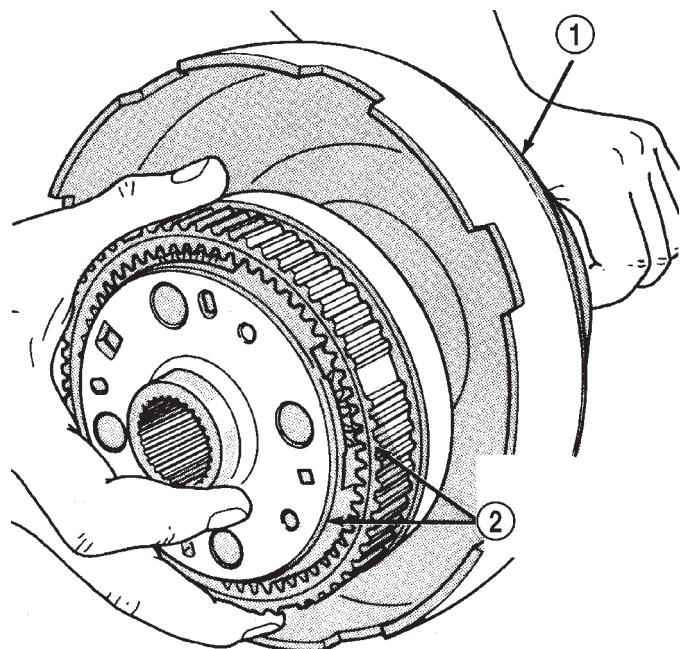


J9121-74

Fig. 242 Installing Thrust Washer On Front Planetary Gear

1 – TABBED THRUST WASHER

2 – FRONT PLANETARY GEAR



J9121-76

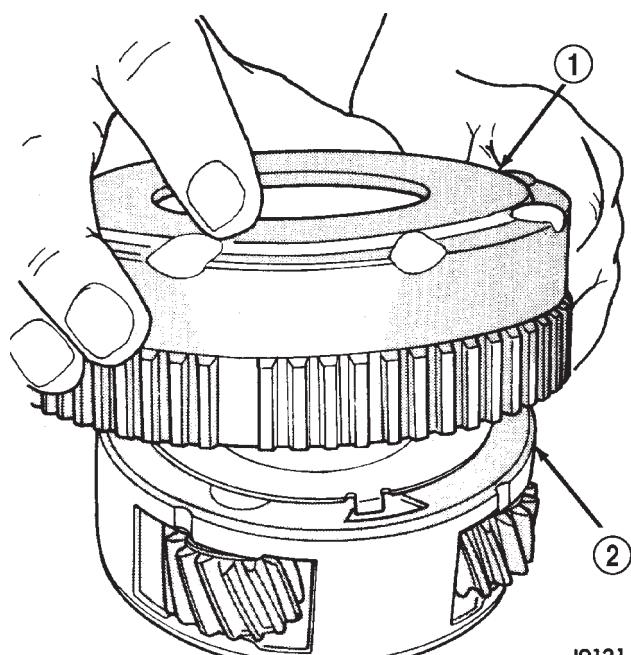
Fig. 244 Installing Front Planetary And Annulus Gear Assembly

1 – DRIVING SHELL

2 – ASSEMBLED FRONT PLANETARY AND ANNULUS GEARS

shown. End play should be 0.15 to 1.22 mm (0.006 to 0.048 in.).

(17) If end play is incorrect, install thinner/thicker planetary snap ring as needed.

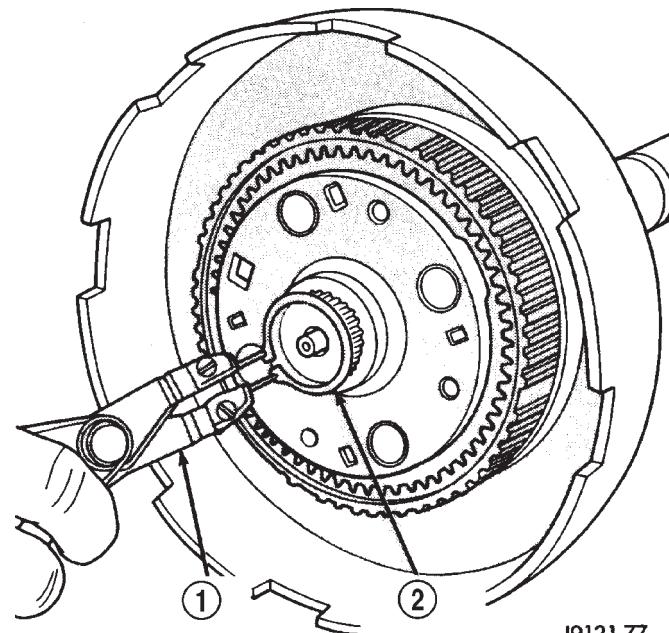


J9121-75

Fig. 243 Assembling Front Planetary And Annulus Gears

1 – FRONT ANNULUS GEAR

2 – FRONT PLANETARY GEAR



J9121-77

Fig. 245 Installing Planetary Snap Ring

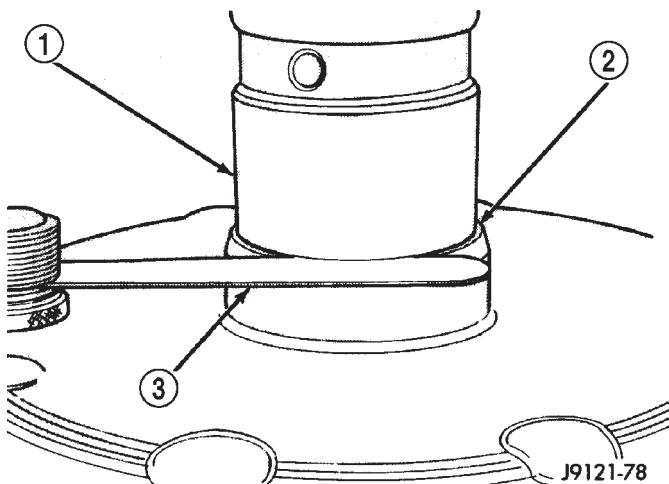
1 – SNAP RING PLIERS

2 – PLANETARY SNAP RING

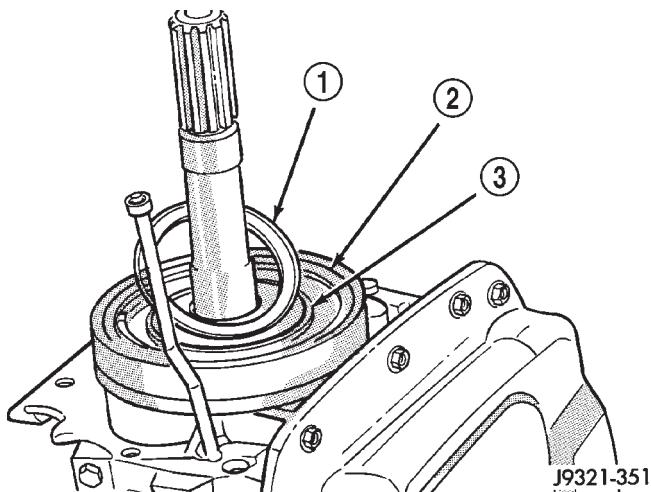
OVERDRIVE UNIT**DISASSEMBLY**

(1) Remove transmission speed sensor and O-ring seal from overdrive case (Fig. 247).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

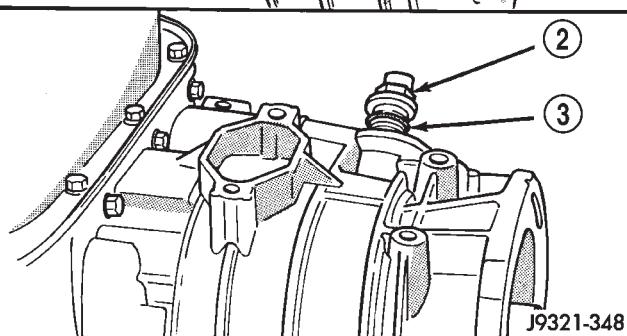
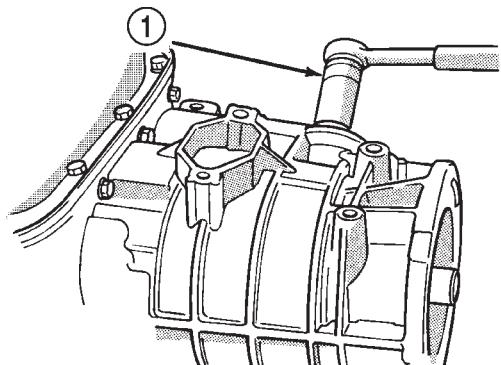
**Fig. 246 Checking Planetary Geartrain End Play**

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT
2 – REAR ANNULUS GEAR
3 – FEELER GAUGE

**Fig. 248 Overdrive Piston Thrust Bearing Removal/Installation**

- 1 – THRUST BEARING
2 – OVERDRIVE PISTON
3 – THRUST PLATE

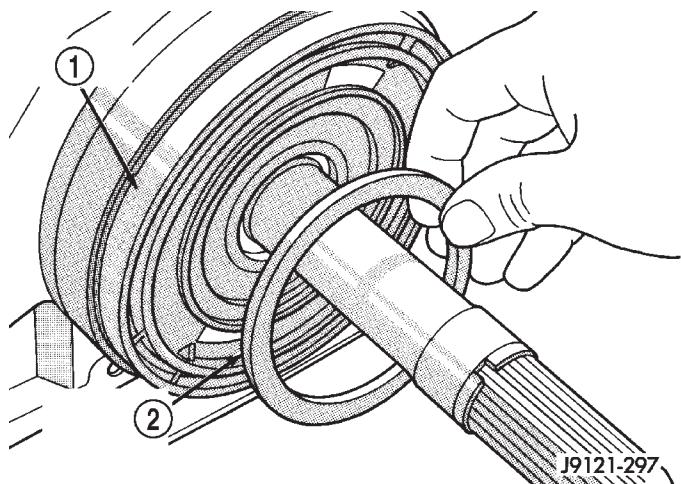
(2) Remove overdrive piston thrust bearing (Fig. 248).

**Fig. 247 Transmission Speed Sensor Removal/Installation**

- 1 – SOCKET AND WRENCH
2 – SPEED SENSOR
3 – O-RING

OVERDRIVE PISTON

(1) Remove overdrive piston thrust plate (Fig. 249). Retain thrust plate. It is a select fit part and may possibly be reused.

**Fig. 249 Overdrive Piston Thrust Plate Removal/Installation**

- 1 – OVERDRIVE PISTON
2 – OVERDRIVE PISTON SPACER (SELECT FIT)

(2) Remove intermediate shaft spacer (Fig. 250). Retain spacer. It is a select fit part and may possibly be reused.

(3) Remove overdrive piston from retainer (Fig. 251).

OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PACK

(1) Remove overdrive clutch pack wire retaining ring (Fig. 252).

(2) Remove overdrive clutch pack (Fig. 253).

(3) Note position of clutch pack components for assembly reference (Fig. 254).

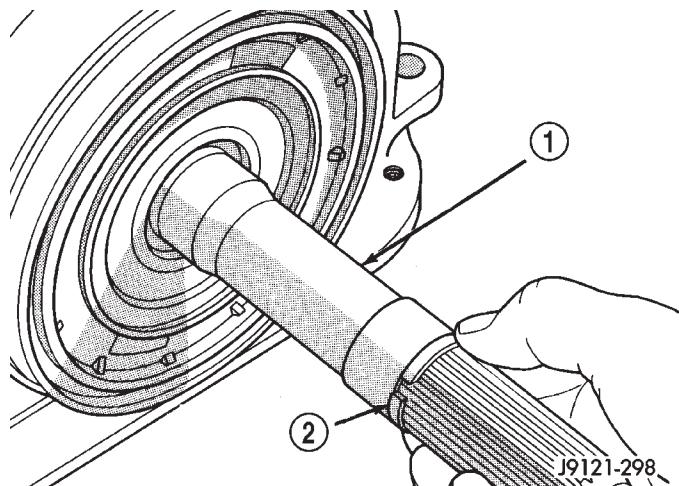


Fig. 250 Intermediate Shaft Spacer Location

- 1 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT
2 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT SPACER (SELECT FIT)

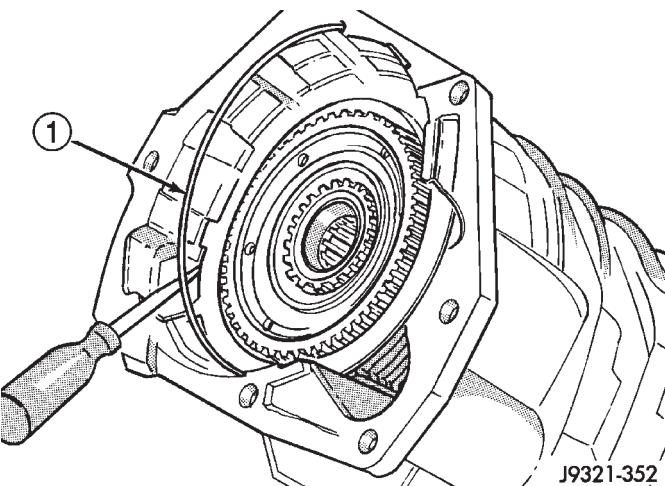


Fig. 252 Removing Overdrive Clutch Pack Retaining Ring

- 1 – OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PACK RETAINING RING

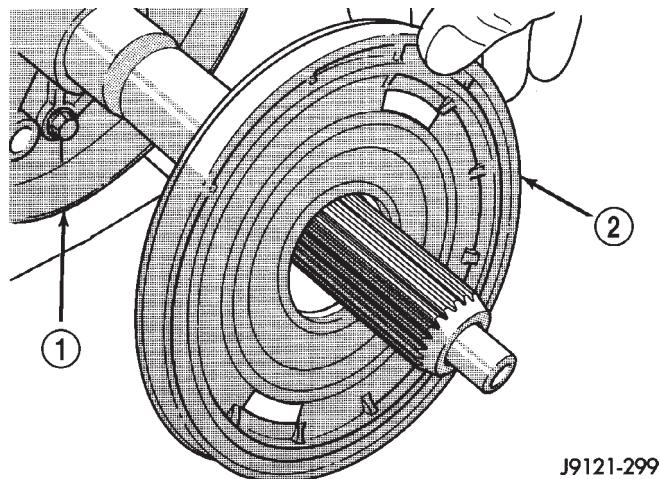


Fig. 251 Overdrive Piston Removal

- 1 – PISTON RETAINER
2 – OVERDRIVE PISTON

OVERDRIVE GEARTRAIN

- (1) Remove overdrive clutch wave spring (Fig. 255).
- (2) Remove overdrive clutch reaction snap ring (Fig. 256). Note that snap ring is located in same groove as wave spring.
- (3) Remove Torx head screws that attach access cover and gasket to overdrive case (Fig. 257).
- (4) Remove access cover and gasket (Fig. 258).
- (5) Expand output shaft bearing snap ring with expanding-type snap ring pliers. Then push output shaft forward to release shaft bearing from locating ring (Fig. 259).
- (6) Lift gear case up and off geartrain assembly (Fig. 260).

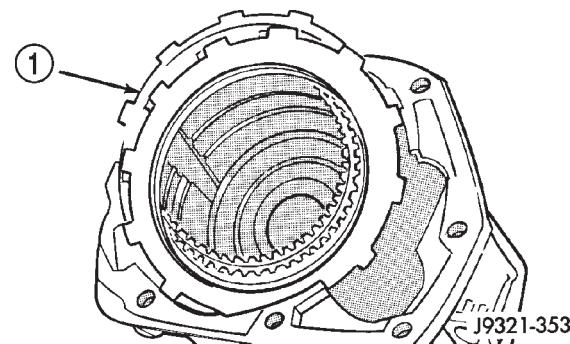


Fig. 253 Overdrive Clutch Pack Removal

- 1 – OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PACK

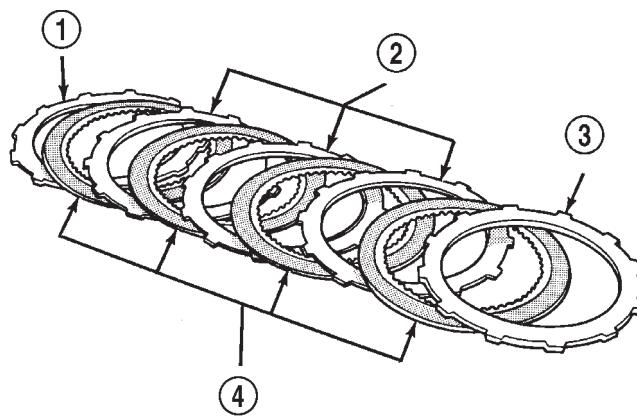


Fig. 254 46RE Overdrive Clutch Component Position

- 1 – REACTION PLATE
2 – CLUTCH PLATES (3)
3 – PRESSURE PLATE
4 – CLUTCH DISCS (4)

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

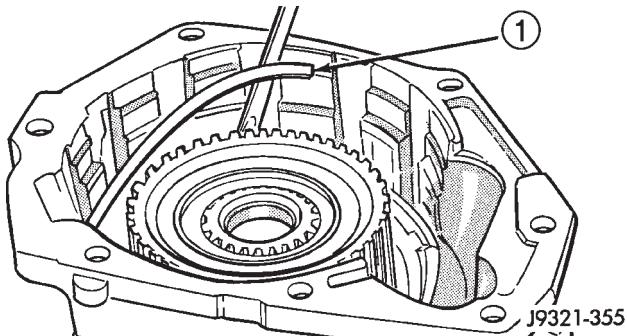


Fig. 255 Overdrive Clutch Wave Spring Removal/Installation

1 – WAVE SPRING

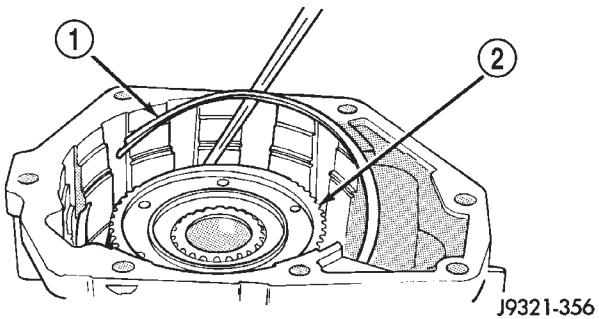


Fig. 256 Overdrive Clutch Reaction Snap Ring Removal/Installation

1 – REACTION RING

2 – CLUTCH HUB

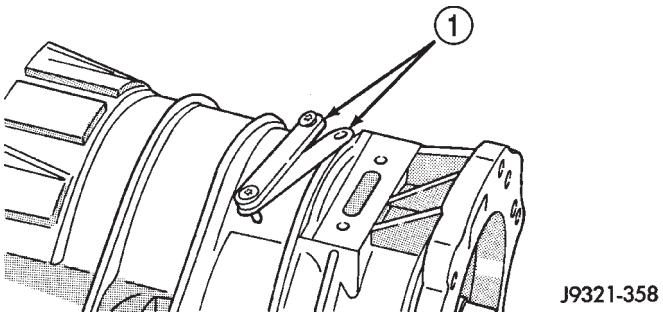


Fig. 258 Access Cover And Gasket Removal/Installation

1 – ACCESS COVER AND GASKET

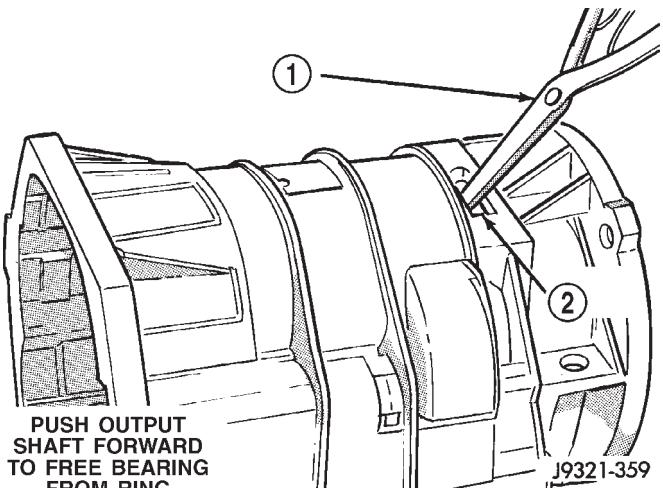


Fig. 259 Releasing Bearing From Locating Ring

1 – EXPAND BEARING LOCATING RING WITH SNAP RING PLIERS

2 – ACCESS HOLE

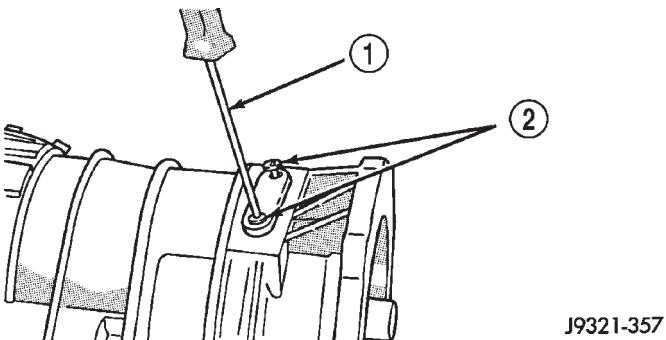


Fig. 257 Access Cover Screw Removal/Installation

1 – TORX SCREWDRIVER (T25)

2 – ACCESS COVER SCREWS

(7) Remove snap ring that retains rear bearing on output shaft.

(8) Remove rear bearing from output shaft (Fig. 261).

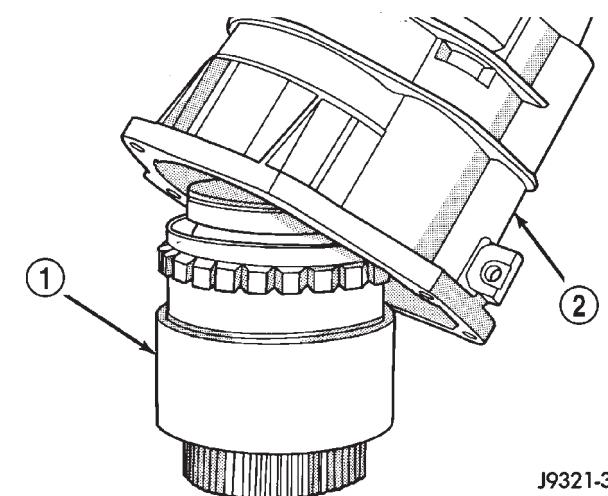
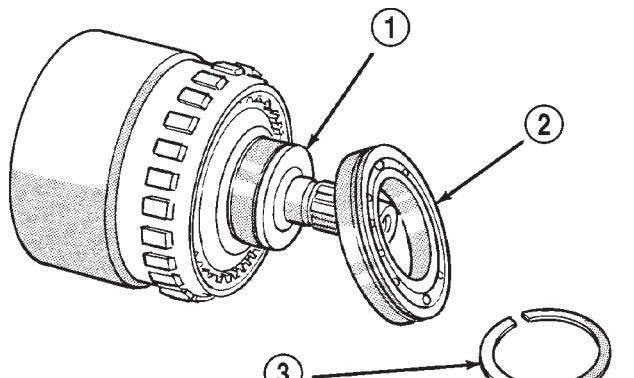


Fig. 260 Removing Gear Case From Geartrain Assembly

1 – GEARTRAIN ASSEMBLY

2 – GEAR CASE



J9321-362

Fig. 261 Rear Bearing Removal

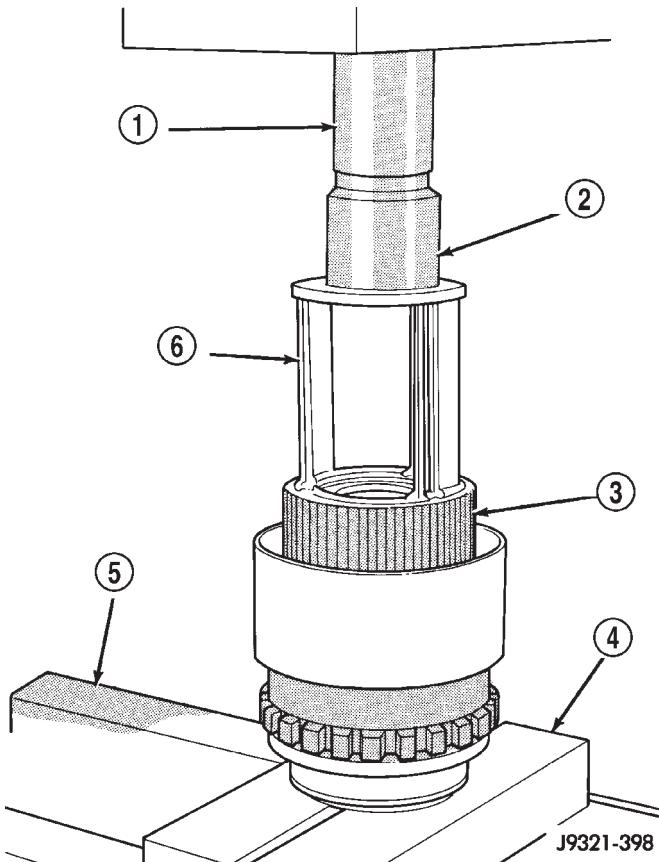
- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT
- 2 – REAR BEARING
- 3 – SNAP RING

DIRECT CLUTCH, HUB AND SPRING

WARNING: THE NEXT STEP IN DISASSEMBLY INVOLVES COMPRESSING THE DIRECT CLUTCH SPRING. IT IS EXTREMELY IMPORTANT THAT PROPER EQUIPMENT BE USED TO COMPRESS THE SPRING AS SPRING FORCE IS APPROXIMATELY 830 POUNDS. USE SPRING COMPRESSOR TOOL 6227-1 AND A HYDRAULIC SHOP PRESS WITH A MINIMUM RAM TRAVEL OF 5-6 INCHES. THE PRESS MUST ALSO HAVE A BED THAT CAN BE ADJUSTED UP OR DOWN AS REQUIRED. RELEASE CLUTCH SPRING TENSION SLOWLY AND COMPLETELY TO AVOID PERSONAL INJURY.

- (1) Mount geartrain assembly in shop press (Fig. 262).
- (2) Position Compressor Tool 6227-1 on clutch hub (Fig. 262). Support output shaft flange with steel press plates as shown and center assembly under press ram.
- (3) Apply press pressure slowly. Compress hub and spring far enough to expose clutch hub retaining ring and relieve spring pressure on clutch pack snap ring (Fig. 262).
- (4) Remove direct clutch pack snap ring (Fig. 263).

- (5) Remove direct clutch hub retaining ring (Fig. 264).
- (6) Release press load slowly and completely (Fig. 265).
- (7) Remove Special Tool 6227-1. Then remove clutch pack from hub (Fig. 265).



J9321-398

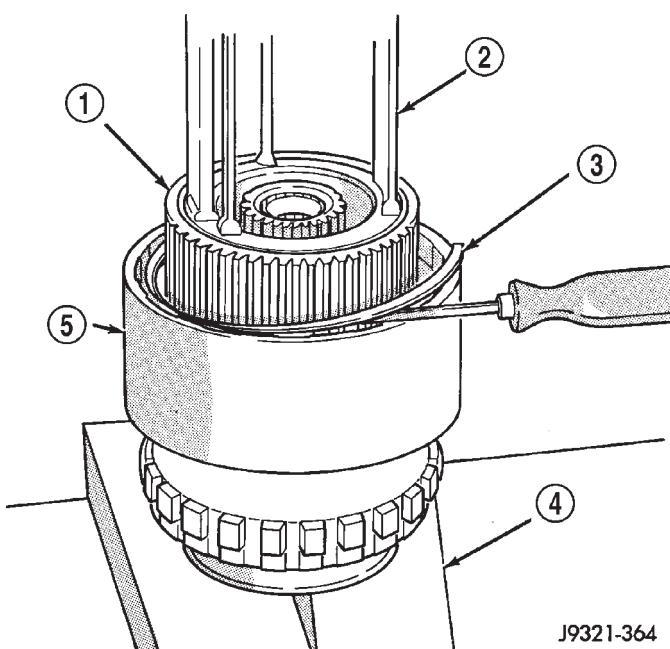
Fig. 262 Geartrain Mounted In Shop Press

- 1 – PRESS RAM
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3995-A (OR SIMILAR TOOL)
- 3 – CLUTCH HUB
- 4 – PLATES
- 5 – PRESS BED
- 6 – SPECIAL TOOL 6227-1

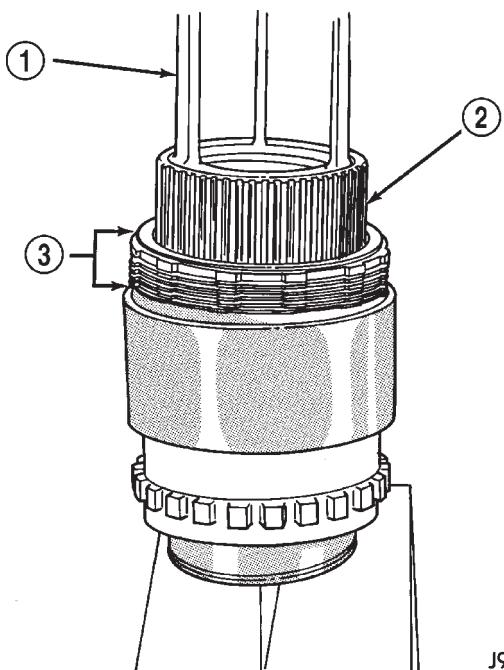
Geartrain

- (1) Remove direct clutch hub and spring (Fig. 266).
- (2) Remove sun gear and spring plate. Then remove planetary thrust bearing and planetary gear (Fig. 267).

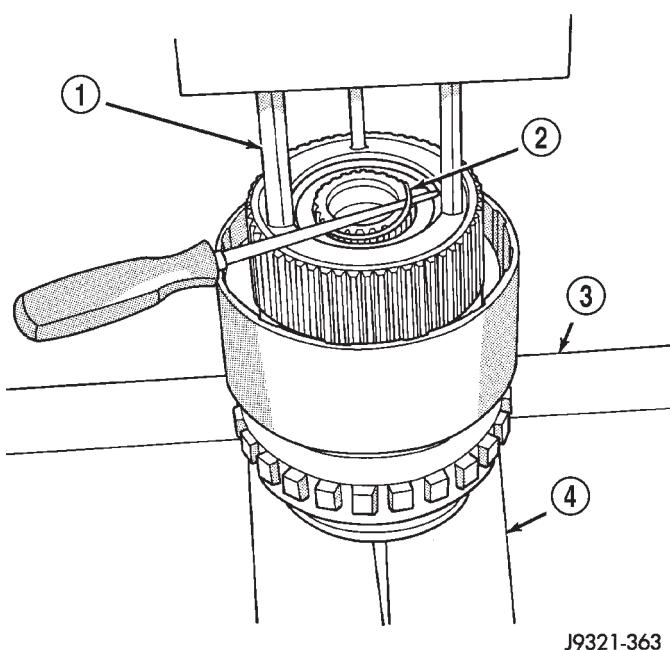
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 263 Direct Clutch Pack Snap Ring Removal**

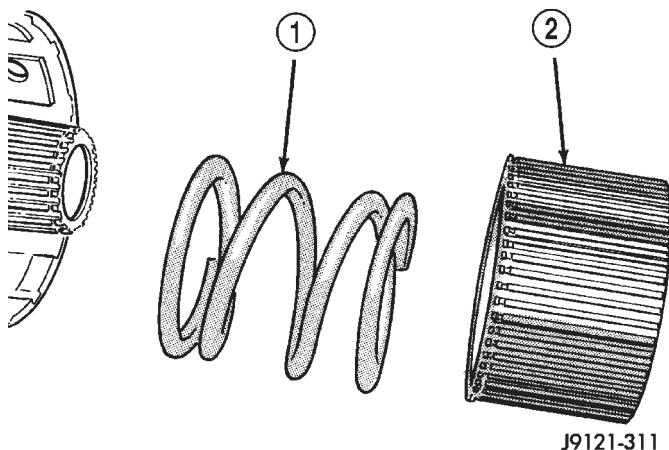
- 1 – CLUTCH HUB
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL 6227-1
- 3 – DIRECT CLUTCH PACK SNAP RING
- 4 – PRESS PLATES
- 5 – CLUTCH DRUM

**Fig. 265 Direct Clutch Pack Removal**

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6227-1
- 2 – DIRECT CLUTCH HUB
- 3 – DIRECT CLUTCH PACK

**Fig. 264 Direct Clutch Hub Retaining Ring Removal**

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6227-1
- 2 – CLUTCH HUB RETAINING RING
- 3 – PRESS BED
- 4 – PRESS PLATES

**Fig. 266 Direct Clutch Hub And Spring Removal**

- 1 – DIRECT CLUTCH SPRING
- 2 – DIRECT CLUTCH HUB

(3) Remove overrunning clutch assembly with expanding type snap ring pliers (Fig. 268). Insert pliers into clutch hub. Expand pliers to grip hub splines and remove clutch with counterclockwise, twisting motion.

(4) Remove thrust bearing from overrunning clutch hub.

(5) Remove overrunning clutch from hub.

(6) Mark position of annulus gear and direct clutch drum for assembly alignment reference (Fig. 269).

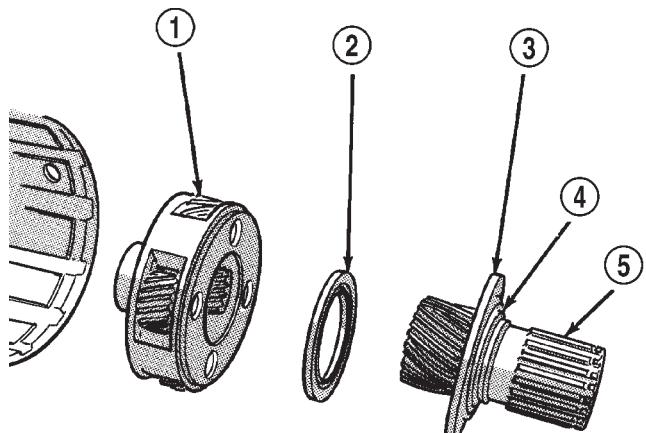
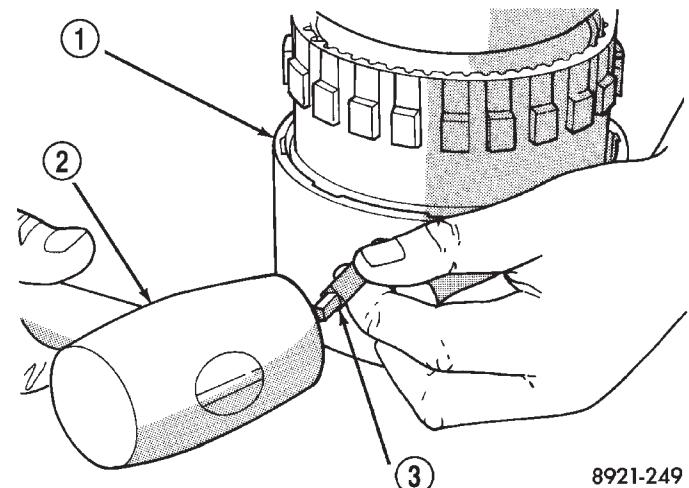


Fig. 267 Removing Sun Gear, Thrust Bearing And Planetary Gear

- 1 - PLANETARY GEAR
- 2 - PLANETARY THRUST BEARING
- 3 - CLUTCH SPRING PLATE
- 4 - SPRING PLATE SNAP RING
- 5 - SUN GEAR



J9121-312
8921-249

Fig. 269 Marking Direct Clutch Drum And Annulus Gear For Assembly Alignment

- 1 - DIRECT CLUTCH DRUM
- 2 - HAMMER
- 3 - PUNCH

Use small center punch or scriber to make alignment marks.

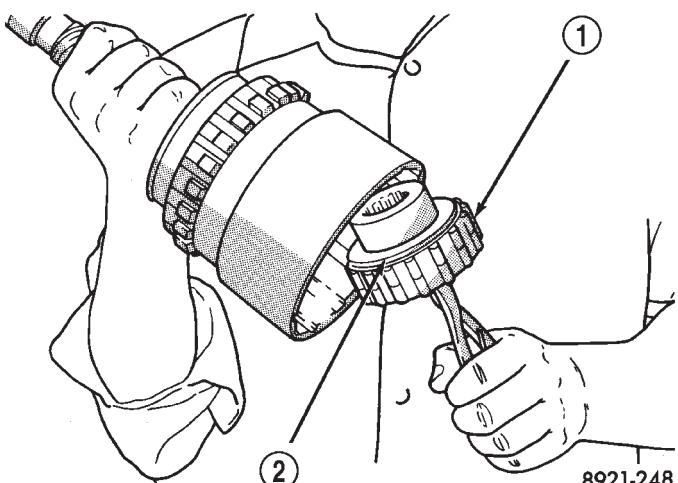
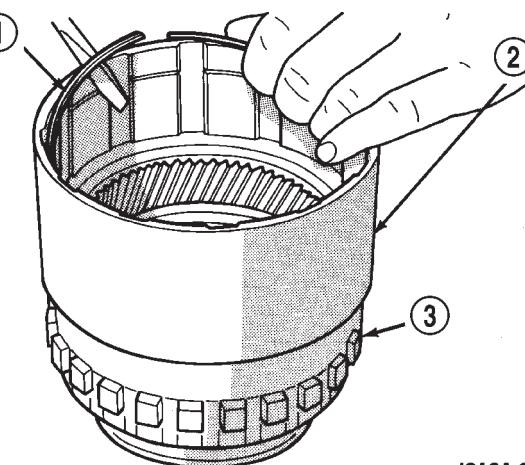


Fig. 268 Overrunning Clutch Assembly Removal/Installation

- 1 - OVERRUNNING CLUTCH
- 2 - NEEDLE BEARING



J9121-292

Fig. 270 Clutch Drum Inner Retaining Ring Removal

- 1 - INNER RETAINING RING
- 2 - DIRECT CLUTCH DRUM
- 3 - ANNULUS GEAR

(7) Remove direct clutch drum rear retaining ring (Fig. 270).

(8) Remove direct clutch drum outer retaining ring (Fig. 271).

(9) Mark annulus gear and output shaft for assembly alignment reference (Fig. 272). Use punch or scriber to mark gear and shaft.

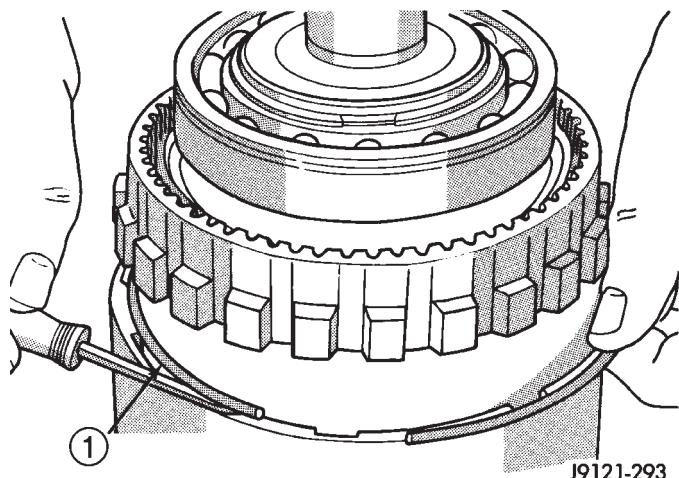
(10) Remove snap ring that secures annulus gear on output shaft (Fig. 273). Use two screwdrivers to unseat and work snap ring out of groove as shown.

(11) Remove annulus gear from output shaft (Fig. 274). Use rawhide or plastic mallet to tap gear off shaft.

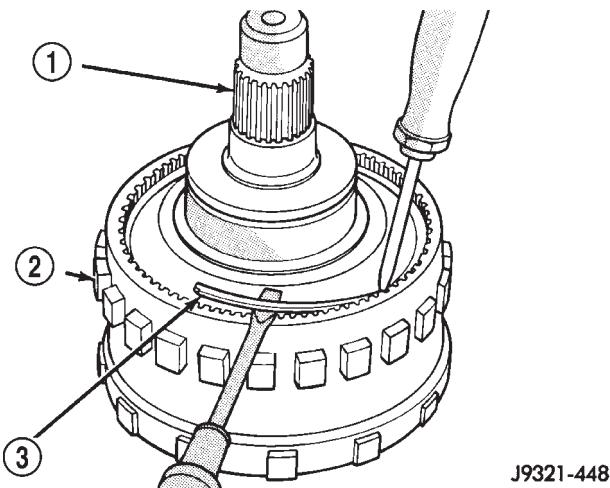
GEAR CASE AND PARK LOCK

- (1) Remove locating ring from gear case.
- (2) Remove park pawl shaft retaining bolt and remove shaft, pawl and spring.
- (3) Remove reaction plug snap ring and remove reaction plug.
- (4) Remove output shaft seal.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 271 Clutch Drum Outer Retaining Ring Removal**

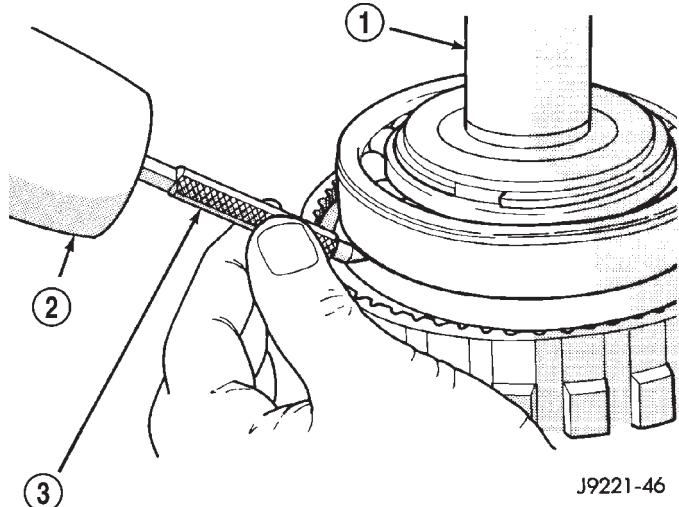
1 – OUTER RETAINING RING

**Fig. 273 Annulus Gear Snap Ring Removal**

1 – OUTPUT SHAFT

2 – ANNULUS GEAR

3 – SNAP RING

**Fig. 272 Marking Annulus Gear And Output Shaft For Assembly Alignment**

1 – OUTPUT SHAFT

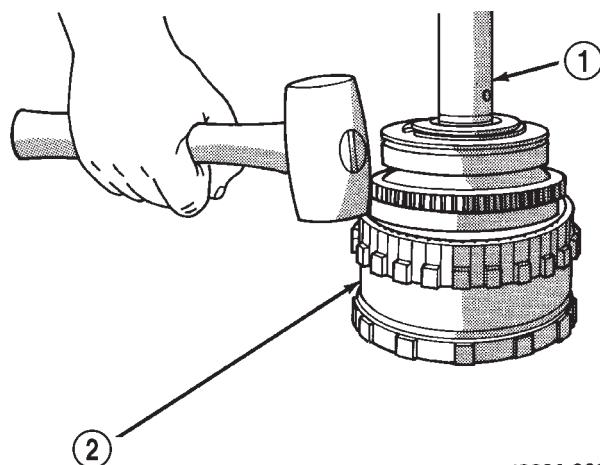
2 – HAMMER

3 – PUNCH

ASSEMBLY**GEARTRAIN AND DIRECT CLUTCH**

(1) Soak direct clutch and overdrive clutch discs in Mopar® ATF Plus 3, type 7176, transmission fluid. Allow discs to soak for 10-20 minutes.

(2) Install new pilot bushing and clutch hub bushing in output shaft if necessary (Fig. 275). Lubricate bushings with petroleum jelly, or transmission fluid.

**Fig. 274 Annulus Gear Removal**

1 – OUTPUT SHAFT

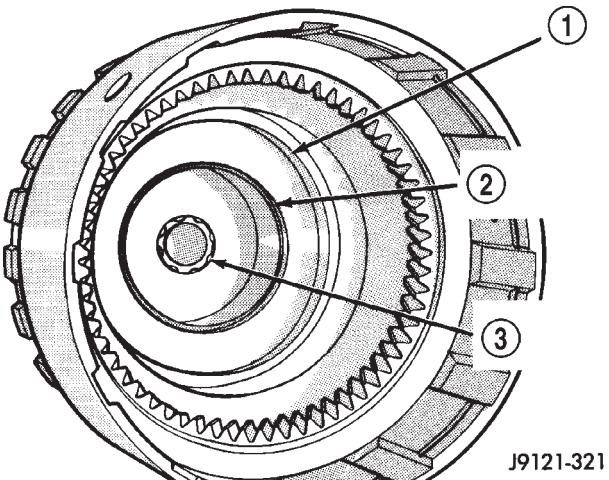
2 – ANNULUS GEAR

(3) Install annulus gear on output shaft, if removed. Then install annulus gear retaining snap ring (Fig. 276).

(4) Align and install clutch drum on annulus gear (Fig. 277). Be sure drum is engaged in annulus gear lugs.

(5) Install clutch drum outer retaining ring (Fig. 277).

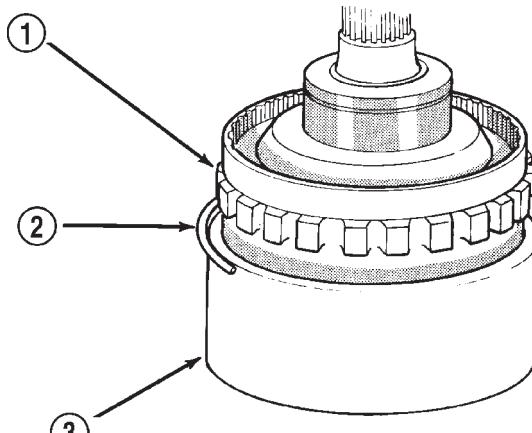
(6) Slide clutch drum forward and install inner retaining ring (Fig. 278).



J9121-321

Fig. 275 Output Shaft Pilot Bushing

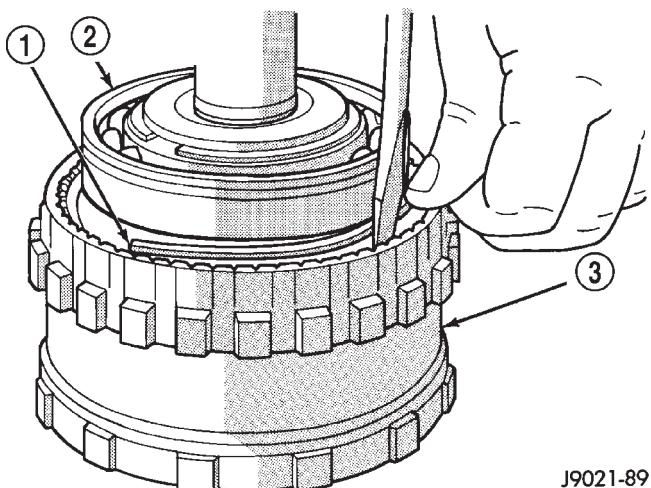
- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT HUB
- 2 – OVERRUNNING CLUTCH HUB BUSHING
- 3 – INTERMEDIATE SHAFT PILOT BUSHING



J9321-393

Fig. 277 Clutch Drum And Outer Retaining Ring Installation

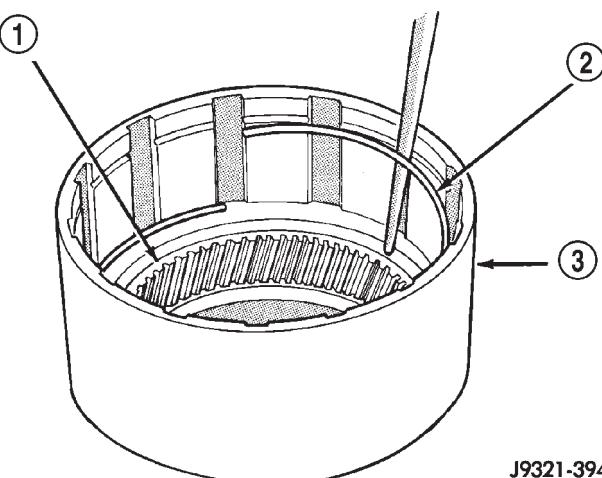
- 1 – ANNULUS GEAR
- 2 – OUTER SNAP RING
- 3 – CLUTCH DRUM



J9021-89

Fig. 276 Annulus Gear Installation

- 1 – SNAP RING
- 2 – OUTPUT SHAFT FRONT BEARING
- 3 – ANNULUS GEAR



J9321-394

Fig. 278 Clutch Drum Inner Retaining Ring Installation

- 1 – ANNULUS GEAR
- 2 – INNER SNAP RING
- 3 – CLUTCH DRUM

(7) Install rear bearing and snap ring on output shaft (Fig. 279). Be sure locating ring groove in bearing is toward rear.

(8) Install overrunning clutch on hub (Fig. 280). **Note that clutch only fits one way. Shoulder on clutch should seat in small recess at edge of hub.**

(9) Install thrust bearing on overrunning clutch hub. Use generous amount of petroleum jelly to hold bearing in place for installation. **Bearing fits one way only. Be sure bearing is seated squarely against hub. Reinstall bearing if it does not seat squarely.**

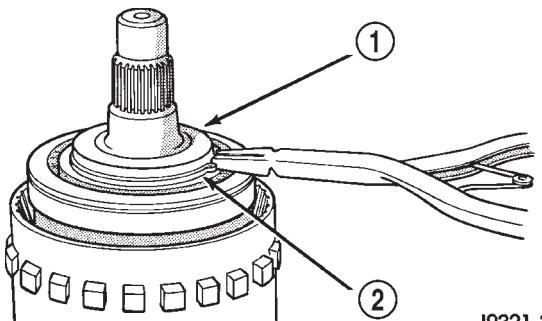
(10) Install overrunning clutch in output shaft (Fig. 281). Insert snap ring pliers in hub splines. Expand pliers to grip hub. Then install assembly with counterclockwise, twisting motion.

(11) Install planetary gear in annulus gear (Fig. 282). **Be sure planetary pinions are fully seated in annulus gear before proceeding.**

(12) Coat planetary thrust bearing and bearing contact surface of spring plate with generous amount of petroleum jelly. This will help hold bearing in place during installation.

(13) Install planetary thrust bearing on sun gear (Fig. 283). Slide bearing onto gear and seat it against

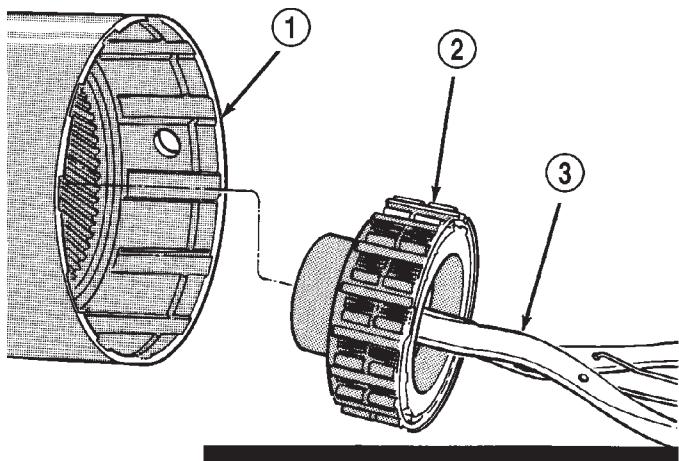
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



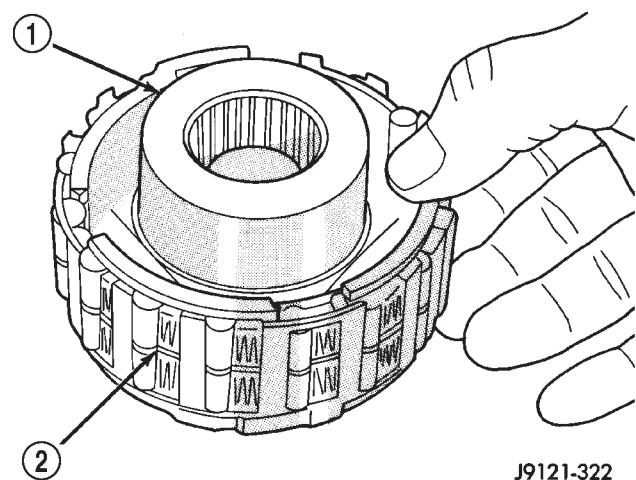
J9321-370

Fig. 279 Rear Bearing And Snap Ring Installation

- 1 – REAR BEARING
2 – SNAP RING



J9121-314



J9121-322

Fig. 280 Assembling Overrunning Clutch And Hub

- 1 – CLUTCH HUB
2 – OVERRUNNING CLUTCH

Fig. 281 Overrunning Clutch Installation

- 1 – CLUTCH DRUM
2 – OVERRUNNING CLUTCH ASSEMBLY
3 – EXPANDING-TYPE SNAP RING PLIERS
4 – CLUTCH DRUM
5 – ANNULUS GEAR
6 – OVERRUNNING CLUTCH ASSEMBLY SEATED IN OUTPUT SHAFT

spring plate as shown. **Bearing fits one way only.** If it does not seat squarely against spring plate, remove and reposition bearing.

(14) Install assembled sun gear, spring plate and thrust bearing (Fig. 284). Be sure sun gear and thrust bearing are fully seated before proceeding.

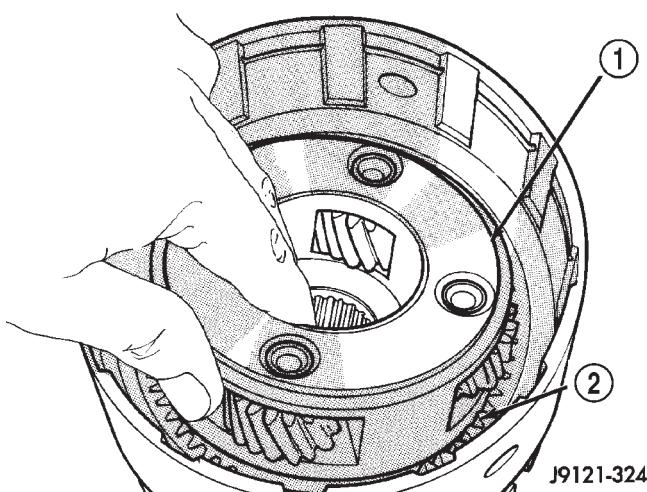
(15) Mount assembled output shaft, annulus gear, and clutch drum in shop press. Direct clutch spring, hub and clutch pack are easier to install with assembly mounted in press.

(16) Align splines in hubs of planetary gear and overrunning clutch with Alignment tool 6227-2 (Fig. 285). Insert tool through sun gear and into splines of both hubs. Be sure alignment tool is fully seated before proceeding.

(17) Install direct clutch spring (Fig. 286). Be sure spring is properly seated on spring plate.

(18) Assemble and install direct clutch pack on hub as follows:

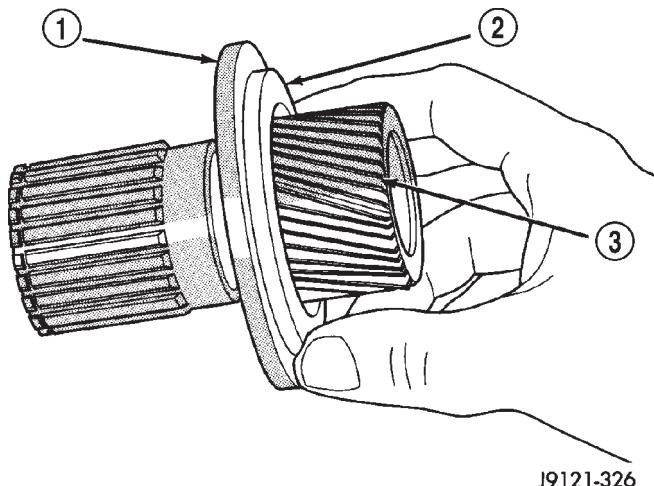
- (a) Assemble clutch pack components (Fig. 287).



J9121-324

Fig. 282 Planetary Gear Installation

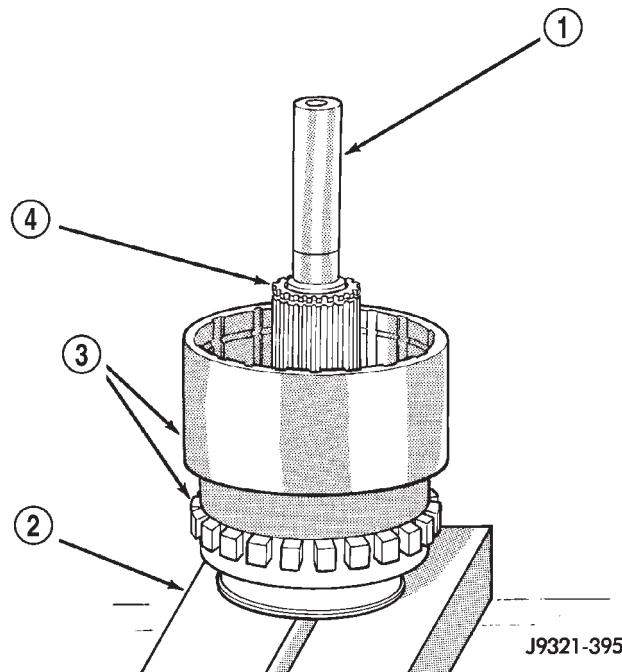
- 1 – PLANETARY GEAR
2 – ANNULUS GEAR



J9121-326

Fig. 283 Planetary Thrust Bearing Installation

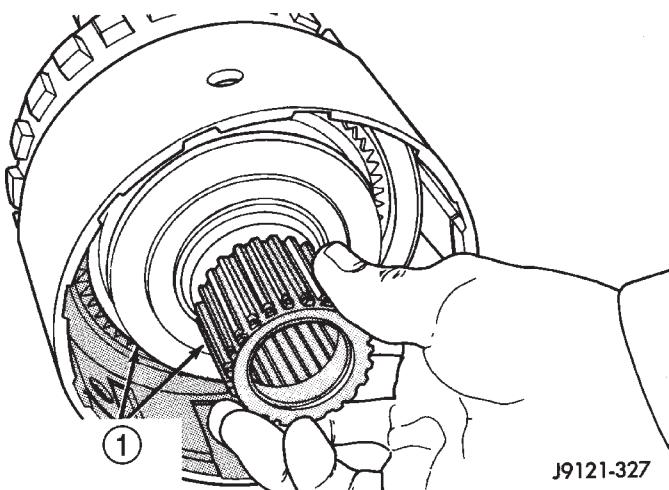
- 1 – SPRING PLATE
- 2 – PLANETARY THRUST BEARING
- 3 – SUN GEAR



J9321-395

Fig. 285 Alignment Tool Installation

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6227-2
- 2 – PRESS PLATES
- 3 – ASSEMBLED DRUM AND ANNULUS GEAR
- 4 – SUN GEAR



J9121-327

Fig. 284 Sun Gear Installation

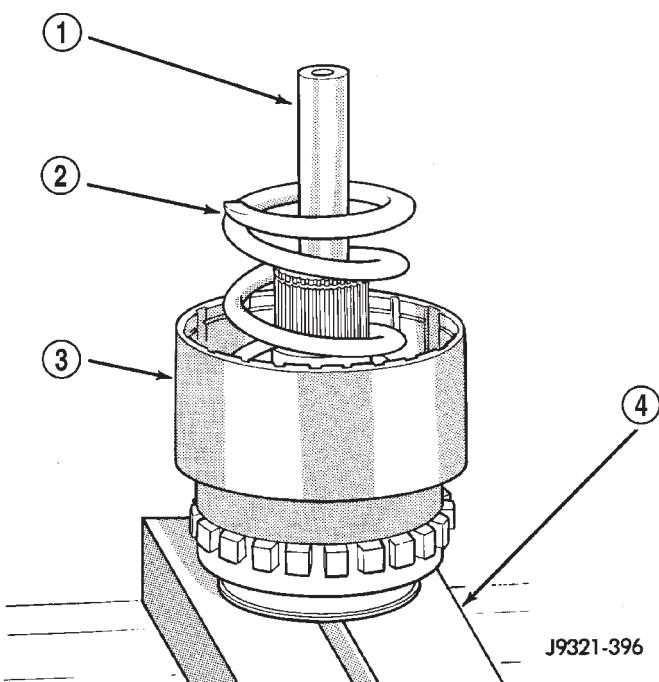
- 1 – SUN GEAR AND SPRING PLATE ASSEMBLY

(b) Install direct clutch reaction plate on clutch hub first. Note that **one side of reaction plate is counterbored**. Be sure this side faces rearward. Splines at rear of hub are raised slightly. Counterbore in plate fits over raised splines. Plate should be flush with this end of hub (Fig. 288).

(c) Install first clutch disc followed by a steel plate until all discs and plates have been installed.

(d) Install pressure plate. This is last clutch pack item to be installed. **Be sure plate is installed with shoulder side facing upward (Fig. 289).**

(19) Install clutch hub and clutch pack on direct clutch spring (Fig. 290). **Be sure hub is started on sun gear splines before proceeding.**

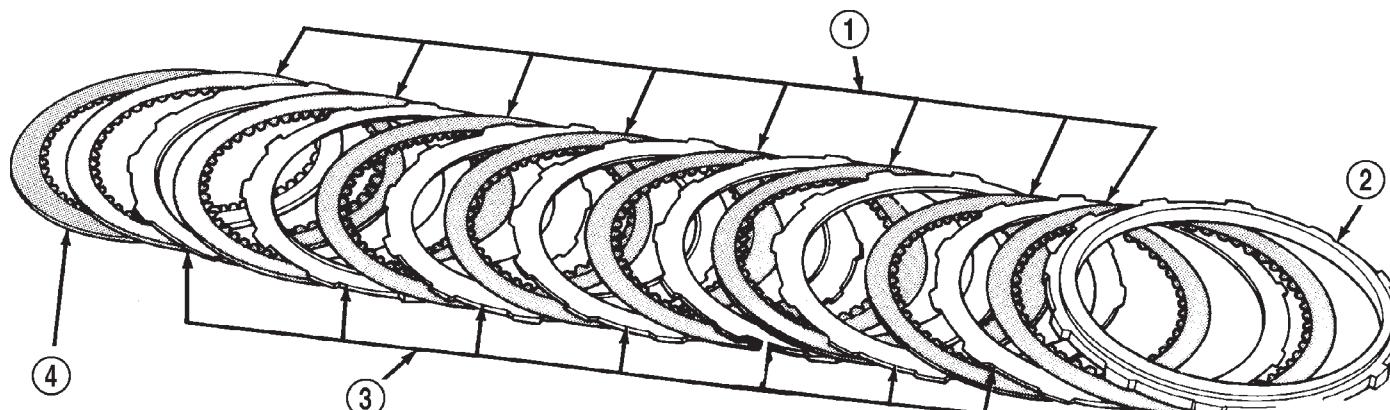


J9321-396

Fig. 286 Direct Clutch Spring Installation

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6227-2
- 2 – DIRECT CLUTCH SPRING
- 3 – CLUTCH HUB
- 4 – PRESS PLATES

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

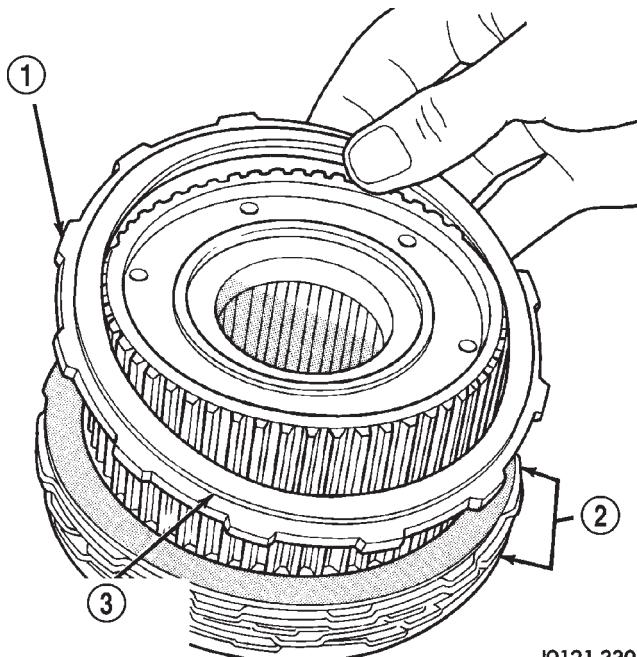
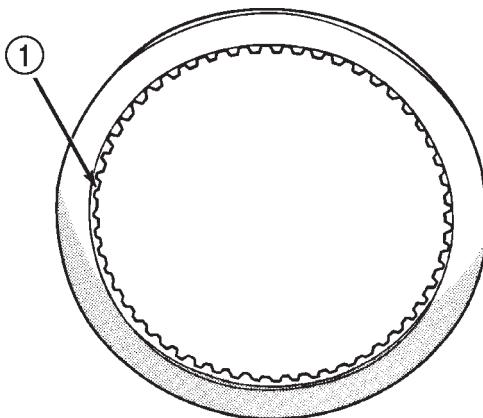


J9521-50

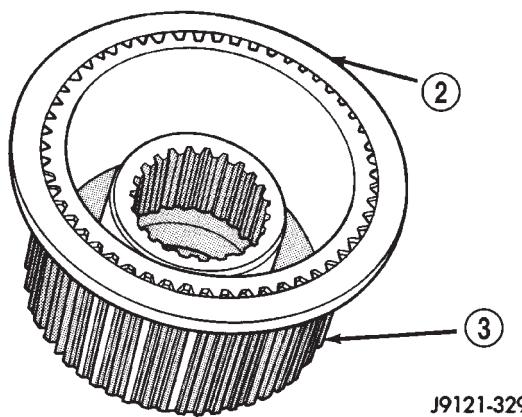
Fig. 287 46RE Direct Clutch Pack Components

- 1 – CLUTCH DISCS (8)
2 – PRESSURE PLATE

- 3 – CLUTCH PLATES (7)
4 – REACTION PLATE



J9121-330



J9121-329

Fig. 288 Correct Position Of Direct Clutch Reaction Plate

- 1 – REACTION PLATE COUNTERBORE
2 – DIRECT CLUTCH REACTION PLATE (FLUSH WITH END OF HUB)
3 – CLUTCH HUB

Fig. 289 Correct Position Of Direct Clutch Pressure Plate

- 1 – DIRECT CLUTCH PRESSURE PLATE
2 – CLUTCH PACK
3 – BE SURE SHOULDER SIDE OF PLATE FACES UPWARD

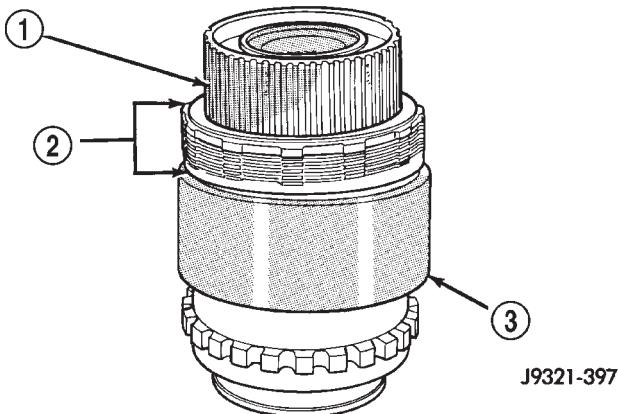


Fig. 290 Direct Clutch Pack And Clutch Hub Installation

- 1 – CLUTCH HUB
- 2 – DIRECT CLUTCH PACK
- 3 – CLUTCH DRUM

WARNING: THE NEXT STEP IN GEARTRAIN ASSEMBLY INVOLVES COMPRESSING THE DIRECT CLUTCH HUB AND SPRING. IT IS EXTREMELY IMPORTANT THAT PROPER EQUIPMENT BE USED TO COMPRESS THE SPRING AS SPRING FORCE IS APPROXIMATELY 830 POUNDS. USE COMPRESSOR TOOL C-6227-1 AND A HYDRAULIC-TYPE SHOP PRESS WITH A MINIMUM RAM TRAVEL OF 6 INCHES. THE PRESS MUST ALSO HAVE A BED THAT CAN BE ADJUSTED UP OR DOWN AS REQUIRED. RELEASE CLUTCH SPRING TENSION SLOWLY AND COMPLETELY TO AVOID PERSONAL INJURY.

- (20) Position Compressor Tool 6227-1 on clutch hub.
- (21) Compress clutch hub and spring just enough to place tension on hub and hold it in place.
- (22) Slowly compress clutch hub and spring. Compress spring and hub only enough to expose ring grooves for clutch pack snap ring and clutch hub retaining ring.
- (23) Realign clutch pack on hub and seat clutch discs and plates in clutch drum.
- (24) Install direct clutch pack snap ring (Fig. 291). **Be very sure snap ring is fully seated in clutch drum ring groove.**
- (25) Install clutch hub retaining ring (Fig. 292). **Be very sure retaining ring is fully seated in sun gear ring groove.**
- (26) Slowly release press ram, remove compressor tools and remove geartrain assembly.

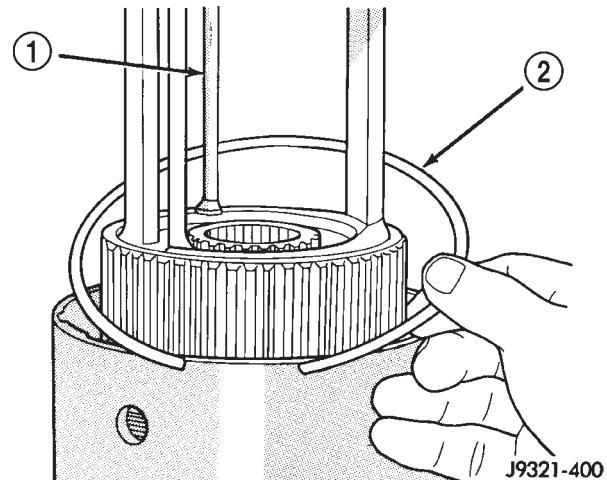


Fig. 291 Direct Clutch Pack Snap Ring Installation

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6227-1
- 2 – DIRECT CLUTCH PACK SNAP RING

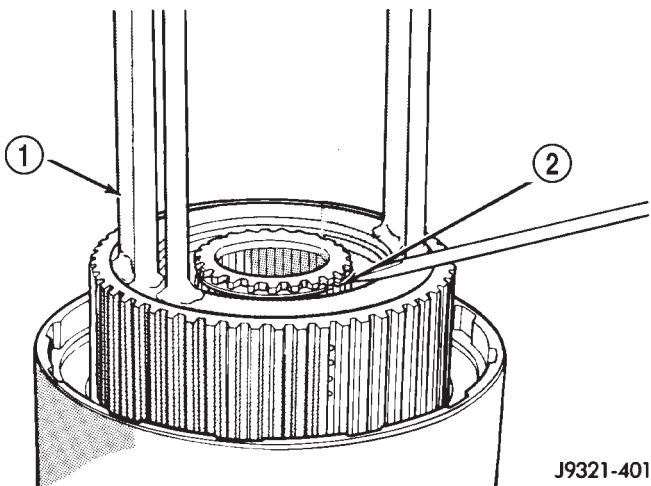


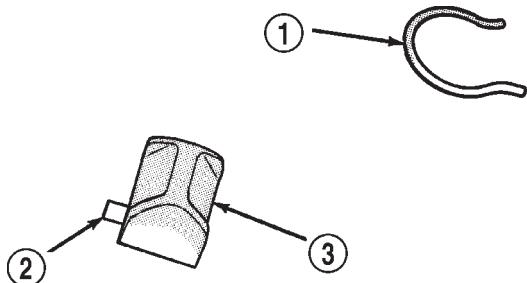
Fig. 292 Clutch Hub Retaining Ring Installation

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6227-1
- 2 – CLUTCH HUB RETAINING RING

GEAR CASE

- (1) Position park pawl and spring in case and install park pawl shaft. Verify that end of spring with 90° bend is hooked to pawl and straight end of spring is seated against case.
- (2) Install pawl shaft retaining bolt. Tighten bolt to 27 N·m (20 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (3) Install park lock reaction plug. **Note that plug has locating pin at rear (Fig. 293). Be sure pin is seated in hole in case before installing snap ring.**
- (4) Install reaction plug snap-ring (Fig. 294). **Compress snap ring only enough for installation; do not distort it.**
- (5) Install new seal in gear case. Use Handle C-4171 and Installer C-3995-A to seat seal in case.

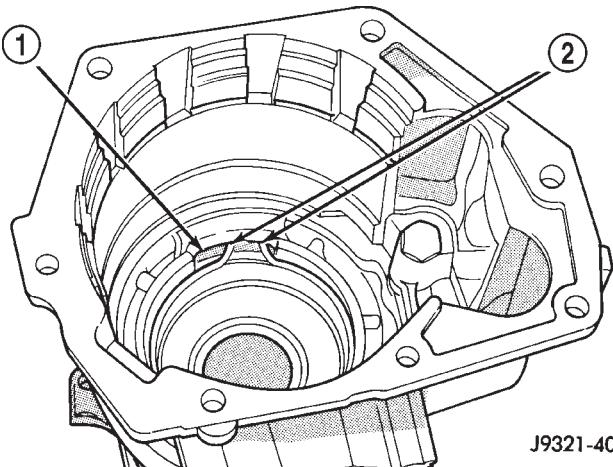
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9121-338

Fig. 293 Reaction Plug Locating Pin And Snap-Ring

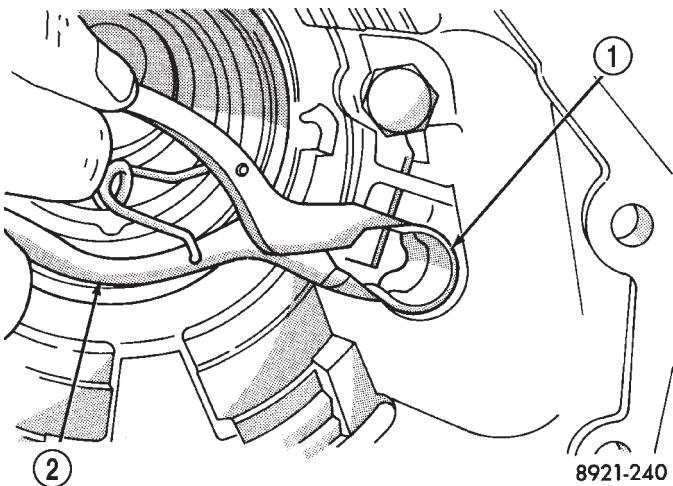
- 1 – REACTION PLUG SNAP RING (DO NOT OVERCOMPRESS TO INSTALL)
 2 – LOCATING PIN
 3 – PARK LOCK REACTION PLUG



J9321-403

Fig. 295 Correct Rear Bearing Locating Ring Position

- 1 – CASE ACCESS HOLE
 2 – TAB ENDS OF LOCATING RING

**Fig. 294 Reaction Plug And Snap-Ring Installation**

- 1 – REACTION PLUG SNAP RING
 2 – SNAP RING PLIERS

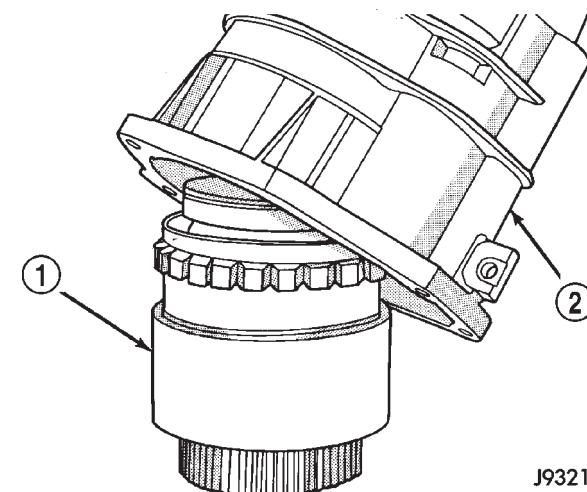
(6) Verify that tab ends of rear bearing locating ring extend into access hole in gear case (Fig. 295).

(7) Support geartrain on Tool 6227-1 (Fig. 296). Be sure tool is securely seated in clutch hub.

(8) Install overdrive gear case on geartrain (Fig. 296).

(9) Expand front bearing locating ring with snap ring pliers (Fig. 297). Then slide case downward until locating ring locks in bearing groove and release snap ring.

(10) Install locating ring access cover and gasket in overdrive unit case (Fig. 298).



J9321-360

Fig. 296 Overdrive Gear Case Installation

- 1 – GEARTRAIN ASSEMBLY
 2 – GEAR CASE

OVERDRIVE CLUTCH

(1) Install overdrive clutch reaction ring first. Reaction ring is flat with notched ends (Fig. 299).

(2) Install wave spring on top of reaction ring (Fig. 300). **Reaction ring and wave ring both fit in same ring groove.** Use screwdriver to seat each ring securely in groove. Also ensure that the ends of the two rings are offset from each other.

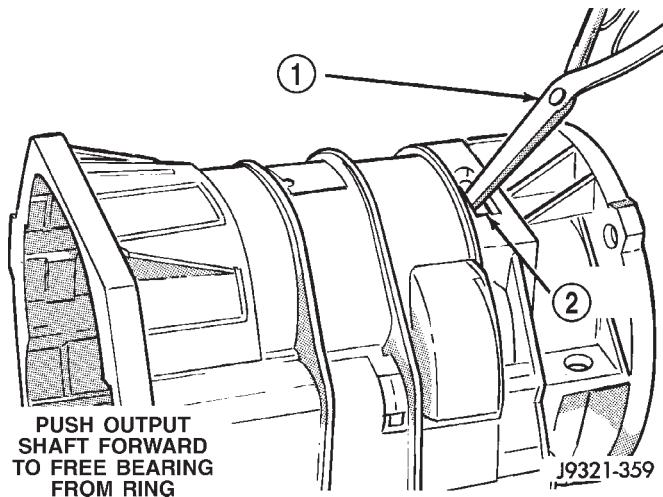


Fig. 297 Seating Locating Ring In Rear Bearing

- 1 – EXPAND BEARING LOCATING RING WITH SNAP RING PLIERS
2 – ACCESS HOLE

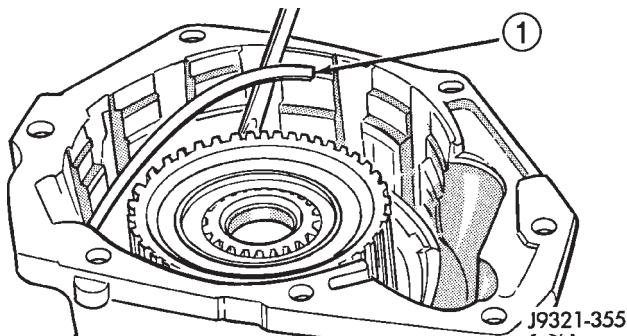


Fig. 300 Overdrive Clutch Wave Spring Installation

1 – WAVE SPRING

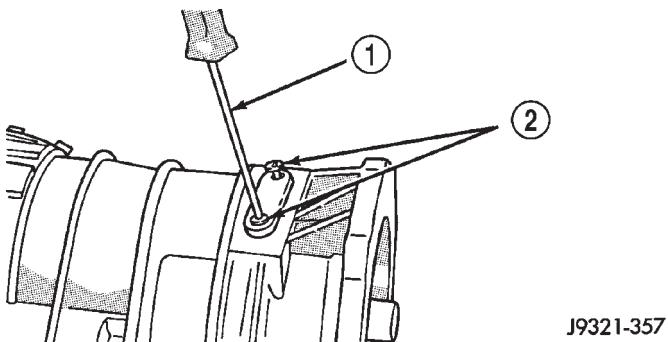


Fig. 298 Locating Ring Access Cover And Gasket Installation

- 1 – TORX SCREWDRIVER (T25)
2 – ACCESS COVER SCREWS

(3) Assemble overdrive clutch pack (Fig. 301).

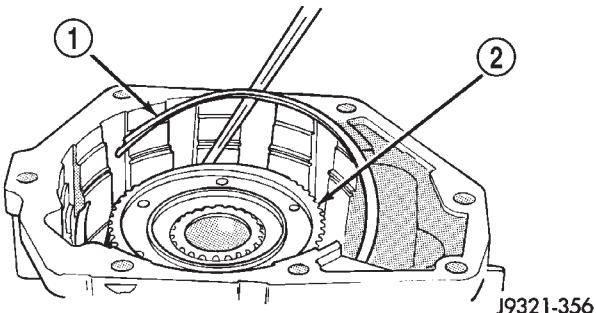


Fig. 299 Overdrive Clutch Reaction Ring Installation

- 1 – REACTION RING
2 – CLUTCH HUB

(4) Install overdrive clutch reaction plate first.

(5) Install first clutch disc followed by first clutch plate. Then install remaining clutch discs and plates in same order.

(6) Install clutch pack pressure plate.

(7) Install clutch pack wire-type retaining ring (Fig. 302).

INTERMEDIATE SHAFT SPACER SELECTION

(1) Place overdrive unit in vertical position. Mount it on blocks, or in workbench with appropriate size mounting hole cut into it. Be sure unit is facing upward for access to direct clutch hub. Also be sure output shaft is not loaded and internal components are moved rearward for accurate measurement.

(2) Determine correct thickness intermediate shaft spacer as follows:

(a) Insert Special Tool 6312 through sun gear, planetary gear and into pilot bushing in output shaft. Be sure tool bottoms against planetary shoulder.

(b) Position Gauge Tool 6311 across face of overdrive case (Fig. 303). Then position Dial Caliper C-4962 over gauge tool.

(c) Extend sliding scale of dial caliper downward through gauge tool slot until scale contacts end of Gauge Alignment Tool 6312. Lock scale in place. Remove dial caliper tool and note distance measured (Fig. 303).

(d) Select proper thickness end play spacer from spacer chart based on distance measured (Fig. 304).

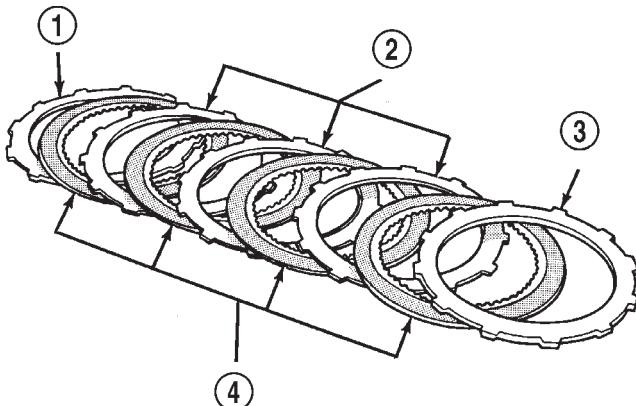
(e) Remove Gauge Alignment Tool 6312.

OD THRUST PLATE SELECTION

(1) Place overdrive unit in vertical position. Mount it on blocks, or in workbench with appropriate size mounting hole cut into it. Be sure unit is facing upward for access to direct clutch hub. Also be sure output shaft is not loaded and internal components are moved rearward for accurate measurement.

(2) Determine correct thickness overdrive piston thrust plate as follows:

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

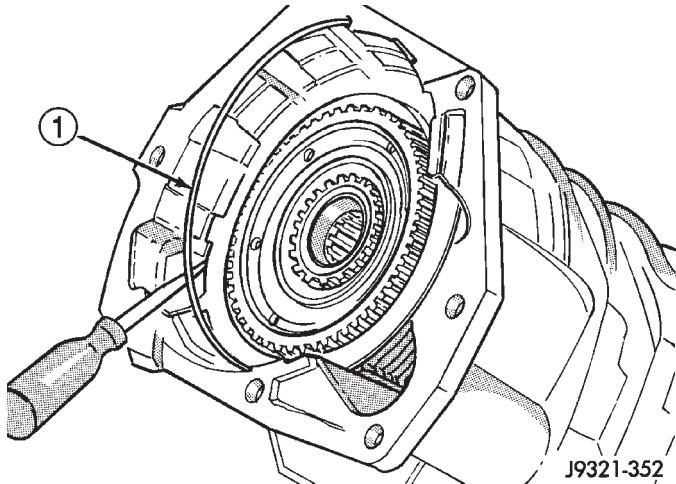


J9321-227

Fig. 301 46RE Overdrive Clutch Components

1 – REACTION PLATE
2 – CLUTCH PLATES (3)

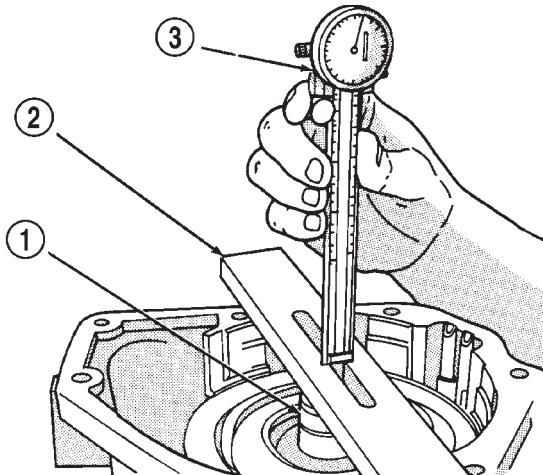
3 – PRESSURE PLATE
4 – CLUTCH DISCS (4)



J9321-352

Fig. 302 Overdrive Clutch Pack Retaining Ring Installation

1 – OVERDRIVE CLUTCH PACK RETAINING RING



J9221-47

Fig. 303 Shaft End Play Measurement

1 – SPECIAL TOOL 6312
2 – SPECIAL TOOL 6311
3 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4962

End Play Measurement (Inches)	Spacer Thickness (Inches)
.7336 - .7505	.158 - .159
.7506 - .7675	.175 - .176
.7676 - .7855	.193 - .194
.7856 - .8011	.211 - .212

J9121-341

Fig. 304 Intermediate Shaft End Play Spacer Selection**OVERDRIVE PISTON**

(1) Install new seals on overdrive piston.

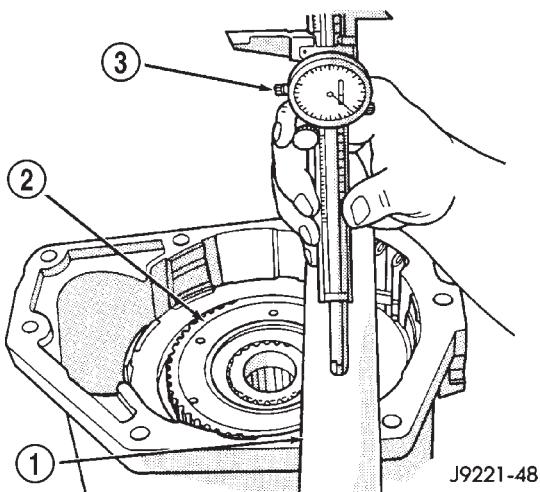


Fig. 305 Overdrive Piston Thrust Plate Measurement

- 1 - SPECIAL TOOL 6311
- 2 - DIRECT CLUTCH HUB THRUST BEARING SEAT
- 3 - SPECIAL TOOL C-4962

End Play Measurement (Inches)	Spacer Thickness (Inches)
1.7500 - 1.7649	.108 - .110
1.7650 - 1.7799	.123 - .125
1.7800 - 1.7949	.138 - .140
1.7950 - 1.8099	.153 - .155
1.8100 - 1.8249	.168 - .170
1.8250 - 1.8399	.183 - .185
1.8400 - 1.8549	.198 - .200
1.8550 - 1.8699	.213 - .215
1.8700 - 1.8849	.228 - .230
1.8850 - 1.8999	.243 - .245

J9121-342

Fig. 306 Overdrive Piston Thrust Plate Selection

- (2) Stand transmission case upright on bellhousing.
- (3) Position Guide Ring 8114-1 on outer edge of overdrive piston retainer.
- (4) Position Seal Guide 8114-3 on inner edge of overdrive piston retainer.
- (5) Install overdrive piston in overdrive piston retainer by:
 - (a) Aligning locating lugs on overdrive piston to the two mating holes in retainer.
 - (b) Lubricate overdrive piston seals with Mopar® Door Ease, or equivalent.
 - (c) Install piston over Seal Guide 8114-3 and inside Guide Ring 8114-1.
 - (d) Push overdrive piston into position in retainer.
 - (e) Verify that the locating lugs entered the lug bores in the retainer.

(6) Install intermediate shaft spacer on intermediate shaft.

(7) Install overdrive piston thrust plate on overdrive piston.

(8) Install overdrive piston thrust bearing on overdrive piston.

(9) Install transmission speed sensor and O-ring seal in overdrive case (Fig. 247).

CLEANING AND INSPECTION

VALVE BODY

Clean the valve housings, valves, plugs, springs, and separator plates with a standard parts cleaning solution only. Do not use gasoline, kerosene, or any type of caustic solution.

Do not immerse any of the electrical components in cleaning solution. Clean the governor solenoid and sensor and the dual solenoid and harness assembly by wiping them off with dry shop towels only.

Dry all except the electrical parts with compressed air. Make sure all passages are clean and free from obstructions. **Do not use rags or shop towels to dry or wipe off valve body components. Lint from these materials can stick to valve body parts, interfere with valve operation, and clog filters and fluid passages.**

Wipe the governor pressure sensor and solenoid valve with dry, lint free shop towels only. The O-rings on the sensor and solenoid valve are the only serviceable components. Be sure the vent ports in the solenoid valve are open and not blocked by dirt or debris. Replace the valve and/or sensor only when DRB scan tool diagnosis indicates this is necessary. Or, if either part has sustained physical damage (dented, deformed, broken, etc.).

CAUTION: Do not turn the small screw at the end of the solenoid valve for any reason. Turning the screw in either direction will ruin solenoid calibration and result in solenoid failure. In addition, the filter on the solenoid valve is NOT serviceable. Do not try to remove the filter as this will damage the valve housing.

Inspect the throttle and manual valve levers and shafts (Fig. 307). Do not attempt to straighten a bent shaft or correct a loose lever. Replace these components if worn, bent, loose or damaged in any way.

Inspect all of the valve body mating surfaces for scratches, nicks, burrs, or distortion. Use a straight-edge to check surface flatness. Minor scratches may be removed with crocus cloth using only very light pressure.

Minor distortion of a valve body mating surface may be corrected by smoothing the surface with a

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

sheet of crocus cloth. Position the crocus cloth on a surface plate, sheet of plate glass or equally flat surface. If distortion is severe or any surfaces are heavily scored, the valve body will have to be replaced.

CAUTION: Many of the valves and plugs, such as the throttle valve, shuttle valve plug, 1-2 shift valve and 1-2 governor plug, are made of coated aluminum. Aluminum components are identified by the dark color of the special coating applied to the surface (or by testing with a magnet). Do not sand aluminum valves or plugs under any circumstances. This practice could damage the special coating causing the valves/plugs to stick and bind.

Inspect the valves and plugs for scratches, burrs, nicks, or scores. Minor surface scratches on steel valves and plugs can be removed with crocus cloth but **do not round off the edges of the valve or plug lands.** Maintaining sharpness of these edges is vitally important. The edges prevent foreign matter from lodging between the valves and plugs and the bore.

Inspect all the valve and plug bores in the valve body. Use a penlight to view the bore interiors. Replace the valve body if any bores are distorted or scored. Inspect all of the valve body springs. The springs must be free of distortion, warpage or broken coils.

Check the two separator plates for distortion or damage of any kind. Inspect the upper housing, lower housing, 3-4 accumulator housing, and transfer plate carefully. Be sure all fluid passages are clean

and clear. Check condition of the upper housing and transfer plate check balls as well. The check balls and ball seats must not be worn or damaged.

Trial fit each valve and plug in its bore to check freedom of operation. When clean and dry, the valves and plugs should drop freely into the bores.

Valve body bores do not change dimensionally with use. If the valve body functioned correctly when new, it will continue to operate properly after cleaning and inspection. It should not be necessary to replace a valve body assembly unless it is damaged in handling.

The only serviceable valve body components are listed below. The remaining valve body components are serviced only as part of a complete valve body assembly. Serviceable parts are:

- dual solenoid and harness assembly
- solenoid gasket
- solenoid case connector O-rings and shoulder bolt
- switch valve and spring
- pressure adjusting screw and bracket assembly
- throttle lever
- manual lever and shaft seal
- throttle lever shaft seal, washer, and E-clip
- fluid filter and screws
- detent ball and spring
- valve body screws
- governor pressure solenoid
- governor pressure sensor and retaining clip
- park lock rod and E-clip

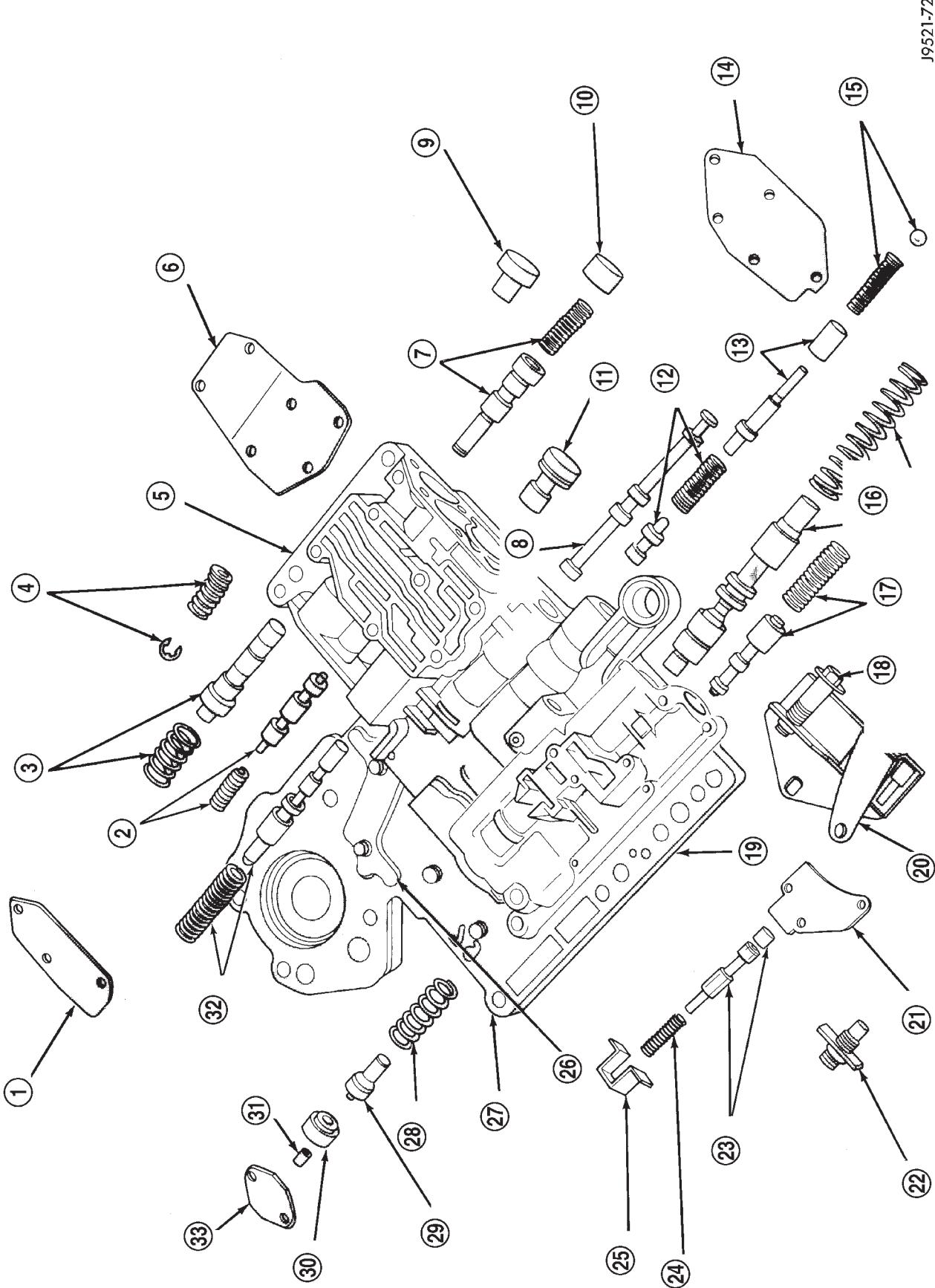


Fig. 307 Upper Housing Valves, Plug, Springs And Brackets

J9521-72

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

1 – SHIFT VALVE COVER	18 – THROTTLE PRESSURE ADJUSTING SCREW
2 – 1-2 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING	19 – TRANSFER PLATE
3 – 2-3 SHIFT VALVE AND SPRING	20 – ADJUSTING SCREW BRACKET
4 – SHUTTLE VALVE SECONDARY SPRING, GUIDES, E-CLIP	21 – BOOST VALVE COVER
5 – VALVE BODY	22 – LINE PRESSURE ADJUSTING SCREW
6 – SHUTTLE VALVE COVER	23 – BOOST VALVE AND PLUG
7 – SHUTTLE VALVE AND PRIMARY SPRING	24 – BOOST VALVE SPRING
8 – MANUAL VALVE	25 – VALVE AND SPRING RETAINER
9 – 2-3 SHIFT VALVE GOVERNOR PLUG	26 – STIFFENER PLATE
10 – SHUTTLE VALVE PLUG	27 – SEPARATOR PLATE
11 – 1-2 SHIFT VALVE GOVERNOR PLUG	28 – SPRING
12 – THROTTLE VALVE AND SPRING	29 – REGULATOR VALVE THROTTLE PRESSURE PLUG
13 – KICKDOWN VALVE AND DETENT	30 – SLEEVE
14 – VALVE AND PLUG COVER	31 – REGULATOR VALVE PRESSURE PLUG
15 – MANUAL LEVER DETENT BALL AND SPRING	32 – 1-2 SHIFT CONTROL VALVE AND SPRING
16 – PRESSURE REGULATOR VALVE AND SPRING	33 – REGULATOR VALVE COVER
17 – SWITCH VALVE AND SPRING	

TRANSMISSION

GENERAL INFORMATION

Inspect the transmission bushings during overhaul. Bushing condition is important as worn, scored bushings contribute to low pressures, clutch slip and accelerated wear of other components. However, do not replace bushings as a matter of course. Replace bushings only when they are actually worn, or scored.

Use recommended tools to replace bushings. The tools are sized and designed to remove, install, and seat bushings correctly. The bushing replacement tools are included in Bushing Tool Set C-3887-B.

Pre-sized service bushings are available for replacement purposes. Only the sun gear bushings are not serviced. Low cost of the sun gear assembly makes it easier to simply replace the gear and bushings as an assembly.

Heli-Coil inserts can be used to repair damaged, stripped or worn threads in aluminum parts. These inserts are available from most automotive parts suppliers. Stainless steel inserts are recommended.

The use of crocus cloth is permissible where necessary, providing it is used carefully. When used on shafts, or valves, use extreme care to avoid rounding off sharp edges. Sharp edges are vital as they prevent foreign matter from getting between the valve and valve bore.

Do not reuse oil seals, gaskets, seal rings, or O-rings during overhaul. Replace these parts as a matter of course. Also do not reuse snap rings or E-clips that are bent or distorted. Replace these parts as well.

Lubricate transmission parts with Mopar® ATF Plus 3, Type 7176, transmission fluid during overhaul and assembly. Use petroleum jelly, Mopar® Door Ease, or Ru-Glyde to prelubricate seals, O-rings, and

thrust washers. Petroleum jelly can also be used to hold parts in place during reassembly.

TRANSMISSION CASE CLEANING AND INSPECTION

Clean the case in a solvent tank. Flush the case bores and fluid passages thoroughly with solvent. Dry the case and all fluid passages with compressed air. Be sure all solvent is removed from the case and that all fluid passages are clear.

NOTE: Do not use shop towels or rags to dry the case (or any other transmission component) unless they are made from lint-free materials. Lint will stick to case surfaces and transmission components and circulate throughout the transmission after assembly. A sufficient quantity of lint can block fluid passages and interfere with valve body operation.

Inspect the case for cracks, porous spots, worn bores, or damaged threads. Damaged threads can be repaired with Helicoil thread inserts. However, the case will have to be replaced if it exhibits any type of damage or wear.

Lubricate the front band adjusting screw threads with petroleum jelly and thread the screw part-way into the case. Be sure the screw turns freely.

OVERRUNNING CLUTCH/LOW-REVERSE DRUM/OVERDRIVE PISTON RETAINER

Clean the overrunning clutch assembly, clutch cam, low-reverse drum, and overdrive piston retainer in solvent. Dry them with compressed air after cleaning.

Inspect condition of each clutch part after cleaning. Replace the overrunning clutch roller and spring assembly if any rollers or springs are worn or dam-

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

aged, or if the roller cage is distorted, or damaged. Replace the cam if worn, cracked or damaged.

Replace the low-reverse drum if the clutch race, roller surface or inside diameter is scored, worn or damaged. **Do not remove the clutch race from the low-reverse drum under any circumstances. Replace the drum and race as an assembly if either component is damaged.**

Examine the overdrive piston retainer carefully for wear, cracks, scoring or other damage. Be sure the retainer hub is a snug fit in the case and drum. Replace the retainer if worn or damaged.

ACCUMULATOR

Inspect the accumulator piston and seal rings (Fig. 308). Replace the seal rings if worn or cut. Replace the piston if chipped or cracked.

Check condition of the accumulator inner and outer springs (Fig. 308). Replace the springs if the coils are cracked, distorted or collapsed.

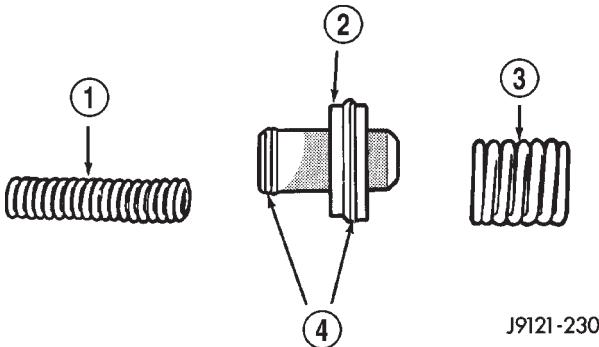


Fig. 308 Accumulator Components

- 1 – INNER SPRING
- 2 – ACCUMULATOR PISTON
- 3 – OUTER SPRING
- 4 – SEAL RINGS

FRONT SERVO

Clean the servo piston components with solvent and dry them with compressed air. Wipe the band clean with lint free shop towels.

Replace the front band if distorted, lining is burned, flaking off, or worn to the point where the grooves in the lining material are no longer visible.

Inspect the servo components. Replace the springs if collapsed, distorted or broken. Replace the guide, rod and piston if cracked, bent, or worn. Discard the servo snap ring if distorted or warped.

Check the servo piston bore for wear. If the bore is severely scored, or damaged, it will be necessary to replace the case.

Replace any servo component if doubt exists about condition. Do not reuse suspect parts.

REAR SERVO

Remove and discard the servo piston seal ring (Fig. 309). Then clean the servo components with solvent and dry with compressed air. Replace either spring if collapsed, distorted or broken. Replace the plug and piston if cracked, bent, or worn. Discard the servo snap rings and use a new ones at assembly.

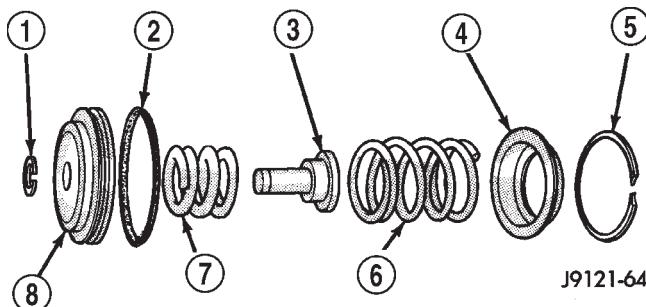


Fig. 309 Rear Servo Components

- 1 – SNAP RING
- 2 – PISTON SEAL
- 3 – PISTON PLUG
- 4 – SPRING RETAINER
- 5 – SNAP RING
- 6 – PISTON SPRING
- 7 – CUSHION SPRING
- 8 – PISTON

OIL PUMP AND REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT

Clean pump and support components with solvent and dry them with compressed air.

Check condition of the seal rings and thrust washer on the reaction shaft support. The seal rings do not need to be replaced unless cracked, broken, or severely worn.

Inspect the pump and support components. Replace the pump or support if the seal ring grooves or machined surfaces are worn, scored, pitted, or damaged. Replace the pump gears if pitted, worn chipped, or damaged.

Check the pump vent. The vent must be secure. Replace the pump body if the vent is cracked, broken, or loose.

Inspect the pump bushing. Then check the reaction shaft support bushing. Replace either bushing only if heavily worn, scored or damaged. It is not necessary to replace the bushings unless they are actually damaged.

(1) Install the gears in the pump body and measure pump component clearances as follows:

(a) Clearance between outer gear and reaction shaft housing should be 0.010 to 0.063 mm (0.0004 to 0.0025 in.). Clearance between inner gear and reaction shaft housing should be 0.010 to 0.063 mm (0.0004 to 0.0025 in.). Both clearances can be measured at the same time by:

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

(I) Installing the pump gears in the pump housing.

(II) Position an appropriate piece of Plastigage™ across both gears.

(III) Align the plastigage to a flat area on the reaction shaft housing.

(IV) Install the reaction shaft to the pump housing.

(V) Separate the reaction shaft housing from the pump housing and measure the Plastigage™ following the instructions supplied with it.

(b) Clearance between inner gear tooth and outer gear should be 0.08 to 0.19 mm (0.0035 to 0.0075 in.). Measure clearance with an appropriate feeler gauge (Fig. 310).

(c) Clearance between outer gear and pump housing should also be 0.010 to 0.19 mm (0.0035 to 0.0075 in.). Measure clearance with an appropriate feeler gauge.

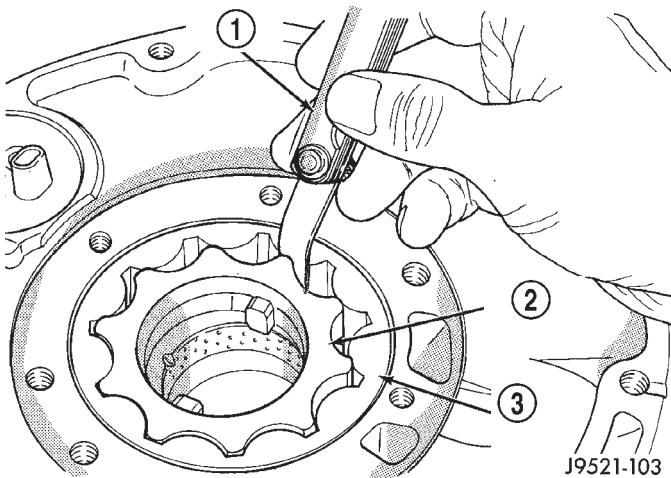


Fig. 310 Checking Pump Gear Tip Clearance

- 1 – FEELER GAUGE
- 2 – INNER GEAR
- 3 – OUTER GEAR

FRONT CLUTCH

Clean and inspect the front clutch components. Replace the clutch discs if warped, worn, scored, burned or charred, the lugs are damaged, or if the facing is flaking off. Replace the steel plates and reaction plate if heavily scored, warped, or broken. Be sure the driving lugs on the discs and plate are also in good condition. The lugs must not be bent, cracked or damaged in any way.

Replace the piston springs and spring retainer if either are distorted, warped or broken.

Check the lug grooves in the clutch piston retainer. The steel plates should slide freely in the slots. Replace the piston retainer if the grooves are worn or damaged. Also check action of the check ball in the

piston retainer. The ball must move freely and not stick.

Replace the retainer bushing if worn, scored, or there is any doubt about bushing condition.

Inspect the piston and retainer seal surfaces for nicks or scratches. Minor scratches can be removed with crocus cloth. However, replace the piston and/or retainer if the seal surfaces are seriously scored.

Check the clutch piston check ball. The ball should be securely in place. Replace the piston if the ball is missing, or seized in place.

REAR CLUTCH

Clean the clutch components with solvent and dry them with compressed air.

Check condition of the input shaft seal rings. It is not necessary to remove or replace rings unless they are broken, cracked, or no longer securely hooked together.

Inspect the input shaft splines and machined surfaces. Very minor nicks or scratches can be smoothed off with crocus cloth. Replace the shaft if the splines are damaged, or any of the machined surfaces are severely scored.

Replace the clutch discs if warped, worn, scored, burned/charred, the lugs are damaged, or if the facing is flaking off.

Replace the steel plates and the pressure plate if heavily scored, warped, or broken. Be sure the driving lugs on the discs and plates are also in good condition. The lugs must not be bent, cracked or damaged in any way.

Replace the piston spring and wave spring if either part is distorted, warped or broken.

Check the lug grooves in the clutch retainer. The steel plates should slide freely in the slots. Replace the retainer if the grooves are worn or damaged. Also check action of the retainer check ball. The ball must move freely and not stick.

Inspect the piston and retainer seal surfaces for nicks or scratches. Minor scratches can be removed with crocus cloth. However, replace the piston and/or retainer if the seal surfaces are seriously damaged.

Check thrust washer condition. Washer thickness should be 1.55 to 1.60 mm (0.061 to 0.063 in.). Replace the washer if worn or damaged.

Check condition of the two seal rings on the input shaft and the single seal ring on the piston retainer hub. Replace the seal rings only if severely worn, cracked, or cannot be hooked together.

PLANETARY GEARTRAIN/OUTPUT SHAFT

Clean the intermediate shaft and planetary components in solvent and dry them with compressed air.

Inspect the planetary gear sets and annulus gears. The planetary pinions, shafts, washers, and retaining

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

pins are serviceable. However, if a pinion carrier is damaged, the entire planetary gear set must be replaced as an assembly.

Replace the annulus gears if the teeth are chipped, broken, or worn, or the gear is cracked. Replace the planetary thrust plates and the tabbed thrust washers if cracked, scored or worn.

Inspect the machined surfaces of the intermediate shaft. Be sure the oil passages are open and clear. Replace the shaft if scored, pitted, or damaged.

Inspect the sun gear and driving shell. If either component is worn or damaged, remove the sun gear rear retaining ring and separate the sun gear and thrust plate from the driving shell. Then replace the necessary component.

Replace the sun gear as an assembly if the gear teeth are chipped or worn. Also replace the gear as an assembly if the bushings are scored or worn. The sun gear bushings are not serviceable. Replace the thrust plate if worn, or severely scored. Replace the driving shell if distorted, cracked, or damaged in any way.

Replace all snap rings during geartrain assembly. Reusing snap rings is not recommended.

OVERDRIVE UNIT

Clean the geartrain and case components with solvent. Dry all parts except the bearings with compressed air. Allow bearings to air dry.

Do not use shop towels for wiping parts dry unless the towels are made from a lint-free material. A sufficient quantity of lint (from shop towels, cloths, rags, etc.) could plug the transmission filter and fluid passages.

Discard the old case gasket and seals. Do not attempt to salvage these parts. They are not reusable. Replace any of the overdrive unit snap rings if distorted or damaged.

Minor nicks or scratches on components can be smoothed with crocus cloth. However, do not attempt to reduce severe scoring on any components with abrasive materials. Replace severely scored components; do not try to salvage them.

Check condition of the park lock components and the overdrive case.

Replace the case if cracked, scored, or damaged. Replace the park lock pawl, plug, or spring if worn or damaged. Be sure the bullet at the end of the park lock rod is in good condition. Replace the rod if the bullet is worn or the rod itself is bent or distorted. Do not attempt to straighten the rod.

Check the bushings in the overdrive case. Replace the bushings if severely scored or worn. Also replace the case seal if loose, distorted, or damaged.

Examine the overdrive and direct clutch discs and plates. Replace the discs if the facing is worn,

severely scored, or burned and flaking off. Replace the clutch plates if worn, heavily scored, or cracked. Check the lugs on the clutch plates for wear. The plates should slide freely in the drum. Replace the plates or drum if binding occurs.

Check condition of the annulus gear, direct clutch hub, clutch drum and clutch spring. Replace the gear, hub and drum if worn or damaged. Replace the spring if collapsed, distorted, or cracked.

Be sure the splines and lugs on the gear, drum and hub are in good condition. The clutch plates and discs should slide freely in these components.

Inspect the thrust bearings and spring plate. Replace the plate if worn or scored. Replace the bearings if rough, noisy, brinelled, or worn.

Inspect the planetary gear assembly and the sun gear and bushings. If either the sun gear or the bushings are damaged, replace the gear and bushings as an assembly. The gear and bushings are not serviced separately.

The planetary carrier and pinions must be in good condition. Also be sure the pinion pins are secure and in good condition. Replace the carrier if worn or damaged.

Inspect the overrunning clutch and race. The race surface should be smooth and free of scores. Replace the overrunning clutch assembly or the race if either assembly is worn or damaged in any way.

Inspect the output shaft and governor components. Replace the shaft pilot bushing and inner bushing if damaged. Replace either shaft bearing if rough or noisy. Replace the bearing snap rings if distorted or cracked.

Check the machined surfaces on the output shaft. These surfaces should clean and smooth. Very minor nicks or scratches can be smoothed with crocus cloth. Replace the shaft if worn, scored or damaged in any way.

Inspect the output shaft bushings. The small bushing is the intermediate shaft pilot bushing. The large bushing is the overrunning clutch hub bushing. Replace either bushing if scored, pitted, cracked, or worn.

ADJUSTMENTS

TRANSMISSION THROTTLE VALVE CABLE ADJUSTMENT

The transmission throttle valve is operated by a cam on the valve body throttle lever. The throttle lever is actuated by a cable connected to the engine throttle body lever (Fig. 311). A retaining clip at the engine-end of the cable is removed to provide for cable adjustment. The retaining clip is then installed

ADJUSTMENTS (Continued)

back onto the throttle valve cable to lock in the adjustment.

A correctly adjusted throttle valve cable, will cause the throttle lever on the transmission to move simultaneously with the throttle body lever from the idle position. Proper adjustment allows simultaneous movement without causing the transmission throttle lever to move ahead of, or lag behind the throttle body lever.

THROTTLE VALVE CABLE ADJUSTMENT CHECK

- (1) Turn ignition key to OFF position.
- (2) Remove air cleaner.
- (3) Slide cable off attachment stud on throttle body lever (Fig. 311).
- (4) Verify that throttle body lever is at curb idle position. Then verify that transmission throttle lever is also at idle (full forward) position.
- (5) Compare position of cable end to attachment stud on throttle body lever:
 - (a) Cable end and attachment stud should be aligned (or centered on one another) to within 1 mm (0.039 in.) in either direction.
 - (b) If cable end and attachment stud are misaligned (off center), cable will have to be adjusted as described in following procedure.
- (6) Reconnect cable end to attachment stud. Then with aid of a helper, observe movement of transmission throttle lever and lever on throttle body.
 - (a) If both levers move simultaneously from idle to half-throttle and back to idle position, adjustment is correct.
 - (b) If transmission throttle lever moves ahead of, or lags behind throttle body lever, cable adjustment will be necessary. Or, if throttle body lever prevents transmission lever from returning to closed position, cable adjustment will be necessary.

THROTTLE VALVE CABLE ADJUSTMENT PROCEDURE

- (1) Turn ignition switch to OFF position and shift into Park.
- (2) Remove air cleaner.
- (3) Disconnect cable end from attachment stud on throttle body. **Carefully slide cable off stud. Do not pull or pry cable off.**
- (4) Verify that transmission throttle lever is in idle (full forward) position. Then be sure lever on throttle body is at curb idle position.
- (5) Insert a small screwdriver under edge of retaining clip and remove retaining clip.
- (6) Center cable end on attachment stud to within 1 mm (0.039 in.).

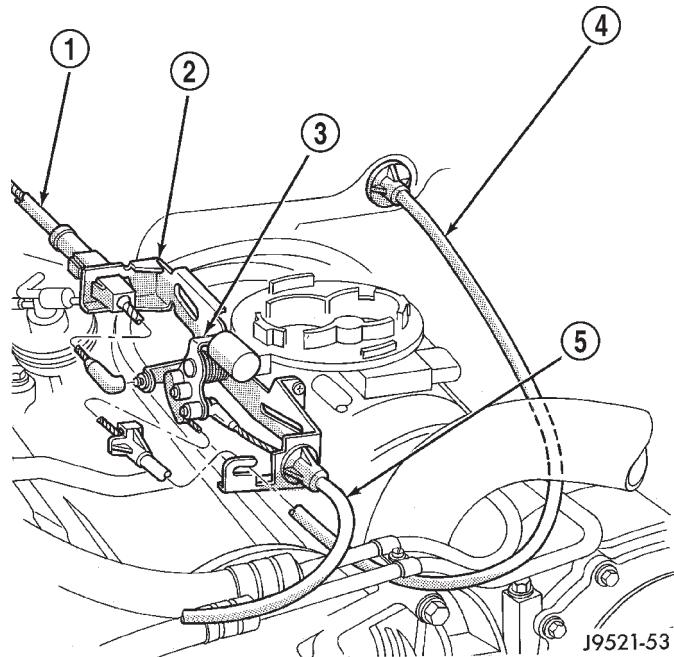


Fig. 311 Throttle Valve Cable Attachment —At Engine

- 1 – THROTTLE VALVE CABLE
2 – CABLE BRACKET
3 – THROTTLE BODY LEVER
4 – ACCELERATOR CABLE
5 – SPEED CONTROL CABLE

NOTE: Be sure that as the cable is pulled forward and centered on the throttle lever stud, the cable housing moves smoothly with the cable. Due to the angle at which the cable housing enters the spring housing, the cable housing may bind slightly and create an incorrect adjustment.

- (7) Install retaining clip onto cable housing.
- (8) Check cable adjustment. Be sure transmission throttle lever and lever on throttle body move simultaneously and as described in cable adjustment checking procedure.

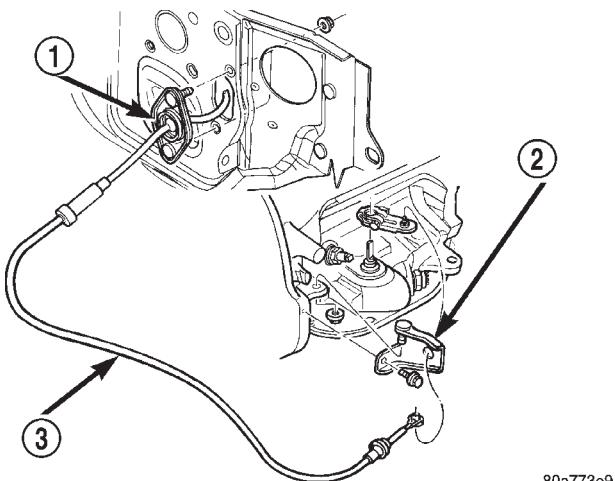
GEARSHIFT CABLE

Check adjustment by starting the engine in Park and Neutral. Adjustment is OK if the engine starts only in these positions. Adjustment is incorrect if the engine starts in one but not both positions. If the engine starts in any position other than Park or Neutral, or if the engine will not start at all, the park/neutral position switch may be faulty.

ADJUSTMENTS (Continued)

Gearshift Adjustment Procedure

- (1) Shift transmission into Park.
- (2) Release cable adjuster lock (underneath the power brake booster) (Fig. 312) to unlock cable.
- (3) Raise vehicle.
- (4) Slide cable eyelet off transmission shift lever.
- (5) Verify transmission shift lever is in Park detent by moving lever fully rearward. Last rearward detent is Park position.
- (6) Verify positive engagement of transmission park lock by attempting to rotate propeller shaft. Shaft will not rotate when park lock is engaged.
- (7) Slide cable eyelet onto transmission shift lever.
- (8) Lower vehicle and check engine starting. Engine should start only in Park and Neutral.
- (9) Lock shift cable by pressing cable adjuster clamp down until it snaps into place.

**Fig. 312 Gearshift Cable Routing**

- 1 – CABLE MOUNTING
2 – CABLE BRACKET AT TRANS.
3 – GEARSHIFT CABLE

FRONT BAND ADJUSTMENT

The front (kickdown) band adjusting screw is located on the left side of the transmission case above the manual valve and throttle valve levers.

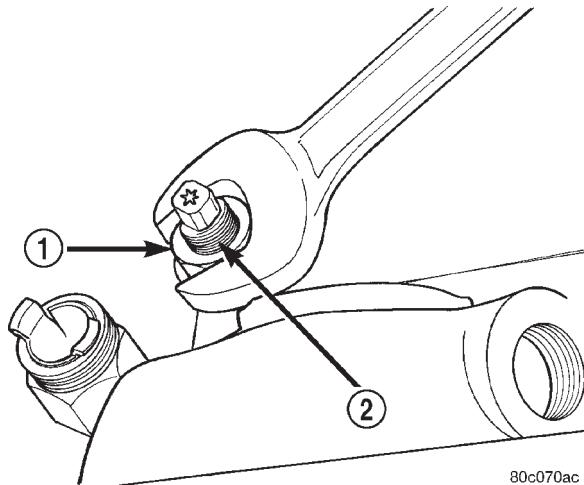
- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Loosen band adjusting screw locknut (Fig. 313). Then back locknut off 3-5 turns. Be sure adjusting screw turns freely in case. Apply lubricant to screw threads if necessary.
- (3) Tighten band adjusting screw to 8 N·m (72 in. lbs.) torque with Inch Pound Torque Wrench C-3380-A, a 3-in. extension and an appropriate Torx™ socket.

CAUTION: If Adapter C-3705 is needed to reach the adjusting screw, tighten the screw to only 5 N·m (47-50 in. lbs.) torque.

- (4) Back off front band adjusting screw 2-7/8 turns.

(5) Hold adjuster screw in position and tighten locknut to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.) torque.

- (6) Lower vehicle.

**Fig. 313 Front Band Adjustment Screw Location**

- 1 – LOCK-NUT
2 – FRONT BAND ADJUSTER

REAR BAND ADJUSTMENT

The transmission oil pan must be removed for access to the rear band adjusting screw.

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Remove transmission oil pan and drain fluid.
- (3) Loosen band adjusting screw locknut 5-6 turns. Be sure adjusting screw turns freely in lever.
- (4) Tighten adjusting screw to 8 N·m (72 in. lbs.) torque (Fig. 314).
- (5) Back off adjusting screw 2 turns.
- (6) Hold adjusting screw in place and tighten locknut to 34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (7) Position new gasket on oil pan and install pan on transmission. Tighten pan bolts to 17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (8) Lower vehicle and refill transmission with Mopar® ATF Plus, Type 7176 fluid.

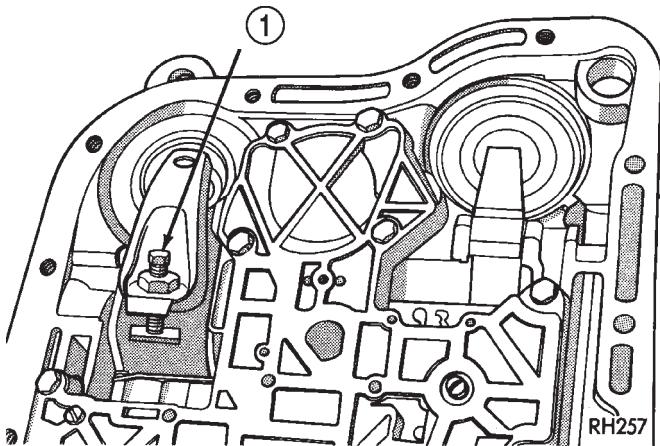
VALVE BODY**CONTROL PRESSURE ADJUSTMENTS**

There are two control pressure adjustments on the valve body;

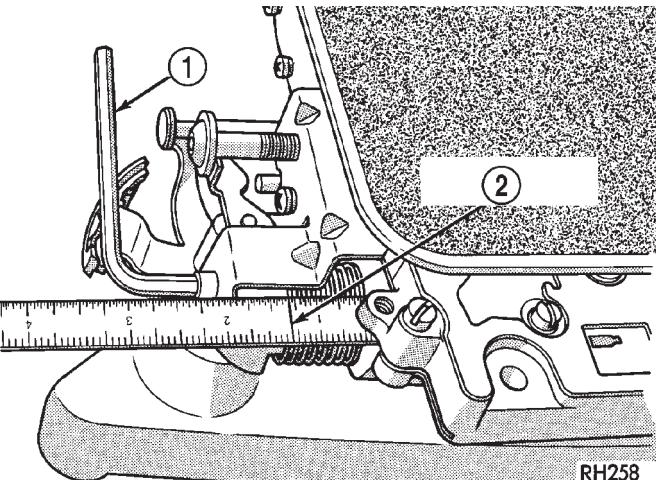
- Line Pressure
- Throttle Pressure

Line and throttle pressures are interdependent because each affects shift quality and timing. As a result, both adjustments must be performed properly and in the correct sequence. Adjust line pressure first and throttle pressure last.

ADJUSTMENTS (Continued)

**Fig. 314 Rear Band Adjustment Screw Location**

1 – LOW-REVERSE BAND ADJUSTMENT

**Fig. 315 Line Pressure Adjustment**

1 – WRENCH

2 – 1-5/16 INCH

LINE PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT

Measure distance from the valve body to the inner edge of the adjusting screw with an accurate steel scale (Fig. 315).

Distance should be 33.4 mm (1-5/16 in.).

If adjustment is required, turn the adjusting screw in, or out, to obtain required distance setting.

NOTE: The 33.4 mm (1-5/16 in.) setting is an approximate setting. Manufacturing tolerances may make it necessary to vary from this dimension to obtain desired pressure.

One complete turn of the adjusting screw changes line pressure approximately 1-2/3 psi (9 kPa).

Turning the adjusting screw counterclockwise increases pressure while turning the screw clockwise decreases pressure.

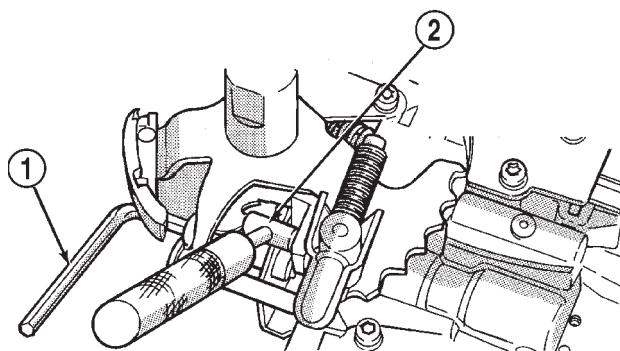
THROTTLE PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT

Insert Gauge Tool C-3763 between the throttle lever cam and the kickdown valve stem (Fig. 316).

Push the gauge tool inward to compress the kickdown valve against the spring and bottom the throttle valve.

Maintain pressure against kickdown valve spring. Turn throttle lever stop screw until the screw head touches throttle lever tang and the throttle lever cam touches gauge tool.

NOTE: The kickdown valve spring must be fully compressed and the kickdown valve completely bottomed to obtain correct adjustment.



J9521-109

Fig. 316 Throttle Pressure Adjustment

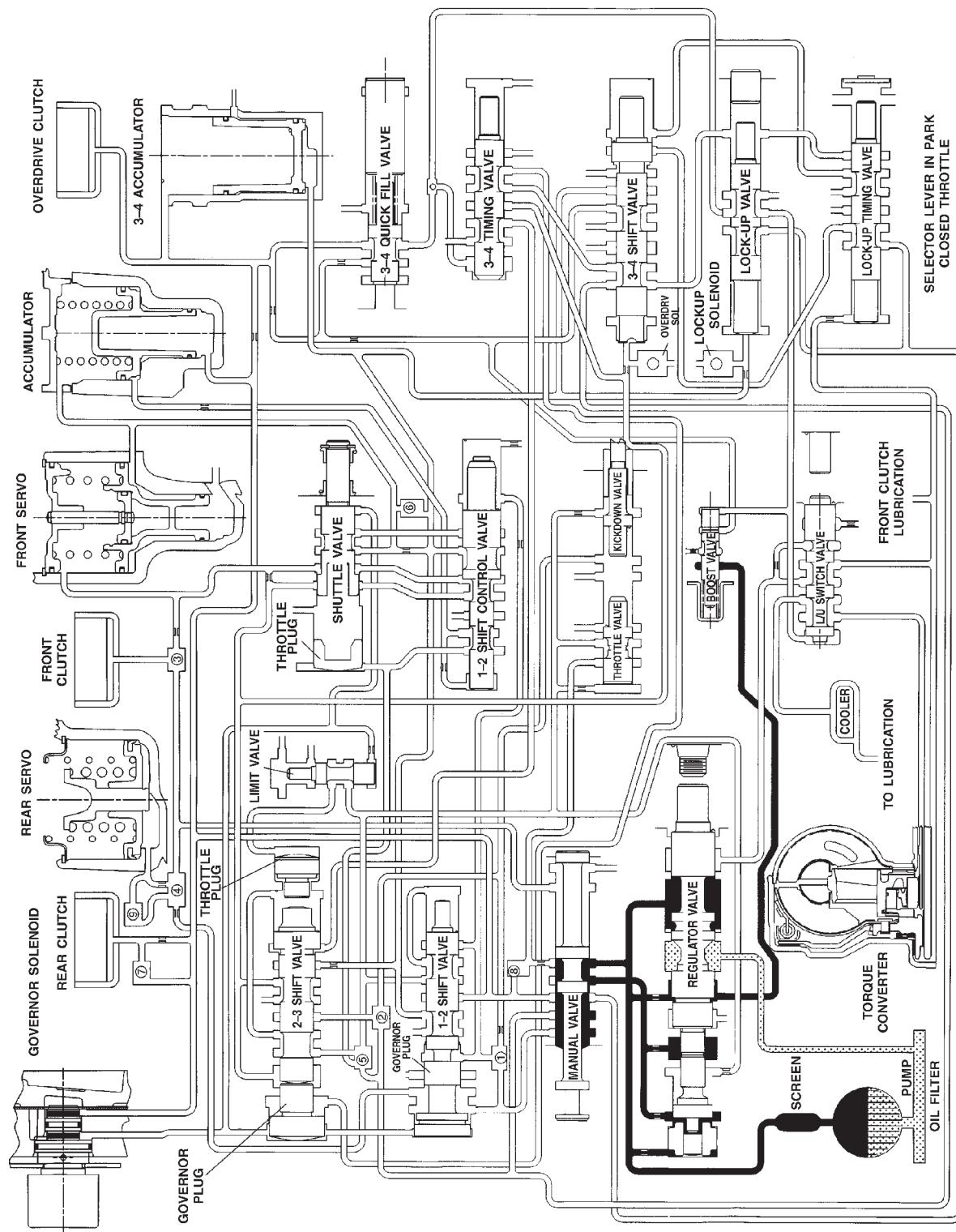
1 – HEX WRENCH (IN THROTTLE LEVER ADJUSTING SCREW)

2 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3763 (POSITIONED BETWEEN THROTTLE LEVER AND KICKDOWN VALVE)

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS

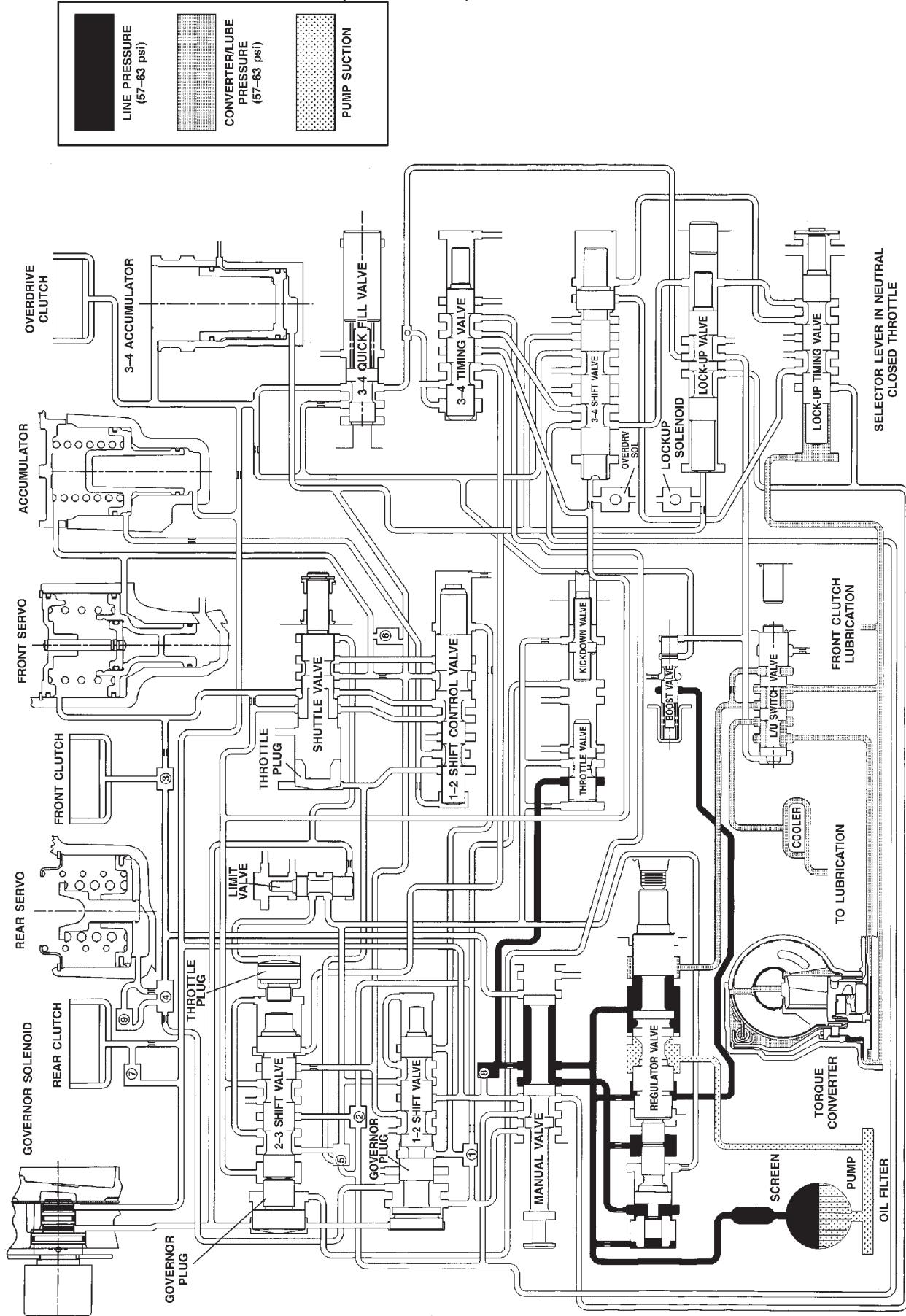
HYDRAULIC SCHEMATICS

80abid7e



HYDRAULIC FLOW IN PARK

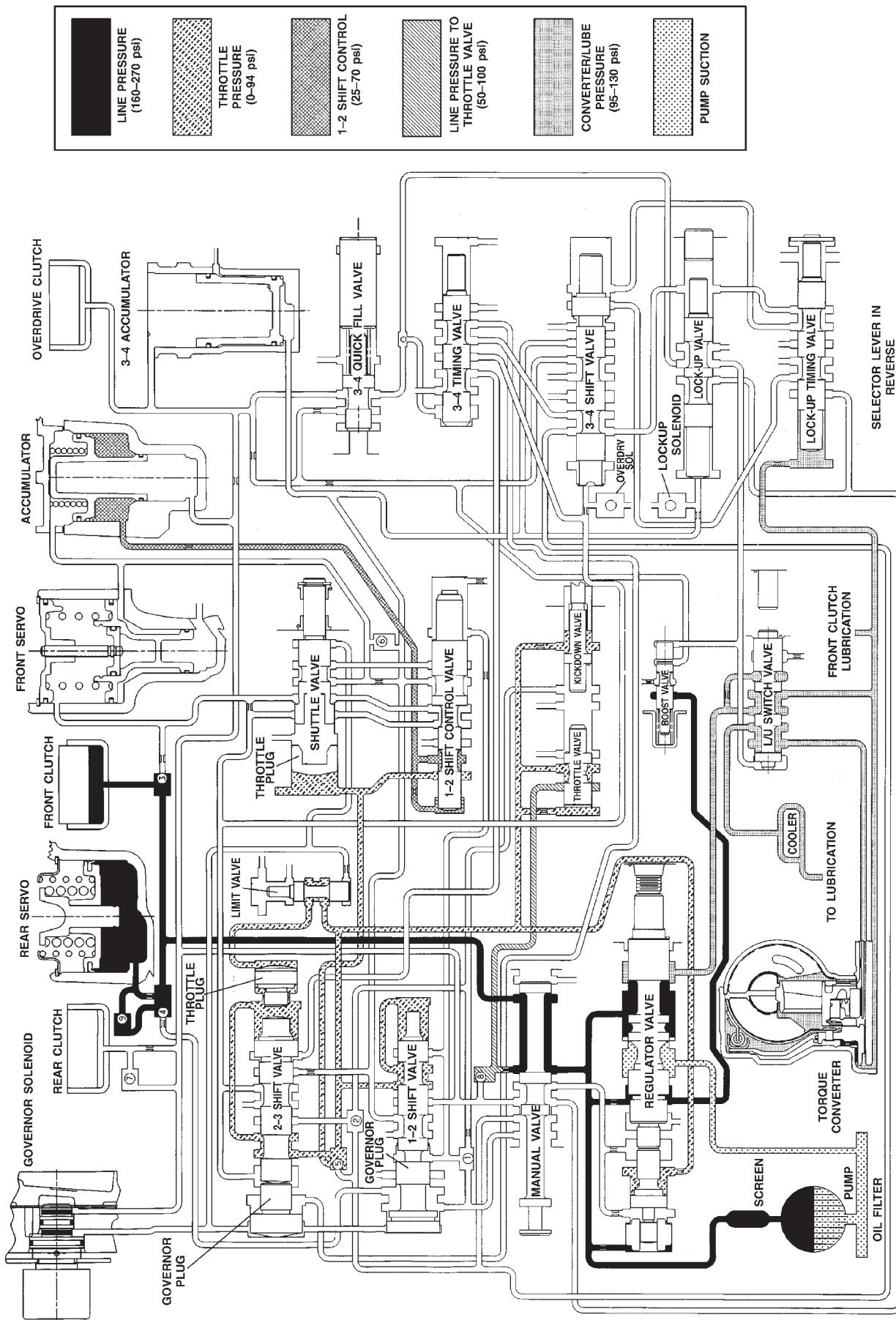
SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



HYDRAULIC FLOW IN NEUTRAL

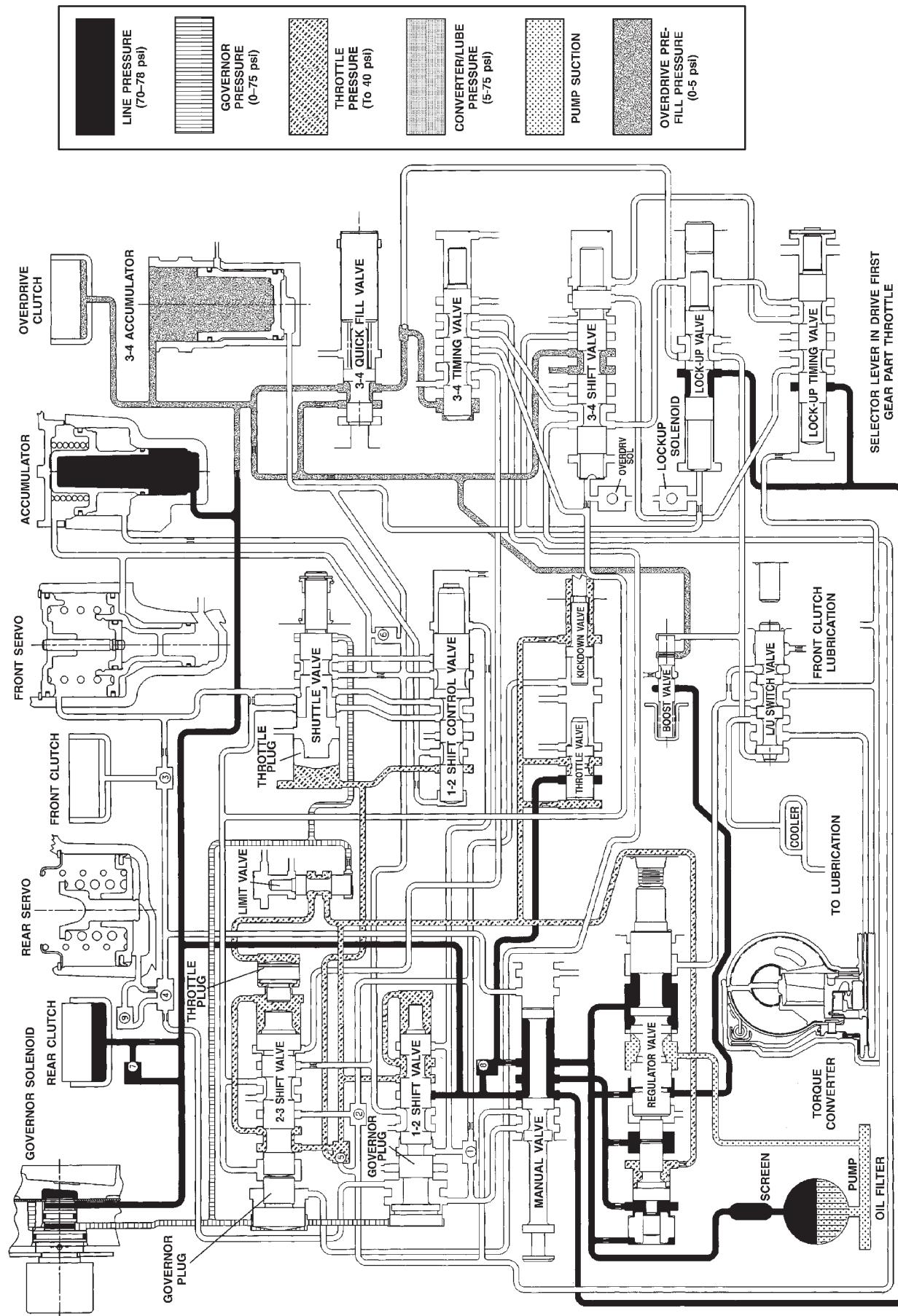
800/347-7474

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



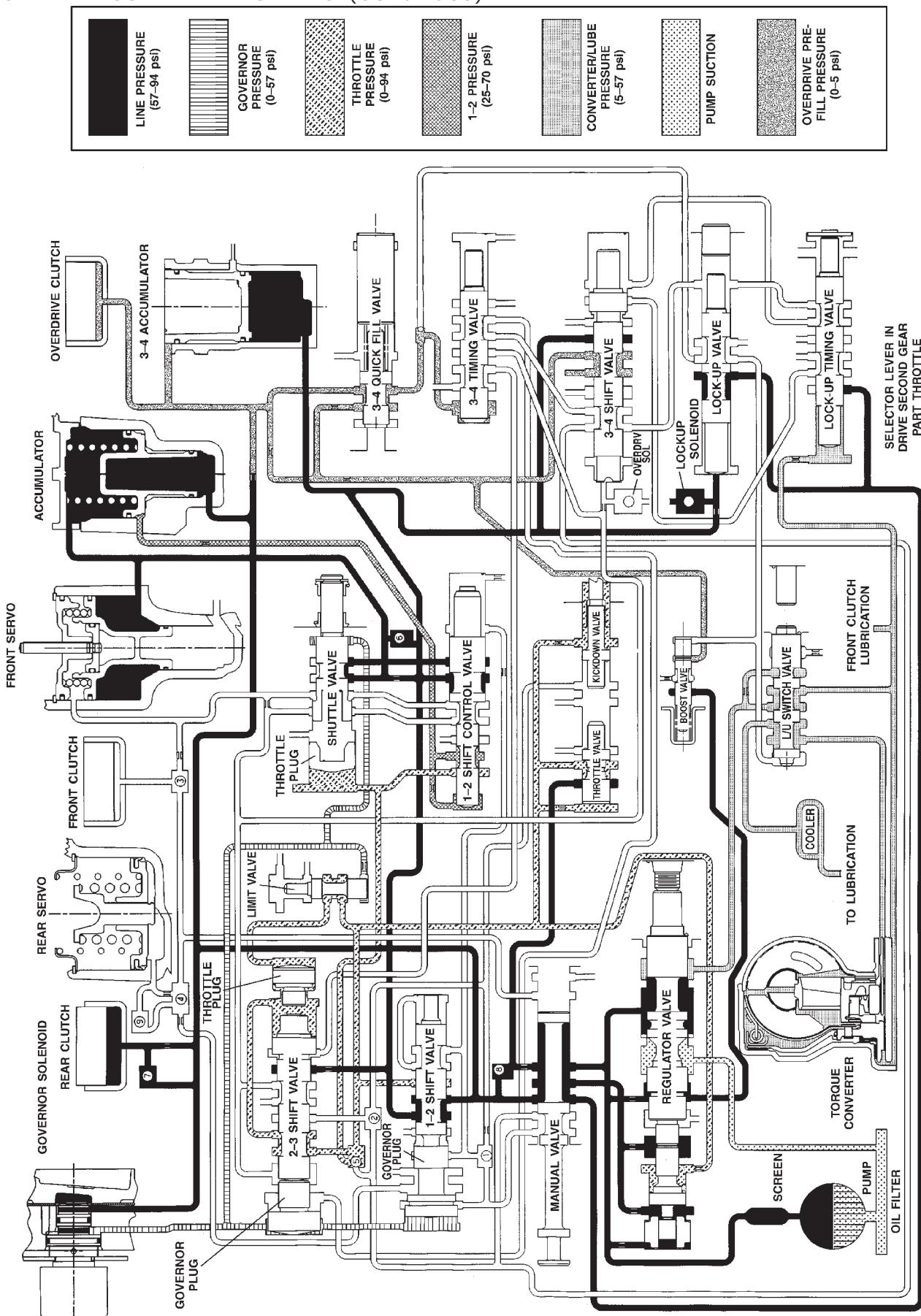
HYDRAULIC FLOW IN REVERSE

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



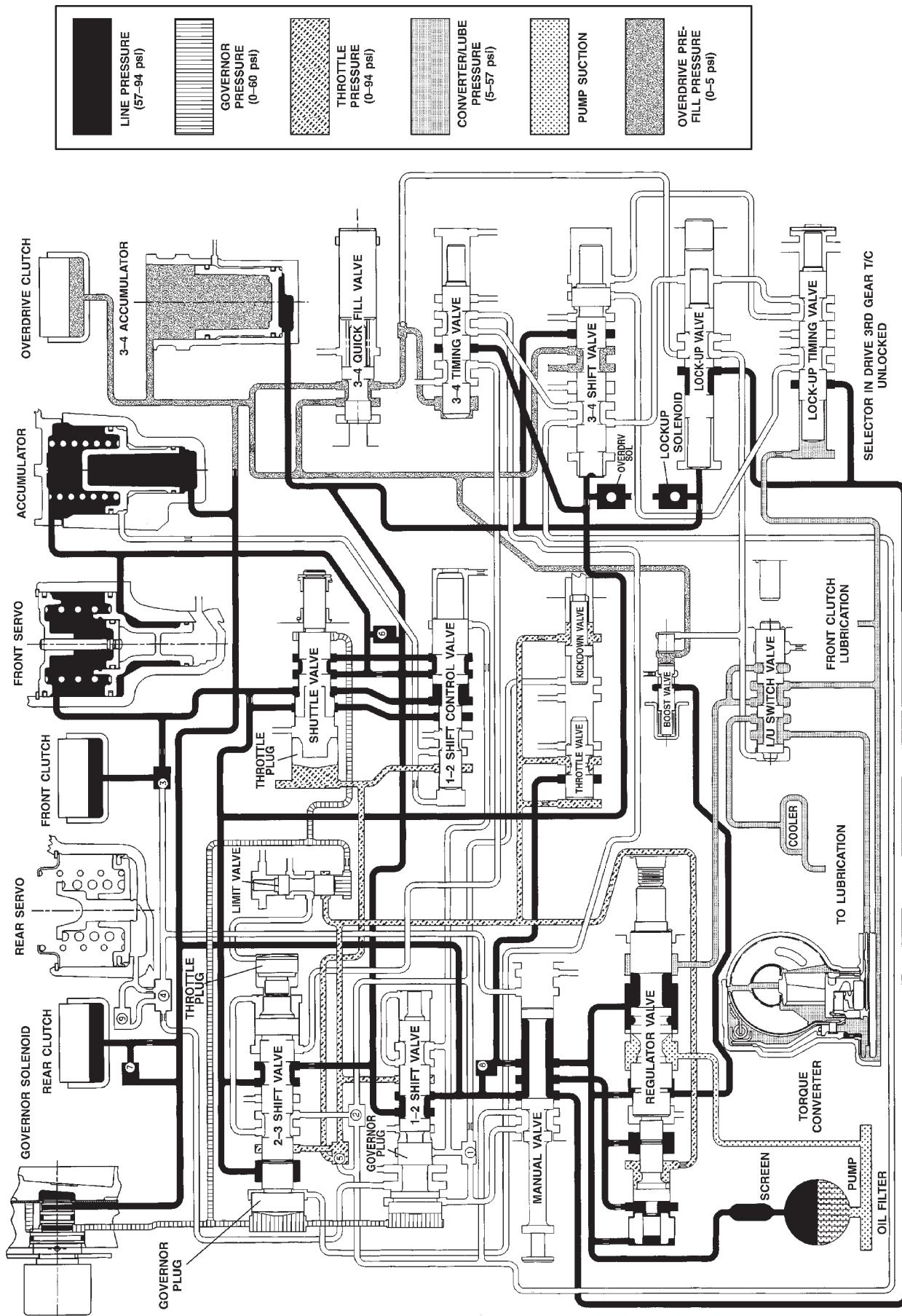
HYDRAULIC FLOW IN DRIVE FIRST GEAR

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



HYDRAULIC FLOW IN DRIVE SECOND GEAR

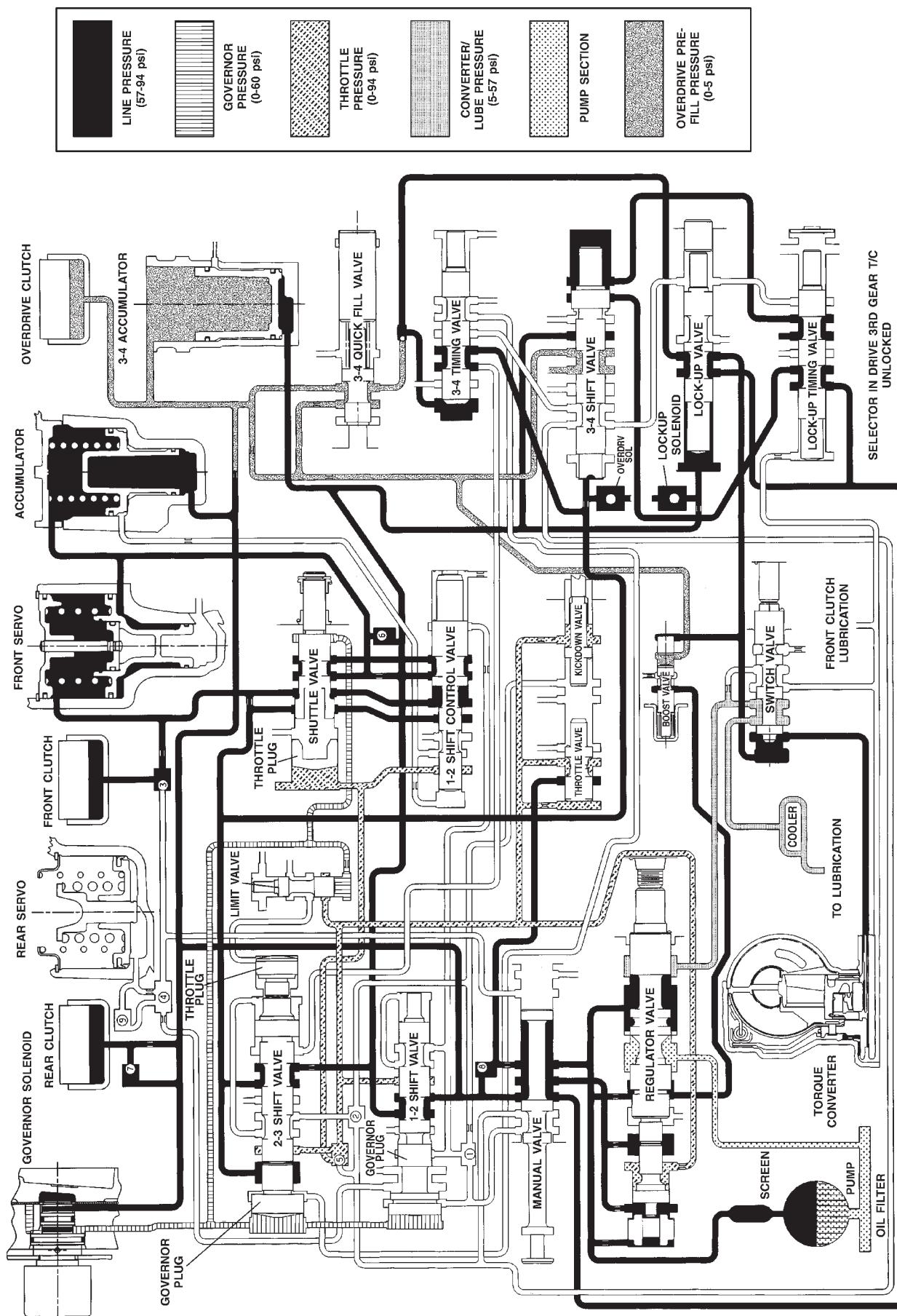
SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



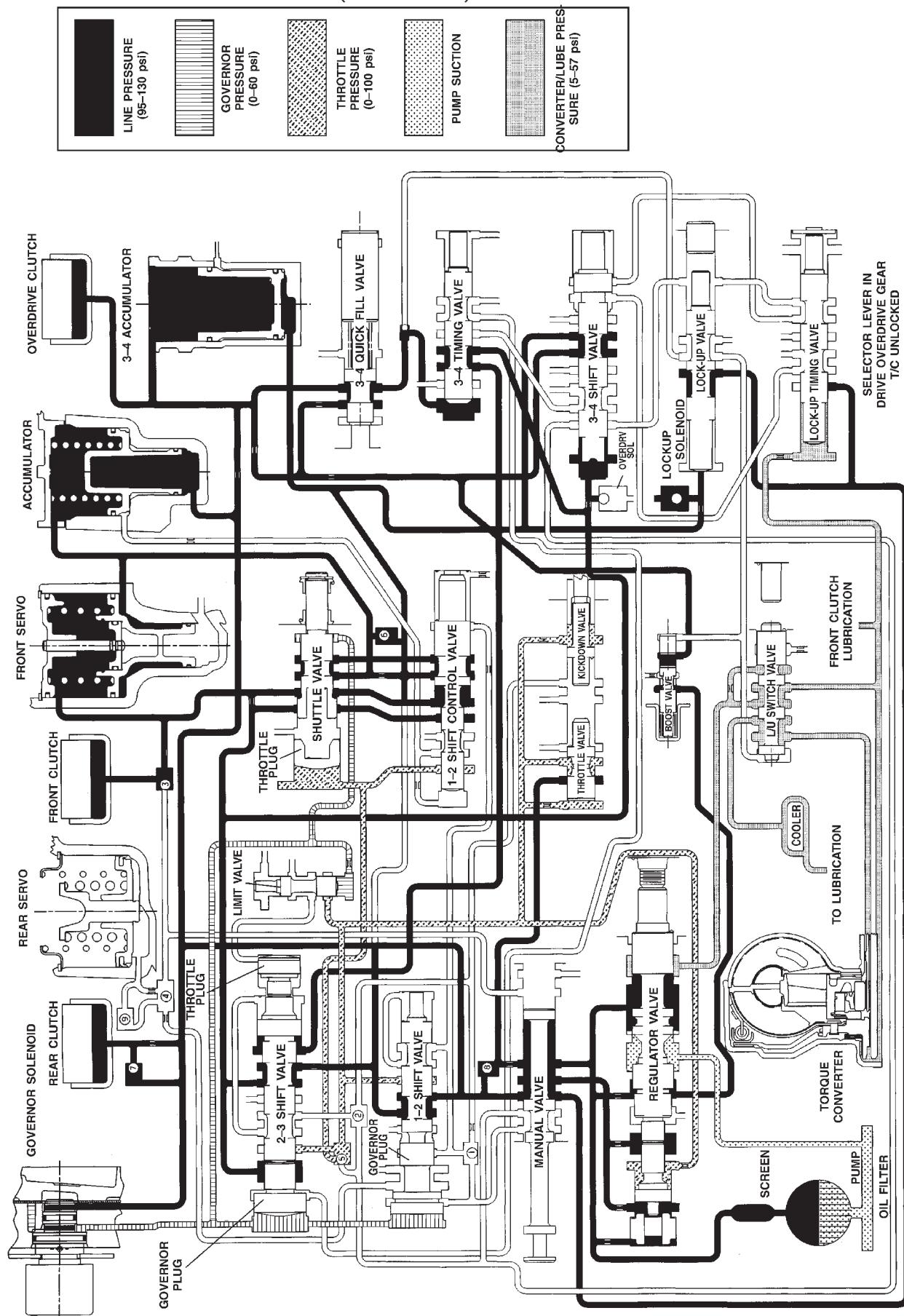
HYDRAULIC FLOW IN DRIVE THIRD GEAR (CONVERTER CLUTCH NOT APPLIED)

80abf185

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)

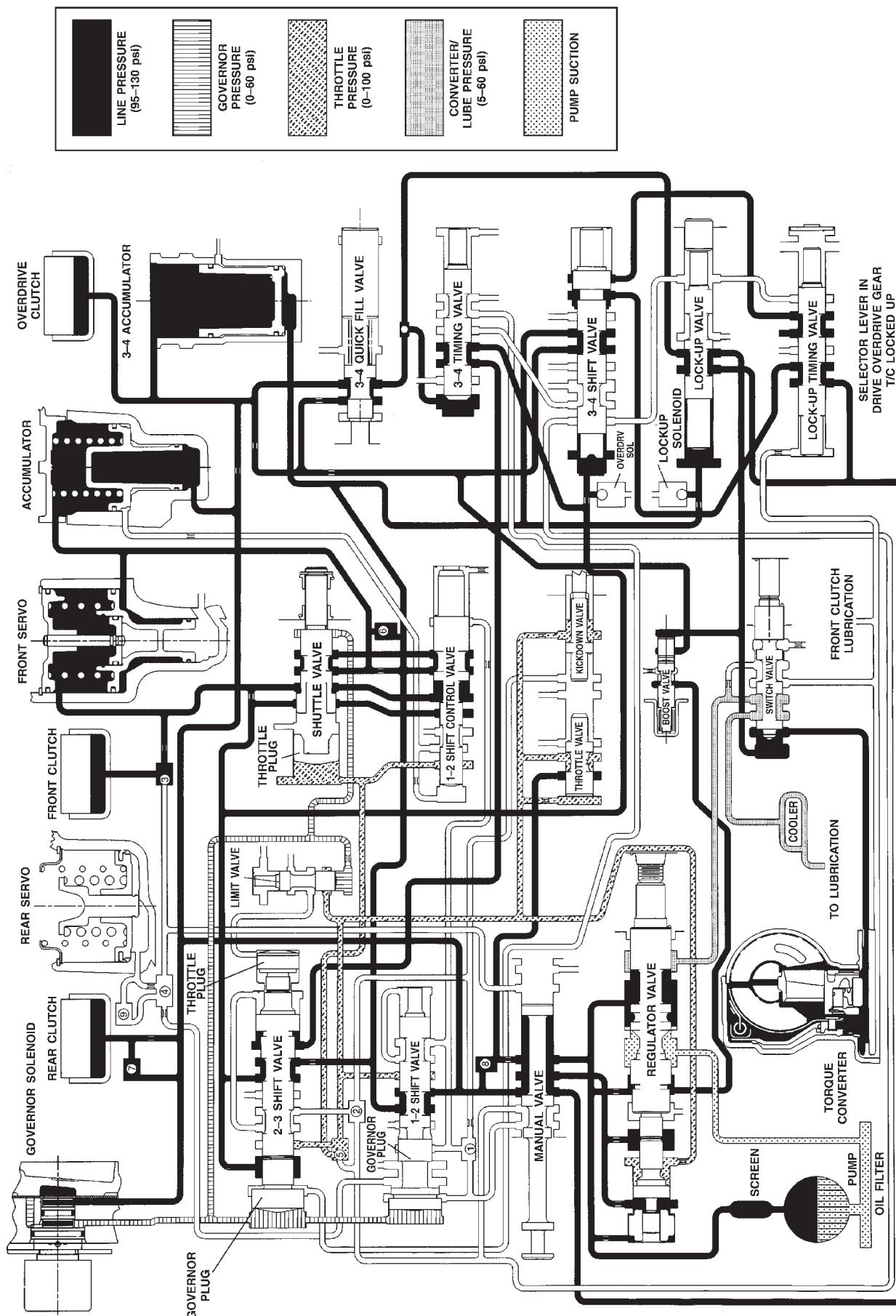


SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



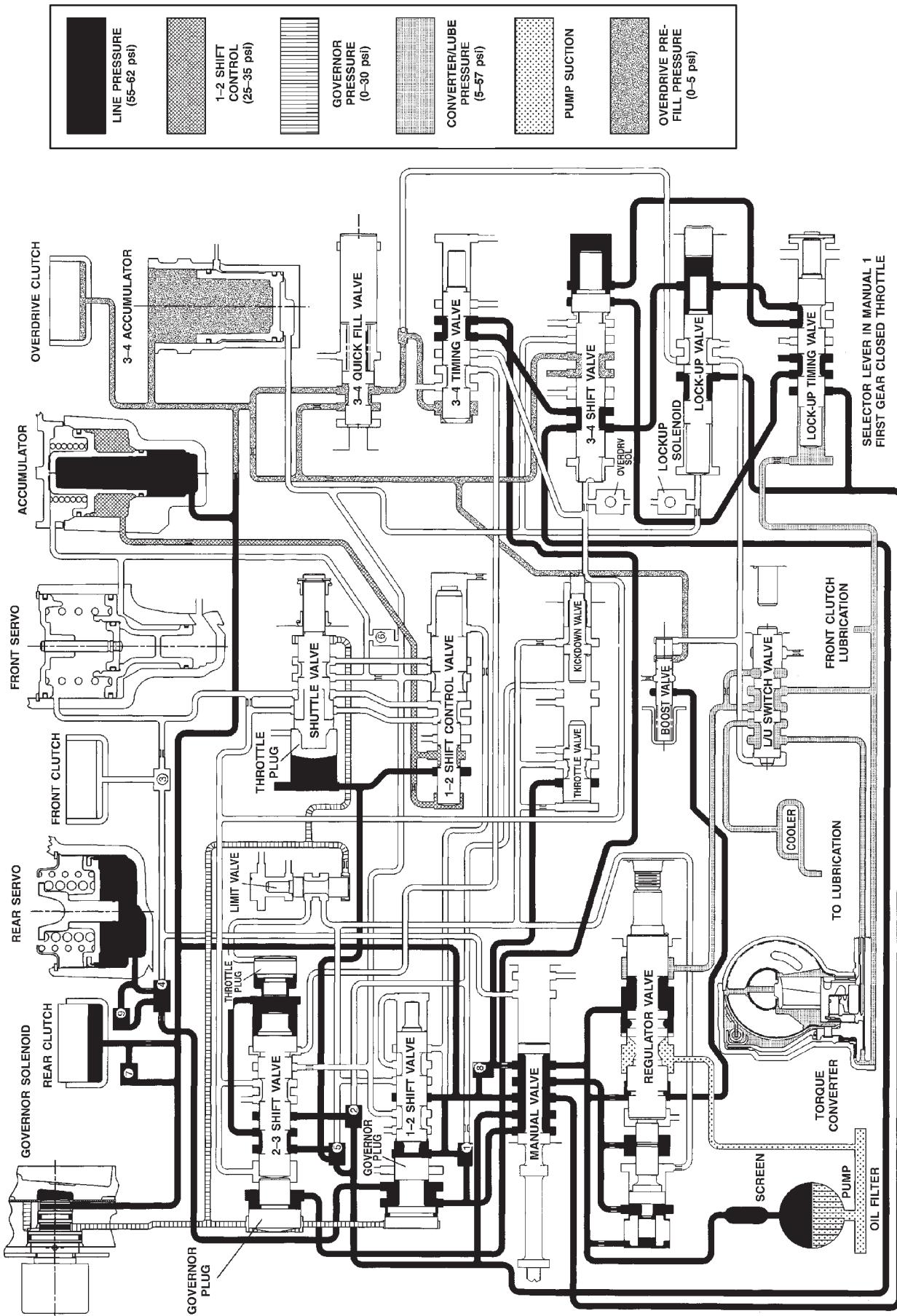
HYDRAULIC FLOW IN DRIVE FOURTH GEAR (CONVERTER CLUTCH NOT APPLIED)

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)

*HYDRAULIC FLOW IN DRIVE FOURTH GEAR (CONVERTER CLUTCH APPLIED)*

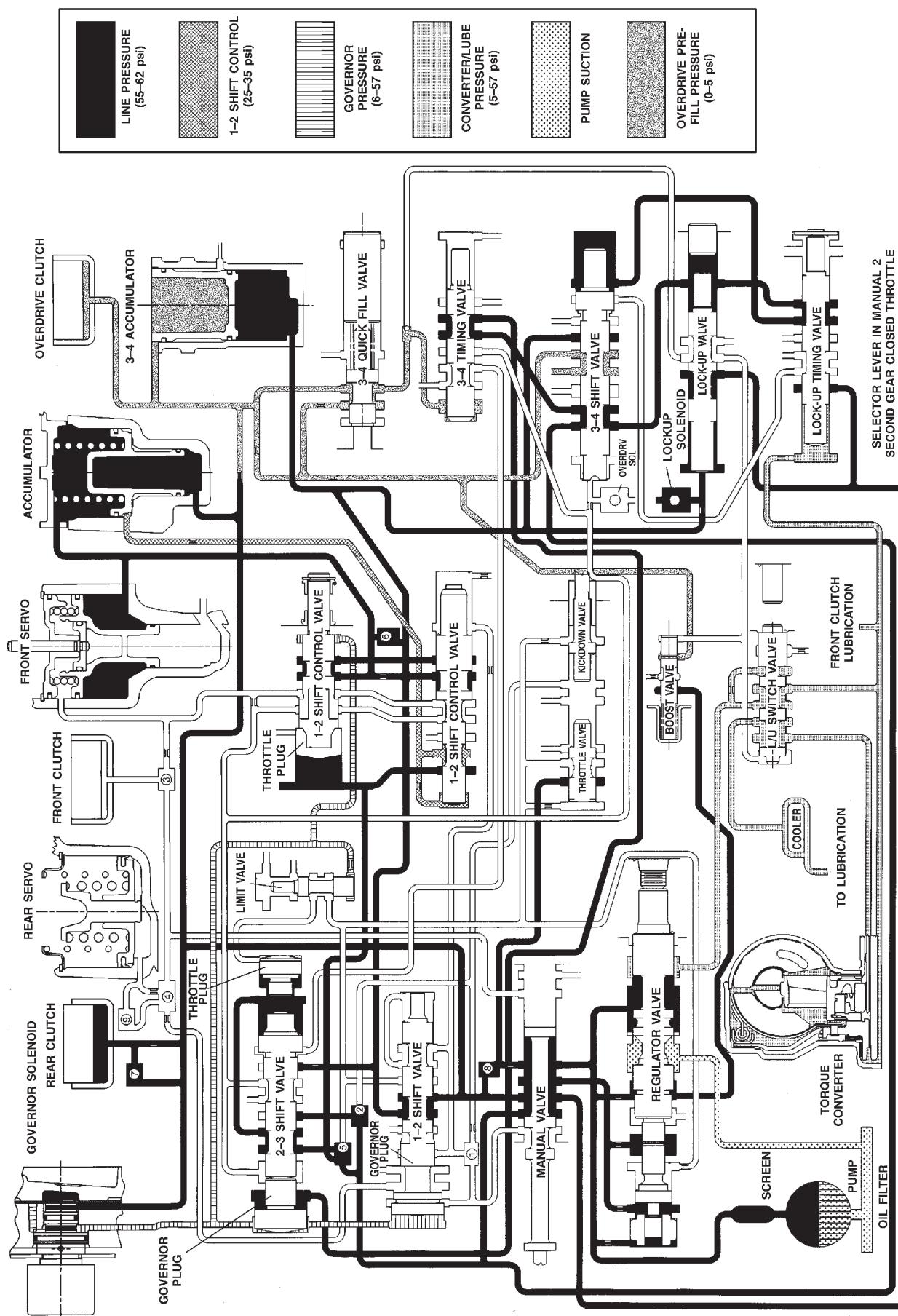
80abfd87

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



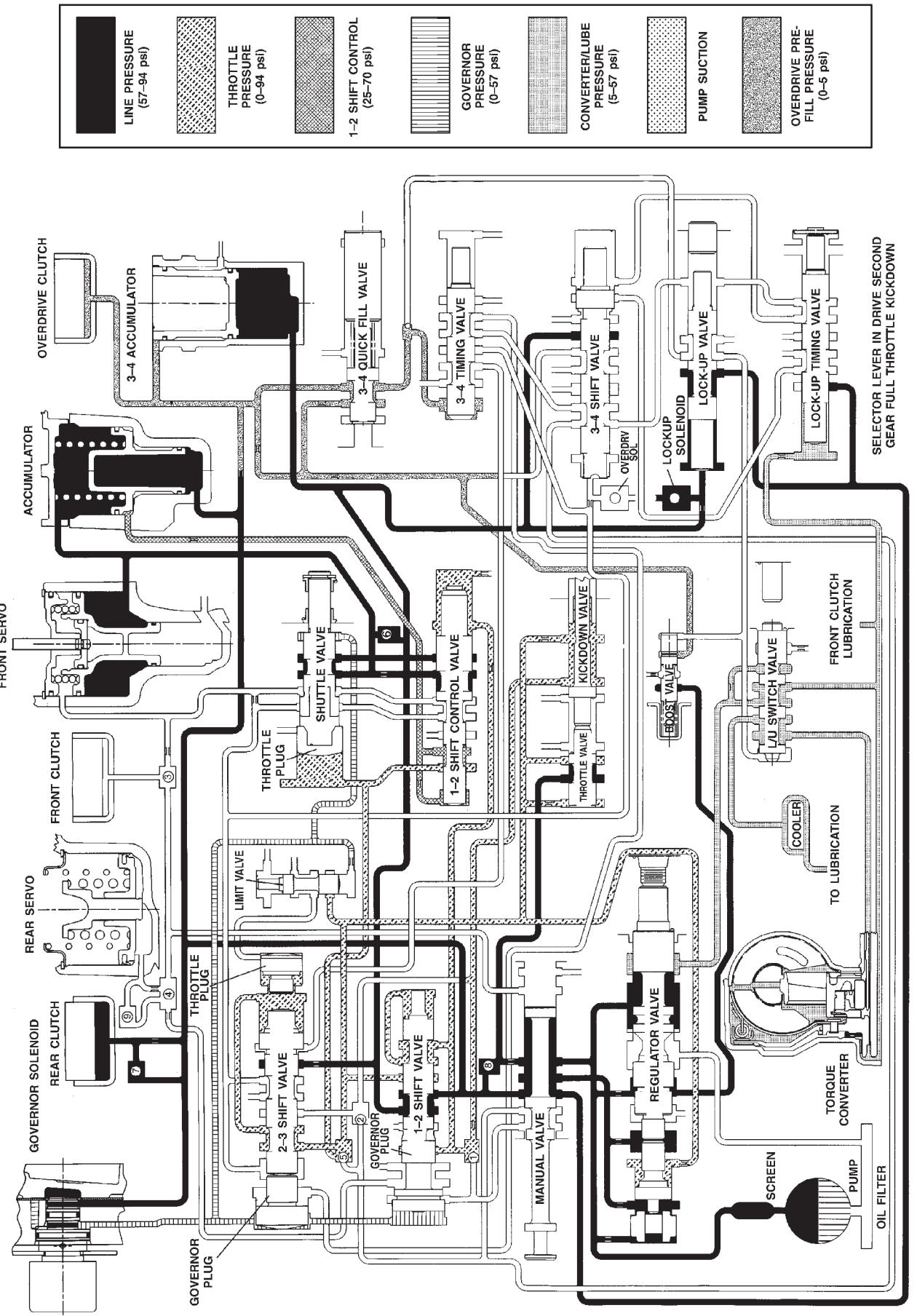
HYDRAULIC FLOW IN MANUAL LOW (1)

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



HYDRAULIC FLOW IN MANUAL SECOND (2)

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



HYDRAULIC FLOW DURING FULL THROTTLE 3-2 DOWNSHIFT (PASSING GEAR)

80acstd8a

SPECIFICATIONS**RE TRANSMISSION****GENERAL**

Oil pump gear tip clearance	0.089-0.190 mm	0.004-0.008 in.
Planetary end play	0.150-1.22 mm	0.006-0.048 in.
Input shaft end play	0.86-2.13 mm	0.034-0.084 in.
Clutch pack clearance/ Front 3-disc.	1.78-3.28mm	0.070-0.129 in.
Clutch pack clearance/ Rear 4-disc.	0.635-0.914 mm	0.025-0.036 in.
Overdrive clutch disc usage	4 discs	
Direct clutch disc usage	8 discs	
Front clutch spring usage	9 spring	
Band adjustment from 72 in. lbs.		
Front band	Back off 2-7/8 turns	
Rear band	Back off 2 turns	
Recommended fluid	Mopar® ATF Plus 3, type 7176	

TORQUE

DESCRIPTION	TORQUE
Bolt, torque convertor	31 N·m (23 ft. lbs.)
Bolt/nut, crossmember	68 N·m (50 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, driveplate to crankshaft . .	75 N·m (55 ft. lbs.)
Plug, front band reaction	17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.)
Locknut, front band adj.	34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.)
Switch, park/neutral	34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, fluid pan	17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, oil pump	20 N·m (15 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, overrunning clutch cam . . .	17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, O/D to trans.	34 N·m (25 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, O/D piston retainer	17 N·m (13 ft. lbs.)
Plug, pressure test port	14 N·m (10 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, reaction shaft support	20 N·m (15 ft. lbs.)
Locknut, rear band	41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.)
Screw, fluid filter	4 N·m (35 in. lbs.)
Bolt, valve body to case	12 N·m (100 in. lbs.)

SPECIFICATIONS (Continued)

THRUST WASHER/SPACER/SNAP RING DIMENSIONS

Front clutch thrust washer (reaction shaft support hub)	1.55 mm 2.15 mm	0.061 in. 0.084 in. 0.102 in.
Rear clutch thrust washer (clutch retainer)	1.55 mm	0.061 in.
Output shaft thrust plate (output shaft pilot hub)	1.5-1.6 mm	0.060-0.063 in.
Output shaft thrust washer (rear clutch hub)	1.3-1.4 mm 1.75-1.8 mm 2.1-2.2 mm	0.052-0.054 in. 0.068-0.070 in. 0.083-0.085 in.
Rear clutch pack snap ring	1.5-1.6 mm 1.9-1.95 mm	0.060-0.062 in. 0.074-0.076 in.
Planetary geartrain snap ring (at front of output shaft)	1.4-1.5 mm 1.6-1.7 mm	0.055-0.059 in. 0.062-0.066 in.

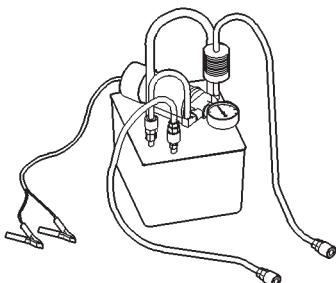
Overdrive piston thrust plate	Thrust plate and spacer are select fit components. Refer to size charts and selection procedures in Overdrive Unit disassembly and assembly section.
Intermediate shaft spacer	

PRESSURE TEST

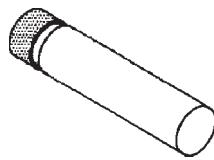
Overdrive clutch	Fourth gear only	Pressure should be 469-496 kPa (68-72 psi) with closed throttle and increase to 620-896 kPa (90-130 psi) at 1/2 to 3/4 throttle.
Line pressure (at accumulator)	Closed throttle	372-414 kPa (54-60 psi).
Front servo	Third gear only	No more than 21 kPa (3 psi) lower than line pressure.
Rear servo	1 range R range	No more than 21 kPa (3 psi) lower than line pressure. 1103 kPa (160 psi) at idle, builds to 1862 kPa (270 psi) at 1600 rpm.
Governor	D range closed throttle	Pressure should respond smoothly to changes in mph and return to 0-7 kPa (0-1.5 psi) when stopped with transmission in D, 1, 2. Pressure above 7 kPa (1.5 psi) at stand still will prevent transmission from downshifting.

SPECIAL TOOLS

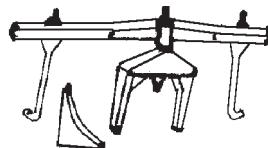
RE TRANSMISSION



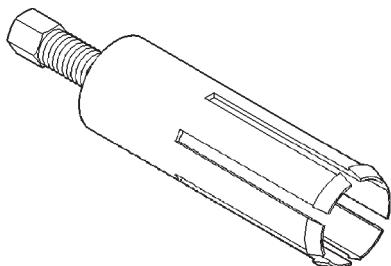
Oil Cooler Flusher—6906



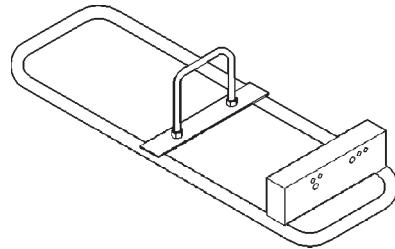
Gauge Block—6312



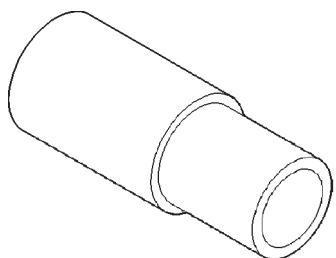
Fixture, Engine Support—C-3487-A



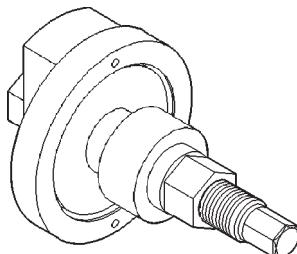
Remover—6957



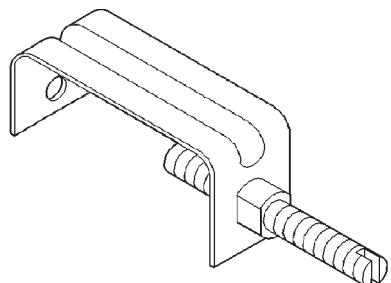
Transmission Repair Stand—C-3750-B



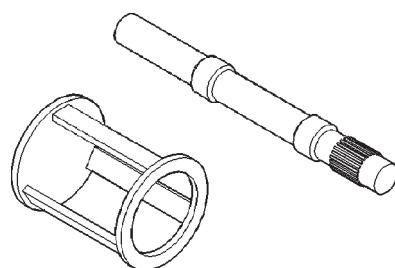
Installer—6951



Spring Compressor—C-3863-A

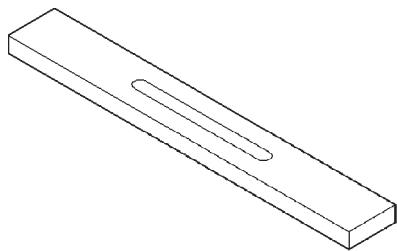


Retainer, Detent Ball and Spring—6583

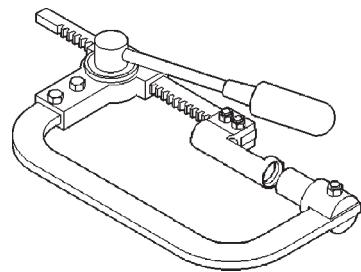


Spring Compressor and Alignment Shaft—6227

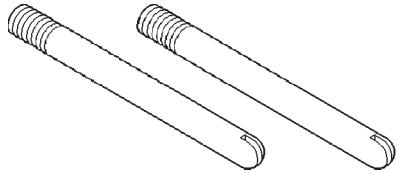
SPECIAL TOOLS (Continued)



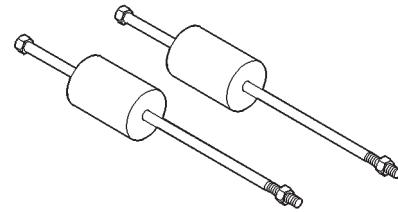
Gauge Bar—6311



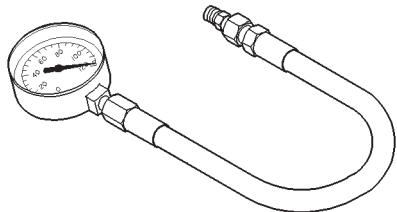
Spring Compressor—C-3422-B



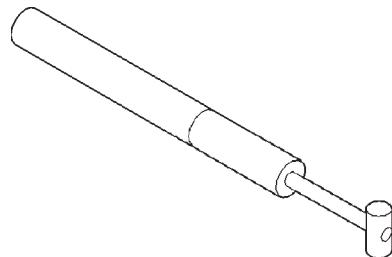
Extension Housing Pilot—C-3288-B



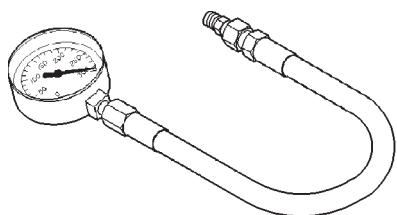
Puller, Slide Hammer—C-3752



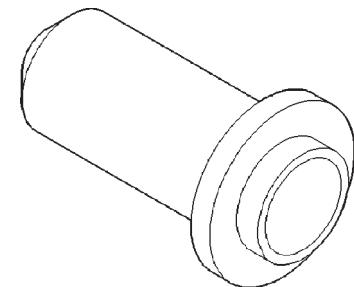
Pressure Gauge—C-3292



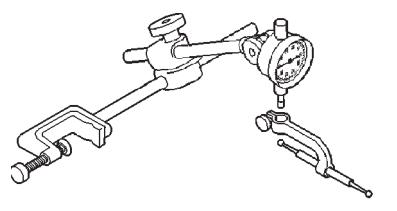
Gauge, Throttle Setting—C-3763



Pressure Gauge—C-3293SP



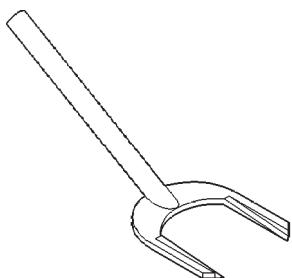
Seal Installer—C-3860-A



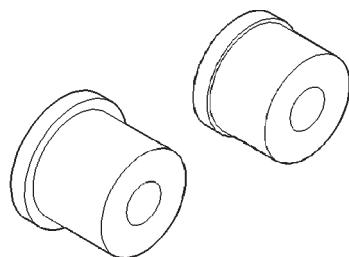
Dial Indicator—C-3339

8011d420

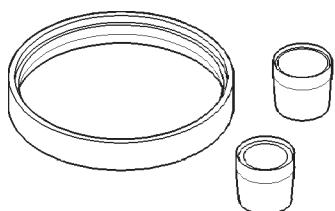
SPECIAL TOOLS (Continued)



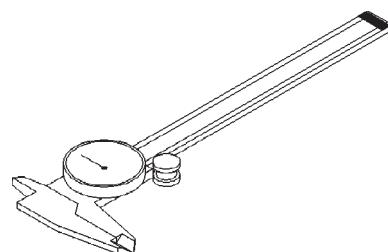
Seal Remover—C-3985-B



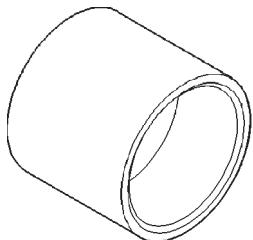
Remover/Installer—C-4470



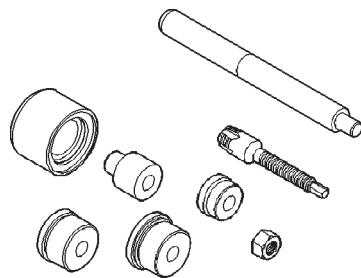
Overdrive Piston Seal Installer—C-8114



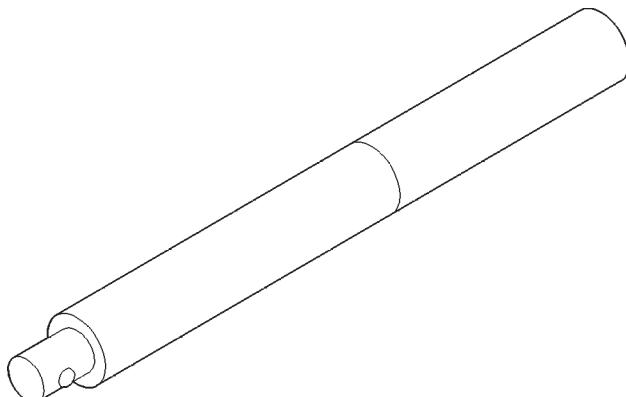
Dial Caliper—C-4962



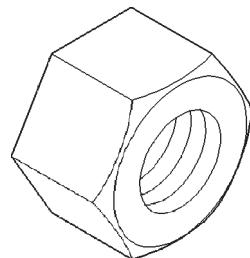
Installer—C-3995-A



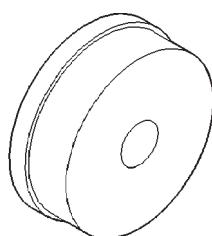
Bushing Remover/Installer Set—C-3887-J



Universal Handle—C-4171

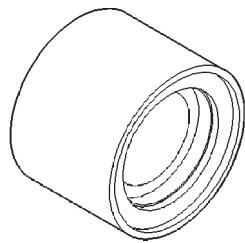


Nut, Bushing Remover—SP-1191, From kit C-3887-J

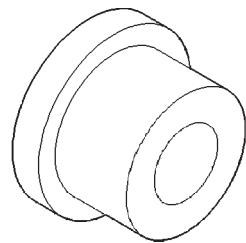


Remover, Front Clutch Bushing—SP-3629, From kit C-3887-J

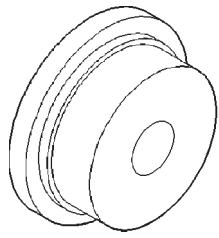
SPECIAL TOOLS (Continued)



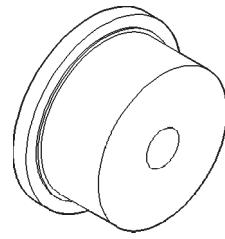
Cup, Bushing Remover—SP-3633, From kit C-3887-J



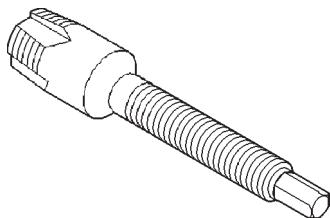
Installer, Reaction Shaft Bushing—SP-5302, From kit C-3887-J



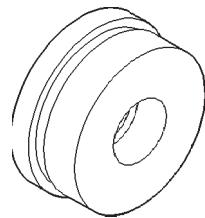
Installer, Oil Pump Bushing—SP-5118, From kit C-3887-J



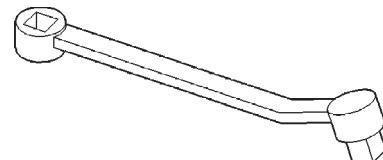
Installer, Front Clutch Bushing—SP-5511, From kit C-3887-J



Remover, Reaction Shaft Bushing—SP-5301, From kit C-3887-J



Remover, Bushing—SP-3550, From kit C-3887-J



Adapter, Band Adjuster—C-3705

45RFE AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page	page
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION		
45RFE AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION.....	417	
FLUID	418	
TORQUE CONVERTER	418	
ELECTRONICALLY MODULATED CONVERTER CLUTCH ENGAGEMENT.....	423	
OIL PUMP	423	
VALVE BODY.....	424	
PISTONS	427	
INPUT CLUTCHES.....	428	
HOLDING CLUTCHES	431	
PLANETARY GEARTRAIN	433	
GEARSHIFT MECHANISM.....	435	
OVERDRIVE OFF SWITCH	435	
TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE	435	
SOLENOID AND PRESSURE SWITCH ASSEMBLY	438	
BATTERY FEED (TCM).....	438	
TRANSMISSION CONTROL RELAY	438	
PRESSURE SWITCHES.....	438	
INPUT AND OUTPUT SPEED SENSORS	439	
LINE PRESSURE CONTROL	439	
THROTTLE POSITION SENSOR	439	
TRANSMISSION RANGE SENSOR.....	439	
TRANSMISSION TEMPERATURE SENSOR	440	
SOLENOIDS.....	440	
SOLENOID SWITCH VALVE.....	440	
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING		
EFFECTS OF INCORRECT FLUID LEVEL	440	
CAUSES OF BURNT FLUID	441	
FLUID CONTAMINATION	441	
45RFE AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION GENERAL DIAGNOSIS	441	
PRELIMINARY DIAGNOSIS	441	
GEARSHIFT CABLE	442	
ROAD TESTING	442	
HYDRAULIC PRESSURE TEST	443	
AIR TESTING TRANSMISSION CLUTCH OPERATION	444	
CONVERTER HOUSING FLUID LEAK DIAGNOSIS.....	444	
SERVICE PROCEDURES		
FLUID LEVEL CHECK	445	
FLUID AND FILTER REPLACEMENT	445	
TRANSMISSION FILL PROCEDURE.....	446	
OIL PUMP VOLUME CHECK	447	
FLUSHING COOLERS AND TUBES	447	
TRANSMISSION QUICK LEARN PROCEDURE	447	
ALUMINUM THREAD REPAIR	448	
REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION		
INPUT SPEED SENSOR.....	448	
OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR.....	448	
LINE PRESSURE SENSOR	449	
VALVE BODY	449	
SOLENOID AND PRESSURE SWITCH ASSEMBLY	450	
TRANSMISSION.....	450	
TORQUE CONVERTER	453	
OIL PUMP FRONT SEAL	453	
ADAPTER HOUSING SEAL	453	
GEARSHIFT CABLE.....	454	
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY		
TRANSMISSION.....	455	
VALVE BODY	464	
OIL PUMP	467	
INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY.....	470	
4C RETAINER/BULKHEAD	474	
PLANETARY GEAR SET	476	
LOW/REVERSE CLUTCH.....	478	
CLEANING AND INSPECTION		
VALVE BODY	479	
TRANSMISSION.....	480	
LOW/REVERSE CLUTCH ASSEMBLY	481	
ACCUMULATOR.....	481	
OIL PUMP AND REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT	481	
PLANETARY GEARTRAIN	481	
ADJUSTMENTS		
GEARSHIFT CABLE	482	
SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS		
HYDRAULIC SCHEMATICS	482	
SPECIFICATIONS		
TRANSMISSION.....	502	
SPECIAL TOOLS		
45RFE TRANSMISSION	502	

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION

45RFE AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

DESCRIPTION

The 45RFE automatic transmission is a sophisticated, multi-range, electronically controlled transmission which combines optimized gear ratios for responsive performance, state of the art efficiency features and low NVH. Other features include driver adaptive shifting and three planetary gear sets to provide wide ratio capability with precise ratio steps for optimum driveability. The three planetary gear sets also make available a unique alternate second gear ratio. The primary 2nd gear ratio fits between 1st and 3rd gears for normal through-gear accelerations. The alternate second gear ratio (2prime) allows smoother 4-2 kickdowns at high speeds to provide 2nd gear passing performance over a wider highway cruising range.

The hydraulic portion of the transmission consists of the transmission fluid, fluid passages, hydraulic valves, and various line pressure control components.

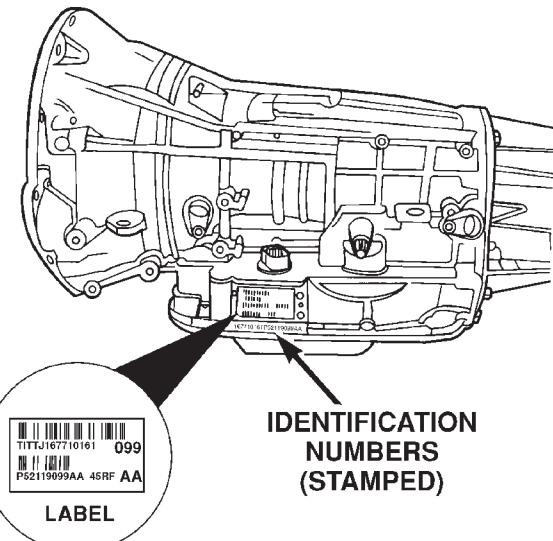
The primary mechanical components of the transmission consist of the following:

- Three multiple disc input clutches
- Three multiple disc holding clutches
- Five hydraulic accumulators
- Three planetary gear sets
- Dual Stage Hydraulic oil pump
- Valve body
- Solenoid pack

The TCM is the "heart" or "brain" of the electronic control system and relies on information from various direct and indirect inputs (sensors, switches, etc.) to determine driver demand and vehicle operating conditions. With this information, the TCM can calculate and perform timely and quality shifts through various output or control devices (solenoid pack, transmission control relay, etc.).

TRANSMISSION IDENTIFICATION

Transmission identification numbers are stamped on the left side of the case just above the oil pan gasket surface (Fig. 1). Refer to this information when ordering replacement parts. A label is attached to the transmission case above the stamped numbers. The label gives additional information which may also be necessary for identification purposes.



80b9a596

Fig. 1 Transmission Part And Serial Number Location

GEAR RATIOS

The 45RFE gear ratios are:

1st	3.00:1
2nd	1.67:1
2nd Prime	1.50:1
3rd	1.00:1
4th	0.75:1
Reverse	3.00:1

OPERATION

The 45RFE offers full electronic control of all automatic up and downshifts, and features real-time adaptive closed-loop shift and pressure control. Electronic shift and torque converter clutch controls help protect the transmission from damage due to high temperatures, which can occur under severe operating conditions. By altering shift schedules, line pressure, and converter clutch control, these controls reduce heat generation and increase transmission cooling.

To help reduce efficiency-robbing parasitic losses, the transmission includes a dual-stage transmission fluid pump with electronic output pressure control. Under most driving conditions, pump output pressure greatly exceeds that which is needed to keep the clutches applied. The 45RFE pump-pressure control system monitors input torque and adjusts the pump

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

pressure accordingly. The primary stage of the pump works continuously; the second stage is bypassed when demand is low. The control system also monitors input and output speed and, if incipient clutch slip is observed, the pressure control solenoid duty cycle is varied, increasing pressure in proportion to demand.

A high-travel torque converter damper assembly allows earlier torque converter clutch engagement to reduce slippage. Needle-type thrust bearings reduce internal friction. The 45RFE is packaged in a one-piece die-cast aluminum case. To reduce NVH, the case has high lateral, vertical and torsional stiffness. It is also designed to maximize the benefit of the structural dust cover that connects the bottom of the bell housing to the engine bedplate, enhancing overall power train stiffness. Dual filters protect the pump and other components. A pump return filter is added to the customary main sump filter. Independent lubrication and cooler circuits assure ample pressure for normal transmission operation even if the cooler is obstructed or the fluid cannot flow due to extremely low temperatures.

The hydraulic control system design (without electronic assist) provides the transmission with PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, SECOND, and THIRD gears, based solely on driver shift lever selection. This design allows the vehicle to be driven (in "limp-in" mode) in the event of a electronic control system failure, or a situation that the Transmission Control Module (TCM) recognizes as potentially damaging to the transmission.

The TCM also performs certain self-diagnostic functions and provides comprehensive information (sensor data, DTC's, etc.) which is helpful in proper diagnosis and repair. This information can be viewed with the DRB scan tool.

FLUID

NOTE: Refer to the maintenance schedules in Group 0, Lubrication and Maintenance for the recommended maintenance (fluid/filter change) intervals for this transmission.

NOTE: Refer to Service Procedures in this group for fluid level checking procedures.

DESCRIPTION

Mopar® ATF Plus 3, Type 7176, automatic transmission fluid is the recommended fluid for Daimler-Chrysler automatic transmissions.

Dexron II fluid IS NOT recommended. Clutch chatter can result from the use of improper fluid.

Mopar® ATF Plus 3, Type 7176, automatic transmission fluid when new is red in color. The ATF is dyed red so it can be identified from other fluids used in the vehicle such as engine oil or antifreeze. The red color is not permanent and is not an indicator of fluid condition. As the vehicle is driven, the ATF will begin to look darker in color and may eventually become brown. **This is normal.** A dark brown/black fluid accompanied with a burnt odor and/or deterioration in shift quality may indicate fluid deterioration or transmission component failure.

FLUID ADDITIVES

DaimlerChrysler strongly recommends against the addition of any fluids to the transmission, other than those automatic transmission fluids listed above. Exceptions to this policy are the use of special dyes to aid in detecting fluid leaks.

Various "special" additives and supplements exist that claim to improve shift feel and/or quality. These additives and others also claim to improve converter clutch operation and inhibit overheating, oxidation, varnish, and sludge. These claims have not been supported to the satisfaction of DaimlerChrysler and these additives **must not be used.** The use of transmission "sealers" should also be avoided, since they may adversely affect the integrity of transmission seals.

OPERATION

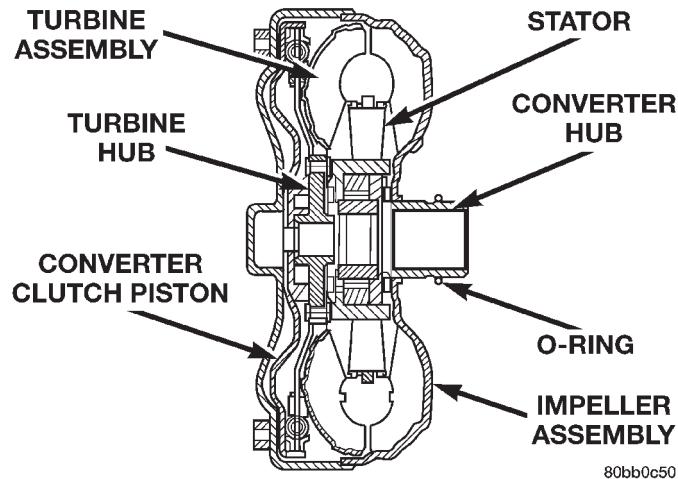
The automatic transmission fluid is selected based upon several qualities. The fluid must provide a high level of protection for the internal components by providing a lubricating film between adjacent metal components. The fluid must also be thermally stable so that it can maintain a consistent viscosity through a large temperature range. If the viscosity stays constant through the temperature range of operation, transmission operation and shift feel will remain consistent. Transmission fluid must also be a good conductor of heat. The fluid must absorb heat from the internal transmission components and transfer that heat to the transmission case.

TORQUE CONVERTER

DESCRIPTION

The torque converter (Fig. 2) is a hydraulic device that couples the engine crankshaft to the transmission. The torque converter consists of an outer shell with an internal turbine, a stator, an overrunning clutch, an impeller and an electronically applied converter clutch. The converter clutch provides reduced engine speed and greater fuel economy when engaged. Clutch engagement also provides reduced transmission fluid temperatures. The converter

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

**Fig. 2 Torque Converter Assembly**

clutch engages in third gear. The torque converter hub drives the transmission oil (fluid) pump and contains an o-ring seal to better control oil flow.

The torque converter is a sealed, welded unit that is not repairable and is serviced as an assembly.

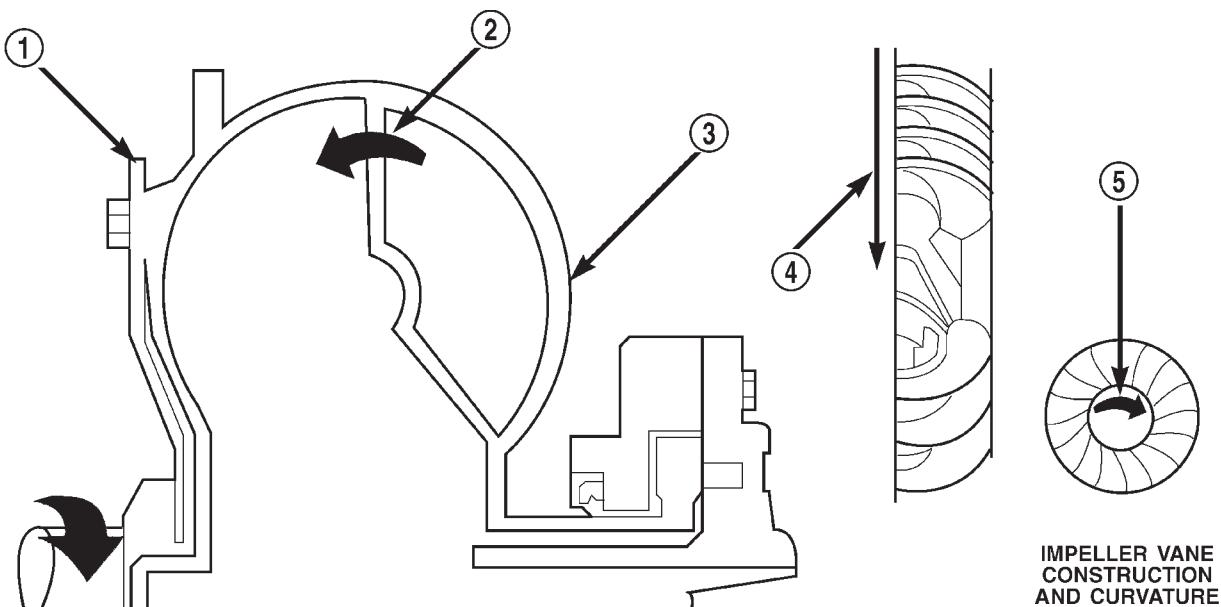
CAUTION: The torque converter must be replaced if a transmission failure resulted in large amounts of metal or fiber contamination in the fluid. If the fluid is contaminated, flush the fluid cooler and lines.

IMPELLER

The impeller (Fig. 3) is an integral part of the converter housing. The impeller consists of curved blades placed radially along the inside of the housing on the transmission side of the converter. As the converter housing is rotated by the engine, so is the impeller, because they are one and the same and are the driving member of the system.

TURBINE

The turbine (Fig. 4) is the output, or driven, member of the converter. The turbine is mounted within the housing opposite the impeller, but is not attached to the housing. The input shaft is inserted through the center of the impeller and splined into the turbine. The design of the turbine is similar to the

**Fig. 3 Impeller**

80bfe26a

1 – ENGINE FLEXPLATE

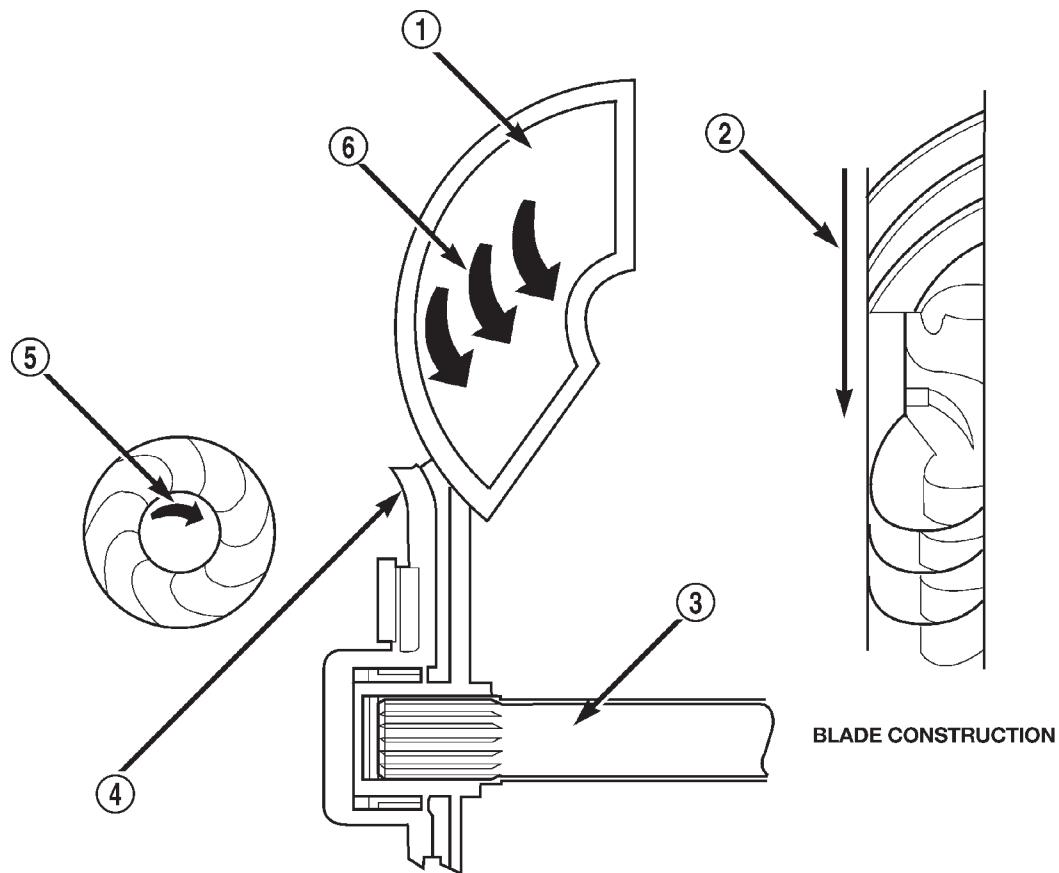
2 – OIL FLOW FROM IMPELLER SECTION INTO TURBINE SECTION

3 – IMPELLER VANES AND COVER ARE INTEGRAL

4 – ENGINE ROTATION

5 – ENGINE ROTATION

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80bfe26b

Fig. 4 Turbine

- 1 – TURBINE VANE
 2 – ENGINE ROTATION
 3 – INPUT SHAFT

- 4 – PORTION OF TORQUE CONVERTER COVER
 5 – ENGINE ROTATION
 6 – OIL FLOW WITHIN TURBINE SECTION

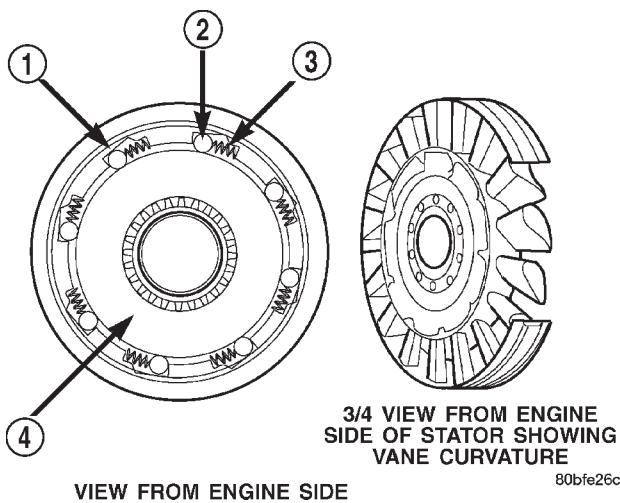
impeller, except the blades of the turbine are curved in the opposite direction.

STATOR

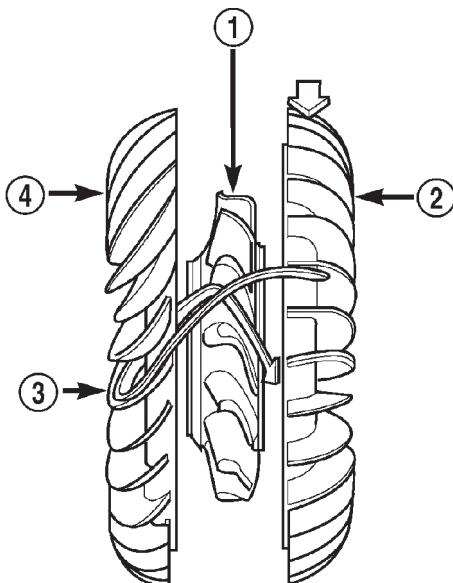
The stator assembly (Fig. 5) is mounted on a stationary shaft which is an integral part of the oil pump. The stator is located between the impeller and

turbine within the torque converter case (Fig. 6). The stator contains an over-running clutch, which allows the stator to rotate only in a clockwise direction. When the stator is locked against the over-running clutch, the torque multiplication feature of the torque converter is operational.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

**Fig. 5 Stator Components**

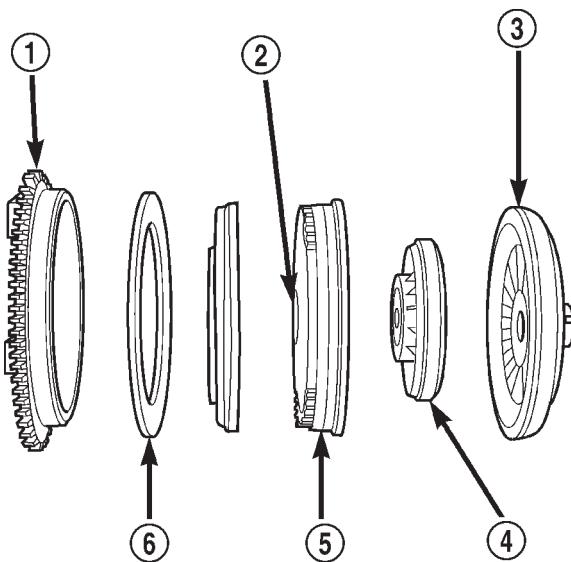
- 1 – CAM (OUTER RACE)
- 2 – ROLLER
- 3 – SPRING
- 4 – INNER RACE

**Fig. 6 Stator Location**

- 1 – STATOR
- 2 – IMPELLER
- 3 – FLUID FLOW
- 4 – TURBINE

TORQUE CONVERTER CLUTCH (TCC)

The TCC (Fig. 7) was installed to improve the efficiency of the torque converter that is lost to the slippage of the fluid coupling. Although the fluid coupling provides smooth, shock-free power transfer, it is natural for all fluid couplings to slip. If the impeller and turbine were mechanically locked together, a zero slippage condition could be obtained. A hydraulic piston was added to the turbine, and a friction material was added to the inside of the front cover to provide this mechanical lock-up.

**Fig. 7 Torque Converter Clutch (TCC)**

- 1 – IMPELLER FRONT COVER
- 2 – THRUST WASHER ASSEMBLY
- 3 – IMPELLER
- 4 – STATOR
- 5 – TURBINE
- 6 – FRICTION DISC

OPERATION

The converter impeller (Fig. 8) (driving member), which is integral to the converter housing and bolted to the engine drive plate, rotates at engine speed. The converter turbine (driven member), which reacts from fluid pressure generated by the impeller, rotates and turns the transmission input shaft.

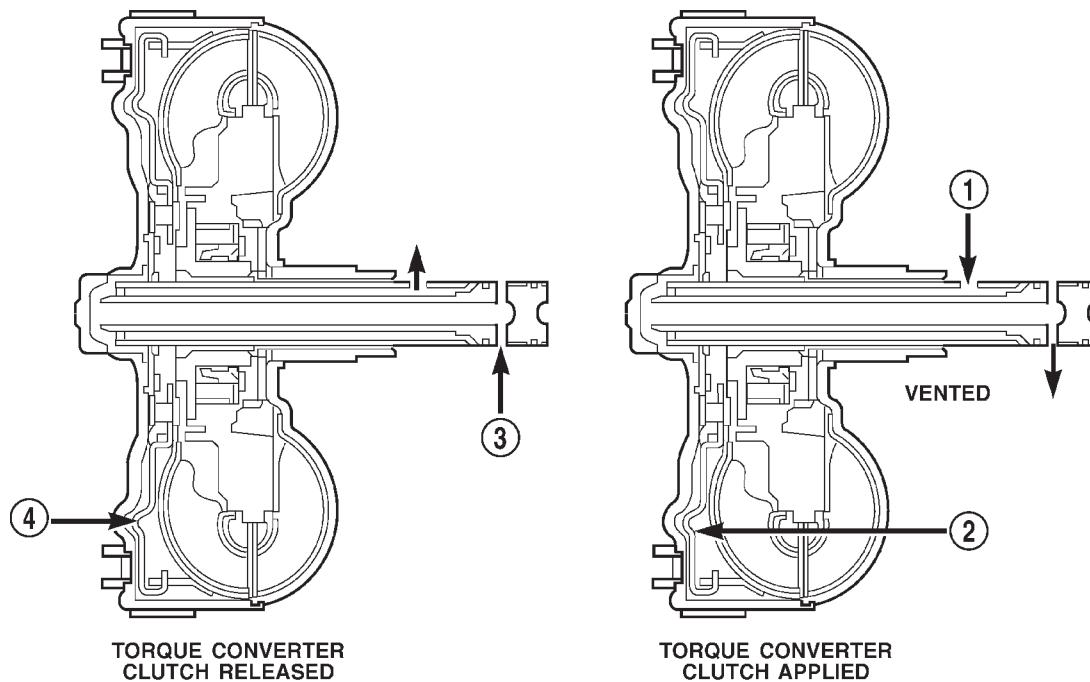


Fig. 8 Torque Converter Fluid Operation

80bfe27e

- 1 – APPLY PRESSURE
2 – THE PISTON MOVES SLIGHTLY FORWARD

- 3 – RELEASE PRESSURE
4 – THE PISTON MOVES SLIGHTLY REARWARD

TURBINE

As the fluid that was put into motion by the impeller blades strikes the blades of the turbine, some of the energy and rotational force is transferred into the turbine and the input shaft. This causes both of them (turbine and input shaft) to rotate in a clockwise direction following the impeller. As the fluid is leaving the trailing edges of the turbine's blades it continues in a "hindering" direction back toward the impeller. If the fluid is not redirected before it strikes the impeller, it will strike the impeller in such a direction that it would tend to slow it down.

STATOR

Torque multiplication is achieved by locking the stator's over-running clutch to its shaft (Fig. 9). Under stall conditions (the turbine is stationary), the oil leaving the turbine blades strikes the face of the stator blades and tries to rotate them in a counter-clockwise direction. When this happens the over-running clutch of the stator locks and holds the stator from rotating. With the stator locked, the oil strikes the stator blades and is redirected into a "helping" direction before it enters the impeller. This circulation of oil from impeller to turbine, turbine to stator, and stator to impeller, can produce a maximum torque multiplication of about 2.4:1. As the turbine begins to match the speed of the impeller, the fluid

that was hitting the stator in such a way as to cause it to lock-up is no longer doing so. In this condition of operation, the stator begins to free wheel and the converter acts as a fluid coupling.

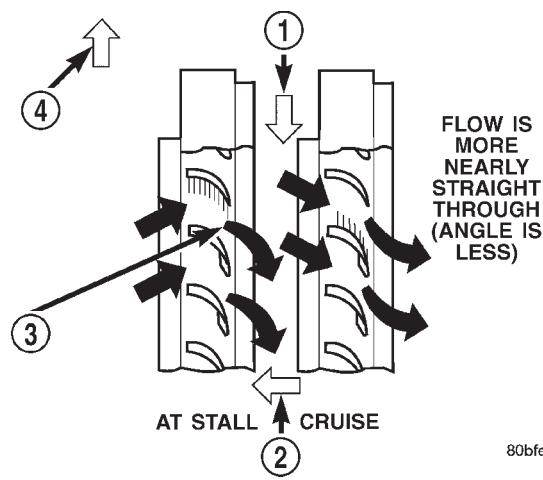


Fig. 9 Stator Operation

80bfe26e

- 1 – DIRECTION STATOR WILL FREE WHEEL DUE TO OIL PUSHING ON BACKSIDE OF VANES
2 – FRONT OF ENGINE
3 – INCREASED ANGLE AS OIL STRIKES VANES
4 – DIRECTION STATOR IS LOCKED UP DUE TO OIL PUSHING AGAINST STATOR VANES

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

TORQUE CONVERTER CLUTCH (TCC)

In a standard torque converter, the impeller and turbine are rotating at about the same speed and the stator is freewheeling, providing no torque multiplication. By applying the turbine's piston to the front cover's friction material, a total converter engagement can be obtained. The result of this engagement is a direct 1:1 mechanical link between the engine and the transmission.

Converter clutch engagement in third or fourth gear range is controlled by sensor inputs to the powertrain control module. Inputs that determine clutch engagement are: coolant temperature, engine rpm, vehicle speed, throttle position, and manifold vacuum. The torque converter clutch is engaged by the clutch solenoid on the valve body. The clutch can be engaged in third and fourth gear ranges depending on overdrive control switch position. If the overdrive control switch is in the normal ON position, the clutch will engage after the shift to fourth gear, and above approximately 72 km/h (45 mph). If the control switch is in the OFF position, the clutch will engage after the shift to third gear, at approximately 56 km/h (35 mph) at light throttle.

ELECTRONICALLY MODULATED CONVERTER CLUTCH ENGAGEMENT

DESCRIPTION

In order to reduce heat build-up in the transmission and buffer the powertrain against torsional vibrations, the TCM can duty cycle the L/R-CC Solenoid to achieve a smooth application of the torque converter clutch. This function, referred to as Electronically Modulated Converter Clutch (EMCC) can occur at various times depending on the following variables:

- Shift lever position
- Current gear range
- Transmission fluid temperature
- Engine coolant temperature
- Input speed
- Throttle angle
- Engine speed

OPERATION

The TCM controls the torque converter by way of internal logic software. The programming of the software provides the TCM with control over the L/R-CC Solenoid. There are four output logic states that can be applied as follows:

- No EMCC
- Partial EMCC
- Full EMCC
- Gradual-to-no EMCC

NO EMCC

Under No EMCC conditions, the L/R Solenoid is OFF. There are several conditions that can result in NO EMCC operations. No EMCC can be initiated due to a fault in the transmission or because the TCM does not see the need for EMCC under current driving conditions.

PARTIAL EMCC

Partial EMCC operation modulates the L/R Solenoid (duty cycle) to obtain partial torque converter clutch application. Partial EMCC operation is maintained until Full EMCC is called for and actuated. During Partial EMCC some slip does occur. Partial EMCC will usually occur at low speeds, low load and light throttle situations.

FULL EMCC

During Full EMCC operation, the TCM increases the L/R Solenoid duty cycle to full ON after Partial EMCC control brings the engine speed within the desired slip range of transmission input speed relative to engine rpm.

GRADUAL-TO-NO EMCC

This operation is to soften the change from Full or Partial EMCC to No EMCC. This is done at mid-throttle by decreasing the L/R Solenoid duty cycle.

OIL PUMP

DESCRIPTION

The oil pump (Fig. 10) is located at the front of the transmission inside the bell housing and behind the transmission front cover. The oil pump consists of two independent pumps (Fig. 11), a number of valves (Fig. 12), a front seal (Fig. 13), and a bolt on reaction shaft. The converter clutch switch and regulator valves, pressure regulator valve, and converter pressure limit valve are all located in the oil pump housing.

OPERATION

As the torque converter rotates, the converter hub rotates the oil pump drive gear. As the drive gear rotates both driven gears, the clearance between the gear teeth increases in the crescent area, and creates a suction at the inlet side of the pump. This suction draws fluid through the pump inlet from the oil pan. As the clearance between the gear teeth in the crescent area decreases, it forces pressurized fluid into the pump outlet and to the oil pump valves.

At low speeds, both pumps supply fluid to the transmission. As the speed of the torque converter increases, the pressure output of both pumps increases until the primary pump pressure reaches

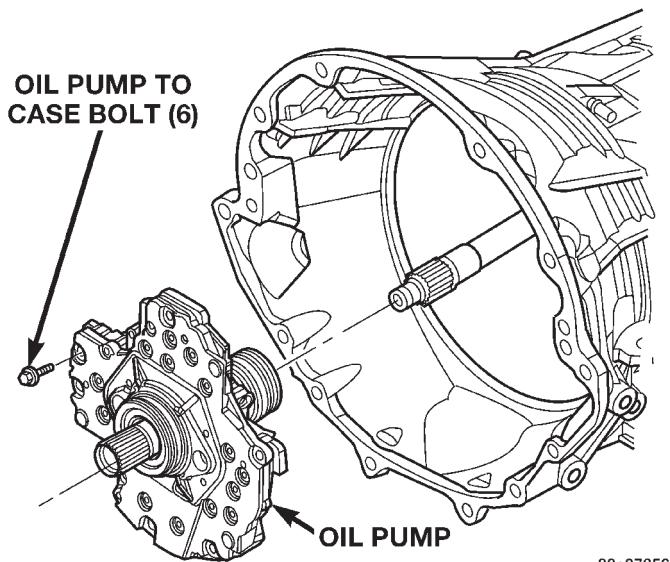


Fig. 10 Oil Pump

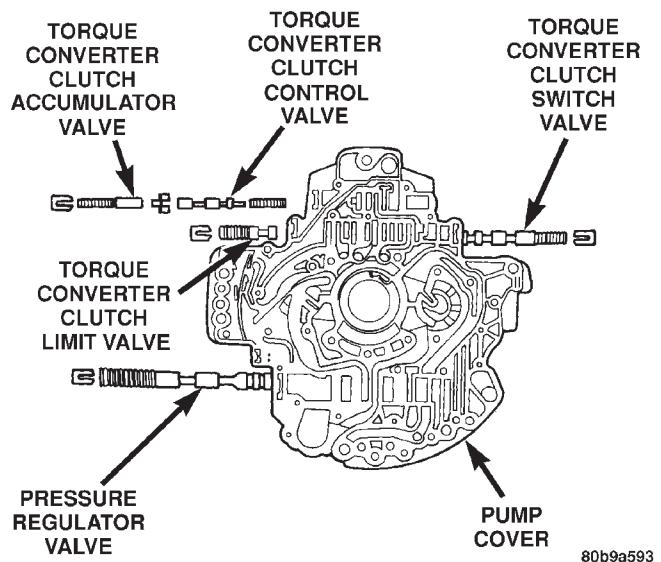


Fig. 12 Oil Pump Valves

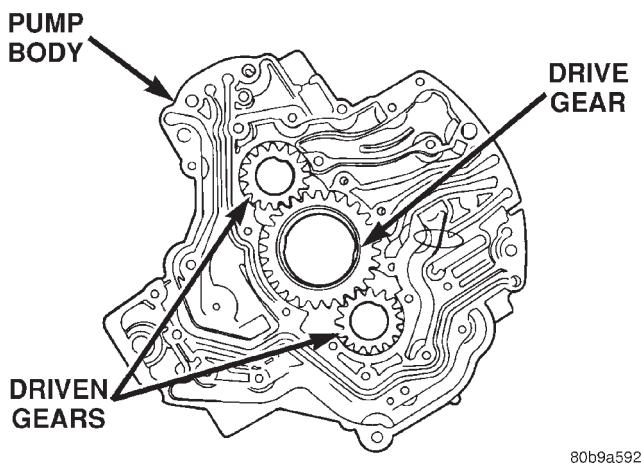


Fig. 11 Oil Pump Gears

the point where it can close off the check valve located between the two pumps. When the check valve is closed, the secondary pump is shut down and the primary pump supplies all the fluid to the transmission.

CONVERTER CLUTCH SWITCH VALVE

The converter clutch switch valve is used to control the hydraulic pressure supplied to the front (OFF) side of the torque converter clutch.

CONVERTER CLUTCH REGULATOR VALVE

The converter clutch regulator valve is used to control the hydraulic pressure supplied to the back (ON) side of the torque converter clutch.

TORQUE CONVERTER LIMIT VALVE

The torque converter limit valve serves to limit the available line pressure to the torque converter clutch to approximately 120 psi.

VALVE BODY

DESCRIPTION

The valve body consists of a cast aluminum valve body, a separator plate, and a transfer plate. The valve body contains valves and check balls that control fluid delivery to the torque converter clutch, bands, and frictional clutches. The valve body contains the following components (Fig. 14) and (Fig. 15):

- Solenoid switch valve
- Manual valve
- Low/reverse switch valve
- 5 Accumulators
- 7 check balls

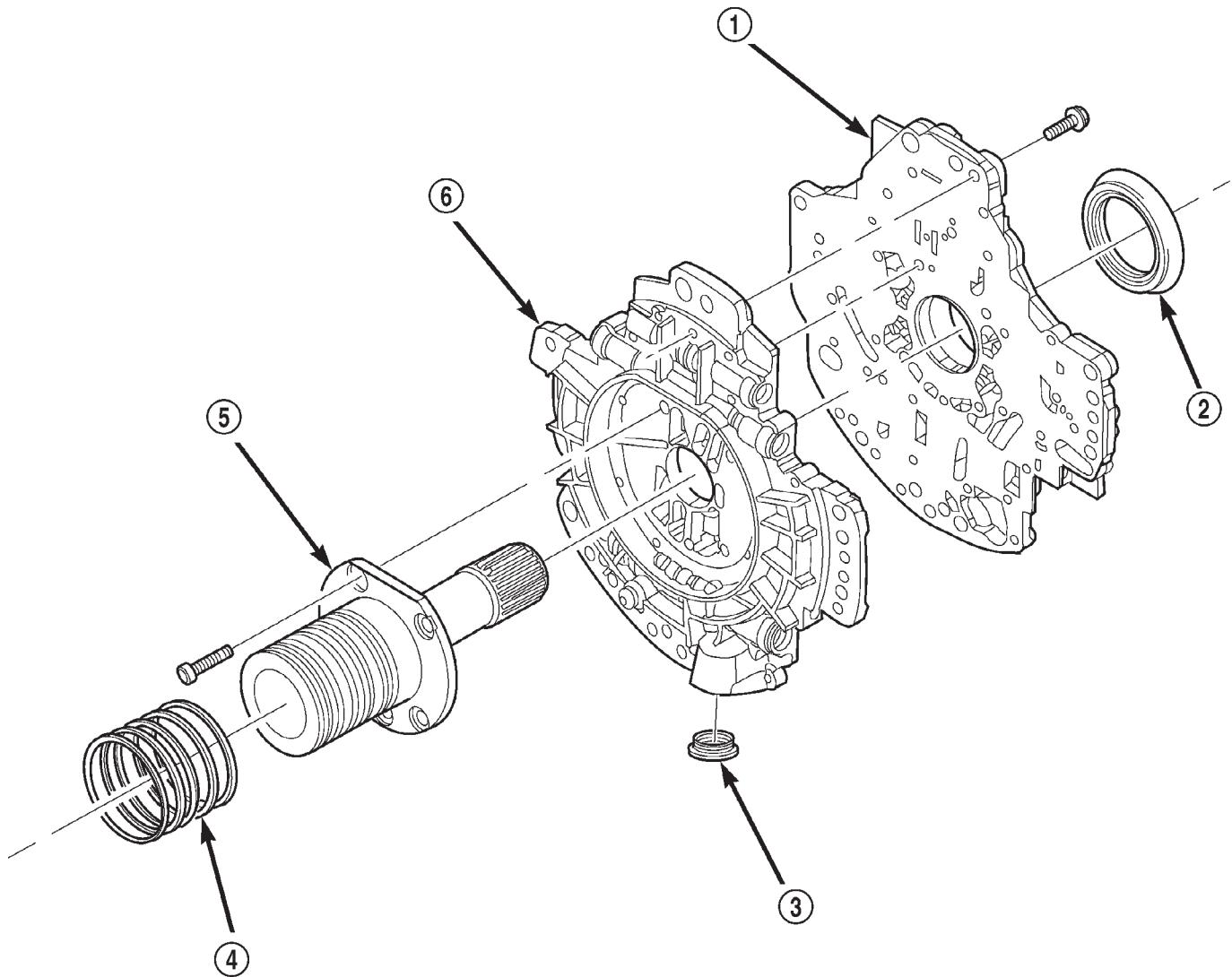
OPERATION

NOTE: Refer to the Hydraulic Schematics for a visual aid in determining valve location, operation and design.

SOLENOID SWITCH VALVE

The Solenoid Switch Valve (SSV) controls the direction of the transmission fluid when the L/R-TCC solenoid is energized.

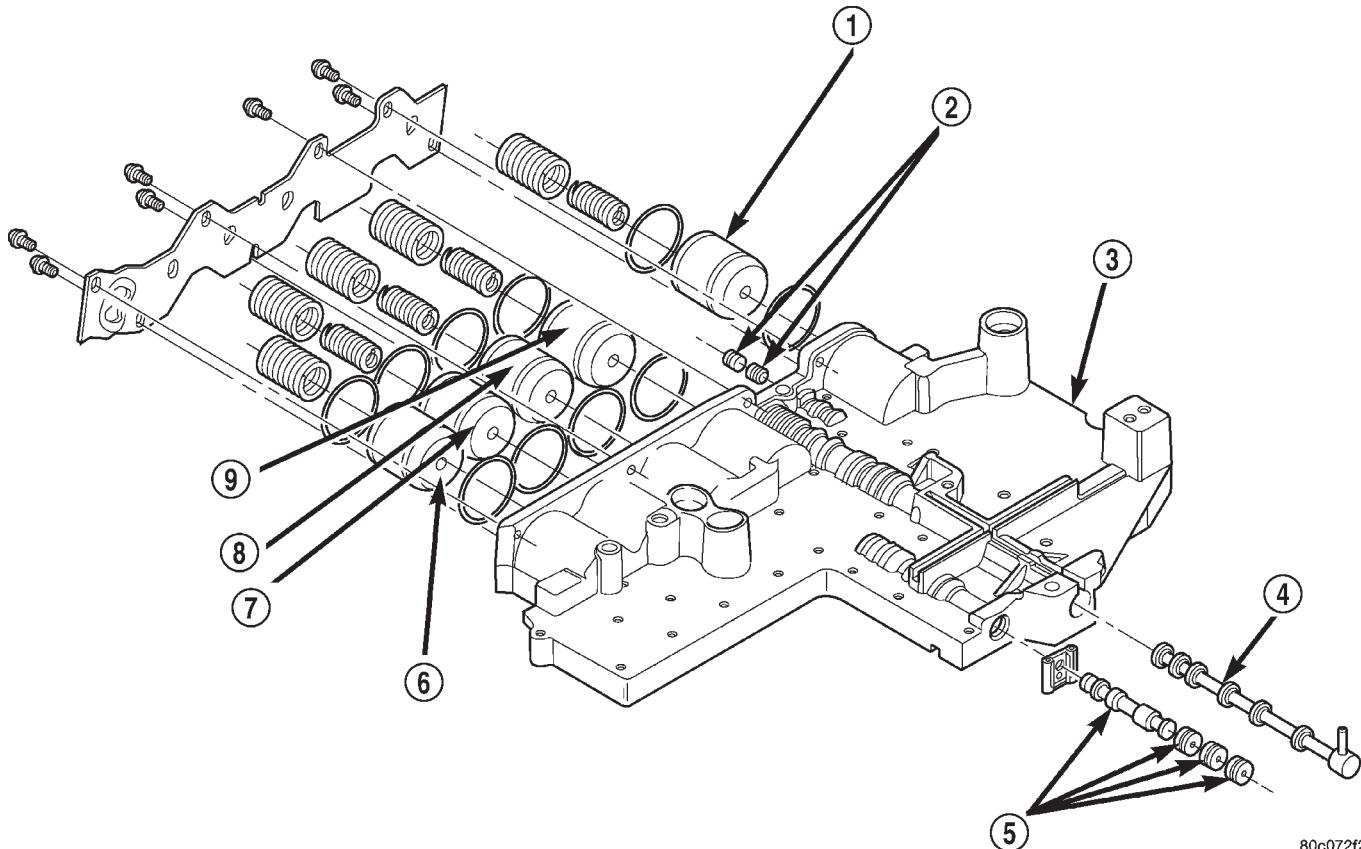
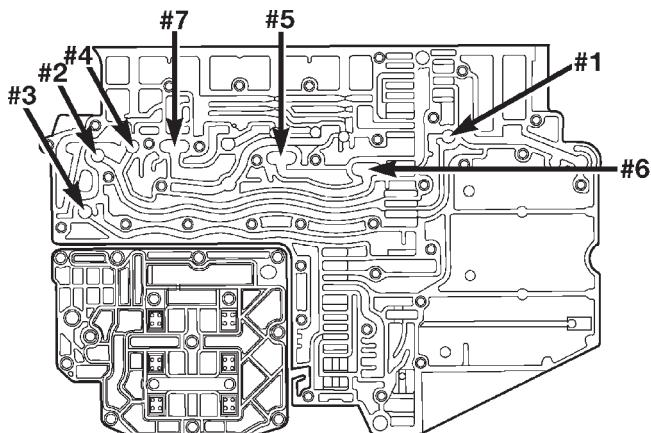
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c07011

Fig. 13 Oil Pump Reaction Shaft and Seal

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

**Fig. 14 Valve Body Components****Fig. 15 Check Ball Locations**

The Solenoid Switch Valve controls line pressure from the LR-TCC solenoid. In 1st gear, the SSV will be in the downshifted position, thus directing fluid to the L/R clutch circuit. In 2nd, 3rd, and 4th, it will be in the upshifted position and directs the fluid into the torque converter clutch (TCC) circuit.

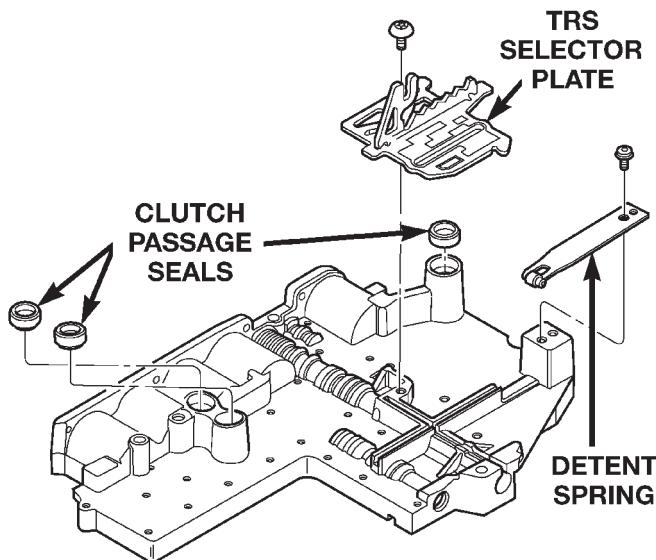
When shifting into 1st gear, a special hydraulic sequence is performed to ensure SSV movement into the downshifted position. The L/R pressure switch is monitored to confirm SSV movement. If the movement is not confirmed (the L/R pressure switch does not close), 2nd gear is substituted for 1st. A DTC will be set after three unsuccessful attempts are made to get into 1st gear in one given key start.

MANUAL VALVE

The manual valve is a relay valve. The purpose of the manual valve is to direct fluid to the correct circuit needed for a specific gear or driving range. The manual valve, as the name implies, is manually operated by the driver with a lever located on the top of the valve body. The valve is connected mechanically by a cable to the gearshift mechanism. The valve is held in each of its positions by a roller detent spring

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

(Fig. 16) that engages the "roostercomb" of the TRS selector plate.



80c072f3

Fig. 16 TRS Selector Plate and Detent Spring

LOW/REVERSE SWITCH VALVE

Allows the low/reverse clutch to be operated by either the LR/CC solenoid or the MS solenoid.

PISTONS

DESCRIPTION

There are several sizes and types of pistons used in an automatic transmission. Some pistons are used to apply clutches, while others are used to apply bands. They all have in common the fact that they are round or circular in shape, located within a smooth walled cylinder, which is closed at one end and converts fluid pressure into mechanical movement. The fluid pressure exerted on the piston is contained within the system through the use of piston rings or seals.

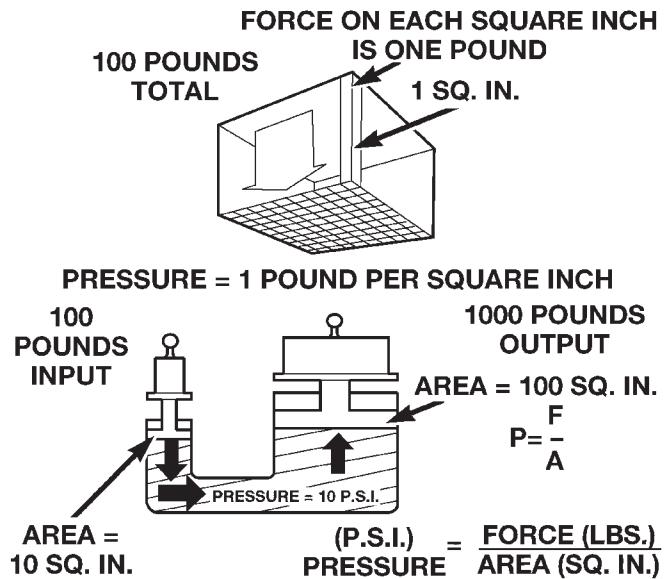
OPERATION

The principal which makes this operation possible is known as Pascal's Law. Pascal's Law can be stated as: "Pressure on a confined fluid is transmitted equally in all directions and acts with equal force on equal areas."

PRESSURE

Pressure (Fig. 17) is nothing more than force (lbs.) divided by area (in or ft.), or force per unit area. Given a 100 lb. block and an area of 100 sq. in. on the floor, the pressure exerted by the block is: 100

lbs. 100 in or 1 pound per square inch, or PSI as it is commonly referred to.



FORCE ON LARGE PISTON = 1000 LBS.

80bfe272

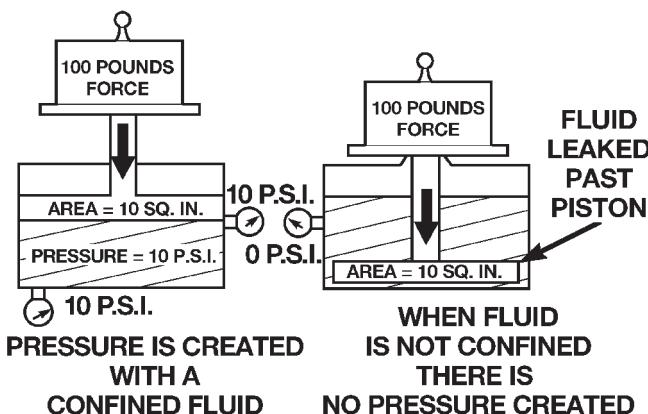
Fig. 17 Force and Pressure Relationship

PRESSURE ON A CONFINED FLUID

Pressure is exerted on a confined fluid (Fig. 18) by applying a force to some given area in contact with the fluid. A good example of this is a cylinder filled with fluid and equipped with a piston that is closely fitted to the cylinder wall. If a force is applied to the piston, pressure will be developed in the fluid. Of course, no pressure will be created if the fluid is not confined. It will simply "leak" past the piston. There must be a resistance to flow in order to create pressure. Piston sealing is extremely important in hydraulic operation. Several kinds of seals are used to accomplish this within a transmission. These include but are not limited to O-rings, D-rings, lip seals, sealing rings, or extremely close tolerances between the piston and the cylinder wall. The force exerted is downward (gravity), however, the principle remains the same no matter which direction is taken. The pressure created in the fluid is equal to the force applied, divided by the piston area. If the force is 100 lbs., and the piston area is 10 sq. in., then the pressure created equals 10 PSI. Another interpretation of Pascal's Law is that regardless of container shape or size, the pressure will be maintained throughout, as long as the fluid is confined. In other words, the pressure in the fluid is the same everywhere within the container.

FORCE MULTIPLICATION

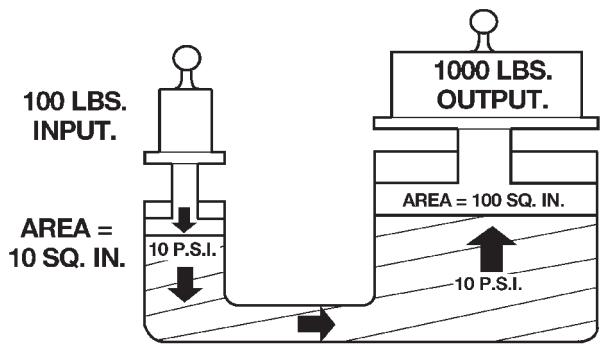
Using the 10 PSI example used in the illustration (Fig. 19), a force of 1000 lbs. can be moved with a



80bfe273

Fig. 18 Pressure on a Confined Fluid

force of only 100 lbs. The secret of force multiplication in hydraulic systems is the total fluid contact area employed. The illustration, (Fig. 19), shows an area that is ten times larger than the original area. The pressure created with the smaller 100 lb. input is 10 PSI. The concept "pressure is the same everywhere" means that the pressure underneath the larger piston is also 10 PSI. Pressure is equal to the force applied divided by the contact area. Therefore, by means of simple algebra, the output force may be found. This concept is extremely important, as it is also used in the design and operation of all shift valves and limiting valves in the valve body, as well as the pistons, of the transmission, which activate the clutches and bands. It is nothing more than using a difference of area to create a difference in pressure to move an object.



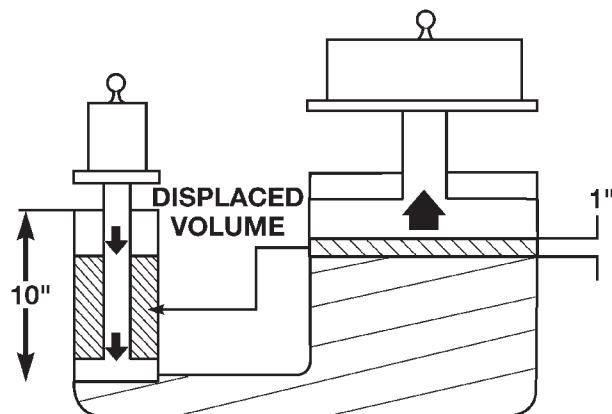
80bfe274

Fig. 19 Force Multiplication

PISTON TRAVEL

The relationship between hydraulic lever and a mechanical lever is the same. With a mechanical lever it's a weight-to-distance output rather than a

pressure-to-area output. Using the same forces and areas as in the previous example, the smaller piston (Fig. 20) has to move ten times the distance required to move the larger piston one inch. Therefore, for every inch the larger piston moves, the smaller piston moves ten inches. This principle is true in other instances also. A common garage floor jack is a good example. To raise a car weighing 2000 lbs., an effort of only 100 lbs. may be required. For every inch the car moves upward, the input piston at the jack handle must move 20 inches downward.



80bfe275

Fig. 20 Piston Travel

INPUT CLUTCHES

DESCRIPTION

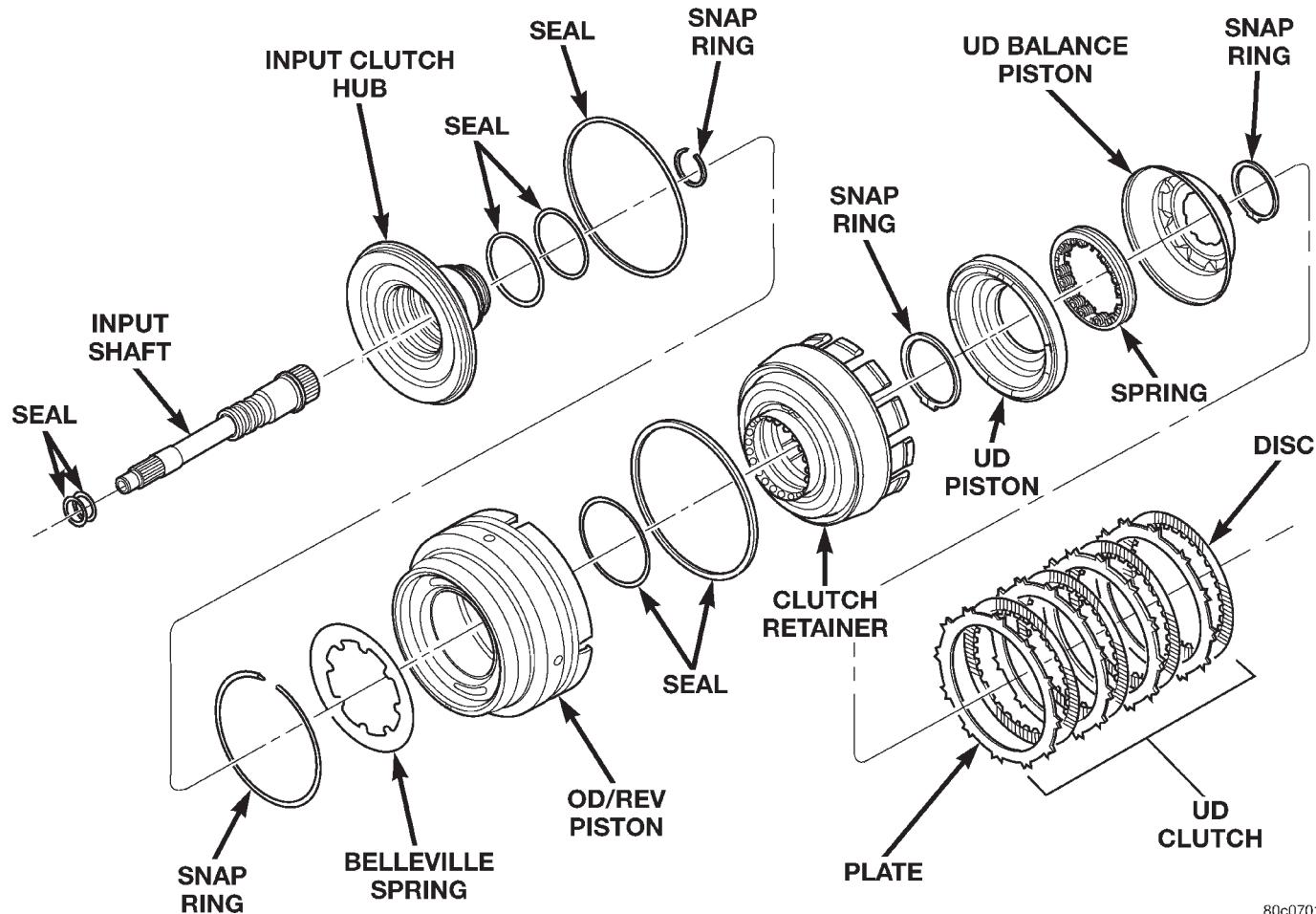
Three hydraulically applied input clutches are used to drive planetary components. The underdrive, overdrive, and reverse clutches are considered input clutches and are contained within the input clutch assembly (Fig. 21) and (Fig. 22). The input clutch assembly also contains:

- Input shaft
- Input hub
- Clutch retainer
- Underdrive piston
- Overdrive/reverse piston
- Overdrive hub
- Underdrive hub

OPERATION

The three input clutches are responsible for driving different components of the planetary geartrain.

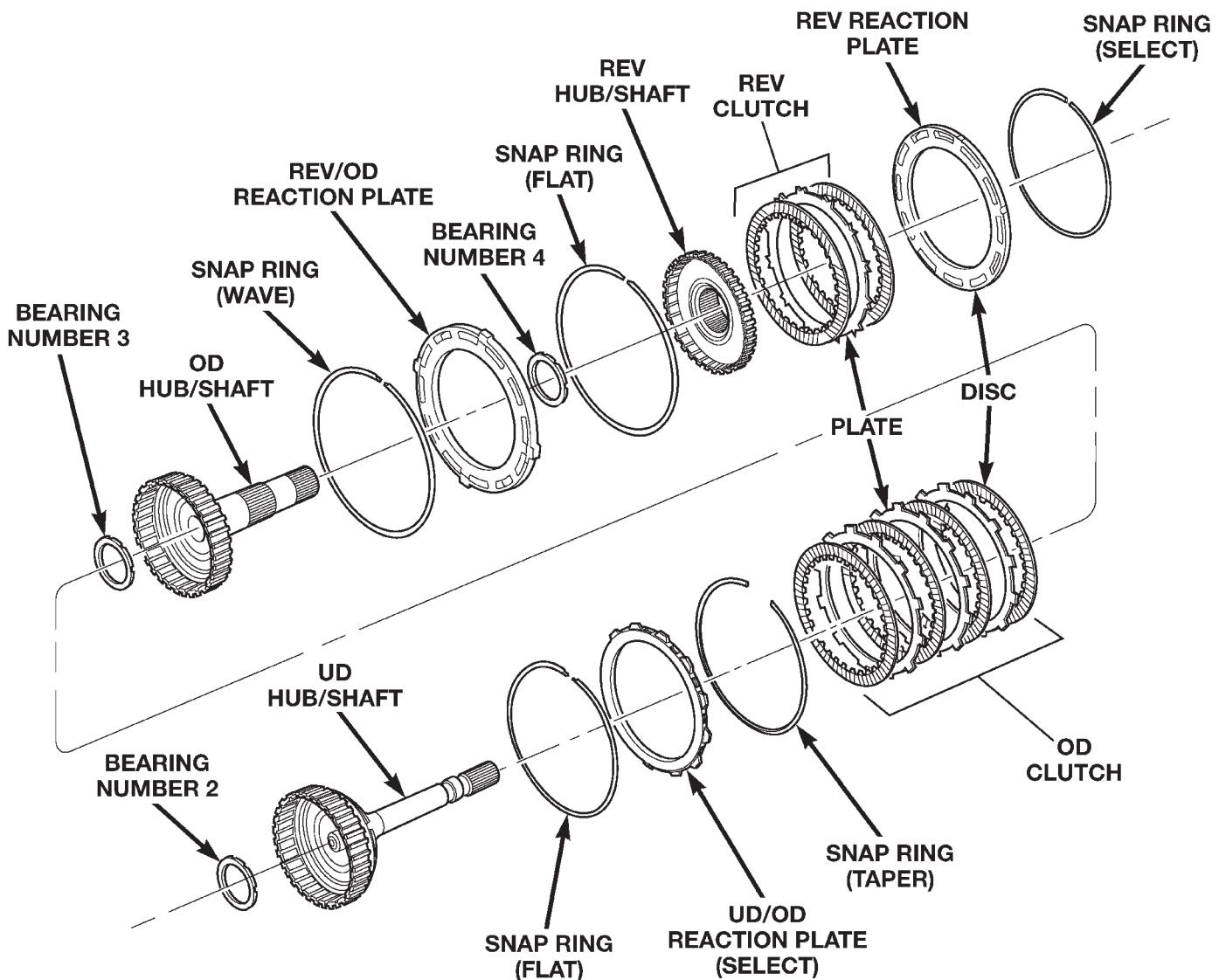
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c07013

Fig. 21 Input Clutch Assembly-Part 1

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c07014

Fig. 22 Input Clutch Assembly-Part 2

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

UNDERDRIVE CLUTCH

The underdrive clutch is hydraulically applied in first, second, and third (direct) gears by pressurized fluid against the underdrive piston. When the underdrive clutch is applied, the underdrive hub drives the input sun gear.

OVERDRIVE CLUTCH

The overdrive clutch is hydraulically applied in third (direct) and overdrive gears by pressurized fluid against the overdrive/reverse piston. When the overdrive clutch is applied, the overdrive hub drives the reverse carrier/input annulus assembly.

REVERSE CLUTCH

The reverse clutch is hydraulically applied in reverse gear by pressurized fluid against the overdrive/reverse piston. When the reverse clutch is applied, the reaction annulus gear is driven.

HOLDING CLUTCHES

DESCRIPTION

Three hydraulically applied multi-disc clutches are used to hold planetary geartrain components station-

ary while the input clutches drive others. The 2C, 4C, and Low/Reverse clutches are considered holding clutches. The 2C and 4C clutches are located in the 4C retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 23), while the Low/Reverse clutch is located at the rear of the transmission case (Fig. 24).

OPERATION

2C CLUTCH

The 2C clutch is hydraulically applied in second gear by pressurized fluid against the 2C piston. When the 2C clutch is applied, the reverse sun gear assembly is held or grounded to the transmission case by holding the reaction planetary carrier.

4C CLUTCH

The 4C clutch is hydraulically applied in fourth gear by pressurized fluid against the 4C clutch piston. When the 4C clutch is applied, the reaction annulus gear is held or grounded to the transmission case by holding the reaction planetary carrier.

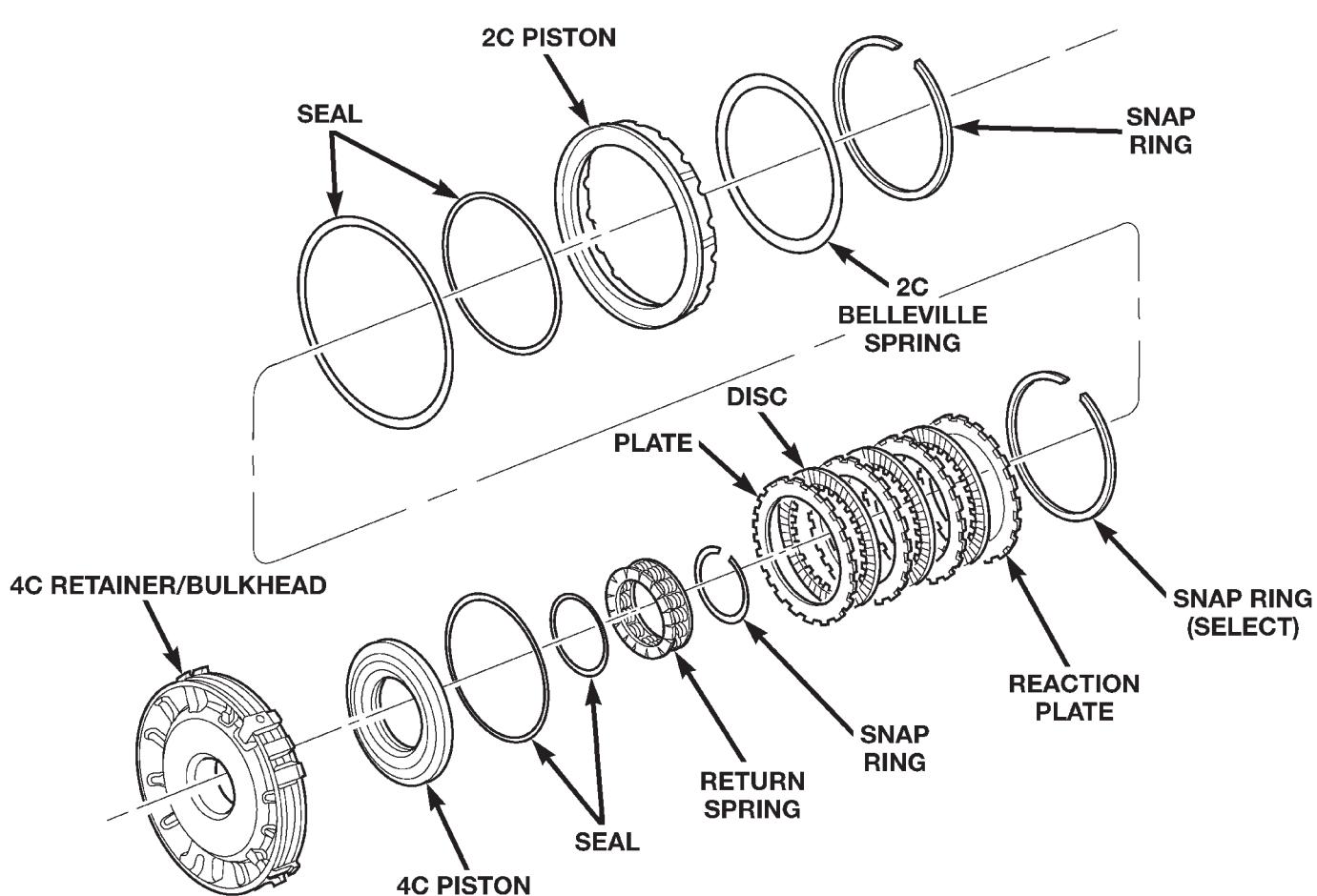
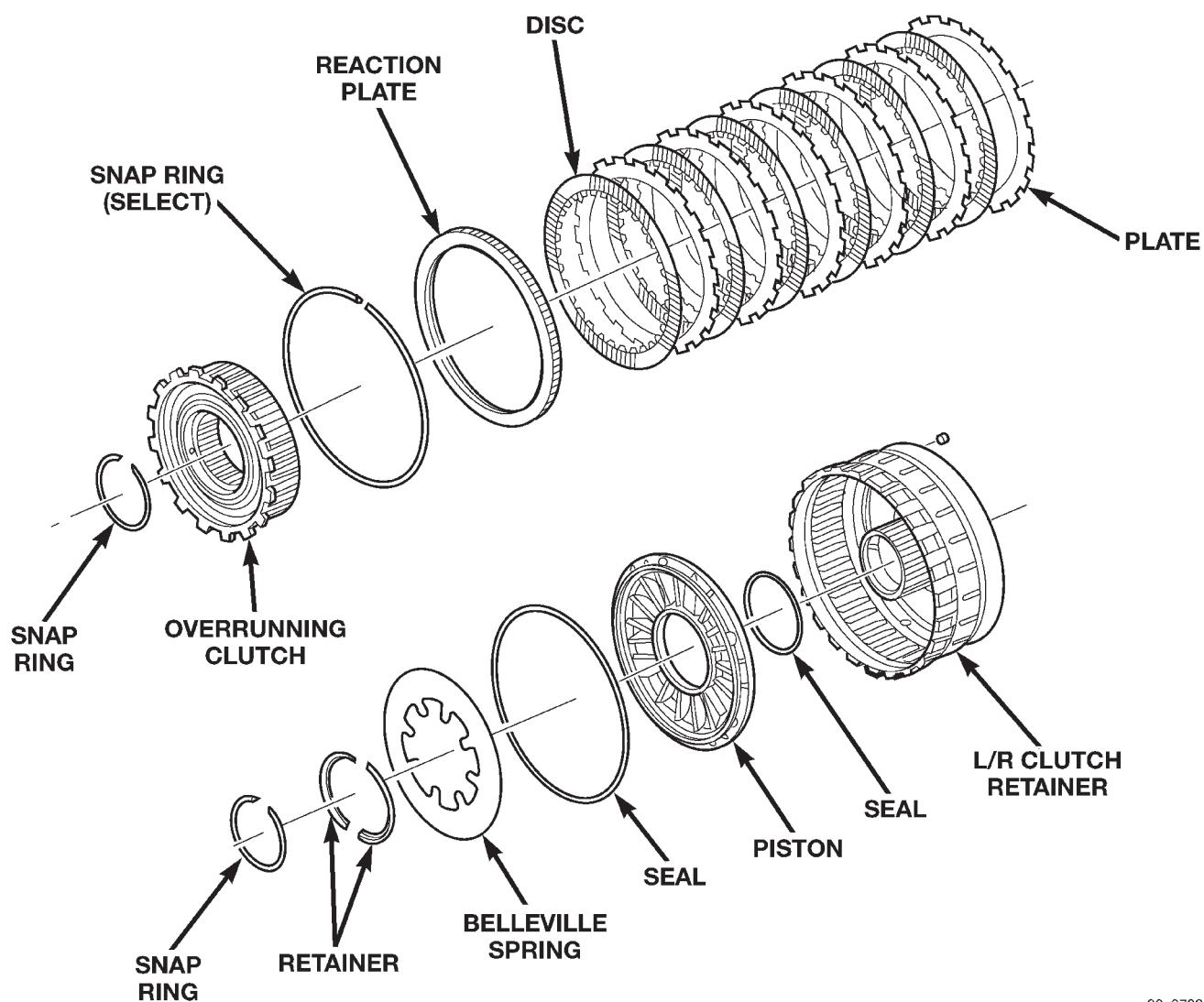


Fig. 23 2C and 4C Clutches

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c07033

Fig. 24 Low/Reverse Clutch

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

LOW/REVERSE CLUTCH

The Low/Reverse clutch is hydraulically applied in park, reverse, neutral, and first gears by pressurized fluid against the Low/Reverse clutch piston. When the Low/Reverse clutch is applied, the input annulus assembly is held or grounded to the transmission case.

PLANETARY GEARTRAIN

DESCRIPTION

The planetary geartrain is located behind the 4C retainer/bulkhead, toward the rear of the transmission. The planetary geartrain consists of three primary assemblies:

- Reaction (Fig. 25).
- Reverse (Fig. 26).
- Input (Fig. 26).

OPERATION

REACTION PLANETARY GEARTRAIN

The reaction planetary carrier and reverse sun gear of the reaction planetary geartrain are a single component which is held by the 2C clutch when required. The reaction annulus gear is a stand alone component that can be driven by the reverse clutch or held by the 4C clutch. The reaction sun gear is driven by the overdrive clutch.

REVERSE PLANETARY GEARTRAIN

The reverse planetary geartrain is the middle of the three planetary sets. The reverse planetary carrier can be driven by the overdrive clutch as required. The reverse planetary carrier is also splined to the input annulus gear, which can be held by the low/reverse clutch. The reverse planetary annulus, input planetary carrier, and output shaft are all one piece.

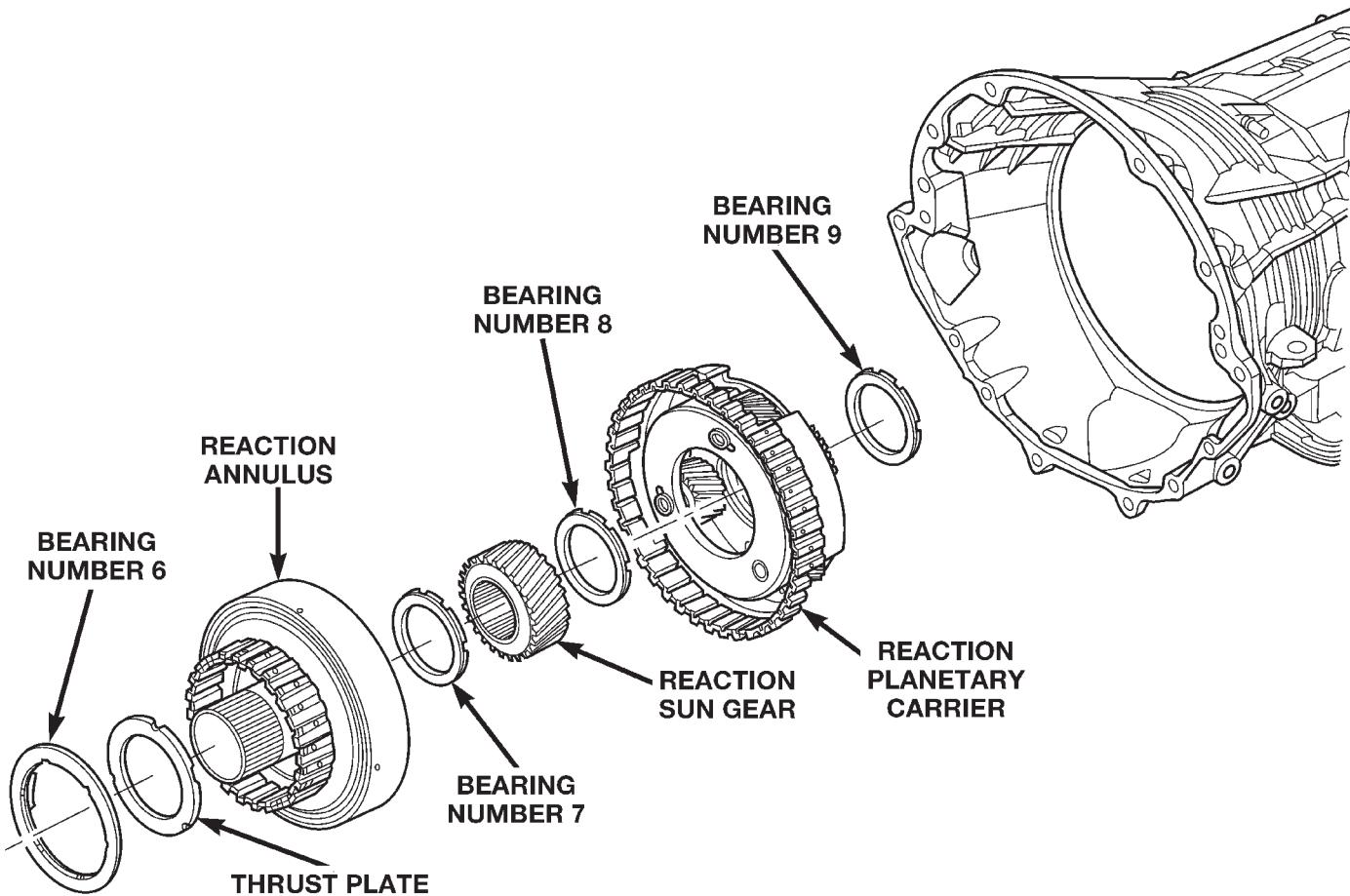
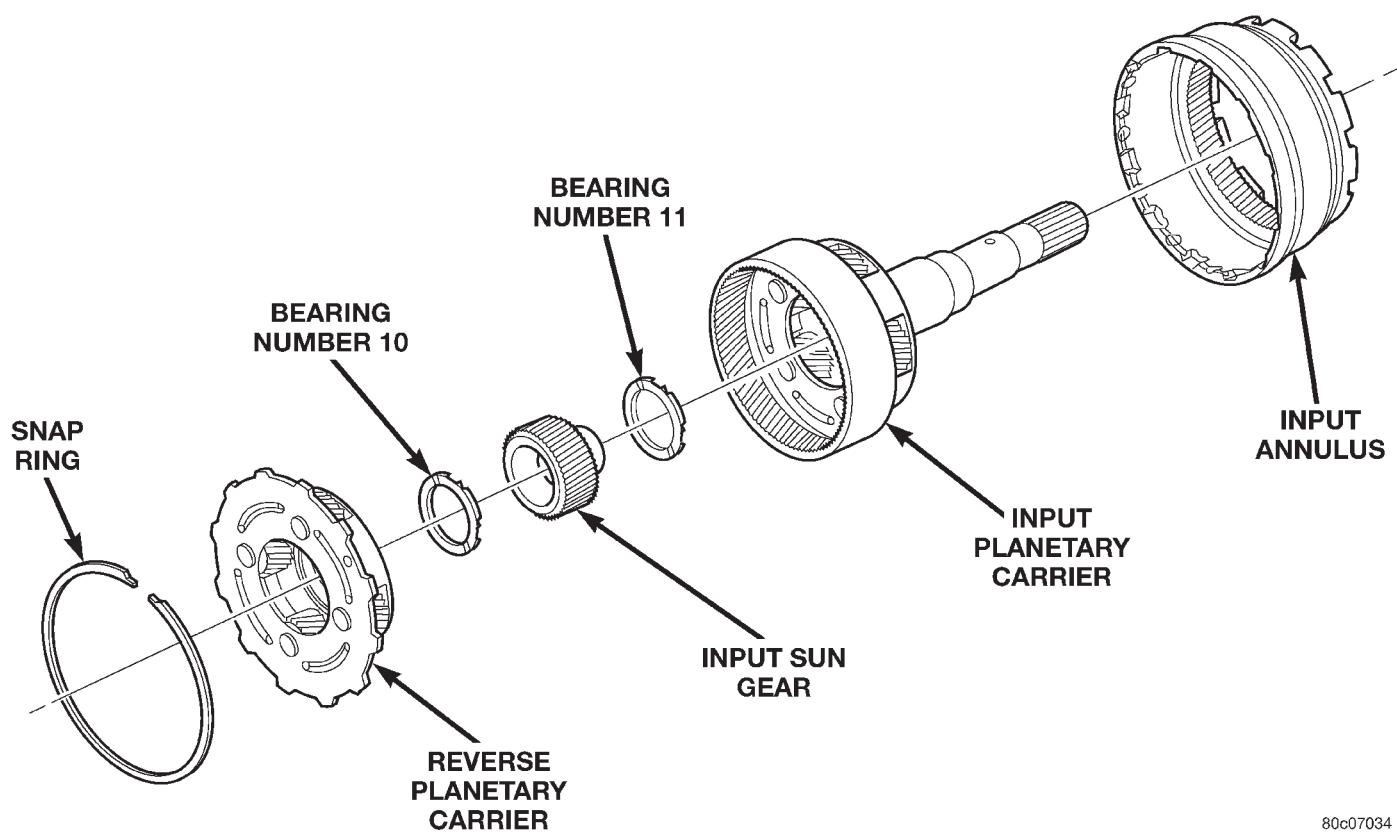


Fig. 25 Reaction Planetary Geartrain

80c07031

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)



80c07034

Fig. 26 Reverse/Input Planetary Geartrain

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

INPUT PLANETARY GEARTRAIN

The input sun gear of the input planetary geartrain is driven by the underdrive clutch.

GEARSHIFT MECHANISM

DESCRIPTION

The gear shift mechanism provides six shift positions which are:

- Park (P)
- Reverse (R)
- Neutral (N)
- Drive (D)
- Manual second (2)
- Manual low (1)

OPERATION

Manual low (1) range provides first gear only. Overrun braking is also provided in this range. Manual second (2) range provides first and second gear only.

Drive range provides first, second third and overdrive fourth gear ranges. The shift into overdrive fourth gear range occurs only after the transmission has completed the shift into D third gear range. No further movement of the shift mechanism is required to complete the 3-4 shift.

The fourth gear upshift occurs automatically when the overdrive selector switch is in the ON position. No upshift to fourth gear will occur if any of the following are true:

- The transmission fluid temperature is below 10° C (50° F) or above 121° C (250° F).
- The shift to third is not yet complete.
- Vehicle speed is too low for the 3-4 shift to occur.
- Battery temperature is below -5° C (23° F).

OVERDRIVE OFF SWITCH

DESCRIPTION

The overdrive OFF (control) switch is located in the shift lever arm.

OPERATION

The switch is a momentary contact device that signals the PCM to toggle current status of the overdrive function. At key-on, overdrive operation is allowed. Pressing the switch once causes the overdrive OFF mode to be entered and the overdrive OFF switch lamp to be illuminated. Pressing the switch a second time causes normal overdrive operation to be restored and the overdrive lamp to be turned off. The overdrive OFF mode defaults to ON after the ignition switch is cycled OFF and ON. The normal position for the control switch is the ON position. The switch

must be in this position to energize the solenoid and allow a 3-4 upshift. The control switch indicator light illuminates only when the overdrive switch is turned to the OFF position, or when illuminated by the transmission control module.

TRANSMISSION CONTROL MODULE

DESCRIPTION

The Transmission Control Module (TCM) is located in the engine compartment on the right (passenger) side and is mounted to the radiator core support (Fig. 27).

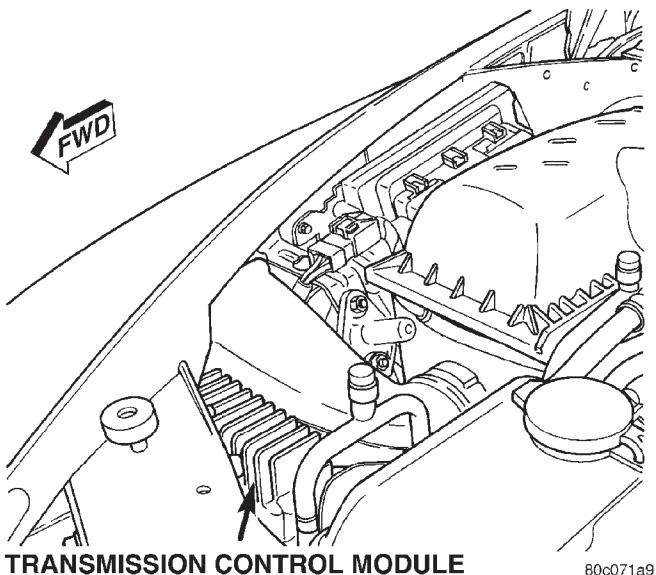


Fig. 27 Transmission Control Module Location

OPERATION

The TCM is the controlling unit for all electronic operations of the transmission. The TCM receives information regarding vehicle operation from both direct and indirect inputs, and selects the operational mode of the transmission. Direct inputs are hard-wired to, and used specifically by the TCM. Indirect inputs originate from other components/modules, and are shared with the TCM via the vehicle communication bus.

Some examples of **direct inputs** to the TCM are:

- Battery (B+) voltage
- Ignition "ON" voltage
- Transmission Control Relay (Switched B+)
- Throttle Position Sensor
- Crankshaft Position Sensor
- Transmission Range Sensor
- Pressure Switches
- Transmission Temperature Sensor
- Input Shaft Speed Sensor
- Output Shaft Speed Sensor
- Line Pressure Sensor

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

Some examples of **indirect inputs** to the TCM are:

- Engine/Body Identification
- Manifold Pressure
- Target Idle
- Torque Reduction Confirmation
- Engine Coolant Temperature
- Ambient/Battery Temperature
- DRB Scan Tool Communication

Based on the information received from these various inputs, the TCM determines the appropriate shift schedule and shift points, depending on the present operating conditions and driver demand. This is possible through the control of various direct and indirect outputs.

Some examples of TCM **direct outputs** are:

- Transmission Control Relay
- Solenoids
- Torque Reduction Request

Some examples of TCM **indirect outputs** are:

- Transmission Temperature (to PCM)
- PRNDL Position (to BCM)

In addition to monitoring inputs and controlling outputs, the TCM has other important responsibilities and functions:

- Storing and maintaining Clutch Volume Indexes (CVI)
- Storing and selecting appropriate Shift Schedules
- System self-diagnostics
- Diagnostic capabilities (with DRB scan tool)

NOTE: If the TCM has been replaced, the "Quick Learn Procedure" must be performed. Refer to "Quick Learn Procedure" in Service Procedures of this group.

CLUTCH VOLUME INDEXES

An important function of the TCM is to monitor Clutch Volume Indexes (CVI). CVIs represent the volume of fluid needed to compress a clutch pack.

The TCM monitors gear ratio changes by monitoring the Input and Output Speed Sensors. The Input, or Turbine Speed Sensor sends an electrical signal to the TCM that represents input shaft rpm. The Output Speed Sensor provides the TCM with output shaft speed information.

By comparing the two inputs, the TCM can determine transmission gear position. This is important to the CVI calculation because the TCM determines CVIs by monitoring how long it takes for a gear change to occur (Fig. 28).

Gear ratios can be determined by using the DRB Scan Tool and reading the Input/Output Speed Sensor values in the "Monitors" display. Gear ratio can

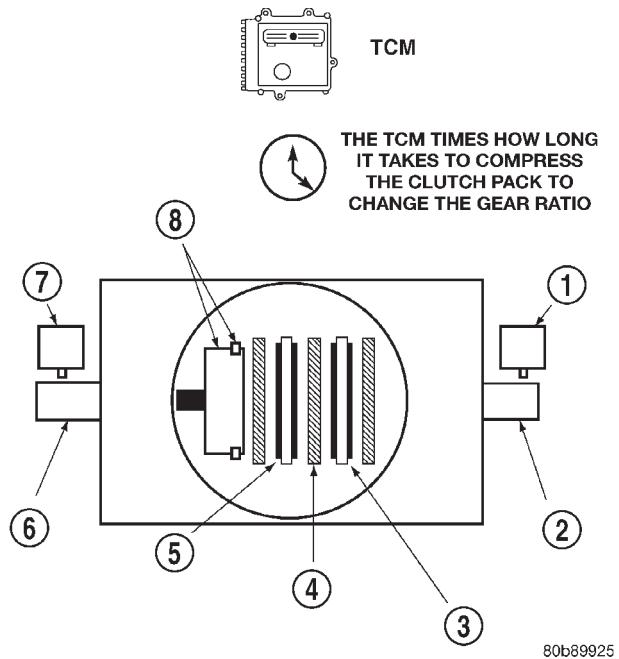


Fig. 28 Example of CVI Calculation

- 1 – OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR
- 2 – OUTPUT SHAFT
- 3 – CLUTCH PACK
- 4 – SEPARATOR PLATE
- 5 – FRICTION DISCS
- 6 – INPUT SHAFT
- 7 – INPUT SPEED SENSOR
- 8 – PISTON AND SEAL

be obtained by dividing the Input Speed Sensor value by the Output Speed Sensor value.

For example, if the input shaft is rotating at 1000 rpm and the output shaft is rotating at 500 rpm, then the TCM can determine that the gear ratio is 2:1. In direct drive (3rd gear), the gear ratio changes to 1:1. The gear ratio changes as clutches are applied and released. By monitoring the length of time it takes for the gear ratio to change following a shift request, the TCM can determine the volume of fluid used to apply or release a friction element.

The volume of transmission fluid needed to apply the friction elements are continuously updated for adaptive controls. As friction material wears, the volume of fluid need to apply the element increases.

Certain mechanical problems within the input clutch assembly (broken return springs, out of position snap rings, excessive clutch pack clearance, improper assembly, etc.) can cause inadequate or out-of-range element volumes. Also, defective Input/Output Speed Sensors and wiring can cause these conditions. The following chart identifies the appropriate clutch volumes and when they are monitored/updated:

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

CLUTCH VOLUMES		
Clutch	When Updated	Proper Clutch Volume
L/R	2-1 or 3-1 downshift	45 to 134
2C	3-2 kickdown shift	25 to 85
OD	2-3 upshift	30 to 100
4C	3-4 upshift	30 to 85
UD	4-3 kickdown shift	30 to 100

SHIFT SCHEDULES

As mentioned earlier, the TCM has programming that allows it to select a variety of shift schedules. Shift schedule selection is dependent on the following:

- Shift lever position
- Throttle position
- Engine load
- Fluid temperature
- Software level

As driving conditions change, the TCM appropriately adjusts the shift schedule. Refer to the following chart to determine the appropriate operation expected, depending on driving conditions.

Schedule	Condition	Expected Operation
Extreme Cold	Oil temperature below -16° F	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> –Park, Reverse, Neutral and 1st and 3rd gear only in D position, 2nd gear only in Manual 2 or L –No EMCC
Super Cold	Oil temperature between -12° F and 10° F	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Delayed 2-3 upshift – Delayed 3-4 upshift – Early 4-3 coastdown shift – High speed 4-2, 3-2, 2-1 kickdown shifts are prevented – Shifts at high throttle openings will be early. – No EMCC
Cold	Oil temperature between 10° F and 36° F	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> –Shift schedule is the same as Super Cold except that the 2-3 upshifts are not delayed.
Warm	Oil temperature 40° F and 80° F	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Normal operation (upshift, kickdowns, and coastdowns) – No EMCC
Hot	Oil temperature above 80° F and 240° F	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Normal operation (upshift, kickdowns, and coastdowns) – Normal EMCC operation
Overheat	Oil temperature above 240° F or engine coolant temperature above 244° F	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Delayed 2-3 upshift – Delayed 3-4 upshift – 3rd gear FEMCC from 30-48 mph – 3rd gear PEMCC above 35 mph – Above 25 mph the torque converter will not unlock unless the throttle is closed or if a wide open throttle 2nd PEMCC to 1 kickdown is made

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

SOLENOID AND PRESSURE SWITCH ASSEMBLY**DESCRIPTION**

The solenoid and pressure switch assembly is internal to the transmission and mounted on the valve body assembly (Fig. 29). The assembly consists of six solenoids that control hydraulic pressure to the six friction elements (transmission clutches), and the torque converter clutch. The pressure control solenoid is located on the side of the solenoid and pressure switch assembly. The solenoid assembly also contains five pressure switches that feed information to the TCM.

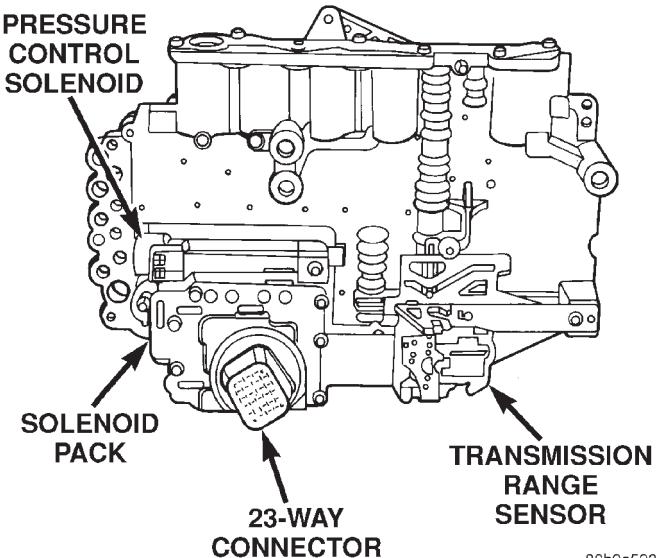


Fig. 29 SOLENOID AND PRESSURE SWITCH ASSEMBLY

OPERATION

The solenoids within the assembly are supplied voltage by the Transmission Control Relay. The solenoids are energized when the TCM grounds the return wire for the solenoid that is needed. The pressure switches simply tell the TCM whether or not pressure exists within a clutch circuit.

BATTERY FEED (TCM)**DESCRIPTION**

A fused, direct battery feed to the TCM is used for continuous power.

OPERATION

This battery voltage is necessary to retain adaptive learn values in the TCM's RAM (Random Access Memory). When the battery (B+) is disconnected, this memory is lost. When the battery (B+) is restored, this memory loss is detected by the TCM and a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) is set.

TRANSMISSION CONTROL RELAY**DESCRIPTION**

The relay is supplied fused B+ voltage, energized by the TCM, and is used to supply power to the solenoid pack when the transmission is in normal operating mode.

OPERATION

When the relay is "off", no power is supplied to the solenoid pack and the transmission is in "limp-in" mode. After a controller reset, the TCM energizes the relay. Prior to this, the TCM verifies that the contacts are open by checking for no voltage at the switched battery terminals. After this is verified, the voltage at the solenoid pack pressure switches is checked. After the relay is energized, the TCM monitors the terminals to verify that the voltage is greater than 3 volts.

PRESSURE SWITCHES**DESCRIPTION**

The pressure switches are located inside the solenoid and pressure switch assembly and are only serviced by replacing the assembly.

OPERATION

The TCM relies on five pressure switches to monitor fluid pressure in the L/R, 2C, 4C, UD, and OD hydraulic circuits. The primary purpose of these switches is to help the TCM detect when clutch circuit hydraulic failures occur. The switches close at 23 psi and open at 11 psi, and simply indicate whether or not pressure exists. The switches are continuously monitored by the TCM for the correct states (open or closed) in each gear as shown in the following chart:

GEAR	L/R	2C	4C	UD	OD
R	OP	OP	OP	OP	OP
P/N	CL	OP	OP	OP	OP
1ST	CL*	OP	OP	CL	OP
2ND	OP	CL	OP	CL	OP
2ND PRIME	OP	OP	CL	CL	OP
D	OP	OP	OP	CL	CL
OD	OP	OP	CL	OP	CL

*L/R is closed if output speed is below 100 rpm in Drive and Manual 2. L/R is open in Manual 1.

A Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) will set if the TCM senses any switch open or closed at the wrong time in a given gear.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

INPUT AND OUTPUT SPEED SENSORS

DESCRIPTION

The Input and Output Speed Sensors are two-wire magnetic pickup devices that generate AC signals as rotation occurs. They are mounted in the left side of the transmission case and are considered primary inputs to the Transmission Control Module (TCM).

OPERATION

The Input Speed Sensor provides information on how fast the input shaft is rotating. As the teeth of the input clutch hub pass by the sensor coil, an AC voltage is generated and sent to the TCM. The TCM interprets this information as input shaft rpm.

The Output Speed Sensor generates an AC signal in a similar fashion, though its coil is excited by rotation of the rear planetary carrier lugs. The TCM interprets this information as output shaft rpm.

The TCM compares the input and output speed signals to determine the following:

- Transmission gear ratio
- Speed ratio error detection
- CVI calculation

The TCM also compares the input speed signal and the engine speed signal to determine the following:

- Torque converter clutch slippage
- Torque converter element speed ratio

LINE PRESSURE CONTROL

DESCRIPTION

The TCM utilizes a closed-loop system to control transmission line pressure. The system contains a variable force style solenoid, the Pressure Control Solenoid, mounted on the side of the solenoid and pressure switch assembly. The solenoid is duty cycle controlled by the TCM to vent the unnecessary line pressure supplied by the oil pump back to the sump. The system also contains a variable pressure style sensor, the Line Pressure Sensor, which is a direct input to the TCM. The line pressure solenoid monitors the transmission line pressure and completes the feedback loop to the TCM. The TCM uses this information to adjust its control of the pressure control solenoid to achieve the desired line pressure.

OPERATION

The TCM calculates the desired line pressure based upon inputs from the transmission and engine. The TCM calculates the torque input to the transmission and uses that information as the primary input to the calculation. The line pressure is set to a

predetermined value during shifts and when the transmission is in the PARK and NEUTRAL positions. This is done to ensure consistent shift quality. During all other operation, the actual line pressure is compared to the desired line pressure and adjustments are made to the pressure control solenoid duty cycle.

THROTTLE POSITION SENSOR

OPERATION

The Transmission Control Module (TCM) receives the throttle position signal and its ground from the Throttle Position Sensor (TPS). The TPS has a 5 volt pull up supplied by the engine controller. The throttle signal is checked by the TCM for out-of-range as well as intermittence (excessive signal changes).

TRANSMISSION RANGE SENSOR

DESCRIPTION

The Transmission Range Sensor (TRS) is mounted to the top of the valve body inside the transmission.

The Transmission Range Sensor (TRS) has six switch contacts that:

- Determine shift lever position
- Supply ground to the Starter Relay in Park and Neutral only.
- Supply ground to the TCM for backup lamp control in Reverse only.

The TRS also has an integrated temperature sensor (thermistor) that communicates transmission temperature to the TCM and PCM.

OPERATION

The Transmission Range Sensor (TRS) communicates shift lever position to the TCM as a combination of open and closed switches. Each shift lever position has an assigned combination of switch states (open/closed) that the TCM receives from four sense circuits. The TCM interprets this information and determines the appropriate transmission gear position and shift schedule.

There are many possible combinations of open and closed switches (codes). Seven of these possible codes are related to gear position and five are recognized as "between gear" codes. This results in many codes which should **never occur**. These are called "invalid" codes. An invalid code will result in a DTC, and the TCM will then determine the shift lever position based on pressure switch data. This allows reasonably normal transmission operation with a TRS failure.

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

GEAR	C5	C4	C3	C2	C1
Park	CL	OP	OP	CL	CL
Temp 1	CL	OP	OP	CL	OP
Reverse	OP	OP	OP	CL	OP
Temp 2	OP	OP	CL	CL	OP
Neutral 1	OP	OP	CL	CL	CL
Neutral 2	OP	CL	CL	CL	CL
Temp 3	OP	CL	CL	CL	OP
Drive	OP	CL	CL	OP	OP
Temp 4	OP	CL	OP	OP	OP
Manual 2	CL	CL	OP	OP	OP
Temp 5	CL	OP	OP	OP	OP
Manual 1	CL	OP	CL	OP	OP

TRANSMISSION TEMPERATURE SENSOR

DESCRIPTION

The transmission temperature sensor is a thermistor that is integral to the Transmission Range Sensor (TRS).

OPERATION

The transmission temperature sensor is used by the TCM to sense the temperature of the fluid in the sump. Since fluid temperature can affect transmission shift quality and convertor lock up, the TCM requires this information to determine which shift schedule to operate in.

Calculated Temperature

A failure in the temperature sensor or circuit will result in calculated temperature being substituted for actual temperature. Calculated temperature is a predicted fluid temperature which is calculated from a combination of inputs:

- Battery (ambient) temperature
- Engine coolant temperature
- In-gear run time since start-up

SOLENOIDS

DESCRIPTION

Solenoids are used to control the L/R, 2C, 4C, OD, and UD friction elements. The reverse clutch is controlled by line pressure and the position of the manual valve in the valve body. All the solenoids are contained within the Solenoid and Pressure Switch Assembly. The solenoid and pressure switch assembly contains one additional solenoid, Multi-Select (MS), which serves primarily to provide 2nd and 3rd gear limp-in operation.

OPERATION

The solenoids receive electrical power from the Transmission Control Relay through a single wire. The TCM energizes or operates the solenoids individually by grounding the return wire of the solenoid as necessary. When a solenoid is energized, the solenoid valve shifts, and a fluid passage is opened or closed (vented or applied), depending on its default operating state. The result is an apply or release of a frictional element.

The MS and UD solenoids are normally applied to allow transmission limp-in in the event of an electrical failure.

The continuity of the solenoids and circuits are periodically tested. Each solenoid is turned on or off depending on its current state. An inductive spike should be detected by the TCM during this test. If no spike is detected, the circuit is tested again to verify the failure. In addition to the periodic testing, the solenoid circuits are tested if a speed ratio or pressure switch error occurs.

SOLENOID SWITCH VALVE

DESCRIPTION

The Solenoid Switch Valve (SSV) is located in the valve body controls the direction of the transmission fluid when the L/R-TCC solenoid is energized.

OPERATION

The Solenoid Switch Valve controls line pressure from the LR-TCC solenoid. In 1st gear, the SSV will be in the downshifted position, thus directing fluid to the L/R clutch circuit. In 2nd, 3rd, and 4th, it will be in the upshifted position and directs the fluid into the torque converter clutch (TCC) circuit.

When shifting into 1st gear, a special hydraulic sequence is performed to ensure SSV movement into the downshifted position. The L/R pressure switch is monitored to confirm SSV movement. If the movement is not confirmed (the L/R pressure switch does not close), 2nd gear is substituted for 1st. A DTC will be set after three unsuccessful attempts are made to get into 1st gear in one given key start.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

EFFECTS OF INCORRECT FLUID LEVEL

A low fluid level allows the pump to take in air along with the fluid. Air in the fluid will cause fluid pressures to be low and develop slower than normal. If the transmission is overfilled, the gears churn the fluid into foam. This aerates the fluid and causing the same conditions occurring with a low level. In either case, air bubbles cause fluid overheating, oxi-

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

dation and varnish buildup which interferes with valve, clutch and servo operation. Foaming also causes fluid expansion which can result in fluid overflow from the transmission vent or fill tube. Fluid overflow can easily be mistaken for a leak if inspection is not careful.

CAUSES OF BURNT FLUID

Burnt, discolored fluid is a result of overheating which has two primary causes.

(1) A result of restricted fluid flow through the main and/or auxiliary cooler. This condition is usually the result of a faulty or damaged main/auxiliary cooler, or severe restrictions in the coolers and lines caused by debris or kinked lines.

(2) Heavy duty operation with a vehicle not properly equipped for this type of operation. Trailer towing or similar high load operation will overheat the transmission fluid if the vehicle is improperly equipped. Such vehicles should have an auxiliary transmission fluid cooler, a heavy duty cooling system, and the engine/axle ratio combination needed to handle heavy loads.

FLUID CONTAMINATION

Transmission fluid contamination is generally a result of:

- adding incorrect fluid
- failure to clean dipstick and fill tube when checking level
- engine coolant entering the fluid
- internal failure that generates debris
- overheating that generates sludge (fluid breakdown)
- failure to reverse flush cooler and lines after repair
- failure to replace contaminated converter after repair

The use of non recommended fluids can result in transmission failure. The usual results are erratic shifts, slippage, abnormal wear and eventual failure due to fluid breakdown and sludge formation. Avoid this condition by using recommended fluids only.

The dipstick cap and fill tube should be wiped clean before checking fluid level. Dirt, grease and other foreign material on the cap and tube could fall into the tube if not removed beforehand. Take the time to wipe the cap and tube clean before withdrawing the dipstick.

Engine coolant in the transmission fluid is generally caused by a cooler malfunction. The only remedy is to replace the radiator as the cooler in the radiator is not a serviceable part. If coolant has circulated through the transmission for some time, an overhaul may also be necessary; especially if shift problems had developed.

The transmission cooler and lines should be reverse flushed whenever a malfunction generates sludge and/or debris. The torque converter should also be replaced at the same time.

Failure to flush the cooler and lines will result in recontamination. Flushing applies to auxiliary coolers as well. The torque converter should also be replaced whenever a failure generates sludge and debris. This is necessary because normal converter flushing procedures will not remove all contaminants.

45RFE AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION GENERAL DIAGNOSIS

CAUTION: Before attempting any repair on a 45RFE automatic transmission, check for Diagnostic Trouble Codes with the DRB scan tool.

Transmission malfunctions may be caused by these general conditions:

- Poor engine performance
- Improper adjustments
- Hydraulic malfunctions
- Mechanical malfunctions
- Electronic malfunctions

Diagnosis of these problems should always begin by checking the easily accessible variables: fluid level and condition, gearshift cable adjustment. Then perform a road test to determine if the problem has been corrected or if more diagnosis is necessary. If the problem persists after the preliminary tests and corrections are completed, hydraulic pressure checks should be performed.

PRELIMINARY DIAGNOSIS

Two basic procedures are required. One procedure for vehicles that are drivable and an alternate procedure for disabled vehicles (will not back up or move forward).

VEHICLE IS DRIVABLE

- (1) Check for transmission fault codes using DRB scan tool.
- (2) Check fluid level and condition.
- (3) Adjust gearshift cable if complaint was based on delayed, erratic, or harsh shifts.
- (4) Road test and note how transmission upshifts, downshifts, and engages.
- (5) Perform stall test if complaint is based on sluggish acceleration. Or, if abnormal throttle opening is needed to maintain normal speeds with a properly tuned engine.
- (6) Perform hydraulic pressure test if shift problems were noted during road test.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

(7) Perform air-pressure test to check clutch operation.

VEHICLE IS DISABLED

- (1) Check fluid level and condition.
- (2) Check for broken or disconnected gearshift cable.
- (3) Check for cracked, leaking cooler lines, or loose or missing pressure-port plugs.

(4) Raise and support vehicle on safety stands, start engine, shift transmission into gear, and note following:

- (a) If propeller shaft turns but wheels do not, problem is with differential or axle shafts.
- (b) If propeller shaft does not turn and transmission is noisy, stop engine. Remove oil pan, and check for debris. If pan is clear, remove transmission and check for damaged driveplate, converter, oil pump, or input shaft.
- (c) If propeller shaft does not turn and transmission is not noisy, perform hydraulic-pressure test to determine if problem is hydraulic or mechanical.

GEARSHIFT CABLE

(1) The shifter lever and gate positions should be in alignment with all transmission PARK, NEUTRAL, and gear detent positions.

(2) Engine starts must be possible with shift lever in PARK or NEUTRAL gate positions only. Engine starts must not be possible in any other gear position.

- (3) With shift lever handle in:

(a) PARK position—Apply forward force on center of lever and remove pressure. Engine starts must be possible.

(b) PARK position—Apply rearward force on center of lever and remove pressure. Engine starts must be possible.

(c) NEUTRAL position—Normal position. Engine starts must be possible.

(d) NEUTRAL position—Engine running and brakes applied, apply forward force on center of shift lever. Transmission shall not be able to shift from neutral to reverse.

ROAD TESTING

Before road testing, be sure the fluid level and control cable adjustments have been checked and adjusted if necessary. Verify that all diagnostic trouble codes have been resolved.

Observe engine performance during the road test. A poorly tuned engine will not allow accurate analysis of transmission operation.

Operate the transmission in all gear ranges. Check for shift variations and engine flare which indicates slippage. Note if shifts are harsh, spongy, delayed, early, or if part throttle downshifts are sensitive.

Slippage indicated by engine flare, usually means clutch or overrunning clutch problems.

A slipping clutch can often be determined by comparing which internal units are applied in the various gear ranges. The Clutch Application chart provides a basis for analyzing road test results.

CLUTCH APPLICATION CHART

SLP	UD	OD	R	2C	4C	L/R	OVERRUNNING
P-PARK						ON	
R-REVERSE				ON		ON	
N-NEUTRAL						ON	
D-OVERDRIVE							
FIRST	ON					ON*	ON
SECOND	ON			ON			
SECOND PRIME	ON				ON		
THIRD	ON	ON					
FOURTH		ON			ON		
LIMP-IN	ON	ON					
2-FIRST	ON					ON*	ON
SECOND	ON			ON			
LIMP-IN	ON				ON		
1-LOW	ON					ON	ON

*L/R clutch is on only with the output shaft speed below 150 rpm.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

HYDRAULIC PRESSURE TEST

An accurate tachometer and pressure test gauges are required. Test Gauge C-3293-SP has a 300 psi range and is used at all locations where pressures exceed 100 psi.

Pressure Test Port Locations

Only two pressure ports are supplied on the transmission case. The torque converter ON and torque converter OFF ports are located on the right side of the transmission case (Fig. 30).

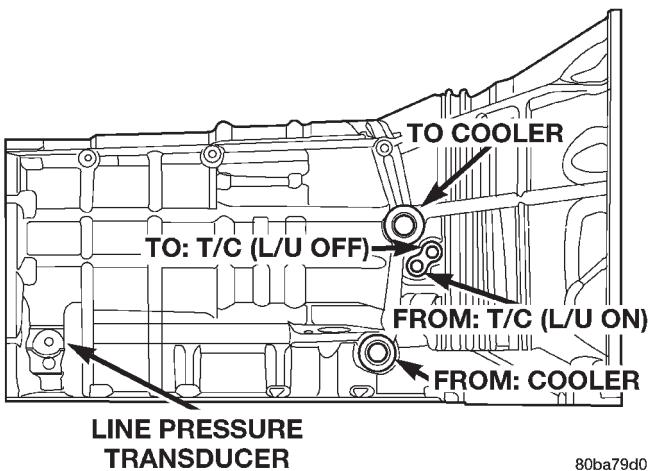


Fig. 30 Torque Converter Pressure Locations

To determine the line pressure, there are two available methods. The DRB scan tool can be used to read line pressure from the line pressure sensor. The second method is to install Line Pressure Adapter 8259 (Fig. 32) into the transmission case and then install the pressure gauge and the original sensor into the adapter. This will allow a comparison of the DRB readings and the gauge reading to make a determination regarding the accuracy of the feedback controls.

In order to access any other pressure tap locations, the transmission oil pan must be removed, the pressure port plugs removed and Valve Body Pressure Tap Adapter 8258 (Fig. 33) installed. The extensions supplied with Adapter 8258 will allow the installation of pressure gauges to the valve body. Refer to (Fig. 31) for correct pressure tap location identification.

TEST PROCEDURE

All pressure readings should be taken with the transmission fluid level full, transmission oil at the normal operating temperature, and the engine at 1500 rpm. Check the transmission for proper operation in each gear position that is in question or if a specific element is in question, check the pressure readings in at least two gear positions that employs

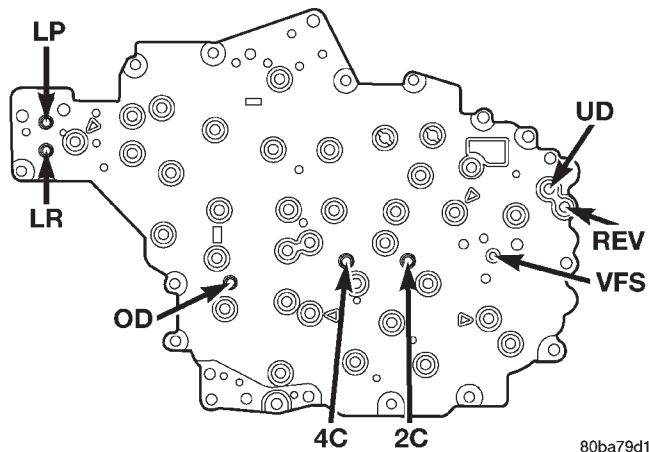


Fig. 31 Pressure Tap Locations

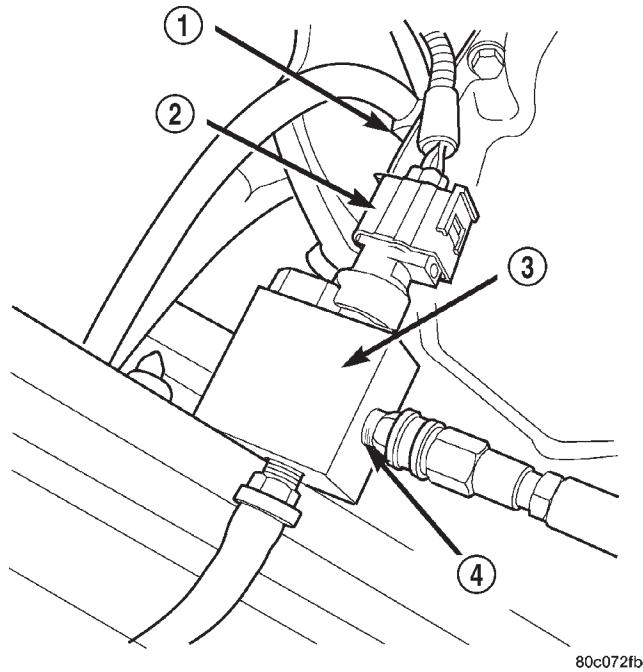


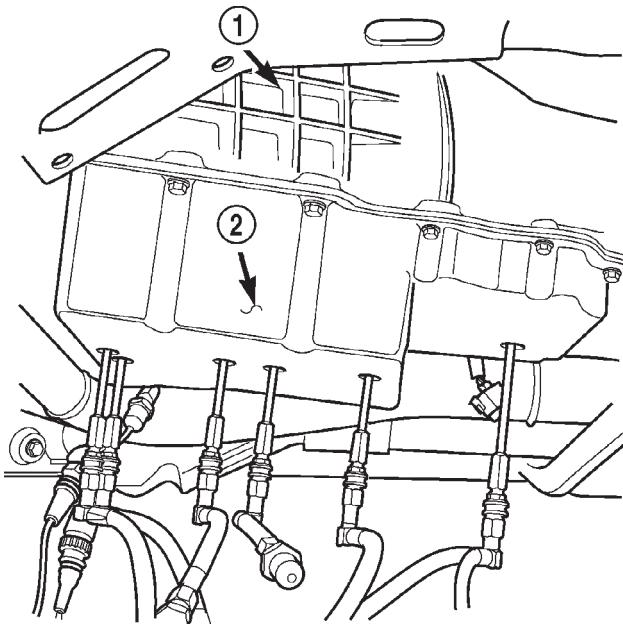
Fig. 32 Line Pressure Adapter 8259

that element. Refer to the Hydraulic Schematics at the rear of this section to determine the correct pressures for each element in a given gear position.

NOTE: The 45RFE utilizes closed loop control of pump line pressure. The pressure readings may therefore vary greatly but should always follow line pressure.

Some common pressures that can be measured to evaluate pump and clutch performance are the upshift/downshift pressures and the garage shift pressures. The upshift/downshift pressure for all shifts except the 3-4, 4-3, and 4-2prime shifts is 120 psi. The upshift/downshift pressure for the 3-4, 4-3, and the 4-2prime shifts is 100 psi. The garage shift

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)



80c072fa

Fig. 33 Valve Body Pressure Tap Adapter 8258

pressure when performing a N-R shift is 220 psi. The garage shift pressure for the R-N and N-1 shifts is 120 psi.

AIR TESTING TRANSMISSION CLUTCH OPERATION

Air-pressure testing can be used to check transmission clutch operation. The test can be conducted with the transmission either in the vehicle or on the work bench, as a final check.

Air-pressure testing requires that the oil pan and valve body be removed from the transmission. The clutch apply passages are shown (Fig. 34).

NOTE: The air supply which is used must be free of moisture and dirt. Use a pressure of 30 psi to test clutch operation.

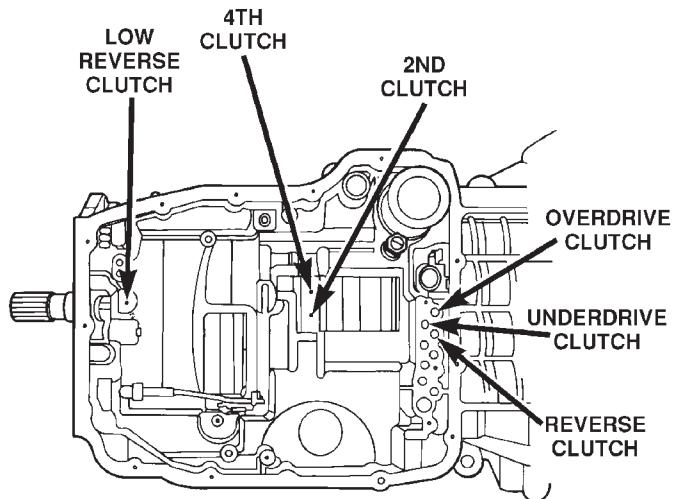
Apply air pressure at each port. If the clutch is functioning, a soft thump will be heard as the clutch is applied. The clutch application can also be felt by touching the appropriate element while applying air pressure. As the air pressure is released, the clutch should also release.

CONVERTER HOUSING FLUID LEAK DIAGNOSIS

When diagnosing converter housing fluid leaks, two items must be established before repair.

- (1) Verify that a leak condition actually exists.
- (2) Determined the true source of the leak.

Some suspected converter housing fluid leaks may not be leaks at all. They may only be the result of



80b9a594

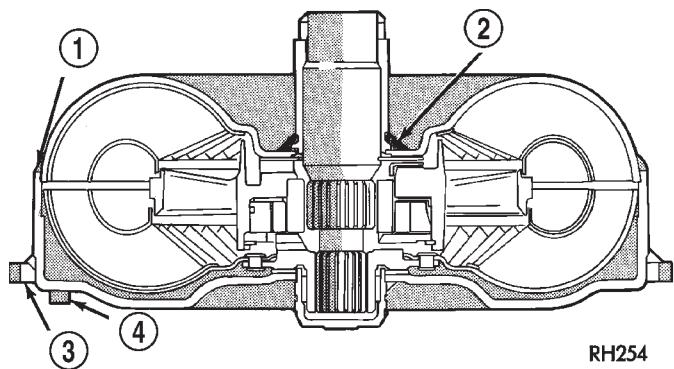
Fig. 34 Air Pressure Test Passages

residual fluid in the converter housing, or excess fluid spilled during factory fill or fill after repair. Converter housing leaks have several potential sources. Through careful observation, a leak source can be identified before removing the transmission for repair. Pump seal leaks tend to move along the drive hub and onto the rear of the converter. Pump cover O-ring leaks follow the same path as a seal leak.

TORQUE CONVERTER LEAK POINTS

Possible sources of converter leaks are:

- (1) Leaks at the weld joint around the outside diameter weld (Fig. 35).
- (2) Leaks at the converter hub weld (Fig. 35).



RH254

Fig. 35 Converter Leak Points—Typical

- 1 - OUTSIDE DIAMETER WELD
- 2 - TORQUE CONVERTER HUB WELD
- 3 - STARTER RING GEAR
- 4 - LUG

SERVICE PROCEDURES

FLUID LEVEL CHECK

Low fluid level can cause a variety of conditions because it allows the pump to take in air along with the fluid. As in any hydraulic system, air bubbles make the fluid spongy, therefore, pressures will be low and build up slowly.

Improper filling can also raise the fluid level too high. When the transmission has too much fluid, the geartrain churns up foam and cause the same conditions which occur with a low fluid level.

In either case, air bubbles can cause overheating and/or fluid oxidation, and varnishing. This can interfere with normal valve, clutch, and accumulator operation. Foaming can also result in fluid escaping from the transmission vent where it may be mistaken for a leak.

Along with fluid level, it is important to check the condition of the fluid. When the fluid smells burned, and is contaminated with metal or friction material particles, a complete transmission recondition is needed. Be sure to examine the fluid on the dipstick closely. If there is any doubt about its condition, drain out a sample for a double check.

After the fluid has been checked, seat the dipstick fully to seal out water and dirt.

The transmission fluid level should be inspected at least every six months.

FLUID LEVEL CHECK PROCEDURE

The transmission has a dipstick to check oil level. It is located on the right side of the engine. Be sure to wipe all dirt from dipstick handle before removing.

The torque converter fills in both the P Park and N Neutral positions. Place the selector lever in P Park to be sure that the fluid level check is accurate. **The engine should be running at idle speed for at least one minute, with the vehicle on level ground.** At normal operating temperature (approximately 82 C. or 180 F.), the fluid level is correct if it is in the HOT region (cross-hatched area) on the oil level indicator. The fluid level will be approximately at the upper COLD hole of the dipstick at 70° F fluid temperature.

NOTE: Engine and Transmission should be at normal operating temperature before performing this procedure.

- (1) Start engine and apply parking brake.
- (2) Shift the transmission into Drive for approximately 2 seconds.
- (3) Shift the transmission into Reverse for approximately 2 seconds.
- (4) Shift the transmission into Park.

(5) Hook up DRBIII scan tool and select transmission.

(6) Select sensors.

(7) Read the transmission temperature value.

(8) Compare the fluid temperature value with the chart.

(9) Adjust transmission fluid level shown on the dipstick according to the chart.

NOTE: After adding any fluid to the transmission, wait a minimum of 2 minutes for the oil to fully drain from the fill tube into the transmission before rechecking the fluid level.

(10) Check transmission for leaks.

FLUID AND FILTER REPLACEMENT

Refer to the Maintenance Schedules in Group 0, Lubrication and Maintenance, for proper service intervals. The fluid capacity of the 45RFE is approximately 13.25 liters (14.0 quarts).

REMOVAL

(1) Hoist and support vehicle on safety stands.

(2) Place a large diameter shallow drain pan beneath the transmission pan.

(3) Remove bolts holding front and sides of pan to transmission.

(4) Loosen bolts holding rear of pan to transmission.

(5) Slowly separate front of pan away from transmission allowing the fluid to drain into drain pan.

(6) Hold up pan and remove remaining bolt holding pan to transmission.

(7) While holding pan level, lower pan away from transmission.

(8) Pour remaining fluid in pan into drain pan.

(9) Remove screws holding filter to valve body (Fig. 36).

(10) Separate filter from valve body and oil pump and pour fluid in filter into drain pan.

(11) Remove and discard the oil filter seal from the bottom of the oil pump.

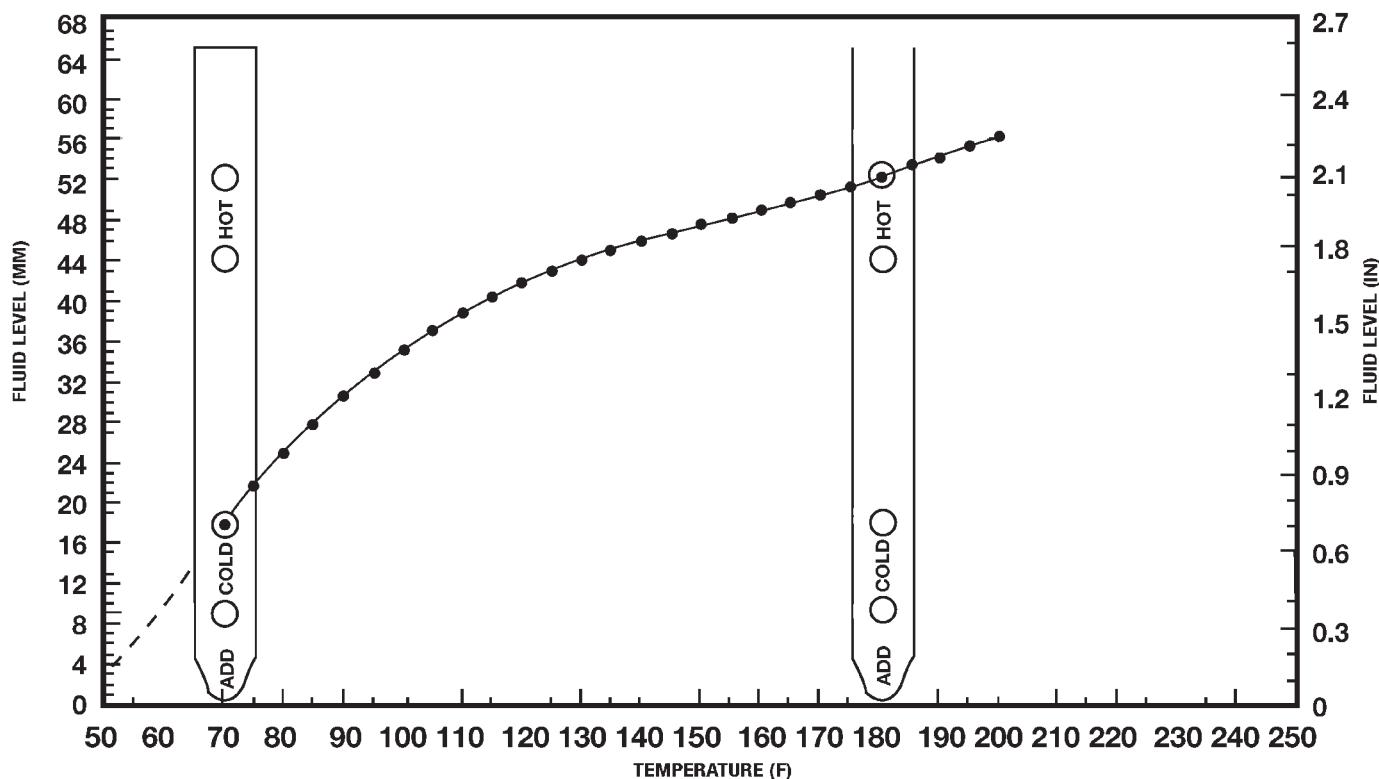
(12) Using Oil Filter Wrench 8321, remove the cooler return filter from the transmission.

(13) Dispose of used trans fluid and filter properly.

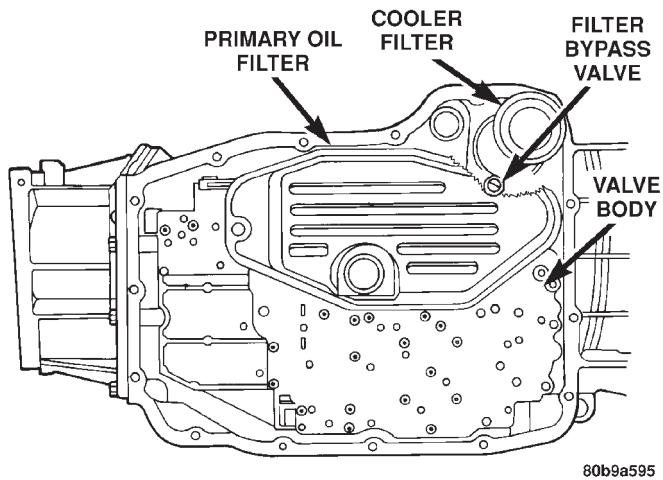
INSPECTION

Inspect bottom of pan and magnet for excessive amounts of metal. A light coating of clutch material on the bottom of the pan does not indicate a problem unless accompanied by a slipping condition or shift lag. If fluid and pan are contaminated with excessive amounts or debris, refer to the diagnosis section of this group.

SERVICE PROCEDURES (Continued)



80c072fc

Transmission Fluid Temperature Chart

80b9a595

*Fig. 36 Transmission Filters***CLEANING**

- (1) Using a suitable solvent, clean pan and magnet.
- (2) Using a suitable gasket scraper, clean original sealing material from surface of transmission case and the transmission pan.

INSTALLATION

- (1) Install a new oil filter seal into the bottom of the oil pump.

NOTE: Do not attempt to install the seal onto the oil filter first and then into the oil pump. An unsatisfactory seal between the oil pump and filter will result, allowing air to be drawn into the pump.

- (2) Place replacement filter in position on valve body and into the oil pump.
- (3) Install screws to hold filter to valve body (Fig. 36). Tighten screws to 4.5 N·m (40 in. lbs.) torque.
- (4) Install new cooler return filter onto the transmission. Torque the filter to 14.12 N·m (125 in. lbs.).
- (5) Place bead of Mopar® RTV sealant onto the transmission case sealing surface.
- (6) Place pan in position on transmission.
- (7) Install screws to hold pan to transmission. Tighten bolts to 11.8 N·m (105 in. lbs.) torque.
- (8) Lower vehicle and fill transmission with Mopar® ATF Plus 3, type 7176 fluid.

TRANSMISSION FILL PROCEDURE

To avoid overfilling transmission after a fluid change or overhaul, perform the following procedure:

SERVICE PROCEDURES (Continued)

(1) Remove dipstick and insert clean funnel in transmission fill tube.

(2) Add following initial quantity of Mopar® ATF Plus 3 to transmission:

(a) If only fluid and filter were changed, add **10 pints (5 quarts)** of ATF Plus 3 to transmission.

(b) If transmission was completely overhauled, torque converter was replaced or drained, and cooler was flushed, add **24 pints (12 quarts)** of ATF Plus 3 to transmission.

(3) Refer to the Fluid Level Check information in this group for the proper fill procedures.

OIL PUMP VOLUME CHECK

Measuring the oil pump output volume will determine if sufficient oil flow to the transmission oil cooler exists, and whether or not an internal transmission failure is present.

Verify that the transmission fluid is at the proper level. Refer to the Fluid Level Check procedure in this section. If necessary, fill the transmission to the proper level with Mopar® ATF+3, type 7176, Automatic Transmission Fluid.

(1) Disconnect the **To cooler** line at the cooler inlet and place a collecting container under the disconnected line.

CAUTION: With the fluid set at the proper level, fluid collection should not exceed (1) quart or internal damage to the transmission may occur.

(2) Run the engine **at curb idle speed**, with the shift selector in neutral.

(3) If one quart of transmission fluid is collected in the container in 20 seconds or less, oil pump flow volume is within acceptable limits. If fluid flow is intermittent, or it takes more than 20 seconds to collect one quart of fluid, refer to the Hydraulic Pressure tests in this section for further diagnosis.

(4) Re-connect the **To cooler** line to the transmission cooler inlet.

(5) Refill the transmission to proper level.

FLUSHING COOLERS AND TUBES

When a transmission failure has contaminated the fluid, the oil cooler(s) must be flushed. The torque converter must also be replaced. This will insure that metal particles or sludged oil are not later transferred back into the reconditioned (or replaced) transmission.

The only recommended procedure for flushing coolers and lines is to use Tool 6906A Cooler Flusher.

WARNING: WEAR PROTECTIVE EYEWEAR THAT MEETS THE REQUIREMENTS OF OSHA AND ANSI Z87.1-1968. WEAR STANDARD INDUSTRIAL RUBBER GLOVES.

KEEP LIGHTED CIGARETTES, SPARKS, FLAMES, AND OTHER IGNITION SOURCES AWAY FROM THE AREA TO PREVENT THE IGNITION OF COMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS AND GASES. KEEP A CLASS (B) FIRE EXTINGUISHER IN THE AREA WHERE THE FLUSHER WILL BE USED.

KEEP THE AREA WELL VENTILATED.

DO NOT LET FLUSHING SOLVENT COME IN CONTACT WITH YOUR EYES OR SKIN: IF EYE CONTAMINATION OCCURS, FLUSH EYES WITH WATER FOR 15 TO 20 SECONDS. REMOVE CONTAMINATED CLOTHING AND WASH AFFECTED SKIN WITH SOAP AND WATER. SEEK MEDICAL ATTENTION.

COOLER FLUSH USING TOOL 6906A

(1) Remove cover plate filler plug on Tool 6906A. Fill reservoir 1/2 to 3/4 full of fresh flushing solution. Flushing solvents are petroleum based solutions generally used to clean automatic transmission components. **DO NOT** use solvents containing acids, water, gasoline, or any other corrosive liquids.

(2) Reinstall filler plug on Tool 6906A.

(3) Verify pump power switch is turned OFF. Connect red alligator clip to positive (+) battery post. Connect black (-) alligator clip to a good ground.

(4) Disconnect the cooler lines at the transmission.

NOTE: When flushing transmission cooler and lines, ALWAYS reverse flush.

(5) Connect the BLUE pressure line to the OUTLET (From) cooler line.

(6) Connect the CLEAR return line to the INLET (To) cooler line

(7) Turn pump ON for two to three minutes to flush cooler(s) and lines.

(8) Turn pump OFF.

(9) Disconnect CLEAR suction line from reservoir at cover plate. Disconnect CLEAR return line at cover plate, and place it in a drain pan.

(10) Turn pump ON for 30 seconds to purge flushing solution from cooler and lines. Turn pump OFF.

(11) Place CLEAR suction line into a one quart container of Mopar® ATF Plus 3, type 7176 automatic transmission fluid.

(12) Turn pump ON until all transmission fluid is removed from the one quart container and lines. This purges any residual cleaning solvent from the transmission cooler and lines. Turn pump OFF.

(13) Disconnect alligator clips from battery. Reconnect flusher lines to cover plate, and remove flushing adapters from cooler lines.

TRANSMISSION QUICK LEARN PROCEDURE

The quick learn procedure requires the use of the DRB scan tool.

SERVICE PROCEDURES (Continued)

This program allows the electronic transmission system to recalibrate itself. This will provide the best possible transmission operation. The quick learn procedure should be performed if any of the following procedures are performed:

- Transmission Assembly Replacement
- Transmission Control Module Replacement
- Solenoid Pack Replacement
- Clutch Plate and/or Seal Replacement
- Valve Body Replacement or Recondition

To perform the Quick Learn Procedure, the following conditions must be met:

- The brakes must be applied
- The engine speed must be above 500 rpm
- The throttle angle (TPS) must be less than 3 degrees
- The shift lever position must stay until prompted to shift to overdrive
- The shift lever position must stay in overdrive after the Shift to Overdrive prompt until the DRB indicates the procedure is complete
- The calculated oil temperature must be above 60° and below 200°

ALUMINUM THREAD REPAIR

Damaged or worn threads in the aluminum transmission case and valve body can be repaired by the use of Heli-Coils, or equivalent. This repair consists of drilling out the worn-out damaged threads. Then tap the hole with a special Heli-Coil tap, or equivalent, and installing a Heli-Coil insert, or equivalent, into the hole. This brings the hole back to its original thread size.

Heli-Coil, or equivalent, tools and inserts are readily available from most automotive parts suppliers.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION

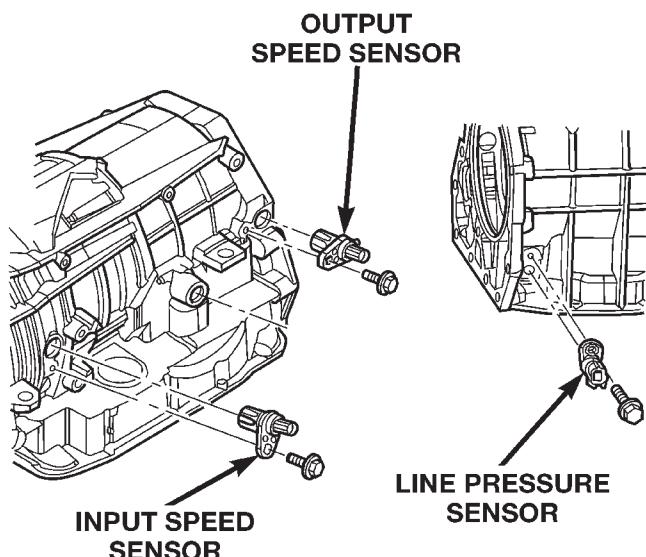
INPUT SPEED SENSOR

REMOVAL

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Place a suitable fluid catch pan under the transmission.
- (3) Remove the wiring connector from the input speed sensor (Fig. 37).
- (4) Remove the bolt holding the input speed sensor to the transmission case.
- (5) Remove the input speed sensor from the transmission case.

INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the input speed sensor into the transmission case.



80c07350

Fig. 37 Input Speed Sensor

- (2) Install the bolt to hold the input speed sensor into the transmission case. Tighten the bolt to 11.9 N·m (105 in.lbs.).
- (3) Install the wiring connector onto the input speed sensor.
- (4) Verify the transmission fluid level. Add fluid as necessary.
- (5) Lower vehicle.

OUTPUT SPEED SENSOR

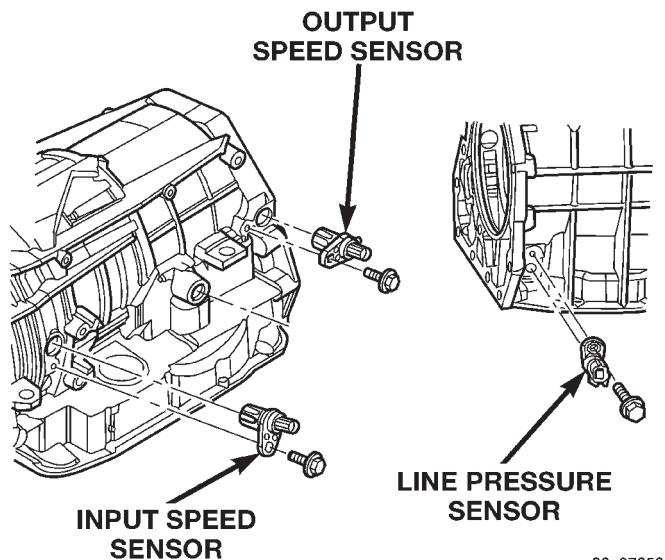
REMOVAL

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Place a suitable fluid catch pan under the transmission.
- (3) Remove the wiring connector from the output speed sensor (Fig. 38).
- (4) Remove the bolt holding the output speed sensor to the transmission case.
- (5) Remove the output speed sensor from the transmission case.

INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the output speed sensor into the transmission case.
- (2) Install the bolt to hold the output speed sensor into the transmission case. Tighten the bolt to 11.9 N·m (105 in.lbs.).
- (3) Install the wiring connector onto the output speed sensor.
- (4) Verify the transmission fluid level. Add fluid as necessary.
- (5) Lower vehicle.

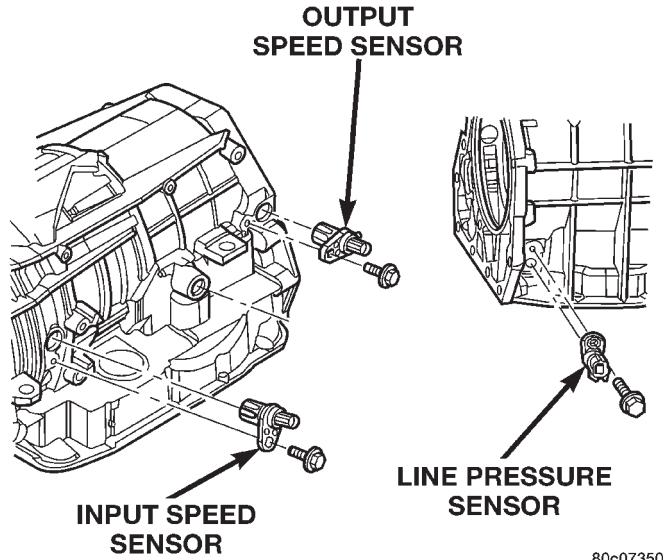
REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

*Fig. 38 Output Speed Sensor*

LINE PRESSURE SENSOR

REMOVAL

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Place a suitable fluid catch pan under the transmission.
- (3) Remove the wiring connector from the line pressure sensor (Fig. 39).
- (4) Remove the bolt holding the line pressure sensor to the transmission case.
- (5) Remove the line pressure sensor from the transmission case.

*Fig. 39 Line Pressure Sensor*

INSTALLATION

- (1) Install the line pressure sensor into the transmission case.

(2) Install the bolt to hold the line pressure sensor into the transmission case. Tighten the bolt to 11.9 N·m (105 in.lbs.).

(3) Install the wiring connector onto the line pressure sensor

(4) Verify the transmission fluid level. Add fluid as necessary.

(5) Lower vehicle.

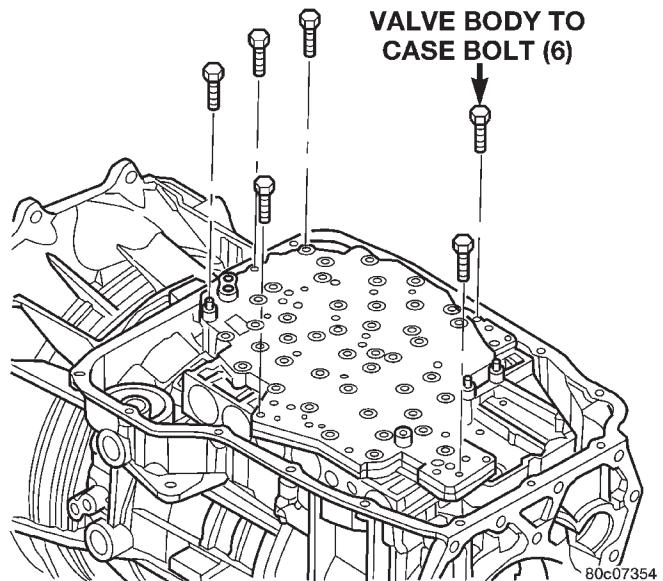
VALVE BODY

The valve body can be removed for service without having to remove the transmission assembly.

The valve body can be disassembled for cleaning and inspection of the individual components. Refer to Disassembly and Assembly section for proper procedures.

REMOVAL

- (1) Shift transmission into PARK.
- (2) Raise vehicle.
- (3) Remove any necessary skid plates. Refer to Group 13, Frame and Bumpers, for the appropriate procedures.
- (4) Disconnect wires at the solenoid and pressure switch assembly connector.
- (5) Position drain pan under transmission oil pan.
- (6) Remove transmission oil pan.
- (7) Remove the primary oil filter from valve body.
- (8) Remove bolts attaching valve body to transmission case (Fig. 40).
- (9) Lower the valve body and work the electrical connector out of transmission case.
- (10) Separate the valve body from the transmission.

*Fig. 40 Valve Body Bolts*

INSTALLATION

- (1) Check condition of seals on valve body and the solenoid and pressure switch assembly. Replace seals if cut or worn.
- (2) Place TRS selector plate in the PARK position.
- (3) Place the transmission in the PARK position.
- (4) Lubricate seal on the solenoid and pressure switch assembly connector with petroleum jelly.
- (5) Position valve body in transmission and align the manual lever on the valve body to the pin on the transmission manual shift lever.
- (6) Seat valve body in case and install one or two bolts to hold valve body in place.
- (7) Tighten valve body bolts alternately and evenly to 12 N·m (105 in. lbs.) torque.
- (8) Install new fluid filter on valve body. Tighten filter screws to 4.5 N·m (40 in. lbs.) torque.
- (9) Connect the solenoid and pressure switch assembly connector.
- (10) Install oil pan. Tighten pan bolts to 12 N·m (105 in. lbs.) torque.
- (11) Install any skid plates removed previously. Refer to Group 13, Frame and Bumpers, for the appropriate procedures.
- (12) Lower vehicle and fill transmission with Mopar® ATF Plus 3, type 7176 fluid.
- (13) Check and adjust gearshift cable, if necessary.

SOLENOID AND PRESSURE SWITCH ASSEMBLY

REMOVAL

- (1) Remove the valve body from the transmission (Fig. 41).

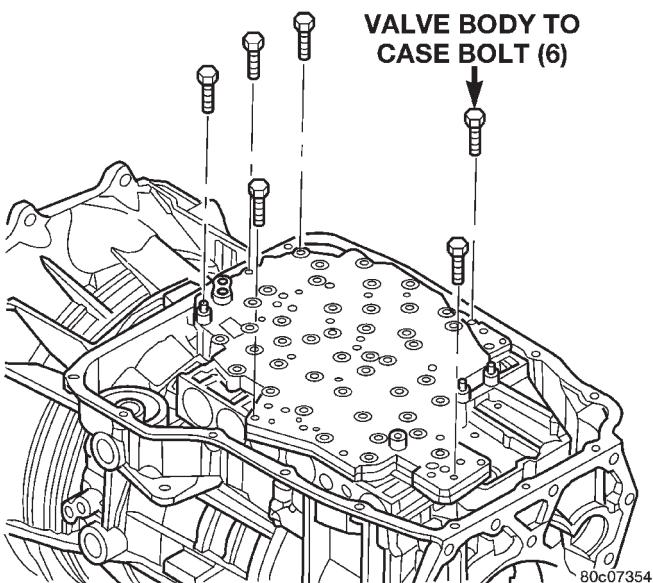
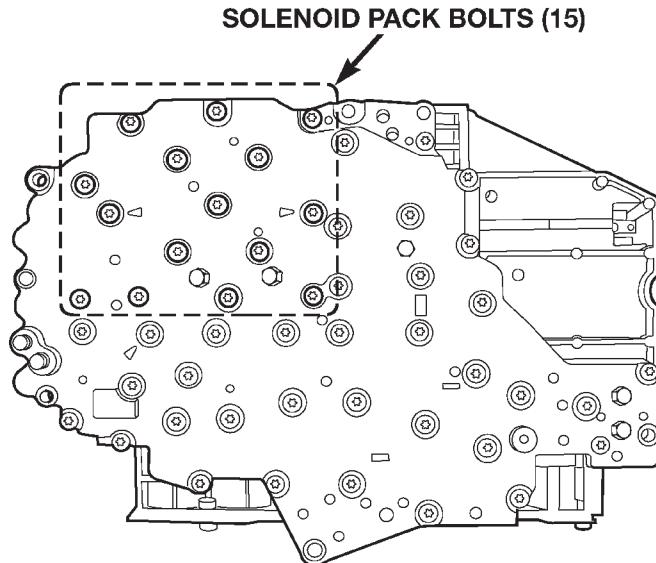


Fig. 41 Valve Body Bolts

- (2) Remove the screws holding the solenoid and pressure switch assembly onto the valve body (Fig. 42).

- (3) Separate the solenoid and pressure switch assembly from the valve body.



80c07445

Fig. 42 Solenoid and Pressure Switch Assembly Screws

INSTALLATION

- (1) Place TRS selector plate in the PARK position.
- (2) Position the solenoid and pressure switch assembly onto the valve body. Be sure that both alignment dowels are fully seated in the valve body and that the TRS switch contacts are properly positioned in the selector plate.
- (3) Install the screws to hold the solenoid and pressure switch assembly onto the valve body.
- (4) Tighten the solenoid assembly screws adjacent to the arrows cast into the bottom of the valve body first. Tighten the screws to 5.7 N·m (50 in.lbs.).
- (5) Tighten the remainder of the solenoid assembly screws to 5.7 N·m (50 in.lbs.).
- (6) Install the valve body into the transmission.

TRANSMISSION

CAUTION: The transmission and torque converter must be removed as an assembly to avoid component damage. The converter driveplate, pump bushing, or oil seal can be damaged if the converter is left attached to the driveplate during removal. Be sure to remove the transmission and converter as an assembly.

REMOVAL

- (1) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (2) Raise and support the vehicle

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

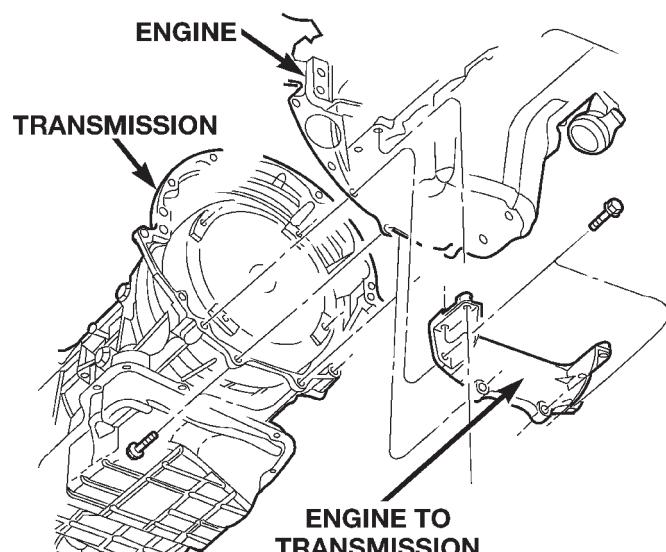
(3) Remove any necessary skid plates. Refer to Group 13, Frame and Bumpers, for the appropriate procedures.

(4) Mark propeller shaft and axle companion flanges for assembly alignment.

(5) Remove the rear propeller shaft

(6) Remove the front propeller shaft, if necessary.

(7) Remove the engine to transmission collar (Fig. 43).



80ba79d2

Fig. 43 Transmission Collar

(8) Remove the exhaust support bracket from the rear of the transmission.

(9) Disconnect and lower or remove any necessary exhaust components.

(10) Remove the starter motor.

(11) Rotate crankshaft in clockwise direction until converter bolts are accessible. Then remove bolts one at a time. Rotate crankshaft with socket wrench on dampener bolt.

(12) Disconnect wires from solenoid and pressure switch assembly, input and output speed sensors, and line pressure sensor.

(13) Disconnect gearshift cable from transmission manual valve lever (Fig. 44).

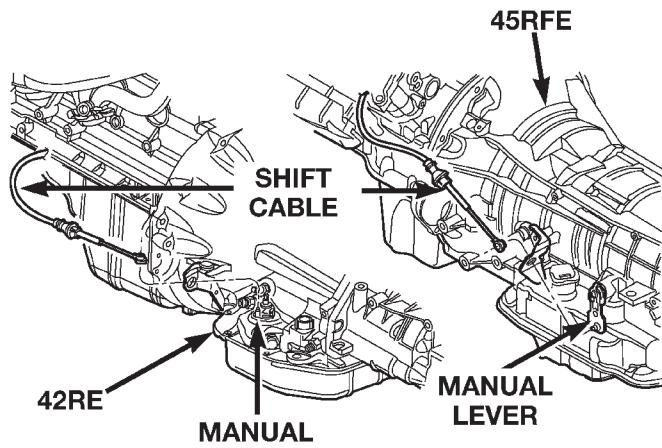
(14) Disconnect transmission fluid cooler lines at transmission fittings and clips.

(15) Disconnect the transmission vent hose from the transmission.

(16) Support rear of engine with safety stand or jack.

(17) Raise transmission slightly with service jack to relieve load on crossmember and supports.

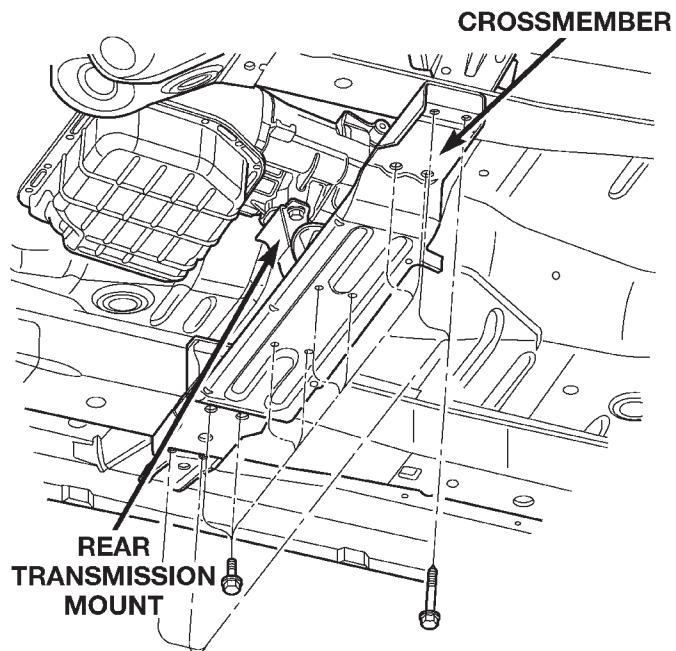
(18) Remove bolts securing rear support and cushion to transmission and crossmember (Fig. 45).



80ba79c4

Fig. 44 Transmission Shift Cable

(19) Remove bolts attaching crossmember to frame and remove crossmember.



80ba79c7

Fig. 45 Rear Transmission Crossmember

(20) Remove transfer case.

(21) Remove all remaining converter housing bolts.

(22) Carefully work transmission and torque converter assembly rearward off engine block dowels.

(23) Hold torque converter in place during transmission removal.

(24) Lower transmission and remove assembly from under the vehicle.

(25) To remove torque converter, carefully slide torque converter out of the transmission.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

INSTALLATION

(1) Check torque converter hub and hub drive notches for sharp edges burrs, scratches, or nicks. Polish the hub and notches with 320/400 grit paper and crocus cloth if necessary. The hub must be smooth to avoid damaging pump seal at installation.

(2) If a replacement transmission is being installed, transfer any components necessary, such as the manual shift lever and shift cable bracket, from the original transmission onto the replacement transmission.

(3) Lubricate oil pump seal lip with transmission fluid.

(4) Align converter and oil pump.

(5) Carefully insert converter in oil pump. Then rotate converter back and forth until fully seated in pump gears.

(6) Check converter seating with steel scale and straightedge (Fig. 46). Surface of converter lugs should be 1/2 in. to rear of straightedge when converter is fully seated.

(7) Temporarily secure converter with C-clamp.

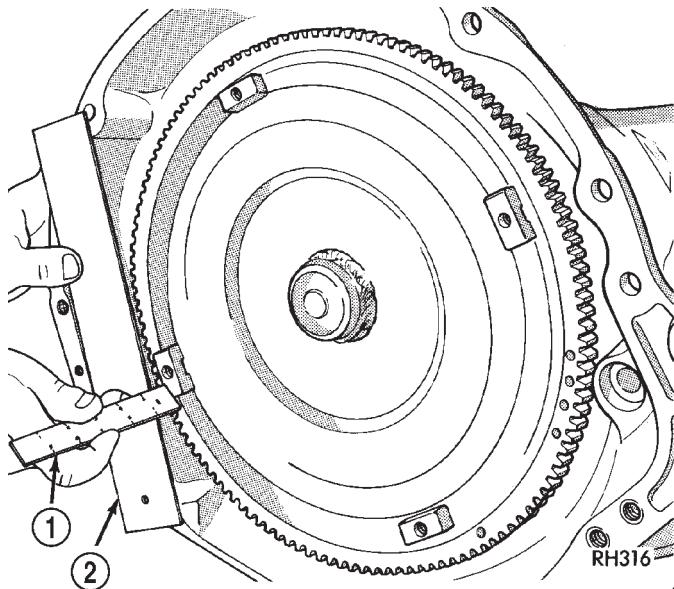


Fig. 46 Typical Method Of Checking Converter Seating

1 – SCALE

2 – STRAIGHTEDGE

(8) Position transmission on jack and secure it with chains.

(9) Check condition of converter driveplate. Replace the plate if cracked, distorted or damaged. **Also be sure transmission dowel pins are seated in engine block and protrude far enough to hold transmission in alignment.**

(10) Apply a light coating of Mopar® High Temp Grease to the torque converter hub pocket in the rear

(11) Raise transmission and align converter with drive plate and converter housing with engine block.

(12) Move transmission forward. Then raise, lower or tilt transmission to align converter housing with engine block dowels.

(13) Carefully work transmission forward and over engine block dowels until converter hub is seated in crankshaft.

(14) Install two bolts to attach converter housing to engine.

(15) Install remaining torque converter housing to engine bolts. Tighten to 68 N·m (50 ft.lbs.).

(16) Install rear transmission crossmember. Tighten crossmember to frame bolts to 68 N·m (50 ft.lbs.).

(17) Install rear support to transmission. Tighten bolts to 47 N·m (35 ft.lbs.).

(18) Lower transmission onto crossmember and install bolts attaching transmission mount to cross-member. Tighten clevis bracket to crossmember bolts to 47 N·m (35 ft.lbs.). Tighten the clevis bracket to rear support bolt to 68 N·m (50 ft.lbs.).

(19) Remove engine support fixture.

(20) Connect gearshift cable to transmission.

(21) Connect wires to solenoid and pressure switch assembly connector, input and output speed sensors, and line pressure sensor. Be sure transmission harnesses are properly routed.

CAUTION: It is essential that correct length bolts be used to attach the converter to the driveplate. Bolts that are too long will damage the clutch surface inside the converter.

(22) Install torque converter-to-driveplate bolts. Tighten bolts to 31 N·m (270 in. lbs.).

(23) Install starter motor and cooler line bracket.

(24) Connect cooler lines to transmission.

(25) Install transmission fill tube.

(26) Install exhaust components.

(27) Install transfer case. Tighten transfer case nuts to 35 N·m (26 ft.lbs.).

(28) Install the transmission collar onto the transmission and the engine. Tighten the bolts to 54 N·m (40 ft.lbs.).

(29) Align and connect propeller shaft(s).

(30) Adjust gearshift cable if necessary.

(31) Install any skid plates removed previously. Refer to Group 13, Frame and Bumpers, for the appropriate procedures.

(32) Lower vehicle.

(33) Fill transmission with Mopar® ATF Plus 3, Type 7176 fluid.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

TORQUE CONVERTER

REMOVAL

(1) Remove transmission and torque converter from vehicle.

(2) Place a suitable drain pan under the converter housing end of the transmission.

CAUTION: Verify that transmission is secure on the lifting device or work surface, the center of gravity of the transmission will shift when the torque converter is removed creating an unstable condition.

The torque converter is a heavy unit. Use caution when separating the torque converter from the transmission.

(3) Pull the torque converter forward until the center hub clears the oil pump seal.

(4) Separate the torque converter from the transmission.

INSTALLATION

Check converter hub and drive notches for sharp edges, burrs, scratches, or nicks. Polish the hub and notches with 320/400 grit paper or crocus cloth if necessary. The hub must be smooth to avoid damaging the pump seal at installation. Check that the torque converter hub o-ring on the 45RFE torque converter hub is not damaged. Replace if necessary.

(1) Lubricate oil pump seal lip with transmission fluid.

(2) Place torque converter in position on transmission.

CAUTION: Do not damage oil pump seal or bushing while inserting torque converter into the front of the transmission.

(3) Align torque converter to oil pump seal opening.

(4) Insert torque converter hub into oil pump.

(5) While pushing torque converter inward, rotate converter until converter is fully seated in the oil pump gears.

(6) Check converter seating with a scale and straightedge (Fig. 47). Surface of converter lugs should be 1/2 in. to rear of straightedge when converter is fully seated.

(7) If necessary, temporarily secure converter with C-clamp attached to the converter housing.

(8) Install the transmission in the vehicle.

(9) Fill the transmission with the recommended fluid.

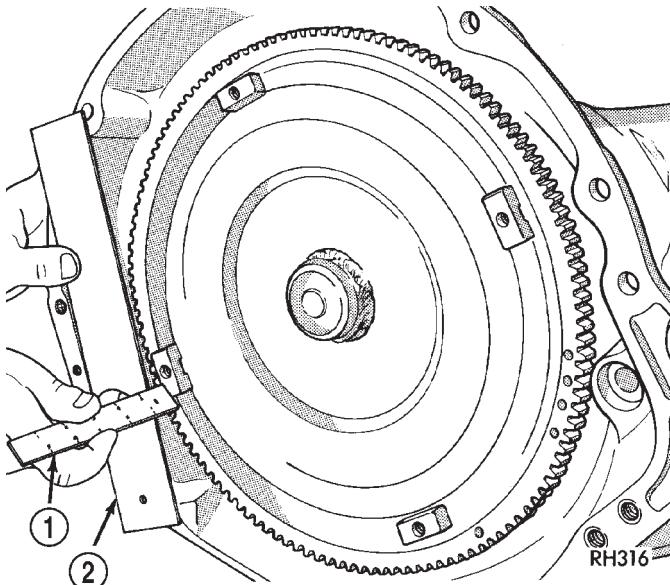


Fig. 47 Checking Torque Converter Seating—Typical

1 – SCALE

2 – STRAIGHTEDGE

OIL PUMP FRONT SEAL

REMOVAL

(1) Remove transmission from the vehicle.

(2) Remove the torque converter from the transmission.

(3) Using a screw mounted in a slide hammer, remove the oil pump front seal.

INSTALLATION

(1) Clean seal bore of the oil pump of any residue or particles from the original seal.

(2) Install new oil seal in the oil pump housing using Seal Installer C-3860-A (Fig. 48).

ADAPTER HOUSING SEAL

REMOVAL

(1) Remove the transfer case from the transmission.

(2) Using a screw mounted on a slide hammer, remove the adapter housing seal.

INSTALLATION

(1) Clean the adapter seal bore in the adapter housing of any residue or particles remaining from the original seal.

(2) Install new oil seal in the adapter housing using Seal Installer C-3860-A (Fig. 49).

(3) Install the transfer case onto the transmission.

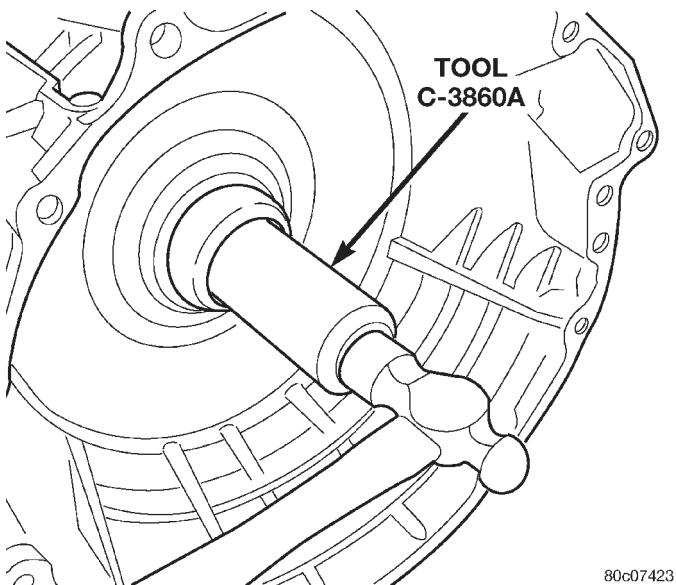


Fig. 48 Install Oil Pump Front Seal

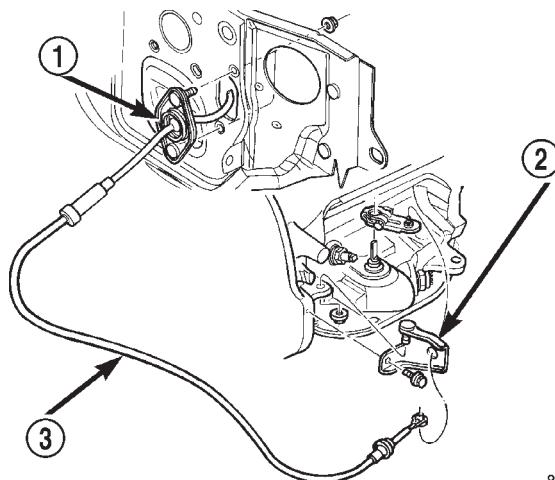


Fig. 50 Cable Mounting

- 1 – CABLE MOUNTING
- 2 – CABLE BRACKET AT TRANS.
- 3 – GEARSHIFT CABLE

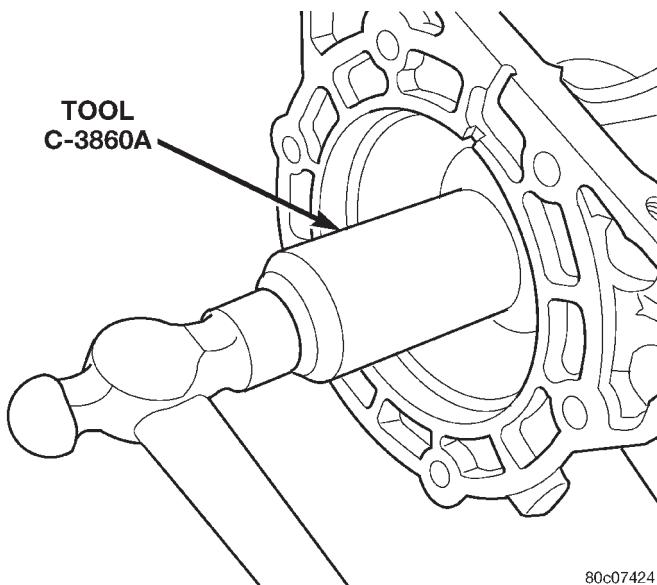


Fig. 49 Adapter Housing Seal Installation

GEARSHIFT CABLE

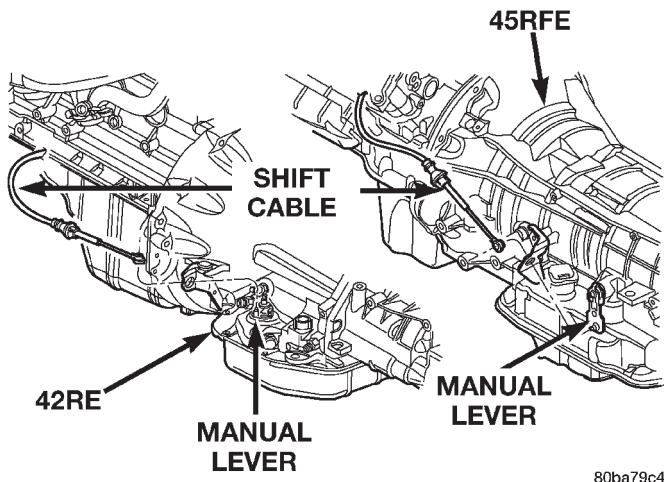
REMOVAL

- (1) Shift transmission into Park.
- (2) Remove nuts retaining the shift cable housing to the dash panel (Fig. 50).
- (3) Disconnect cable at lower column lever and feed cable through dash panel opening to underside of vehicle (Fig. 51).
- (4) Raise vehicle.
- (5) Disengage cable eyelet at transmission shift lever and pull cable adjuster out of mounting bracket (Fig. 52). Remove old cable from vehicle.

INSTALLATION

- (1) Snap the cable into the transmission bracket so the retaining ears are engaged and connect cable end fitting onto the manual control lever ball stud.
- (2) Lower vehicle.
- (3) Route cable through hole in dash panel. Seat cable bracket to dash panel. Install retaining nuts to cable housing bracket studs inside the vehicle at the dash panel.
- (4) Place the auto transmission manual shift control lever in "Park" detent (rearmost) position and rotate prop shaft to ensure transmission is in park.
- (5) Connect shift cable to shifter lever by snapping cable retaining ears into shifter bracket and press cable end fitting into lever.
- (6) Check for proper operation of Park/Neutral switch.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)



80ba79c4

Fig. 52 Shift Cable at the Transmission

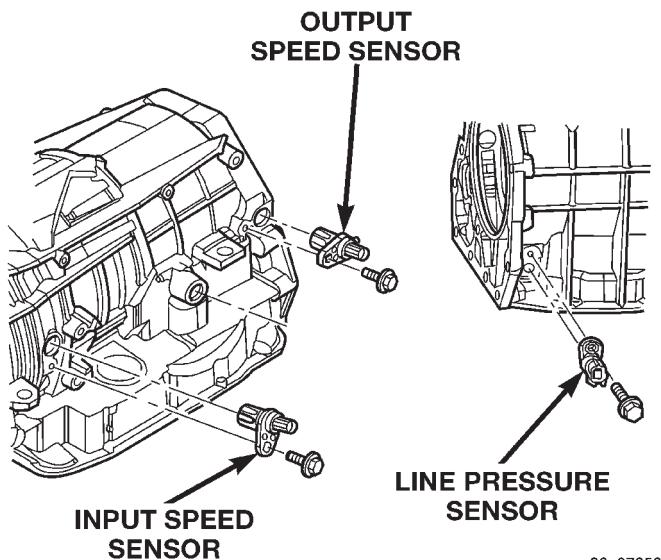
- (7) If the gearshift cable is out of adjustment, refer to Adjustments section.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

TRANSMISSION

DISASSEMBLY

- (1) Drain fluid from transmission.
- (2) Clean exterior of transmission with suitable solvent or pressure washer.
- (3) Remove the torque converter from the transmission.
- (4) Remove the manual shift lever from the transmission.
- (5) Remove the input, output, and line pressure sensors from the transmission case (Fig. 53).

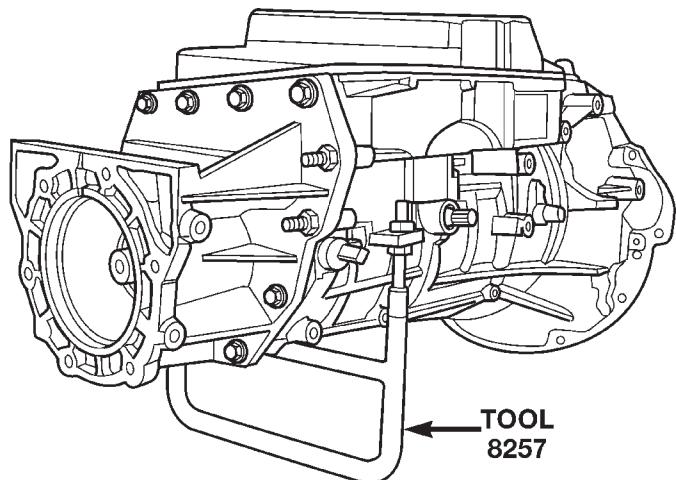


80c07350

Fig. 53 Remove Input, Output, and Line Pressure Sensors

- (6) Inspect the ends of the sensors for debris, which may indicate the nature of the transmission failure.

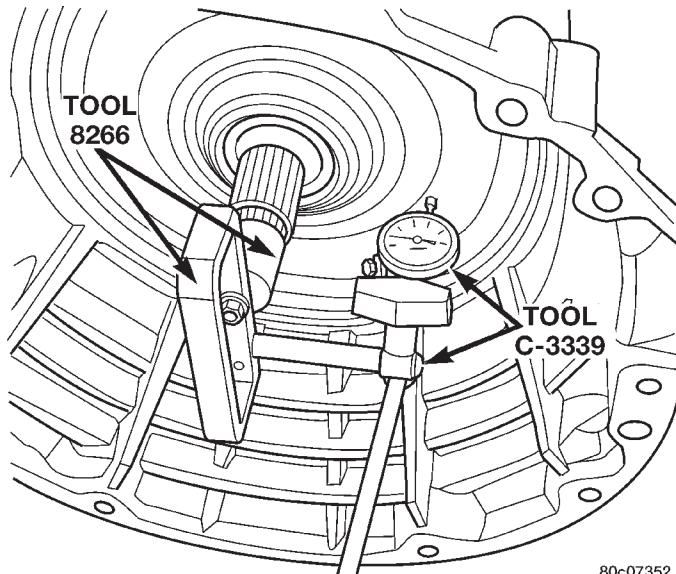
- (7) Install Support Stand 8257 onto the transmission case (Fig. 54).



80c07351

Fig. 54 Install Support Stand—Tool 8257

- (8) Using Adapter 8266-1 from End-Play Tool Set 8266 and Dial Indicator C-3339, measure and record the input shaft end-play (Fig. 55).



80c07352

Fig. 55 Measure Input Shaft End Play

NOTE: When measuring the input shaft end-play, two "stops" will be felt. When the input shaft is pushed inward and the dial indicator zeroed, the first "stop" felt when the input shaft is pulled outward is the movement of the input shaft in the input clutch housing hub. This value should not be included in the end-play measured value and therefore must be recorded and subtracted from the dial indicator reading.

(9) Remove the bolts holding the transmission extension/adapter housing to the transmission case.

(10) Remove the extension/adapter housing from the transmission case.

(11) Using Alignment Plate 8261, Adapter 8266-17 from End-Play Tool Set 8266 and Dial Indicator C-3339, measure and record the output shaft end-play (Fig. 56).

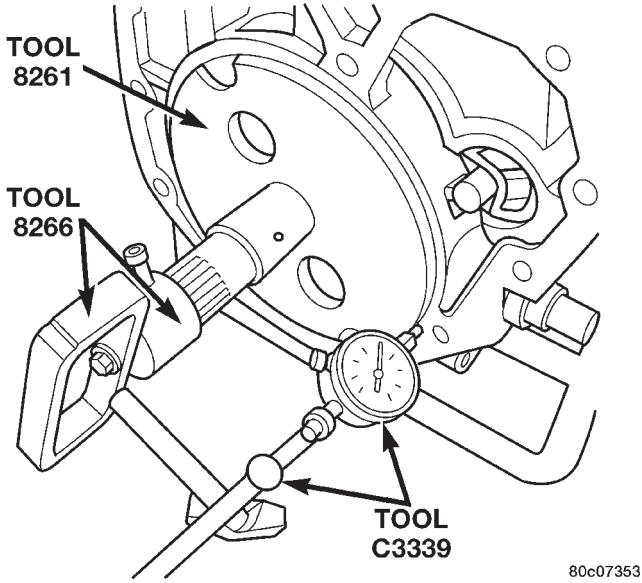


Fig. 56 Measure Output Shaft End Play

(12) Remove the bolts holding the transmission oil pan to the transmission case.

(13) Remove the transmission oil pan from the transmission case.

(14) Remove the primary oil filter and the oil cooler filter (Fig. 57).

(15) Remove the cooler bypass valve.

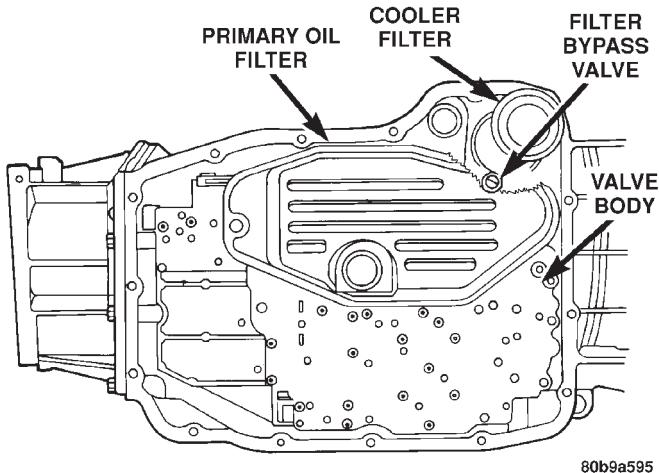


Fig. 57 Remove Primary Oil and Cooler Filters

(16) Remove the bolts holding the valve body to the transmission case (Fig. 58).

(17) Remove the valve body from the transmission case.

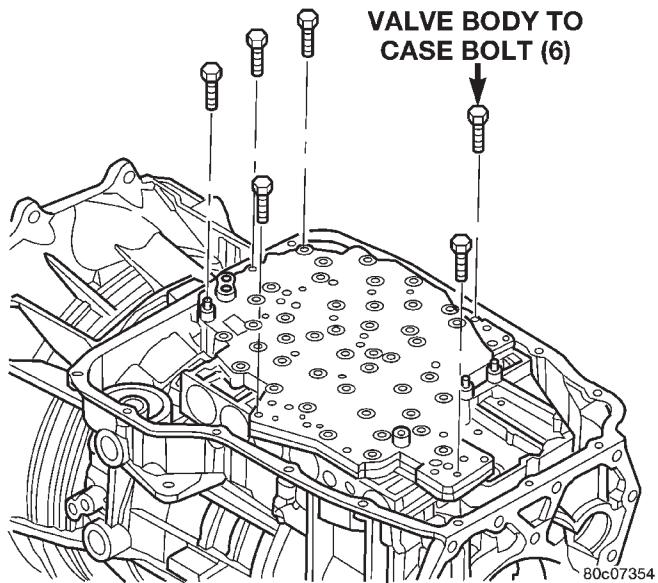


Fig. 58 Remove Valve Body Assembly

(18) Remove the outer snap-ring securing the transmission front cover into the transmission case (Fig. 59).

(19) Remove the inner snap-ring securing the transmission front cover to the oil pump (Fig. 59).

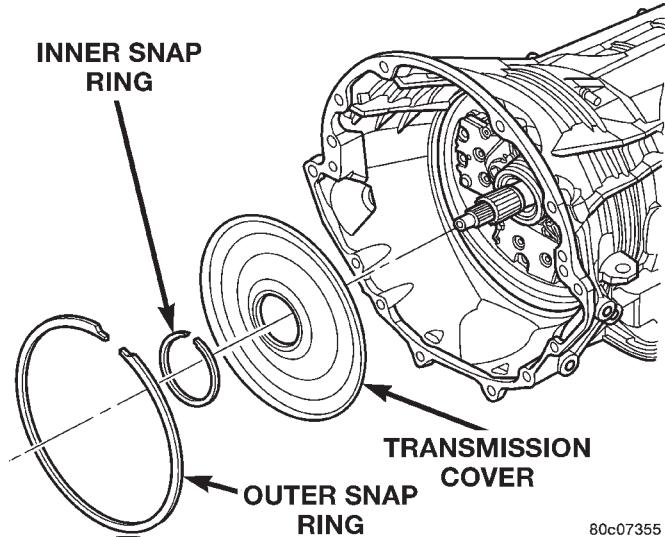


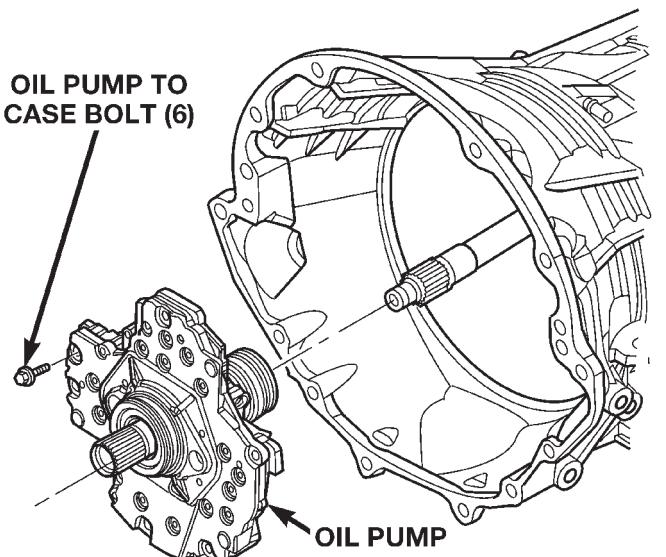
Fig. 59 Remove Transmission Front Cover

(20) Reaching through a case opening in the valve body area with a long blunted tool, remove the transmission front cover from the transmission case.

(21) Remove the bolts holding the oil pump into the transmission case (Fig. 60).

(22) Remove the oil pump. Hold inward on the input shaft to prevent pulling the input clutch assembly with the oil pump (Fig. 60).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



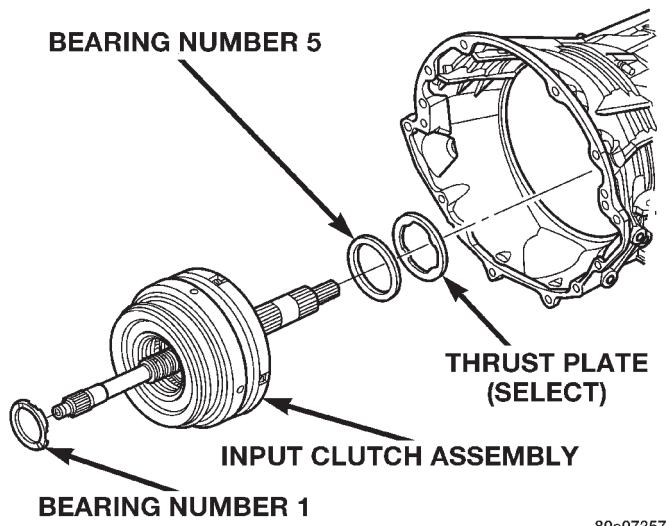
80c07356

Fig. 60 Remove Oil Pump

(23) Remove the number 1 bearing from the input clutch assembly (Fig. 61).

(24) Remove the input clutch assembly from the transmission case (Fig. 61).

(25) Remove the number 5 bearing and selective thrust plate from the input clutch assembly (Fig. 61), or the 4C clutch retainer/bulkhead.



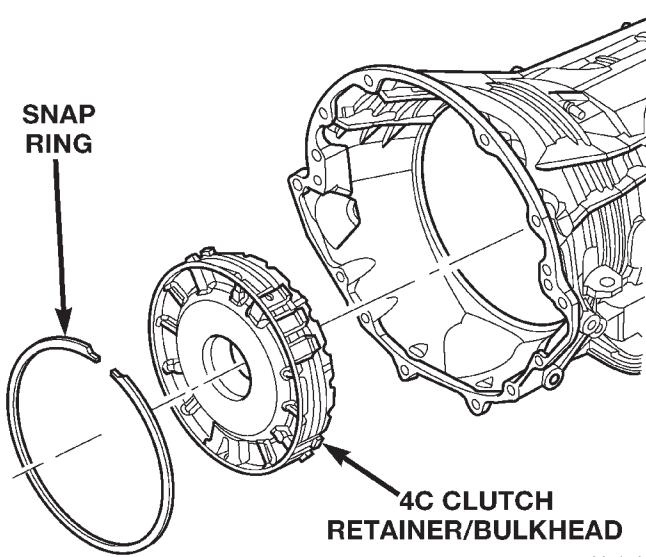
80c07357

Fig. 61 Remove Input Clutch Assembly

(26) Remove the 4C clutch retainer/bulkhead tapered snap-ring from the transmission case (Fig. 62).

(27) Remove the 4C clutch retainer/bulkhead from the transmission case (Fig. 62).

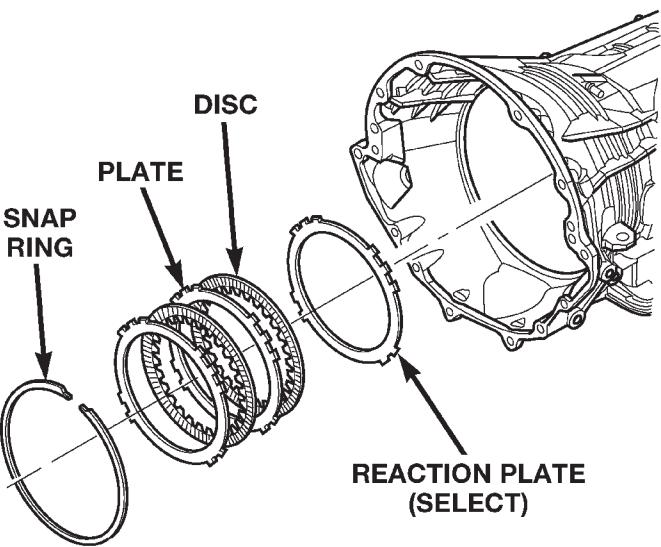
(28) Remove the front 2C clutch pack snap-ring from the transmission case (Fig. 63).



80c07358

Fig. 62 Remove 4C Clutch Retainer/Bulkhead

(29) Remove the 2C clutch pack from the transmission case (Fig. 63).



80c07359

Fig. 63 Remove 2C Clutch Pack

(30) Remove the rear selective plate and number 6 bearing from the reaction annulus (Fig. 64).

(31) Remove the reaction annulus from the reaction planetary carrier (Fig. 64).

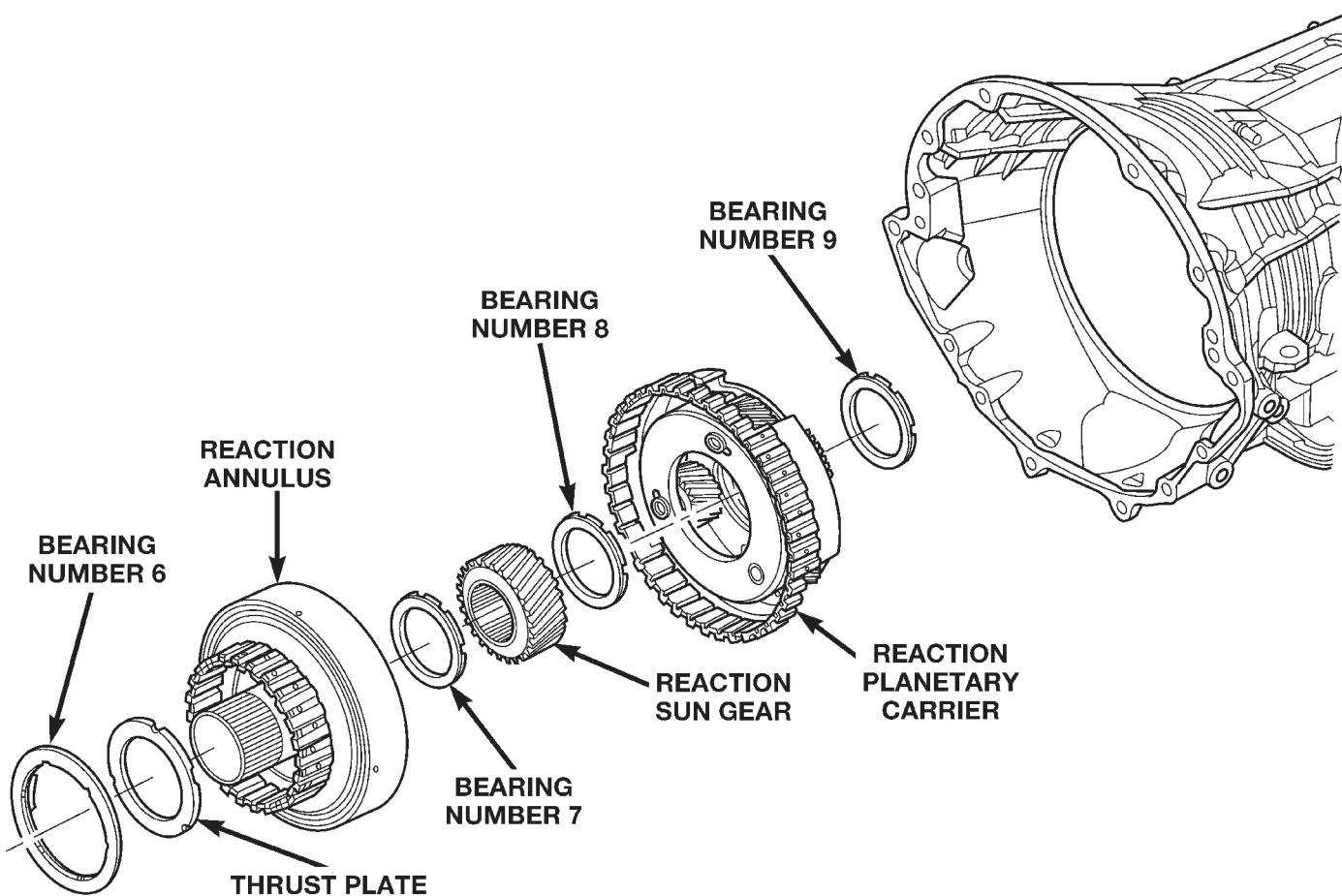
(32) Remove the number 7 bearing (Fig. 64).

(33) Remove the reaction sun gear (Fig. 64).

(34) Remove the number 8 bearing from the reaction planetary carrier (Fig. 64).

(35) Remove the reaction planetary carrier (Fig. 64). Note that this planetary gear set has three pinion gears.

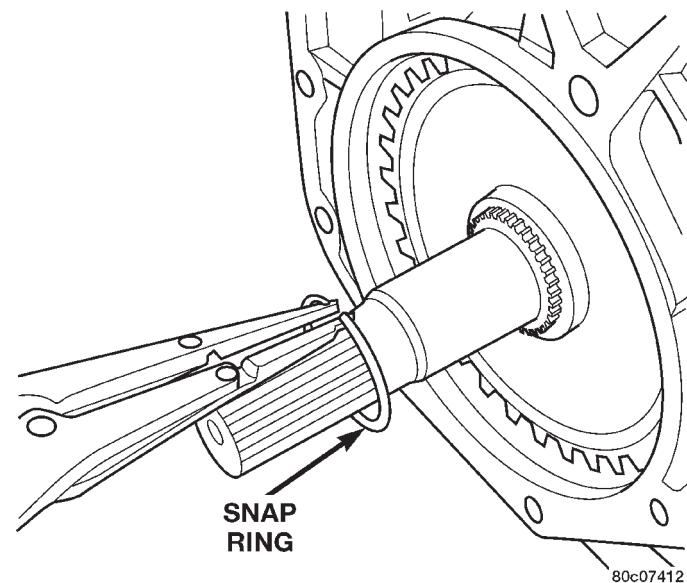
(36) Remove the number 9 bearing from the reverse planetary gear set (Fig. 64).



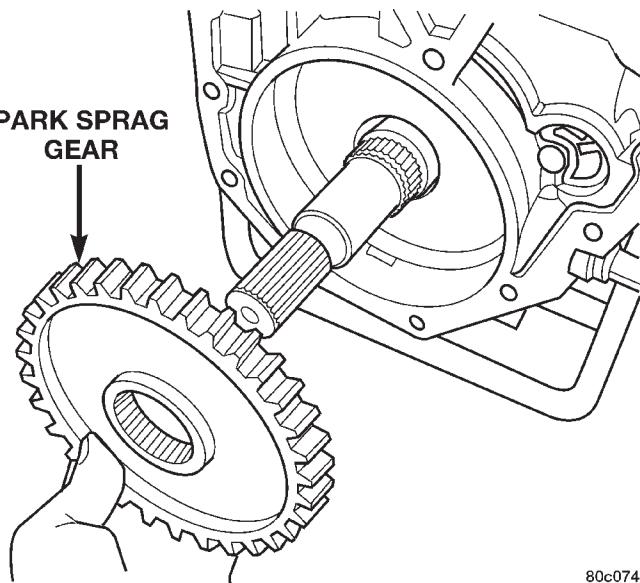
80c07031

Fig. 64 Remove Reaction Annulus and Carrier

(37) Remove the snap-ring holding the park sprag gear onto the output shaft (Fig. 65).



(38) Remove the park sprag gear from the output shaft (Fig. 66).



80c07413

Fig. 65 Remove Park Sprag Snap Ring

Fig. 66 Remove Park Sprag Gear

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(39) Remove the input/reverse planetary assembly (Fig. 67).

(40) Remove the number 12 bearing from the input/reverse planetary assembly (Fig. 67).

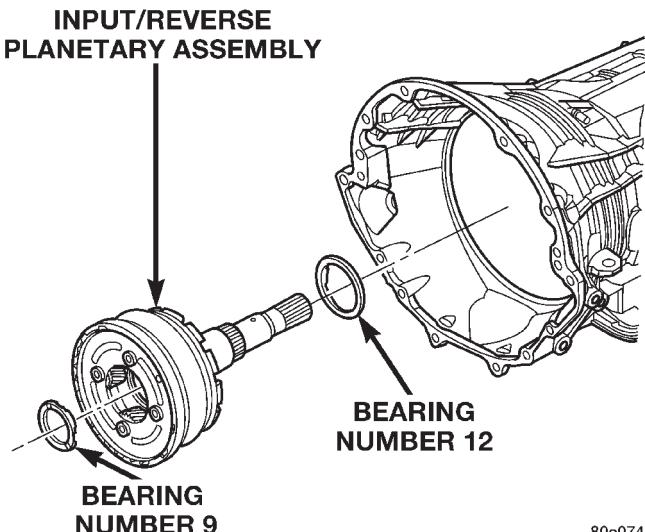


Fig. 67 Remove Input/Reverse Planetary Assembly

(41) Remove the snap-ring holding the low/reverse clutch retainer into the transmission case (Fig. 68).

(42) Remove the low/reverse clutch retainer from the transmission case (Fig. 68).

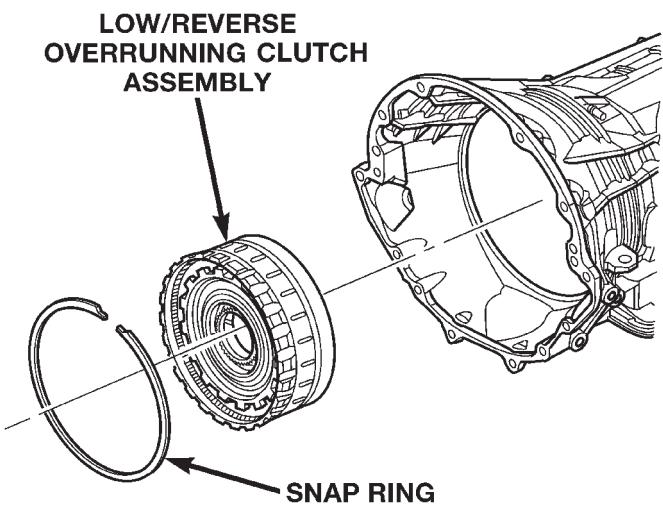


Fig. 68 Remove Low/Reverse Clutch Retainer

(43) Remove the park pawl rod and e-clip (Fig. 69).

(44) Remove the park pawl rod guide snap-ring (Fig. 69).

(45) Remove the park pawl rod guide (Fig. 69).

(46) Remove the park pawl pivot shaft, park pawl, and spring (Fig. 69).

(47) Remove the manual selector shaft (Fig. 69).

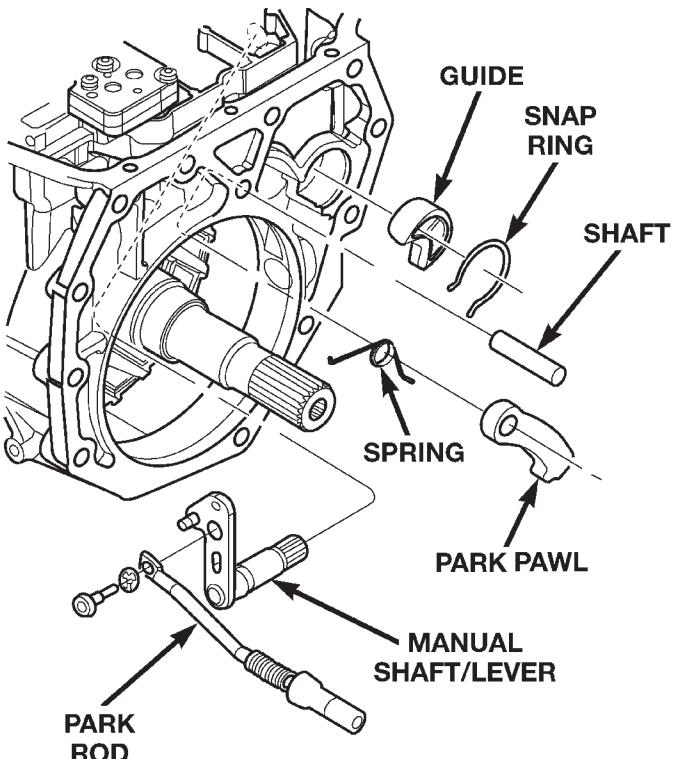


Fig. 69 Manual Shaft/Park Lock Components

(48) Remove the manual selector shaft seal.

(49) Remove the dipstick tube seal.

ASSEMBLY

(1) Clean and inspect all components. Replace any components which show evidence of excessive wear or scoring.

(2) Install the cooler filter bypass valve.

(3) Torque the bypass valve to specification. The valve uses a tapered pipe thread and excessive torque can damage the transmission case. Tighten the cooler filter bypass valve to 11.3 N·m (100 in.lbs.).

(4) Install a new selector shaft seal using Seal Installer 8253 (Fig. 70).

(5) Install the manual selector shaft and retaining screw. Tighten the manual selector shaft retaining screw to 28 N·m (250 in.lbs.).

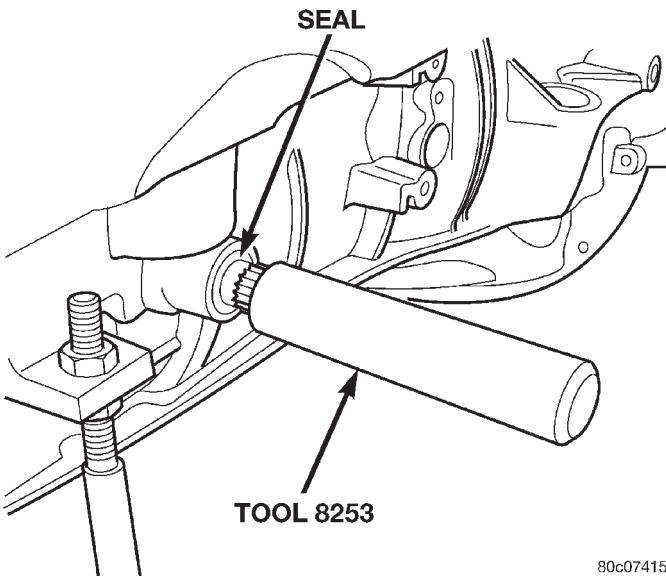
(6) Install the park pawl, spring, and shaft (Fig. 69).

(7) Install the park rod and e-clip (Fig. 69).

(8) Install the park rod guide and snap-ring (Fig. 69).

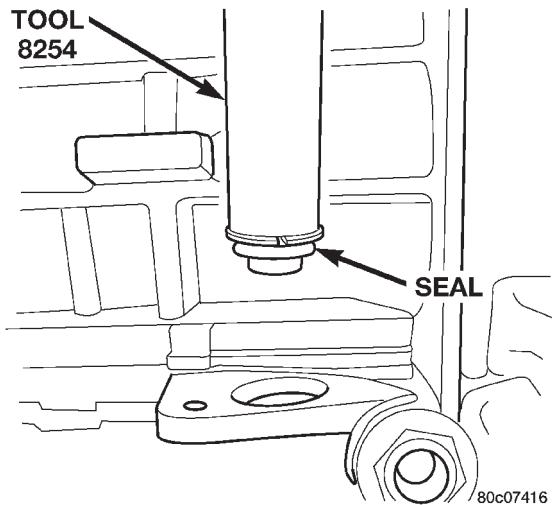
(9) Install a new dipstick tube seal using Seal Installer 8254 (Fig. 71).

NOTE: Before final assembly of transmission centerline, the 2C/4C clutch components should be installed into position and measured/adjusted as follows:



80c07415

Fig. 70 Install Selector Shaft Seal Using Tool 8253



80c07416

Fig. 71 Install Dipstick Tube Seal Using Tool 8254

(10) Install the 2C reaction plate into the transmission case (Fig. 63). The reaction plate is selective and directional. The plate must be installed with the flat side toward the front.

(11) Install the 2C clutch pack into the transmission case (Fig. 63).

(12) Install the flat 2C clutch snap-ring into the transmission case (Fig. 63).

(13) Install the 4C retainer/bulkhead into the transmission case. Make sure that the oil feed holes are pointing toward the valve body area.

(14) Install the 4C retainer/bulkhead tapered snap-ring into the transmission case. Make sure that the open ends of the snap-ring are located in the case opening toward the valve body area.

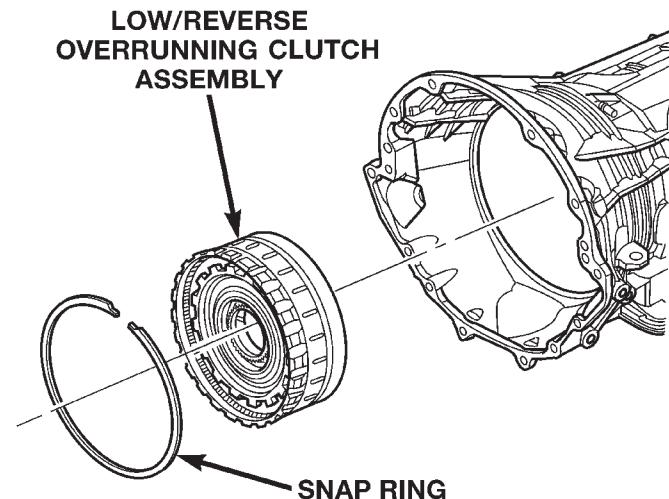
(15) Using a feeler gauge through the opening in the rear of the transmission case, measure the 2C clutch pack clearance between the 2C reaction plate

and the transmission case at four different points. The average of these measurements is the 2C clutch pack clearance. Adjust the clearance as necessary. The correct clutch clearance is 0.533–1.27 mm (0.021–0.050 in.). The reaction plate is selective. Install the chosen reaction plate and re-measure the clutch clearance to verify the selection.

(16) Remove the 4C retainer/bulkhead and all of the 2C clutch components from the transmission case.

(17) Install the low/reverse clutch assembly (Fig. 72). Make sure that the oil feed hole points toward the valve body area and that the bleed orifice is aligned with the notch in the rear of the transmission case.

(18) Install the snap-ring to hold the low/reverse clutch retainer into the transmission case (Fig. 72). The snap-ring is tapered and must be installed with the tapered side forward. Once installed, verify that the snap-ring is fully seated in the snap-ring groove.



80c07411

Fig. 72 Install Low/Reverse Clutch Retainer

(19) Air check the low/reverse clutch and verify correct overrunning clutch operation.

(20) Install the reverse/input planetary assembly through the low/reverse clutch assembly (Fig. 73).

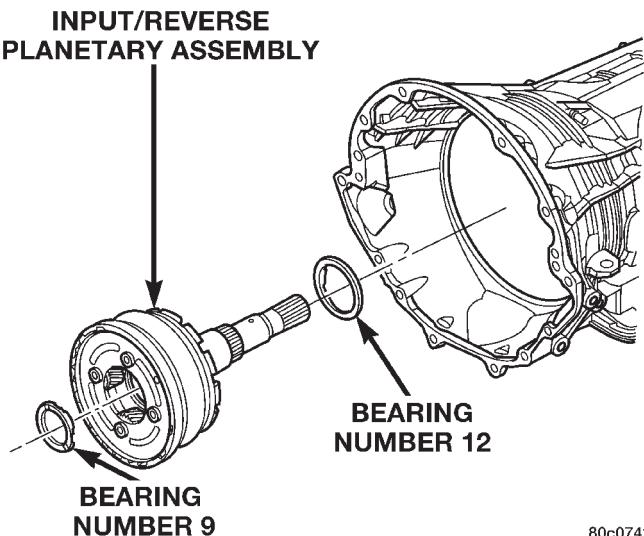
(21) Install the number 12 bearing over the output shaft of the rear planetary gear set and onto the low/reverse clutch assembly. The flat side of the bearing goes toward the clutch assembly.

(22) Install the park sprag onto the output shaft (Fig. 74).

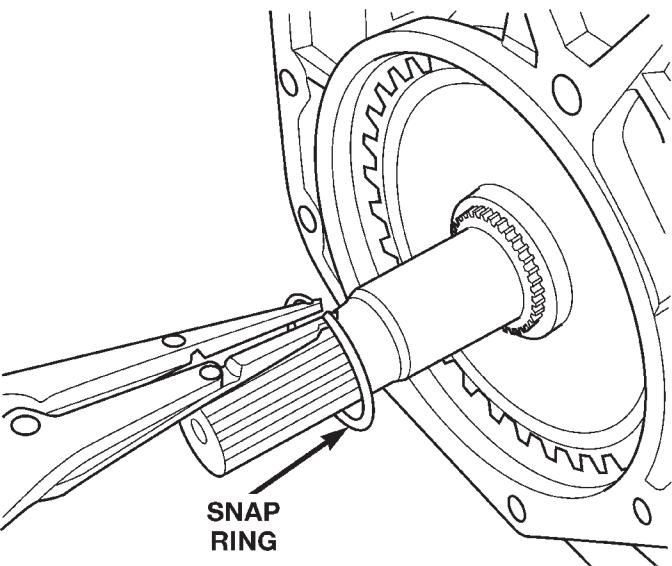
(23) Install the snap-ring to hold the park sprag onto the output shaft (Fig. 75).

(24) Install the 2C reaction plate into the transmission case (Fig. 76). The reaction plate is selective and directional. The plate must be installed with the flat side toward the front.

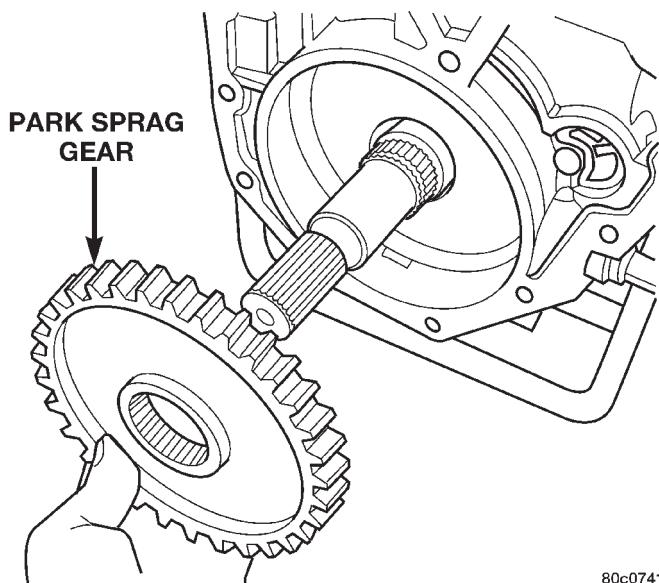
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



80c07410

Fig. 73 Install Input/Reverse Planetary Assembly

80c07412

Fig. 75 Install Park Sprag Snap Ring

80c07413

Fig. 74 Install Park Sprag Gear

(25) Install the 2C clutch pack into the transmission case (Fig. 76).

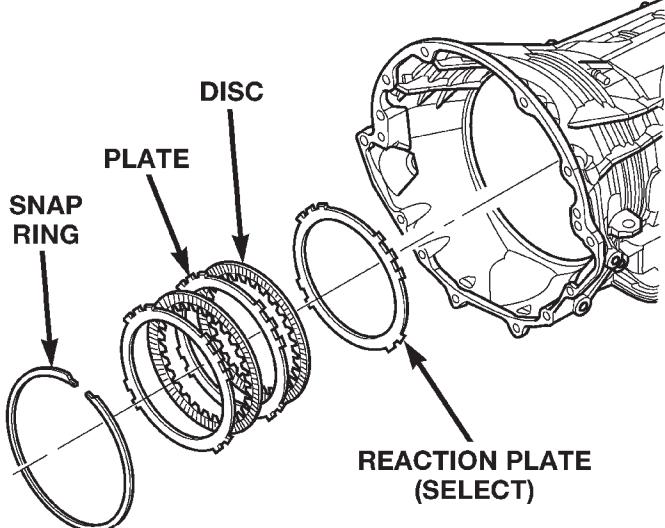
(26) Install the number 8 bearing inside the reaction carrier with the round side against the planetary carrier.

(27) Install the reaction planetary gear set and the number 9 bearing into the transmission case (Fig. 77).

(28) Install the flat 2C clutch snap-ring into the transmission case (Fig. 76).

(29) Install the reaction sun gear into the reaction planetary gear set with the small shoulder facing the front of the transmission (Fig. 77).

(30) Install the number 7 bearing onto the reaction sun gear with the flat side against the sun gear (Fig. 77).



80c07359

Fig. 76 Install 2C Clutch Pack

(31) Install the output shaft selective thrust plate onto the reaction annulus with the oil grooves facing the annulus gear and the tabs and notches aligned as shown in (Fig. 78).

(32) Install the number 6 bearing against the output shaft selective spacer with the flat side against the spacer (Fig. 77).

(33) Install the reaction annulus into the reaction planetary gear set (Fig. 77).

(34) Install the 4C retainer/bulkhead into the transmission case. Make sure that the oil feed holes are pointing toward the valve body area. Rotate the reaction annulus during the installation of the 4C retainer/bulkhead to ease installation.

(35) Install the 4C retainer/bulkhead tapered snap-ring into the transmission case (Fig. 79). Make

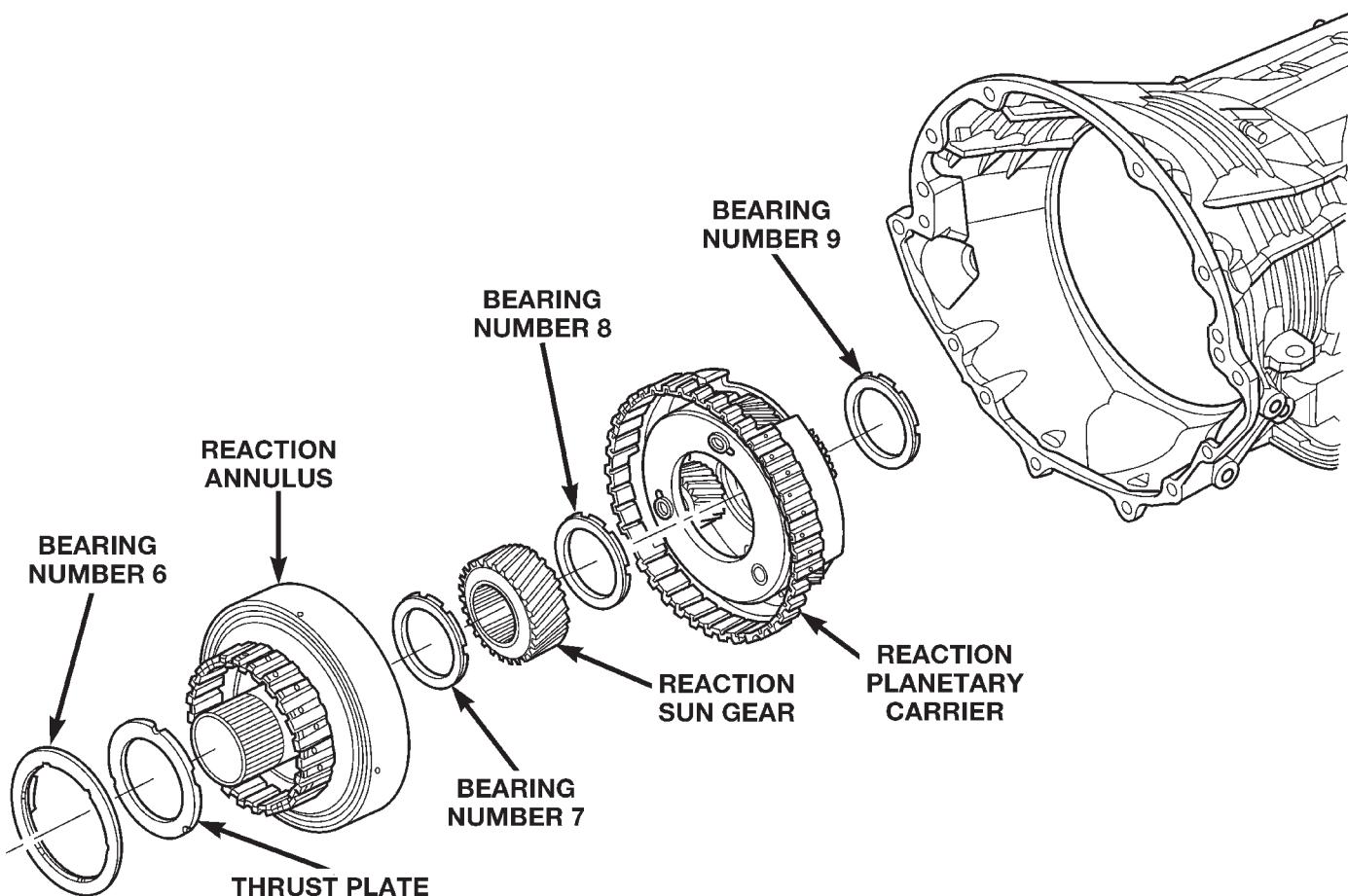


Fig. 77 Install Reaction Annulus and Carrier

80c07031

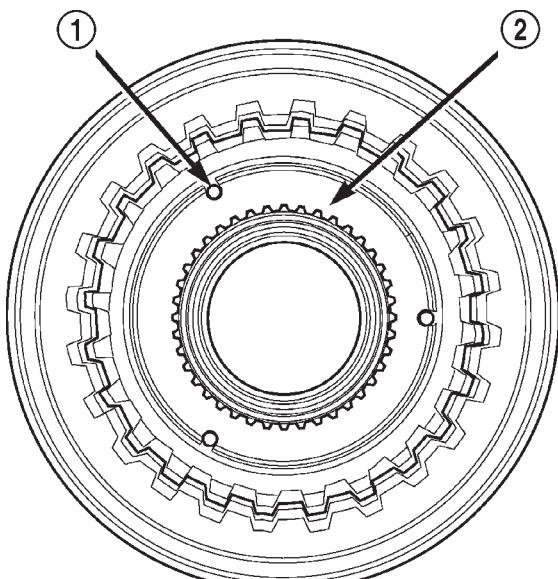


Fig. 78 Thrust Plate Alignment 80c07425

sure that the open ends of the snap-ring are located in the case opening toward the valve body area.

- (36) Air check the 2C and 4C clutch operation.
- (37) Using Alignment Plate 8261, Adapter 8266-17 from End-Play Tool Set 8266 and Dial Indicator

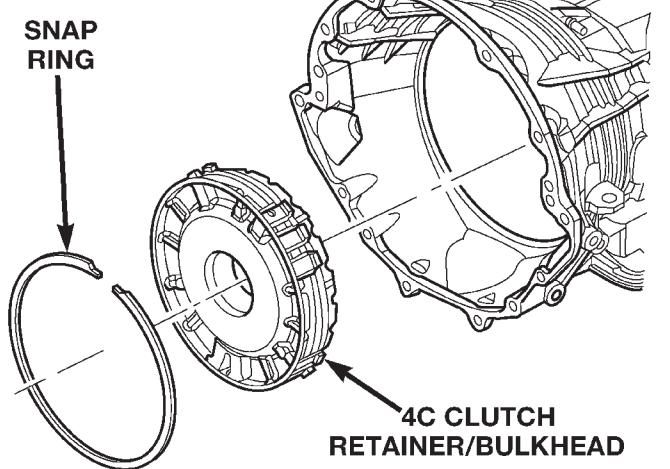
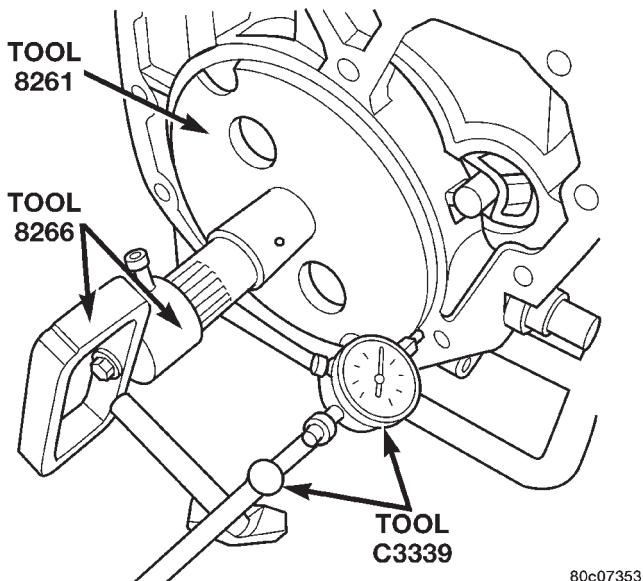


Fig. 79 Install 4C Clutch Retainer/Bulkhead

80c07358

C-3339, measure and record the output shaft end-play (Fig. 80). The correct output shaft end-play is 0.53–0.78 mm (0.021–0.031 in.). Adjust as necessary. Install the chosen output shaft selective spacer and re-measure end-play to verify selection.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 80 Measure Output Shaft End Play**

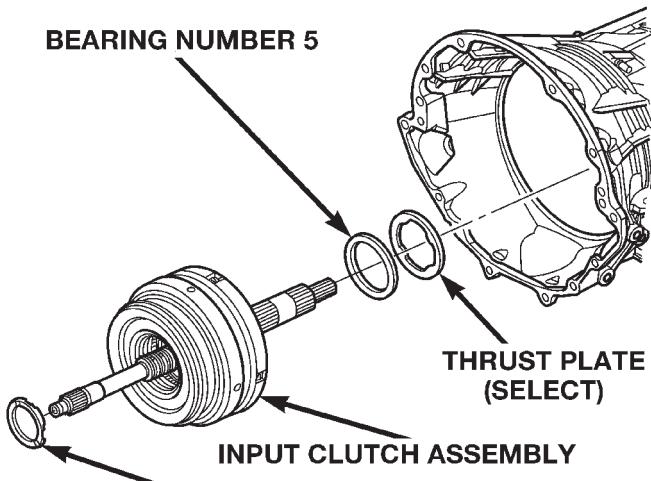
(38) Apply a bead of RTV silicone and install the extension/adapter housing onto the transmission case.

(39) Install and torque the bolts to hold the extension/adapter housing onto the transmission case. The correct torque is 54 N·m (40 ft.lbs.).

(40) Install the number 5 bearing and spacer onto the 4C retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 81).

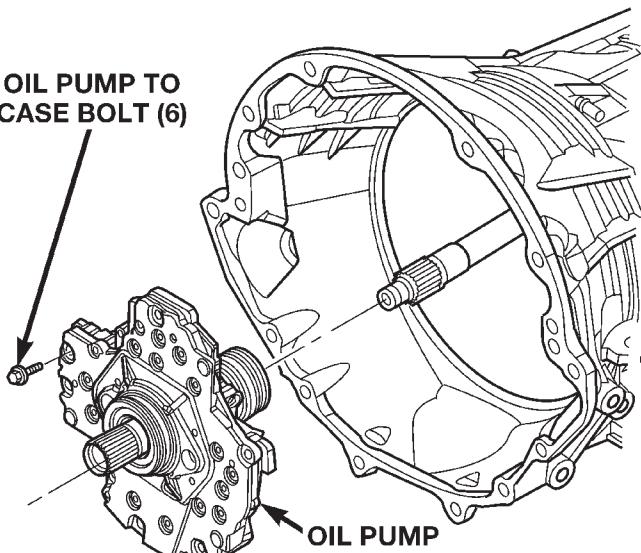
(41) Install the input clutch assembly into the transmission case (Fig. 81). Make sure that the input clutch assembly is fully installed by performing a visual inspection through the input speed sensor hole. If the tone wheel on the input clutch assembly is visible, the assembly is fully installed.

(42) Install the number 1 bearing with the flat side down in the pocket of the input clutch assembly (Fig. 81).

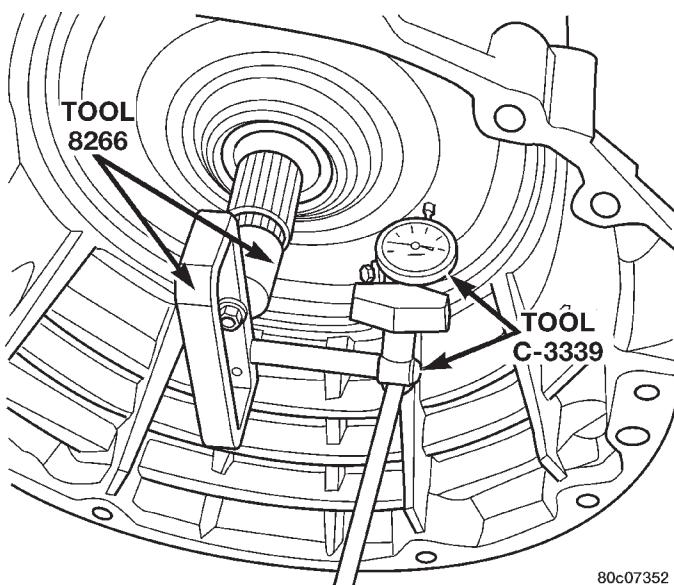
**Fig. 81 Install Input Clutch Assembly**

(43) Install the oil pump into the transmission case (Fig. 82).

(44) Install the bolts to hold the oil pump into the transmission case. Tighten the oil pump bolts to 28 N·m (250 in.lbs.).

**Fig. 82 Install Oil Pump**

(45) Using Adapter 8266-1 from End-Play Tool Set 8266 and Dial Indicator C-3339, measure and record the input shaft end-play (Fig. 83). The correct end-play is 0.79–1.07 mm (0.031–0.042 in.). Adjust as necessary. Install the chosen spacer on the number 5 bearing and re-measure end-play to verify selection.

**Fig. 83 Measure Input Shaft End Play**

NOTE: When measuring the input shaft end-play, two "stops" will be felt. When the input shaft is pushed inward and the dial indicator zeroed, the first "stop" felt when the input shaft is pulled outward is the movement of the input shaft in the input clutch housing hub. This value should not be included in the end-play measured value and therefore must be recorded and subtracted from the dial indicator reading.

(46) Install the transmission front cover into the transmission case (Fig. 84).

(47) Install the outer snap-ring to hold the transmission front cover into the transmission case (Fig. 84).

(48) Partially install the inner transmission front cover snap-ring onto the oil pump (Fig. 84).

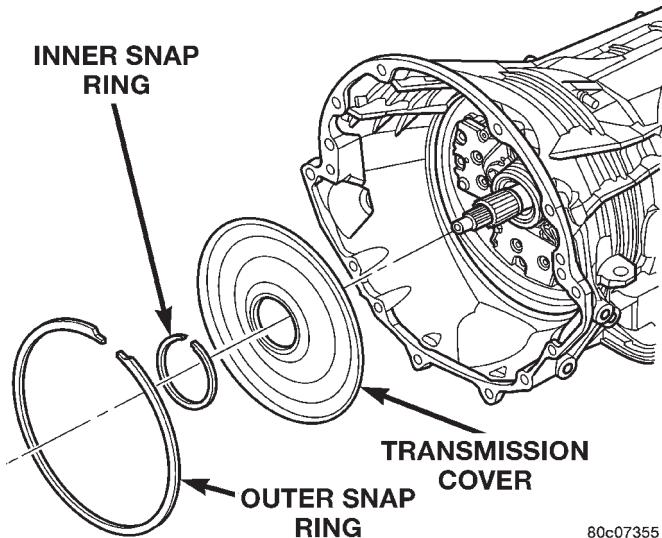


Fig. 84

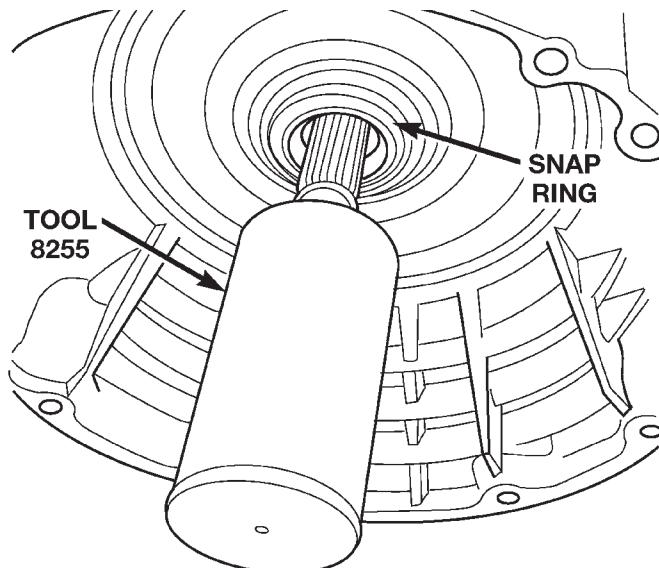
(49) Using Installer 8255, install the inner transmission front cover snap-ring the remainder of the way onto the oil pump (Fig. 85).

(50) Install the valve body (Fig. 86). Tighten the valve body to transmission case bolts to 12 N·m (105 in.lbs.).

(51) Install the primary oil filter and the oil cooler filter (Fig. 87). Tighten the screws to hold the primary oil filter to the valve body to 4.5 N·m (40 in.lbs.). Using Oil Filter Wrench 8321, tighten the cooler return oil filter to the transmission case to 14 N·m (125 in.lbs.).

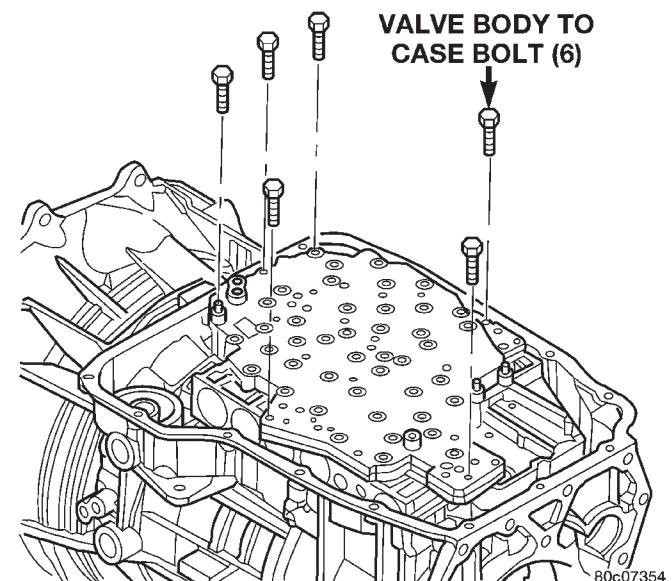
(52) Apply RTV silicone to the oil pan and install the transmission oil pan. Tighten the bolts to 12 N·m (105 in.lbs.).

(53) Install the input, output, and line pressure sensors (Fig. 88). Tighten the bolts to 12 N·m (105 in.lbs.).



80c07417

Fig. 85 Seat Snap Ring Using Tool 8255



80c07354

Fig. 86 Install Valve Body Assembly

(54) Install the manual shift lever from the transmission. Torque the retaining cross-bolt to 16 N·m (140 in.lbs.).

VALVE BODY

DISASSEMBLY

(1) Remove the screws holding the solenoid and pressure switch assembly to the valve body (Fig. 89). Do not remove the screws on the top of the solenoid and pressure switch assembly.

(2) Separate the solenoid and pressure switch assembly from the valve body.

(3) Remove the screw holding the detent spring (Fig. 90) onto the valve body.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

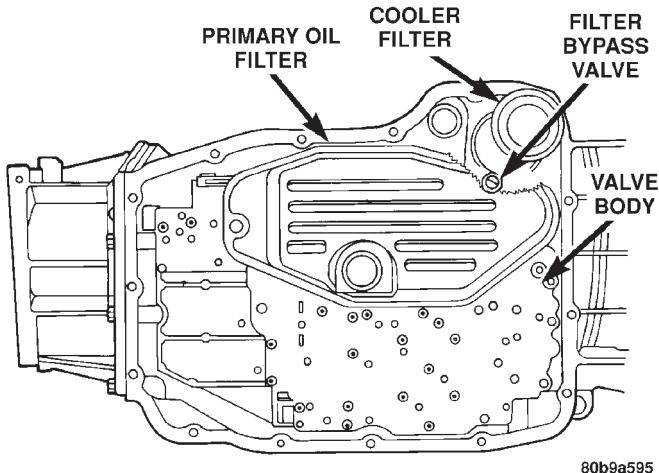


Fig. 87 Install Primary Oil and Cooler Filters

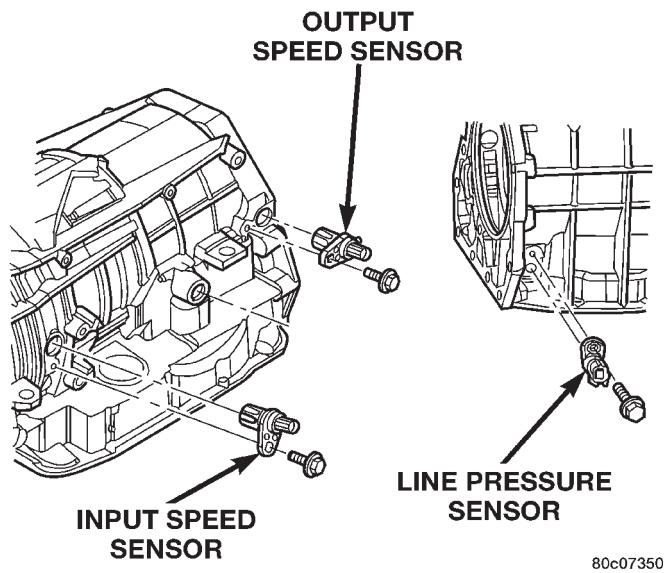


Fig. 88 Install Input, Output, and Line Pressure Sensors

- (4) Remove the detent spring from the valve body.
- (5) Remove the TRS selector plate from the valve body and the manual valve.
- (6) Remove the clutch passage seals from the valve body, if necessary.
- (7) Remove the screws holding the accumulator cover onto the valve body (Fig. 91).
- (8) Remove the accumulator springs and pistons from the valve body. Note which accumulator piston and spring belong in each location.
- (9) Place the valve body on the bench with the transfer plate upward.

NOTE: The valve body contains seven check balls. The transfer plate must be placed upward to prevent losing the check balls when the transfer plate is removed from the valve body.

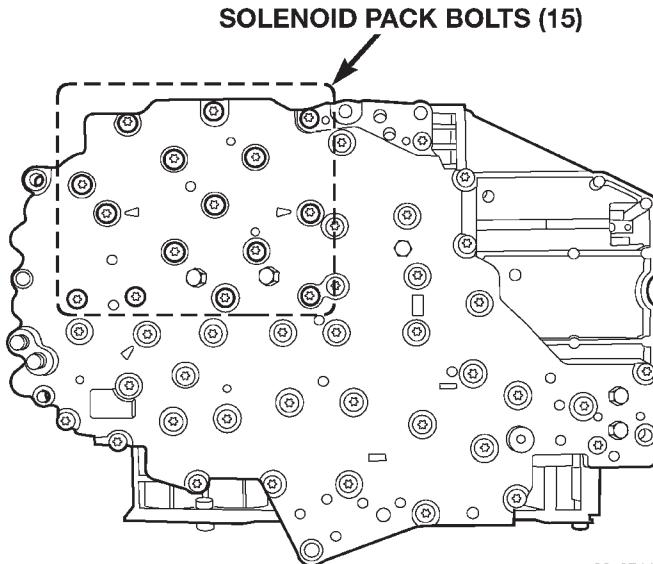


Fig. 89 Solenoid and Pressure Switch Assembly Screws

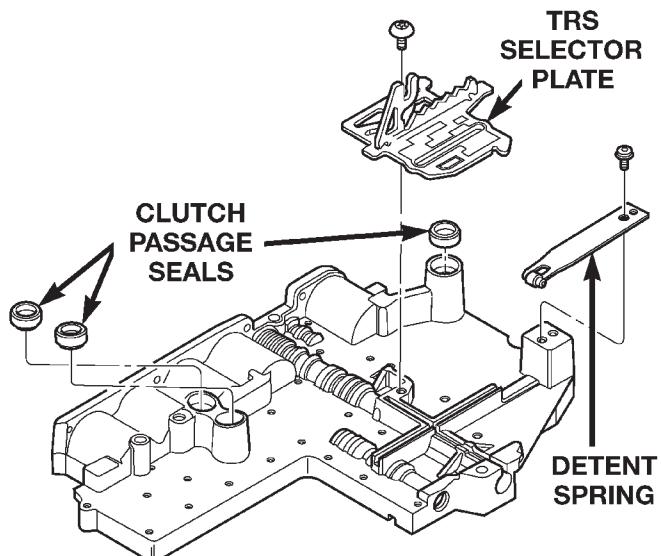
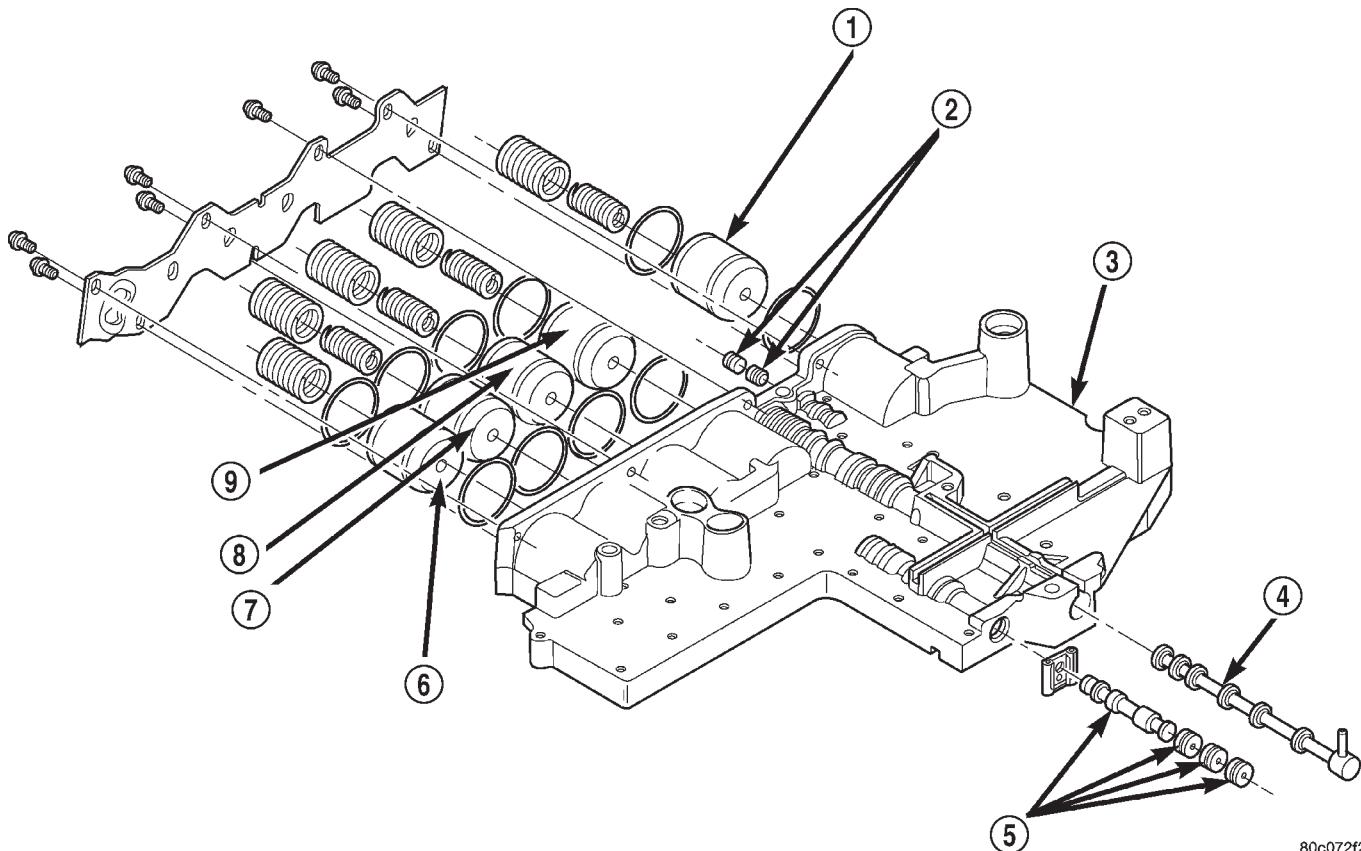


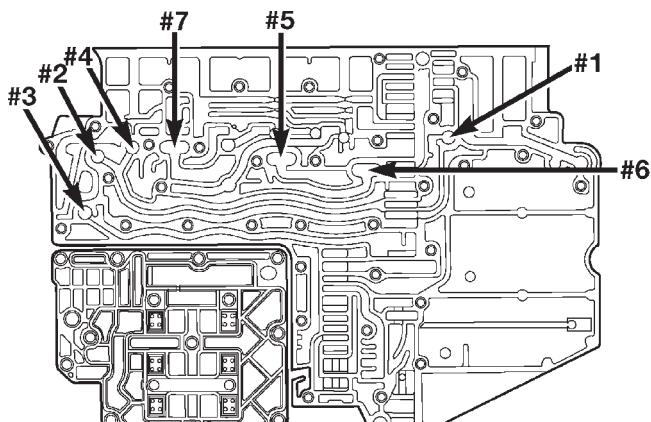
Fig. 90 Valve Body External Components

- (10) Remove the screws holding the valve body to the valve body transfer plate.
- (11) Remove the transfer plate from the valve body. Note the location of all check balls (Fig. 92).
- (12) Remove the check balls from the valve body.
- (13) Remove the retainers securing the solenoid switch valve, manual valve, and the low/reverse switch valve into the valve body and remove the associated valve and spring. Tag each valve and spring combination with location information to aid in assembly.



80c072f2

Fig. 91 Valve Body Components



80c072f1

Fig. 92 Check Ball Locations

ASSEMBLY

- (1) Lubricate valves, springs, and the housing valve bores with clean transmission fluid.
- (2) Install solenoid switch valve, manual valve, and the low/reverse switch valve into the valve body.
- (3) Install the retainers to hold each valve into the valve body.
- (4) Install the valve body check balls into their proper locations.
- (5) Position the transfer plate onto the valve body.

(6) Install the screws to hold the transfer plate to the valve body. Tighten the screws to 4.5 N·m (40 in. lbs.).

(7) Install the accumulator pistons and springs into the valve body in the location from which they were removed. Note that all accumulators except the overdrive have two springs. The overdrive accumulator piston has only one spring.

(8) Position the accumulator cover onto the valve body.

(9) Install the screws to hold the accumulator cover onto the valve body. Tighten the screws to 4.5 N·m (40 in. lbs.).

(10) Install the TRS selector plate onto the valve body and the manual valve.

(11) Install the solenoid and pressure switch assembly onto the valve body.

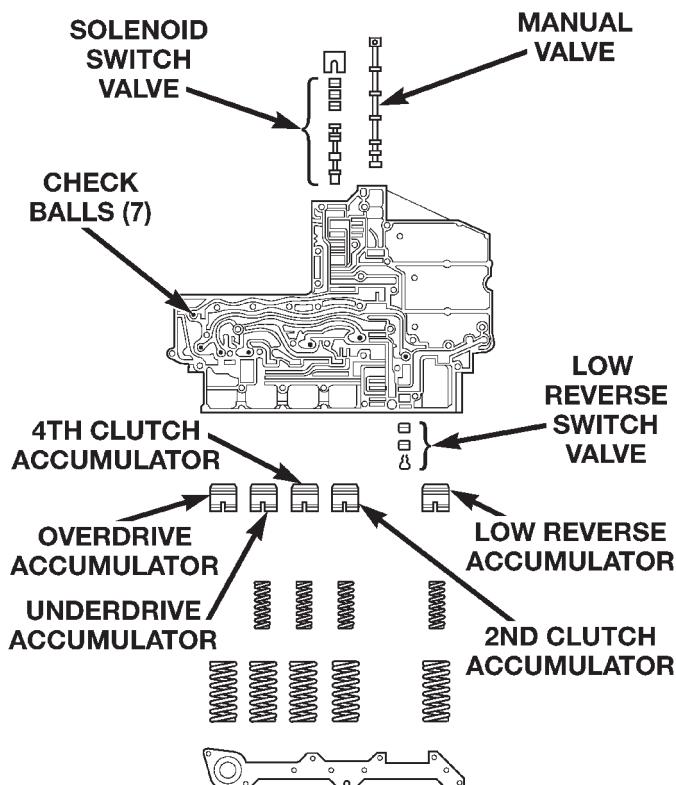
(12) Install the screws to hold the solenoid and pressure switch assembly onto the valve body. Tighten the screws to 5.7 N·m (50 in. lbs.). Tighten the screws adjacent to the arrows cast into the bottom of the transfer plate first.

(13) Position the detent spring onto the valve body.

(14) Install the screw to hold the detent spring onto the valve body. Tighten the screw to 4.5 N·m (40 in. lbs.).

(15) Install new clutch passage seals onto the valve body, if necessary.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 93 Valve Body Components****OIL PUMP****DISASSEMBLY**

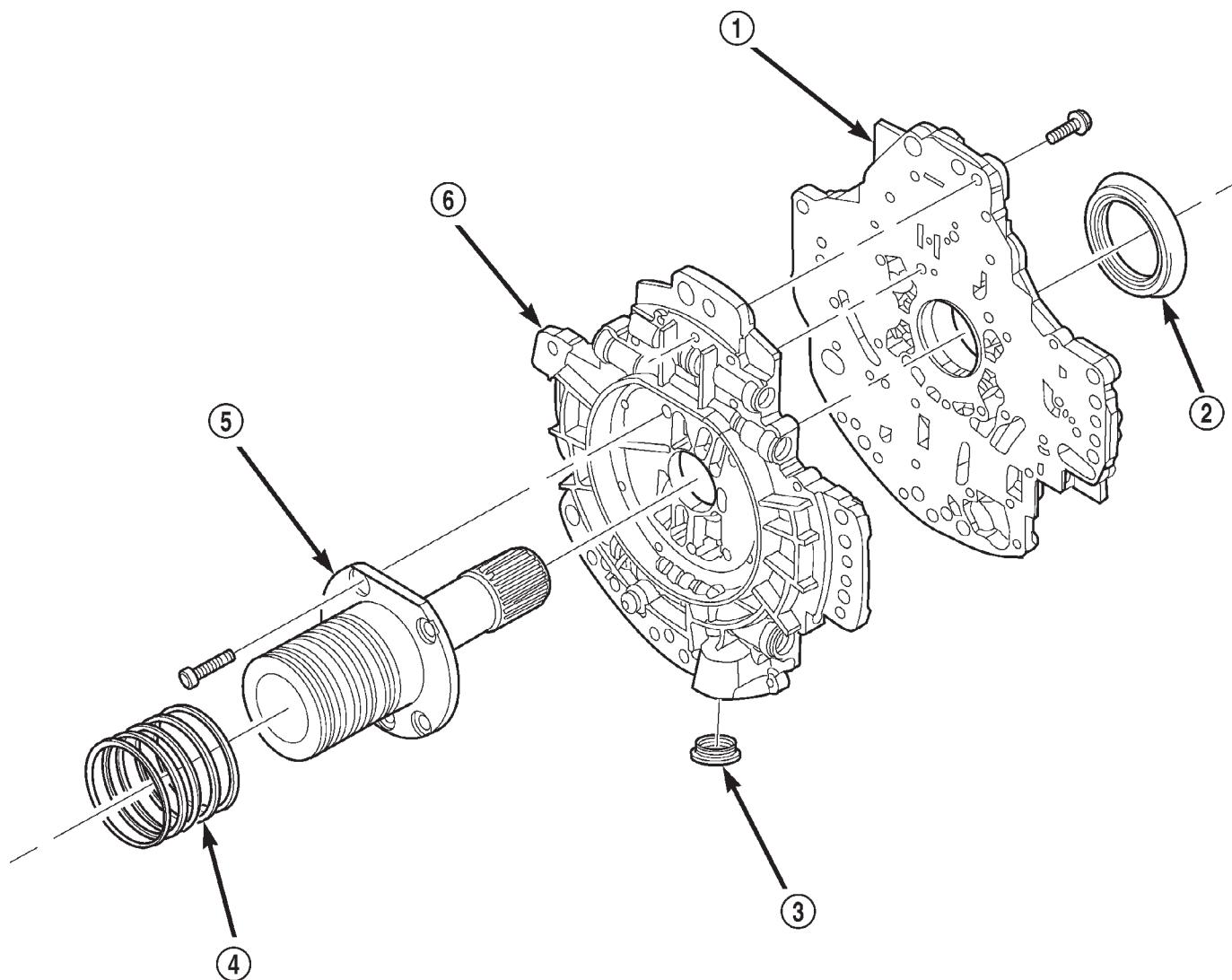
- (1) Remove the bolts holding the reaction shaft support to the oil pump (Fig. 94).
- (2) Remove the reaction shaft support from the oil pump (Fig. 94).
- (3) Remove all bolts holding the oil pump halves together (Fig. 94).
- (4) Using suitable prying tools, separate the oil pump sections by inserting the tools in the supplied areas and prying the halves apart.

NOTE: The oil pump halves are aligned to each other through the use of two dowels. Be sure to pry upward evenly to prevent damage to the oil pump components.

- (5) Remove the screws holding the separator plate onto the oil pump body (Fig. 95).
- (6) Remove the separator plate from the oil pump body (Fig. 95).
- (7) Mark all gears for location. The gears are select fit and if the oil pump is to be reused, the gears must be returned to their original locations.
- (8) Remove the oil pump gears from the oil pump case (Fig. 95).
- (9) Remove the oil pump valve retainers and associated valve and spring one at a time (Fig. 96) (Fig. 97). Mark the combination of components as a group and tag them as to the location from which they were removed.

80b9a599

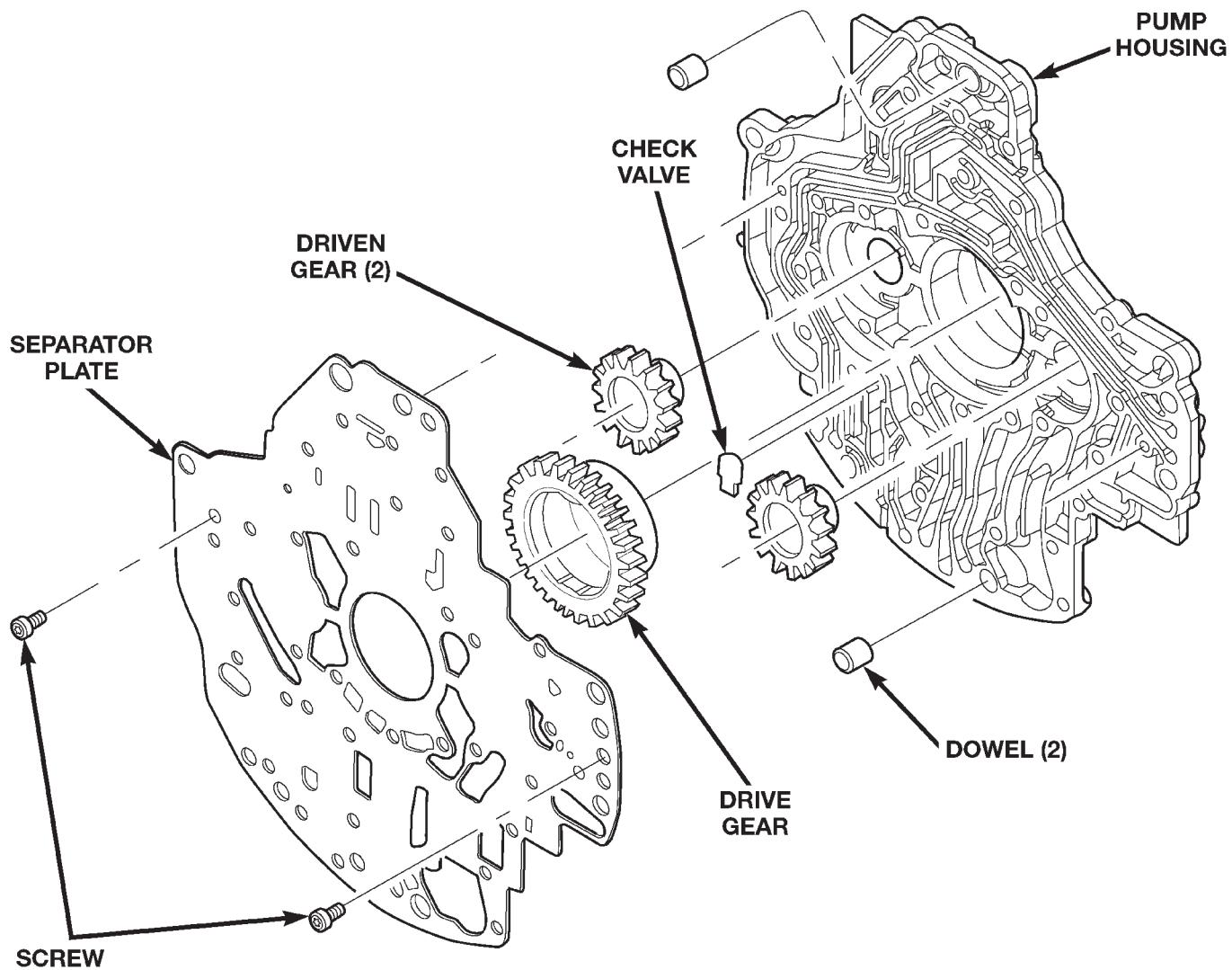
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



80c07011

Fig. 94 Oil Pump Assembly

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



80c07012

Fig. 95 Oil Pump Housing and Gears**ASSEMBLY**

(1) Clean and inspect all components. Make sure that all passages are thoroughly cleaned and are free from dirt or debris. Make sure that all valves move freely in their proper bore. Make sure that all gear pockets and bushings are free from excessive wear and scoring. Replace the oil pump if any excessive wear or scoring is found.

(2) Coat the gears with Mopar® ATF+3, type 7176 and install into their original locations.

(3) Lubricate the oil pump valves with Mopar® ATF+3, type 7176 and install the valve, spring and retainer into the appropriate oil pump valve body bore (Fig. 96) (Fig. 97).

(4) Place the separator plate onto the oil pump body (Fig. 95).

(5) Install the screws to hold the separator plate onto the oil pump body (Fig. 95). Tighten the screws to 4.5 N·m (40 in.lbs.).

(6) Position the oil pump cover onto the locating dowels (Fig. 94).

(7) Seat the two oil pump halves together and install all bolts finger tight.

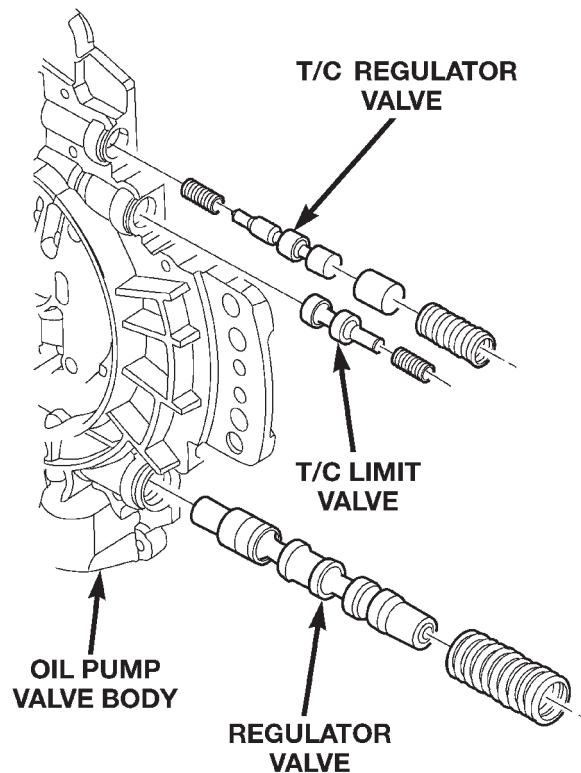
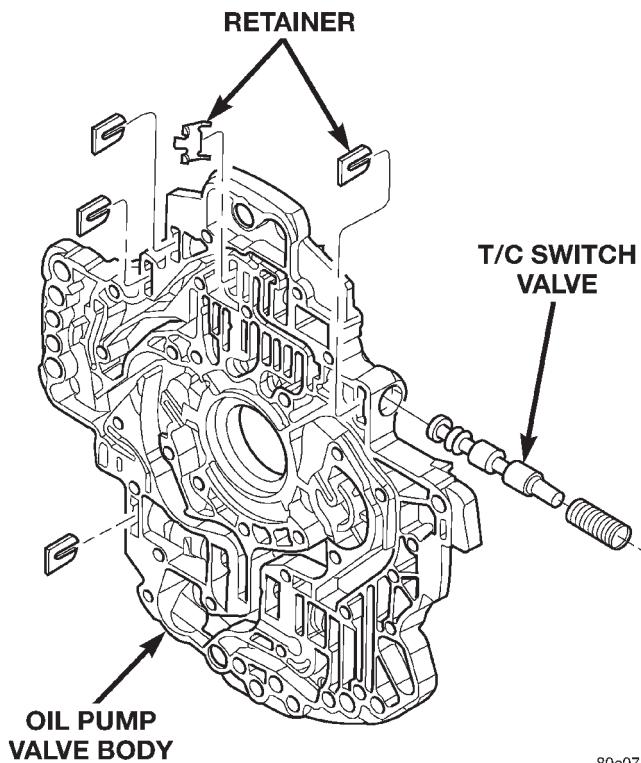
(8) Torque all bolts down slowly starting in the center and working outward. The correct torque is 4.5 N·m (40 in.lbs.).

(9) Verify that the oil pump gears rotate freely and smoothly.

(10) Position the reaction shaft support into the oil pump (Fig. 94).

(11) Install and torque the bolts to hold the reaction shaft support to the oil pump (Fig. 94). The correct torque is 12 N·m (105 in.lbs.).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 96 Oil Pump Valve Body****Fig. 97 T/C Switch Valve****INPUT CLUTCH ASSEMBLY****DISASSEMBLY**

- (1) Remove the reverse reaction plate selective snap-ring from the input clutch retainer (Fig. 98).
- (2) Remove the reverse reaction plate from the input clutch retainer.
- (3) Remove the reverse hub and reverse clutch pack from the input clutch retainer.
- (4) Remove the number 4 bearing from the overdrive hub.
- (5) Remove the overdrive hub from the input clutch retainer (Fig. 98).
- (6) Remove the number 3 bearing from the underdrive hub.
- (7) Remove the OD/reverse reaction plate snap-ring from the input clutch retainer.
- (8) Remove the underdrive hub, overdrive clutch, and overdrive reaction plate from the input clutch retainer (Fig. 98).

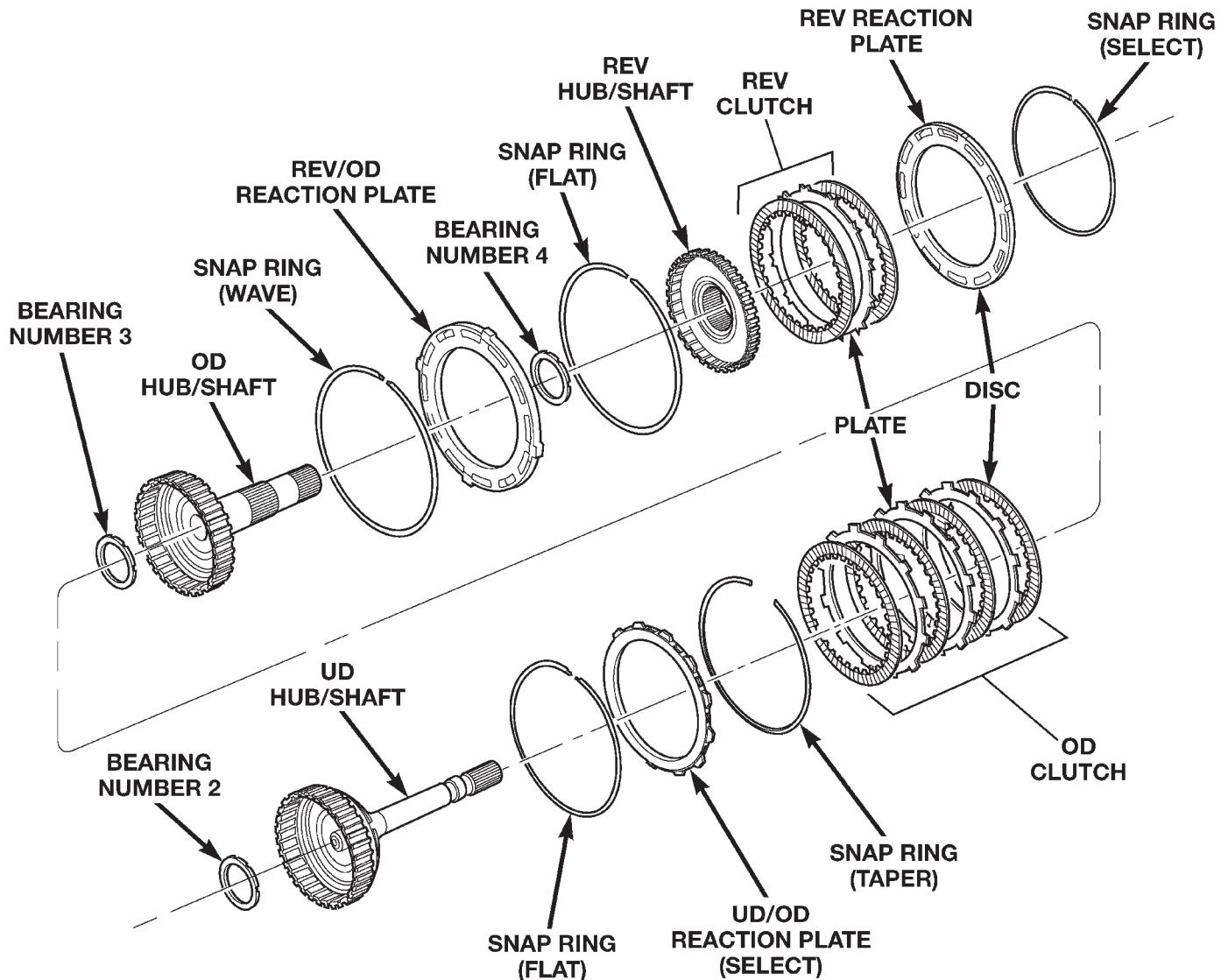
NOTE: The overdrive friction discs and steel discs are thicker than the matching components in the underdrive and reverse clutches.

- (9) Remove the number 2 bearing from the input clutch hub.
- (10) Remove the overdrive clutch wave snap-ring from the input clutch retainer.
- (11) Remove the UD/OD reaction plate tapered snap-ring from the input clutch retainer.
- (12) Remove the UD/OD reaction plate from the input clutch retainer.
- (13) Remove the UD/OD reaction plate flat snap-ring from the input clutch retainer (Fig. 98).
- (14) Remove the underdrive clutch pack from the input clutch retainer (Fig. 100).
- (15) Using Spring Compressor 8251, compress the UD/OD balance piston and remove the snap-ring from the input clutch hub (Fig. 99).
- (16) Remove the UD/OD balance piston and piston return spring from the input clutch retainer (Fig. 100).
- (17) Remove the underdrive piston from the input clutch retainer (Fig. 100).

NOTE: Both the UD/OD balance piston and the underdrive piston have seals molded onto them. If the seal is damaged, do not attempt to install a new seal onto the piston. The piston/seal must be replaced as an assembly.

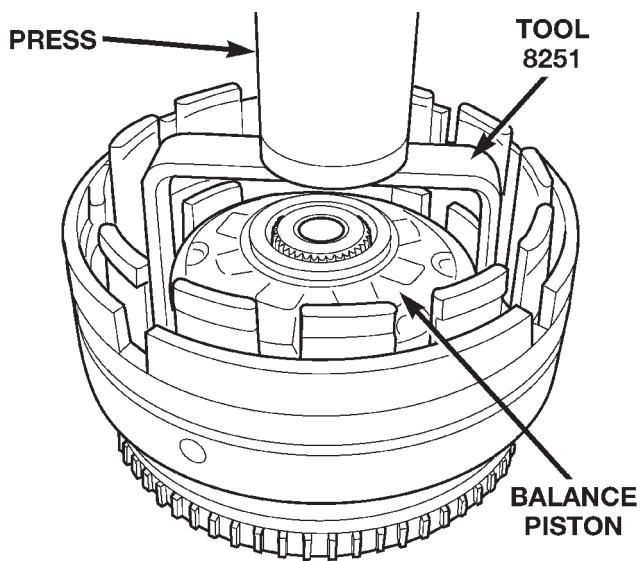
- (18) Remove the input clutch retainer tapered snap-ring.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



80c07014

Fig. 98 Input Clutch Assembly—Part I

Fig. 99 Compressing UD/OD Balance Piston Using
Tool 8251

80c07426

(19) Separate input clutch retainer from input clutch hub.

(20) Separate OD/reverse piston from input clutch hub retainer (Fig. 100).

(21) Remove all seals and o-rings from the input shaft and input hub. The o-rings on the input hub are color coded. Be sure to make note of which o-ring belongs in which location.

ASSEMBLY

(1) Install all new seals and o-rings onto the input shaft and input hub. The o-rings on the input hub are color coded. Be sure to install the correct o-ring in the correct location.

(2) Lubricate all seals with Mopar® ATF+3, type 7176 prior to installation.

(3) Assemble the OD/reverse piston onto the input clutch hub (Fig. 100).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

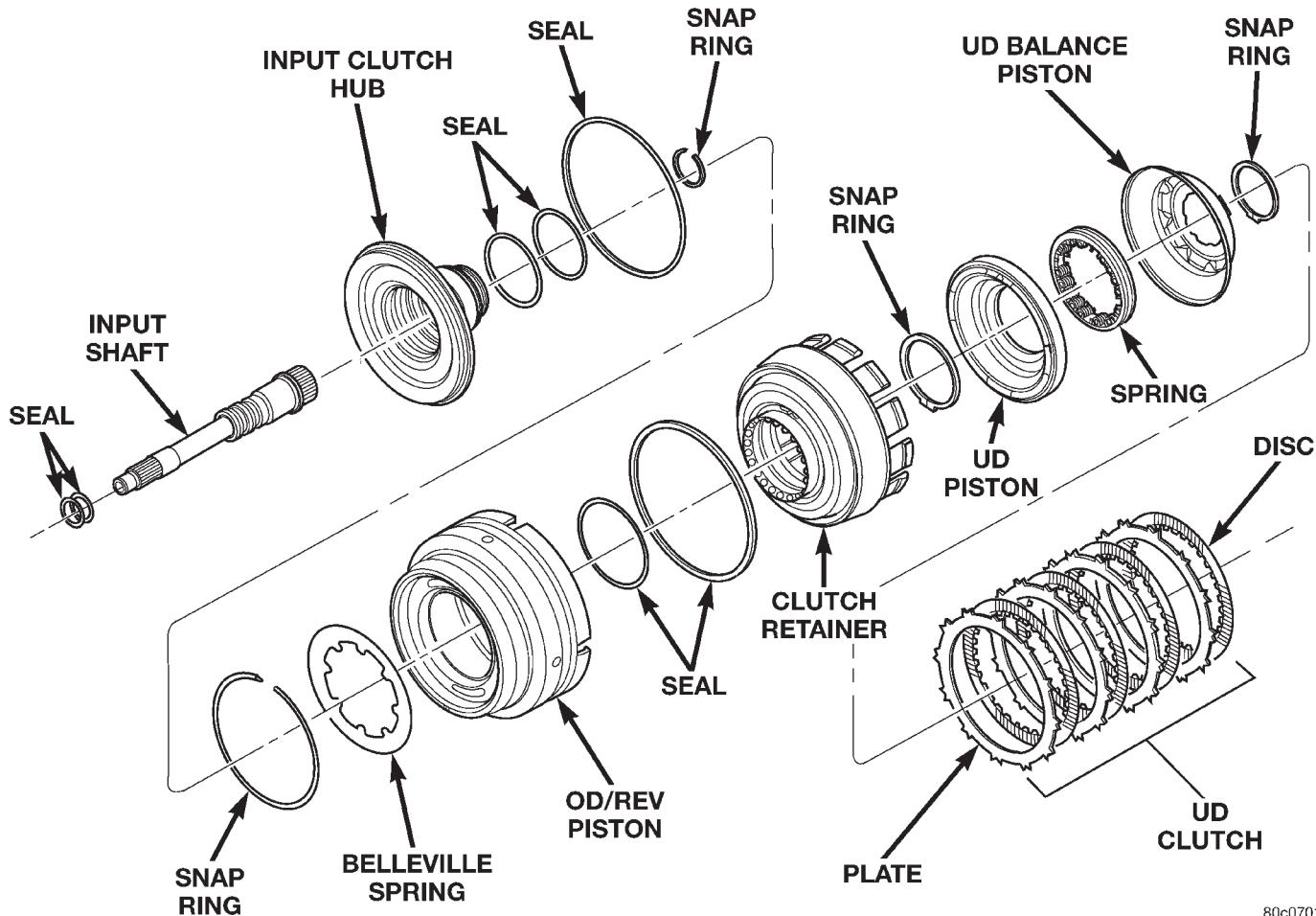


Fig. 100 Input Clutch Assembly—Part II

80c07013

(4) Assemble the input clutch retainer onto the input clutch hub.

(5) Install the input clutch retainer tapered snap-ring with tapered side up onto the input clutch hub.

(6) Install Piston Guides 8504 into the input clutch retainer (Fig. 101) and onto the input clutch hub to guide the inner and outer underdrive piston seals into position.

(7) Install the underdrive piston into the input clutch retainer and over the input clutch hub (Fig. 100).

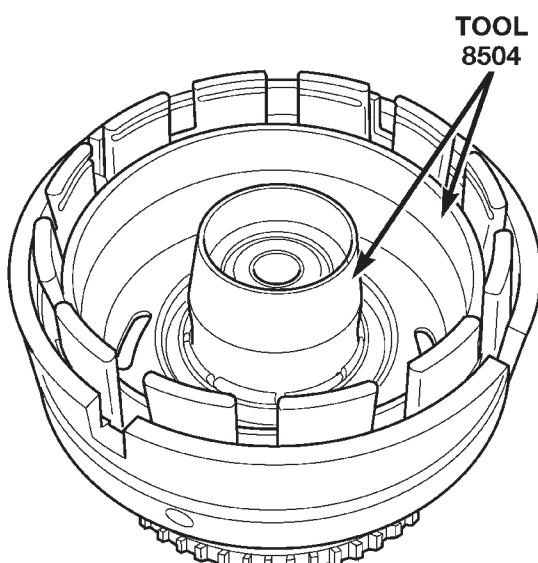
(8) Install the UD/OD balance piston return spring pack into the input clutch retainer.

(9) Install Piston Guide 8252 into the input clutch retainer (Fig. 102) to guide the UD/OD balance piston seal into position inside the underdrive piston.

(10) Install the UD/OD balance piston into the input clutch retainer and the underdrive piston.

(11) Using Spring Compressor 8251, compress the UD/OD return spring pack and secure the piston in place with the snap-ring (Fig. 103).

(12) Install the underdrive clutch pack into the input clutch retainer (Fig. 100).



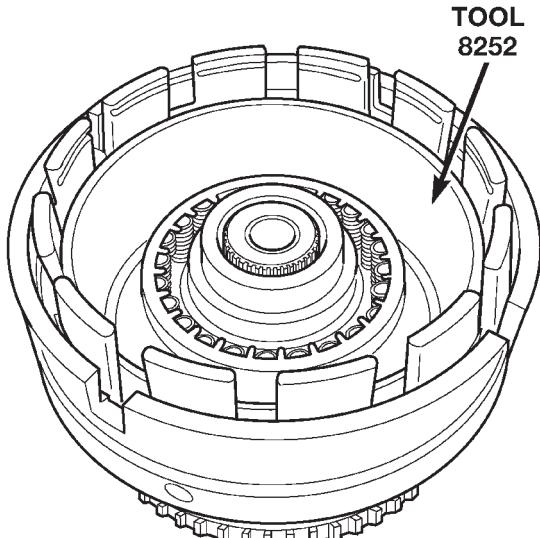
80c07427

Fig. 101 Install Underdrive Piston Using Tool 8504

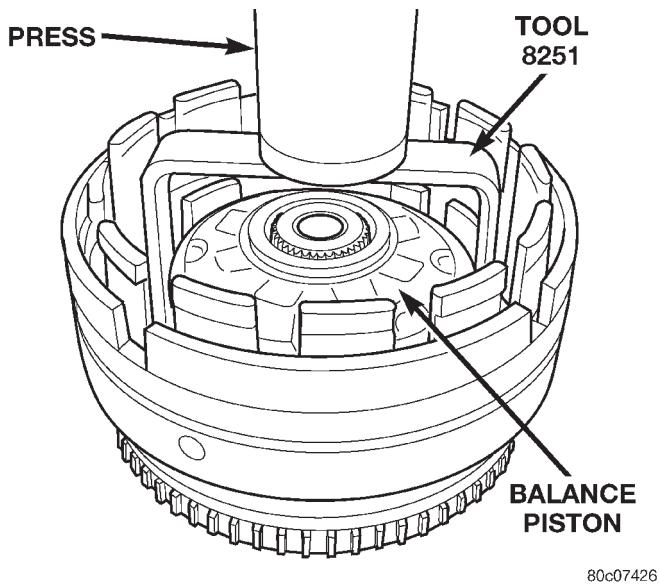
(13) Install the UD/OD reaction plate lower flat snap-ring (Fig. 98). The correct snap-ring can be identified by the two tabbed ears.

(14) Install the UD/OD reaction plate into the input clutch retainer. The reaction plate is to be

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



80c07428

Fig. 102 Install Balance Piston Using Tool 8252

80c07426

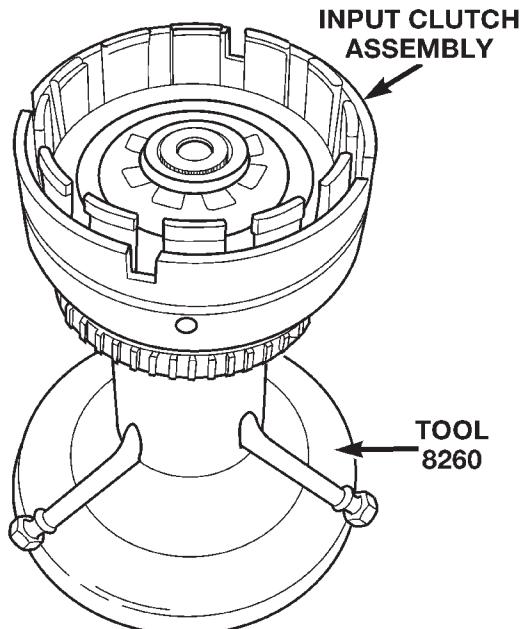
Fig. 103 Compressing UD/OD Balance Piston Using Tool 8251

installed with the big step down. The reaction plate is also selectable and should be changed to achieve the correct clutch clearances.

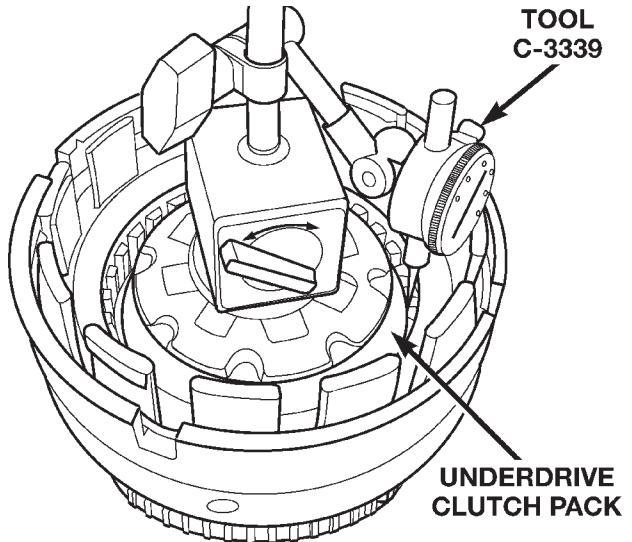
(15) Install the UD/OD reaction plate upper tapered snap-ring with tapered side up.

(16) Install the input clutch assembly into Input Clutch Pressure Fixture 8260 (Fig. 104). Mount a dial indicator to the assembly, push down on the clutch discs and zero the indicator against the underdrive clutch discs (Fig. 105). Apply 20 psi of air pressure to the underdrive clutch and record the dial indicator reading. Measure and record UD clutch pack measurement in four (4) places, 90° apart. Take average of four measurements and compare with UD clutch pack clearance specification. The correct clutch

clearance is 0.76–1.16 mm (0.030–0.063 in.). Adjust as necessary. Install the chosen reaction plate and re-measure to verify selection.



80c07429

Fig. 104 Input Clutch Assembly Mounted on Tool 8260

80c07440

Fig. 105 Measuring UD Clutch Clearance

(17) Install the overdrive clutch pack into the input clutch retainer (Fig. 98). The overdrive steel separator plates can be identified by the lack of the half-moon cuts in the locating tabs.

(18) Install the overdrive clutch wavy snap-ring with the two tabbed ears into the input clutch retainer.

(19) Install the OD/reverse reaction plate into the input clutch retainer. The reaction plate is non-directional (Fig. 98).

(20) Install the OD/reverse reaction plate flat snap-ring into the input clutch retainer.

(21) Mount a dial indicator to the assembly and zero the indicator against the OD/reverse reaction plate (Fig. 106). Apply 20 psi of air pressure to the overdrive clutch and record the dial indicator reading. Measure and record OD clutch pack measurement in four (4) places, 90° apart. Take average of four measurements and compare with OD clutch pack clearance specification. Verify that the clutch clearance is 1.016–1.65 mm (0.040–0.065 in.).

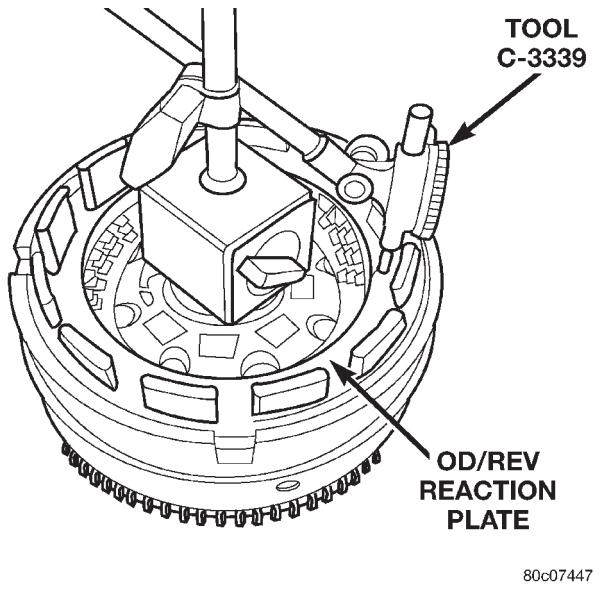


Fig. 106 Measuring OD Clutch Clearance

(22) Install the reverse clutch pack into the input clutch retainer (Fig. 98).

(23) Install the reverse reaction plate into the input clutch retainer.

(24) Install the reverse reaction plate selective snap-ring into the input clutch retainer.

(25) Mount a dial indicator to the assembly, push down on the clutch discs, pull up on the reaction plate to ensure the plate is properly seated and zero the indicator against the reverse clutch discs (Fig. 107). Apply 20 psi of air pressure to the reverse clutch and record the dial indicator reading. Measure and record Reverse clutch pack measurement in four (4) places, 90° apart. Take average of four measurements and compare with Reverse clutch pack clearance specification. The correct clutch clearance is 0.81–1.24 mm (0.032–0.049 in.). Adjust as necessary. Install the chosen snap-ring and re-measure to verify selection.

(26) Remove the reverse clutch pack from the input clutch retainer.

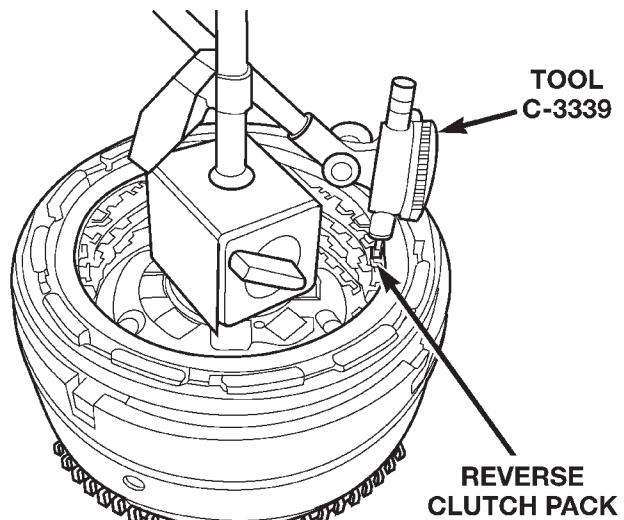


Fig. 107 Measuring Reverse Clutch Clearance

(27) Install the number 2 bearing onto the underdrive hub with flat side up/forward with petroleum jelly.

(28) Install the underdrive hub into the input clutch retainer.

(29) Install the number 3 bearing into the overdrive hub with the flat side up/forward with petroleum jelly.

(30) Install the overdrive hub into the input clutch retainer.

(31) Install the number 4 bearing into the reverse hub with flat side up/forward with petroleum jelly.

(32) Install the reverse hub into the input clutch retainer.

(33) Install the complete reverse clutch pack.

(34) Install the reverse reaction plate and snap-ring.

(35) Push up on reaction plate to allow reverse clutch to move freely.

4C RETAINER/BULKHEAD

DISASSEMBLY

(1) Remove the 2C piston belleville spring snap-ring from the 4C retainer /bulkhead (Fig. 108).

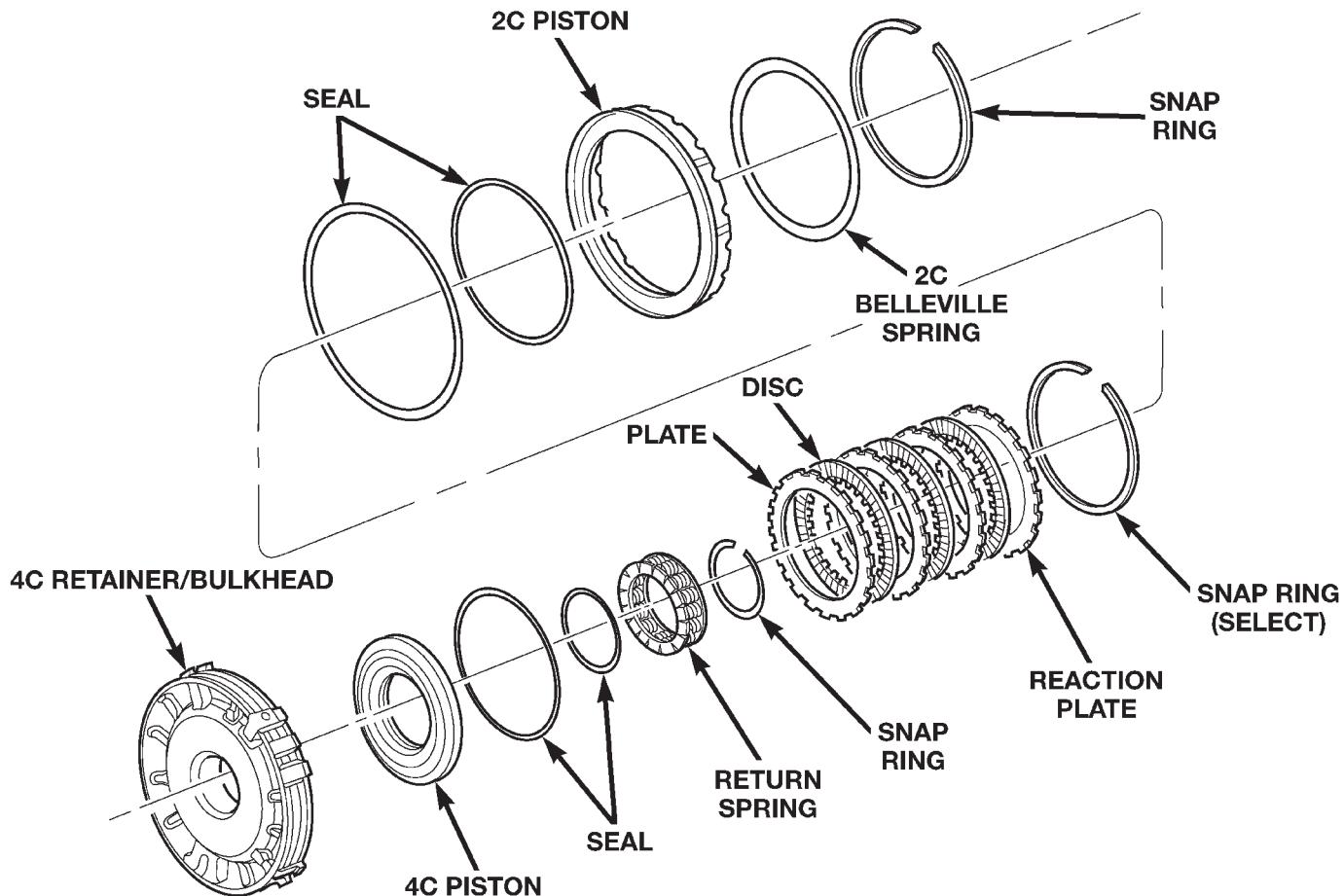
(2) Remove the 2C piston Belleville spring from the retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 108).

(3) Remove the 2C piston from the retainer/bulkhead. Use 20 psi of air pressure to remove the piston if necessary.

(4) Remove the 4C clutch snap-ring from the retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 108).

(5) Remove the 4C clutch pack from the retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 108).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



80c07032

Fig. 108 4C Retainer/Bulkhead Components

(6) Using Spring Compressor 8250 and a suitable shop press, compress the 4C piston return spring and remove the snap-ring (Fig. 108).

(7) Remove the 4C piston return spring and piston from the retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 108). Use 20 psi of air pressure to remove the piston if necessary.

ASSEMBLY

(1) Clean and inspect all components. Replace any components which show evidence of excessive wear or scoring.

(2) Install new seals on the 2C and 4C pistons (Fig. 108).

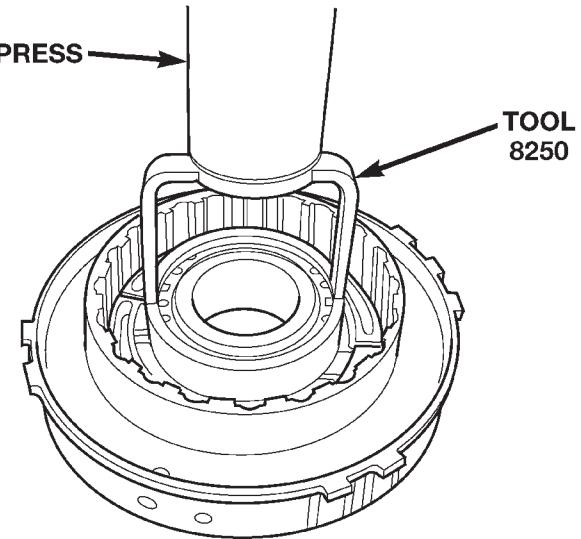
(3) Lubricate all seals with Mopar® ATF+3, type 7176 prior to installation.

(4) Install the 4C piston into the 4C retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 108).

(5) Position the 4C piston return spring onto the 4C piston.

(6) Using Spring Compressor 8250 and a suitable shop press, compress the 4C piston return spring and install the snap-ring (Fig. 109).

(7) Assemble and install the 4C clutch pack into the retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 108).



80c07419

Fig. 109 Compress 4C Piston Return Spring Using Tool 8250

(8) Install the 4C reaction plate and snap-ring into the retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 108). The 4C reaction plate is non-directional.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

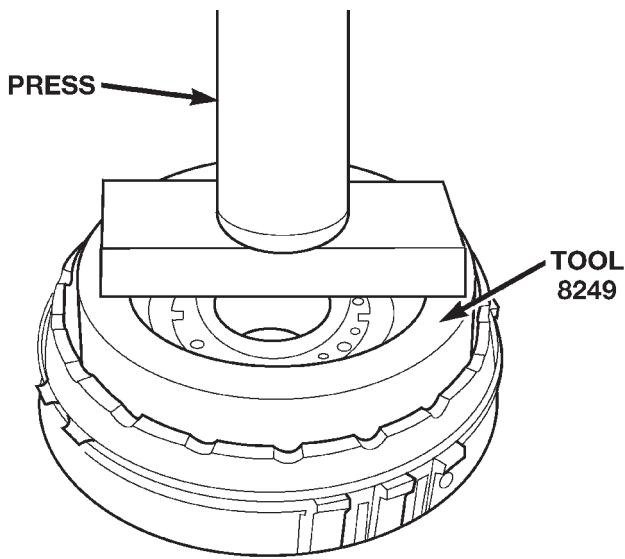
(9) Measure the 4C clutch clearance. The correct clutch clearance is 0.81–1.35 mm (0.032–0.053 in.). The snap-ring is selectable. Install the chosen snap-ring and re-measure to verify the selection.

(10) Install the 2C piston into the retainer/bulkhead (Fig. 108).

(11) Position the 2C Belleville spring onto the 2C piston.

(12) Position the 2C Belleville spring snap-ring onto the 2C Belleville spring (Fig. 108).

(13) Using Spring Compressor 8249 and a suitable shop press (Fig. 110), compress the belleville spring until the snap-ring is engaged with the snap-ring groove in the retainer/bulkhead.



80c07418

Fig. 110 Compress 2C Belleville Spring Using Tool 8249

PLANETARY GEAR SET

DISASSEMBLY

(1) Remove the snap-ring holding the input annulus into the input carrier (Fig. 111).

(2) Remove the input annulus from the input carrier (Fig. 111).

(3) Remove the number 9 bearing from the reverse planetary carrier. Note that this planetary carrier has four pinion gears.

(4) Remove the reverse planetary gear carrier (Fig. 111).

(5) Remove the number 10 bearing from the input sun gear (Fig. 111).

(6) Remove the input sun gear from the input carrier (Fig. 111).

(7) Remove the number 11 bearing from the input carrier (Fig. 111).

ASSEMBLY

(1) Clean and inspect all components. Replace any components which show evidence of excessive wear or scoring.

(2) Install the number 11 bearing into the input planetary carrier with the flat side up and facing forward (Fig. 111).

(3) Install the input sun gear into the input carrier (Fig. 111).

(4) Install the number 10 bearing onto the rear of the reverse planetary carrier with the flat side toward the carrier (Fig. 111).

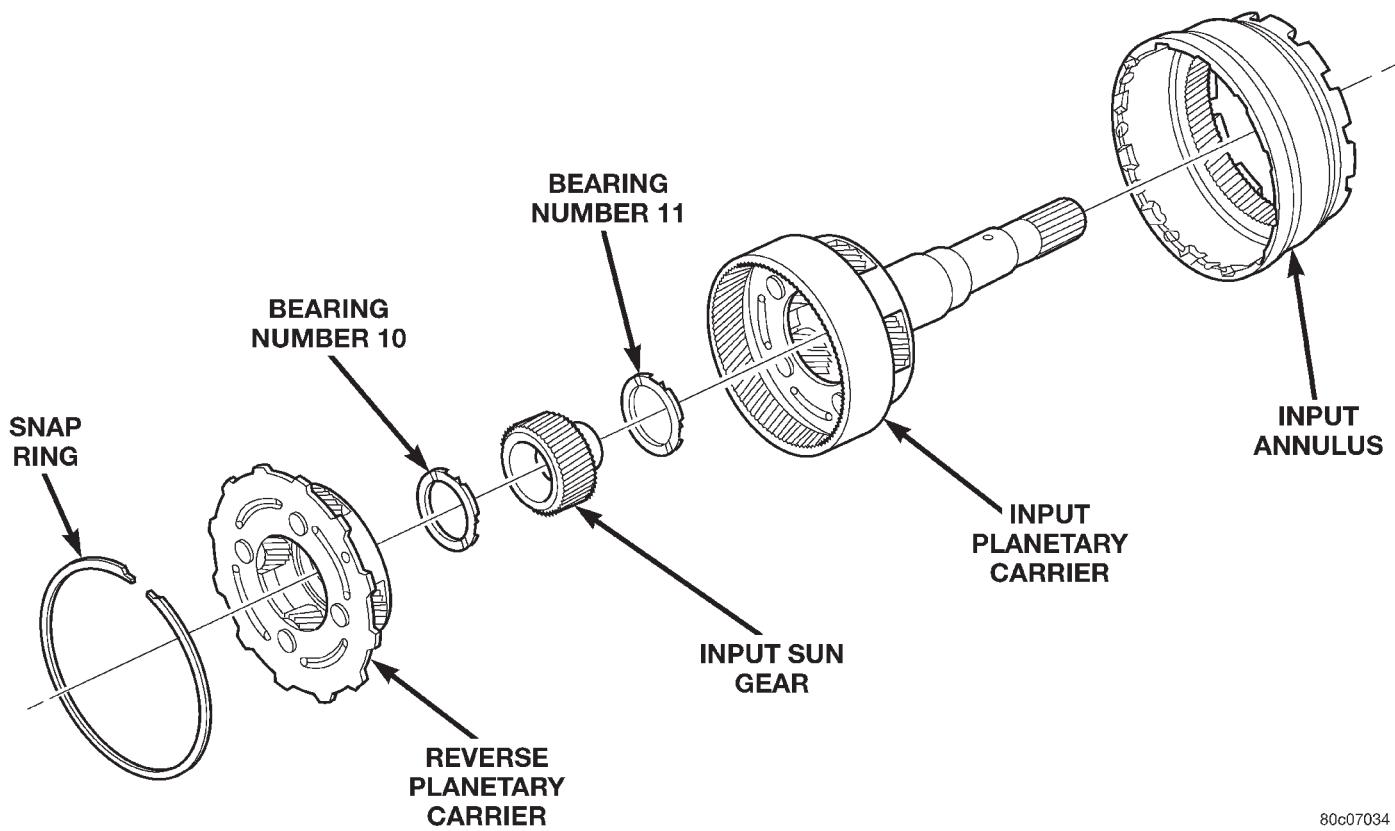
(5) Install the number 9 bearing onto the front of the reverse planetary carrier with the rounded side toward the carrier and the flat side facing upward (Fig. 111).

(6) Install the reverse planetary gear carrier into the input carrier (Fig. 111).

(7) Install the input annulus gear into the input carrier (Fig. 111).

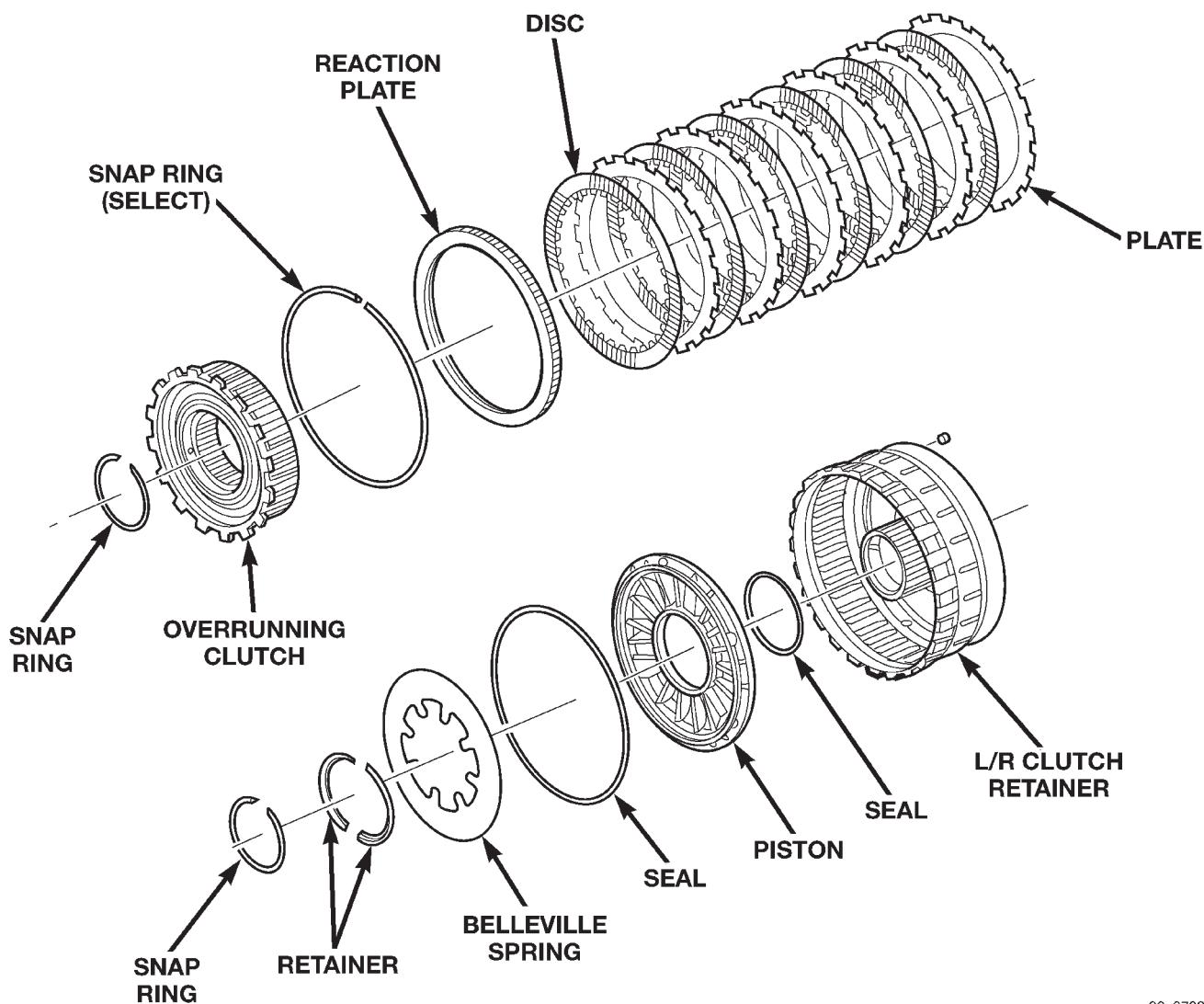
(8) Install the snap-ring to hold the input annulus gear into the input carrier (Fig. 111).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



80c07034

Fig. 111 Reverse/Input Planetary Carrier Assembly



80c07033

Fig. 112 Low/Reverse Clutch Assembly

LOW/REVERSE CLUTCH

DISASSEMBLY

- (1) Remove the inner overrunning clutch snap-ring from the low/reverse clutch retainer (Fig. 112).
- (2) Remove the outer low/reverse reaction plate flat snap-ring (Fig. 112).
- (3) Remove the low/reverse clutch and the overrunning clutch from the low/reverse clutch retainer as an assembly (Fig. 112).
- (4) Separate the low/reverse clutch from the overrunning clutch.
- (5) Remove the overrunning clutch snap-ring (Fig. 113).
- (6) Remove the spacer from the overrunning clutch (Fig. 113).
- (7) Separate the inner and outer races of the overrunning clutch (Fig. 113).

(8) Remove the overrunning clutch lower snap-ring (Fig. 113).

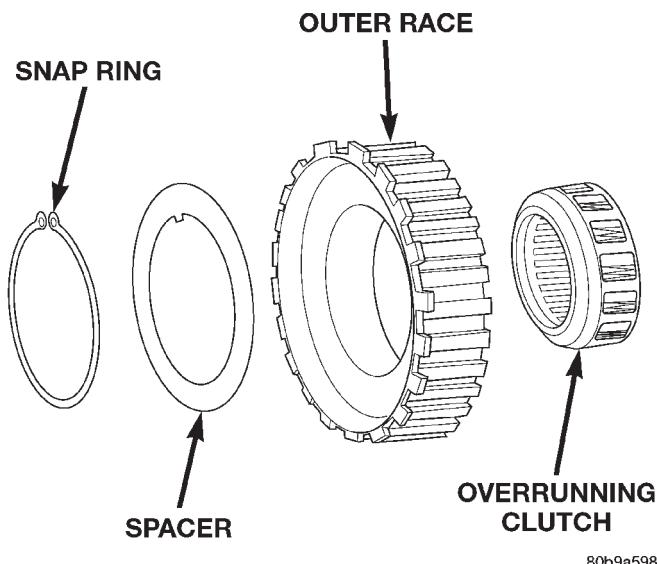
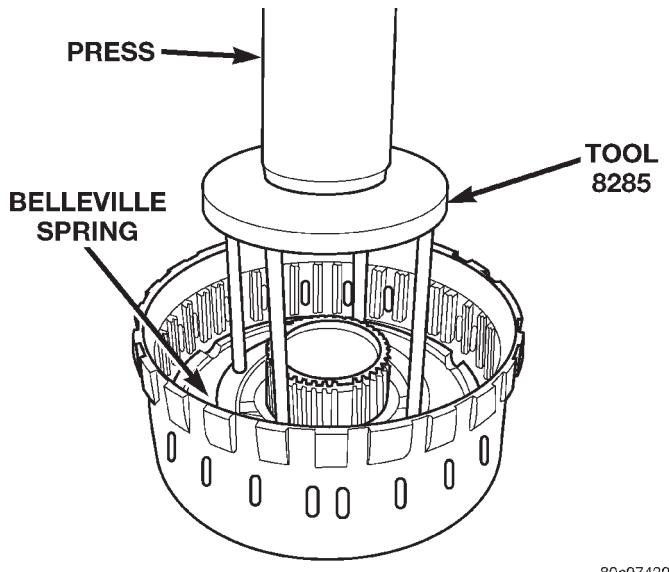
(9) Using Spring Compressor 8285 and a suitable shop press (Fig. 114), compress the low/reverse piston Belleville spring and remove the split retaining ring holding the Belleville spring into the low/reverse clutch retainer.

(10) Remove the low/reverse clutch Belleville spring and piston from the low/reverse clutch retainer. Use 20 psi of air pressure to remove the piston if necessary.

ASSEMBLY

- (1) Clean and inspect all components. Replace any components which show evidence of excessive wear or scoring.
- (2) Check the bleed orifice to ensure that it is not plugged or restricted.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

*Fig. 113 Overrunning Clutch**Fig. 114 Compress Low/Reverse Belleville Spring Using Tool 8285*

(3) Install a new seal on the low/reverse piston. Lubricate the seal with Mopar® ATF+3, type 7176 prior to installation.

(4) Install the low/reverse piston into the low/reverse clutch retainer.

(5) Position the low/reverse piston Belleville spring on the low/reverse piston.

(6) Using Spring Compressor 8285 and a suitable shop press (Fig. 114), compress the low/reverse piston Belleville spring and install the split retaining ring to hold the Belleville spring into the low/reverse clutch retainer.

(7) Install the lower overrunning clutch snap-ring (Fig. 113).

(8) Assemble the inner and outer races of the overrunning clutch (Fig. 113).

(9) Position the overrunning clutch spacer on the overrunning clutch.

(10) Install the upper overrunning clutch snap-ring (Fig. 113).

(11) Assemble and install the low/reverse clutch pack into the low/reverse clutch retainer (Fig. 112).

(12) Install the low/reverse reaction plate into the low/reverse clutch retainer (Fig. 112). The reaction plate is directional and must be installed with the flat side down.

(13) Install the low/reverse clutch pack snap-ring (Fig. 112). The snap-ring is selectable and should be chosen to give the correct clutch pack clearance.

(14) Measure the low/reverse clutch pack clearance and adjust as necessary. The correct clutch clearance is 1.14–1.91 mm (0.045–0.05 in.).

(15) Install the overrunning clutch into the low/reverse clutch retainer making sure that the index splines are aligned with the retainer.

(16) Install the overrunning clutch inner snap-ring.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION

VALVE BODY

Clean the valve housings, valves, plugs, springs, and separator plates with a standard parts cleaning solution only. Do not use gasoline, kerosene, or any type of caustic solution.

Do not immerse any of the electrical components in cleaning solution. Clean the electrical components by wiping them off with dry shop towels only.

Dry all except the electrical parts with compressed air. Make sure all passages are clean and free from obstructions. **Do not use rags or shop towels to dry or wipe off valve body components. Lint from these materials can stick to valve body parts, interfere with valve operation, and clog filters and fluid passages.**

Inspect all of the valve body mating surfaces for scratches, nicks, burrs, or distortion. Use a straight-edge to check surface flatness. Minor scratches may be removed with crocus cloth using only very light pressure.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

Minor distortion of a valve body mating surface may be corrected by smoothing the surface with a sheet of crocus cloth. Position the crocus cloth on a surface plate, sheet of plate glass or equally flat surface. If distortion is severe or any surfaces are heavily scored, the valve body will have to be replaced.

Inspect the valves and plugs (Fig. 115) for scratches, burrs, nicks, or scores. Minor surface scratches on steel valves and plugs can be removed with crocus cloth but **do not round off the edges of the valve or plug lands**. Maintaining sharpness of these edges is vitally important. The edges prevent foreign matter from lodging between the valves and plugs and the bore.

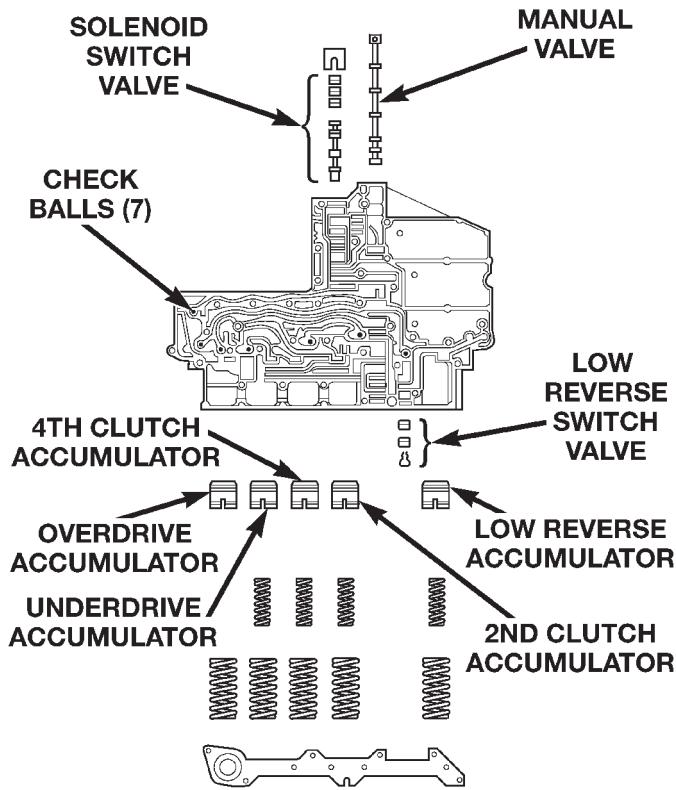


Fig. 115 Valve Body Components

80b9a599

Inspect all the valve and plug bores in the valve body. Use a penlight to view the bore interiors. Replace the valve body if any bores are distorted or scored. Inspect all of the valve body springs. The springs must be free of distortion, warpage or broken coils.

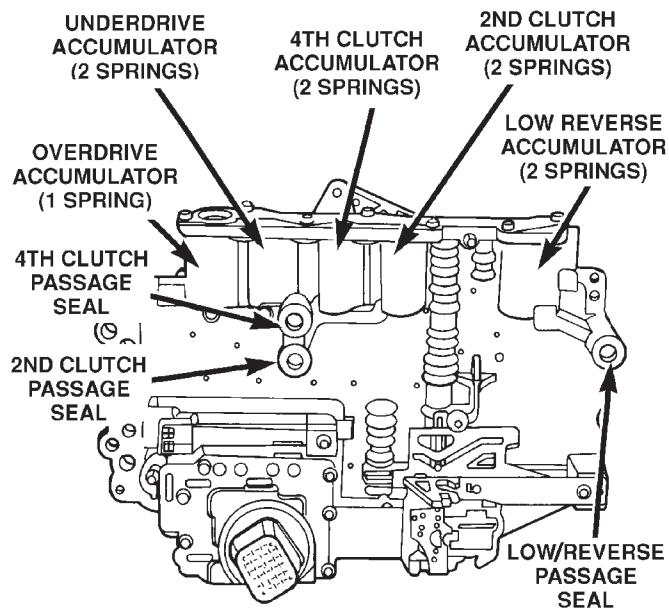
Trial fit each valve and plug in its bore to check freedom of operation. When clean and dry, the valves and plugs should drop freely into the bores.

Valve body bores do not change dimensionally with use. If the valve body functioned correctly when new, it will continue to operate properly after cleaning and

inspection. It should not be necessary to replace a valve body assembly unless it is damaged in handling.

Inspect all the accumulator bores in the valve body. Use a penlight to view the bore interiors. Replace the valve body if any bores are distorted or scored. Inspect all of the accumulator springs. The springs must be free of distortion, warpage or broken coils.

Inspect all the fluid seals on the valve body (Fig. 116). Replace any seals that are cracked, distorted, or damaged in any way. These seals pass fluid pressure directly to the clutches. Any pressure leak at these points, may cause transmission performance problems.



80b9a591

Fig. 116 Valve Body Seals

TRANSMISSION

GENERAL INFORMATION

Heli-Coil inserts can be used to repair damaged, stripped or worn threads in aluminum parts. These inserts are available from most automotive parts suppliers. Stainless steel inserts are recommended.

The use of crocus cloth is permissible where necessary, providing it is used carefully. When used on shafts, or valves, use extreme care to avoid rounding off sharp edges. Sharp edges are vital as they prevent foreign matter from getting between the valve and valve bore.

Do not reuse oil seals, gaskets, seal rings, or O-rings during overhaul. Replace these parts as a matter of course. Also do not reuse snap rings or E-clips that are bent or distorted. Replace these parts as well.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

Lubricate transmission parts with Mopar® ATF Plus 3, Type 7176, transmission fluid during over-haul and assembly. Use petroleum jelly, Mopar® Door Ease, or Ru-Glyde to prelubricate seals, O-rings, and thrust washers. Petroleum jelly can also be used to hold parts in place during reassembly.

TRANSMISSION CASE CLEANING AND INSPECTION

Clean the case in a solvent tank. Flush the case bores and fluid passages thoroughly with solvent. Dry the case and all fluid passages with compressed air. Be sure all solvent is removed from the case and that all fluid passages are clear.

NOTE: Do not use shop towels or rags to dry the case (or any other transmission component) unless they are made from lint-free materials. Lint will stick to case surfaces and transmission components and circulate throughout the transmission after assembly. A sufficient quantity of lint can block fluid passages and interfere with valve body operation.

Inspect the case for cracks, porous spots, worn bores, or damaged threads. Damaged threads can be repaired with Helicoil thread inserts. However, the case will have to be replaced if it exhibits any type of damage or wear.

LOW/REVERSE CLUTCH ASSEMBLY

Clean the overrunning clutch assembly, clutch cam, and low-reverse clutch retainer. Dry them with compressed air after cleaning.

Inspect condition of each clutch part after cleaning. Replace the overrunning clutch roller and spring assembly if any rollers or springs are worn or damaged, or if the roller cage is distorted, or damaged. Replace the cam if worn, cracked or damaged.

Replace the low-reverse clutch retainer if the clutch race, roller surface or inside diameter is scored, worn or damaged.

ACCUMULATOR

Inspect the accumulator piston and seal rings. Replace the seal rings if worn or cut. Replace the piston if chipped or cracked.

Check condition of the accumulator inner and outer springs. Replace the springs if the coils are cracked, distorted or collapsed.

OIL PUMP AND REACTION SHAFT SUPPORT

Clean pump and support components with solvent and dry them with compressed air.

Check condition of the seal rings and thrust washer on the reaction shaft support. The seal rings do not need to be replaced unless cracked, broken, or severely worn.

Inspect the pump and support components. Replace the pump or support if the seal ring grooves or machined surfaces are worn, scored, pitted, or damaged. Replace the pump gears if pitted, worn chipped, or damaged.

Inspect the pump bushing. Then check the reaction shaft support bushing. Replace either bushing only if heavily worn, scored or damaged. It is not necessary to replace the bushings unless they are actually damaged.

Inspect the valves and plugs for scratches, burrs, nicks, or scores. Minor surface scratches on steel valves and plugs can be removed with crocus cloth but **do not round off the edges of the valve or plug lands**. Maintaining sharpness of these edges is vitally important. The edges prevent foreign matter from lodging between the valves and plugs and the bore.

Inspect all the valve and plug bores in the oil pump cover. Use a penlight to view the bore interiors. Replace the oil pump if any bores are distorted or scored. Inspect all of the valve springs. The springs must be free of distortion, warpage or broken coils.

Trial fit each valve and plug in its bore to check freedom of operation. When clean and dry, the valves and plugs should drop freely into the bores.

PLANETARY GEARTRAIN

Clean the planetary components in solvent and dry them with compressed air.

Check sun gear and driving shell condition. Replace the gear if damaged or if the bushings are scored or worn. The bushings are not serviceable. Replace the driving shell if worn, cracked or damaged.

Replace planetary gear sets if gears, pinion pins, or carrier are damaged in any way. Replace the annulus gears and supports if either component is worn or damaged.

Replace the output shaft if the machined surfaces are scored, pitted, or damaged in any way. Also replace the shaft if the splines are damaged, or exhibits cracks at any location.

ADJUSTMENTS

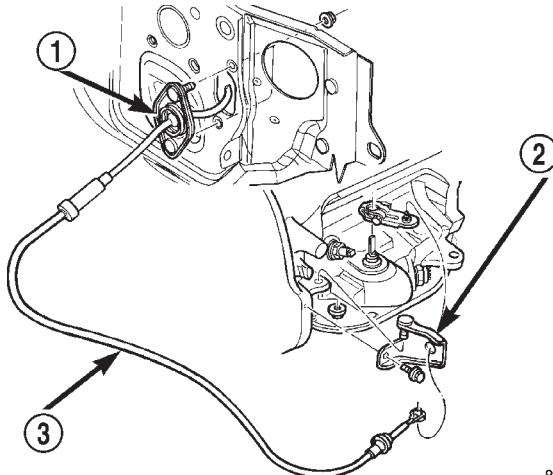
GEARSHIFT CABLE

Check adjustment by starting the engine in Park and Neutral. Adjustment is OK if the engine starts only in these positions. Adjustment is incorrect if the engine starts in one but not both positions. If the engine starts in any position other than Park or Neutral, or if the engine will not start at all, the park/neutral position switch may be faulty.

Gearshift Adjustment Procedure

- (1) Shift transmission into Park.
- (2) Release cable adjuster lock (underneath the power brake booster) (Fig. 117) to unlock cable.
- (3) Raise vehicle.
- (4) Slide cable eyelet off transmission shift lever.
- (5) Verify transmission shift lever is in Park detent by moving lever fully rearward. Last rearward detent is Park position.
- (6) Verify positive engagement of transmission park lock by attempting to rotate propeller shaft. Shaft will not rotate when park lock is engaged.
- (7) Slide cable eyelet onto transmission shift lever.
- (8) Lower vehicle and check engine starting. Engine should start only in Park and Neutral.

- (9) Lock shift cable by pressing cable adjuster clamp down until it snaps into place.



80a773e9

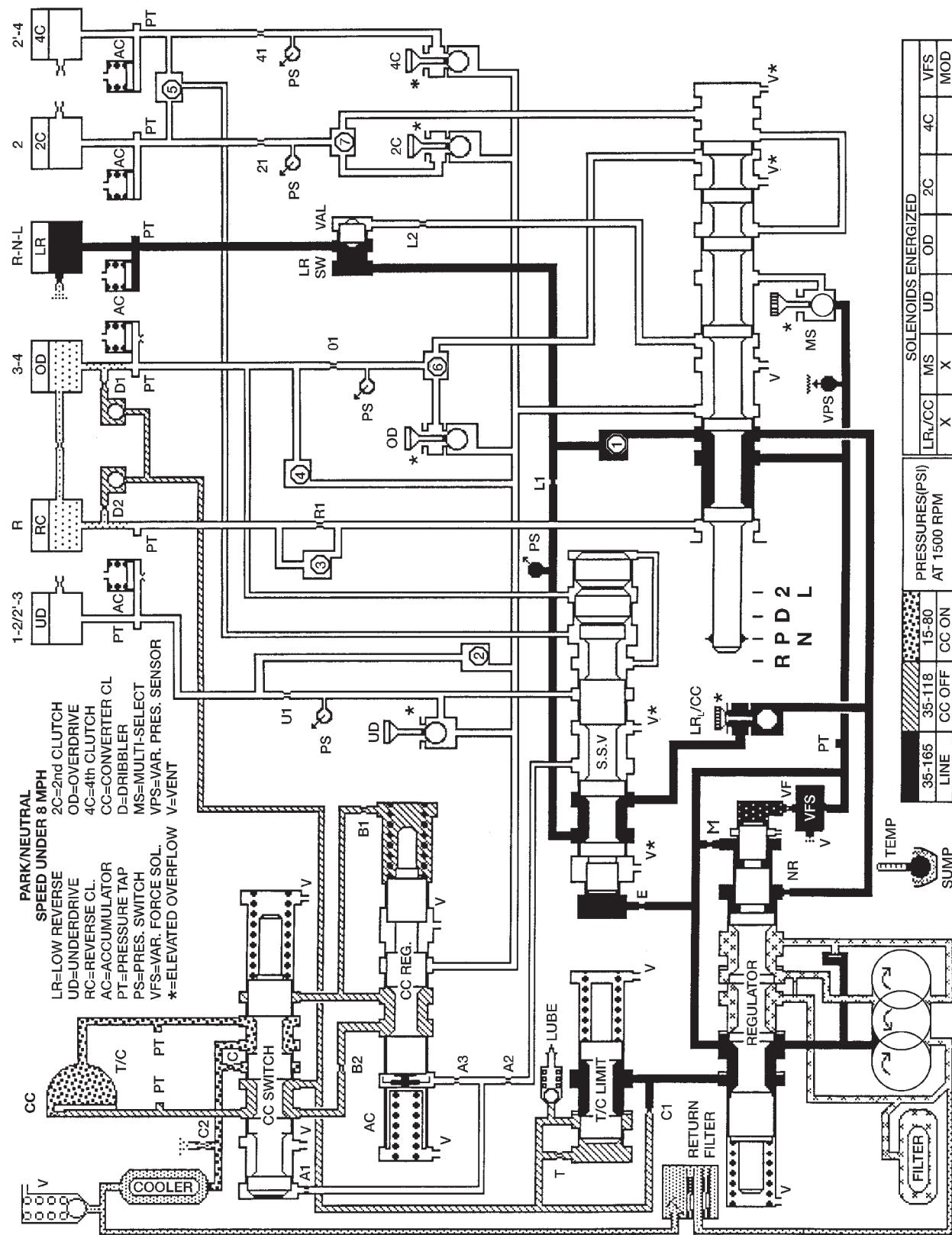
Fig. 117 Gearshift Cable Routing

- 1 – CABLE MOUNTING
 2 – CABLE BRACKET AT TRANS.
 3 – GEARSHIFT CABLE

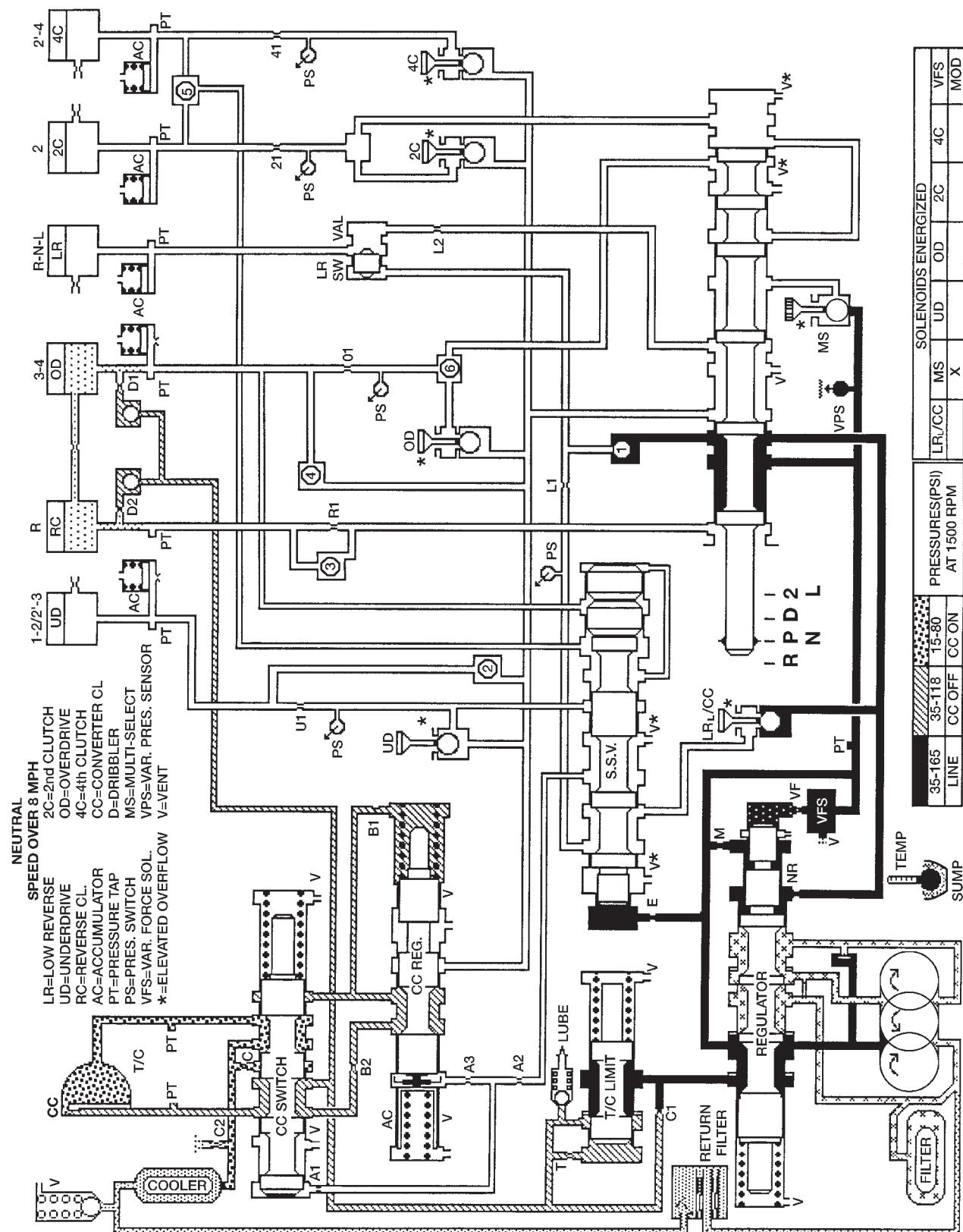
SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS

HYDRAULIC SCHEMATICS

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)

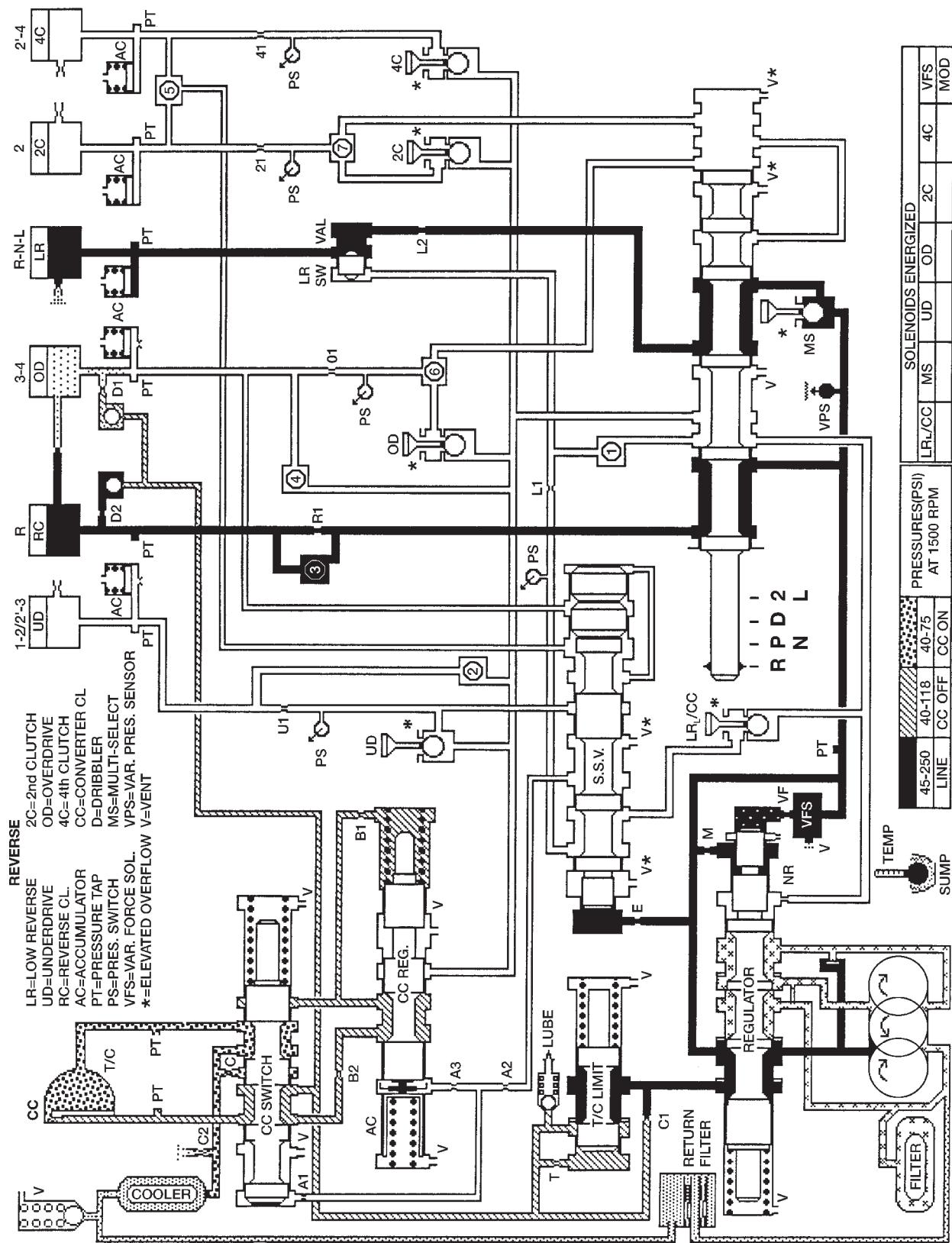
**45RFE HYDRAULIC SCHEMATIC**

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)

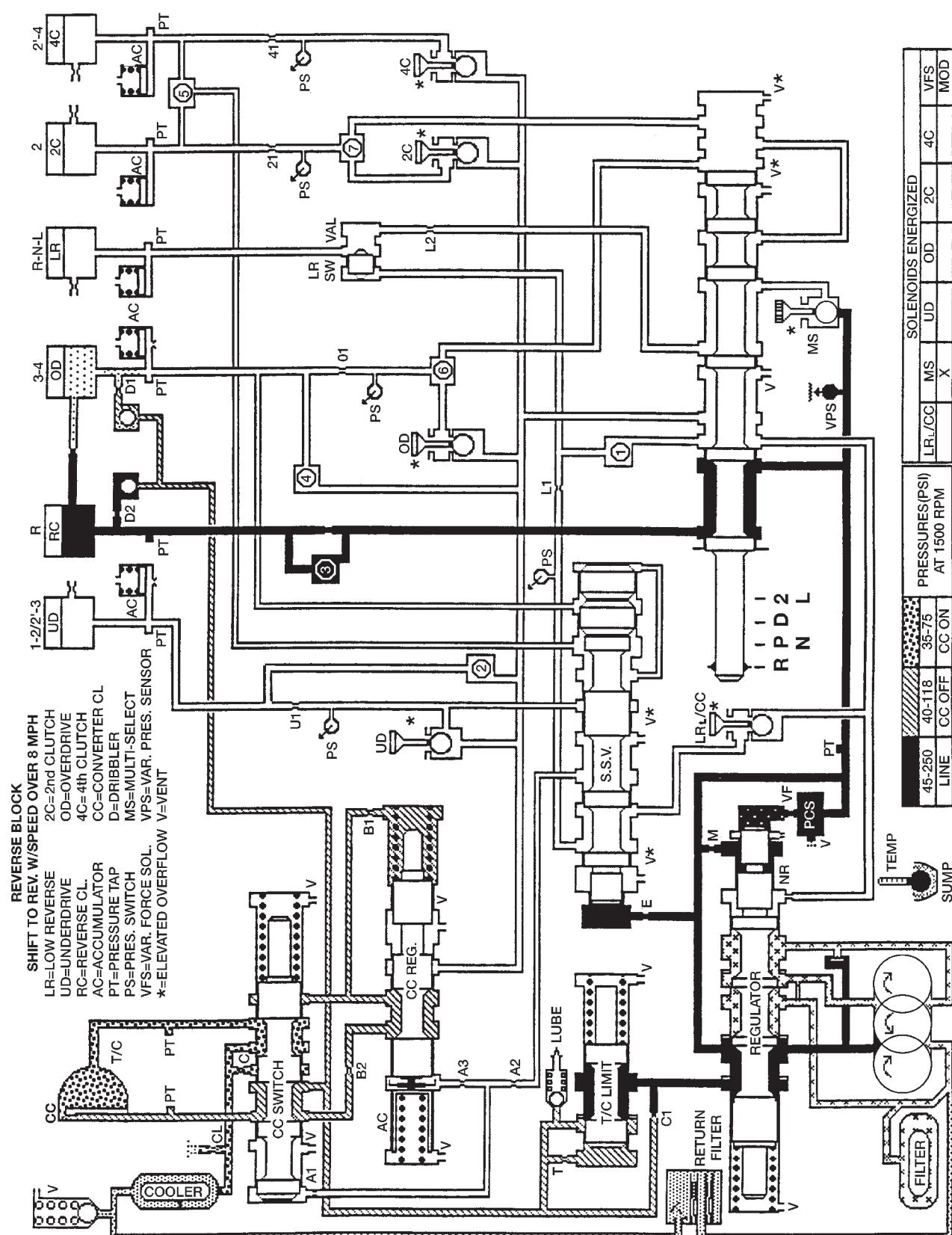
**45RFE HYDRAULIC SCHEMATIC**

80ba79d4

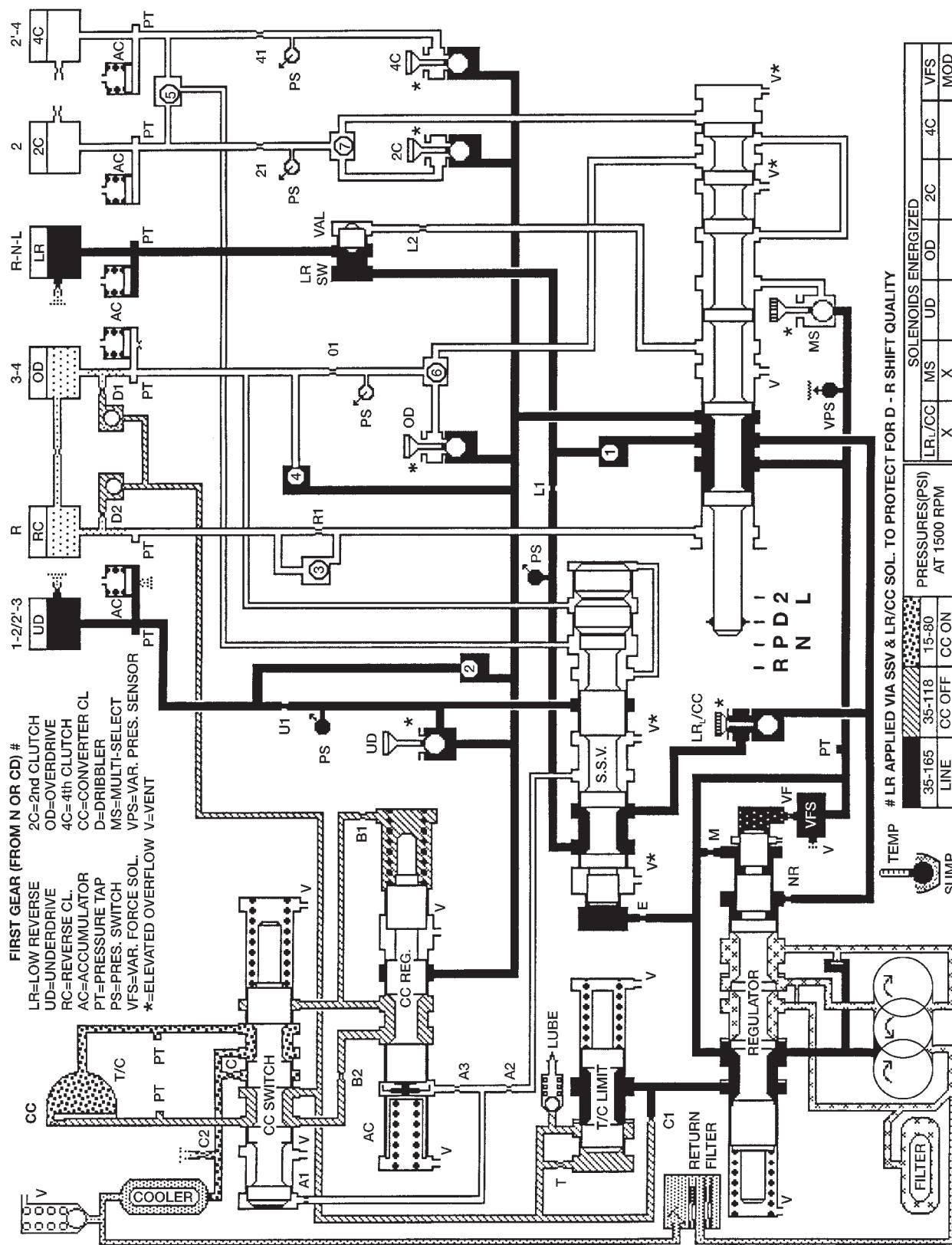
SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)

**45RFE HYDRAULIC SCHEMATIC**

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)

**45RFE HYDRAULIC SCHEMATIC**

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)

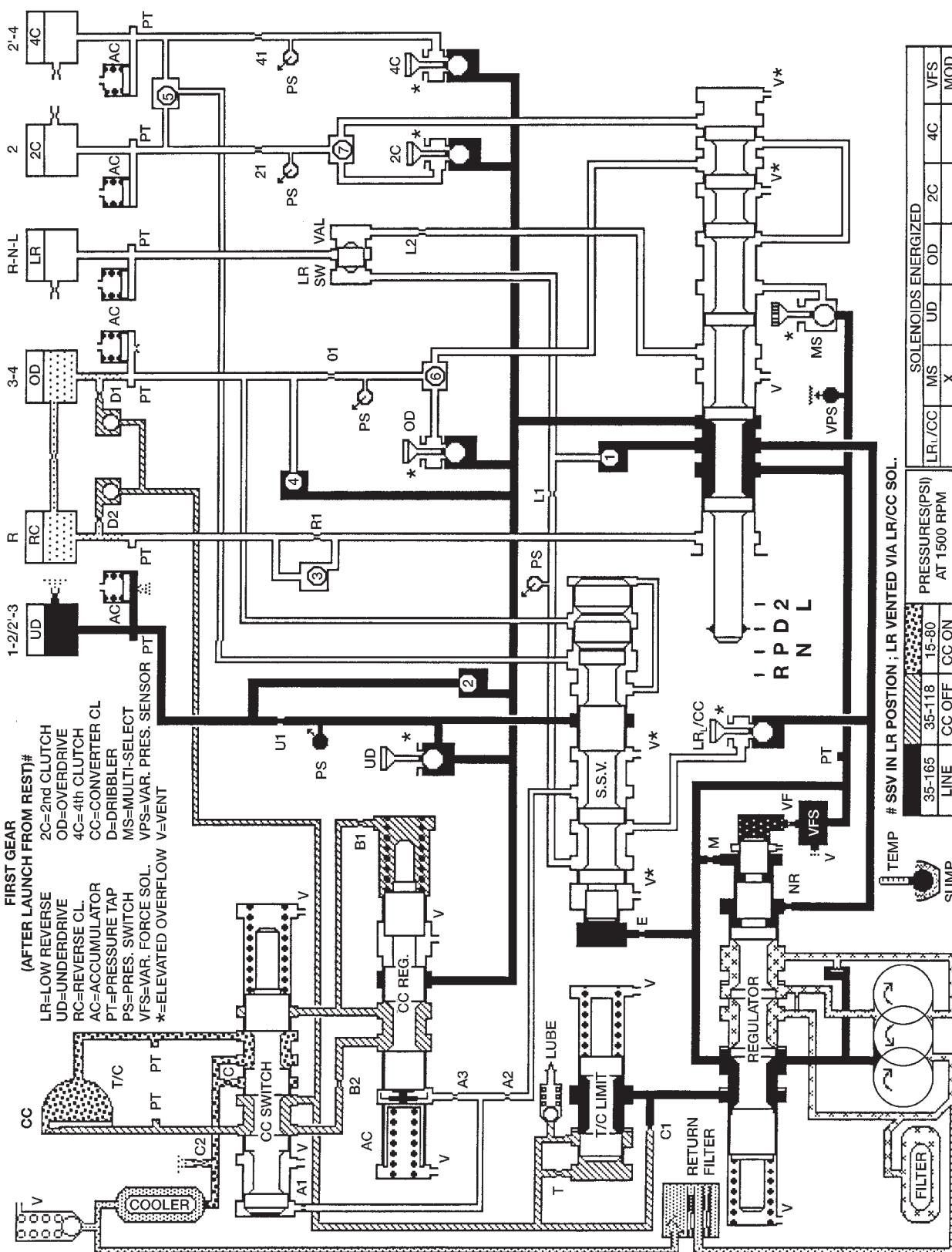
**45RFE HYDRAULIC SCHEMATIC**

80ba79d7

# TEMP	# LR APPLIED VIA SSV & LR/CC SOL. TO PROTECT FOR D - R SHIFT QUALITY								
	PRESSURE(PSI)		SOLENOIDS ENERGIZED						
	AT 1500 RPM	LR/CC	MS	UD	OD	2C	4C	VFS	MOD
35-165 LINE	35-118 CC OFF	15-80 CC ON							

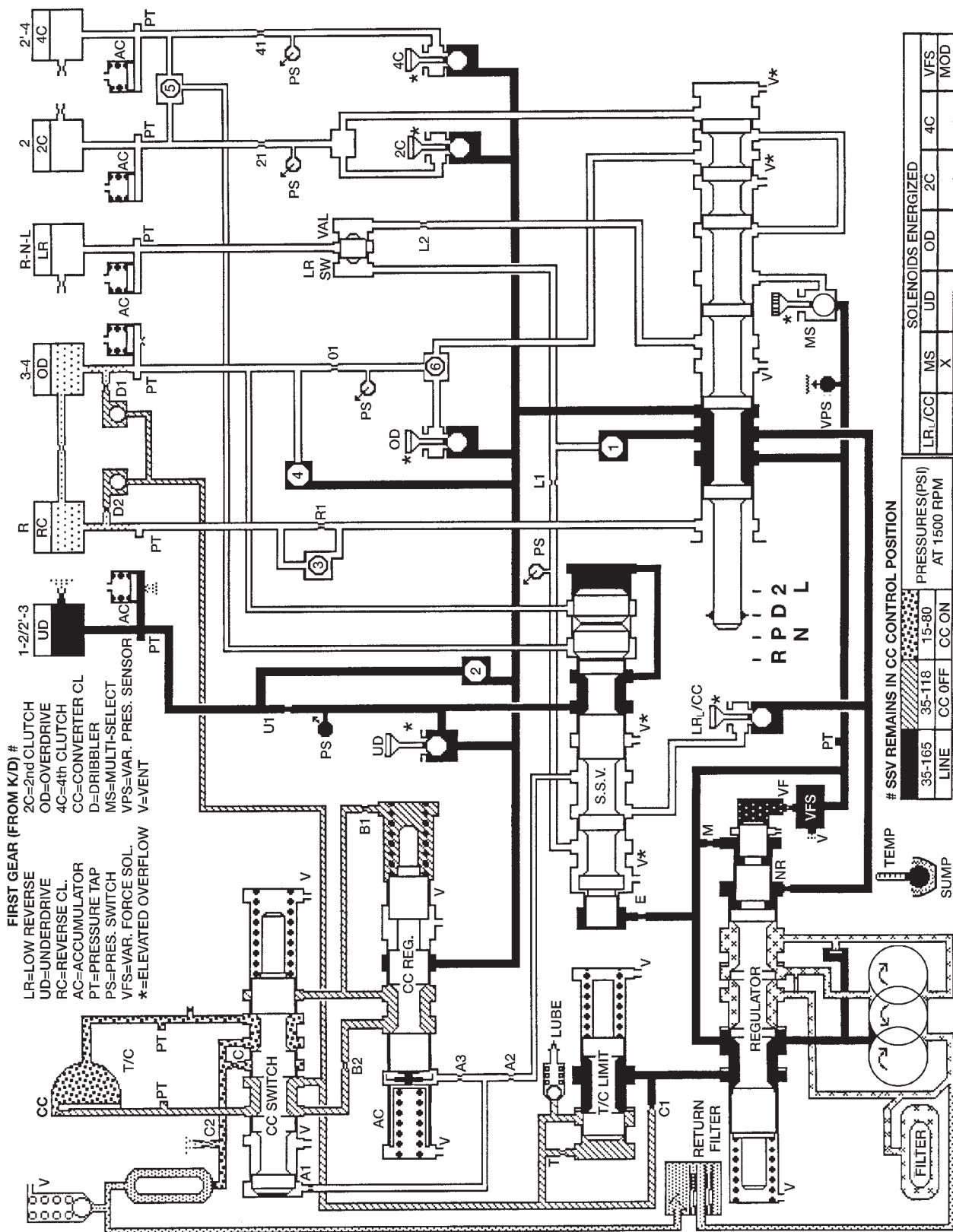
TEMP
PRESSURE(PSI)
LINE
CC OFF
CC ON

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)

**45RFE HYDRAULIC SCHEMATIC**

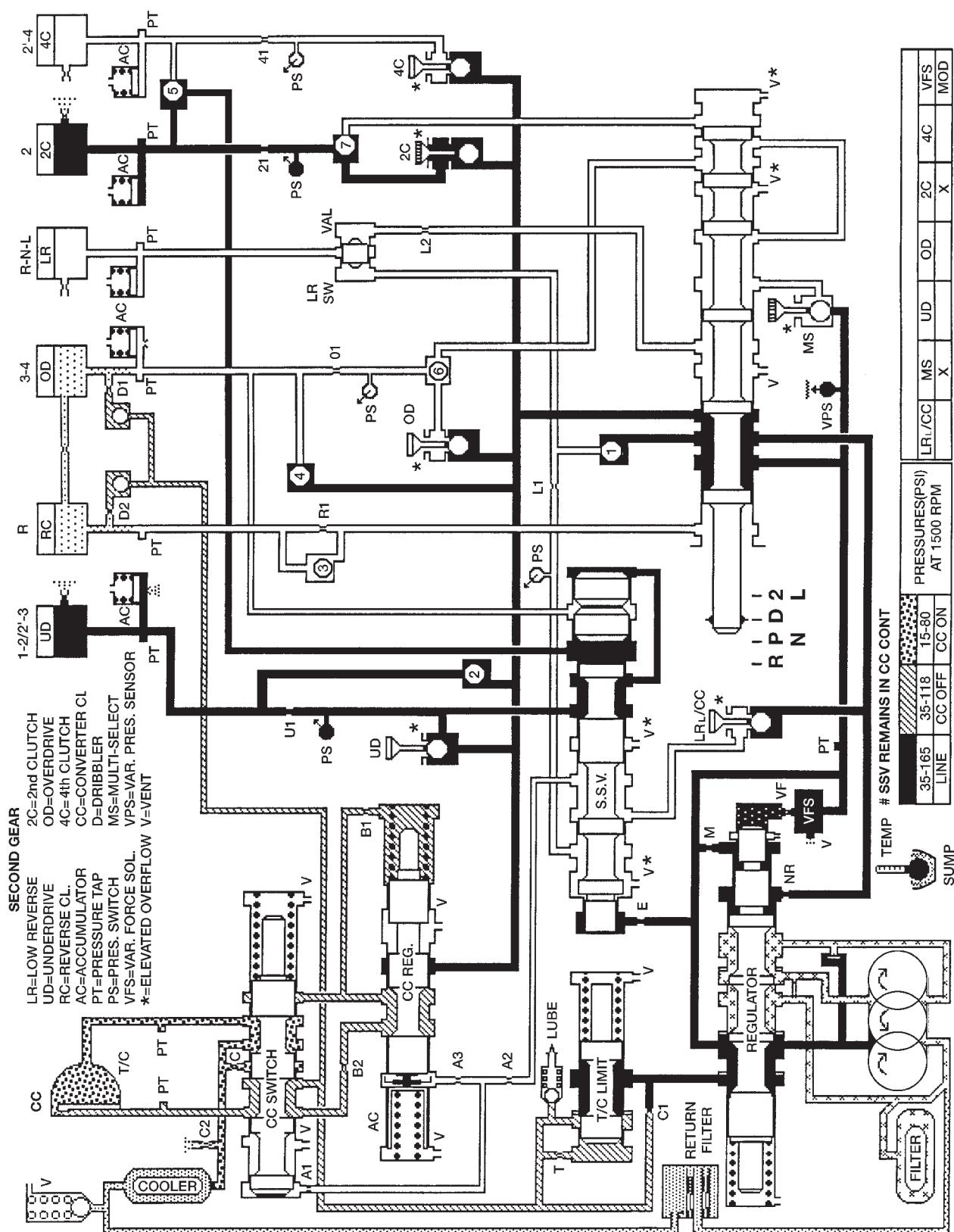
SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)

80ba79d9



45RFE HYDRAULIC SCHEMATIC

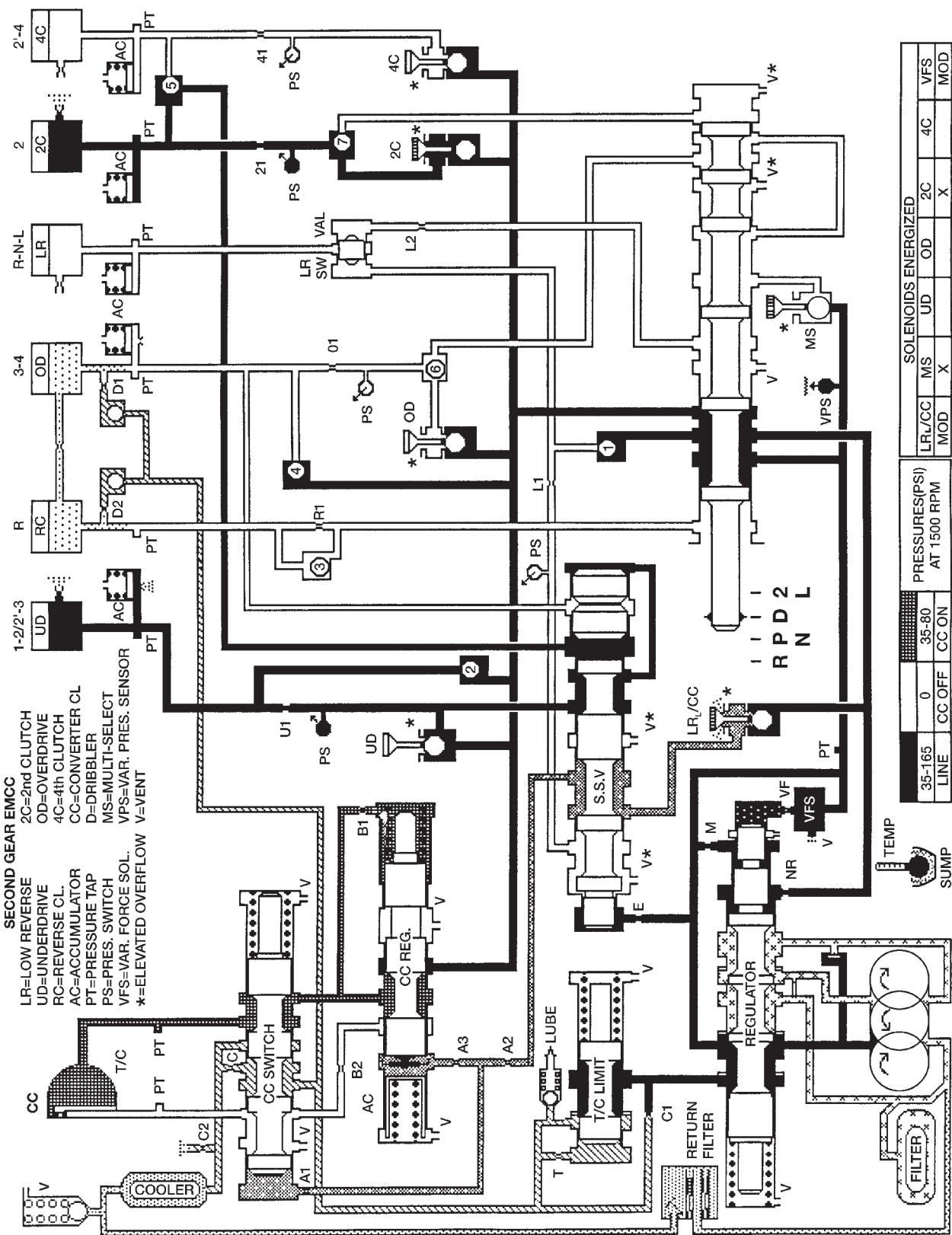
SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



45RFE HYDRAULIC SCHEMATIC

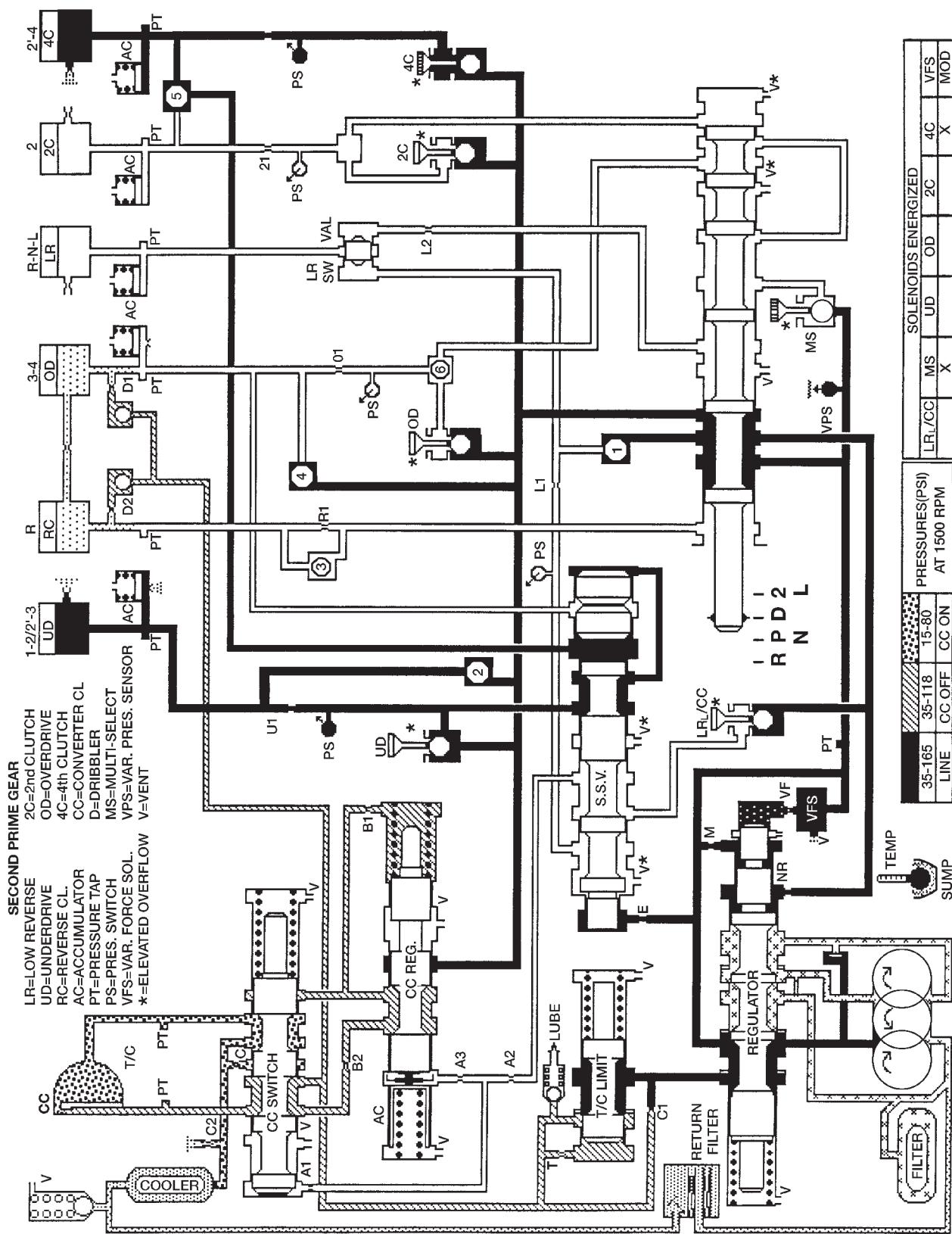
80ba79da

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



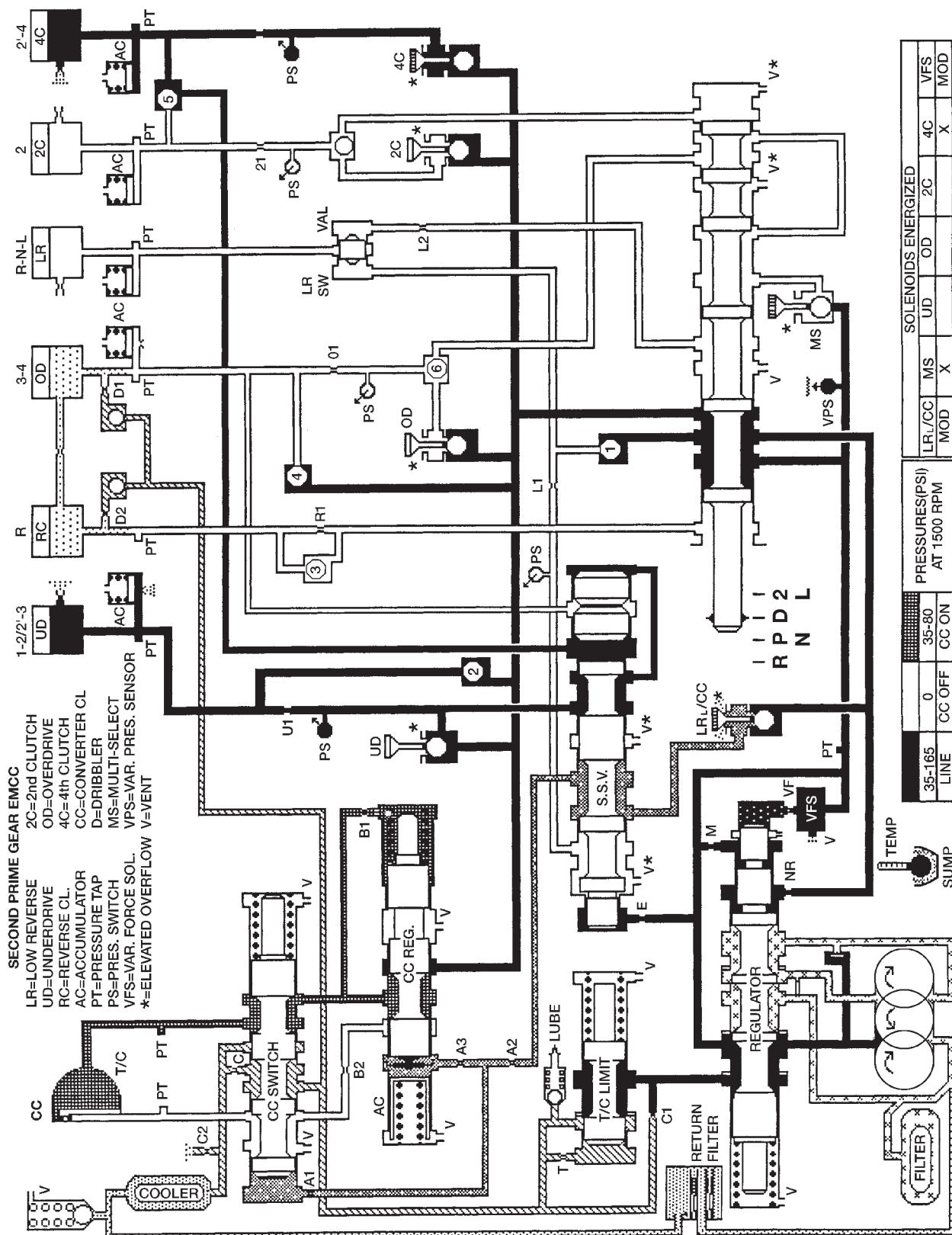
45RFE HYDRAULIC SCHEMATIC

80bba79dc



45RFE HYDRAULIC SCHEMATIC

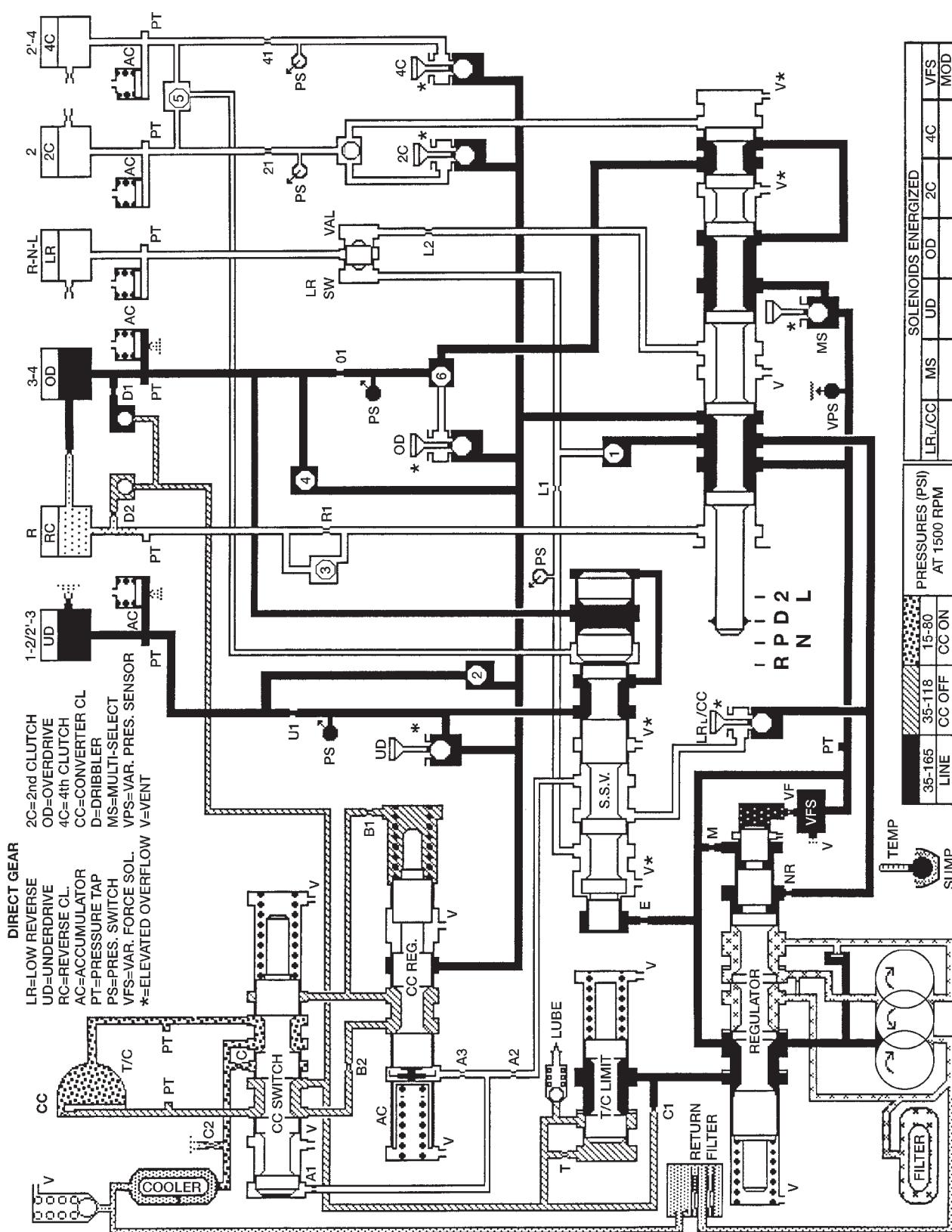
SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



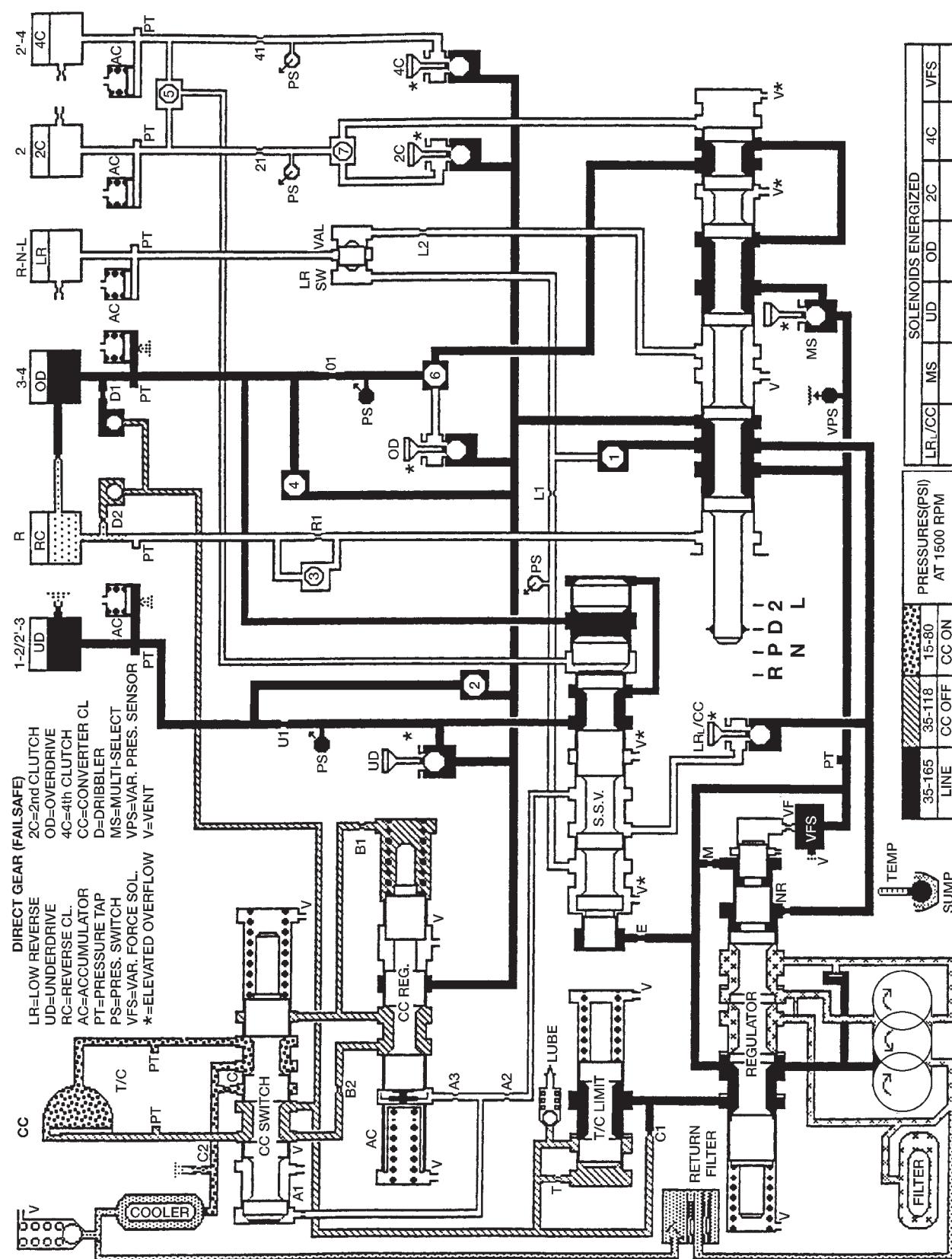
45RFE HYDRAULIC SCHEMATIC

80ba79de

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)

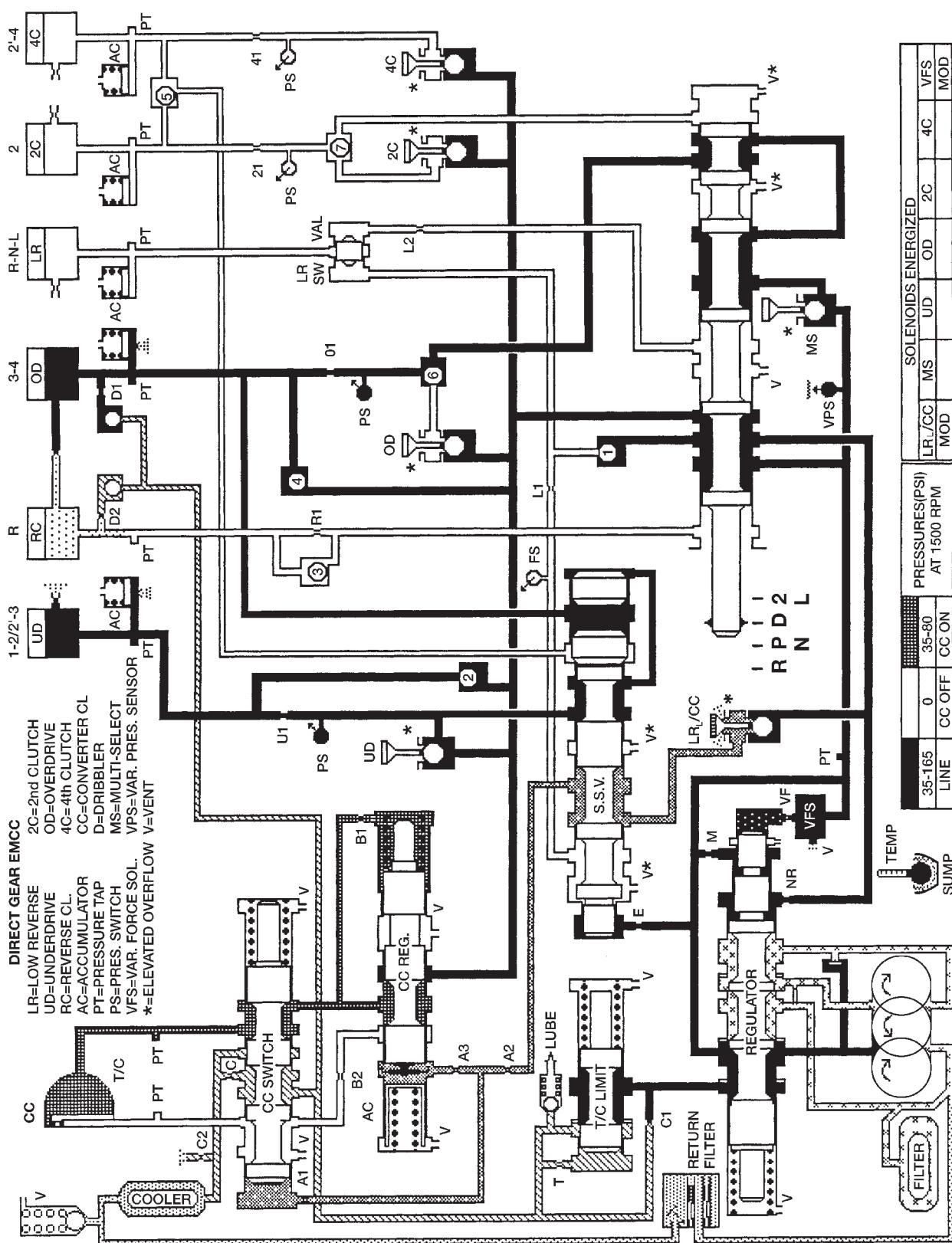
**45RFE HYDRAULIC SCHEMATIC**

80ba79e0

PRESSURES(PS) AT 1500 RPM		SOLENOIDS ENERGIZED			
35-165 LINE	35-118 CC OFF	15-80 CC ON	LR/CC	MS	UD
					OD
					2C
					4C
					VFS

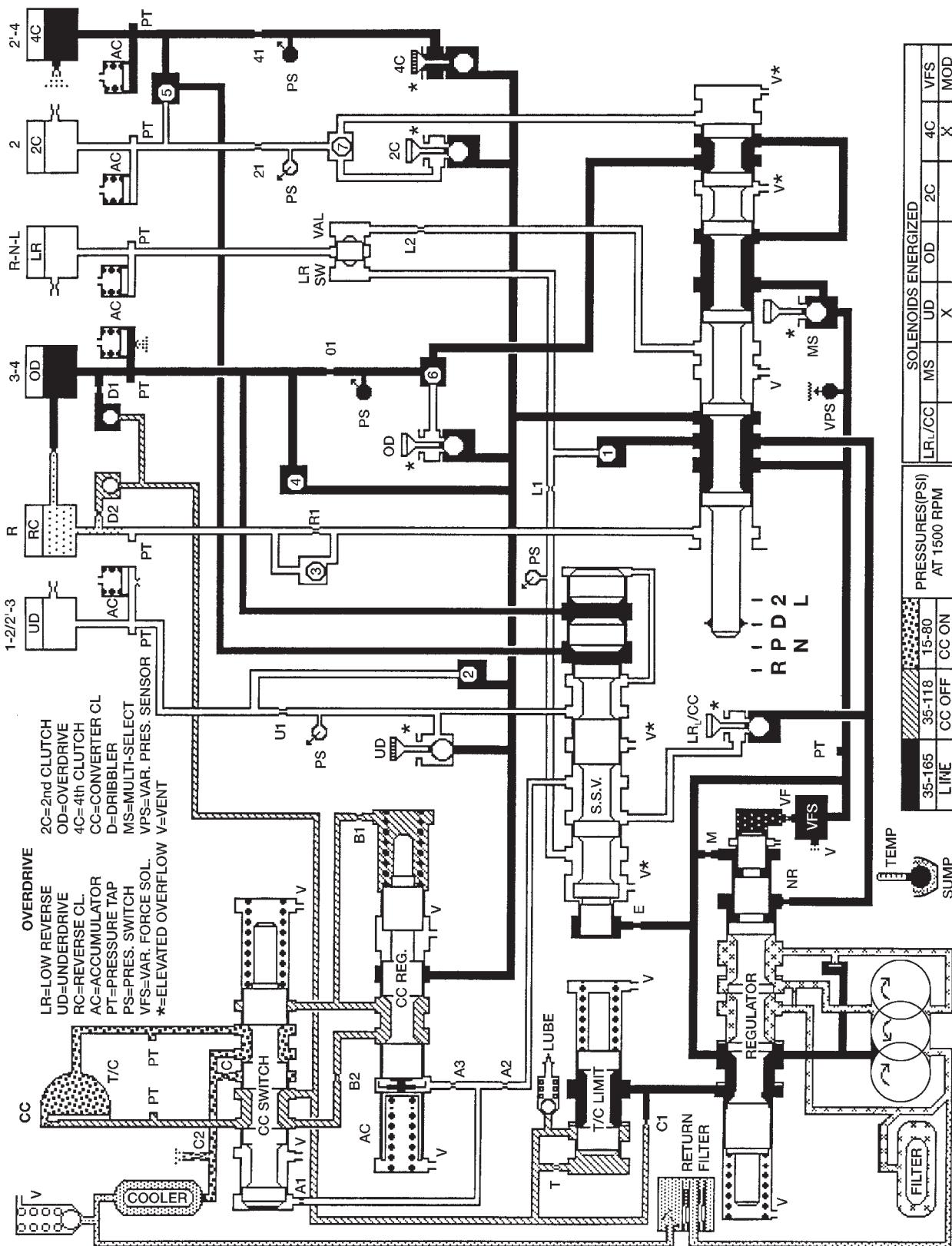
TEMP	SUMP

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)

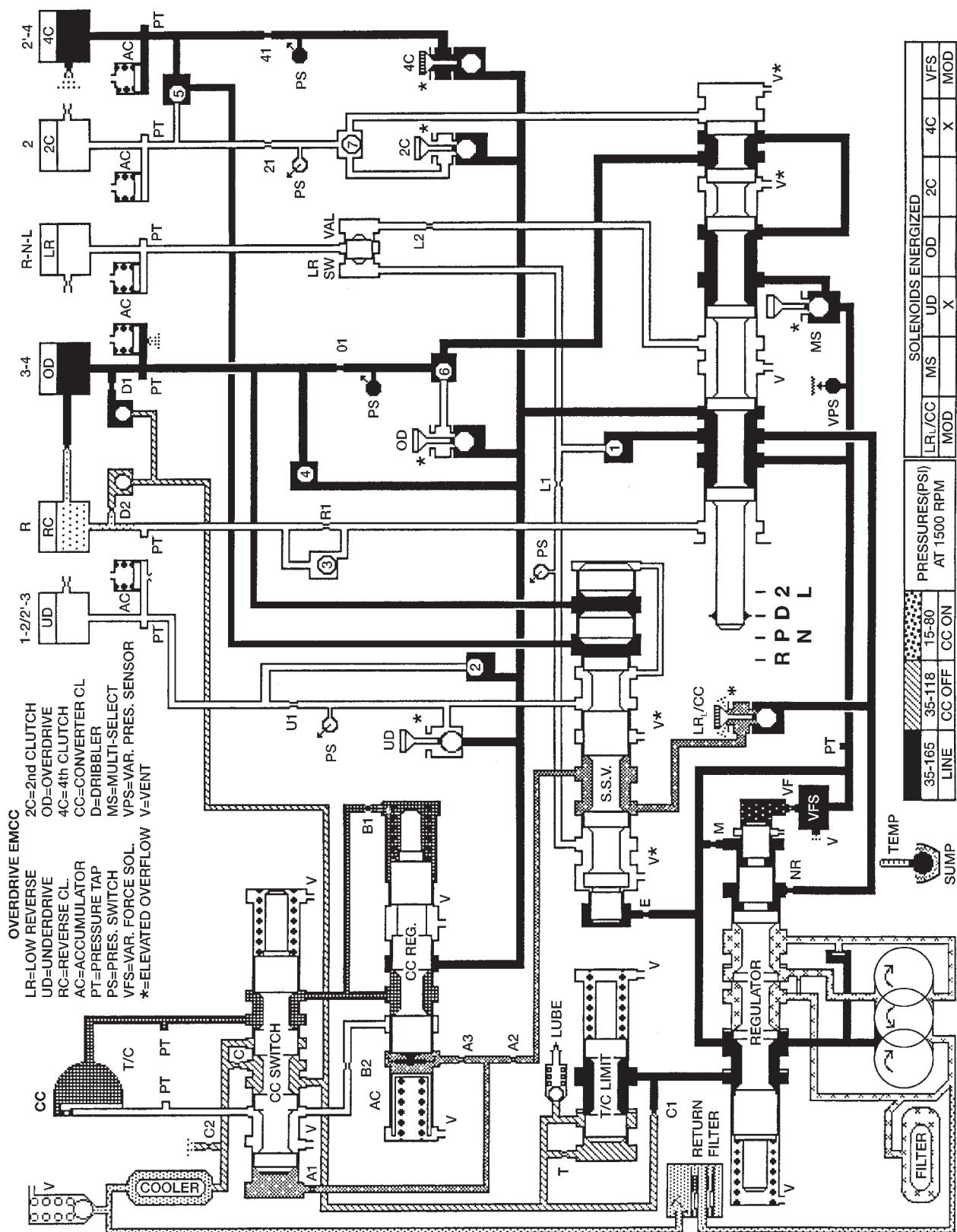


45RFE HYDRAULIC SCHEMATIC

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)

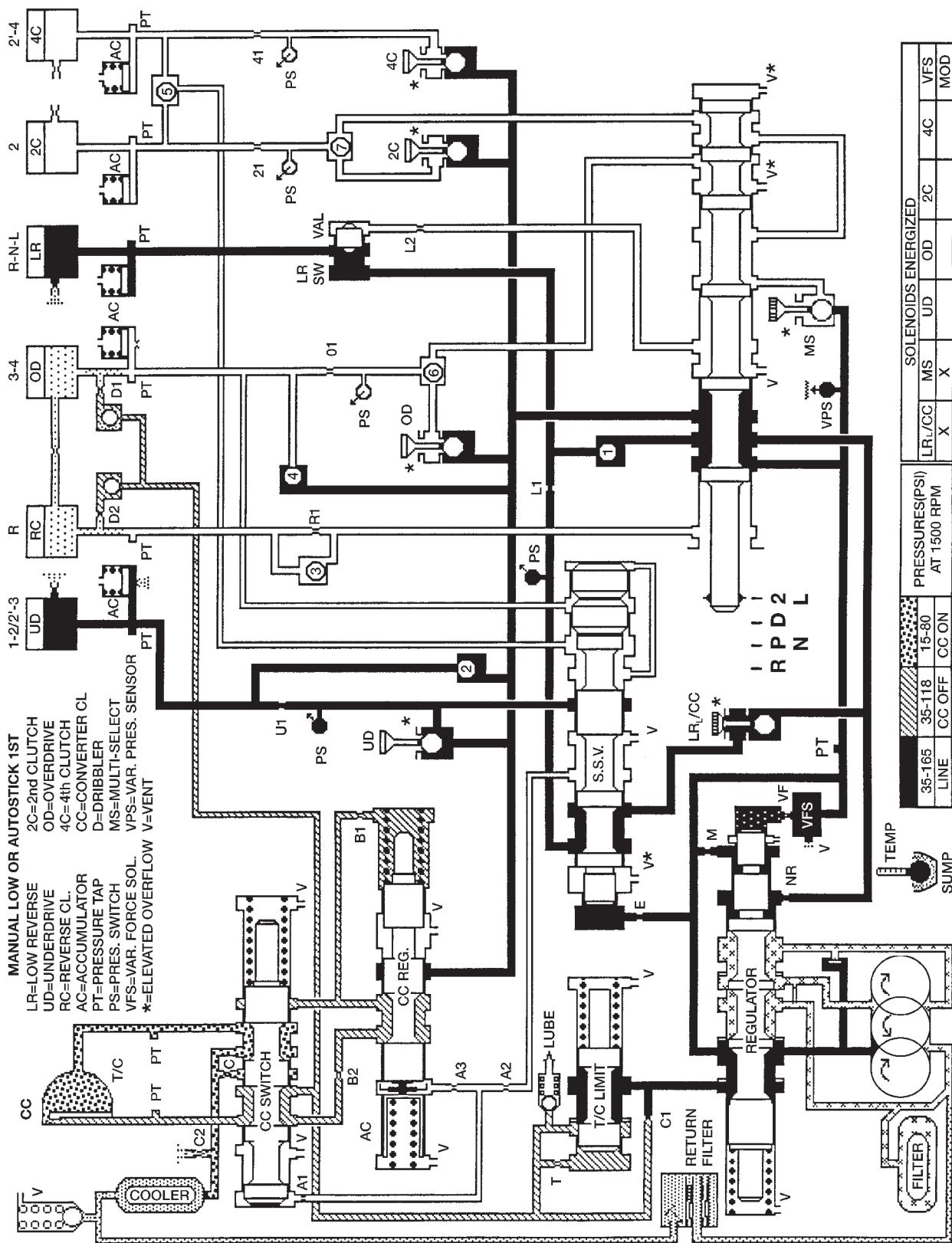
**45RFE HYDRAULIC SCHEMATIC**

80c0727



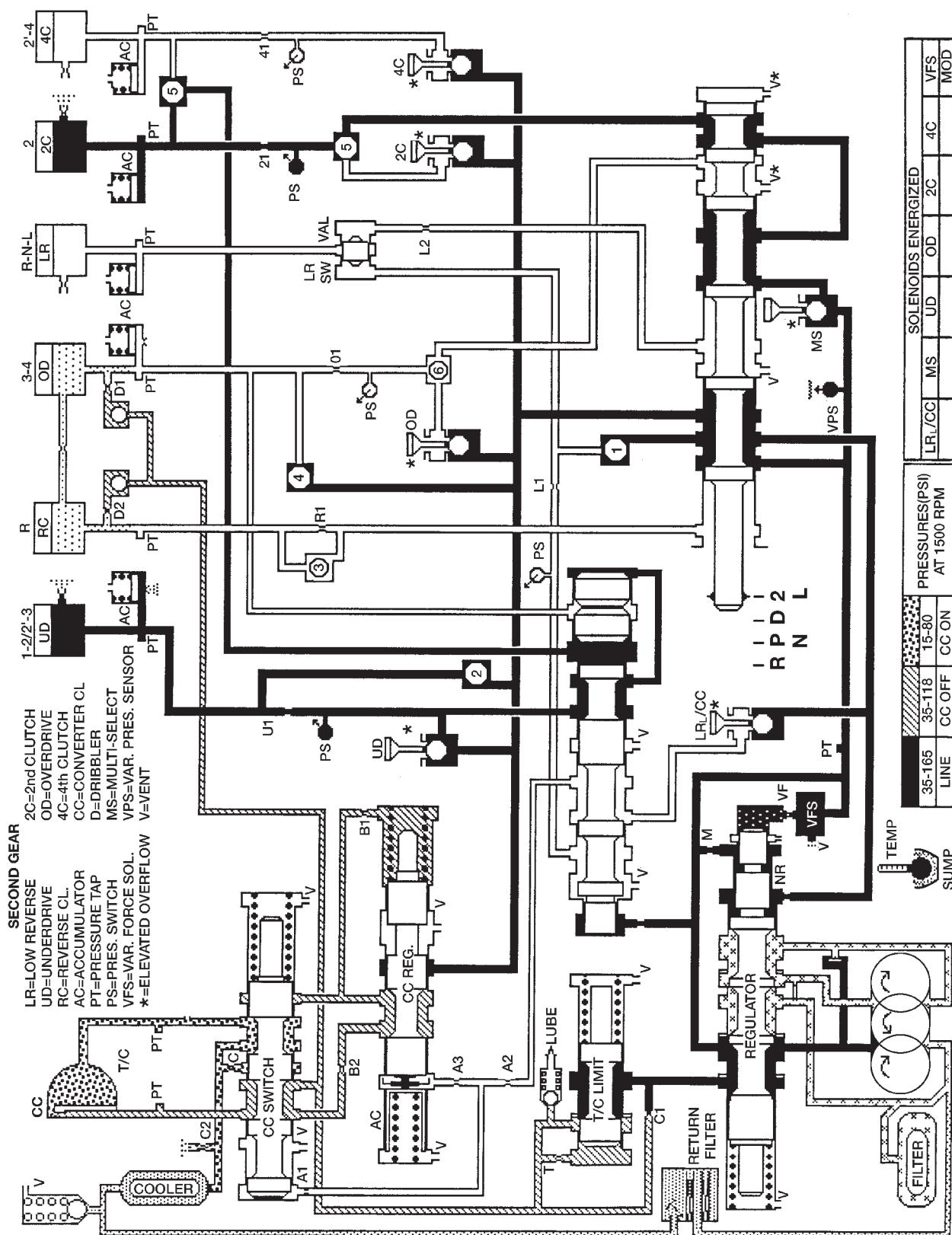
45RFE HYDRAULIC SCHEMATIC

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



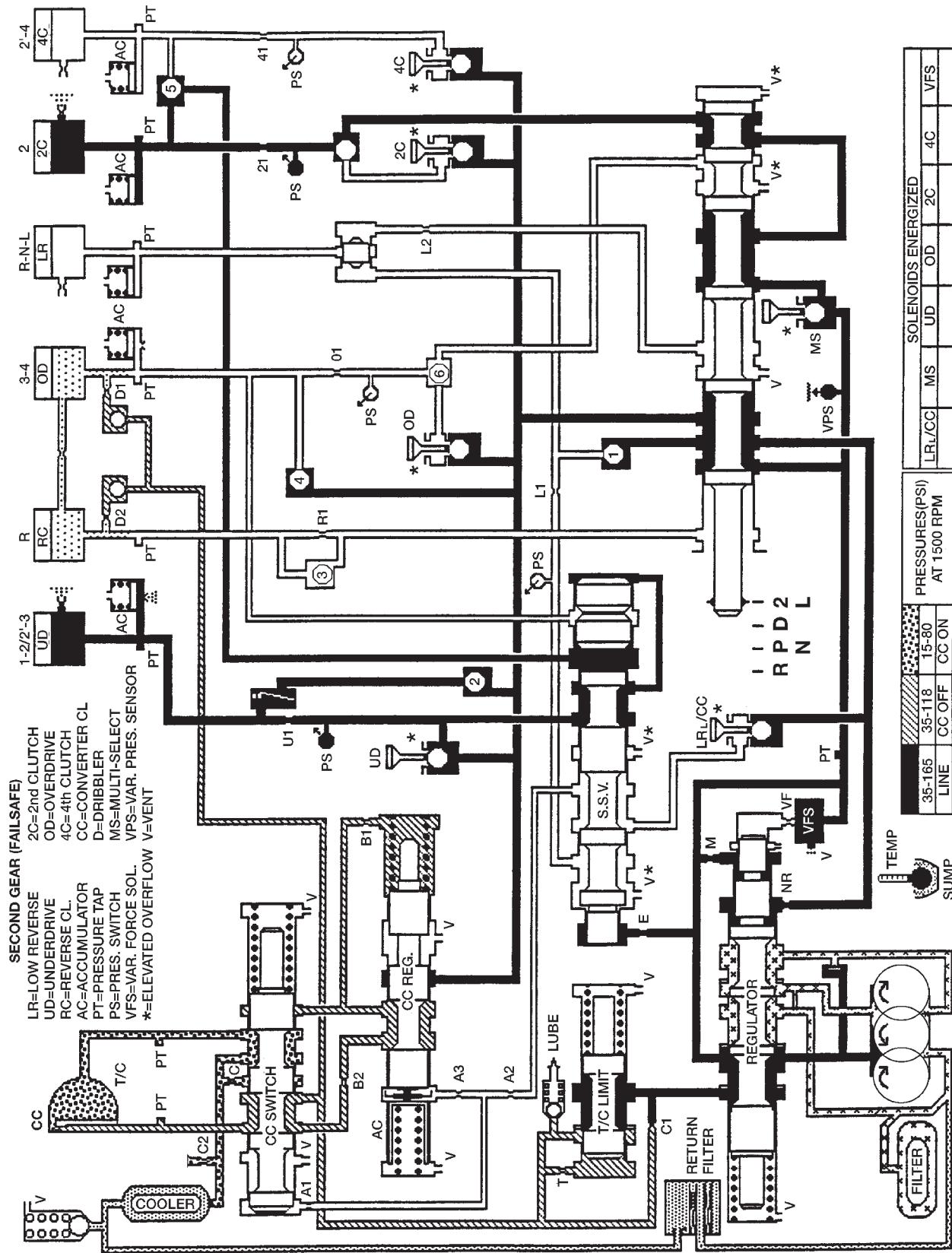
45RFE HYDRAULIC SCHEMATIC

SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)



SCHEMATICS AND DIAGRAMS (Continued)

8060729

**45RFE HYDRAULIC SCHEMATIC**

SPECIFICATIONS

TRANSMISSION

GENERAL

Component	Metric	Inch
Output Shaft End Play	0.53-0.78 mm	0.021-0.031 in.
Input Shaft End Play	0.79-1.07 mm	0.031-0.042 in.
2C Clutch Pack Clearance	0.53-1.27 mm	0.021-0.050 in.
4C Clutch Pack Clearance	0.81-1.35 mm	0.032-0.053 in.
L/R Clutch Pack Clearance	1.14-1.91 mm	0.045-0.075 in.
OD Clutch Pack Clearance	1.016-1.65 mm	0.040-0.065 in.
UD Clutch Pack Clearance	0.76-1.160 mm	0.030-0.063 in.
Reverse Clutch Pack Clearance	0.81-1.24 mm	0.032-0.049 in.
Recommended fluid	Mopar® ATF Plus 3, type 7176	

GEAR RATIOS

GEAR	RATIO
1ST	3.00:1
2ND	1.67:1
2ND PRIME	1.50:1
3RD	1.00:1
4TH	0.75:1
REVERSE	3.00:1

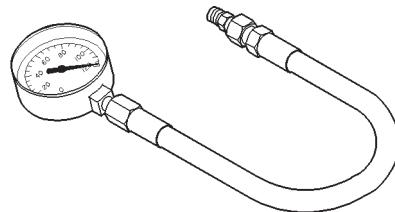
TORQUE

DESCRIPTION	TORQUE
Fitting, Cooler Line	17.5 N·m (155 in. lbs.)
Bolt, Torque Convertor	31 N·m (23 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, Driveplate	75 N·m (55 ft. lbs.)
Bolt/nut, Crossmember	68 N·m (50 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, Oil Pan	11.8 N·m (105 in. lbs.)
Screw, Primary Oil Filter	4.5 N·m (40 in. lbs.)
Filter, Cooler Return	14 N·m (125 in. lbs.)
Bolt, Oil Pump	28.2 N·m (250 in. lbs.)
Bolt, Oil Pump Body to Cover .	4.5 N·m (40 in. lbs.)
Screw, Plate to Oil Pump Body	4.5 N·m (40 in. lbs.)
Plug, Pressure Test Port	5.1 N·m (45 in. lbs.)
Bolt, Reaction Shaft Support	11.8 N·m (105 in. lbs.)

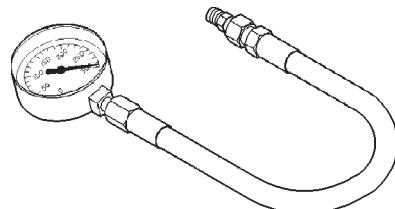
DESCRIPTION	TORQUE
Bolt, Valve Body	11.8 N·m (105 in. lbs.)
Screw, Valve Body to Transfer Plate	4.5 N·m (40 in. lbs.)
Screw, Solenoid Module to Transfer Plate .	5.7 N·m (50 in. lbs.)
Screw, Accumulator Cover	4.5 N·m (40 in. lbs.)
Screw, Detent Spring	4.5 N·m (40 in. lbs.)
Bolt, Input Speed Sensor	11.8 N·m (105 in. lbs.)
Bolt, Output Speed Sensor . .	11.8 N·m (105 in. lbs.)
Bolt, Line Pressure Sensor . .	11.8 N·m (105 in. lbs.)
Bolt, Extension Housing	54 N·m (40 ft. lbs.)
Fitting, Vent	12 N·m (100 in. lbs.)
Screw, Manual Valve Cam Retaining	4.5 N·m (40 in. lbs.)
Bolt, Manual Lever	28.2 N·m (250 in. lbs.)

SPECIAL TOOLS

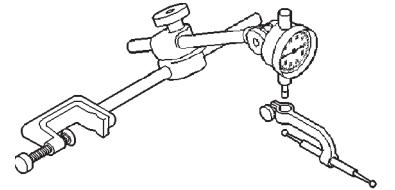
45RFE TRANSMISSION



Pressure Gauge—C-3292



Pressure Gauge—C-3293SP

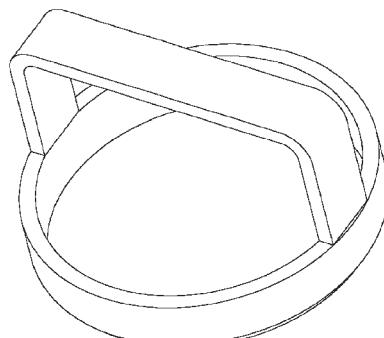


Dial Indicator—C-3339

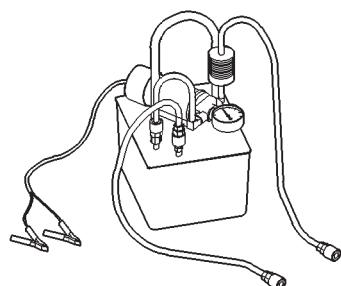
SPECIAL TOOLS (Continued)



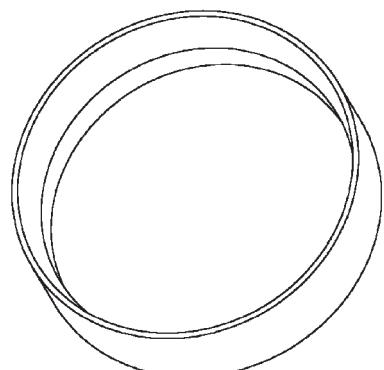
Seal Installer—C-3860-A



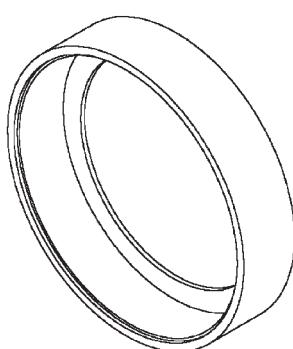
Spring Compressor—8251



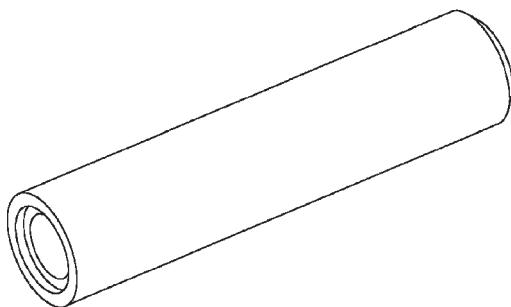
Flusher—6906



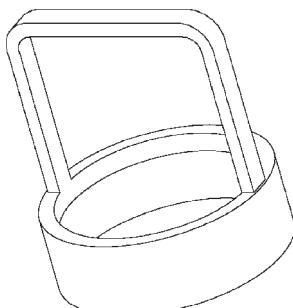
Piston Installer—8252



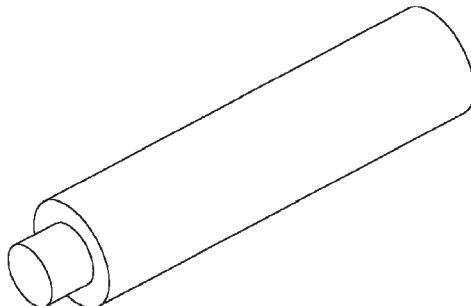
Spring Compressor—8249



Seal Installer—8253

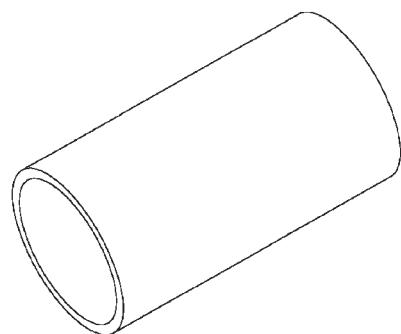


Spring Compressor—8250

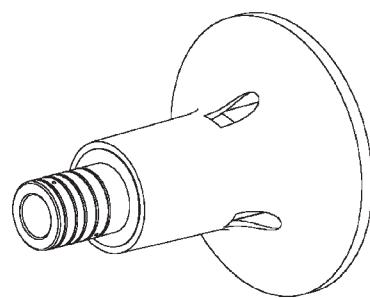


Seal Installer—8254

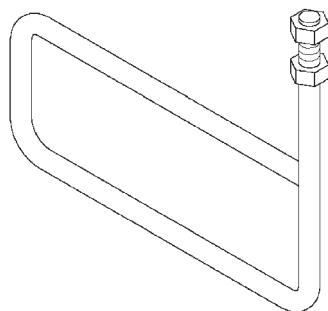
SPECIAL TOOLS (Continued)



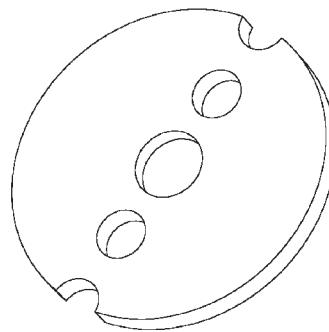
Installer—8255



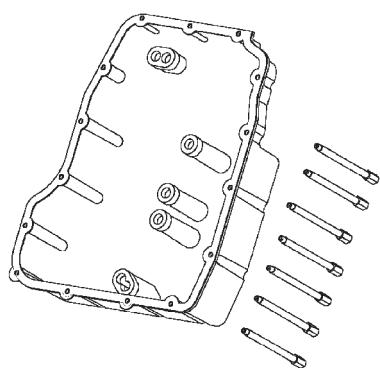
Input Clutch Pressure Fixture—8260



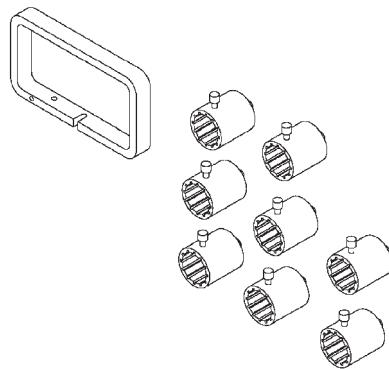
Support Stand—8257



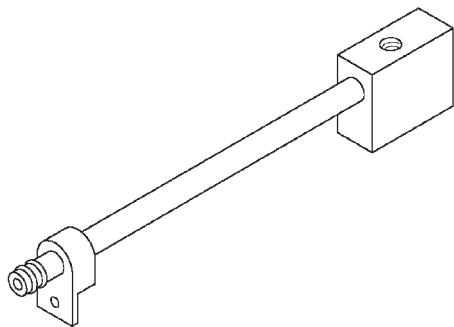
Alignment Plate—8261



Pressure Tap Adapter—8258

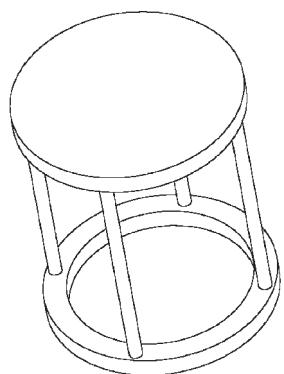


End Play Set—8266

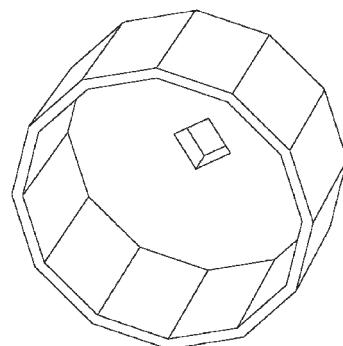


Line Pressure Adapter—8259

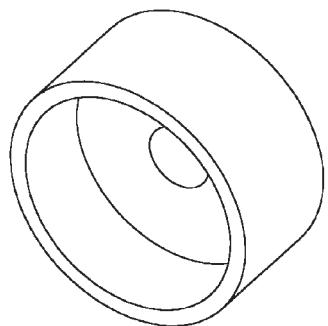
SPECIAL TOOLS (Continued)



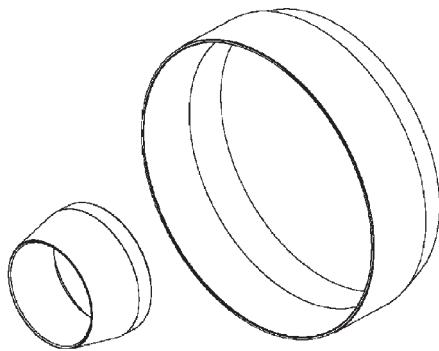
Spring Compressor—8285



Filter Wrench—8321



Bearing Installer—8320



Piston Installer—8504

NV231 TRANSFER CASE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

page	page
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION	
NV231 TRANSFER CASE.....	506
LUBRICANT AND FILL LEVEL	507
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	
NV231 DIAGNOSIS	507
REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION	
TRANSFER CASE	508
TRANSFER CASE SHIFTER.....	509
FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL	509
REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL.....	509
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY	
NV231 TRANSFER CASE.....	511
CLEANING AND INSPECTION	
NV231 TRANSFER CASE.....	527
ADJUSTMENTS	
SHIFTER ADJUSTMENT.....	530
SPECIFICATIONS	
TORQUE	531
SPECIAL TOOLS	
NV231	531
IDENTIFICATION	

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION

NV231 TRANSFER CASE

DESCRIPTION

The NV231 is a part-time transfer case with a low range reduction gear system. The NV231 has three operating ranges plus a Neutral position. A low range system provides a reduction ratio for increased low speed torque capability.

The geartrain is mounted in two aluminum case halves attached with bolts. The mainshaft front and rear bearings are mounted in aluminum retainer housings bolted to the case halves.

OPERATING RANGES

Transfer case operating ranges are:

- 2WD (2-wheel drive)
- 4HI LOCK (4-wheel drive)
- 4LO LOCK (4-wheel drive low range)

The 2WD range is for use on any road surface at any time.

The 4HI LOCK and 4LO LOCK ranges are for off road use only. They are not for use on hard surface roads. The only exception being when the road surface is wet or slippery or covered by ice and snow.

The low range reduction gear system is operative in 4LO LOCK range only. This range is for extra pulling power in off road situations. Low range reduction ratio is 2.72:1.

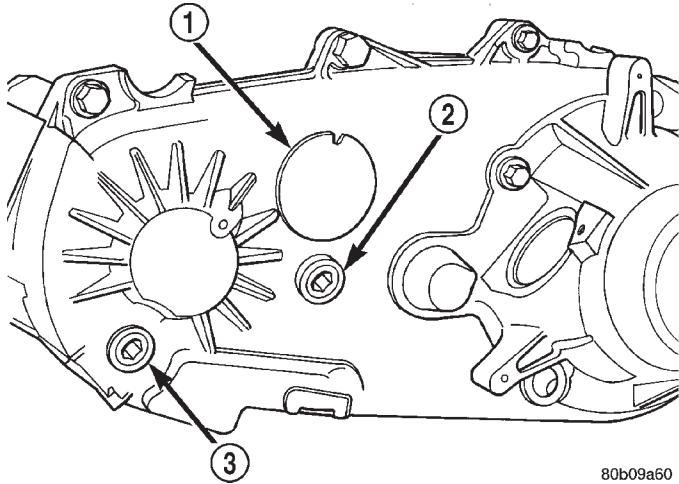
SHIFT MECHANISM

Operating ranges are selected with a body mounted shift lever. The shift lever is connected to the transfer case range lever by an adjustable linkage rod. A straight line shift pattern is used. Range positions are marked on the shifter bezel cover plate.

IDENTIFICATION

A circular ID tag is attached to the rear case of each transfer case (Fig. 1). The ID tag provides the transfer case model number, assembly number, serial number, and low range ratio.

The transfer case serial number also represents the date of build.



80b09a60

Fig. 1 Fill/Drain Plug And I.D. Tag Locations

- 1 – I.D. TAG
- 2 – FILL PLUG
- 3 – DRAIN PLUG

OPERATION

The input gear is splined to the transmission output shaft. The input gear drives the mainshaft through the planetary assembly and range hub. The front output shaft is operated by a drive chain that connects the shaft to a drive sprocket on the mainshaft. The drive sprocket is engaged/disengaged by the mode fork, which operates the mode sleeve and

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

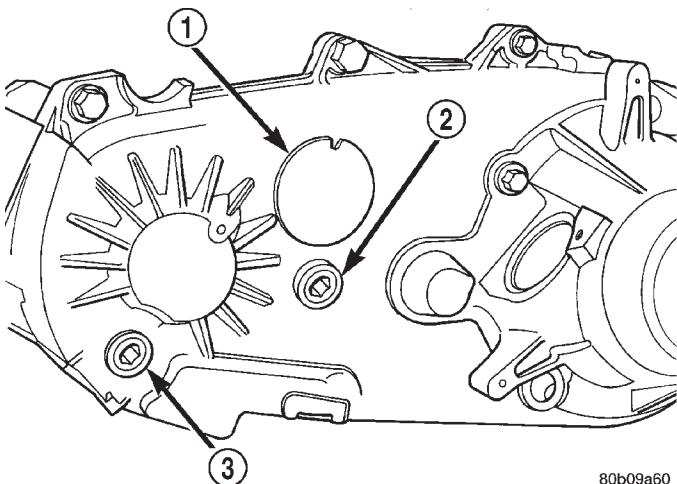
hub. The sleeve and hub are not equipped with a synchronizer mechanism for shifting.

LUBRICANT AND FILL LEVEL

DESCRIPTION

Recommended lubricant for the NV231 transfer case is Mopar® Dexron III, or ATF+3, type 7176. Approximate lubricant fill capacity is 1.2 liters (2.5 pints).

The fill and drain plugs are both in the rear case (Fig. 2). Correct fill level is to the bottom edge of the fill plug hole. Be sure the vehicle is level to ensure an accurate fluid level check.



80b09a60

Fig. 2 Fill/Drain Plug Locations

- 1 – I.D. TAG
- 2 – FILL PLUG
- 3 – DRAIN PLUG

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

NV231 DIAGNOSIS

DIAGNOSIS CHART

Condition	Possible Cause	Correction
Transfer case difficult to shift or will not shift into desired range.	1) Vehicle speed too great to permit shifting. 2) If vehicle was operated for an extended period in 4HI LOCK mode on dry surface, driveline torque load may cause difficulty. 3) Transfer case shift linkage binding. 4) Insufficient or incorrect lubricant. 5) Internal transfer case components binding, worn, or damaged.	1) Slow vehicle and shift into desired range. 2) Stop vehicle and shift transfer case to Neutral position. Transfer case can then be shifted to the desired mode. 3) Repair or replace linkage as necessary. 4) Drain and refill transfer case with the correct quantity of Mopar® DexronIII or ATF+3, type 7176, Automatic transmission fluid. 5) Repair or replace components as necessary.
Transfer case noisy in all drive modes.	1) Insufficient or incorrect lubricant.	1) Drain and refill transfer case with the correct quantity of Mopar® DexronIII or ATF+3, type 7176, Automatic transmission fluid.lubricant.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

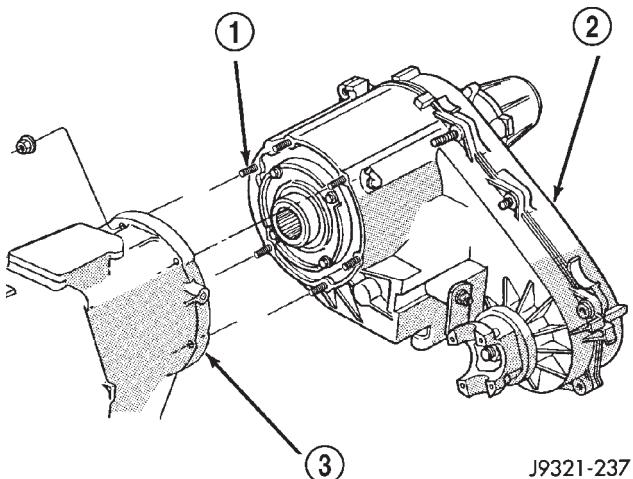
Condition	Possible Cause	Correction
Transfer case noisy while in, or jumps out of, 4LO LOCK mode.	1) Transfer case not completely engaged in 4LO LOCK position.	1) With the transmission in neutral, or clutch depressed on vehicles equipped with a manual transmission, shift transfer case to the Neutral position, and then back into the 4LO LOCK position.
	2) Transfer case shift linkage out of adjustment.	2) Adjust linkage as necessary.
	3) Transfer case shift linkage loose or binding.	3) Repair, replace, or tighten linkage components as necessary.
	4) Range fork damaged, inserts worn, or fork is binding on the shift rail.	4) Repair or replace components as necessary.
	5) Low range gear worn or damaged.	5) Repair or replace components as necessary.
Lubricant leaking from transfer case seals or vent.	1) Transfer case overfilled.	1) Drain lubricant to the correct level.
	2) Transfer case vent closed or restricted.	2) Clean or replace vent as necessary.
	3) Transfer case seals damaged or installed incorrectly.	3) Replace suspect seal.
Abnormal tire wear.	1) Extended operation in 4HI LOCK mode on dry surfaces,	1) Operate vehicle in 2H mode on dry surfaces.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION

TRANSFER CASE

REMOVAL

- (1) Shift transfer case into 2WD.
- (2) Raise vehicle.
- (3) Drain transfer case lubricant.
- (4) Mark front and rear propeller shafts for alignment reference.
- (5) Support transmission with jack stand.
- (6) Remove rear crossmember and skid plate, if equipped.
- (7) Disconnect front and rear propeller shafts at transfer case.
- (8) Disconnect transfer case linkage rod from range lever.
- (9) Disconnect transfer case vent hose (Fig. 3) and indicator switch harness, if necessary.
- (10) Support transfer case with transmission jack.
- (11) Secure transfer case to jack with chains.
- (12) Remove nuts attaching transfer case to transmission.
- (13) Pull transfer case and jack rearward to disengage transfer case.
- (14) Remove transfer case from under vehicle.

**Fig. 3 Transfer Case Mounting—Typical**

- 1 – MOUNTING STUDS
- 2 – TRANSFER CASE
- 3 – TRANSMISSION

INSTALLATION

- (1) Mount transfer case on a transmission jack.
- (2) Secure transfer case to jack with chains.
- (3) Position transfer case under vehicle.
- (4) Align transfer case and transmission shafts and install transfer case on transmission.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

(5) Install and tighten transfer case attaching nuts to 35 N·m (26 ft. lbs.) torque (Fig. 3).

(6) Connect vent hose.

(7) Connect indicator switch harness to transfer case switch, if necessary. Secure wire harness to clips on transfer case.

(8) Align and connect the propeller shafts.

(9) Fill transfer case with correct fluid. Refer to Lubricant And Fill Level section for proper fluid and capacity.

(10) Install rear crossmember and skid plate, if equipped. Tighten crossmember bolts to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.) torque.

(11) Remove transmission jack and support stand.

(12) Connect shift rod to transfer case range lever.

(13) Verify the adjustment of the transfer case shift linkage.

(14) Lower vehicle and verify transfer case shift operation.

TRANSFER CASE SHIFTER

REMOVAL

(1) Shift transfer case and shifter into the 2WD position.

(2) Raise and support vehicle.

(3) Loosen adjusting trunnion lock bolt and slide shift rod out of trunnion (Fig. 4). If rod lacks enough travel to come out of trunnion, push trunnion out of the shifter arm.

(4) Lower the vehicle.

(5) Remove transfer case shifter knob cap.

(6) Remove nut holding shifter knob to shift lever.

(7) Remove shifter knob.

(8) Remove the shifter bezel.

(9) Remove the shift lever.

(10) Remove bolts holding shifter to vehicle floor pan.

(11) Separate shifter from the vehicle.

INSTALLATION

(1) If a new shifter is not being installed, secure an appropriately sized pin through the adjustment channel and hole, located in the base of the shifter body.

(2) Position shifter on the vehicle floor pan.

(3) Install the bolts to hold the shifter to the floor pan. Tighten the bolts to 12.4 N·m (110 in.lbs.).

(4) Install the shift lever to the shifter. Tighten the shift lever bolt to 28.3 N·m (250 in.lbs.).

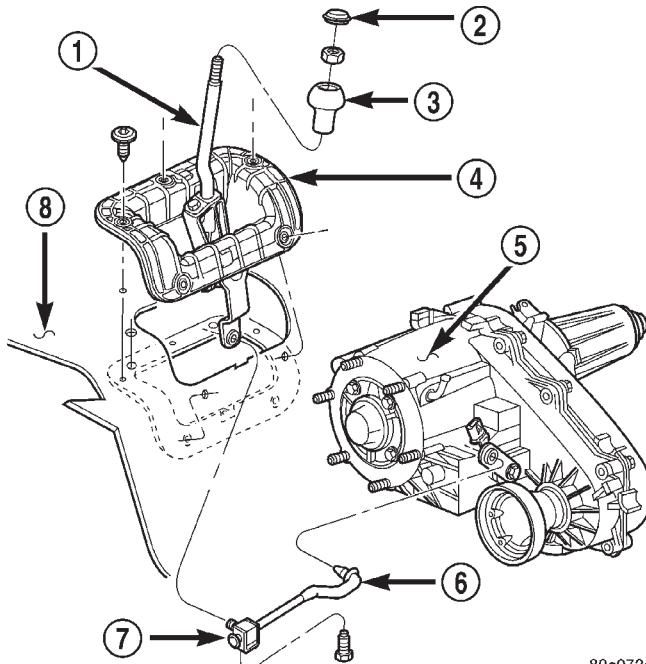
(5) Install the shifter bezel.

(6) Install shift knob on shift lever.

(7) Install nut to hold shifter knob to shift lever.

(8) Install shifter knob cap.

(9) Raise the vehicle.



80c072e1

Fig. 4 Shifter

(10) Install the shift rod to the trunnion, if necessary.

(11) Tighten trunnion lock bolt 10 N·m (90 in.lbs.).

(12) Remove the locating pin from the adjustment channel and hole in the base of the shifter.

(13) Lower vehicle.

(14) Verify transfer case operation.

FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL

REMOVAL

(1) Raise vehicle.

(2) Remove front propeller shaft. Refer to Group 3, Differential and Driveline, for proper procedure.

(3) Remove front output shaft yoke.

(4) Remove seal from front case with pry tool (Fig. 5).

INSTALLATION

(1) Install new front output seal in front case with Installer Tool 8143 as follows:

(a) Place new seal on tool. Garter spring on seal goes toward interior of case.

(b) Start seal in bore with light taps from hammer (Fig. 6). Once seal is started, continue tapping seal into bore until installer tool seats against case.

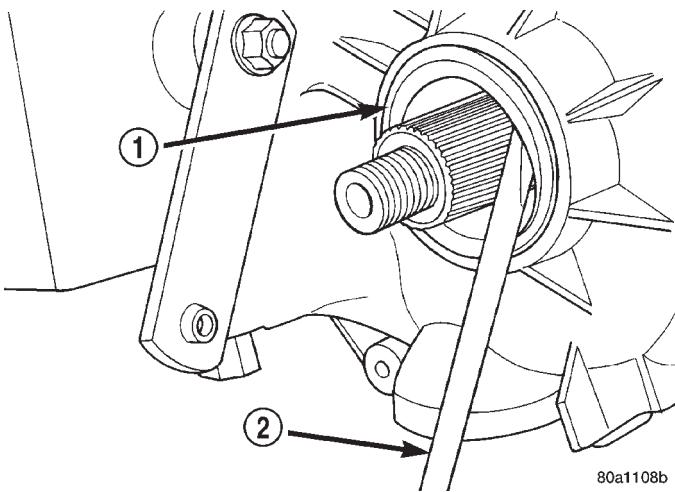
REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL

REMOVAL

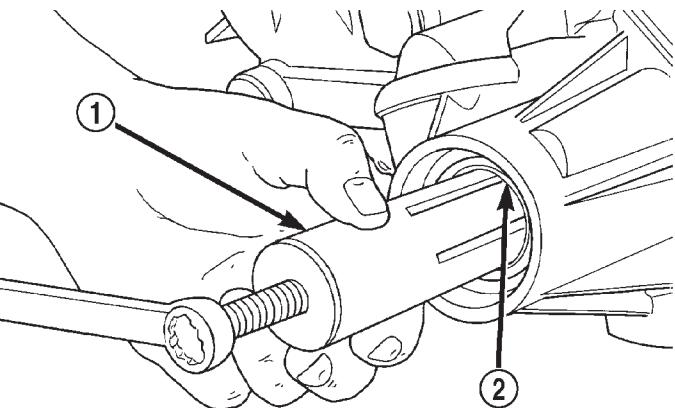
(1) Raise vehicle.

(2) Remove rear propeller shaft. Refer to Group 3, Differential and Driveline, for proper procedure.

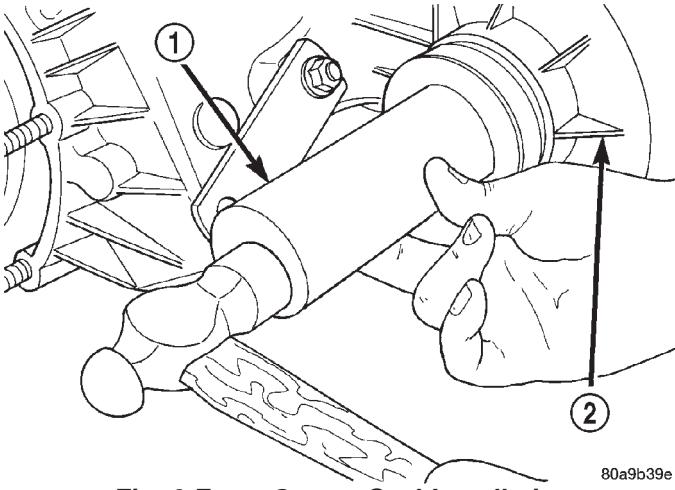
REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

**Fig. 5 Remove Front Output Shaft Seal**

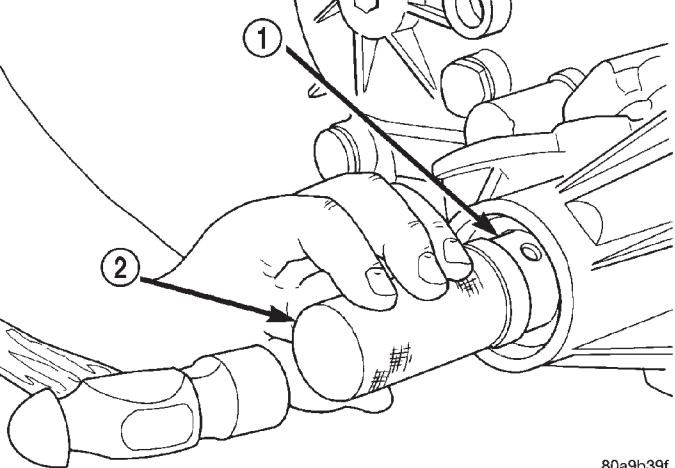
- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL
2 – PRYBAR

**Fig. 7 Rear Retainer Bushing Removal**

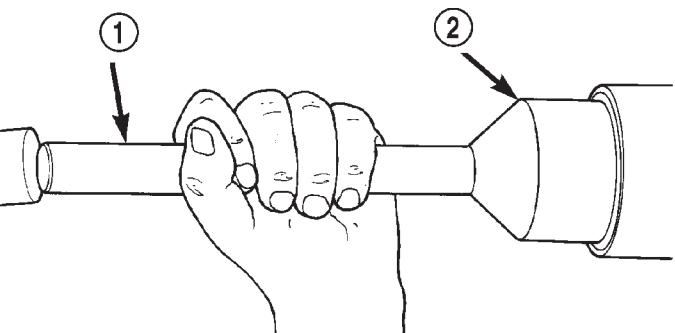
- 1 – REMOVER 6957
2 – REAR RETAINER BUSHING

**Fig. 6 Front Output Seal Installation**

- 1 – INSTALLER 8143
2 – TRANSFER CASE

**Fig. 8 Rear Retainer Bushing Install**

- 1 – REAR RETAINER BUSHING
2 – INSTALLER 8160

**Fig. 9 Install Rear Retainer Seal**

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
2 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3995-A

(7) Lower vehicle.

- (3) Using a suitable pry tool or slide-hammer mounted screw, remove the rear retainer seal.
(4) Using Remover 6957, remove bushing from rear retainer (Fig. 7).

INSTALLATION

- (1) Clean fluid residue from sealing surface and inspect for defects.
(2) Position replacement bushing in rear retainer with fluid port in bushing aligned with slot in retainer.
(3) Using Installer 8160, drive bushing into retainer until installer seats against case (Fig. 8).
(4) Using Installer C-3995-A, install seal in rear retainer (Fig. 9).
(5) Install propeller shaft.
(6) Verify proper fluid level.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

NV231 TRANSFER CASE

DISASSEMBLY

Position transfer case on shallow drain pan. Remove drain plug and drain lubricant remaining in case.

REAR RETAINER AND OIL PUMP REMOVAL

- (1) Remove extension housing bolts.
- (2) Tap extension housing with plastic or rawhide mallet to loosen sealer (Fig. 10).

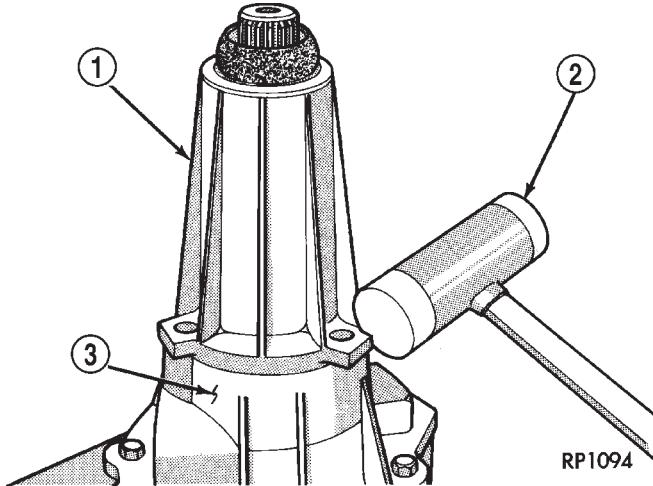


Fig. 10 Remove Extension Housing

- 1 – EXTENSION HOUSING
2 – PLASTIC HAMMER
3 – REAR RETAINER

- (3) Separate extension housing from rear retainer.
- (4) Remove rear bearing snap-ring (Fig. 11).
- (5) Remove bolts holding rear retainer to rear case half.
- (6) Loosen rear retainer with pry tool to break sealer bead. Pry only against retainer boss as shown (Fig. 12).

(7) Disengage oil pickup tube from oil pump and remove oil pump assembly (Fig. 13).

(8) Remove pick-up tube o-ring from oil pump (Fig. 14), if necessary. Do not disassemble the oil pump, it is not serviceable.

YODE AND RANGE LEVER REMOVAL

- (1) Remove transfer case indicator switch.
- (2) Remove front yoke nut as follows:
 - (a) Move range lever to 4L position.
 - (b) Then remove nut with socket and impact wrench (Fig. 15).
- (3) Remove yoke. If yoke is difficult to remove by hand, remove it with bearing splitter, or with stan-

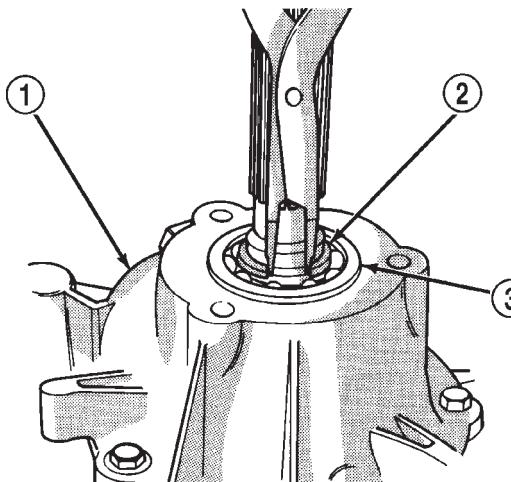


Fig. 11 Remove Rear Bearing Snap-ring

- 1 – REAR RETAINER
2 – SNAP RING
3 – REAR BEARING

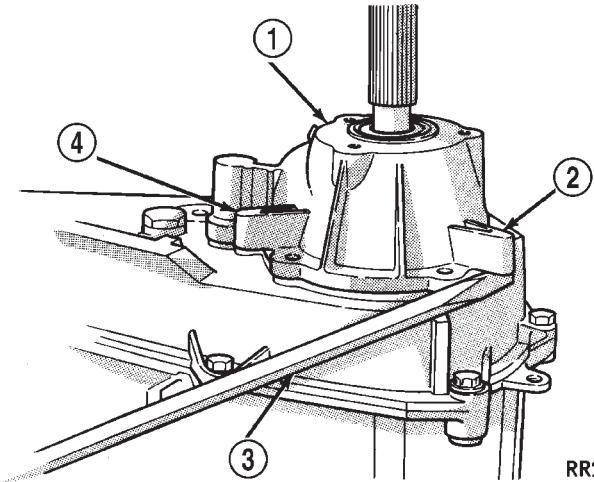


Fig. 12 Loosening Rear Retainer

- 1 – REAR RETAINER
2 – TAB (2)
3 – SCREWDRIVER
4 – TAB

dard two jaw puller (Fig. 16). Be sure puller tool is positioned on yoke and not on slinger as slinger will be damaged.

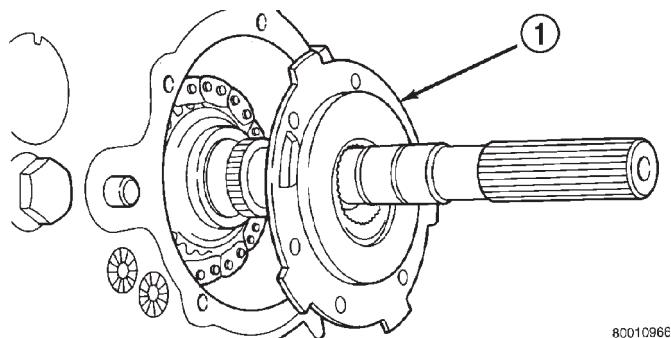
(4) Remove seal washer from front output shaft. Discard washer as it should not be reused.

(5) Remove nut and washer that attach range lever to sector shaft. Then move sector to neutral position and remove range lever from shaft (Fig. 17).

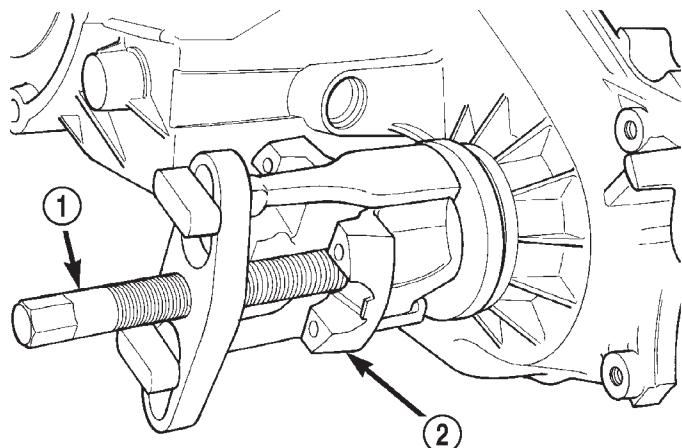
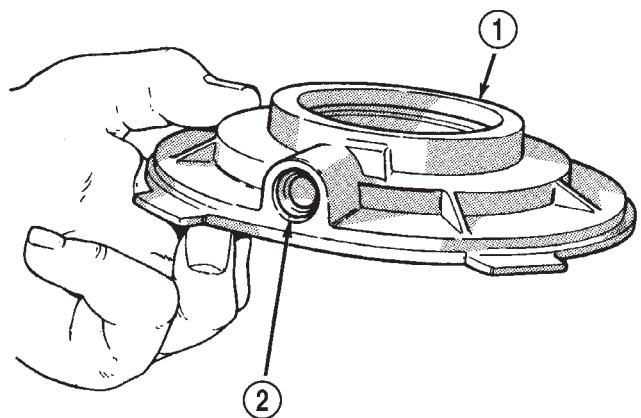
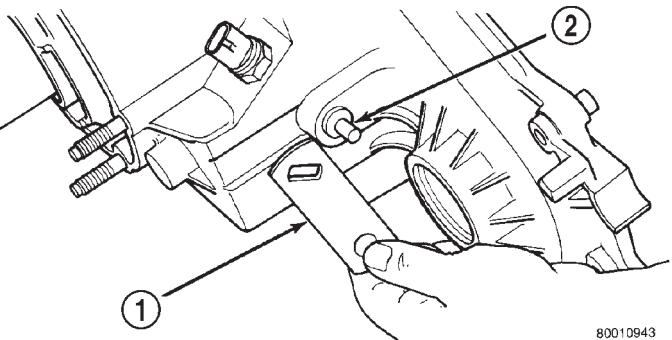
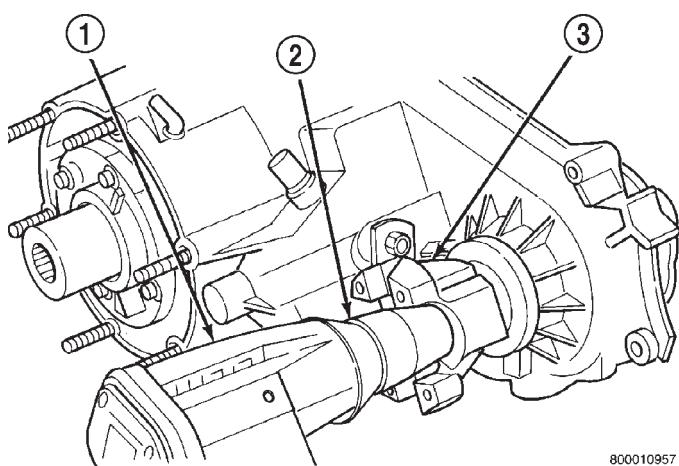
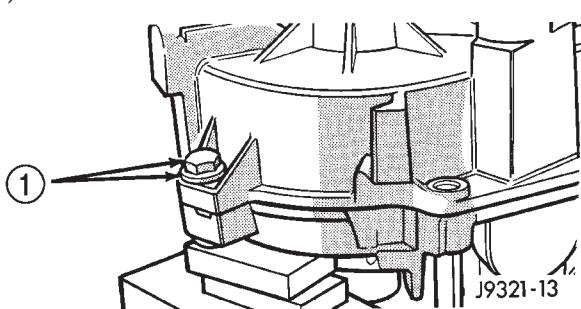
FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT AND DRIVE CHAIN REMOVAL

- (1) Support transfer case so rear case is facing upward.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

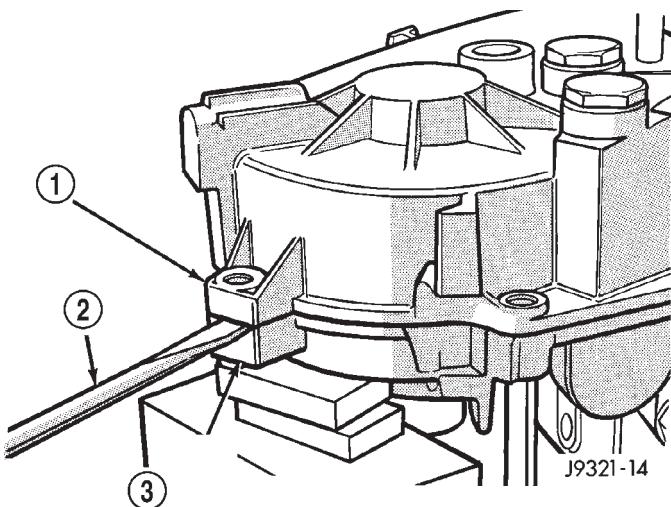
**Fig. 13 Oil Pump Removal**

1 – OIL PUMP

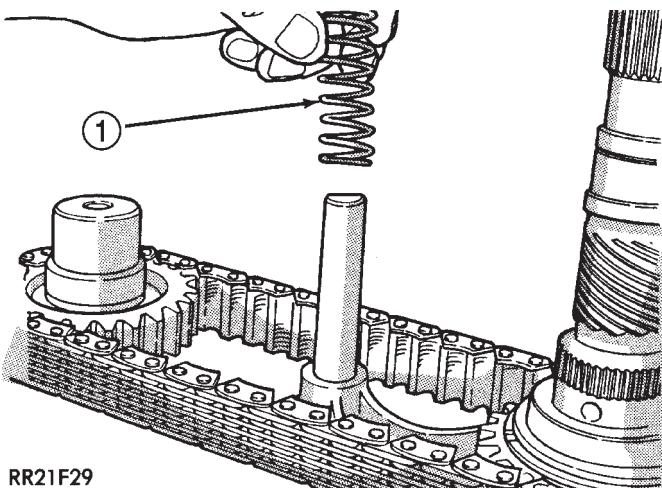
**Fig. 16 Yoke Removal**1 – PULLER TOOL
2 – YOKE**Fig. 14 Pick-up Tube O-ring Location**1 – OIL PUMP
2 – O-RING**Fig. 17 Range Lever Removal**1 – RANGE LEVER
2 – SECTOR SHAFT**Fig. 15 Yoke Nut Removal**1 – IMPACT WRENCH
2 – SOCKET
3 – YOKE**Fig. 18 Rear Case Alignment Bolt Locations**

1 – ALIGNMENT BOLT AND WASHER (AT EACH END OF CASE)

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

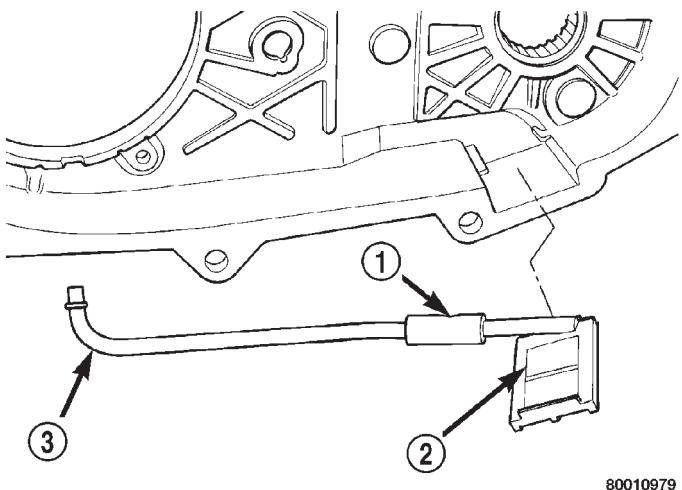
**Fig. 19 Loosening Rear Case**

- 1 – REAR CASE
- 2 – PRY TOOL
(IN CASE SLOT)
- 3 – FRONT CASE

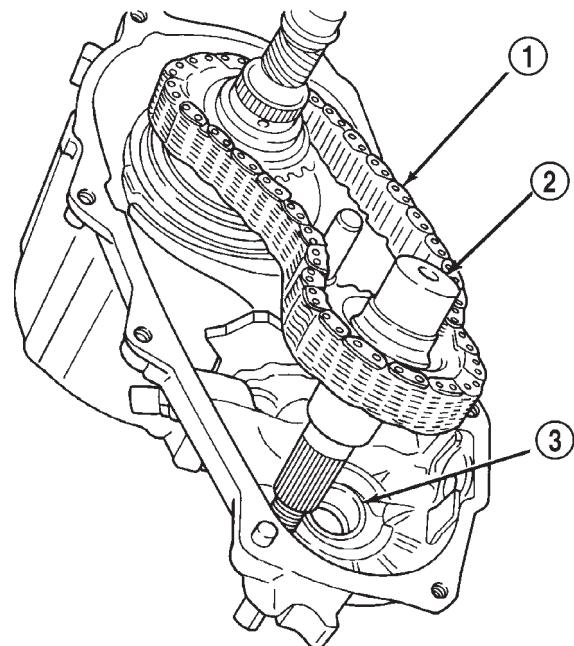
**Fig. 21 Mode Fork Spring Removal**

- 1 – MODE SPRING

- (5) Remove oil pickup tube from rear case (Fig. 20).
- (6) Remove mode fork spring (Fig. 21).
- (7) Pull front output shaft upward and out of front output shaft bearing (Fig. 22).
- (8) Remove front output shaft and chain.

**Fig. 20 Oil Pickup Tube Removal**

- 1 – CONNECTING HOSE
- 2 – PICKUP SCREEN
- 3 – PICKUP TUBE

**Fig. 22 Remove Front Output Shaft And Chain**

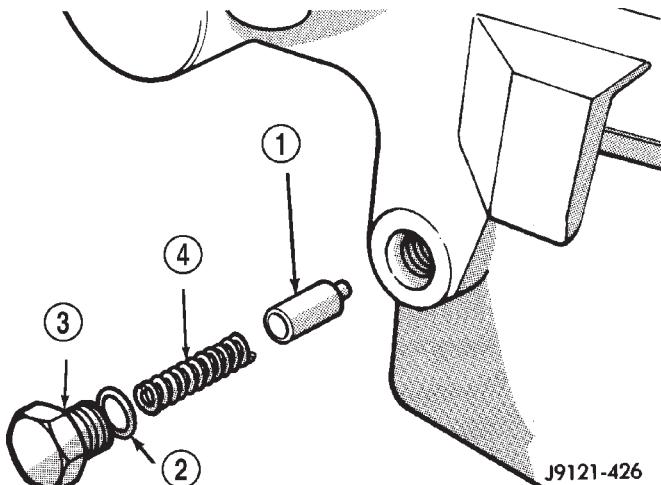
- 1 – DRIVE CHAIN
- 2 – FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT
- 3 – SHAFT FRONT BEARING

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

SHIFT FORKS AND MAINSHAFT REMOVAL

(1) Remove detent plug, O-ring, detent spring and detent plunger (Fig. 23).

(2) Remove mainshaft from mode sleeve and input gear pilot bearing.

**Fig. 23 Detent Plug, Spring And Plunger Removal**

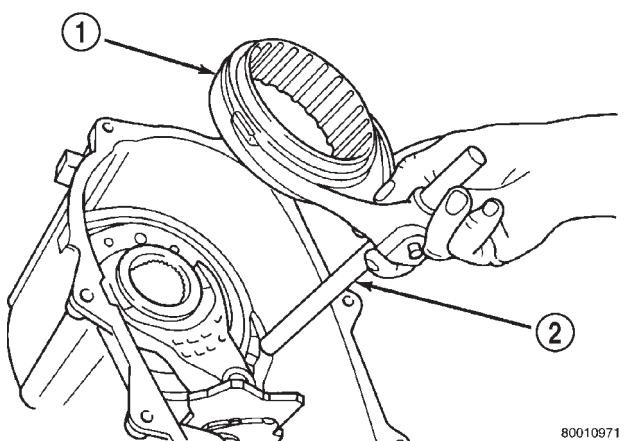
- 1 – PLUNGER
- 2 – O-RING
- 3 – PLUG
- 4 – SPRING

(3) Remove mode fork and sleeve as an assembly (Fig. 24). Note position of sleeve for assembly reference. The short side of the sleeve faces upward.

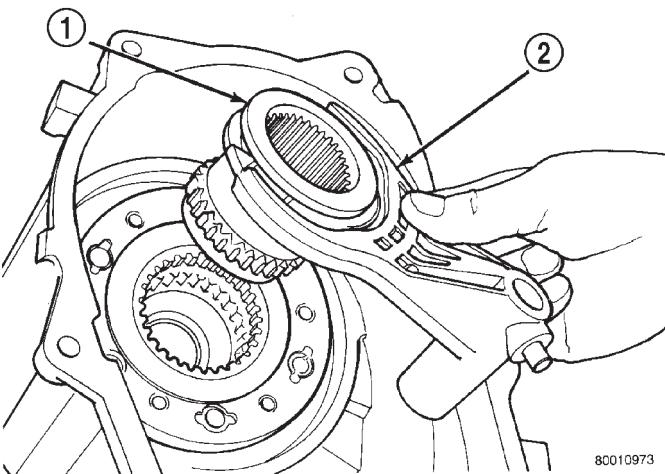
(4) Remove range fork and hub as an assembly (Fig. 25). Note fork position for installation reference.

(5) Remove shift sector from front case (Fig. 26).

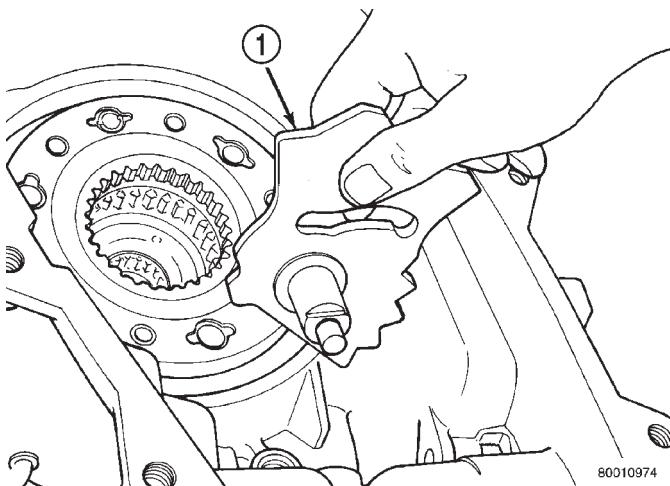
(6) Remove shift sector bushing and O-ring (Fig. 27).

**Fig. 24 Mode Fork And Sleeve Removal**

- 1 – MODE SLEEVE
- 2 – MODE FORK AND RAIL

**Fig. 25 Range Fork And Hub Removal**

- 1 – RANGE HUB
- 2 – RANGE FORK

**Fig. 26 Shift Sector Removal**

- 1 – SHIFT SECTOR

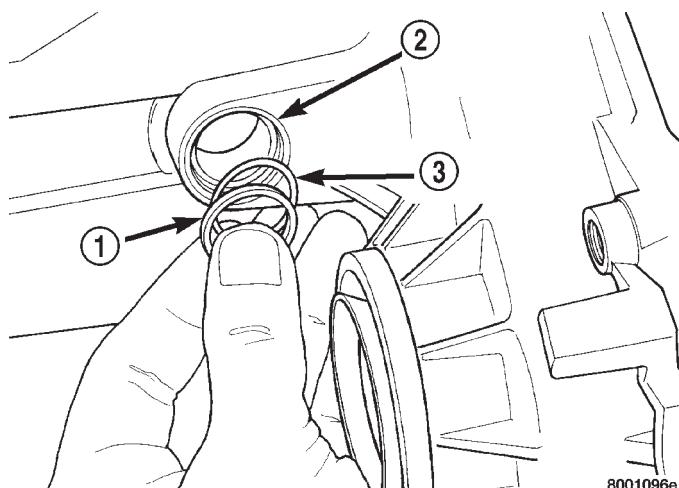
MAINSHAFT DISASSEMBLY

(1) Remove mode hub retaining ring with heavy duty snap-ring pliers (Fig. 28).

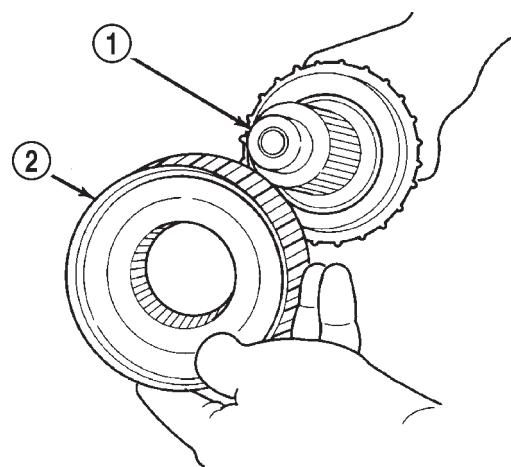
(2) Slide mode hub off mainshaft (Fig. 29).

(3) Slide drive sprocket off mainshaft (Fig. 30).

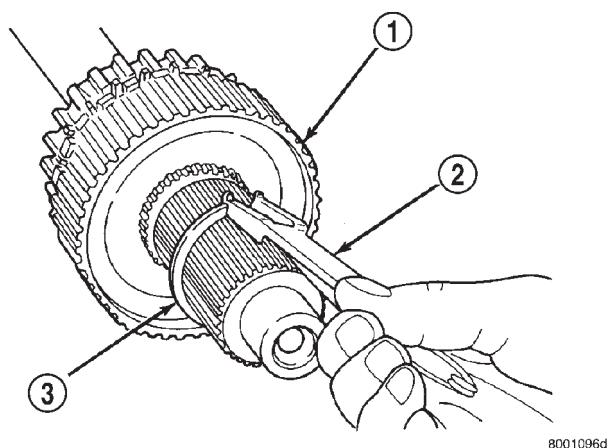
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 27 Sector Bushing And O-Ring Removal**

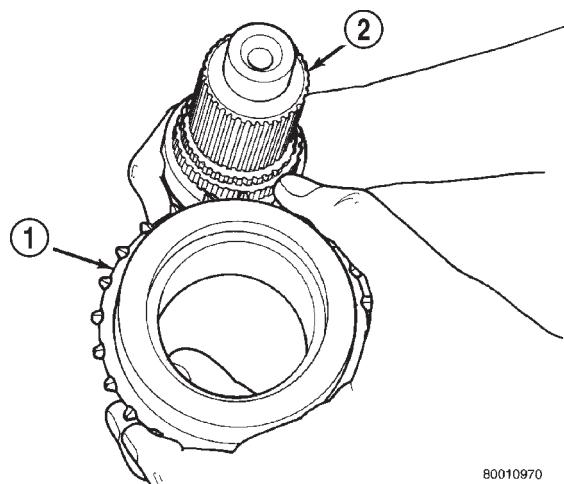
- 1 – SEAL RETAINER
- 2 – SECTOR SHAFT BORE
- 3 – O-RING SEAL

**Fig. 29 Mode Hub Removal**

- 1 – MAINSHAFT
- 2 – MODE HUB

**Fig. 28 Mode Hub Retaining Ring Removal**

- 1 – MODE HUB
- 2 – SNAP RING PLIERS (HEAVY DUTY)
- 3 – MODE HUB RETAINING RING

**Fig. 30 Drive Sprocket Removal**

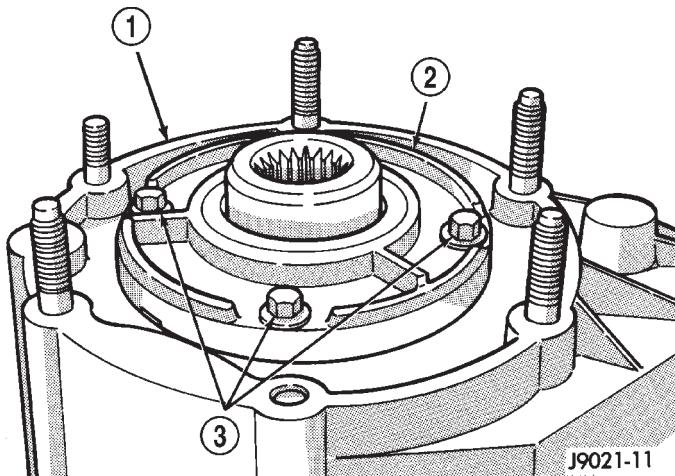
- 1 – DRIVE SPROCKET
- 2 – MAINSHAFT

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

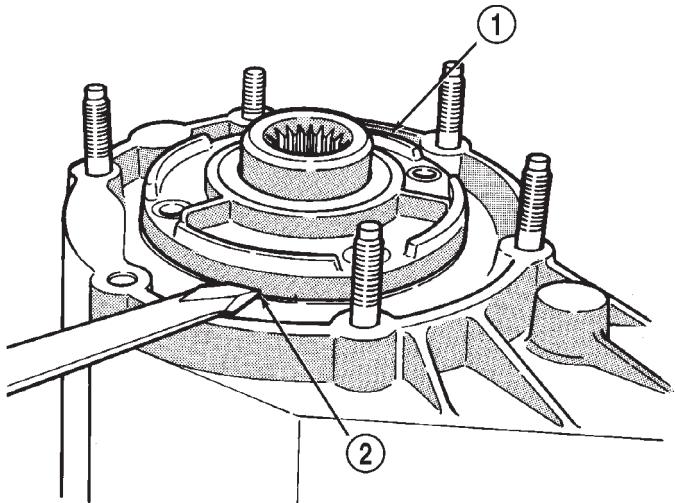
INPUT GEAR AND LOW RANGE GEAR REMOVAL

(1) Remove front bearing retainer attaching bolts (Fig. 31).

(2) Remove front bearing retainer. Pry retainer loose with pry tool positioned in slots at each end of retainer (Fig. 32).

**Fig. 31 Front Bearing Retainer Bolts**

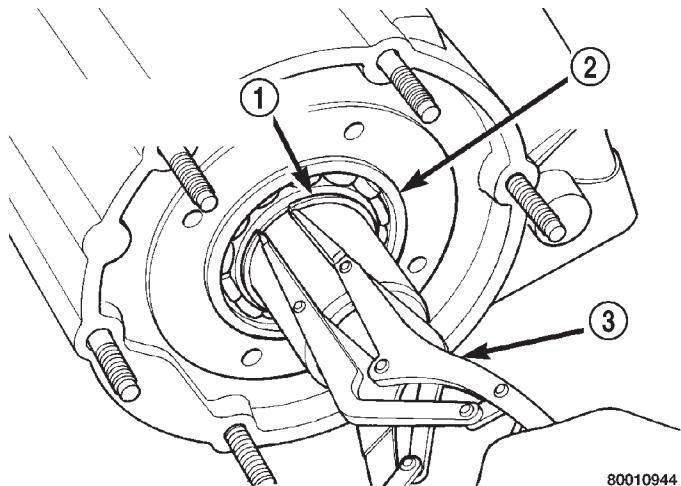
- 1 – FRONT CASE
- 2 – FRONT BEARING RETAINER
- 3 – RETAINER BOLTS

**Fig. 32 Front Bearing Retainer Removal**

- 1 – FRONT BEARING RETAINER
- 2 – RETAINER SLOT

(3) Remove front bearing retainer seal. Tap seal out with drift and hammer.

(4) Remove input gear retaining ring with heavy duty snap ring pliers (Fig. 33)

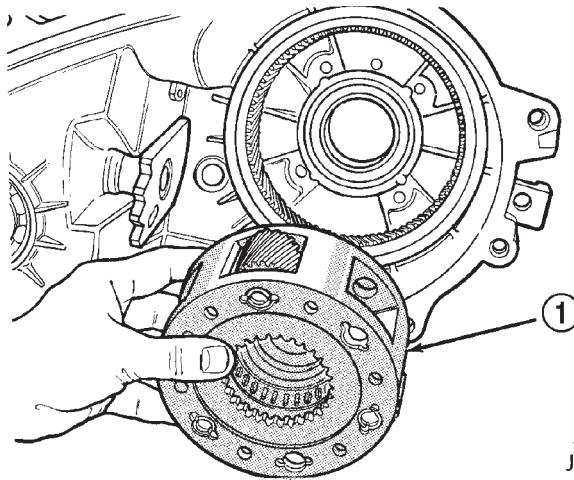


80010944

Fig. 33 Removing Input Gear Retaining Ring

- 1 – INPUT GEAR BEARING RETAINING RING
- 2 – INPUT GEAR BEARING
- 3 – SNAP RING PLIERS

(5) Place front case in horizontal position. Then remove input gear and low range gear as an assembly (Fig. 34). Tap gear out of bearing with plastic mallet if necessary.



J9321-29

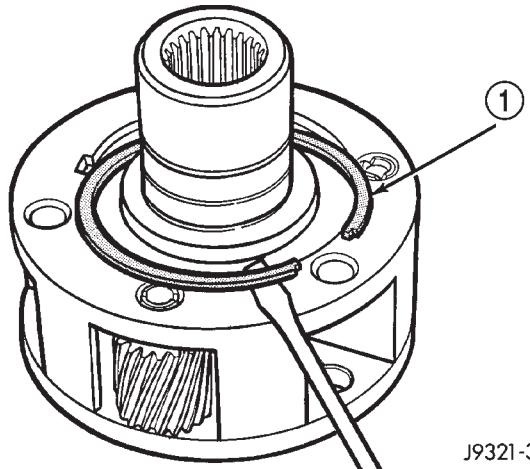
Fig. 34 Input Gear And Planetary Carrier Removal

- 1 – INPUT AND LOW RANGE GEAR ASSEMBLY

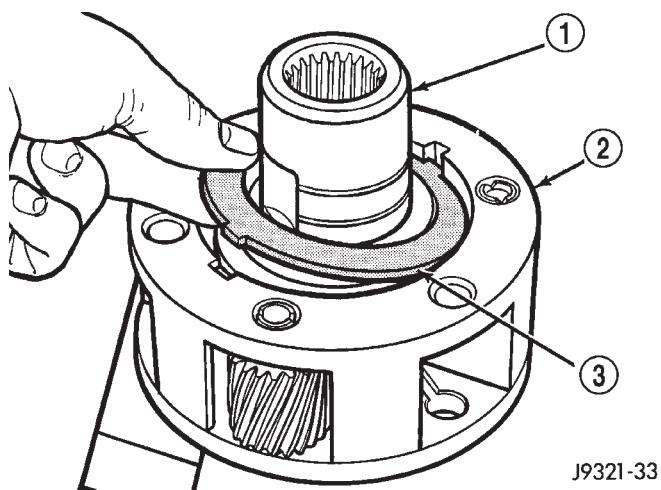
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

INPUT AND LOW RANGE GEAR DISASSEMBLY

- (1) Remove snap-ring that retains input gear in low range gear (Fig. 35).
- (2) Remove retainer (Fig. 36).
- (3) Remove front tabbed thrust washer (Fig. 37).
- (4) Remove input gear (Fig. 38).
- (5) Remove rear tabbed thrust washer from low range gear (Fig. 39).

**Fig. 35 Input Gear Snap-Ring Removal**

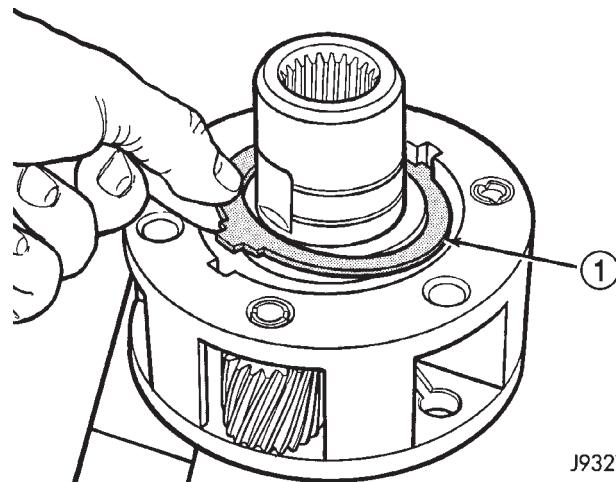
1 – INPUT GEAR SNAP RING

**Fig. 36 Input Gear Retainer Removal**

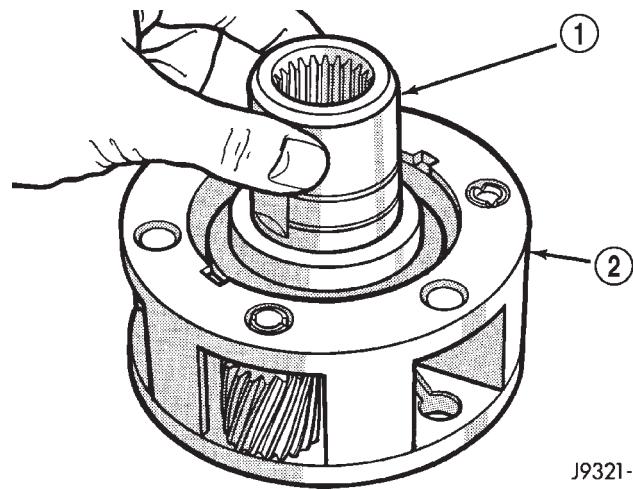
1 – INPUT GEAR
2 – LOW RANGE GEAR
3 – RETAINER

ASSEMBLY

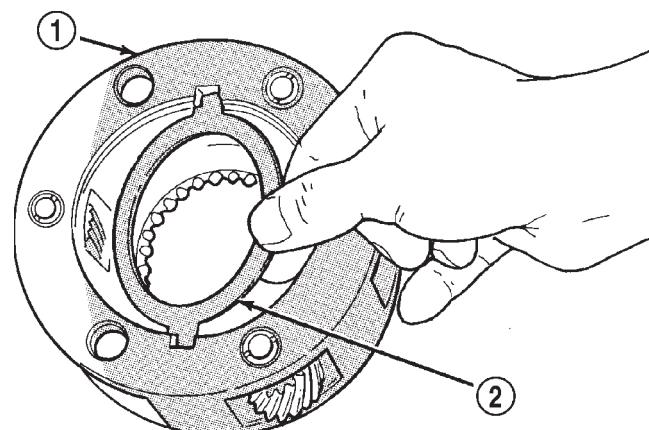
Lubricate transfer case components with Mopar® Dexron II automatic transmission fluid or petroleum jelly (where indicated) during assembly.

**Fig. 37 Front Tabbed Thrust Washer Removal**

1 – FRONT TABBED THRUST WASHER

**Fig. 38 Input Gear Removal**

1 – INPUT GEAR
2 – LOW RANGE GEAR

**Fig. 39 Rear Tabbed Thrust Washer Removal**

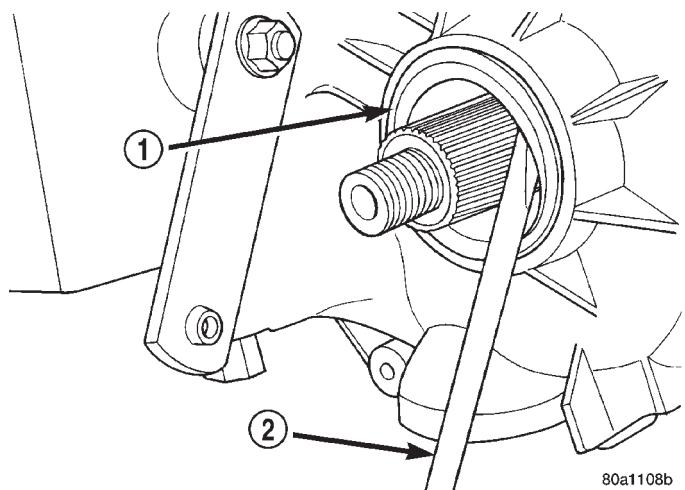
1 – LOW RANGE GEAR
2 – REAR TABBED THRUST WASHER

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

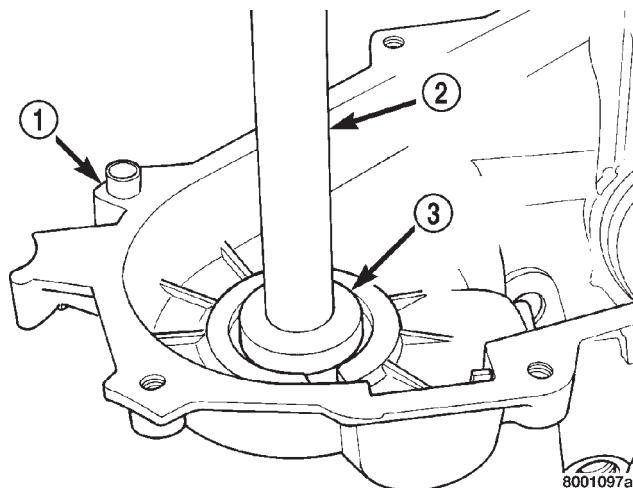
BEARING AND SEAL INSTALLATION

CAUTION: The bearing bores in various transfer case components contain oil feed holes. Make sure replacement bearings do not block the holes.

- (1) Remove seal from case with pry tool (Fig. 40).
- (2) Remove bearing retaining ring with screwdriver (Fig. 41).
- (3) Remove bearing with Tool Handle C-4171 and Tool 5065 (Fig. 42).

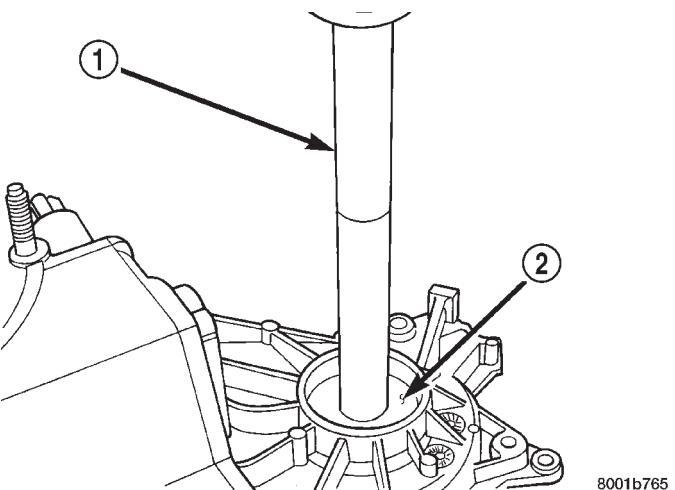
**Fig. 40 Front Output Seal Removal**

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL
2 – PRYBAR

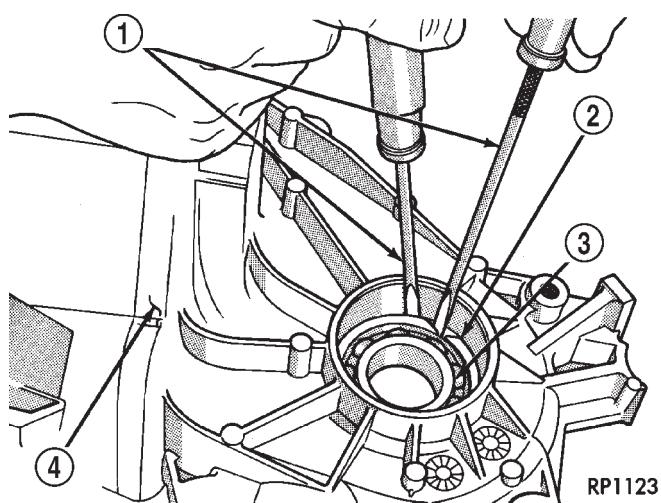
**Fig. 42 Front Output Shaft Bearing Removal**

- 1 – FRONT CASE
2 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
3 – SPECIAL TOOL 5065

- (4) Install front output shaft front bearing in case with Tool Handle C-4171 and Installer 5064 (Fig. 43).

**Fig. 43 Front Output Shaft Bearing Installation**

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
2 – SPECIAL TOOL 5064

**Fig. 41 Front Output Shaft Bearing Retaining Ring Removal**

- 1 – SCREWDRIVERS
2 – SNAP RING
3 – FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT BEARING
4 – FRONT CASE

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(5) Install output shaft front bearing retaining ring (Fig. 44). Start ring into place by hand. Then use small screwdriver to work ring into case groove. Be sure ring is fully seated before proceeding.

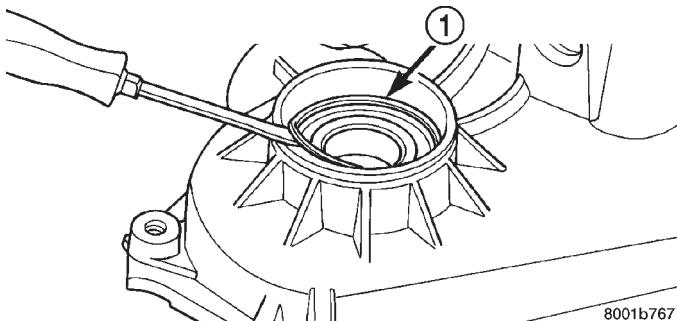


Fig. 44 Installing Output Shaft Front Bearing Retaining Ring

1 – WORK RETAINING RING INTO BORE GROOVE WITH SMALL SCREWDRIVER

(6) Install new front output seal in front case with Installer Tool 8143 as follows:

(a) Place new seal on tool. **Garter spring on seal goes toward interior of case.**

(b) Start seal in bore with light taps from hammer (Fig. 45). Once seal is started, continue tapping seal into bore until installer tool bottoms against case.

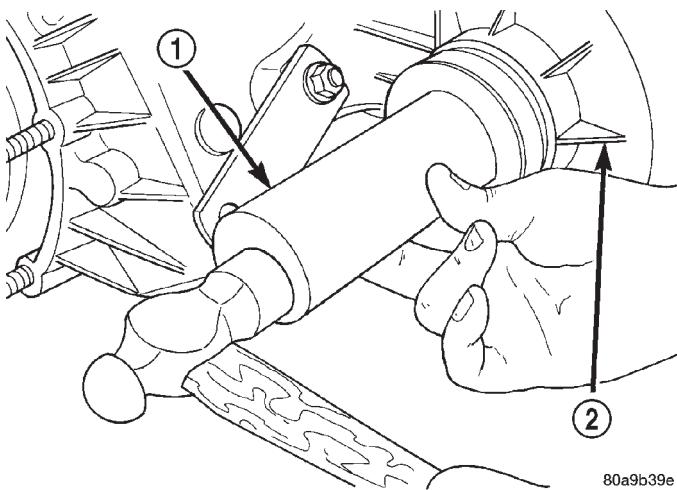


Fig. 45 Front Output Seal Installation

1 – INSTALLER 8143
2 – TRANSFER CASE

(7) Remove the output shaft rear bearing with the screw and jaws from Remover L-4454 and Cup 8148 (Fig. 46).

(8) Install new bearing with Tool Handle C-4171 and Installer 5066 (Fig. 47). The bearing bore is chamfered at the top. Install the bearing so it is flush with the lower edge of this chamfer (Fig. 48).

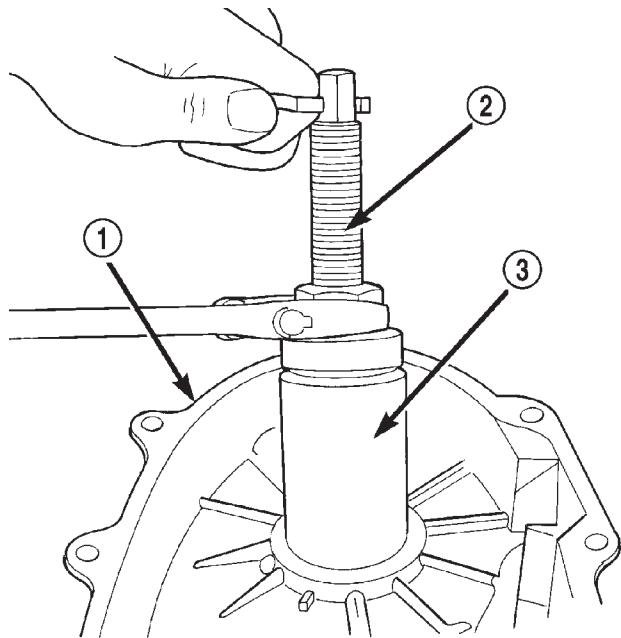


Fig. 46 Output Shaft Rear Bearing Removal

1 – REAR CASE
2 – SPECIAL TOOL L-4454-1 AND L-4454-3
3 – SPECIAL TOOL 8148

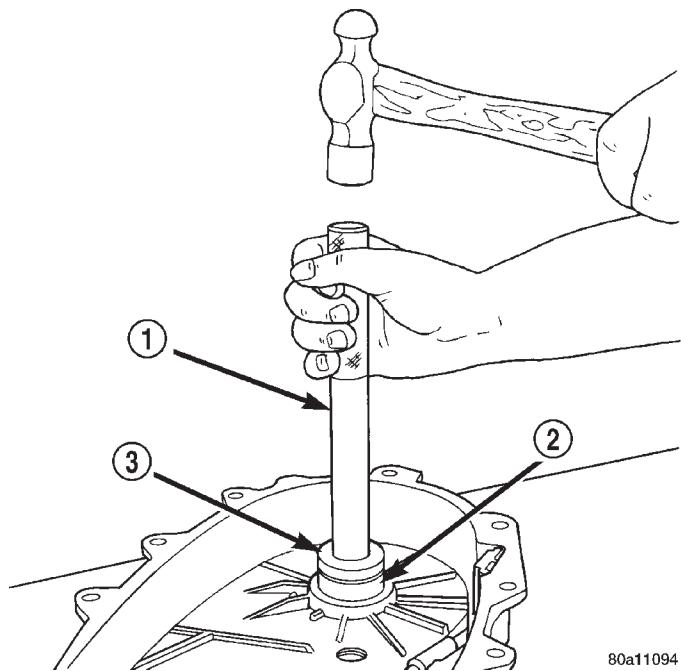
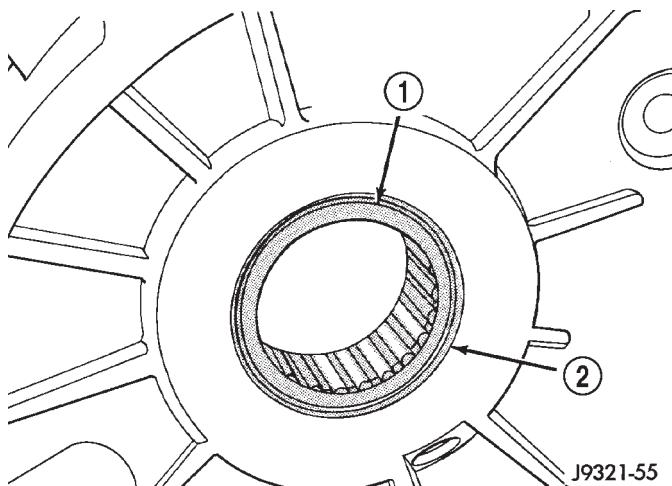


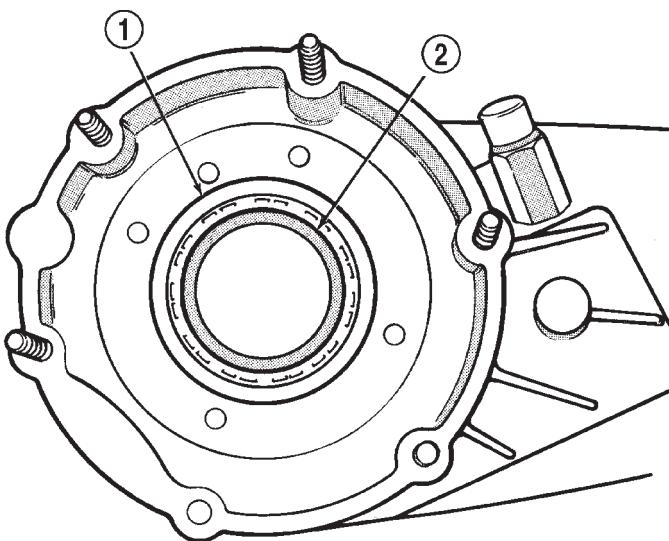
Fig. 47 Output Shaft Rear Bearing Installation

1 – HANDLE C-4171
2 – OUTPUT SHAFT INNER BEARING
3 – INSTALLER 5066

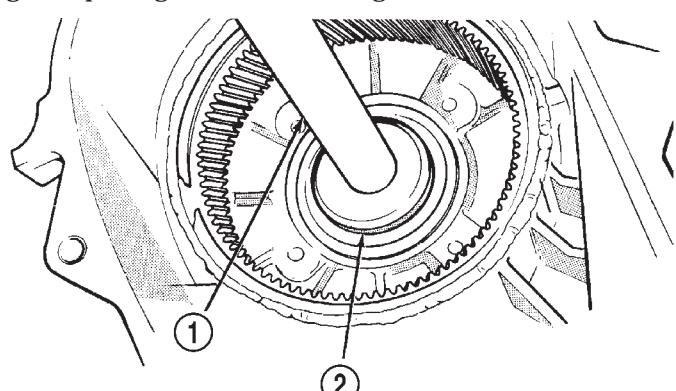
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 48 Output Shaft Rear Bearing Installation Depth**

1 – BEARING (SEATED) AT LOWER EDGE OF CHAMFER
2 – CHAMFER

**Fig. 50 Seating Input Shaft Bearing**

1 – SNAP RING
2 – INPUT SHAFT BEARING

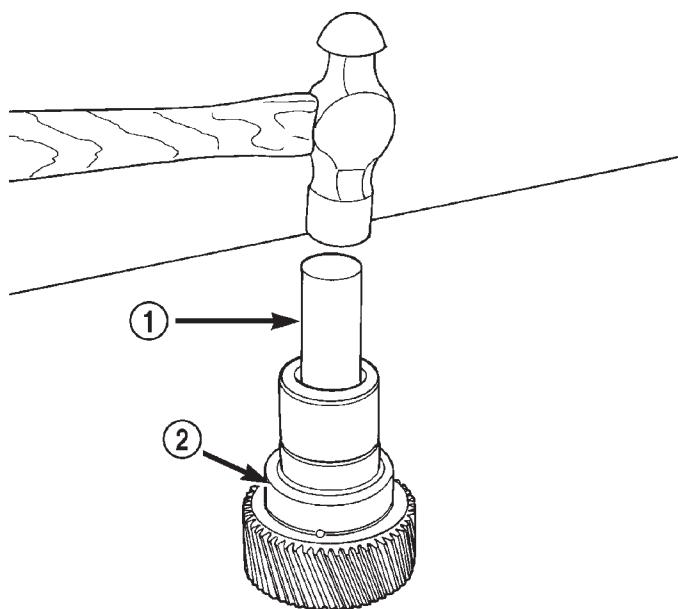
**Fig. 49 Input Shaft Bearing Removal**

1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
2 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4210

- (10) Install locating ring on new bearing.
- (11) Position case so forward end is facing upward.
- (12) Using Remover C-4210 and Handle C-4171, drive input shaft bearing into case. The bearing locating ring must be fully seated against case surface (Fig. 50).

(13) Remove input gear pilot bearing by inserting a suitably sized drift into the splined end of the input gear and driving the bearing out with the drift and a hammer (Fig. 51).

(14) Install new pilot bearing with Installer 5065 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 52).

**Fig. 51 Remove Input Gear Pilot Bearing**

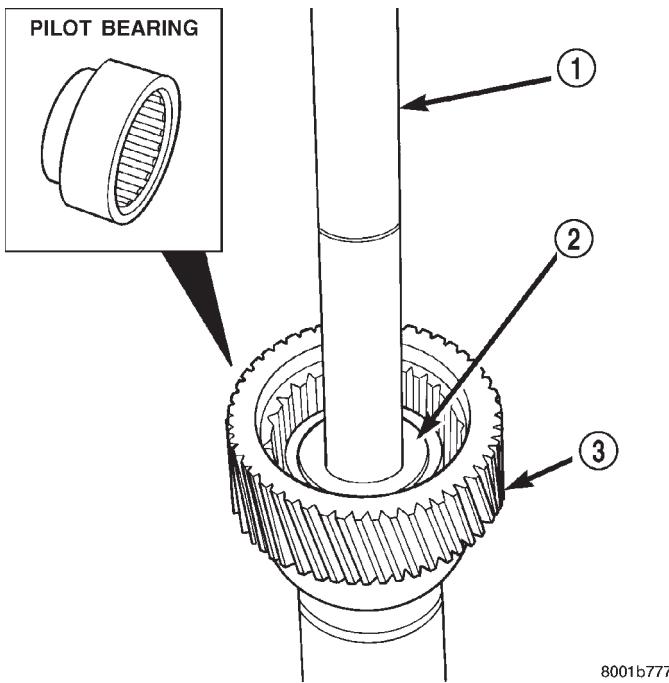
1 – DRIFT
2 – INPUT GEAR

(15) Remove front bearing retainer seal with suitable pry tool.

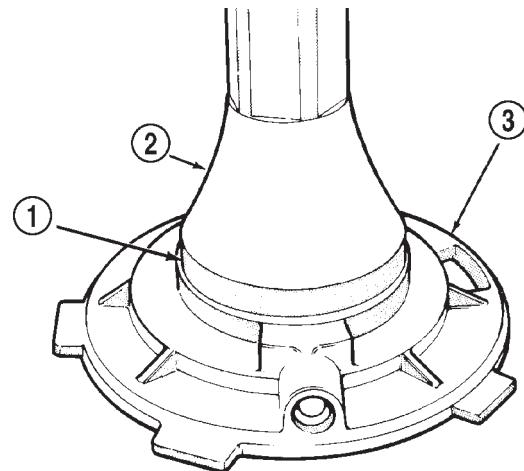
(16) Install new front bearing retainer with Installer 7884 (Fig. 53).

(17) Remove seal from oil pump housing with a suitable pry tool

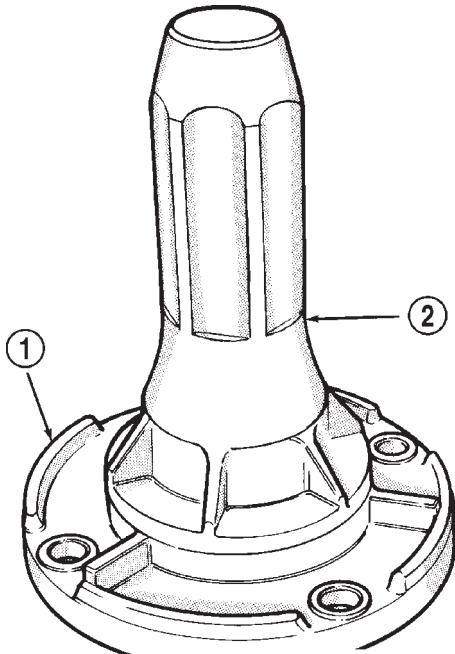
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 52 Install Input Gear Pilot Bearing**

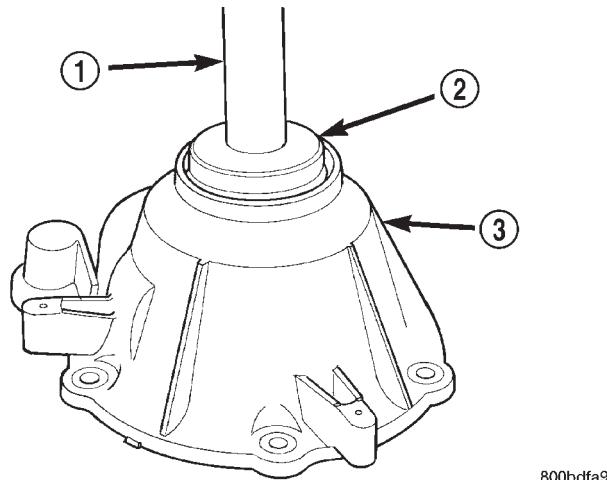
- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL 5065
- 3 – INPUT GEAR

**Fig. 54 Oil Pump Seal Installation**

- 1 – HOUSING SEAL
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL 7888
- 3 – OIL PUMP FEED HOUSING

**Fig. 53 Install Front Bearing Retainer Seal**

- 1 – FRONT BEARING RETAINER
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL 7884

**Fig. 55 Installing Rear Bearing In Retainer**

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL 5064
- 3 – REAR RETAINER

INPUT AND LOW RANGE GEAR ASSEMBLY

- (1) Lubricate gears and thrust washers (Fig. 56) with recommended transmission fluid.
- (2) Install first thrust washer in low range gear (Fig. 56). Be sure washer tabs are properly aligned in gear notches.
- (3) Install input gear in low range gear. Be sure input gear is fully seated.

(18) Install new seal in oil pump housing with Installer 7888 (Fig. 54).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(4) Install remaining thrust washer in low range gear and on top of input gear. Be sure washer tabs are properly aligned in gear notches.

(5) Install retainer on input gear and install snap-ring.

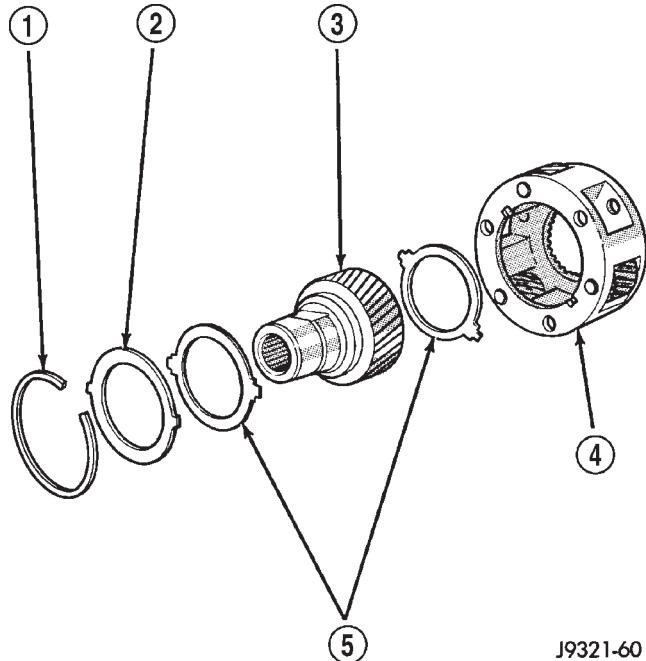


Fig. 56 Input/Low Range Gear Components

- 1 - SNAP RING
- 2 - RETAINER PLATE
- 3 - INPUT GEAR
- 4 - LOW RANGE GEAR
- 5 - THRUST WASHERS

INPUT GEAR AND LOW RANGE GEAR INSTALLATION

(1) Align and install low range/input gear assembly in front case (Fig. 57). Be sure low range gear pinions are engaged in annulus gear and that input gear shaft is fully seated in front bearing.

(2) Install snap-ring to hold input/low range gear into front bearing (Fig. 58).

(3) Clean gasket sealer residue from retainer and inspect retainer for cracks or other damage.

(4) Apply a 3 mm (1/8 in.) bead of Mopar® gasket maker or silicone adhesive to sealing surface of retainer.

(5) Align cavity in seal retainer with fluid return hole in front of case.

CAUTION: Do not block fluid return cavity on sealing surface of retainer when applying Mopar® gasket maker or silicone adhesive sealer. Seal failure and fluid leak can result.

(6) Install bolts to hold retainer to transfer case (Fig. 59). Tighten to 21 N·m (16 ft. lbs.) of torque.

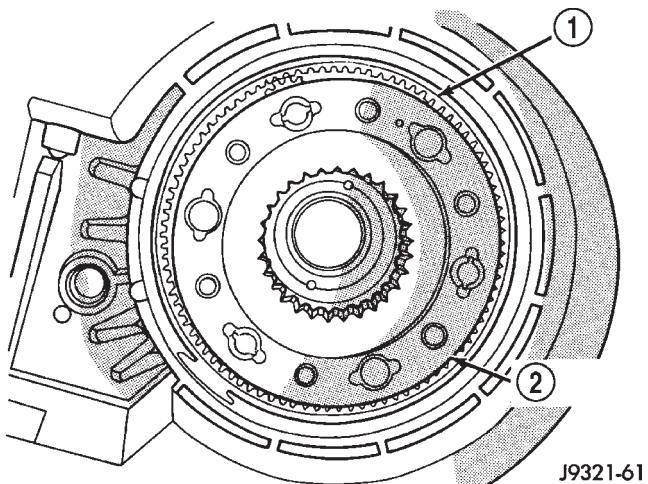


Fig. 57 Input/Low Range Gear Installation

- 1 - ANNULUS GEAR
- 2 - INPUT/LOW RANGE GEAR

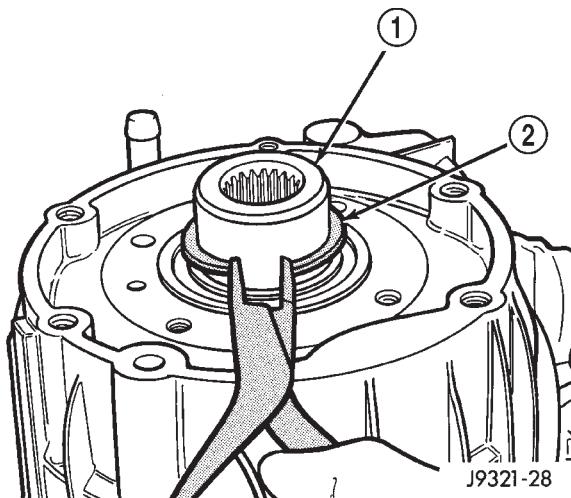


Fig. 58 Install Snap-Ring

- 1 - INPUT GEAR
- 2 - SNAP RING

MAINSHAFT ASSEMBLY

(1) Lubricate mainshaft splines with recommended transmission fluid.

(2) Slide drive sprocket onto mainshaft.

(3) Slide mode hub onto mainshaft.

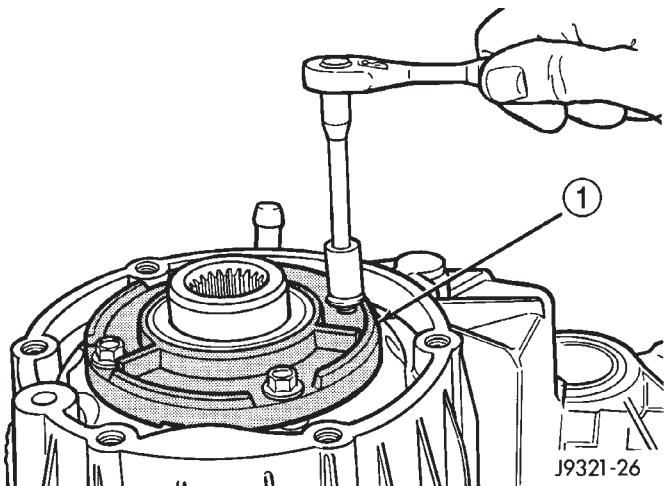
(4) Install mode hub retaining ring. Verify that the retaining ring is fully seated in mainshaft groove.

SHIFT FORKS AND MAINSHAFT INSTALLATION

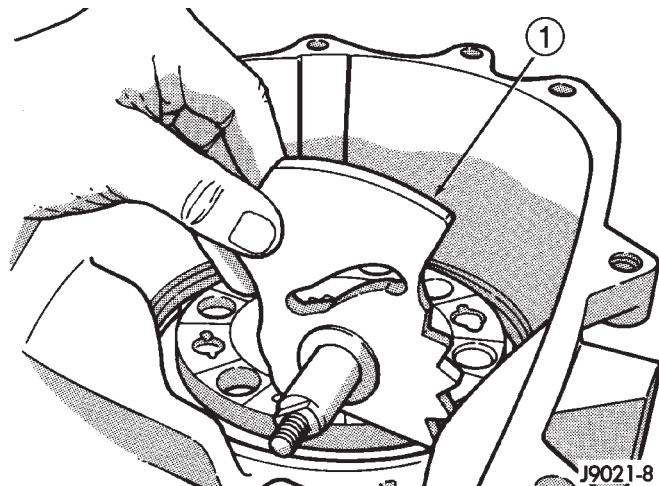
(1) Install new sector shaft O-ring and bushing (Fig. 60).

(2) Install shift sector in case (Fig. 61). Lubricate sector shaft with transmission fluid before installation.

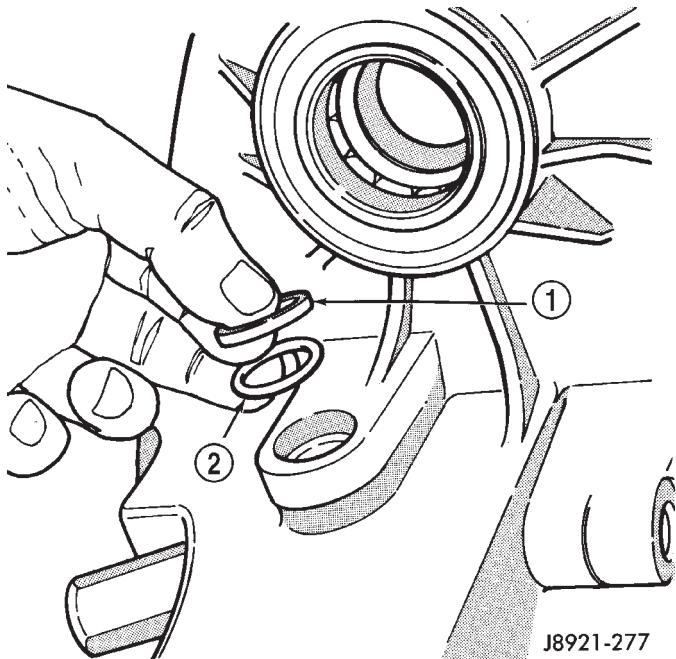
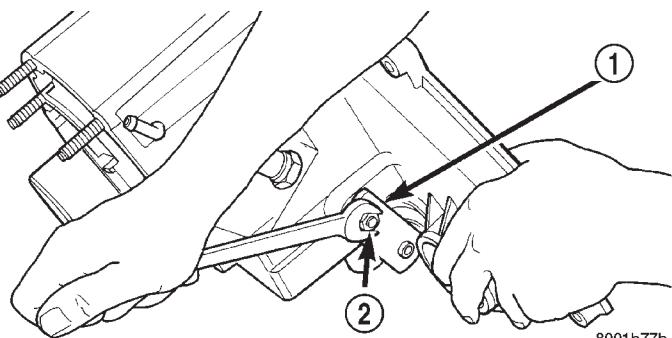
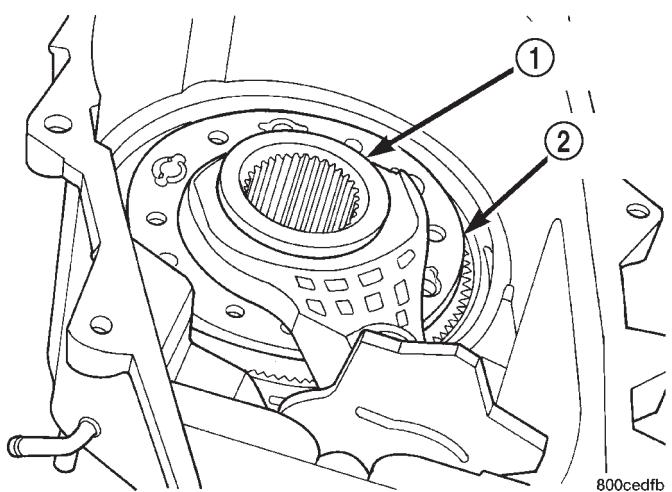
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 59 Install Front Bearing Retainer**

1 – FRONT BEARING RETAINER

**Fig. 61 Shift Sector Installation**

1 – SHIFT SECTOR

**Fig. 60 Sector O-Ring And Bushing Installation**1 – SECTOR BUSHING
2 – O-RING**Fig. 62 Range Lever Installation**1 – RANGE LEVER
2 – LEVER NUT**Fig. 63 Install Range Fork And Hub Assembly**1 – RANGE HUB
2 – RANGE FORK

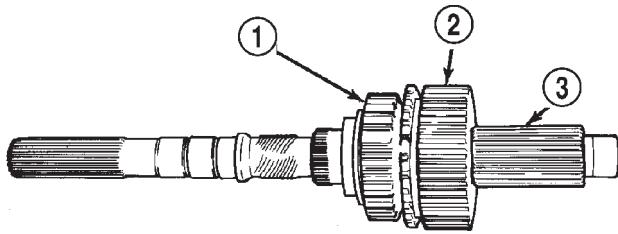
(3) Install range lever, washer, and nut on sector shaft (Fig. 62). Tighten range lever nut to 27–34 N·m (20–25 ft. lbs.) torque.

(4) Assemble and install range fork and hub (Fig. 63). Be sure hub is properly seated in low range gear and engaged to the input gear.

(5) Align and insert range fork pin in shift sector slot.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(6) Install assembled mainshaft (Fig. 64). Be sure shaft is seated in pilot bearing and input gear.



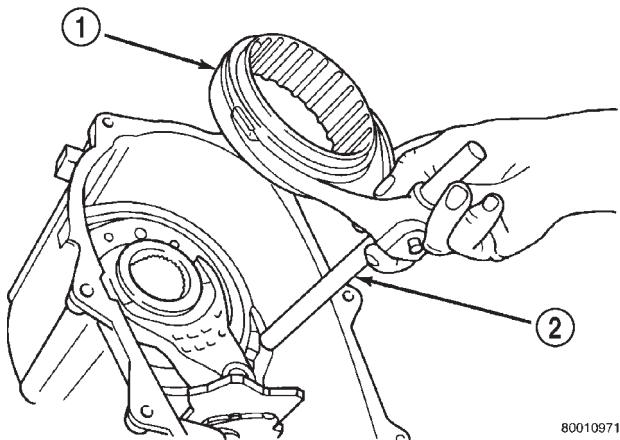
8001096c

Fig. 64 Mainshaft Assembly Installation

- 1 – DRIVE SPROCKET
- 2 – MODE HUB
- 3 – MAINSHAFT

(7) Install new pads on mode fork if necessary.

(8) Insert mode sleeve in mode fork mode fork. Be sure long side of sleeve is toward long end of shift rail (Fig. 65).



80010971

Fig. 65 Assembling Mode Fork And Sleeve

- 1 – MODE SLEEVE
- 2 – MODE FORK AND RAIL

(9) Install assembled mode fork and sleeve (Fig. 66). Be sure fork rail goes through range fork and into case bore. Also be sure sleeve is aligned and seated on mainshaft hub.

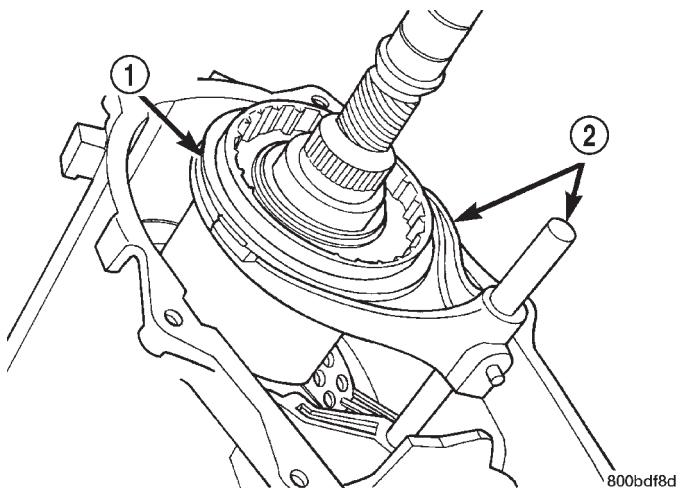
(10) Rotate sector to Neutral position.

(11) Install new O-ring on detent plug (Fig. 67).

(12) Lubricate detent plunger with transmission fluid or light coat of petroleum jelly.

(13) Install detent plunger, spring and plug (Fig. 67).

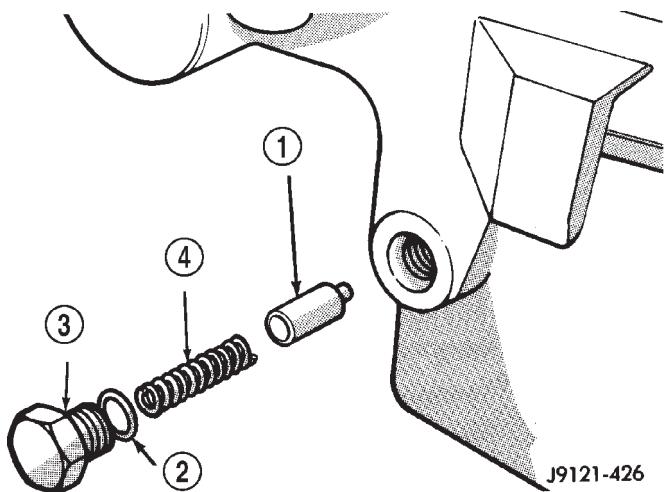
(14) Verify that plunger is properly engaged in sector.



800bdff8d

Fig. 66 Mode Fork And Sleeve Installation

- 1 – MODE SLEEVE
- 2 – MODE FORK AND RAIL



J9121-426

Fig. 67 Shift Detent Components

- 1 – PLUNGER
- 2 – O-RING
- 3 – PLUG
- 4 – SPRING

FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT AND DRIVE CHAIN INSTALLATION

(1) Lubricate front output shaft-sprocket assembly, drive chain and drive sprocket with transmission fluid.

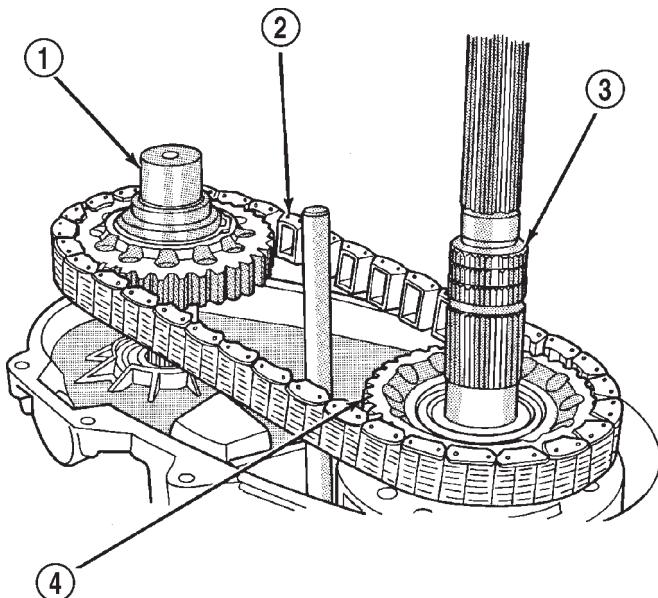
(2) Assemble drive chain and front output shaft (Fig. 68).

(3) Start chain on mainshaft drive sprocket.

(4) Guide front shaft into bearing and drive sprocket onto mainshaft drive gear (Fig. 68).

(5) Install mode spring on upper end of mode fork shift rail (Fig. 69).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J9321-72

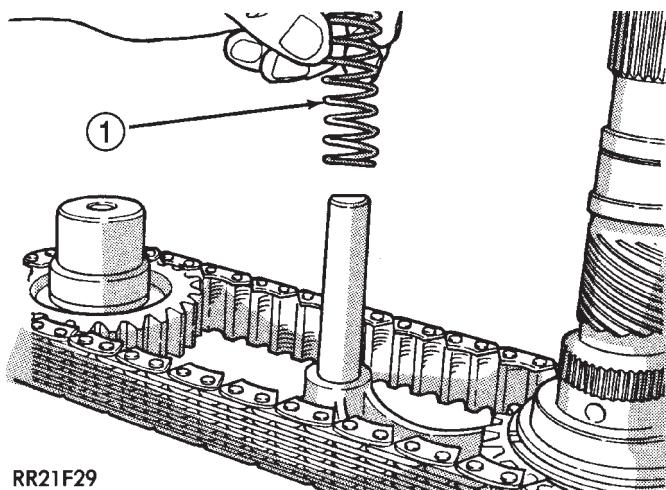
Fig. 68 Installing Drive Chain And Front Output Shaft

1 – FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT

2 – DRIVE CHAIN

3 – MAINSHAFT

4 – DRIVE SPROCKET



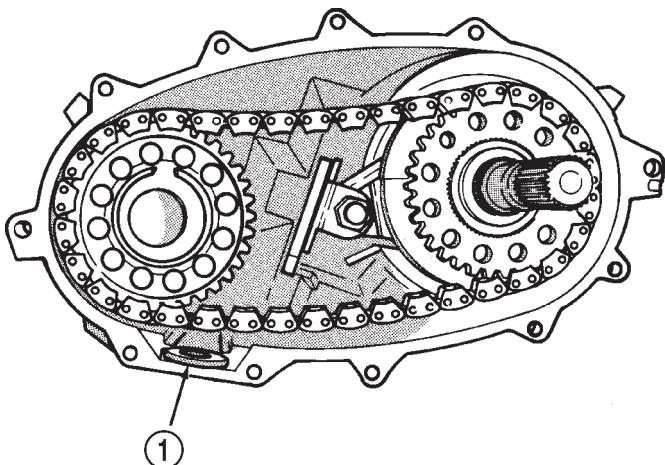
RR21F29

Fig. 69 Install Mode Fork Spring

1 – MODE SPRING

OIL PUMP AND REAR CASE ASSEMBLY/INSTALLATION

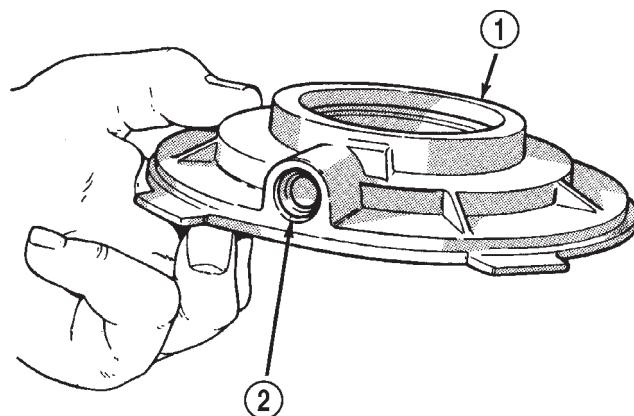
- (1) Install magnet in front case pocket (Fig. 70).
- (2) Assemble oil pickup screen, connecting hose, and tube.
- (3) Install new pickup tube O-ring in oil pump (Fig. 71).
- (4) Insert oil pickup tube in oil pump inlet.



J8921-288

Fig. 70 Installing Case Magnet

1 – MAGNET



RR21F27

Fig. 71 Pickup Tube O-Ring Position

1 – OIL PUMP

2 – O-RING

(5) Position assembled oil pump and pickup tube in rear case. Be sure pickup screen is securely seated in case slot. Also be sure oil pump locating tabs are outside rear case (Fig. 72).

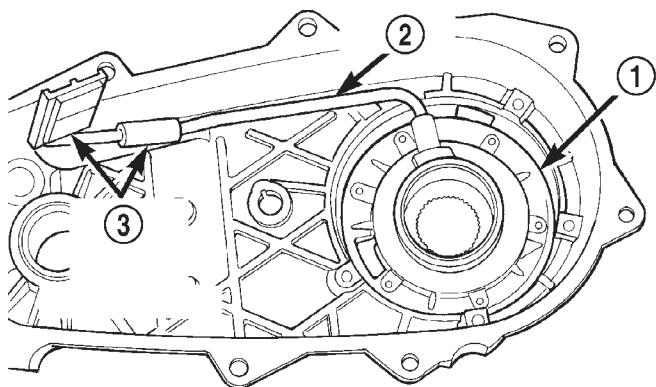
(6) Apply 3 mm (1/8 in.) wide bead of Mopar® gasket maker or silicone adhesive sealer to mounting flange of front case. Work sealer bead around bolt holes.

(7) Lift rear case and oil pump and carefully position assembly on front case. Be sure case dowels are aligned and that mode fork rail extends through rear case before seating rear case on front case.

(8) Install case attaching bolts. Alignment bolts at each end of case are only ones requiring washers (Fig. 73).

(9) Tighten case bolts to 27-34 N·m (20-25 ft. lbs.) torque.

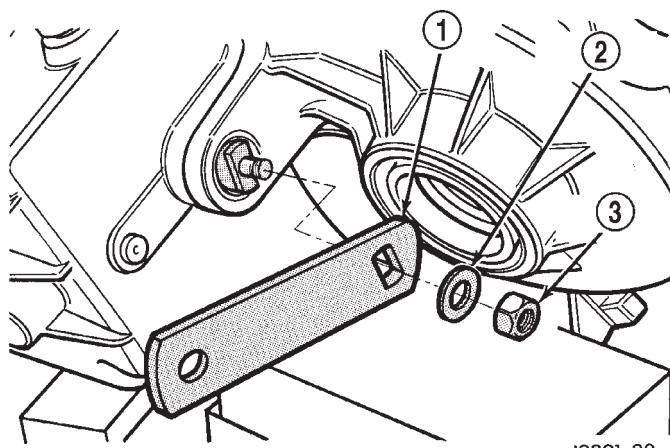
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



800bdf98

Fig. 72 Oil Pump And Pickup Tube Installation

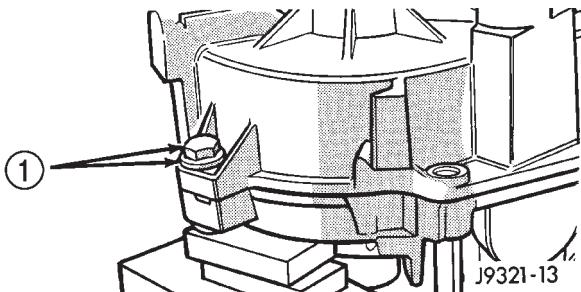
- 1 – OIL PUMP
2 – PICKUP TUBE
3 – PICKUP SCREEN AND CONNECTOR



J9321-30

Fig. 74 Range Lever Installation

- 1 – RANGE LEVER
2 – WASHER
3 – LOCKNUT



J9321-13

Fig. 73 Alignment Bolt Location

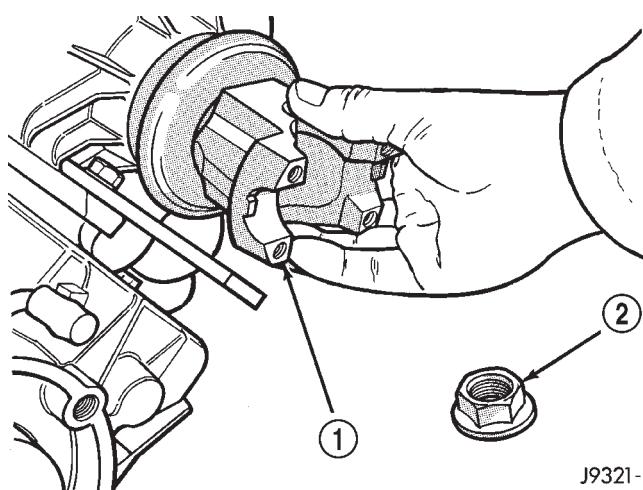
- 1 – ALIGNMENT BOLT AND WASHER (AT EACH END OF CASE)

YOKE AND RANGE LEVER INSTALLATION

- (1) Install indicator switch in front case. Tighten switch to 20–34 N·m (15–25 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (2) Install range lever, washer and locknut on sector shaft (Fig. 74). Tighten locknut to 27–34 N·m (20–25 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (3) Install new seal washer on front output shaft (Fig. 76).
- (4) Lubricate yoke hub with transmission fluid and install yoke on front shaft.
- (5) Install new seal washer on front shaft.
- (6) Install yoke and new yoke nut on front output shaft (Fig. 75).
- (7) Tighten yoke nut to 122–176 N·m (90–130 ft. lbs.) torque. Use Tool C-3281, or similar tool to hold yoke while tightening yoke nut.

REAR RETAINER ASSEMBLY AND INSTALLATION

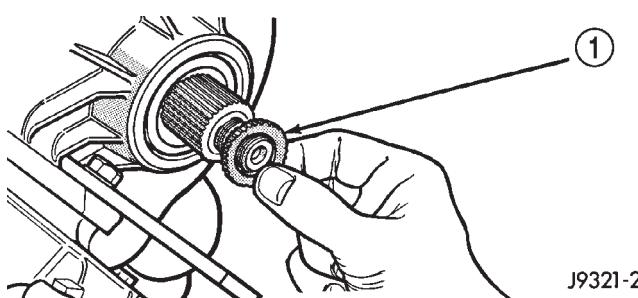
- (1) Apply 3 mm (1/8 in.) wide bead of Mopar® gasket maker or silicone adhesive sealer to mounting surface of rear retainer. Allow sealer to set-up slightly before proceeding.



J9321-1

Fig. 75 Output Shaft Yoke Installation

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT YOKE
2 – YOKE NUT



J9321-2

Fig. 76 Yoke Seal Washer Installation

- 1 – YOKE SEAL WASHER

- (2) Install rear retainer on rear case. Tighten retainer bolts to 35–46 N·m (26–34 ft. lbs.).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(3) Install new output shaft bearing snap-ring (Fig. 77). Lift mainshaft slightly to seat snap-ring in shaft groove, if necessary.

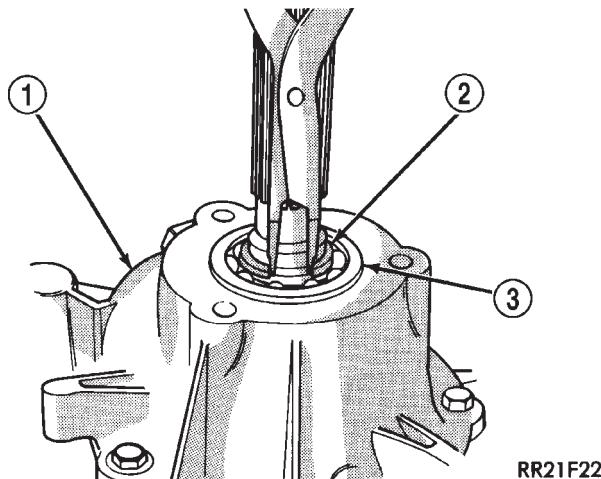


Fig. 77 Install Output Bearing Snap-ring

- 1 – REAR RETAINER
- 2 – SNAP RING
- 3 – REAR BEARING

(4) Apply 3 mm (1/8 in.) wide bead of Mopar® gasket maker or silicone adhesive sealer to mounting surface of extension housing. Allow sealer to set-up slightly before proceeding.

- (5) Install extension housing on rear retainer.
- (6) Install extension housing bolts and tighten to 35–46 N·m (26–34 ft. lbs.).

CLEANING AND INSPECTION

NV231 TRANSFER CASE

Clean the transfer case parts with a standard parts cleaning solvent. Remove all traces of sealer from the cases and retainers with a scraper and 3M all purpose cleaner. Use compressed air to remove solvent residue from oil feed passages in the case halves, retainers, gears, and shafts.

The oil pickup screen can be cleaned with solvent. Shake excess solvent from the screen after cleaning and allow it to air dry. Do not use compressed air.

MAINSHAFT/SPROCKET/HUB INSPECTION

Inspect the splines on the hub and shaft and the teeth on the sprocket (Fig. 78). Minor nicks and scratches can be smoothed with an oilstone. However, replace any part that is damaged.

Check the contact surfaces in the sprocket bore and on the mainshaft. Minor nicks and scratches can be smoothed with 320–400 grit emery cloth but do not try to salvage the shaft if nicks or wear is severe.

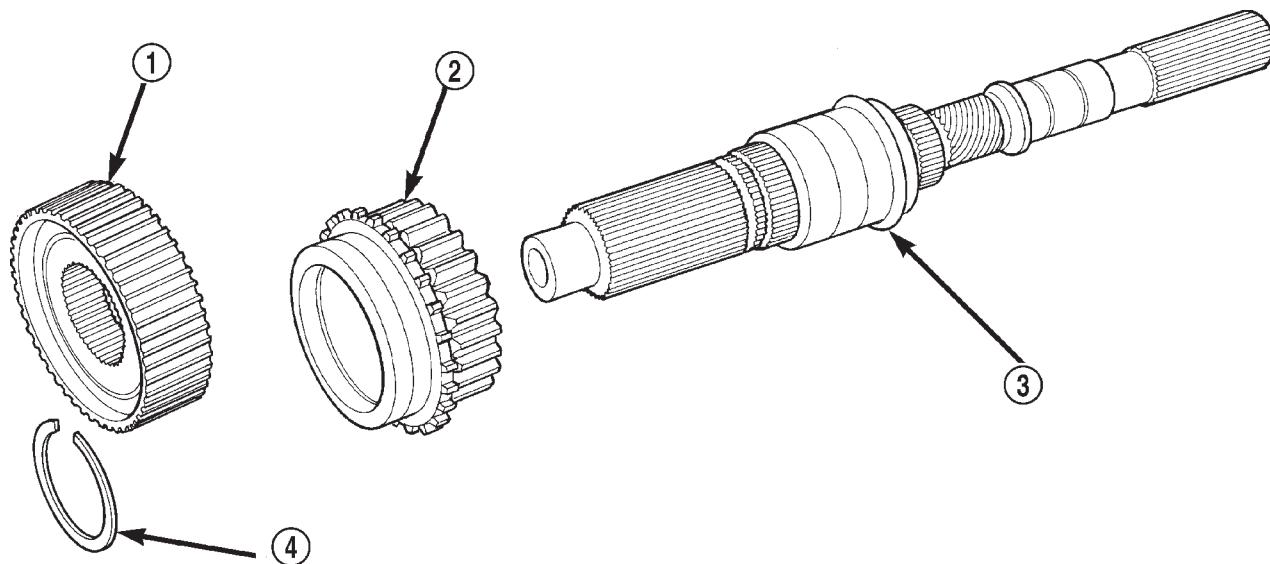
INPUT GEAR AND PLANETARY CARRIER

Check the teeth on the gear (Fig. 79). Minor nicks can be dressed off with an oilstone but replace the gear if any teeth are broken, cracked, or chipped. The bearing surface on the gear can be smoothed with 300–400 grit emery cloth if necessary.

Examine the carrier body and pinion gears for wear or damage. The carrier will have to be replaced as an assembly if the body, pinion pins, or pinion gears are damaged.

Check the lock ring and both thrust washers for wear or cracks. Replace them if necessary. Also replace the lock retaining ring if bent, distorted, or broken.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

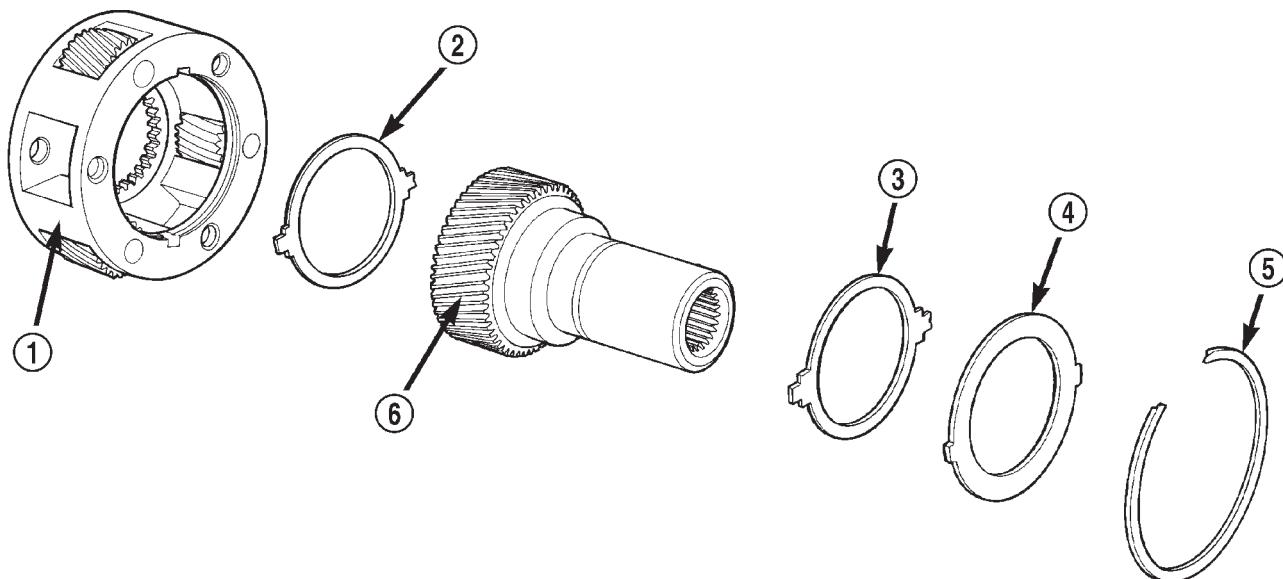


80010947

Fig. 78 Mainshaft, Mode Hub, And Drive Sprocket

- 1 – MODE HUB
2 – DRIVE SPROCKET

- 3 – MAINSHAFT
4 – MODE HUB RETAINING RING



8001b75f

Fig. 79 Input Gear And Carrier Components

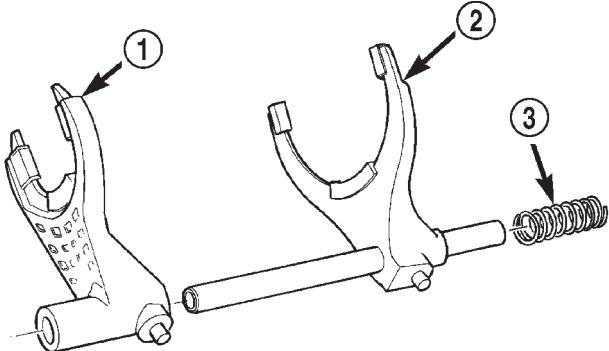
- 1 – PLANETARY CARRIER
2 – REAR THRUST WASHER
3 – FRONT THRUST WASHER

- 4 – CARRIER LOCK RING
5 – CARRIER LOCK RETAINING RING
6 – INPUT GEAR

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

SHIFT FORKS/HUBS/SLEEVES

Check condition of the shift forks and mode fork shift rail (Fig. 80). Minor nicks on the shift rail can be smoothed with 320–400 grit emery cloth.

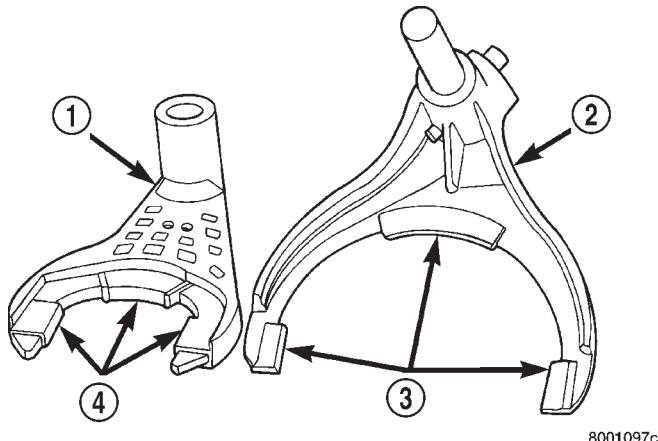


80010948

Fig. 80 Shift forks

- 1 - RANGE FORK
- 2 - MODE FORK AND RAIL
- 3 - MODE SPRING

Inspect the shift fork wear pads (Fig. 81). The mode fork pads are serviceable and can be replaced if necessary. The range fork pads are not serviceable. The fork must be replaced as an assembly if the pads are worn or damaged.



8001097c

Fig. 81 Shift Fork And Wear Pad Locations

- 1 - RANGE FORK
- 2 - MODE FORK
- 3 - WEAR PADS (SERVICEABLE)
- 4 - WEAR PADS (NON-SERVICEABLE)

Check both of the sleeves for wear or damage, especially on the interior teeth. Replace the sleeves if wear or damage is evident.

REAR RETAINER AND EXTENSION HOUSING

Inspect the retainer components. Replace the bearing if rough or noisy. Check the retainer for cracks or wear in the bearing bore. Clean the retainer sealing surfaces with a scraper and 3M all purpose cleaner. This will ensure proper adhesion of the sealer during reassembly.

Inspect the retaining rings and washers. Replace any part if distorted, bent, or broken. Reuse is not recommended.

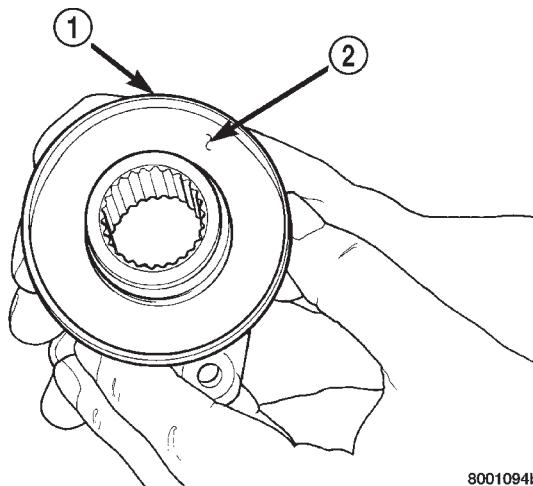
Inspect the extension housing seal and bushing. Replace both components if either shows any sign of wear or damage.

FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT/YOKE/DRIVE CHAIN

Check condition of the seal contact surfaces of the yoke slinger (Fig. 82). This surface must be clean and smooth to ensure proper seal life. Replace the yoke nut and seal washer as neither part should be reused.

Inspect the shaft threads, sprocket teeth, and bearing surfaces. Minor nicks on the teeth can be smoothed with an oilstone. Use 320–400 grit emery to smooth minor scratches on the shaft bearing surfaces. Rough threads on the shaft can be chased if necessary. Replace the shaft if the threads are damaged, bearing surfaces are scored, or if any sprocket teeth are cracked or broken.

Examine the drive chain and shaft bearings. Replace the chain and both sprockets if the chain is stretched, distorted, or if any of the links bind. Replace the bearings if rough, or noisy.



8001094b

Fig. 82 Seal Contact Surface Of Yoke Slinger

- 1 - FRONT SLINGER (PART OF YOKE)
- 2 - SEAL CONTACT SURFACE MUST BE CLEAN AND SMOOTH

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

LOW RANGE ANNULUS GEAR

Inspect annulus gear condition carefully. The gear is only serviced as part of the front case. If the gear is damaged, it will be necessary to replace the gear and front case as an assembly. Do not attempt to remove the gear (Fig. 83)

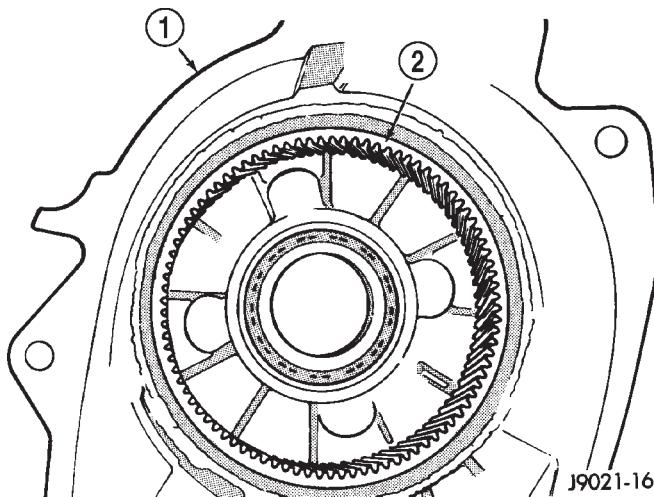


Fig. 83 Low Range Annulus Gear

- 1 – FRONT CASE
- 2 – LOW RANGE ANNULUS GEAR

FRONT-REAR CASES AND FRONT RETAINER

Inspect the cases and retainer for wear and damage. Clean the sealing surfaces with a scraper and 3M all purpose cleaner. This will ensure proper sealer adhesion at assembly. Replace the input retainer seal; do not reuse it.

Check case condition. If leaks were a problem, look for gouges and severe scoring of case sealing surfaces. Also make sure the front case mounting studs are in good condition.

Check the front case mounting studs and vent tube. The tube can be secured with Loctite 271 or 680 if loose. The stud threads can be cleaned up with a die if necessary. Also check condition of the fill/drain plug threads in the rear case. The threads can be repaired with a thread chaser or tap if necessary. Or the threads can be repaired with Helicoil stainless steel inserts if required.

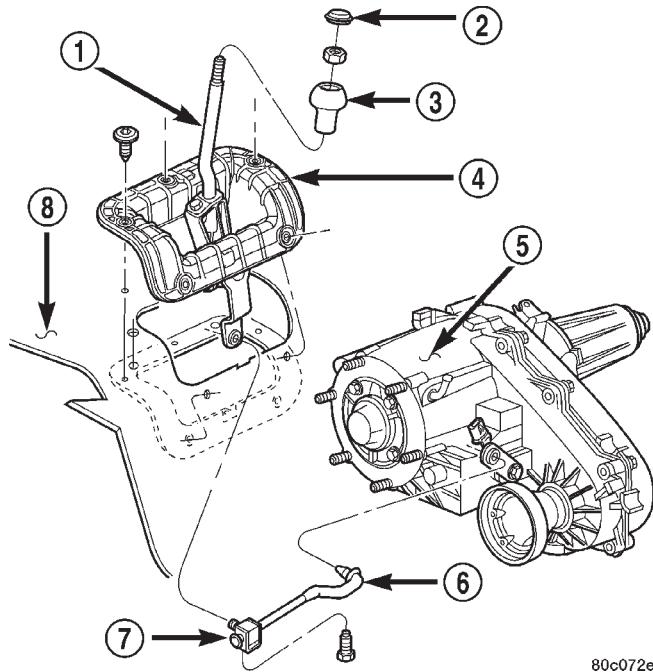
OIL PUMP/OIL PICKUP

Examine the oil pump pickup parts. Replace the pump if any part appears to be worn or damaged. Do not disassemble the pump as individual parts are not available. The pump is only available as a complete assembly. The pickup screen, hose, and tube are the only serviceable parts and are available separately.

ADJUSTMENTS

SHIFTER ADJUSTMENT

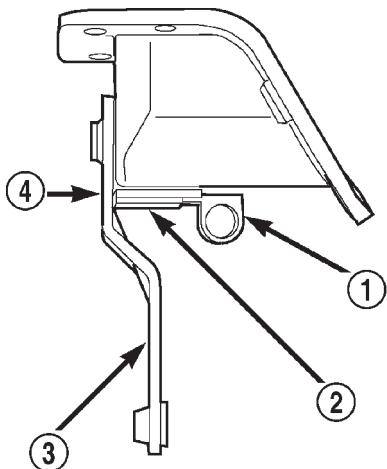
- (1) Shift transfer case into the 2WD position.
- (2) Raise vehicle.
- (3) Loosen the trunnion lock bolt (Fig. 84).
- (4) Make sure the shift rod slides freely in the adjusting swivel. Lube rod and swivel if necessary.
- (5) Verify that transfer case range lever is in 2WD detent. The 2WD detent is the second detent position from the full forward position.
- (6) Align the adjustment locating hole in the lower shift lever to the adjustment channel in the shifter body (Fig. 85).
- (7) Insert an appropriately sized pin through the adjustment hole and channel.
- (8) Tighten the trunnion lock bolt to 10 N·m (90 in. lbs.) torque.
- (9) Lower vehicle just enough to enter vehicle. Be sure all wheels are off shop floor. Then start engine, shift transmission into gear, and shift transfer case through all ranges to verify correct adjustment.



80c072e1

Fig. 84 Transfer Case Shift Linkage

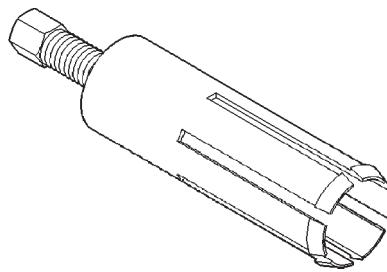
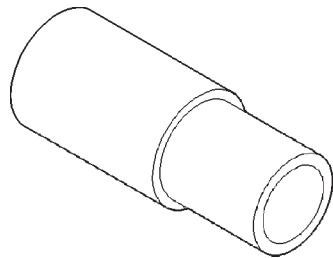
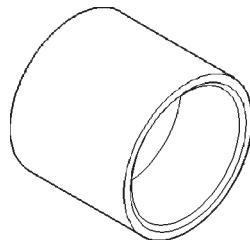
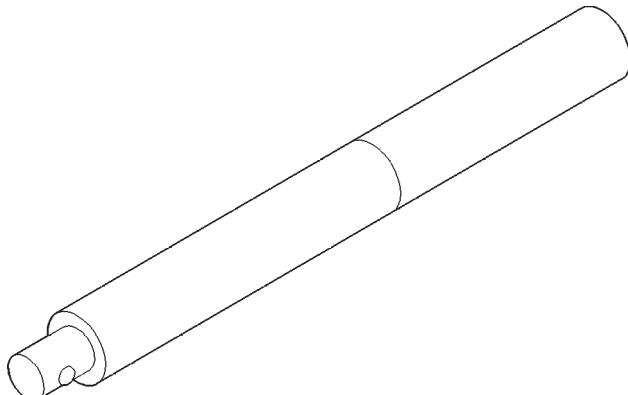
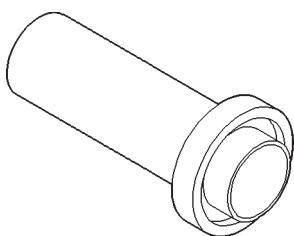
ADJUSTMENTS (Continued)



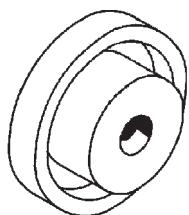
80be45f6

Fig. 85 Shifter Adjustment Channel and Hole

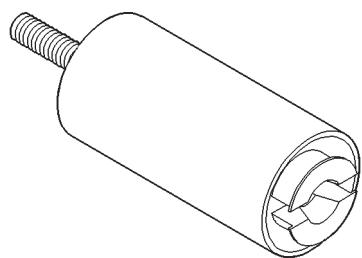
- 1 – LOCATING PIN
2 – ADJUSTMENT CHANNEL
3 – LOWER SHIFTER LEVER
4 – LOCATING HOLE

**Remover, Bushing—6957****Installer, Bushing—8160****Installer, Seal—C-3995-A****Handle, Universal—C-4171****Installer, Seal—8143**

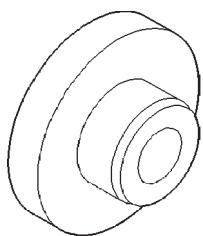
SPECIAL TOOLS (Continued)



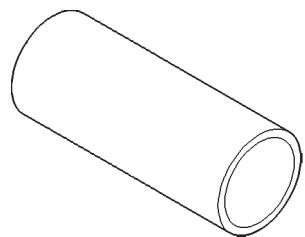
Installer, Seal—C-4210



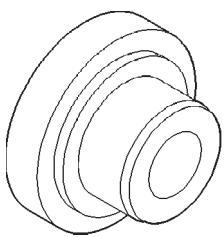
Remover—L-4454



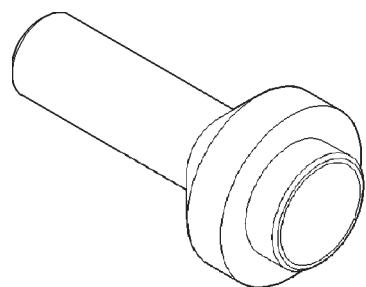
Installer, Bearing—5064



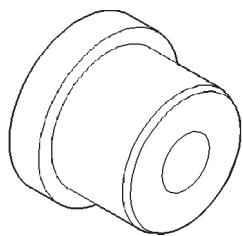
Cup—8148



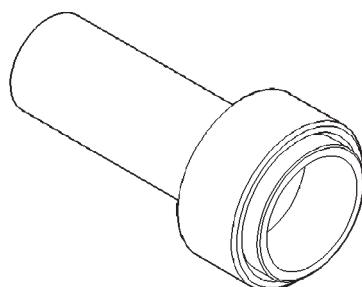
Installer, Bearing—5065



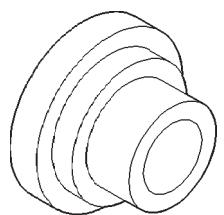
Installer, Seal—7884



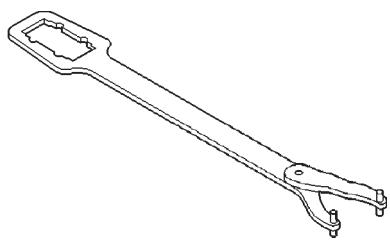
Installer, Bushing—5066



Installer, Pump Housing Seal—7888



Installer, Bearing—8128



Holder, Yoke—C-3281

NV242 TRANSFER CASE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

page	page
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION	
NV242 TRANSFER CASE.....	533
LUBRICANT AND FILL LEVEL	534
DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING	
NV242 DIAGNOSIS	534
REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION	
TRANSFER CASE	535
TRANSFER CASE SHIFTER.....	535
FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL	536
REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL.....	536
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY	
NV242 TRANSFER CASE.....	538
CLEANING AND INSPECTION	
NV242 TRANSFER CASE.....	558
ADJUSTMENTS	
SHIFTER ADJUSTMENT.....	560
SPECIFICATIONS	
TORQUE	561
SPECIAL TOOLS	
NV242	561

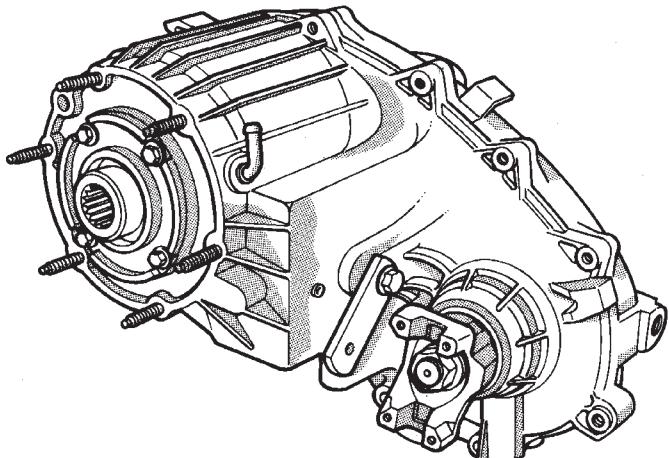
DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION

NV242 TRANSFER CASE

DESCRIPTION

The NV242 is a full and part-time transfer case (Fig. 1) with no two wheel drive operation.

A differential in the transfer case is used to control torque transfer to the front and rear axles. A low range gear provides increased low speed torque capability for off road operation. The low range provides a 2.72:1 reduction ratio.



J8921-243

Fig. 1 NV242 Transfer Case

The input gear is splined to the transmission output shaft. It drives the mainshaft through the planetary gear and range hub. The front output shaft is operated by a drive chain that connects the shaft to a

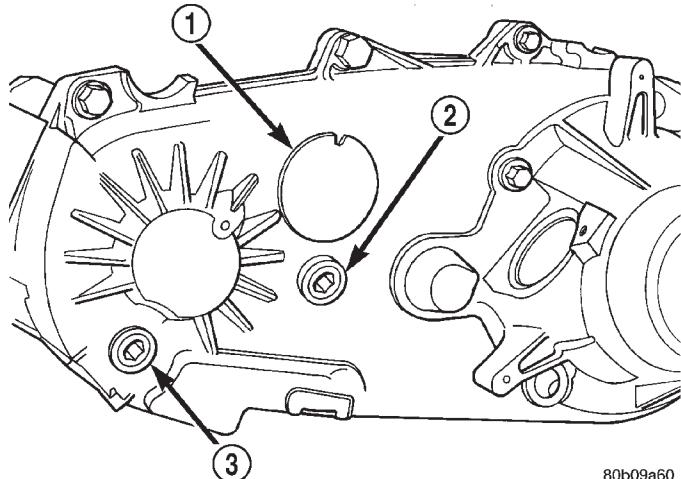
drive sprocket on the mainshaft. The drive sprocket is engaged/disengaged by the mode fork, which operates the mode sleeve and hub. The sleeve and hub are not equipped with a synchro mechanism for shifting.

The geartrain is mounted in two aluminum case halves attached with bolts. The mainshaft front and rear bearings are mounted in aluminum retainer housings bolted to the case halves.

TRANSFER CASE IDENTIFICATION

A circular ID tag is attached to the rear case of each transfer case (Fig. 2). The ID tag provides the transfer case model number, assembly number, serial number, and low range ratio.

The transfer case serial number also represents the date of build.



80b09a60

Fig. 2 Fill/Drain Plug And I.D. Tag Locations

- 1 – I.D. TAG
- 2 – FILL PLUG
- 3 – DRAIN PLUG

DESCRIPTION AND OPERATION (Continued)

OPERATING RANGES

NV242 operating ranges are 4HI LOCK (part-time), 4HI LOCK (full time), and 4LO LOCK.

The 4WD modes can be used at any time and on any road surface.

The 4HI LOCK (part-time) and 4LO LOCK ranges are for off road use only. The only time these ranges can be used on hard surface roads, is when the surface is covered with snow and ice.

SHIFT MECHANISM

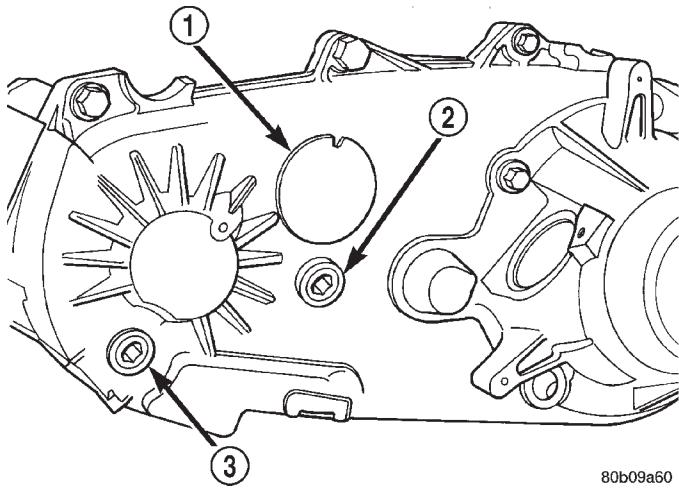
Operating ranges are selected with a body mounted shift lever. The shift lever is connected to the transfer case range lever by an adjustable linkage rod. A straight line shift pattern is used. Range positions are marked on the shifter bezel cover plate, or on the shift knob.

LUBRICANT AND FILL LEVEL

DESCRIPTION

Recommended lubricant for the NV242 transfer case is Mopar® Dexron III, or ATF+3, type 7176. Approximate lubricant fill capacity is 1.35 liters (2.85 pints).

The fill and drain plugs are both in the rear case (Fig. 3). Correct fill level is to the bottom edge of the fill plug hole. Be sure the vehicle is level to ensure an accurate fluid level check.



80b09a60

Fig. 3 Fill/Drain Plug Locations

- 1 – I.D. TAG
- 2 – FILL PLUG
- 3 – DRAIN PLUG

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING

NV242 DIAGNOSIS

DIAGNOSIS CHART

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSE	CORRECTION
Transfer case difficult to shift or will not shift into desired range.	1) Transfer case shift linkage binding. 2) Insufficient or incorrect lubricant. 3) Internal transfer case components binding, worn, or damaged.	1) Repair or replace linkage as necessary. 2) Drain and refill transfer case with the correct quantity of Mopar® DexronIII or ATF+3, type 7176, Automatic transmission fluid. 3) Repair or replace components as necessary.
Transfer case noisy in all drive modes.	1) Insufficient or incorrect lubricant.	1) Drain and refill transfer case with the correct quantity of Mopar® DexronIII or ATF+3, type 7176, Automatic transmission fluid.
Lubricant leaking from transfer case seals or vent.	1) Transfer case overfilled. 2) Transfer case vent closed or restricted. 3) Transfer case seals damaged or installed incorrectly.	1) Drain lubricant to the correct level. 2) Clean or replace vent as necessary. 3) Replace suspect seal.

DIAGNOSIS AND TESTING (Continued)

CONDITION	POSSIBLE CAUSE	CORRECTION
Transfer case will not shift through 4HI LOCK (part time) range (light remains on)	1) Incomplete shift due to drivetrain torque load.	1) Momentarily release the accelerator pedal to complete the shift.
	2) Incorrect tire pressure.	2) Correct tire pressure as necessary.
	3) Excessive Tire wear.	3) Correct tire condition as necessary.
	4) Excessive vehicle loading.	4) Correct as necessary.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION

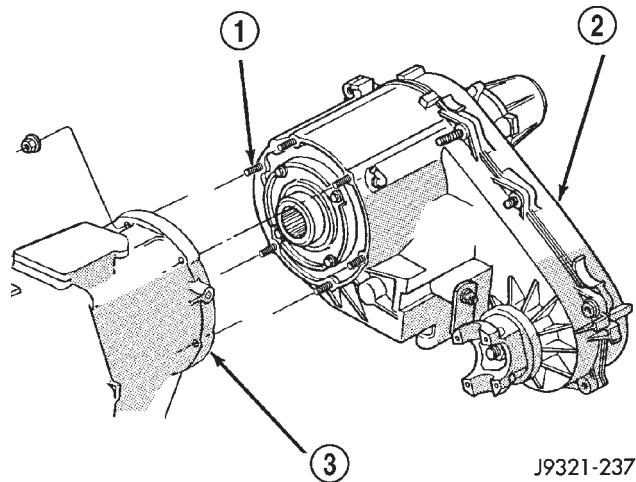
TRANSFER CASE

REMOVAL

- (1) Shift transfer case into 4WD.
- (2) Raise vehicle.
- (3) Drain transfer case lubricant.
- (4) Mark front and rear propeller shafts for alignment reference.
- (5) Support transmission with jack stand.
- (6) Remove skid plate, if equipped.
- (7) Disconnect front and rear propeller shafts at transfer case.
- (8) Disconnect transfer case linkage rod from range lever.
- (9) Disconnect transfer case vent hose (Fig. 4) and indicator switch harness, if necessary.
- (10) Support transfer case with transmission jack.
- (11) Secure transfer case to jack with chains.
- (12) Remove nuts attaching transfer case to transmission.
- (13) Pull transfer case and jack rearward to disengage transfer case.
- (14) Remove transfer case from under vehicle.

INSTALLATION

- (1) Mount transfer case on a transmission jack.
- (2) Secure transfer case to jack with chains.
- (3) Position transfer case under vehicle.
- (4) Align transfer case and transmission shafts and install transfer case on transmission.
- (5) Install and tighten transfer case attaching nuts to 35 N·m (26 ft. lbs.) torque (Fig. 4).
- (6) Connect vent hose.
- (7) Connect indicator switch harness to transfer case switch, if necessary. Secure wire harness to clips on transfer case.
- (8) Align and connect the propeller shafts.
- (9) Fill transfer case with correct fluid. Refer to Lubricant And Fill Level section for proper fluid and capacity.



J9321-237

Fig. 4 Transfer Case Mounting—Typical

- 1 – MOUNTING STUDS
2 – TRANSFER CASE
3 – TRANSMISSION

- (10) Install rear crossmember and skid plate, if equipped. Tighten crossmember bolts to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.) torque.
- (11) Remove transmission jack and support stand.
- (12) Connect shift rod to transfer case range lever.
- (13) Verify the adjustment of the transfer case shift linkage.
- (14) Lower vehicle and verify transfer case shift operation.

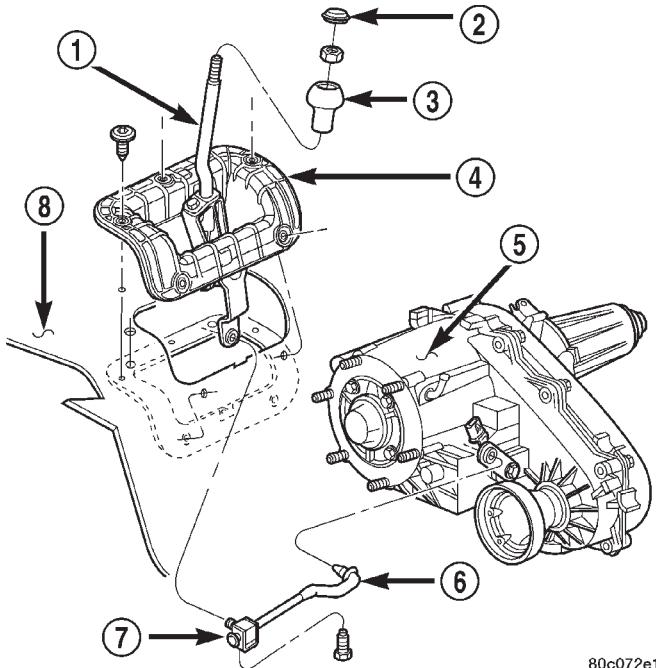
TRANSFER CASE SHIFTER

REMOVAL

- (1) Shift transfer case and shifter into the 42WD position.
- (2) Raise and support vehicle.
- (3) Loosen adjusting trunnion lock bolt and slide shift rod out of trunnion (Fig. 5). If rod lacks enough travel to come out of trunnion, push trunnion out of the shifter arm.
- (4) Lower the vehicle.
- (5) Remove transfer case shifter knob cap.
- (6) Remove nut holding shifter knob to shift lever.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

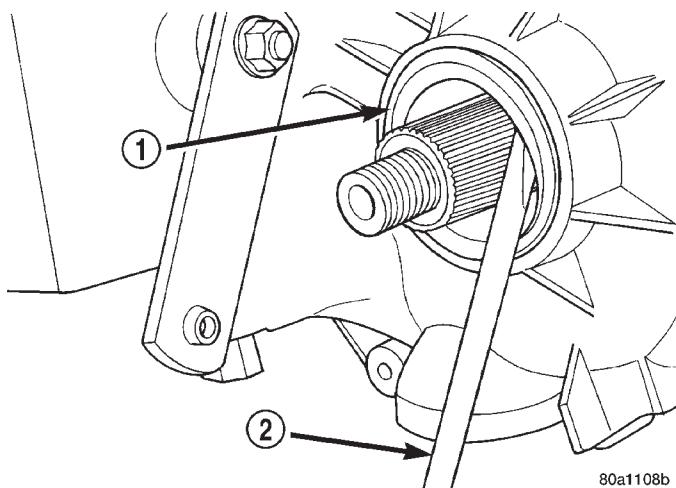
- (7) Remove shifter knob.
- (8) Remove the shifter bezel.
- (9) Remove the shift lever.
- (10) Remove bolts holding shifter to vehicle floor pan.
- (11) Separate shifter from the vehicle.

**Fig. 5 Shifter****INSTALLATION**

- (1) If a new shifter is not being installed, secure an appropriately sized pin through the adjustment channel and hole, located in the base of the shifter body.
- (2) Position shifter on the vehicle floor pan.
- (3) Install the bolts to hold the shifter to the floor pan. Tighten the bolts to 12.4 N·m (110 in.lbs.).
- (4) Install the shift lever to the shifter. Tighten the shift lever bolt to 28.3 N·m (250 in.lbs.).
- (5) Install the shifter bezel.
- (6) Install shift knob on shift lever.
- (7) Install nut to hold shifter knob to shift lever.
- (8) Install shifter knob cap.
- (9) Raise the vehicle.
- (10) Install the shift rod to the trunnion, if necessary.
- (11) Tighten trunnion lock bolt 10 N·m (90 in.lbs.).
- (12) Remove the locating pin from the adjustment channel and hole in the base of the shifter.
- (13) Lower vehicle.
- (14) Verify transfer case operation.

FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL**REMOVAL**

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Remove front propeller shaft. Refer to Group 3, Differential and Driveline, for proper procedure.
- (3) Remove front output shaft yoke.
- (4) Remove seal from front case with pry tool (Fig. 6).

**Fig. 6 Remove Front Output Shaft Seal**

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL
2 – PRYBAR

INSTALLATION

- (1) Install new front output seal in front case with Installer Tool 6952-A as follows:
 - (a) Place new seal on tool. Garter spring on seal goes toward interior of case.
 - (b) Start seal in bore with light taps from hammer (Fig. 7). Once seal is started, continue tapping seal into bore until installer tool seats against case.

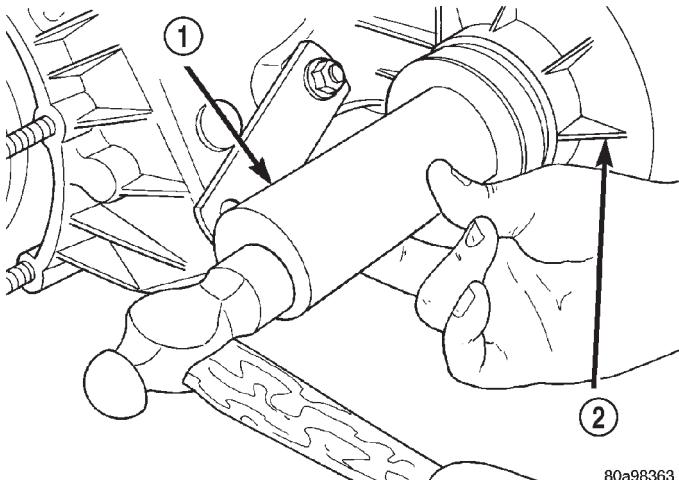
REAR RETAINER BUSHING AND SEAL**REMOVAL**

- (1) Raise vehicle.
- (2) Remove rear propeller shaft. Refer to Group 3, Differential and Driveline, for proper procedure.
- (3) Using a suitable pry tool or slide-hammer mounted screw, remove the rear retainer seal.
- (4) Using Remover 6957, remove bushing from rear retainer (Fig. 8).

INSTALLATION

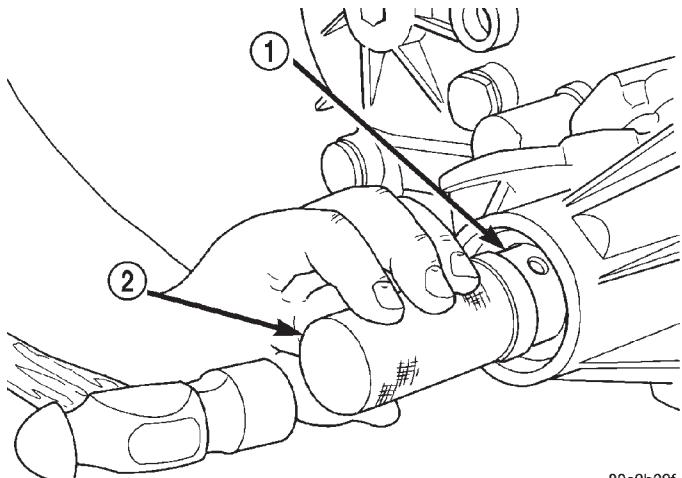
- (1) Clean fluid residue from sealing surface and inspect for defects.
- (2) Position replacement bushing in rear retainer with fluid port in bushing aligned with slot in retainer.

REMOVAL AND INSTALLATION (Continued)

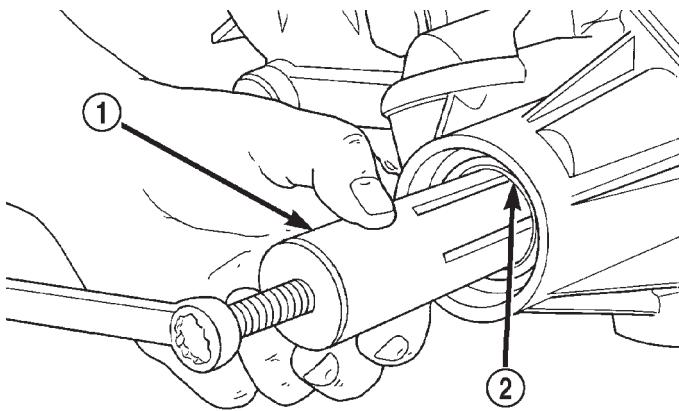
**Fig. 7 Front Output Seal Installation**

- 1 – INSTALLER 6952-A
2 – TRANSFER CASE

(4) Using Installer C-3995-A, install seal in rear retainer (Fig. 10).

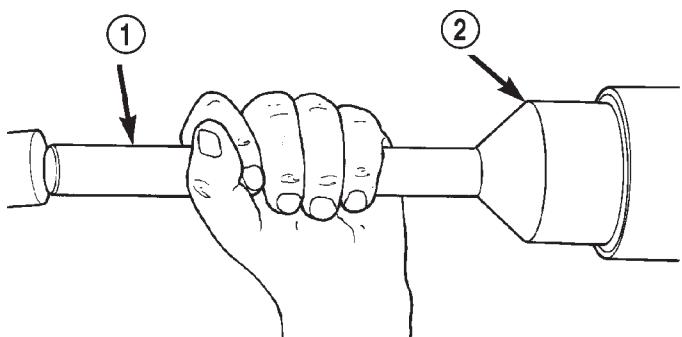
**Fig. 9 Rear Retainer Bushing Install**

- 1 – REAR RETAINER BUSHING
2 – INSTALLER 8160

**Fig. 8 Rear Retainer Bushing Removal**

- 1 – REMOVER 6957
2 – REAR RETAINER BUSHING

(3) Using Installer 8160, drive bushing into retainer until installer seats against case (Fig. 9).

**Fig. 10 Install Rear Retainer Seal**

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
2 – SPECIAL TOOL C-3995-A

- (5) Install propeller shaft.
(6) Verify proper fluid level.
(7) Lower vehicle.

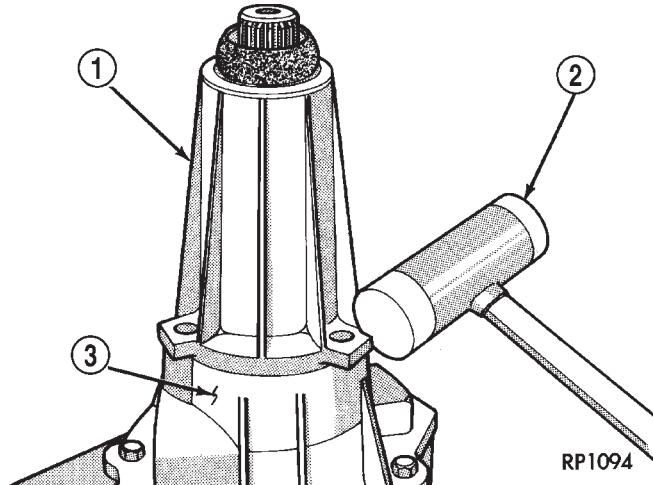
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

NV242 TRANSFER CASE

DISASSEMBLY

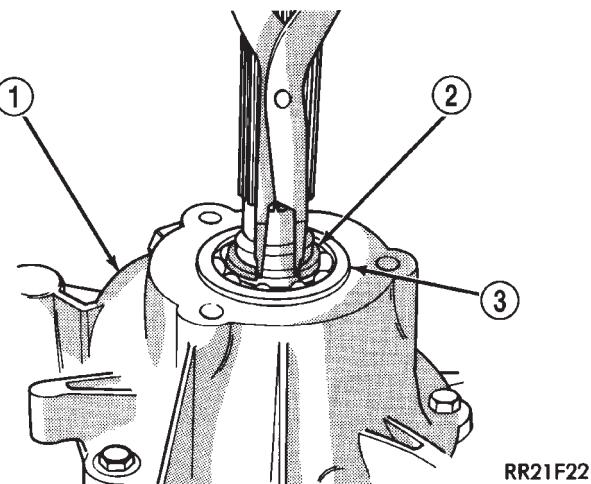
REAR RETAINER

- (1) Remove extension housing bolts.
- (2) Tap extension housing with plastic or rawhide mallet to loosen sealer (Fig. 11).

**Fig. 11 Remove Extension Housing**

- 1 – EXTENSION HOUSING
2 – PLASTIC HAMMER
3 – REAR RETAINER

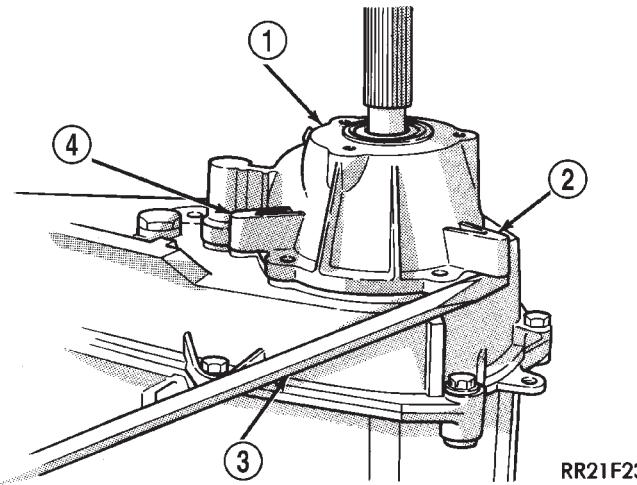
- (3) Separate extension housing from rear retainer.
- (4) Remove rear bearing snap-ring (Fig. 12).

**Fig. 12 Remove Rear Bearing Snap-ring**

- 1 – REAR RETAINER
2 – SNAP RING
3 – REAR BEARING

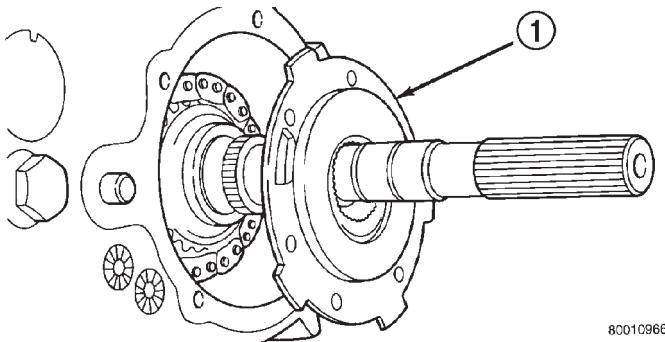
- (5) Remove bolts holding rear retainer to rear case half.

- (6) Loosen rear retainer with pry tool to break sealer bead. Pry only against retainer boss as shown (Fig. 13).

**Fig. 13 Loosening Rear Retainer**

- 1 – REAR RETAINER
2 – TAB (2)
3 – SCREWDRIVER
4 – TAB

- (7) Remove rear bearing O.D. retaining ring with snap ring pliers. Then tilt pump and slide it off output shaft (Fig. 14)

**Fig. 14 Oil Pump Removal**

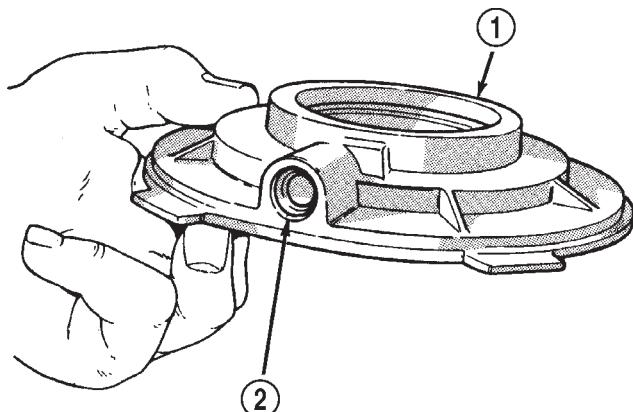
- 1 – OIL PUMP

- (8) Remove pickup tube O-ring from pump (Fig. 15) but do not disassemble pump; it is not a repairable part.

- (9) Remove seal from oil pump with pry tool.

- (10) Remove bolts attaching rear case to front case (Fig. 16). Note position of the two black finish bolts at each end of the case. These bolts go through the case dowels and require a washer under the bolt head.

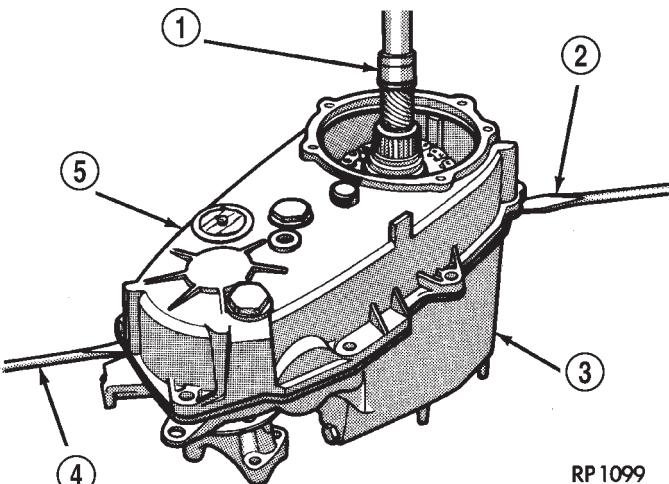
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



RR21F27

Fig. 15 Pickup Tube O-Ring Location

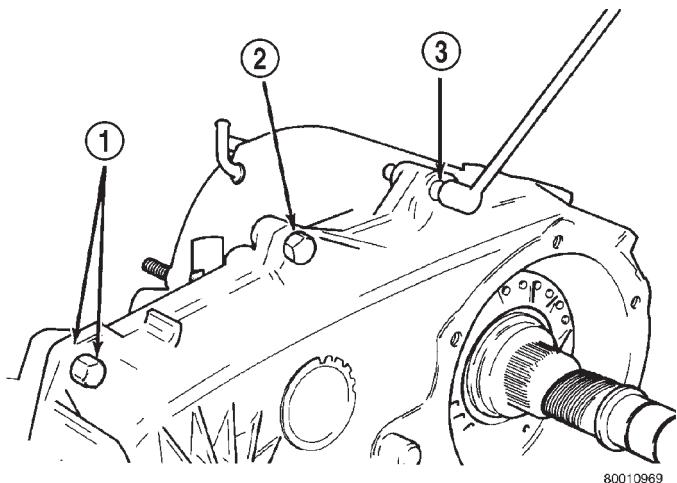
- 1 – OIL PUMP
2 – O-RING



RP 1099

Fig. 17 Loosening/Removing Rear case

- 1 – MAINSHAFT
2 – SCREWDRIVER
3 – FRONT CASE
4 – SCREWDRIVER
5 – REAR CASE



80010969

Fig. 16 Spline And Dowel Bolt Locations

- 1 – DOWEL BOLT AND WASHER (2)
2 – CASE BOLT (5)
3 – SPLINE HEAD BOLT (1)

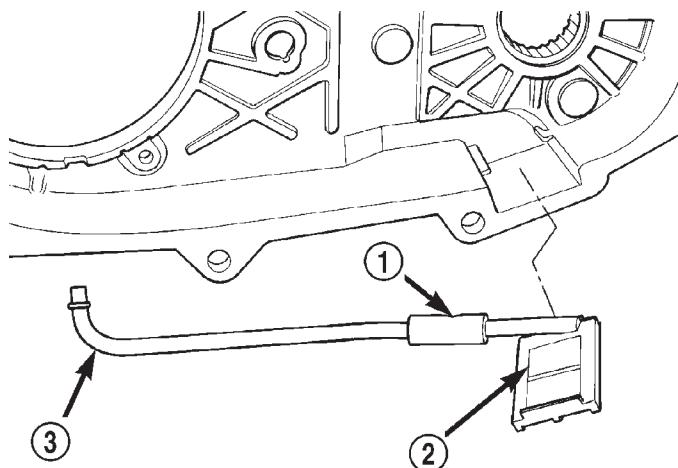
(11) Remove rear case from front case (Fig. 17). Insert screwdrivers into slots cast into each end of case. Then pry upward to break sealer bead and remove rear case.

CAUTION: Do not pry on the sealing surface of either case half as the surfaces will become damaged.

(12) Remove oil pickup tube and screen from rear case (Fig. 18).

YODE AND RANGE LEVER

- (1) Remove front yoke nut:
(a) Move range lever to 4L position.



80010979

Fig. 18 Oil Pickup Screen, Hose And Tube Removal

- 1 – CONNECTING HOSE
2 – PICKUP SCREEN
3 – PICKUP TUBE

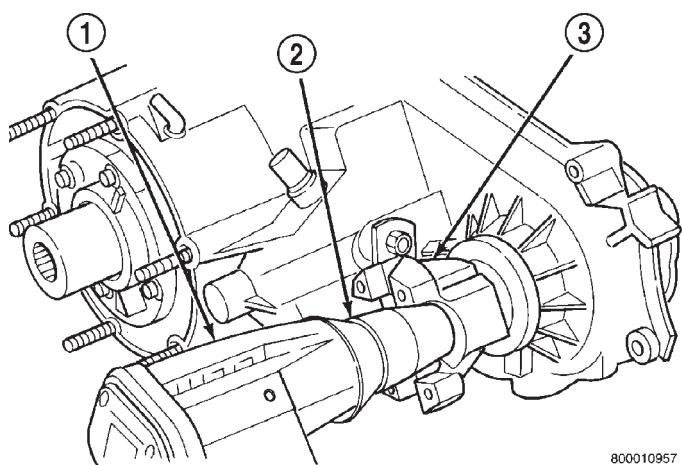
(b) Remove nut with socket and impact wrench (Fig. 19).

(2) Remove yoke. If yoke is difficult to remove by hand, remove it with bearing splitter, or with standard two jaw puller (Fig. 20). Be sure puller tool is positioned on yoke and not on slinger as slinger will be damaged.

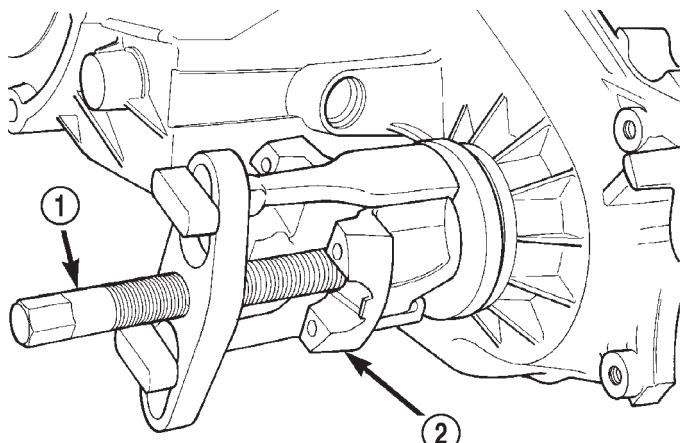
(3) Remove seal washer from front output shaft. Discard washer as it should not be reused.

(4) Remove nut and washer that attach range lever to sector shaft. Then move sector to neutral position and remove range lever from shaft (Fig. 21).

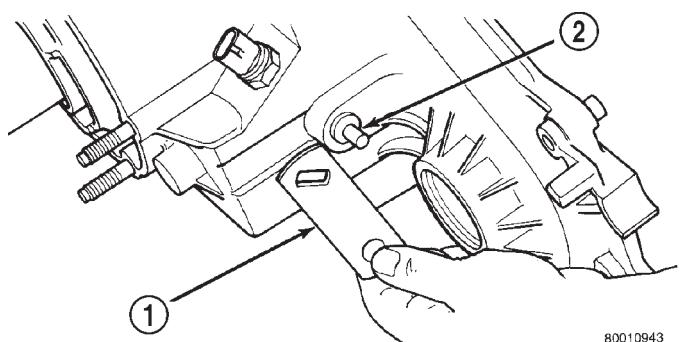
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 19 Yoke Nut Removal**

- 1 – IMPACT WRENCH
2 – SOCKET
3 – YOKE

**Fig. 20 Yoke Removal**

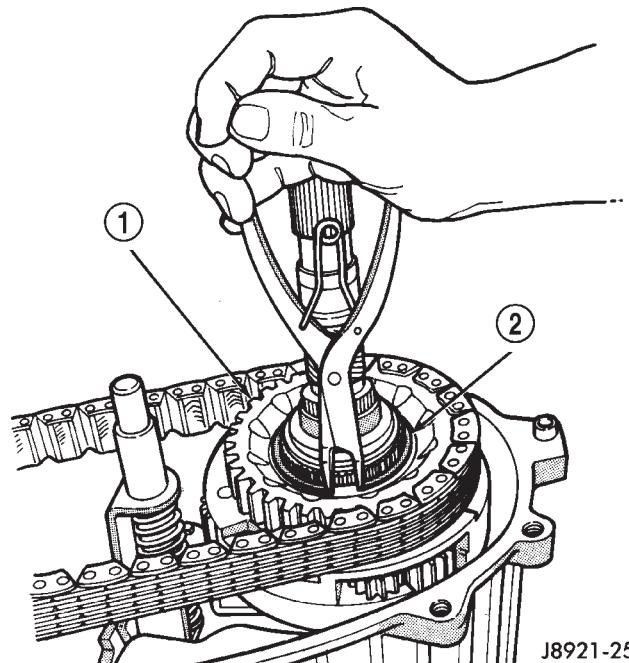
- 1 – PULLER TOOL
2 – YOKE

**Fig. 21 Range Lever Removal**

- 1 – RANGE LEVER
2 – SECTOR SHAFT

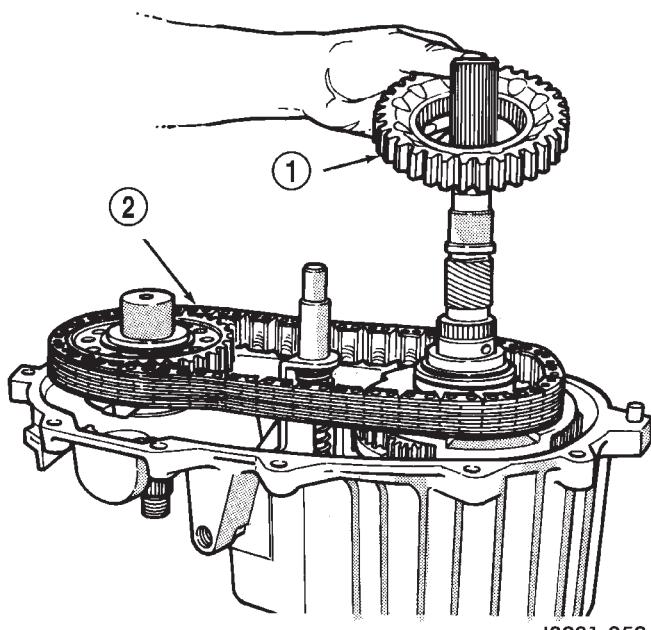
FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT AND DRIVE CHAIN

- (1) Remove drive sprocket snap-ring (Fig. 22).

**Fig. 22 Drive Sprocket Snap-Ring Removal**

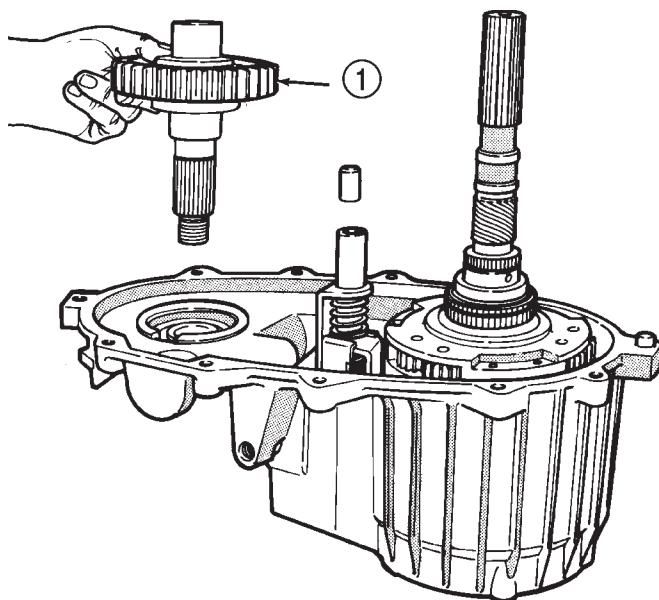
- 1 – DRIVE SPROCKET
2 – DRIVE SPROCKET SNAP RING

- (2) Remove drive sprocket and chain (Fig. 23).
(3) Remove front output shaft (Fig. 24).

**Fig. 23 Drive Sprocket And Chain Removal**

- 1 – DRIVE SPROCKET
2 – DRIVE CHAIN

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



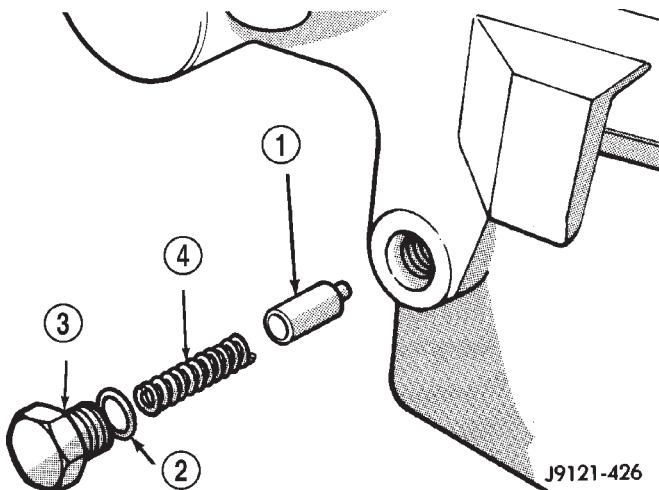
J8921-253

Fig. 24 Removing Front Output Shaft

1 – FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT

SHIFT FORKS AND MAINSHAFT

- (1) Remove shift detent plug, spring and pin (Fig. 25).



J9121-426

Fig. 25 Detent Component Removal

- 1 – PLUNGER
- 2 – O-RING
- 3 – PLUG
- 4 – SPRING

- (2) Remove seal plug from low range fork lockpin access hole. Then move shift sector to align low range fork lockpin with access hole.

- (3) Remove range fork lockpin with size number one easy-out tool as follows:

(a) Insert easy-out tool through access hole in side of transfer case and into lock-pin.

(b) Tap easy-out tool into lock-pin with hammer until tool is securely engaged into the lock-pin.

(c) Install a t-handle, such as from a tap and die set, onto the easy-out tool.

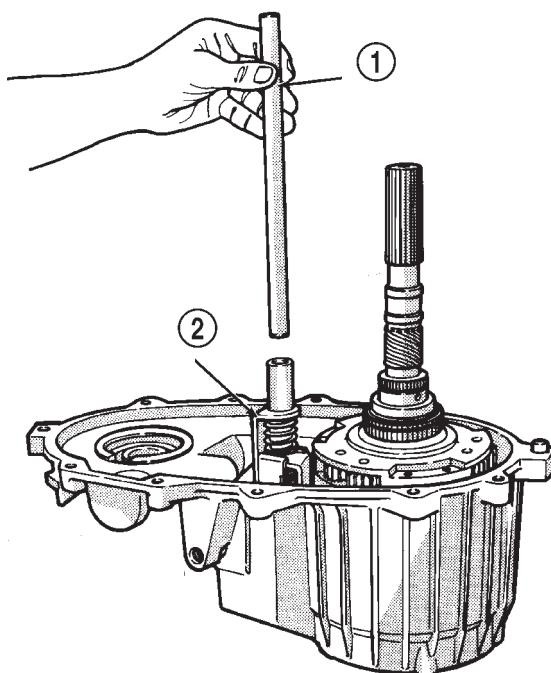
(d) Securely tighten the t-handle onto the tool.

(e) In one motion, pull upward and turn the t-handle counter-clockwise to remove the lock-pin.

- (4) Remove shift rail by pulling it straight up and out of fork (Fig. 26).

- (5) Remove mode fork and mainshaft as assembly (Fig. 27).

- (6) Remove mode shift sleeve and mode fork assembly from mainshaft (Fig. 28). Note position of mode sleeve in fork and remove sleeve.

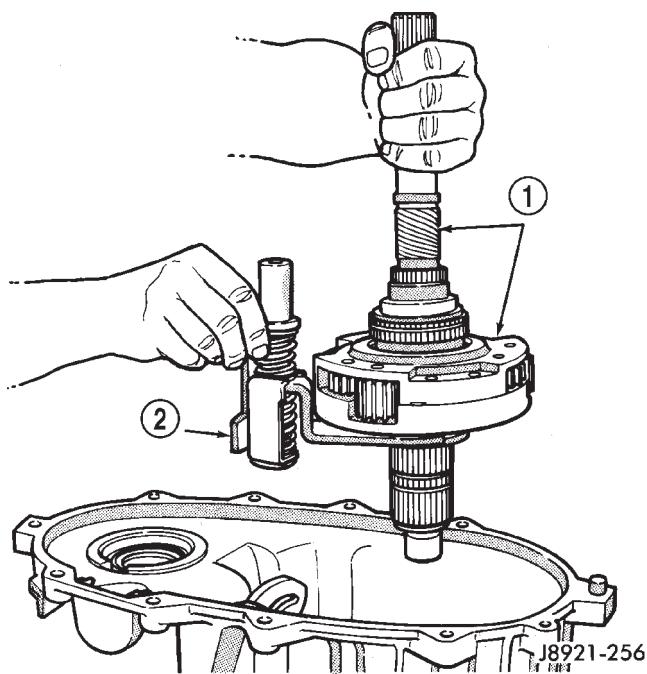


J8921-255

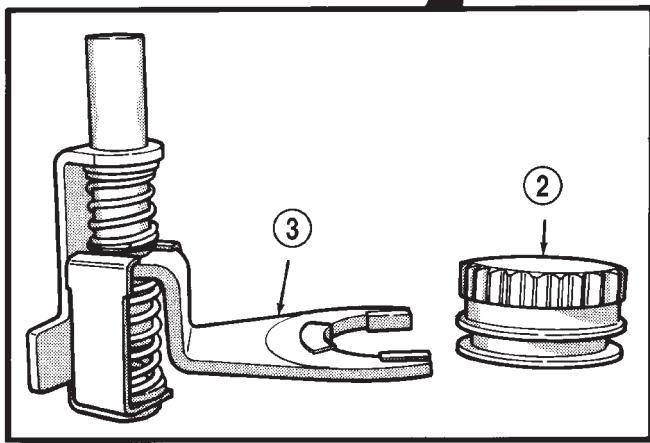
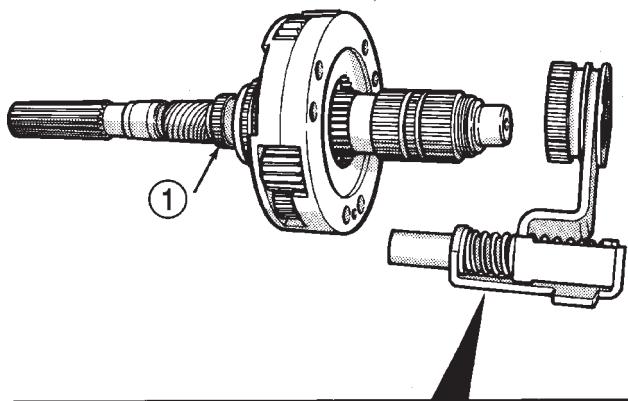
Fig. 26 Shift Rail Removal

- 1 – SHIFT RAIL
- 2 – MODE FORK

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

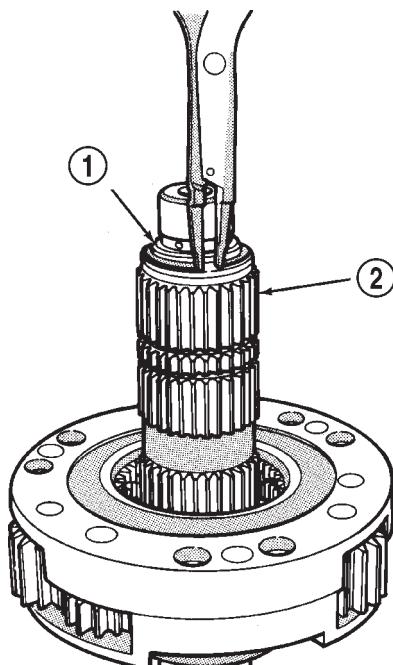
**Fig. 27 Mode Fork And Mainshaft Removal**

- 1 – MAINSHAFT ASSEMBLY
2 – MODE FORK

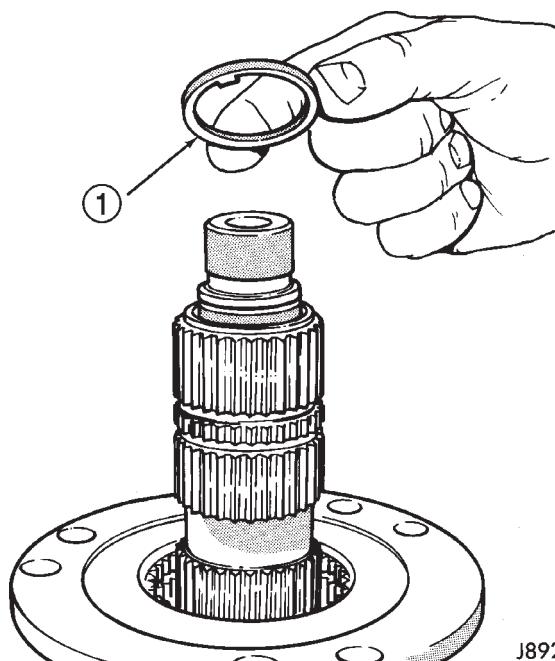
**Fig. 28 Mode Fork And Sleeve Removal**

- 1 – MAINSHAFT
2 – SLEEVE
3 – MODE FORK ASSEMBLY

- (7) Remove intermediate clutch shaft snap-ring (Fig. 29).
 (8) Remove clutch shaft thrust ring (Fig. 30).
 (9) Remove intermediate clutch shaft (Fig. 31).

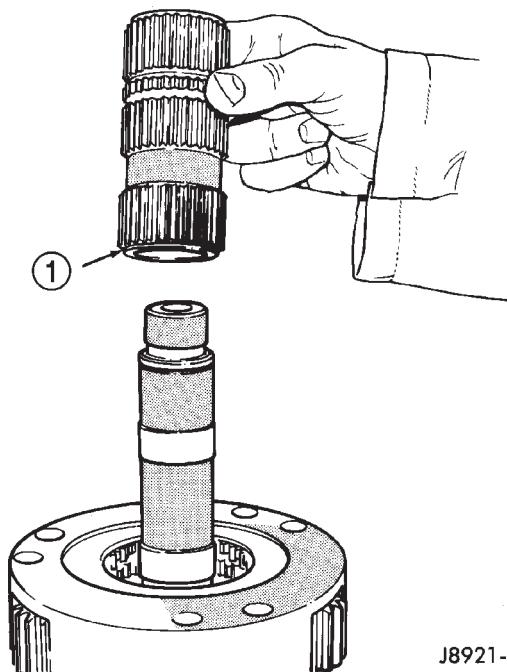
**Fig. 29 Intermediate Clutch Shaft Snap-Ring Removal**

- 1 – SNAP RING
2 – INTERMEDIATE CLUTCH SHAFT

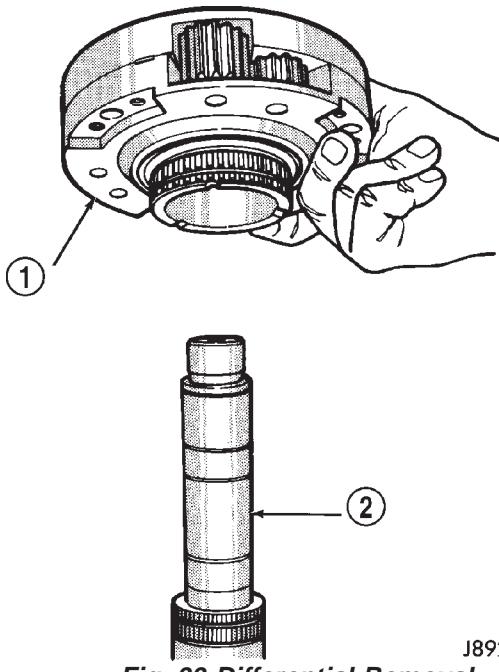
**Fig. 30 Clutch Shaft Thrust Ring Removal**

- 1 – CLUTCH SHAFT THRUST RING

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

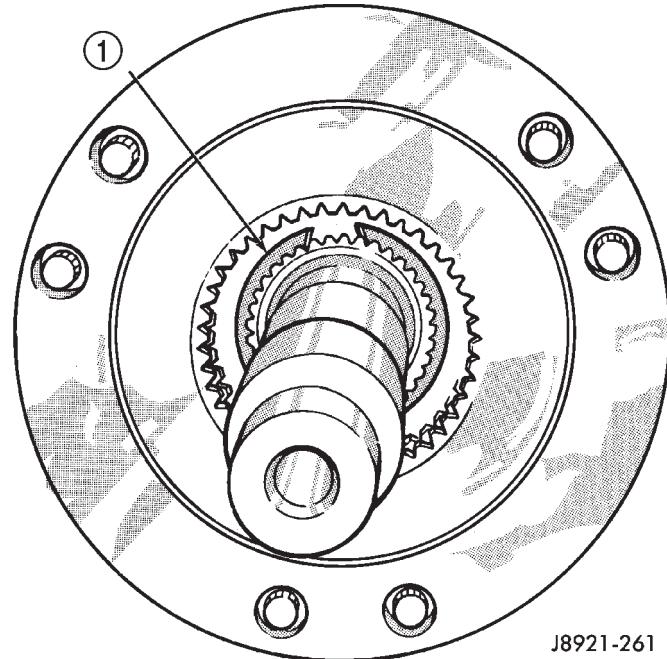
**Fig. 31 Intermediate Clutch Shaft Removal**

1 – INTERMEDIATE CLUTCH SHAFT

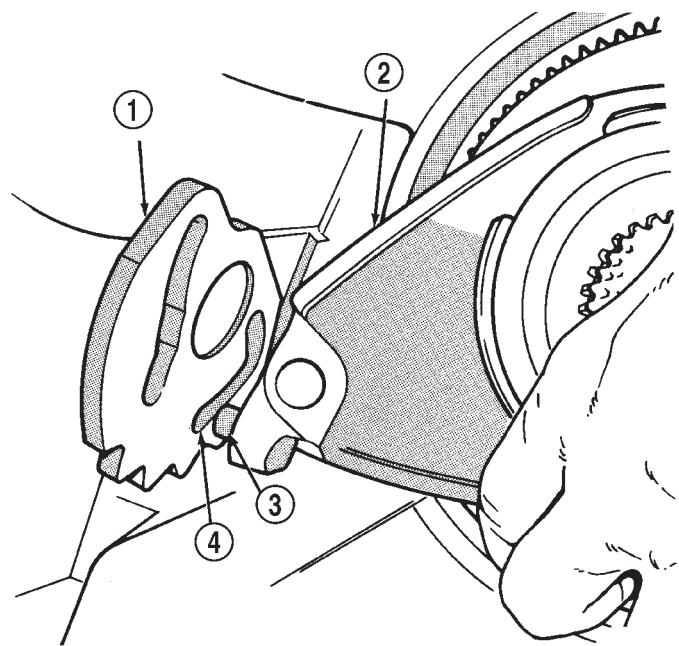
**Fig. 33 Differential Removal**

1 – DIFFERENTIAL
2 – MAINSHAFT

- (10) Remove differential snap-ring (Fig. 32).
- (11) Remove differential (Fig. 33).
- (12) Remove differential needle bearings and both needle bearing thrust washers from mainshaft.

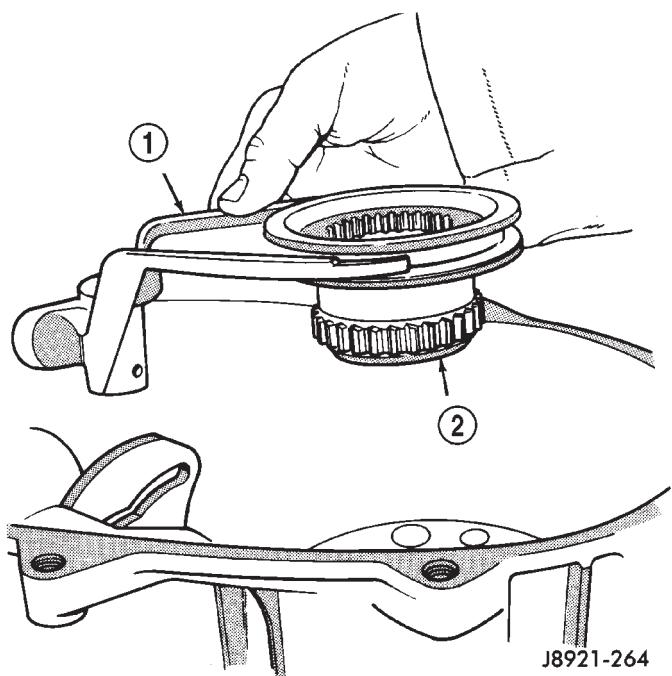
**Fig. 32 Differential Snap-Ring Removal**

1 – DIFFERENTIAL SNAP RING

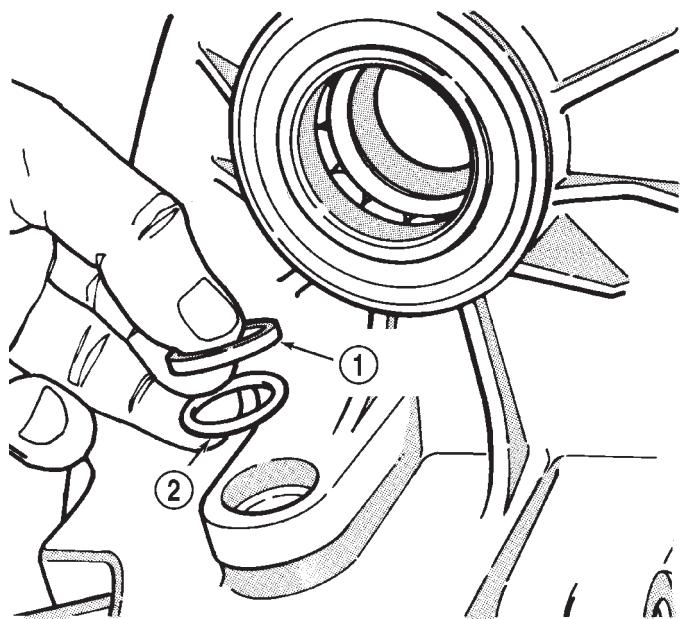
**Fig. 34 Disengaging Low Range Fork**

1 – SHIFT SECTOR
2 – LOW RANGE FORK
3 – PIN
4 – SLOT

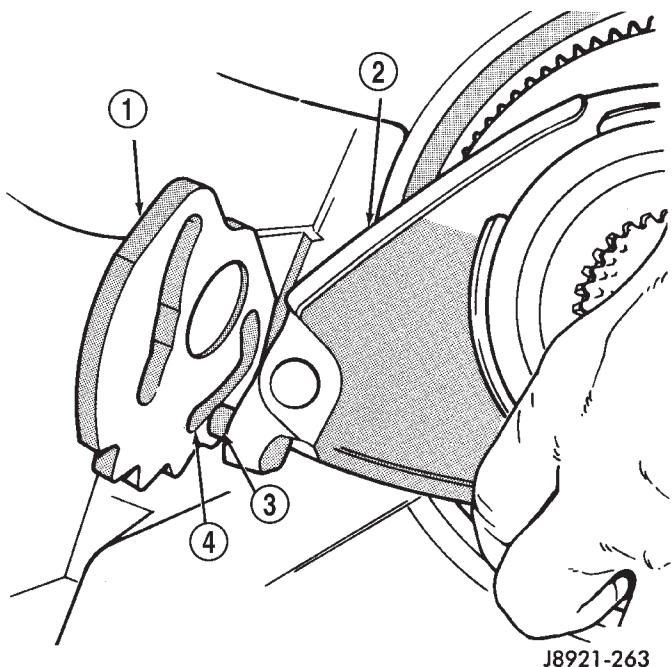
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 35 Low Range Fork And Hub Removal**

- 1 – LOW RANGE FORK
2 – FORK HUB

**Fig. 37 Sector Bushing And O-Ring Removal**

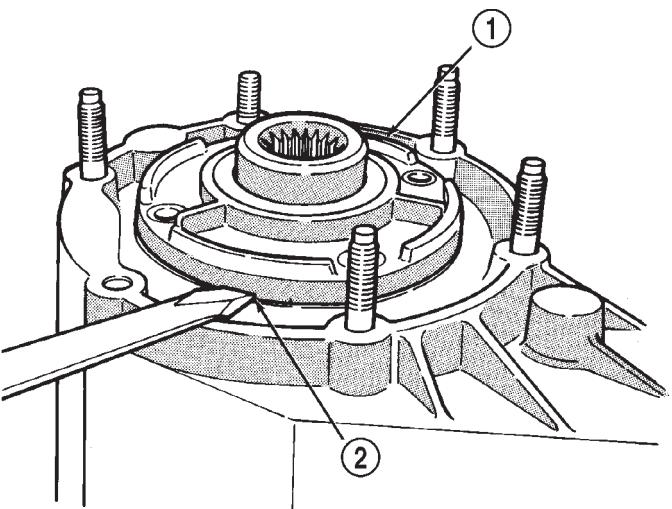
- 1 – SHIFT SECTOR BUSHING
2 – O-RING

**Fig. 36 Shift Sector Position**

- 1 – SHIFT SECTOR
2 – LOW RANGE FORK
3 – PIN
4 – SLOT

INPUT GEAR/LOW RANGE ASSEMBLY

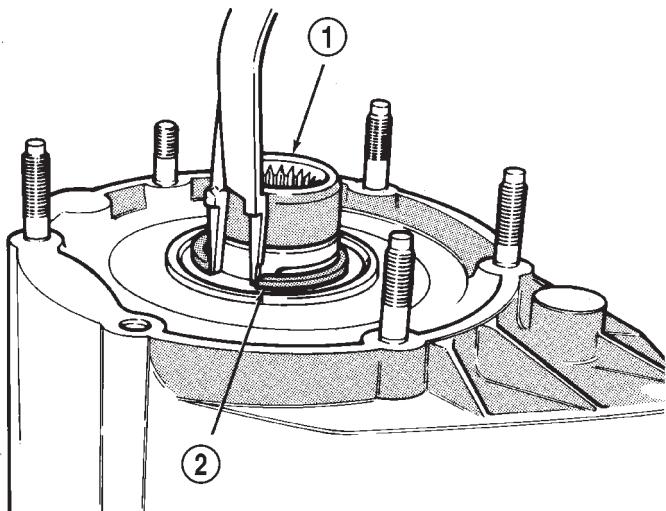
- (1) Remove front bearing retainer bolts.
- (2) Remove front bearing retainer. Carefully pry retainer loose with screwdriver (Fig. 38). Position screwdriver in slots cast into retainer.
- (3) Remove input gear snap-ring (Fig. 39).

**Fig. 38 Front Bearing Retainer Removal**

- 1 – FRONT BEARING RETAINER
2 – RETAINER SLOT

- (16) Remove shift sector bushing and O-ring (Fig. 37).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J8921-267

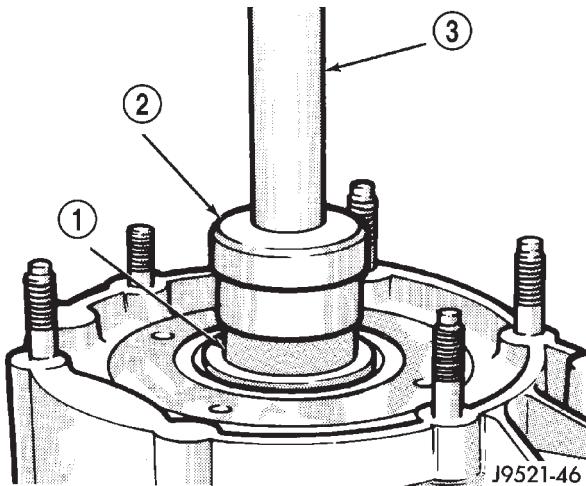
Fig. 39 Input Gear Snap-Ring Removal

- 1 – INPUT GEAR
2 – SNAP RING

(4) Remove input/low range gear assembly from bearing with Tool Handle C-4171 and Tool 7829A (Fig. 40).

(5) Remove low range gear snap-ring (Fig. 41).

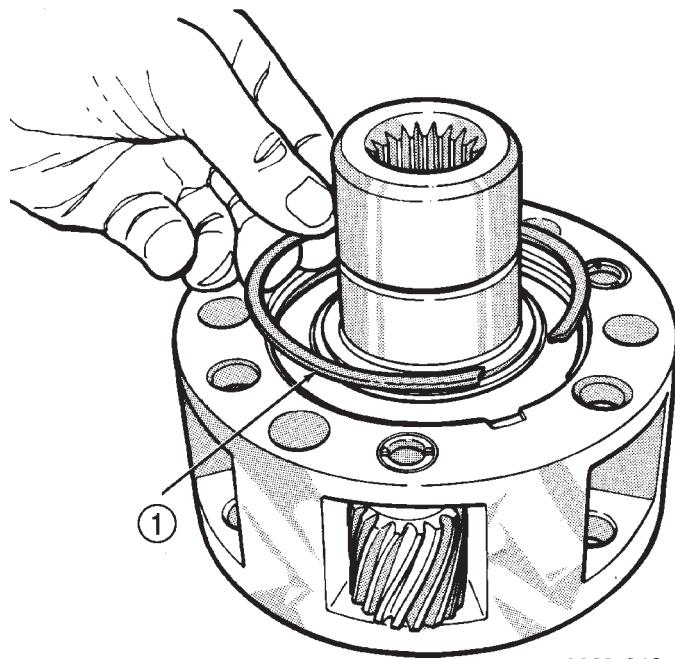
(6) Remove input gear retainer, thrust washers and input gear from low range gear (Fig. 42).



J9521-46

Fig. 40 Input And Low Range Gear Assembly Removal

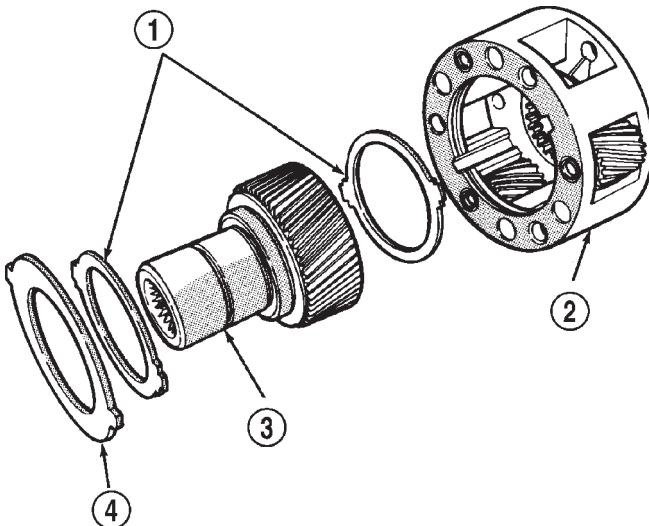
- 1 – INPUT-LOW RANGE GEARS
2 – SPECIAL TOOL 7829A
3 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171



J8921-269

Fig. 41 Low Range Gear Snap-Ring Removal/Installation

- 1 – LOW RANGE GEAR SNAP RING



J8921-214

Fig. 42 Low Range Gear Disassembly

- 1 – THRUST WASHERS
2 – LOW RANGE GEAR
3 – INPUT GEAR
4 – RETAINER

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(7) Inspect low range annulus gear (Fig. 43). **Gear is not a serviceable component. If damaged, replace gear and front case as assembly.**

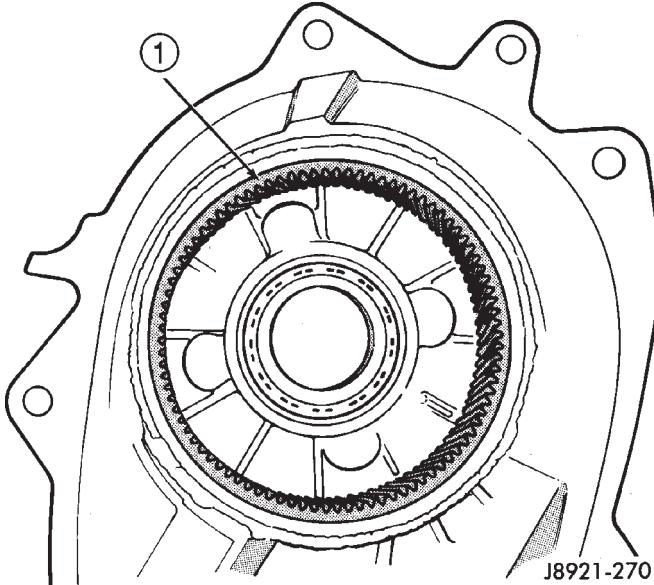


Fig. 43 Inspecting Low Range Annulus Gear

1 – LOW RANGE ANNULUS GEAR

(8) Remove oil seals from following components:

- front bearing retainer.
- rear retainer.
- oil pump.
- case halves.

DIFFERENTIAL

- (1) Mark differential case halves for reference.
- (2) Remove differential case bolts.
- (3) Invert differential on workbench.
- (4) Separate top case from bottom case. Use slots in case halves to pry them apart (Fig. 44).
- (5) Remove thrust washers and planet gears from case pins (Fig. 45).
- (6) Remove mainshaft and sprocket gears from bottom case (Fig. 46). Note gear position for reference before separating them.

ASSEMBLY

Lubricate transfer case components with automatic transmission fluid or petroleum jelly (where indicated) during assembly.

CAUTION: The bearing bores in various transfer case components contain oil feed holes. Make sure replacement bearings do not block the holes.

BEARING AND SEAL

- (1) Remove snap-ring that retains front output shaft front bearing in case (Fig. 47). Then remove

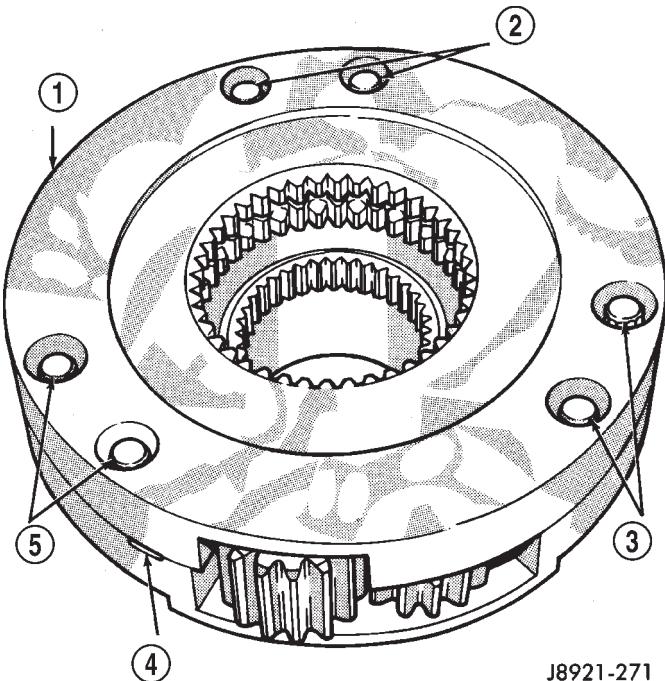


Fig. 44 Separating Differential Case Halves

- 1 – TOP CASE
- 2 – CASE BOLTS
- 3 – CASE BOLTS
- 4 – CASE SLOTS
- 5 – CASE BOLTS

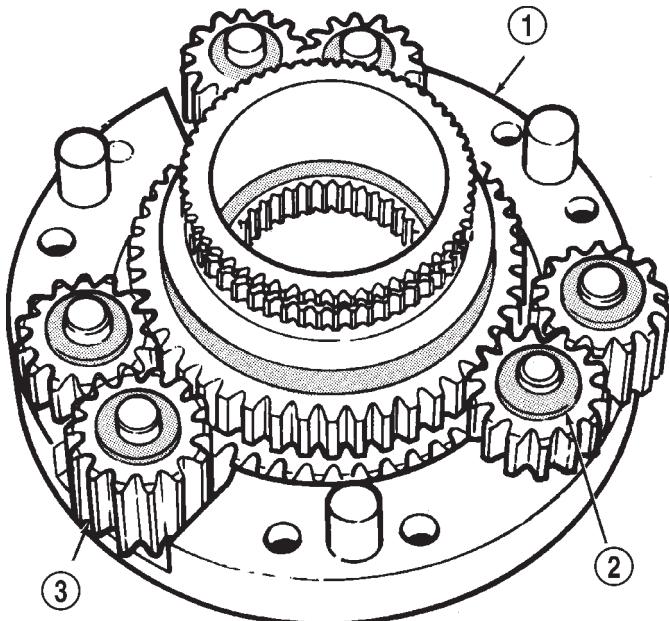
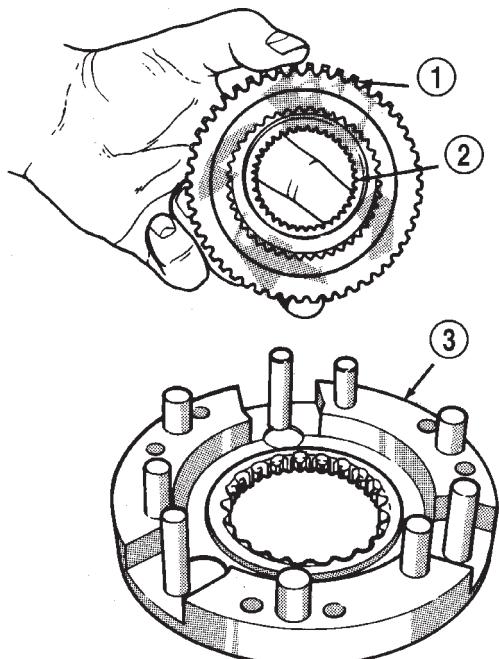


Fig. 45 Planet Gears And Thrust Washer Removal

- 1 – BOTTOM CASE
- 2 – THRUST WASHERS (12)
- 3 – PLANET GEARS (6)

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



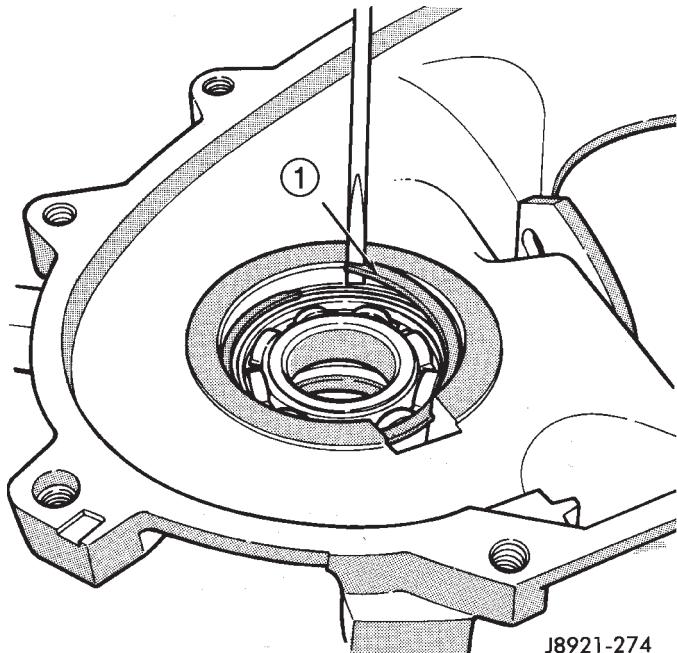
J8921-273

Fig. 46 Mainshaft And Sprocket Gear Removal

- 1 – MAINSHAFT GEAR
- 2 – SPROCKET GEAR
- 3 – BOTTOM CASE

bearing. Use hammer handle, or hammer and brass punch to tap bearing out of case.

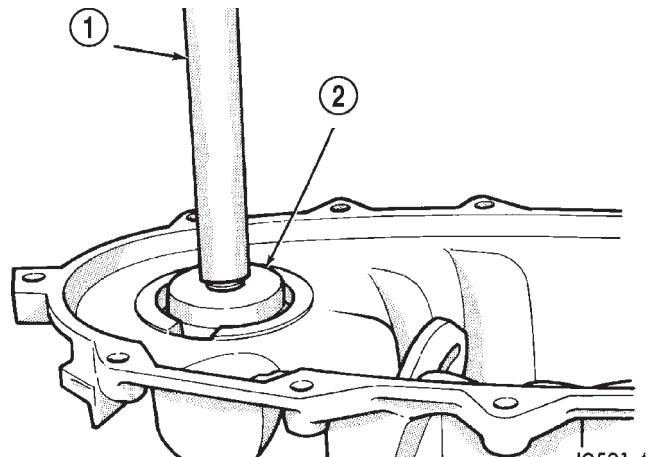
(2) Install new front output shaft front bearing with Tool Handle C-4171 and Installer 8033A with the tapered cone upward (Fig. 48).



J8921-274

Fig. 47 Front Output Shaft Front Bearing Snap-Ring Removal

- 1 – FRONT BEARING SNAP RING



J9521-45

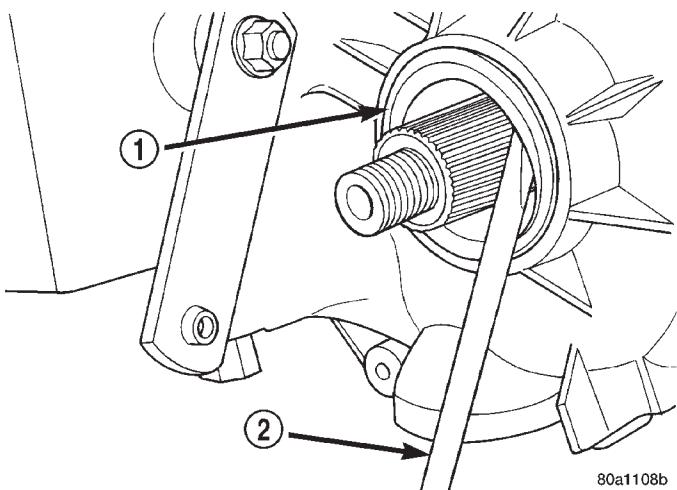
Fig. 48 Front Output Shaft Front Bearing Installation

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
- 2 – SPECIAL TOOL 8033A

(3) Install front bearing snap-ring (Fig. 47).

(4) Remove front output shaft seal using an appropriate pry tool (Fig. 49) or slide-hammer mounted screw.

(5) Install new front output shaft oil seal with Installer 6952-A (Fig. 50).

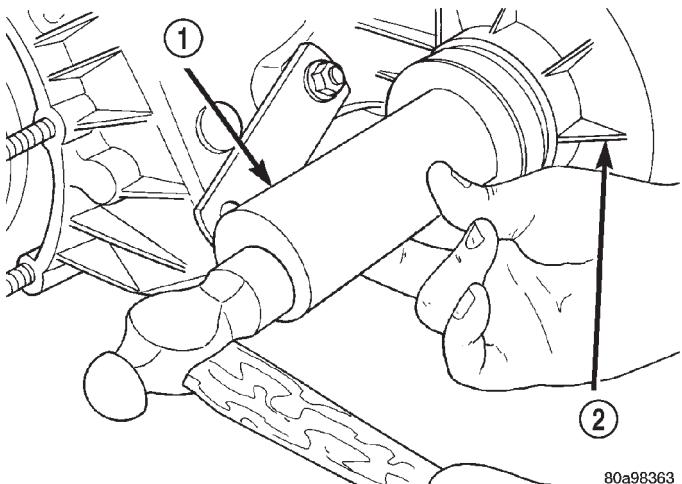


80a1108b

Fig. 49 Remove Front Output Shaft Seal

- 1 – OUTPUT SHAFT SEAL
- 2 – PRYBAR

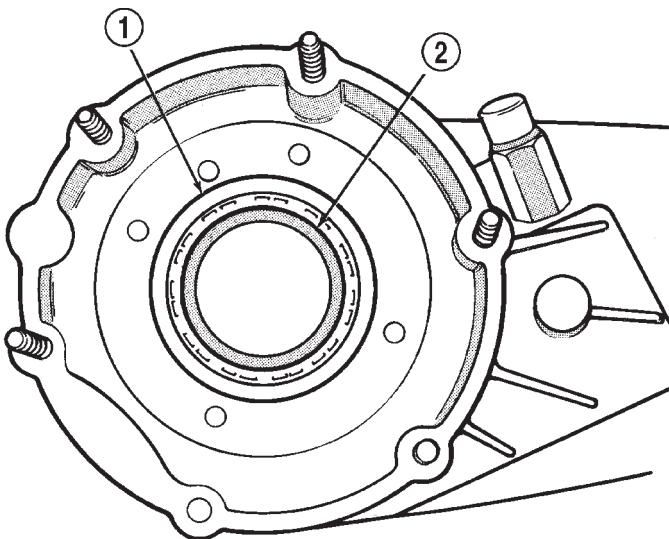
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



80a98363

Fig. 50 Install Front Output Shaft Seal

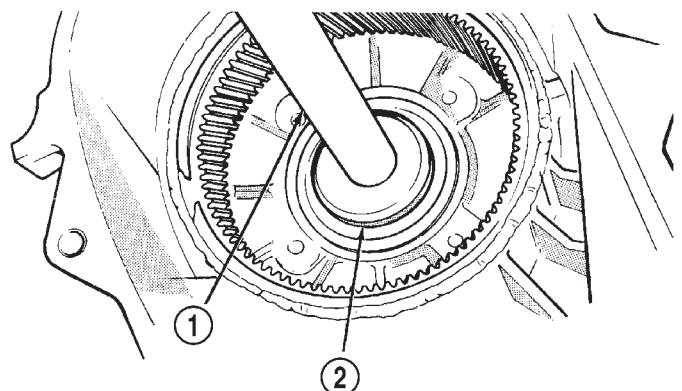
- 1 – INSTALLER 6952-A
2 – TRANSFER CASE



J8921-219

Fig. 52 Seating Input Gear Bearing

- 1 – SNAP RING
2 – INPUT SHAFT BEARING



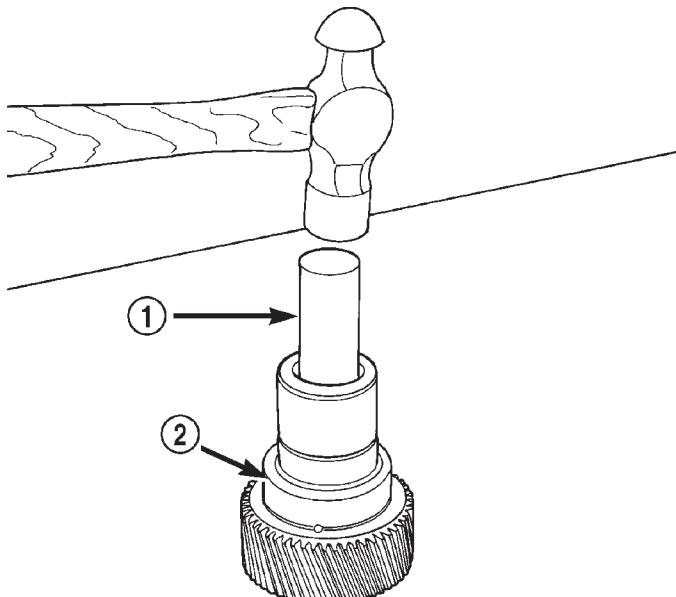
J9521-43

Fig. 51 Input Gear Bearing Removal

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
2 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4210

(9) Remove the input gear pilot bearing by inserting a suitably sized drift into the splined end of the input gear and driving the bearing out with the drift and a hammer (Fig. 53).

(10) Install new pilot bearing with Installer 8128 and Handle C-4171 (Fig. 54).

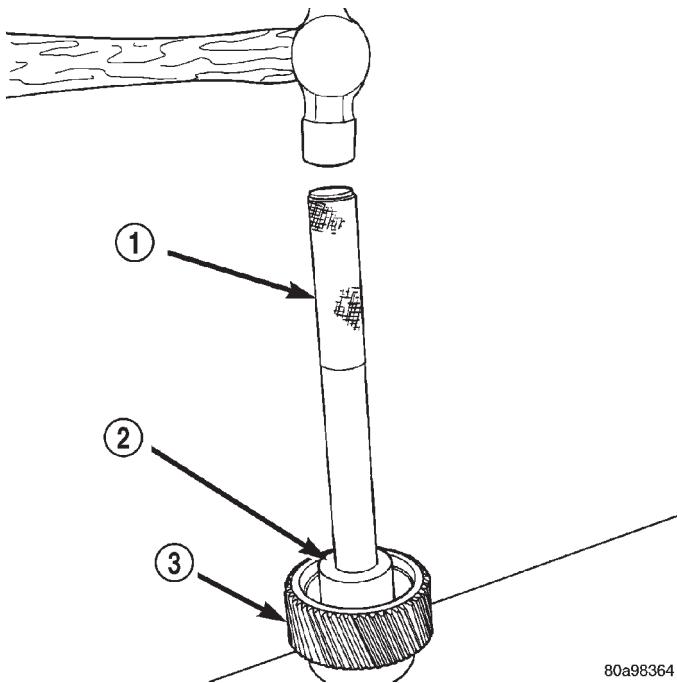


80a11090

Fig. 53 Remove Input Gear Pilot Bearing

- 1 – DRIFT
2 – INPUT GEAR

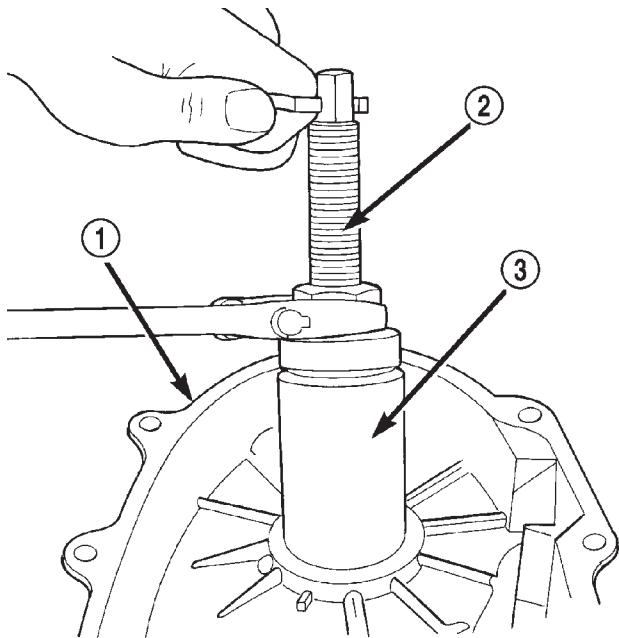
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 54 Install Input Gear Pilot Bearing**

- 1 – HANDLE C-4171
2 – INSTALLER 8128
3 – INPUT GEAR

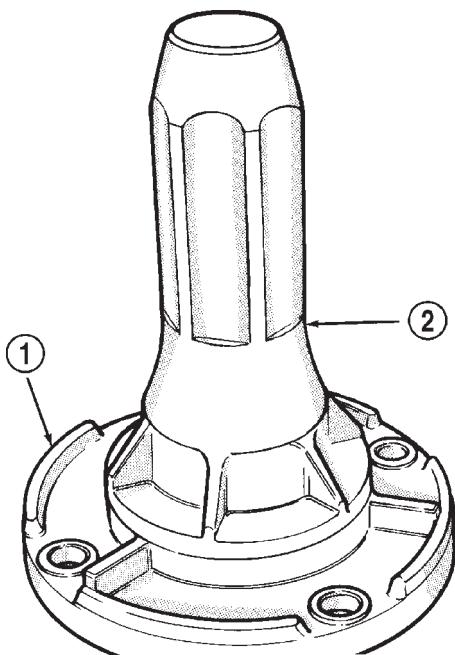
80a98364

(13) Install new bearing with Tool Handle C-4171 and Installer 5066 (Fig. 57). Lubricate bearing after installation.

**Fig. 56 Remove Front Output Shaft Rear Bearing**

- 1 – REAR CASE
2 – SPECIAL TOOL L-4454-1 AND L-4454-3
3 – SPECIAL TOOL 8148

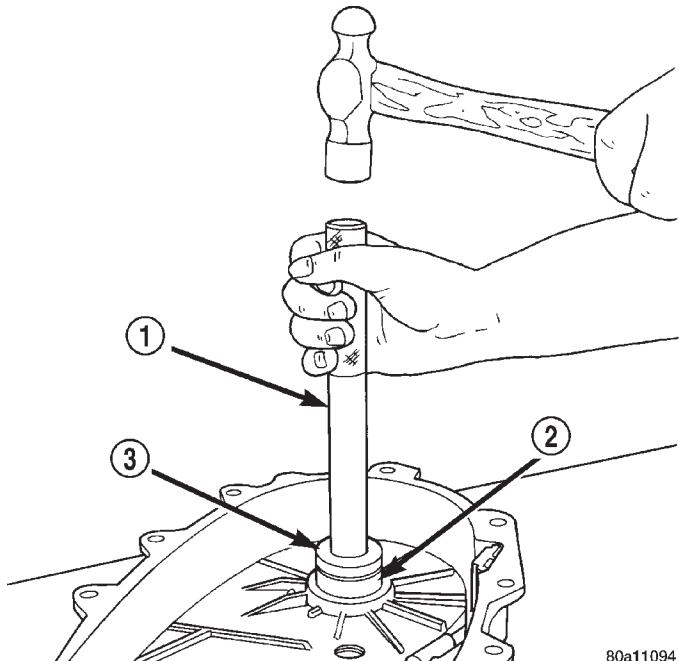
80a98366

**Fig. 55 Front Bearing Retainer Seal Installation**

- 1 – FRONT BEARING RETAINER
2 – SPECIAL TOOL 7884

J9521-41

(12) Remove output shaft rear bearing with the screw and jaws from Remover L-4454 and Cup 8148 (Fig. 56).

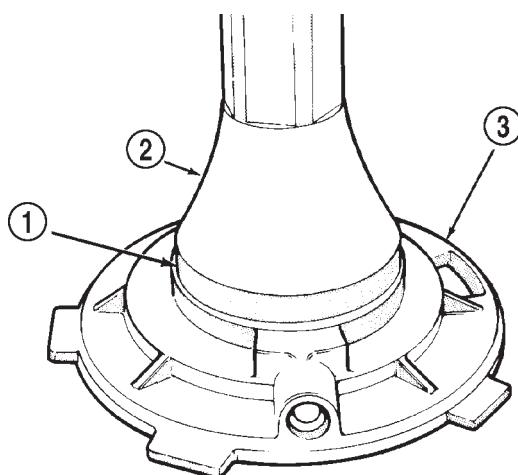
**Fig. 57 Install Front Output Shaft Rear Bearing**

- 1 – HANDLE C-4171
2 – OUTPUT SHAFT INNER BEARING
3 – INSTALLER 5066

80a11094

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

- (14) Install new seal in oil pump feed housing with Special Tool 7888 (Fig. 58).

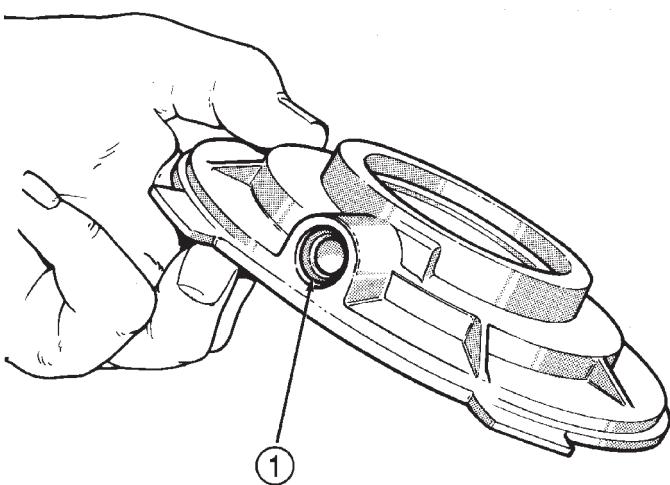


J9521-35

Fig. 58 Oil Pump Seal Installation

- 1 – HOUSING SEAL
2 – SPECIAL TOOL 7888
3 – OIL PUMP FEED HOUSING

- (15) Install new pickup tube O-ring in oil pump (Fig. 59).



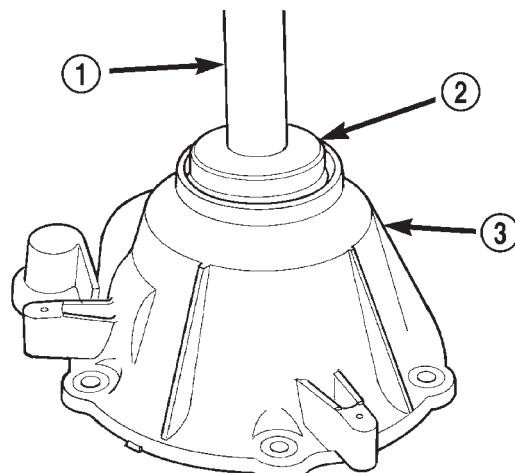
J8921-286

Fig. 59 Pickup Tube O-Ring Installation

- 1 – PICKUP TUBE O-RING

- (16) Remove rear retainer bearing with Installer 8128 and Handle C-4171.

- (17) Install rear bearing in retainer with Handle C-4171 and Installer 5064 (Fig. 60).



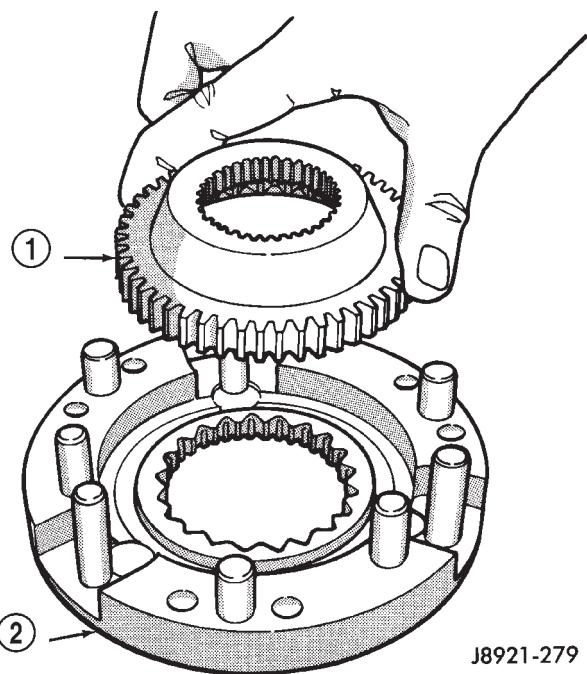
800bdfa3

Fig. 60 Installing Rear Bearing In Retainer

- 1 – SPECIAL TOOL C-4171
2 – SPECIAL TOOL 5064
3 – REAR RETAINER

DIFFERENTIAL

- (1) Lubricate differential components with automatic transmission fluid.
(2) Install sprocket gear in differential bottom case (Fig. 61).



J8921-279

Fig. 61 Installing Differential Sprocket Gear

- 1 – SPROCKET GEAR
2 – BOTTOM CASE

- (3) Install differential planet gears and new thrust washers (Fig. 62). **Be sure thrust washers are installed at top and bottom of each planet gear.**

- (4) Install differential mainshaft gear (Fig. 62).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

(5) Align and position differential top case on bottom case (Fig. 63). Align using scribe marks made at disassembly.

(6) While holding differential case halves together, invert the differential and start the differential case bolts.

(7) Tighten differential case bolts to specified torque.

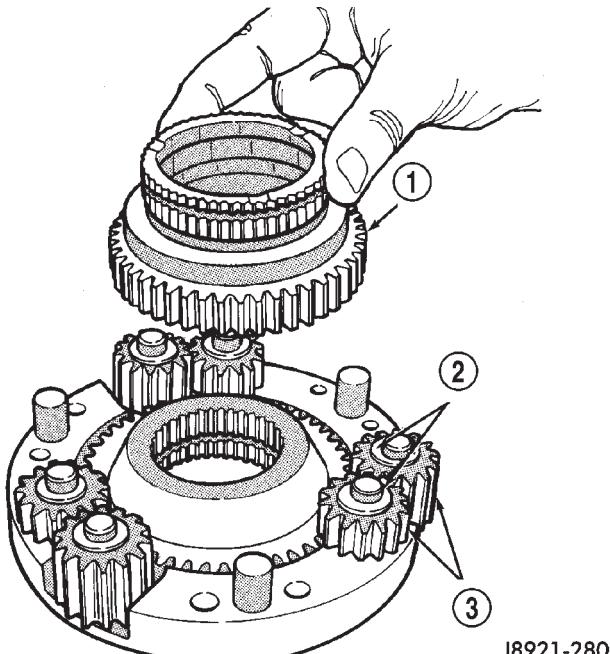


Fig. 62 Installing Mainshaft And Planet Gears

- 1 – MAINSHAFT GEAR
- 2 – THRUST WASHERS (12)
- 3 – PLANET GEARS (6)

INPUT GEAR/LOW RANGE

(1) Assemble low range gear, input gear thrust washers, input gear and input gear retainer (Fig. 64).

(2) Install low range gear snap ring (Fig. 65).

(3) Lubricate input gear and low range gears with automatic transmission fluid.

(4) Start input gear shaft into front case bearing.

(5) Press input gear shaft into front bearing.

(6) Install new input gear snap ring (Fig. 66).

(7) Apply 3 mm (1/8 in.) wide bead of Mopar® gasket maker or silicone adhesive sealer to seal surface of front bearing retainer.

(8) Install front bearing retainer (Fig. 67). Tighten retainer bolts to 16 ft. lbs. (21 N·m) torque.

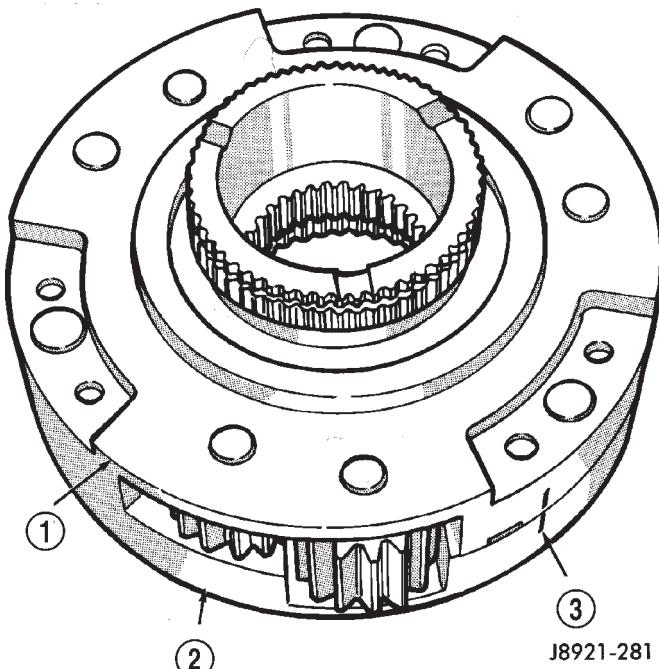


Fig. 63 Differential Case Assembly

- 1 – TOP CASE
- 2 – BOTTOM CASE
- 3 – CASE ALIGNMENT MARKS

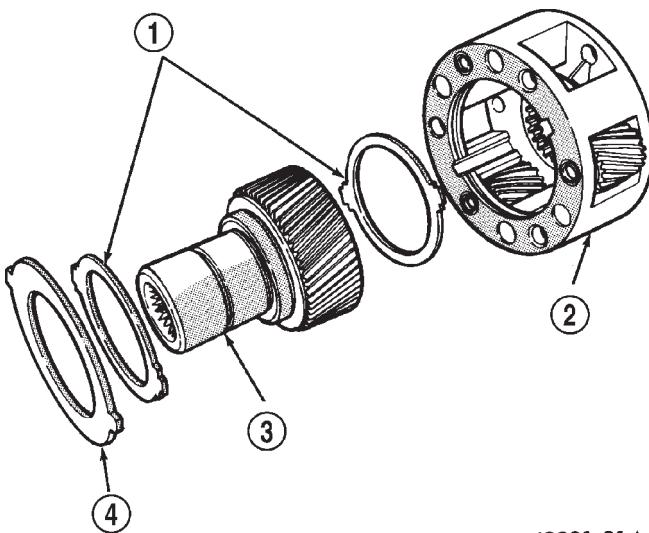
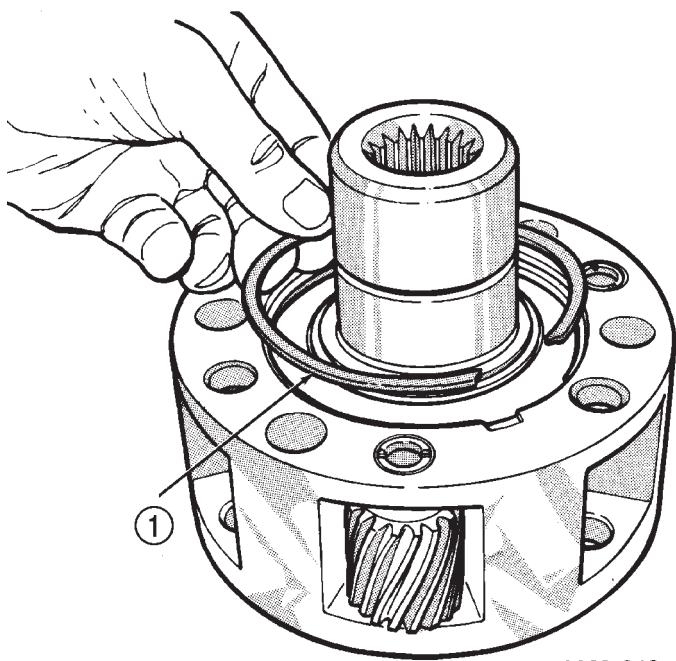


Fig. 64 Low Range And Input Gear Assembly

- 1 – THRUST WASHERS
- 2 – LOW RANGE GEAR
- 3 – INPUT GEAR
- 4 – RETAINER

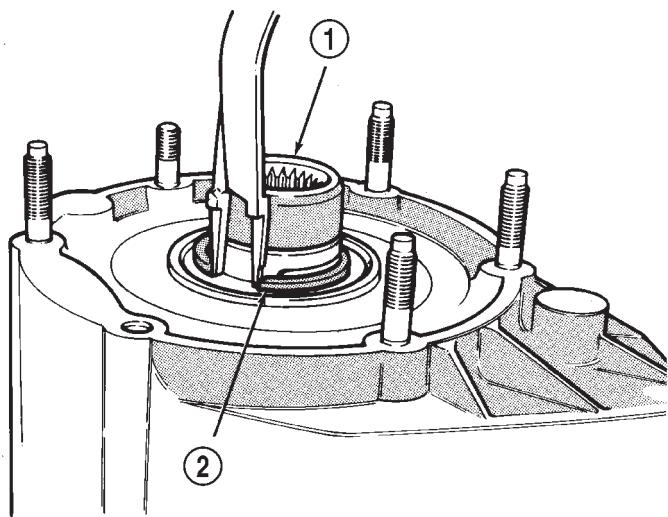
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J8921-269

Fig. 65 Install Low Range Gear Snap Ring

1 – LOW RANGE GEAR SNAP RING



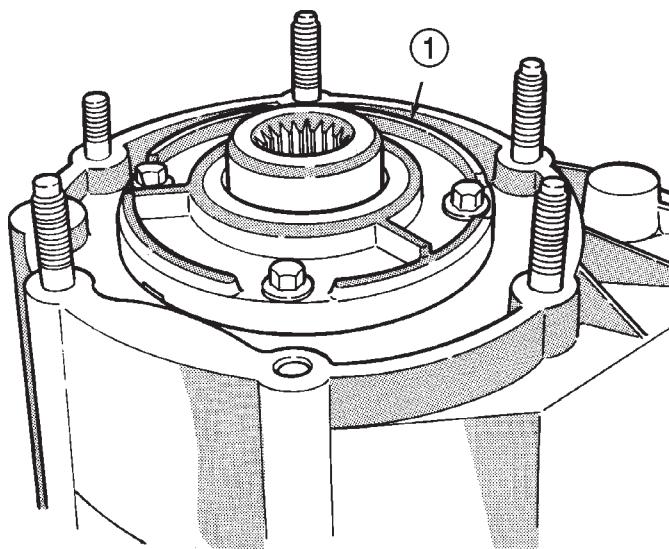
J8921-267

Fig. 66 Input Gear Snap Ring Installation

1 – INPUT GEAR
2 – SNAP RING

SHIFT FORKS AND MAINSHAFT

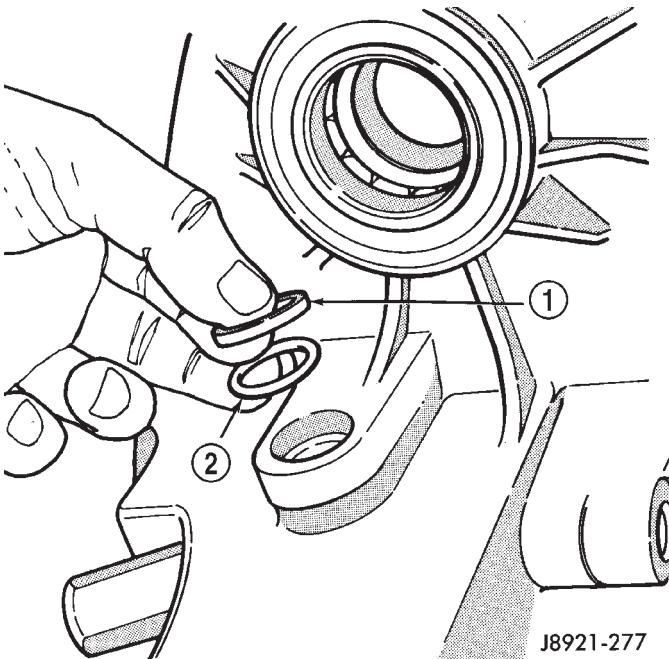
- (1) Install new sector shaft O-ring and bushing (Fig. 68).
- (2) Install shift sector.
- (3) Install new pads on low range fork, if necessary, (Fig. 69).
- (4) Assemble low range fork and hub (Fig. 69).



J8921-276

Fig. 67 Installing Front Bearing Retainer

1 – FRONT BEARING RETAINER



J8921-277

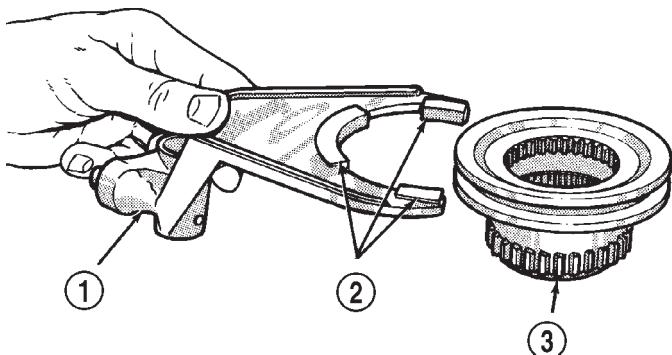
Fig. 68 Sector O-Ring And Bushing Installation

1 – SECTOR BUSHING
2 – O-RING

(5) Position low range fork and hub in case. Be sure low range fork pin is engaged in shift sector slot (Fig. 70).

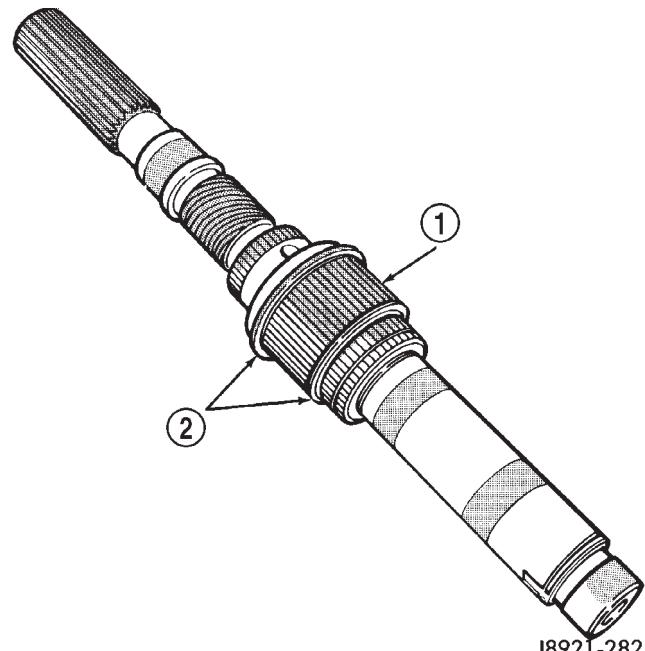
(6) Install first mainshaft bearing spacer on mainshaft (Fig. 71).

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



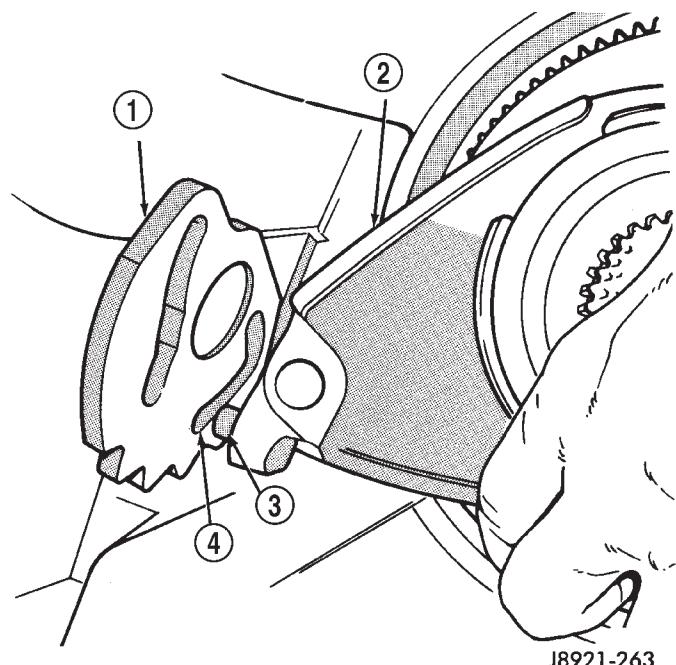
J8921-278
Fig. 69 Assembling Low Range Fork And Hub

- 1 – LOW RANGE FORK
- 2 – PADS
- 3 – HUB



J8921-282
Fig. 71 Installing Mainshaft Bearing Rollers and Spacers

- 1 – MAINSHAFT BEARING ROLLERS
- 2 – BEARING SPACERS



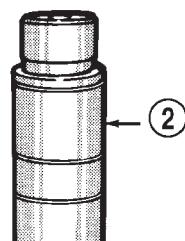
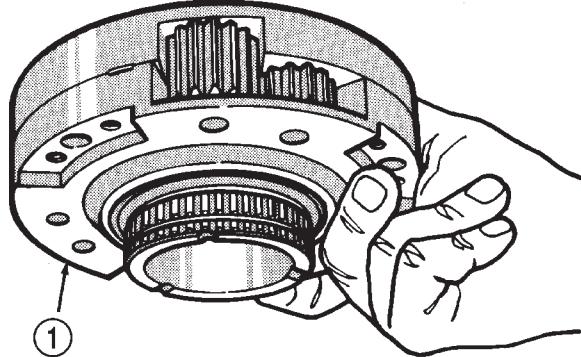
J8921-263

Fig. 70 Positioning Low Range Fork

- 1 – SHIFT SECTOR
- 2 – LOW RANGE FORK
- 3 – PIN
- 4 – SLOT

(7) Install bearing rollers on mainshaft (Fig. 71). **Coat bearing rollers with generous quantity of petroleum jelly to hold them in place.**

(8) Install remaining bearing spacer on mainshaft (Fig. 71). Do not displace any bearings while installing spacer.

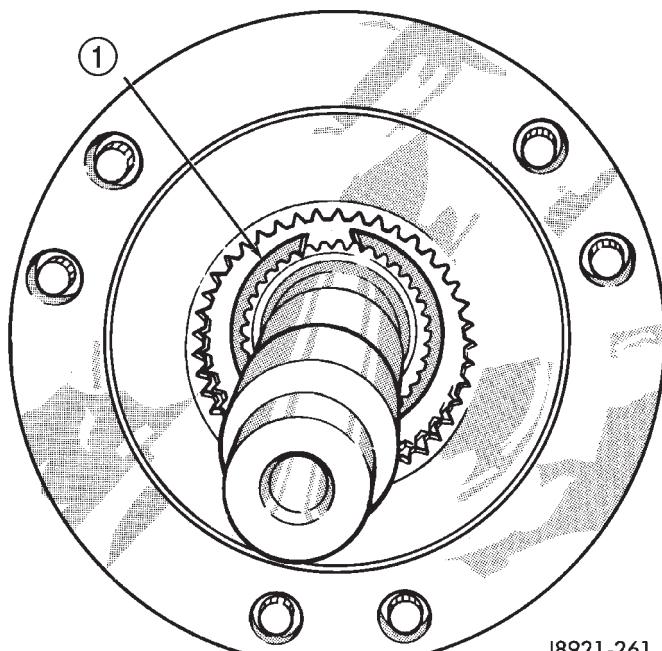


J8921-283

Fig. 72 Differential Installation

- 1 – DIFFERENTIAL
- 2 – MAINSHAFT

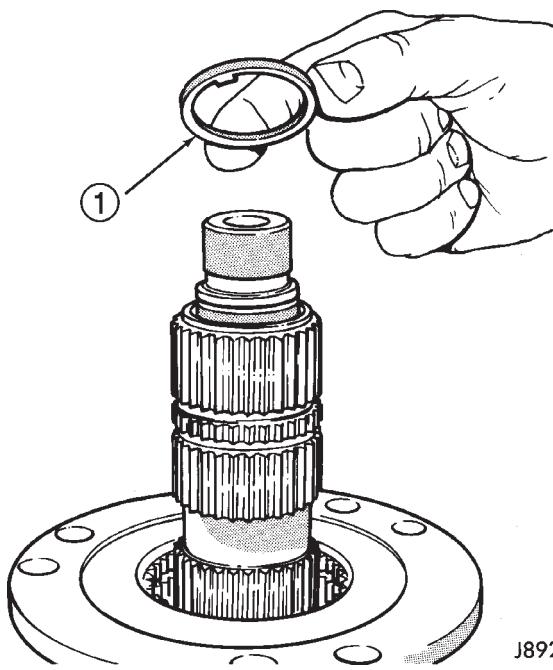
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J8921-261

Fig. 73 Installing Differential Snap-Ring

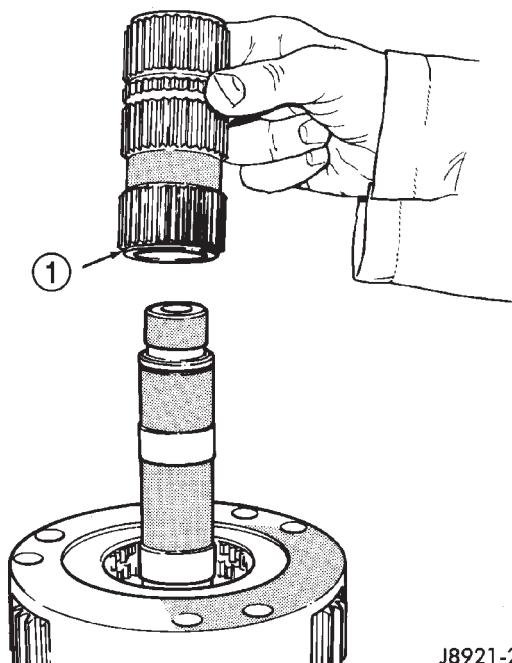
1 – DIFFERENTIAL SNAP RING



J8921-259

Fig. 75 Installing Clutch Shaft Thrust Washer

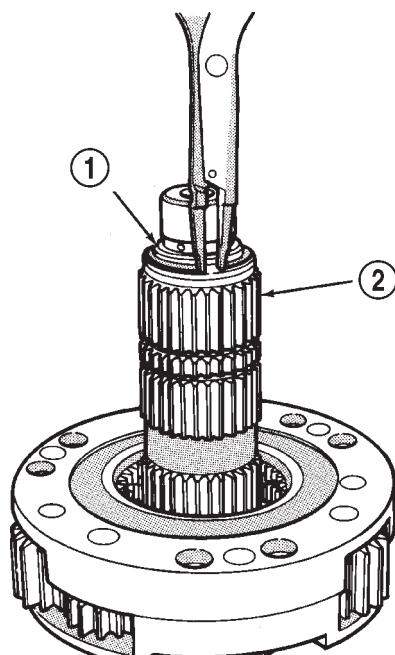
1 – CLUTCH SHAFT THRUST RING



J8921-260

Fig. 74 Installing Intermediate Clutch Shaft

1 – INTERMEDIATE CLUTCH SHAFT



J8921-258

Fig. 76 Installing Clutch Shaft Snap-Ring1 – SNAP RING
2 – INTERMEDIATE CLUTCH SHAFT

- (12) Install clutch shaft thrust washer (Fig. 75).
- (13) Install clutch shaft snap-ring (Fig. 76).
- (14) Inspect mode fork assembly (Fig. 77). Replace pads and bushing if necessary. Replace fork tube if bushings inside tube are worn or damaged. Also check springs and slider bracket (Fig. 77). Replace worn, damaged components.

(15) Install mode sleeve in mode fork (Fig. 78). Then install assembled sleeve and fork on mainshaft. Be sure mode sleeve splines are engaged in differential splines.

(16) Install mode fork and mainshaft assembly in case (Fig. 79). Rotate mainshaft slightly to engage shaft with low range gears.

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

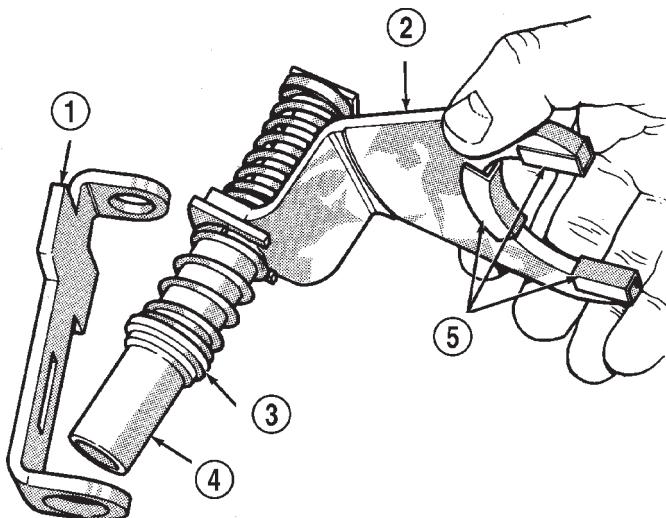


Fig. 77 Mode Fork Assembly Inspection

- 1 - SLIDER
- 2 - MODE FORK
- 3 - BUSHING/SPRING
- 4 - TUBE
- 5 - PADS

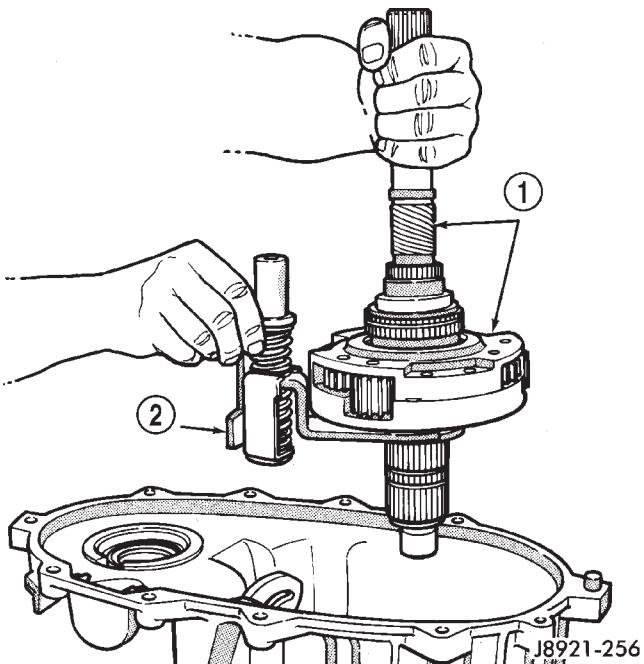


Fig. 79 Assembled Mainshaft And Mode Fork Installation

- 1 - MAINSHAFT ASSEMBLY
- 2 - MODE FORK

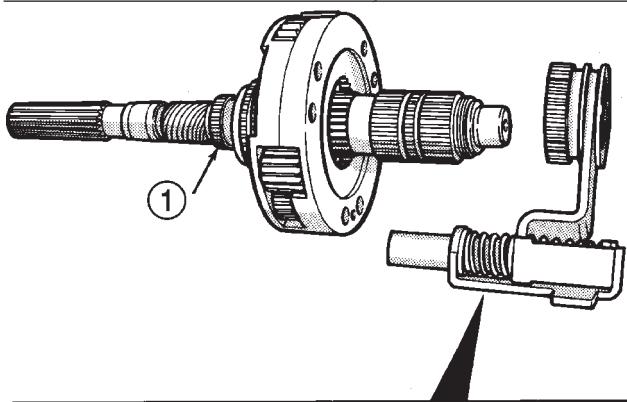
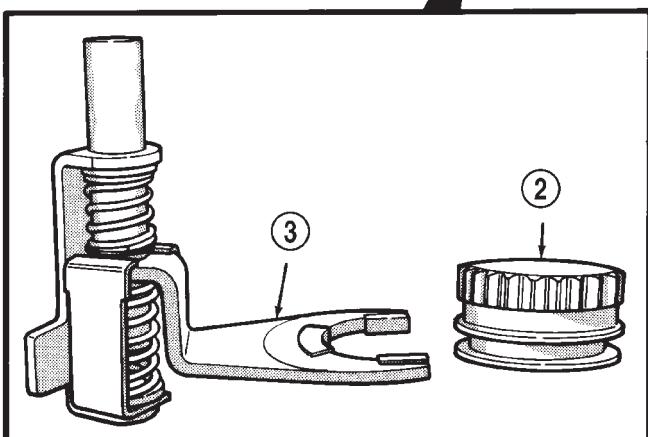


Fig. 78 Installing Mode Fork And Sleeve

- 1 - MAINSHAFT
- 2 - SLEEVE
- 3 - MODE FORK ASSEMBLY



J8921-257

(17) Rotate mode fork pin into shift sector slot.
 (18) Install shift rail (Fig. 80). **Be sure rail is seated in both shift forks.**

(19) Rotate shift sector to align lockpin hole in low range fork with access hole in case.

(20) Insert an easy-out in range fork lockpin to hold it securely for installation (Fig. 81). **Lockpin is slightly tapered on one end. Insert tapered end into fork and rail.**

(21) Insert lockpin through access hole and into shift fork (Fig. 81). Then remove easy-out and seat the pin with pin punch.

(22) Install plug in lockpin access hole.

(23) Install detent plunger, detent spring and detent plug in case (Fig. 82).

FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT AND DRIVE CHAIN

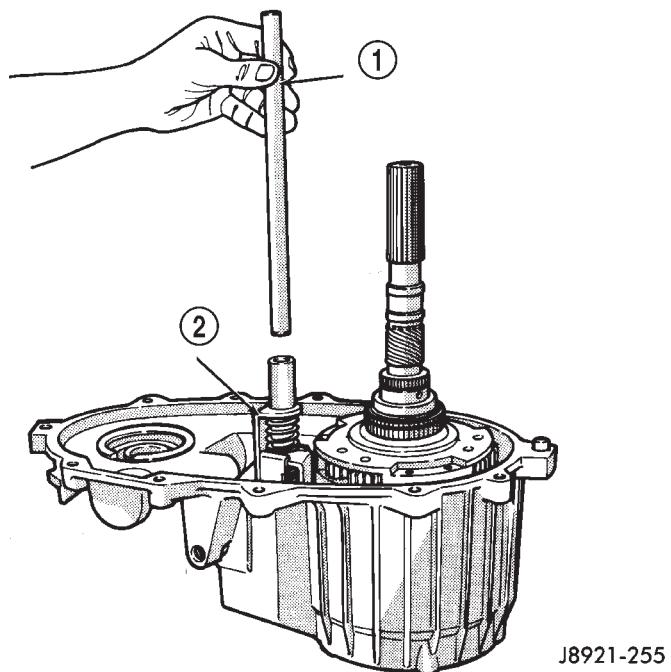
(1) Install front output shaft (Fig. 83).

(2) Install drive chain (Fig. 83). Engage chain with front output shaft sprocket teeth.

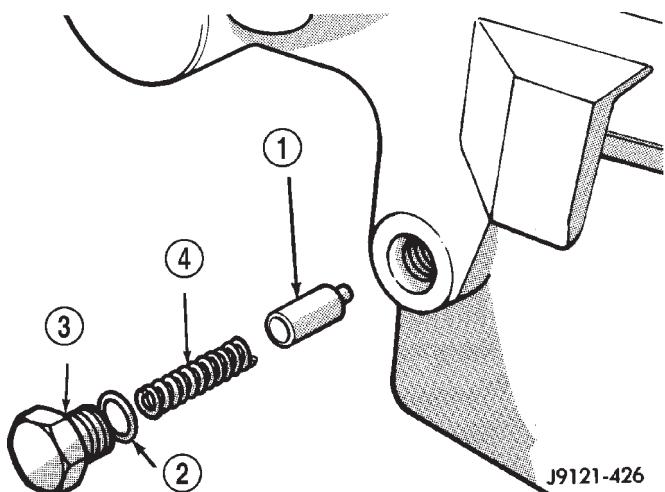
(3) Install drive sprocket (Fig. 83). Engage drive sprocket teeth with chain. Then engage sprocket splines with mainshaft splines.

(4) Install drive sprocket snap-ring (Fig. 84).

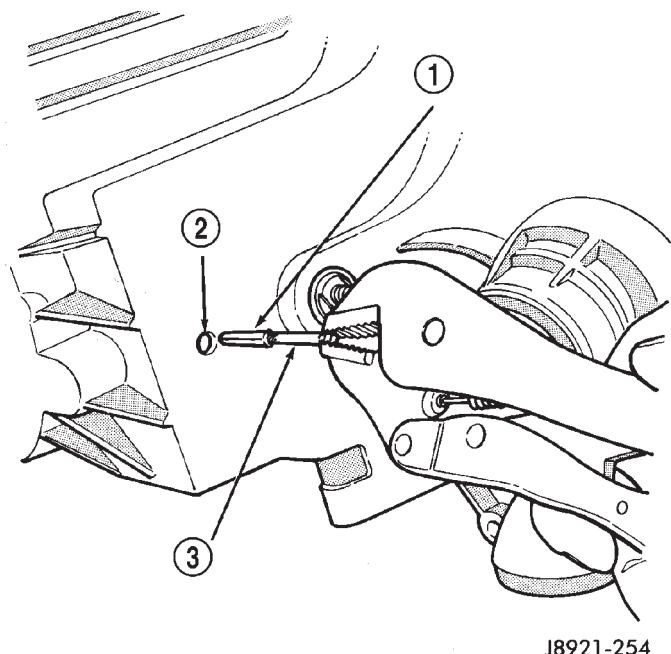
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

**Fig. 80 Shift Rail Installation**

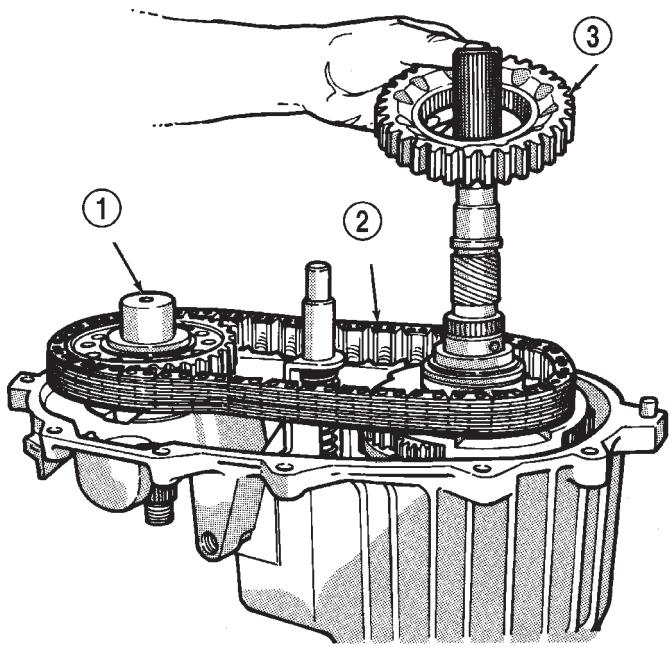
- 1 – SHIFT RAIL
2 – MODE FORK

**Fig. 82 Detent Pin, Spring And Plug Installation**

- 1 – PLUNGER
2 – O-RING
3 – PLUG
4 – SPRING

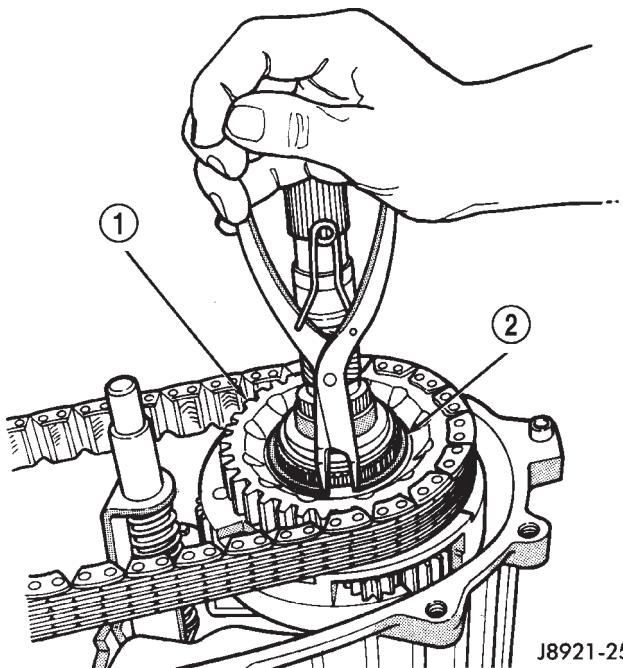
**Fig. 81 Installing Low Range Fork Lockpin**

- 1 – LOW RANGE FORK LOCK PIN
2 – ACCESS HOLE
3 – EASY-OUT

**Fig. 83 Drive Chain And Sprocket Installation**

- 1 – FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT
2 – DRIVE CHAIN
3 – DRIVE SPROCKET

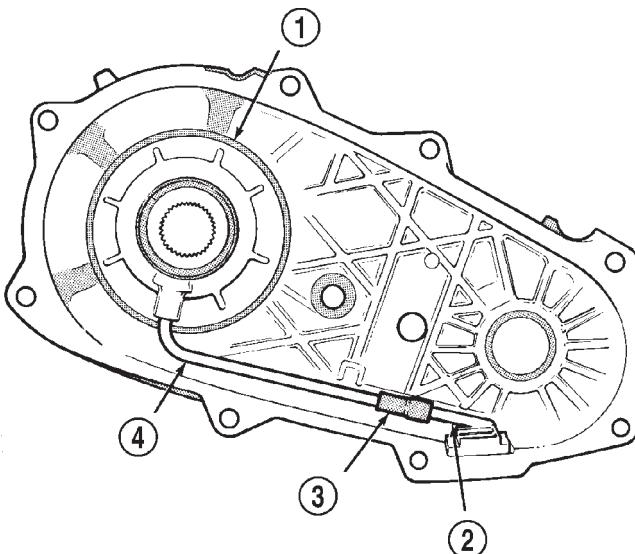
DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)



J8921-251

Fig. 84 Drive Sprocket Snap-Ring Installation

- 1 – DRIVE SPROCKET
2 – DRIVE SPROCKET SNAP RING



J8921-287

Fig. 85 Oil Screen And Pickup Tube Installation

- 1 – OIL PUMP
2 – OIL SCREEN
3 – CONNECTOR
4 – PICKUP TUBE

OIL PUMP AND REAR CASE

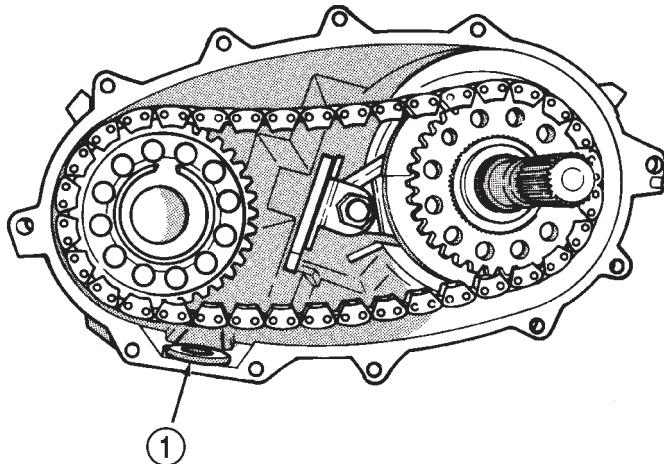
(1) Insert oil pickup tube in oil pump and attach oil screen and connector hose to pickup tube. Then install assembled pump, tube and screen in rear case (Fig. 85). Be sure screen is seated in case slot as shown.

(2) Install magnet in front case pocket (Fig. 86).

(3) Apply 3 mm (1/8 in.) wide bead of Mopar gasket maker or silicone adhesive sealer to seal surface of front case.

(4) Align and install rear case on front case. Be sure case locating dowels are in place and that main-shaft splines are engaged in oil pump inner gear.

(5) Install and tighten front case-to-rear case bolts to 41 N·m (30 ft. lbs.) torque. **Be sure to install a washer under each bolt used at case dowel locations.**



J8921-288

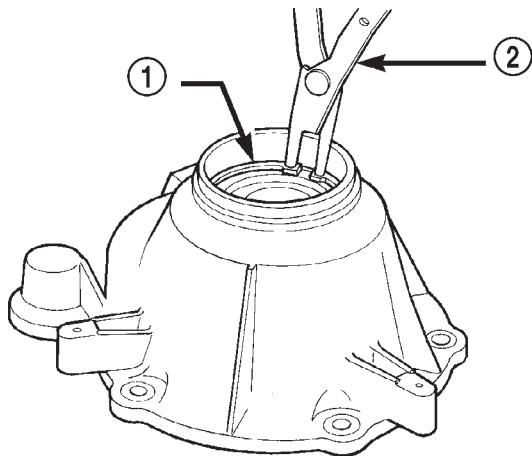
Fig. 86 Installing Case Magnet

- 1 – MAGNET

DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY (Continued)

REAR RETAINER

(1) Install rear bearing O.D. retaining ring with snap-ring pliers (Fig. 87). Be sure retaining ring is fully seated in retainer groove.

**Fig. 87 Rear Bearing Retaining Ring Installation**

1 – REAR BEARING O.D. RETAINING RING

2 – SNAP RING PLIERS

(5) Apply 3 mm (1/8 in.) wide bead of Mopar® gasket maker or silicone adhesive sealer to mounting surface of extension housing. Allow sealer to set-up slightly before proceeding.

(6) Install extension housing on rear retainer.

(7) Install extension housing bolts and tighten to 35–46 N·m (26–34 ft. lbs.).

FRONT YOKE AND SWITCH

(1) Install indicator switch in front case. Tighten switch to 20–34 N·m (15–25 ft. lbs.) torque.

(2) Lubricate yoke hub with transmission fluid and install yoke on front shaft.

(3) Install new seal washer on front shaft.

(4) Install yoke on front shaft. Secure yoke with new nut.

CLEANING AND INSPECTION

NV242 TRANSFER CASE

Clean the transfer case parts with a standard parts cleaning solvent. Remove all traces of sealer from the cases and retainers with a scraper and all purpose cleaner. Use compressed air to remove solvent residue from oil feed passages in the case halves, retainers, gears, and shafts.

The oil pickup screen can be cleaned with solvent. Shake excess solvent from the screen after cleaning and allow it to air dry. Do not use compressed air.

MAINSHAFT/SPROCKET/HUB INSPECTION

Inspect the splines on the hub and shaft and the teeth on the sprocket. Minor nicks and scratches can be smoothed with an oilstone. However, replace any part is damaged.

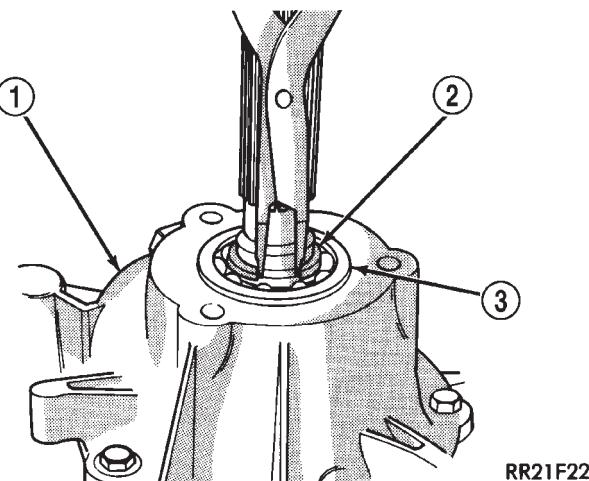
Check the contact surfaces in the sprocket bore and on the mainshaft. Minor nicks and scratches can be smoothed with 320–400 grit emery cloth but do not try to salvage the shaft if nicks or wear is severe.

INPUT GEAR AND PLANETARY CARRIER

Check the teeth on the gear (Fig. 89). Minor nicks can be dressed off with an oilstone but replace the gear if any teeth are broken, cracked, or chipped. The bearing surface on the gear can be smoothed with 300–400 grit emery cloth if necessary.

Examine the carrier body and pinion gears for wear or damage. The carrier will have to be replaced as an assembly if the body, pinion pins, or pinion gears are damaged.

Check the lock ring and both thrust washers for wear or cracks. Replace them if necessary. Also replace the lock retaining ring if bent, distorted, or broken.

**Fig. 88 Install Output Bearing Snap-ring**

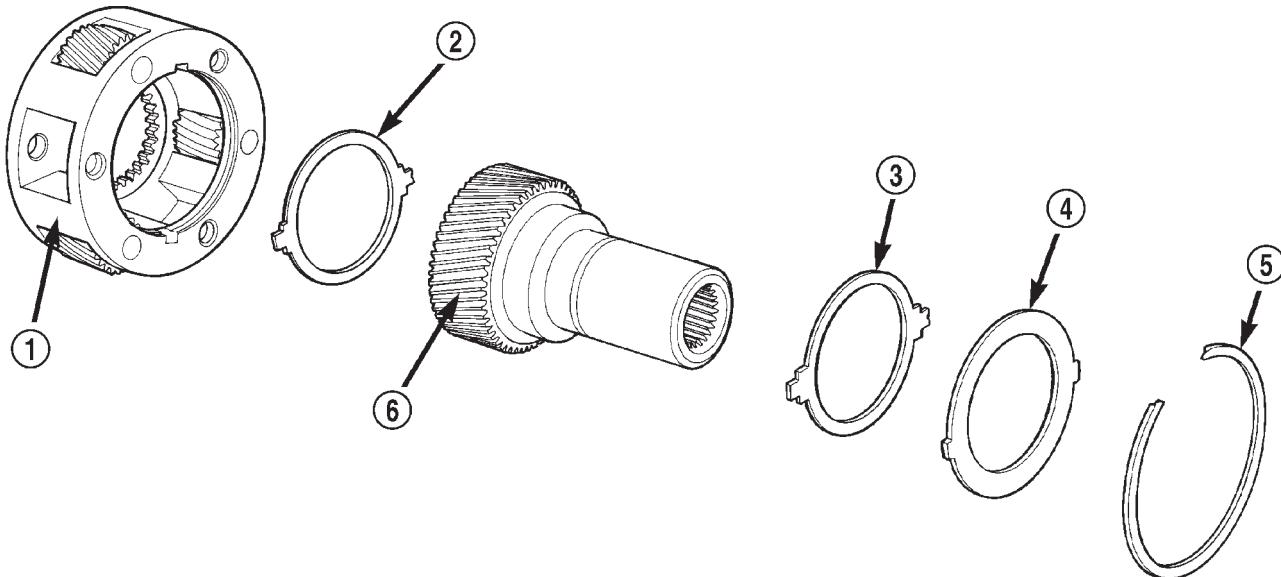
1 – REAR RETAINER

2 – SNAP RING

3 – REAR BEARING

RR21F22

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

**Fig. 89 Input Gear And Carrier Components**

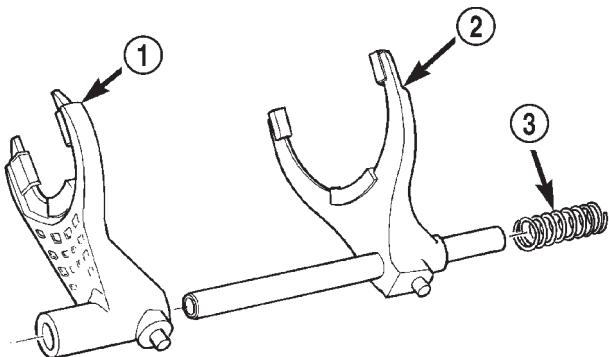
8001b75f

- 1 – PLANETARY CARRIER
2 – REAR THRUST WASHER
3 – FRONT THRUST WASHER

- 4 – CARRIER LOCK RING
5 – CARRIER LOCK RETAINING RING
6 – INPUT GEAR

SHIFT FORKS/HUBS/SLEEVES

Check condition of the shift forks and mode fork shift rail (Fig. 90). Minor nicks on the shift rail can be smoothed with 320–400 grit emery cloth.

**Fig. 90 Shift forks**

80010948

- 1 – RANGE FORK
2 – MODE FORK AND RAIL
3 – MODE SPRING

Inspect the shift fork wear pads. The mode fork pads are serviceable and can be replaced if necessary. The range fork pads are also serviceable.

Check both of the sleeves for wear or damage, especially on the interior teeth. Replace the sleeves if wear or damage is evident.

REAR RETAINER AND EXTENSION HOUSING

Inspect the retainer components. Replace the bearing if rough or noisy. Check the retainer for cracks or wear in the bearing bore. Clean the retainer sealing surfaces with a scraper and all purpose cleaner. This will ensure proper adhesion of the sealer during reassembly.

Inspect the retaining rings and washers. Replace any part if distorted, bent, or broken. Reuse is not recommended.

Inspect the extension housing seal and bushing. Replace both components if either show any sign of wear or damage.

FRONT OUTPUT SHAFT/YOKE/DRIVE CHAIN

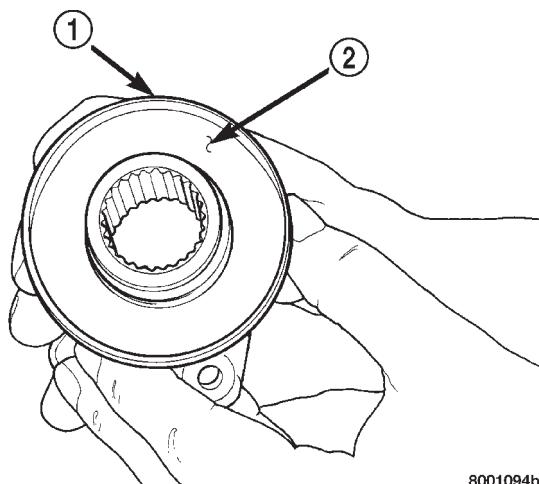
Check condition of the seal contact surfaces of the yoke slinger (Fig. 91). This surface must be clean and smooth to ensure proper seal life. Replace the yoke nut and seal washer as neither part should be reused.

Inspect the shaft threads, sprocket teeth, and bearing surfaces. Minor nicks on the teeth can be smoothed with an oilstone. Use 320–400 grit emery to smooth minor scratches on the shaft bearing surfaces. Rough threads on the shaft can be chased if necessary. Replace the shaft if the threads are damaged, bearing surfaces are scored, or if any sprocket teeth are cracked or broken.

Examine the drive chain and shaft bearings. Replace the chain and both sprockets if the chain is

CLEANING AND INSPECTION (Continued)

stretched, distorted, or if any of the links bind. Replace the bearings if rough, or noisy.



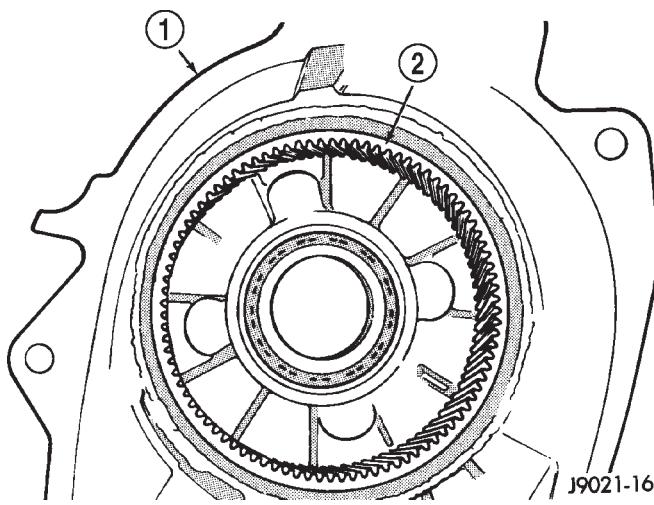
8001094b

Fig. 91 Seal Contact Surface Of Yoke Slinger

- 1 – FRONT SLINGER (PART OF YOKE)
2 – SEAL CONTACT SURFACE MUST BE CLEAN AND SMOOTH

LOW RANGE ANNULUS GEAR

Inspect annulus gear condition carefully. The gear is only serviced as part of the front case. If the gear is damaged, it will be necessary to replace the gear and front case as an assembly. Do not attempt to remove the gear (Fig. 92).

**Fig. 92 Low Range Annulus Gear**

- 1 – FRONT CASE
2 – LOW RANGE ANNULUS GEAR

FRONT-REAR CASES AND FRONT RETAINER

Inspect the cases and retainer for wear and damage. Clean the sealing surfaces with a scraper and all purpose cleaner. This will ensure proper sealer adhesion at assembly. Replace the input retainer seal; do not reuse it.

Check case condition. If leaks were a problem, look for gouges and severe scoring of case sealing surfaces. Also make sure the front case mounting studs are in good condition.

Check the front case mounting studs and vent tube. The tube can be secured with Loctite™ 271 or 680 if loose. The stud threads can be cleaned up with a die if necessary. Also check condition of the fill/drain plug threads in the rear case. The threads can be repaired with a thread chaser or tap if necessary. Or the threads can be repaired with Helicoil stainless steel inserts if required.

OIL PUMP/OIL PICKUP

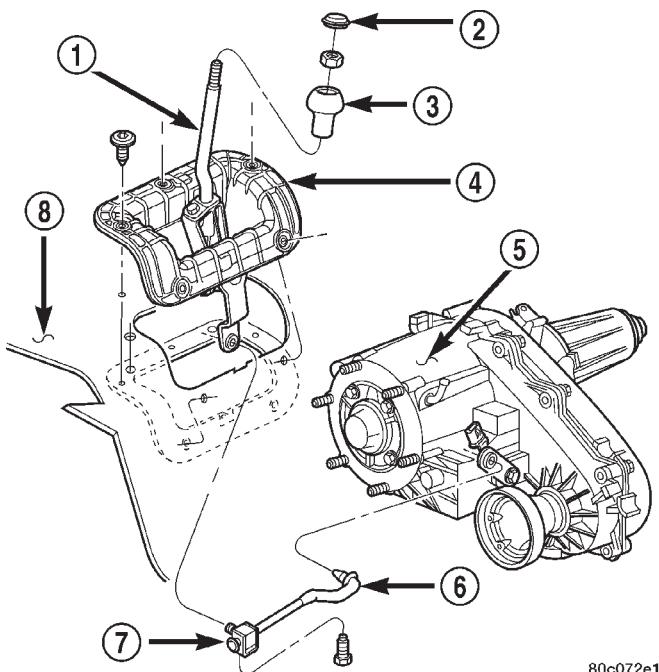
Examine the oil pump pickup parts. Replace the pump if any part appears to be worn or damaged. Do not disassemble the pump as individual parts are not available. The pump is only available as a complete assembly. The pickup screen, hose, and tube are the only serviceable parts and are available separately.

ADJUSTMENTS

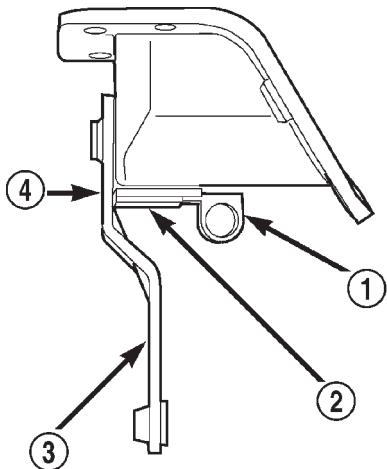
SHIFTER ADJUSTMENT

- (1) Shift transfer case into the 4WD position.
- (2) Raise vehicle.
- (3) Loosen the trunnion lock bolt (Fig. 93).
- (4) Make sure the shift rod slides freely in the adjusting swivel. Lube rod and swivel if necessary.
- (5) Verify that transfer case range lever is in 4WD detent. The 4WD detent is the second detent position from the full forward position.
- (6) Align the adjustment locating hole in the lower shift lever to the adjustment channel in the shifter body (Fig. 94).
- (7) Insert an appropriately sized pin through the adjustment hole and channel.
- (8) Tighten the trunnion lock bolt to 10 N·m (90 in. lbs.) torque.
- (9) Lower vehicle just enough to enter vehicle. Be sure all wheels are off shop floor. Then start engine, shift transmission into gear, and shift transfer case through all ranges to verify correct adjustment.

ADJUSTMENTS (Continued)

**Fig. 93 Transfer Case Shift Linkage**

80c072e1

**Fig. 94 Shifter Adjustment Channel and Hole**

80be45f6

- 1 - LOCATING PIN
- 2 - ADJUSTMENT CHANNEL
- 3 - LOWER SHIFTER LEVER
- 4 - LOCATING HOLE

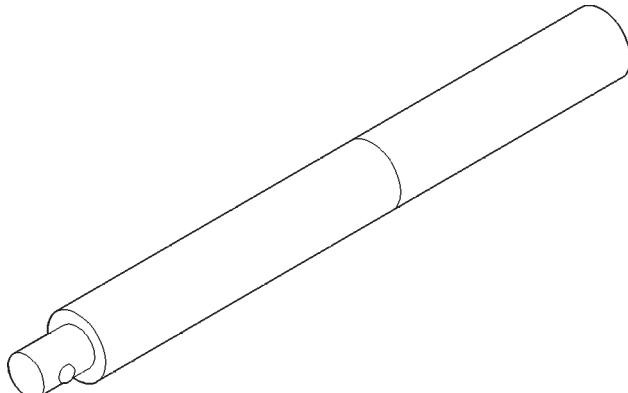
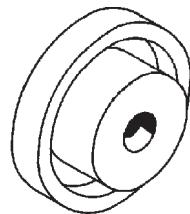
SPECIFICATIONS

TORQUE

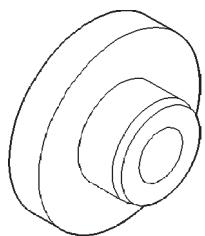
DESCRIPTION	TORQUE
Plug, Detent	16–24 N·m (12–18 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, Diff. Case	17–27 N·m (15–24 ft. lbs.)
Plug, Drain/Fill	20–25 N·m (15–25 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, Front Brg. Retainer	16–27 N·m (12–20 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, Case Half	35–46 N·m (26–34 ft. lbs.)
Nut, Front Yoke	122–176 N·m (90–130 ft. lbs.)
Screw, Oil Pump	1.2–1.8 N·m (12–15 in. lbs.)
Nut, Range Lever	27–34 N·m (20–25 ft. lbs.)
Bolt, Rear Retainer	20–27 N·m (15–20 ft. lbs.)
Nuts, Mounting	30–41 N·m (20–30 ft. lbs.)
Bolts, U-Joint	19 N·m (17 ft. lbs.)
Nut, Shifter Knob	11.3–13.6 N·m (100–120 in.lbs.)
Bolt, Shift Lever	22.6–33.9 N·m (200–300 in.lbs.)

SPECIAL TOOLS

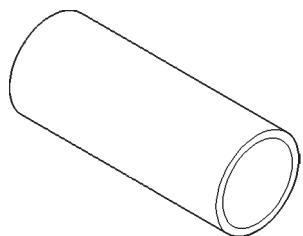
NV242

**Handle, Universal—C-4171****Remover—C-4210**

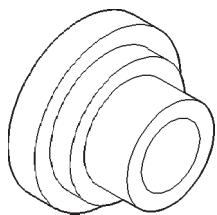
SPECIAL TOOLS (Continued)



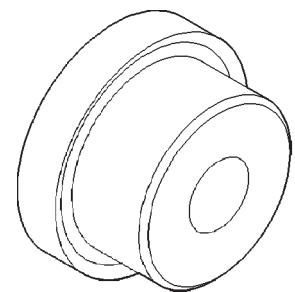
Installer, Bearing—5064



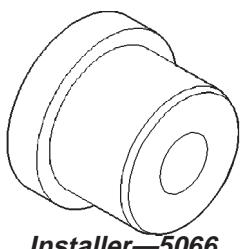
Cup—8148



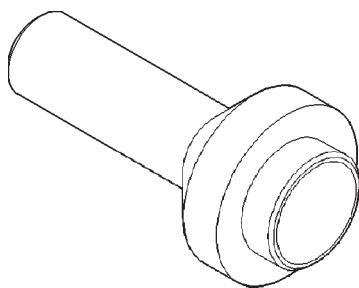
Installer—8128



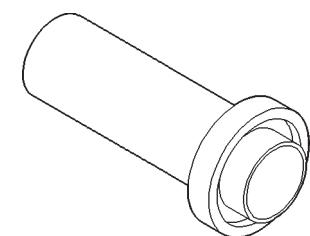
Installer, Input Gear Bearing—7829-A



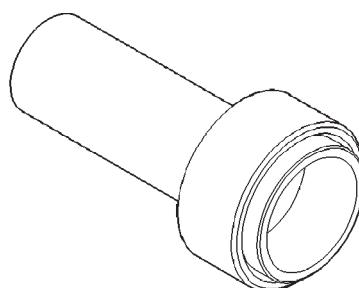
Installer—5066



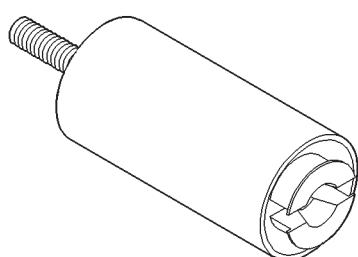
Installer, Seal—7884



Installer—6952-A

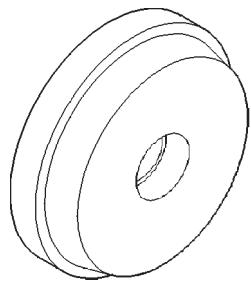


Installer, Pump Housing Seal—7888

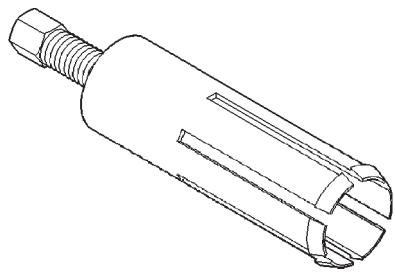


Remover—L-4454

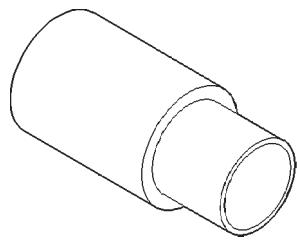
SPECIAL TOOLS (Continued)



Installer, Bearing—8033-A



Remover, Bushing—6957



Installer, Bushing—8160

